



City of Houston - Department of Aviation – Infrastructure Division

PROJECT MANUAL
IAH SKYWAY STRUCTURAL IMPROVEMENTS
GEORGE BUSH INTERCONTINENTAL AIRPORT (IAH)

PROJECT No.: 993
CIP No.: [A-XXXX]
[AIP No.: 3-48-0111-XX]

VOLUME NO. 3 OF 3 TOTAL VOLUMES

Division 02-16

February 2025

AtkinsRéalis North America
900 Memorial City Way, Suite 400
Houston, TX 77024
(713) 576-8500
#F-000474

SPECIFICATIONS

Division 02 through 16 Specifications reference the latest editions of the Standard Specifications that are in effect as of the date of receipt of bids, unless otherwise noted. Supplemental Specifications include Doc Date for reference.

Doc. No. Document Title

DIVISION 02 – EXISTING CONDITIONS

02506	POLYVINYL CHLORIDE PIPE
02 41 00	DEMOLITION
02 41 20	SELECTION DEMOLITION AND TEMPORARY SHORING

DIVISION 03 – CONCRETE

03 01 05	CONCRETE REPAIR MATERIALS
03 30 53	MISCELLANEOUS CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE
03 65 00	EPOXY RELATED WORK

DIVISION 05 – METALS

05 12 00	STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING
05 40 00	COLD FORMED METAL FRAMING

DIVISION 06 – WOOD, PLASTICS, COMPOSITES

06 16 00	SHEATHING

DIVISION 07 – THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION

07 24 13	POLYMER-BASED EXTERIOR INSULATION AND FINISH SYSTEM (EIFS)
07 25 00	WEATHER BARRIERS
07 27 26	FLUID-APPLIED MEMBRANE AIR BARRIERS
07 42 13	METAL WALL PANELS
07 62 00	SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM
07 92 00	JOINT SEALANTS

DIVISION 08 – OPENINGS

08 44 13	GLAZED ALUMINUM CURTAIN WALLS
08 71 00	DOOR HARDWARE
08 80 00	GLAZING
08 91 00	LOUVERS

DIVISION 09 – FINISHES

09 21 16	GYPSUM BOARD ASSEMBLIES
09 22 36	LATH
09 24 00	CEMENT PLASTERING

ATTACHMENTS

FAA AC-150/5370-10H – STANDARDS AND SPECIFICATIONS FOR
CONSTRUCTION OF AIRPORTS

FAA AC-150/5370-2G – OPERATIONAL SAFETY ON AIRPORTS DURING
CONSTRUCTION

AC 150/5370-12B - QUALITY MANAGEMENT FOR FEDERALLY FUNDED AIRPORT
CONSTRUCTION PROJECTS

FAA AC 150/5210-5D: PAINTING, MARKING, AND LIGHTING OF VEHICLES USED
ON AN AIRPORT

**SECTION 02506
POLYVINYL CHLORIDE PIPE**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) pressure pipe for water distribution, in nominal diameters 4 inches through 20 inches.
- B. Polyvinyl chloride sewer pipe for gravity sewers in nominal diameters 4 inches through 60 inches.
- C. Polyvinyl chloride pressure pipe for gravity sewers and force mains in nominal diameters 4 inches through 20 inches.
- D. Fusible PVC®, or FPVC®, pipe for pressure pipe in horizontal directional drilling applications up to 20-inches in diameter.

1.02 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 01270 – Measurement and Payment
- B. Section 01330 – Submittal Procedures
- C. Section 02317 – Excavation and Backfill for Utilities
- D. Section 02501 – Ductile Iron Pipe and Fittings
- E. Section 02511 – Water Lines
- F. Section 02528 – Polyethylene Encasement/Wrap
- G. Section 02531 – Gravity Sanitary Sewers
- H. Section 02532 – Sanitary Sewer Force Mains
- I. Section 02534 – Sanitary Sewer Service Stubs or Reconnections
- J. Section 02631 – Storm Sewers
- K. Section 16124 – Conductive Trace Wire for Non-Metallic Water Line Pipes

1.03 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

- A. Unit Prices.
 - 1. No separate payment will be made for PVC pipe under this Section. Include cost in unit price for work included as specified in the following sections:
 - a. Section 02511 - Water Lines
 - b. Section 02531 - Gravity Sanitary Sewers
 - c. Section 02532 - Sanitary Sewer Force Mains
 - d. Section 02631 - Storm Sewers
 - 2. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.
- B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.04 REFERENCES

- A. ANSI A 21.16 (AWWA C 116) - Protective Fusion-Bonded Epoxy Coatings for the Interior and Exterior Surfaces of Ductile-Iron and Gray-Iron.
- B. ASTM A 240 - Standard Specification for Chromium and Chromium-Nickel Stainless Steel Plate, Sheet, and Strip for Pressure Vessels and for General Applications.
- C. ASTM C 923 - Standard Specification for Resilient Connectors Between Reinforced Concrete Manhole Structures, Pipes, and Laterals.
- D. ASTM D 618 - Standard Practice for Conditioning Plastics for Testing.
- E. ASTM D 1248 - Standard Specification for Polyethylene Plastics Extrusion Materials for Wire and Cable.
- F. ASTM D 1784 - Standard Specification for Rigid Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Compounds and Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Compounds.
- G. ASTM D 2122 – Standard Test Method for Determining Dimensions of Thermoplastic Pipe and Fittings.
- H. ASTM D 2241 - Standard Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC)

Pressure- Rated Pipe (SDR Series).

- I. ASTM D 2321 - Standard Practice for Underground Installation of Thermoplastic Pipe for Sewers and Other Gravity-Flow Applications.
- J. ASTM D 2412 – Standard Test Method for Determination of External Loading Characteristics of Plastic Pipe by Parallel Plate Loading.
- K. ASTM D 2444 - Standard Practice for Determination of the Impact Resistance of Thermoplastic Pipe and Fittings by Means of a Tup (Falling Weight).
- L. ASTM D 2680 - Specification for Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) and Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Composite Sewer Piping.
- M. ASTM D 3034 - Specification for Type PSM Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Sewer Pipe and Fittings.
- N. ASTM D 3139 - Standard Specification for Joints for Plastic Pressure Pipes Using Flexible Elastomeric Seals.
- O. ASTM D 3212 - Standard Specification for Joints for Drain and Sewer Plastic Pipes Using Flexible Elastomeric Seals.
- P. ASTM F 477 - Standard Specification for Elastomeric Seals (Gaskets) for Joining Plastic Pipe.
- Q. ASTM F 679 - Standard Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Large- Diameter Plastic Gravity Sewer Pipe and Fittings.
- R. ASTM F 794 - Standard Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Profile Gravity Sewer Pipe and Fittings Based on Controlled Inside Diameter.
- S. ASTM F 949 - Standard Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Corrugated Sewer Pipe with Smooth Interior and Fittings.
- T. AWWA C 110 (ANSI A 21.10) - American National Standard for Ductile-Iron and Gray-Iron Fittings, 3-inch Through 48-inch, for Water and Other Liquids.
- U. AWWA C 111 (ANSI A 21.11) - American National Standard for Rubber-Gasket Joints for Ductile-Iron Pressure Pipe and Fittings.
- V. AWWA C 153 (ANSI A 21.53) - Ductile-Iron Compact Fittings for Water

Service.

- W. AWWA C900 - Standard for Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Pressure Pipe and Fabricated Fittings, 4 In. Through 60 In. (100 MM Through 1,500 MM).
- X. AWWA C909 - Standard for Molecularly-Oriented Polyvinyl Chloride (PVCO) Pressure Pipe, 4 In. (100mm) and Larger.
- Y. AWWA M23 – PVC Pipe – Design and Installation.
- Z. PPI TR-3 - Policies and Procedures for Developing Hydrostatic Design Basis (HDB), Pressure Design Basis (PDB), Strength Design Basis (SDB), and Minimum Required Strength (MRS) Ratings for Thermoplastic Piping Materials or Pipe.
- AA. UNI-B-13 - Recommended Standard Performance Specification for Joint Restraint Devices for Use with Polyvinyl Chloride Pipe.

1.05 SUBMITTALS

- A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.
- B. Submit shop drawings showing design of new pipe and fittings indicating alignment and grade, laying dimensions, fabrication, fittings, flanges, and special details.
- C. Contractor to review and submit PVC pipe manufacturers recommended installation procedures.
- D. Calculations and limits of thrust restraint shall be based on AWWA M23, latest edition.
- E. For Fusible PVC® Pipe, submit qualifications of Fusion Technician to be used on the project.
- F. Provide manufacturer's product data for bell insertion protection system.

1.06 QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Submit manufacturer's certifications that PVC pipe and fittings meet requirements of this Section and AWWA C900, and AWWA C909 for pressure pipe applications, or appropriate ASTM standard specified for gravity sewer pipe.
- B. Submit manufacturer's certification that PVC pressure pipe for water lines

and force mains has been hydrostatically tested at factory in accordance with AWWA C900 and AWWA C909, and this Section.

- C. When foreign manufactured material is proposed for use, have material tested for conformance to applicable ASTM requirements by certified independent testing laboratory located in United States. Certification from other source is not acceptable. Furnish copies of test reports to Project Manager for review. Cost of testing paid by Contractor.
- D. Fusible PVC®
 - 1. Fusion Technician shall be fully qualified by the pipe supplier to install type(s) and sizes(s) being used. Qualification shall be current as of the actual date of fusion performance on the project.
 - 2. Refer to approved product list for approved manufacturer.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIAL

- A. Use PVC compounds in manufacture of pipe that contain no ingredient in amount that has been demonstrated to migrate into water in quantities considered to be toxic.
- B. Furnish PVC pressure pipe manufactured from Class 12454 virgin PVC compounds as defined in ASTM D 1784. Use compounds qualifying for rating of 4000 psi for water at 73.4 F per requirements of PPI TR-3. Provide pipe which is homogeneous throughout, free of voids, cracks, inclusions, and other defects, uniform as commercially practical in color, density, and other physical properties. Deliver pipe with surfaces free from nicks and scratches with joining surfaces of spigots and joints free from gouges and imperfections which could cause leakage.
- C. For FPVC®, pipe shall be extruded with plain ends. The ends shall be square to the pipe and free of any bevel or chamfer. There shall be no bell or gasket of any kind incorporated into the pipe.
- D. PVC Restrained Pipe: Must be listed on City's current Product Approval List.
 - 1. Pipe Material:
 - a. Pressure Class 235 psi (DR 18): For restrained joints where shown on Drawings.

- b. Pressure Class 305 psi (DR 14): For alternate to offset pipe sections shown on Drawings. Do not use PVC for offset sections with depth of cover greater than 20 feet or less than 4 feet. Do not use PVC in potentially petroleum contaminated areas.

E. Water Service.

- 1. Provide self-extinguishing PVC pipe that bears Underwriters' Laboratories mark of approval and is acceptable without penalty to Texas State Fire Insurance Committee for use in fire protection lines.
- 2. Bear National Sanitation Foundation Seal of Approval (NSF-PW).

F. Gaskets:

- 1. Gasket materials shall meet requirements of ASTM F 477. Use elastomeric factory- installed gaskets to make joints flexible and watertight.
- 2. Flat Face Mating Flange: Full faces 1/8-inch-thick ethylene propylene (EPR) rubber.
- 3. Raised Face Mating Flange: Flat ring 1/8-inch ethylene propylene (EPR) rubber, with filler gasket between OD of raised face and flange OD to protect flange from bolting moment.

G. Lubricant for rubber-gasketed joints: Water soluble, non-toxic, non-objectionable in taste and odor imparted to fluid, non-supporting of bacteria growth, having no deteriorating effect on PVC or rubber gaskets.

H. Bell Insertion Protection System: Refer to City of Houston's Approved Product List.

I. Do not use PVC in potentially or known contaminated areas.

J. Do not use PVC in areas exposed to direct sunlight.

2.02 WATER SERVICE PIPE

- A. Pipe 4 inch through 20-inch: AWWA C900, Pressure Class 235 psi (DR 18); AWWA C900, Pressure Class 305 psi (DR 14) as alternate to offset pipe sections; nominal

20-foot lengths; cast-iron equivalent outside diameters.

- B. Provide Polyvinyl Chloride Pipe from manufacturers listed on City of Houston's Approved Products List.
- C. Install trace wire with PVC pipe. Refer to Section 16124 – Conductive Trace Wire for Non-Metallic Water Line Pipes.
- D. Make curves and bends by offsetting (i.e., deflecting joints). Do not exceed maximum offset recommended by pipe manufacturer or the City, whichever is less.
- E. Hydrostatic Test: AWWA C900, ANSI A 21.10 (AWWA C 110); at point of manufacture; submit manufacturer's written certification.

2.03 GRAVITY SEWER PIPE

- A. PVC gravity sanitary sewer pipe shall be in accordance with provisions in following table:

WALL CONSTRUCTION	ASTM DESIGNATION	SDR (MAX.)/ STIFFNESS (MIN.)	DIAMETER SIZE RANGE
Solid	D3034	SDR 26 / PS 115	6" to 10"
	D3034	SDR 35 / PS 46	12" & 15"
	F679	SDR 35 / PS 46	18" to 60"
	AWWA C900	DR 18 / N/A	4" to 20"
	AWWA C909	DR 18 / N/A	4" to 12"

Note: Refer to City of Houston Approved Products List for list of manufacturers.

- B. PVC storm sewer pipe shall be in accordance with provisions in following table:

WALL CONSTRUCTION	MANUFACTURER	ASTM DESIGNATION	SDR (MAX.)/ STIFFNESS (MIN.)	DIAMETER SIZE RANGE
	J-M Pipe	D3034	SDR 26 / PS 115	6" to 10"
		D3034	SDR 35 / PS 46	12" & 15"

WALL CONSTRUCTION	MANUFACTURER	ASTM DESIGNATION	SDR (MAX.)/ STIFFNESS (MIN.)	DIAMETER SIZE RANGE
Solid	CertainTeed Diamond Uponor ETI North American	F679	SDR 35 / PS 46	18" to 27"
		AWWA C900	DR 18 / N/A	4" to 16"
		AWWA C909	DR 18 / N/A	4" to 12"
Truss (Gasketed)	Contech	D2680	N/A /200 psi	8" to 15"
Profile	Contech A-2000 Contech A-2026 ETI, Ultra-Rib ETI, Ultra-Corr	F949	N/A / 46 psi	12" to 36"
		F949	N/A / 115 psi	8" to 10"
		F794	N/A / 46 psi	8" to 30"
		F794	N/A / 46 psi	24" to 36"

- C. When solid wall PVC pipe 18 inches to 27 inches in diameter is required in SDR 26, provide pipe conforming to ASTM F 679, except provide wall thickness as required for SDR 26 and pipe stiffness of 115 psi.
- D. For sewers up to 12-inch diameter crossing over water lines or crossing under water lines with less than 2-feet separation, provide minimum 150 psi pressure-rated pipe conforming to ASTM D 2241 with suitable PVC adapter couplings.
- E. Joints: Spigot and integral wall section bell with solid cross section elastomeric or rubber ring gasket conforming to requirements of ASTM D 3212 and ASTM F 477, or ASTM D 3139 and ASTM F 477. Gaskets shall be factory-assembled and securely bonded or otherwise held in place to prevent displacement. Manufacturer shall test sample from each batch conforming to requirements ASTM D 2444.
- F. Fittings: Provide PVC gravity sewer sanitary bends, tee, or wye fittings for new sanitary sewer construction. PVC pipe fittings shall be full-bodied, either injection molded or factory fabricated. Saddle-type tee or wye fittings are not acceptable.
 - 1. Fittings for straight through and transition connections conform to requirements of Section 02534- Sanitary Sewer Service Stubs or Reconnections.
- G. Conditioning. Conditioning of samples prior to and during tests is subject to approval by Project Manager. When referee tests are required, condition

specimens in accordance with Procedure A in ASTM D 618 at 73.4 degrees F plus or minus 3.6 degrees F and 50 percent relative humidity plus or minus 5 percent relative humidity for not less than 40 hours prior to test. Conduct tests under same conditions of temperature and humidity unless otherwise specified. This is a brief summary of the test method, and the full current edition of the standard must be followed.

- H. Pipe Stiffness. Determine pipe stiffness at 5 percent deflection in accordance with Test Method D 2412. Minimum pipe stiffness shall be 46 psi. For diameters 4 inches through 18 inches, test three specimens, each a minimum of 6 inches (152 mm) in length. For diameters 21 inch through 36-inch, test three specimens, each a minimum of 12 inch (305 mm) in length. This is a brief summary of the test method, and the full current edition of the standard must be followed.
- I. Flattening. Flatten three specimens of pipe, prepared in accordance with Paragraph 2.03F, in suitable press until internal diameter has been reduced to 60 percent of original inside diameter of pipe. Rate of loading shall be uniform. Test specimens, when examined under normal light and with unaided eye, shall show no evidence of splitting, cracking, breaking, or separation of pipe walls or bracing profiles. Perform the flattening test in conjunction with pipe stiffness test. This is a brief summary of the test method, and the full current edition of the standard must be followed.
- J. Joint Tightness. Test for joint tightness in accordance with ASTM D 3212, except that joint shall remain watertight at minimum deflection of 5 percent. Manufacturer will be required to provide independent third party certification for joint testing each diameter of storm sewer pipe. This is a brief summary of the test method, and the full current edition of the standard must be followed
- K. Purpose of Tests. Flattening and pipe stiffness tests are intended to be routine quality control tests. Joint tightness test is intended to qualify pipe to specified level of performance.
- L. Saddle for pipe with 0.5-inch width and greater: Connect side sewer by drilling proper size round hole in wall of the main sewer pipe, inserting an approved pipe compression saddle. The Saddle shall meet requirements of ASTM C 923. Saddles will accept 4", 6", and 8" pipe. The lateral pipe shall be held in place by one stainless steel compression band with stainless steel nut and bolt (any AISI Series 300) type tightening device and meeting requirements of ASTM A 240. A stainless steel shear band shall wrap around the pipe a minimum of 380 degrees. Saddle may not protrude into mainline pipe.

2.04 SANITARY SEWER FORCE MAIN PIPE

- A. Provide approved PVC pressure pipe conforming to requirements for water service pipe and conforming to minimum working pressure rating specified in Section 02532
- Sanitary Sewer Force Mains.
- B. Acceptable pipe joints are integral bell-and-spigot, containing a bonded-in elastomeric sealing ring meeting requirements of ASTM F 477. In designated areas requiring restrained joint pipe and fittings, use approved joint restraint device conforming to UNI-B-13, for PVC pipe 12-inch diameter and less.
- C. Fittings: Provide approved ductile iron fittings as per Section 02501 - Ductile Iron Pipe and Fittings, Paragraph 2.04, except furnish fittings with one of following approved internal linings:
 - 1. Nominal 40 mils (35 mils minimum) virgin polyethylene complying with ASTM D 1248, heat fused to interior surface of fitting
 - 2. Nominal 40 mils (35 mils minimum) polyurethane
 - 3. Nominal 40 mils (35 mils minimum) ceramic epoxy
 - 4. Nominal 40 mils (35 mils minimum) fusion bonded epoxy
- D. Exterior Protection: Provide polyethylene wrapping of ductile-iron fittings as required by Section 02528 - Polyethylene Encasement/Wrap.
- E. Hydrostatic Tests: Hydrostatically test pressure rated pipe in accordance with Paragraph 2.02E.

2.05 BENDS AND FITTINGS FOR PVC PRESSURE PIPE

- A. Bends and Fittings: ANSI A 21.10 or ANSI A 21.53, ductile iron; ANSI A 21.11 single rubber gasket push-on type joint; minimum 150 psi pressure rating. Approved restrained joints, 250 200 psi, may be provided for up to 12 inches in diameter (water or sanitary).
- B. Provide approved restrained joint fittings: Integral restrained joint fittings and pipe do not require secondary restraint.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 PROTECTION

- A. Store pipe under cover out of direct sunlight and protect from excessive heat or harmful chemicals in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Conform to requirements of Section 02511 - Water Lines, Section 02531 - Gravity Sanitary Sewers, and Section 02532 - Sanitary Sewer Force Mains, as applicable.
- B. Install PVC pipe in accordance with Section 02317 - Excavation and Backfill for Utilities, ASTM D 2321 for Sewer Pipe, and manufacturer's recommendations.
- C. Install PVC water service pipe to clear utility lines with minimum 6-inch separation, unless otherwise shown on Drawings:
- D. Avoid imposing strains that will overstress or buckle pipe when lowering pipe into trench.
- E. Hand shovel pipe bedding under pipe haunches and along sides of pipe barrel and compact to eliminate voids and ensure side support. Ensure barrel is fully supported along entire length of pipe, prior to backfilling.
- F. For PVC pipe installed by trenchless methods, provide integral restrained joints and pull pipe through hole or casing. For PVC pipe pushed through hole or casing, provide approved bell insertion protection system.
- G. Store PVC pipe under cover out of direct sunlight. Protect pipe from excessive heat or harmful chemicals. Prevent damage by crushing or piercing.
- H. Allow PVC pipe to cool to ground temperature before backfilling when assembled out of trench to prevent pullout due to thermal contraction.
- I. Pipe Assembly Procedures
 - 1. Do not remove gasket from pipe.
 - 2. Lay pipe by inserting spigot end into bell flush with the insertion line or as recommended by pipe manufacturer.
 - 3. Do not assemble joint by swinging or stabbing.

4. Do not assemble joint using machinery or equipment such as backhoe bucket.
5. At no time shall spigot go past insertion line or homing mark. Continuously observe and check each homing mark for proper length and install pipe with home mark visible.

3.03 INSTALLATION FOR FUSIBLE PVC® PIPE

A. General

1. Fusible PVC® pipe will be handled in a safe and non-destructive manner before, during, and after the fusion process and in accordance with this specification and pipe supplier's guidelines.
2. Fusible PVC® pipe will be fused by qualified fusion technicians, as documented by the pipe supplier.
3. Each fusion joint shall be recorded and logged by an electronic monitoring device (data logger) connected to the fusion machine.
4. Only appropriately sized and outfitted fusion machines that have been approved by the pipe supplier shall be used for the fusion process. Fusion machines must incorporate the following elements:
 - a. **HEAT PLATE** – Heat plates shall be in good condition with no deep gouges or scratches. Plates shall be clean and free of any debris or contamination. Heater controls shall function properly; cord and plug shall be in good condition. The appropriately sized heat plate shall be capable of maintaining a uniform and consistent heat profile and temperature for the size of pipe being fused, per the pipe supplier's guidelines.
 - b. **CARRIAGE** – Carriage shall travel smoothly with no binding at less than 50 psi. Jaws shall be in good condition with proper inserts for the pipe size being fused. Inset pins shall be installed with no interference to carriage travel.
 - c. **GENERAL MACHINE** – Overview of machine body shall yield no obvious defects, missing parts, or potential safety issues during fusion.

- d. DATA LOGGING DEVICE – An approved datalogging device with the current version of the pipe supplier’s recommended and compatible software shall be used. Datalogging device operations and maintenance manual shall be with the unit at all times. If fusing for extended periods of time, an independent 110V power source shall be available to extend battery life.
- B. Pipe rollers shall be used for support of pipe to either side of the machine:
 - 1. A weather protection canopy that allows for full machine motion of the heat plate, fusion assembly and carriage shall be provided for fusion in 1506-14 RSM – 50 Rev 3.5 2/12/13 inclement, extreme temperatures, and / or windy weather, per the pipe supplier’s recommendations.
 - 2. An infrared (IR) pyrometer for checking pipe and heat plate temperatures.
 - 3. Fusion machine operations and maintenance manual shall be kept with the fusion machine at all times.
 - 4. Facing blades specifically designed for cutting Fusible PVC® pipe shall be used.
- C. Joint Recording

END OF SECTION

**SECTION 02 41 00
DEMOLITION**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Selective demolition of building elements for alteration purposes.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 01 10 00 - Summary: Limitations on Contractor's use of site and premises.
- B. Section 01 10 00 - Summary: Sequencing and staging requirements.
- C. Section 01 50 00 - Temporary Facilities and Controls: Site fences, security, protective barriers, and waste removal.
- D. Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Project conditions; protection of bench marks, survey control points, and existing construction to remain; reinstallation of removed products; temporary bracing and shoring.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. Demolition Plan: Submit demolition plan as specified by OSHA and local authorities.
 - 1. Indicate extent of demolition, removal sequence, bracing and shoring, and location and construction of barricades and fences.
 - 2. Identify demolition firm and submit qualifications.
 - 3. Include a summary of safety procedures.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Demolition Firm Qualifications: Company specializing in the type of work required.
 - 1. Minimum of 5 years of documented experience.

PART 2 PRODUCTS -- NOT USED

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 SCOPE

- A. Remove portions of existing buildings as shown in drawings.

3.02 GENERAL PROCEDURES AND PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Comply with applicable codes and regulations for demolition operations and safety of adjacent structures and the public.
 - 1. Obtain required permits.
 - 2. Take precautions to prevent catastrophic or uncontrolled collapse of structures to be removed; do not allow worker or public access within range of potential collapse of unstable structures.
 - 3. Provide, erect, and maintain temporary barriers and security devices.
 - 4. Conduct operations to minimize effects on and interference with adjacent structures and occupants.
 - 5. Do not close or obstruct roadways or sidewalks without permit.
 - 6. Conduct operations to minimize obstruction of public and private entrances and exits; do not obstruct required exits at any time; protect persons using entrances and exits from removal operations.
 - 7. Obtain written permission from owners of adjacent properties when demolition equipment will traverse, infringe upon or limit access to their property.
- B. Do not begin removal until receipt of notification to proceed from Owner.
- C. Protect existing structures and other elements that are not to be removed.
 - 1. Provide bracing and shoring.
 - 2. Prevent movement or settlement of adjacent structures.
 - 3. Stop work immediately if adjacent structures appear to be in danger.
- D. Minimize production of dust due to demolition operations; do not use water if that will result in ice, flooding, sedimentation of public waterways or storm sewers, or other pollution.

- E. If hazardous materials are discovered during removal operations, stop work and notify Architect and Owner; hazardous materials include regulated asbestos containing materials, lead, PCB's, and mercury.

3.03 SELECTIVE DEMOLITION FOR ALTERATIONS

- A. Drawings showing existing construction and utilities are based on casual field observation and existing record documents only.
 - 1. Verify that construction and utility arrangements are as indicated.
 - 2. Report discrepancies to Architect before disturbing existing installation.
 - 3. Beginning of demolition work constitutes acceptance of existing conditions that would be apparent upon examination prior to starting demolition.
- B. Separate areas in which demolition is being conducted from other areas that are still occupied.
- C. Maintain weatherproof exterior building enclosure except for interruptions required for replacement or modifications; take care to prevent water and humidity damage.
- D. Remove existing work as indicated and as required to accomplish new work.
 - 1. Remove rotted wood, corroded metals, and deteriorated masonry and concrete; replace with new construction specified.
 - 2. Remove items indicated on drawings.
- E. Services (Including but not limited to Fire Protection, Electrical, and Telecommunications): Remove existing systems and equipment as indicated.
 - 1. Maintain existing active systems that are to remain in operation; maintain access to equipment and operational components.
 - 2. Where existing active systems serve occupied facilities but are to be replaced with new services, maintain existing systems in service until new systems are complete and ready for service.
 - 3. Remove abandoned pipe, ducts, conduits, and equipment, including those above accessible ceilings; remove back to source of supply where possible, otherwise cap stub and tag with identification.
- F. Protect existing work to remain.
 - 1. Repair adjacent construction and finishes damaged during removal work.

3.04 DEBRIS AND WASTE REMOVAL

- A. Remove debris, junk, and trash from site.
- B. Leave site in clean condition, ready for subsequent work.
- C. Clean up spillage and wind-blown debris from public and private lands.

END OF SECTION 02 41 00

SECTION 02 41 20
SELECTIVE DEMOLITION AND TEMPORARY SHORING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Demolition and removal of selected portions of structure in preparation for concrete repair.
2. Temporary shoring of existing structure.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 01100 "Summary" for restrictions on use of the premises, Owner-occupancy requirements, and phasing requirements.
2. Section 01145 "Use of Premises".

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Pre-demolition, Shoring, and Repair Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Inspect and discuss condition of construction to be selectively demolished in preparation for repair.
2. Review structural load limitations of existing structure.
3. Review limitations on placement of shoring towers and/or posts.
4. Review and finalize selective demolition and repair schedule and verify availability of materials, personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
5. Review requirements of work performed by other trades that rely on substrates exposed by selective demolition operations.
6. Review areas where existing construction is to remain and requires protection.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Shoring Contractor.

- B. Proposed Protection Measures: Submit report, including Drawings, that indicates the measures proposed for protecting individuals and property. Indicate proposed locations and construction of barriers.
- C. Schedule of Selective Demolition, Shoring and Repair Activities: Indicate the following:
 - 1. Detailed sequence of selective demolition and repair work, with starting and ending dates for each activity. Ensure Owner's and other tenants' on-site operations are uninterrupted.
 - 2. Coordination for continuation of utility services.
 - 3. Use of elevator and stairs.
 - 4. Coordination of Owner's continuing occupancy of portions of existing building and of Owner's partial occupancy of completed Work.
- D. Pre-demolition Photographs or Video: Show existing conditions of adjoining construction, including finish surfaces, that might be misconstrued as damage caused by demolition and repair operations. Comply with Section 01321 "Construction Photographs." Submit before Work begins.

1.4 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Owner will occupy building and garage immediately adjacent to selective demolition area. Conduct selective demolition so Owner's operations will not be disrupted.
- B. Conditions existing at time of inspection for bidding purpose will be maintained by Owner as far as practical.
- C. Notify Architect of discrepancies between existing conditions and Drawings before proceeding with selective demolition.
- D. Hazardous Materials: It is not expected that hazardous materials will be encountered in the Work.
 - 1. If suspected hazardous materials are encountered, do not disturb; immediately notify Architect and Owner. Hazardous materials will be removed by Owner under a separate contract.

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Arrange selective demolition, shoring installation, and repair schedule so as not to interfere with Owner's operations.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that conduits or other devices in area of demolition and concrete repair are relocated before starting shoring, selective demolition, and repair operations.
- B. Review Project Record Documents of existing construction or other existing condition information provided by Owner. Owner does not guarantee that existing conditions are same as those indicated in Project Record Documents.
- C. Steel Tendons: Existing garage structure consists of post-tensioned slabs and beams. Locate tensioned steel tendons using GPR before any concrete demolition or anchorage of devices is attempted.
- D. Survey of Existing Conditions: Record existing conditions by use of preconstruction photographs or video.
 - 1. Before selective demolition or removal of existing building elements that will be reproduced or duplicated in final Work, make permanent record of measurements, materials, and construction details required to make exact reproduction.

3.2 UTILITY SERVICES AND MECHANICAL/ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

- A. Existing Services/Systems to Remain: Maintain all services/systems and protect them against damage.
 - 1. If services/systems are required to be removed, relocated, or abandoned, provide temporary services/systems that bypass area of selective demolition and that maintain continuity of services/systems to other parts of building. Do not proceed with work until written approval is provide by Owner and Architect.

3.3 PROTECTION

- A. Temporary Protection: Provide temporary barricades and other protection required to prevent injury to people and damage to adjacent buildings and facilities.
 - 1. Provide protection to ensure safe passage of people and vehicles around work area and to and from occupied portions of building.

2. Provide temporary weather protection, during repair work, to prevent water leakage and damage to structure and interior areas.
 3. Protect walls, ceilings, floors, and other existing finish work that are to remain or that are exposed during demolition or repair operations.
 4. Cover and protect furniture, furnishings, and equipment that have not been removed.
 5. Comply with requirements for temporary enclosures and dust control specified in Section 01505 "Temporary Facilities". This is most critical in work that will occur at Level 1 Baggage Room where shoring structures will be founded.
- B. Temporary Shoring: Design, provide, and maintain shoring, bracing, and structural supports as required to preserve stability and prevent movement, settlement, or collapse of construction and finishes to remain, and to prevent unexpected or uncontrolled movement or collapse of structure being repaired.
1. Strengthen or add new supports when required during progress of work.
 2. Provide jacking system that will allow bridge structure to be lifted if required for concrete corbel repair work.
 3. Shoring shall be designed by engineer licensed in the State of Texas to meet loading requirements indicated.
 4. Shoring configuration and location shall be coordinated with job site conditions at all levels of the work, including existing Level 1 Baggage Room operated by United Airlines.
 5. Engineered shoring plans shall be submitted to design team and Owner for approval prior to start of work.
- C. Remove temporary barricades and protections where hazards no longer exist.

3.4 SELECTIVE DEMOLITION, GENERAL

- A. General: Demolish and remove existing construction only to the extent required by structural repairs and as indicated. Use methods required to complete the Work within limitations of governing regulations and as follows:
1. Proceed with selective demolition systematically, from higher to lower level. Complete selective demolition operations above each floor or tier before disturbing supporting members on the next lower level. Only one bridge level at a time may be supported on shoring tower.
 2. Neatly cut openings and holes plumb, square, and true to dimensions required. Use cutting methods least likely to damage construction to remain or adjoining construction. Use hand tools or small power tools designed for sawing or grinding, not hammering and chopping. Temporarily cover openings to remain.
 3. Remove loose concrete and other debris and lower to ground by method suitable to avoid free fall and to prevent ground impact or dust generation.

4. Locate equipment, shoring, and materials so as not to impose excessive loads on supporting walls, floors, or framing.
 5. Dispose of demolished items and materials promptly. Comply with requirements in Section 01576 "Waste Material Disposal."
- B. Site Access and Temporary Controls: Conduct selective demolition, debris-removal, and repair operations to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, walkways, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.

3.5 DISPOSAL OF DEMOLISHED MATERIALS

- A. Remove demolition waste materials from Project site [and recycle or dispose of them according to Section 01576 "Waste Material Disposal."
1. Do not allow demolished materials to accumulate on-site.
 2. Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.
 3. Remove debris from elevated portions of building by chute, hoist, or other device that will convey debris to grade level in a controlled descent.
 4. Comply with requirements specified in Section 01576 "Waste Material Disposal."

3.6 CLEANING

- A. Clean adjacent structures and improvements of dust, dirt, and debris caused by selective demolition and repair operations. Return adjacent areas to condition existing before selective demolition and repair operations began.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 03 01 05
CONCRETE REPAIR MATERIALS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the provisions of all labor, materials, supervision, and incidentals required to prepare deteriorated or damaged concrete surfaces and install patching materials to restore original surface condition and integrity.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 03 Section "Epoxy Related Work".
- C. Contractor shall fully acquaint himself with the existing job site conditions and discuss the accessibility of the work areas with the Owner.
- D. Contractor shall ensure that there is adequate ventilation in areas where repair work is being performed and that no work results in nauseating, annoying or toxic fumes and odors from entering occupied areas. Provide barricades around the work area with appropriate signage to keep non-construction people from entering work area.
- E. Contractor shall provide all traffic cones or barriers to direct traffic during the repair of the facility. This work shall be done in consultation with the Owner.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Make submittals in accordance with requirements of Division 1 and as specified in this Section.
- B. At the preconstruction meeting, contractor shall submit procedures to protect fresh patches from weather and traffic (if applicable).

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Work shall conform to requirements of the American Concrete Institute (ACI) as applicable except where more stringent requirements are shown on Drawings or specified in this Section.
- B. Manufacturer's Qualifications: Companies furnishing the repair materials shall have a proven track record of at least five years. Furthermore, they shall have in existence a program of training, certifying, and supporting a nationally organized program of approved contractors. Evidence of this shall be made available to the Engineer/Owner upon request.
- C. Contractor's Qualifications: Contractor performing the work shall be an approved contractor by the manufacturer furnishing the repair materials and shall have no less than five years' experience in the various types of polymer related work required in this project. Upon request by the Engineer, a notarized certification from the manufacturer attesting to the training shall be submitted to the Engineer/Owner.

1.5 REFERENCES

A. Applicable Standards:

1. American Concrete Institute (ACI), latest version:

ACI 301R	Specifications for Structural Concrete
ACI 305R	Hot Weather Concreting
ACI 306R	Cold Weather Concreting
ACI 308R	Guide to Curing Concrete
ACI 318R	Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete
ACI 548.1R	Guide for Use of Polymers in Concrete

2. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):

ASTM C109	Test Method for Compressive Strength of Hydraulic Cement Mortars

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR POLYMER MODIFIED CEMENTITIOUS MORTARS

- A. Mortar used for bonding, patching, and resurfacing in exposed or exterior environmental conditions with large cyclic temperature changes shall have the following properties:
 - 1. Mortar shall be non-sagging.
 - 2. Acceptable materials shall have minimum 3-day compressive strength of 3,000 psi, and 5,000 psi at 28 days as certified by manufacturer.

3. Coefficient of thermal expansion shall be comparable with that of concrete (5.5×10^{-6} in/in/°F).
4. Sand used in preparing mortar shall be graded oven dry quartzite furnished in bags.
5. The mortar patch material shall match the existing texture and color of existing exposed/cured concrete without giving a blotchy appearance. A test patch shall be applied for approval prior to final acceptance of the mortar. Size of test patch shall be approximately equal to the size of the average mortar patch to be used on the project.

2.2 PRODUCTS AND MANUFACTURERS

- A. Refer to drawings for specified materials for each repair application.

Substitutions may be considered provided complete technical information and job references are furnished to the Owner/Engineer and approved prior to commencement of work.

Changes in products required to suit temperature and environmental conditions at the time of material application shall be specified as separate line items by the Contractor showing credit or additions to the price for the various tasks.

In using the above products, follow strictly the manufacturer's specifications and directions for mixing and application. Also read all label warnings by manufacturer. Make application in accordance with applicable safety laws.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 POLYMER MODIFIED CEMENTITIOUS MORTAR PATCH

- A. Applicator's Qualifications

1. Mortar repair work shall only be performed by contractors who have successfully used this process on at least three similar structural repairs of equal scope which have performed successfully for a minimum period of five years.
2. Only adequately trained and experienced personnel shall be used on the job.

- B. Surface Preparation

1. Concrete surface to which the mortar is to be applied shall be exposed parent concrete free of loose and unsound materials. Preparation of cavity to receive new mortar shall be in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

- C. Concrete Surface Inspection: Ensure that the surface and ambient temperature is at least 45°F and rising at the time of application.
- D. Bonding Grout
 - 1. Apply bonding grout in strict accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
 - 2. Grout shall not be applied to more cavities than can be patched within 15 min. by available manpower.
 - 3. Patching materials shall be placed immediately following grout application in strict accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- E. Mortar Application
 - 1. Condition polymer mortar material to 65°F-80°F unless otherwise recommended by the manufacturer. Materials beyond this range of temperature shall not be used.
 - 2. Mix the two components in a clean container free of contaminants as recommended by the manufacturer.
 - 3. Thoroughly blend components and aggregates with portable mixers to a uniform and homogenous mixture. Small batches of one quart or less may be mixed by spatulas, palette knives or similar devices.
 - 4. Mixing should be accomplished within three minutes when using Jiffy mixer or five minutes when mixed by hand.
 - 5. Apply mortar by means suitable for the consistency of the mortar mix.
 - 6. Use appropriate forms as required for retaining mortar if mixed to a flowable consistency.
 - 7. Consolidate the mortar thoroughly to remove entrapped air.
 - 8. Supplemental wire mesh shall be required for delamination and spall repairs greater than 2" in depth. Fresh bonding grout is required between successive lifts of patching material.
 - 9. Finish surface of mortar to match the texture and contours of existing concrete.
- F. Curing
 - 1. Immediately after finishing, keep patch material continually moist for at least 24 hrs. Continue curing for first 7 days after patch placement. During initial and final curing periods maintain patch material above 50 °F.
 - 2. Prevent rapid drying at end of curing period.
 - 3. Provide additional curing as required by manufacturer's recommendations.
- G. Cleanup
 - 1. Protect surfaces surrounding the work areas against spillage.
 - 2. Material spillage shall be cleaned before they set and become difficult to remove.

3. Cleanup all portions of the existing structure that are soiled or stained in the process of mortar repair work.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency:

1. Independent testing laboratory employed by Owner and acceptable to Engineer.
2. Sampling and testing of mortar shall be performed by ACI certified Concrete Field Technicians Grade I. Certification shall be no more than three years old.
3. Testing Agency is responsible for conducting, monitoring, and reporting results of all tests required under this Section. Testing Agency has authority to reject mortar not meeting Specifications.
4. Concrete Compressive Strength (Mold test cubes per ASTM C-109):
 - a. Take minimum of 6 cubes (2"x2") for each 10 ft³ or fraction of each repair mortar placed in any one day.
 - b. Additional cubes shall be taken as directed by Engineer.
 - c. Cover and protect molds from contact with water for the first 24-hrs. after molding.
 - d. Follow ACI Specifications for storage and handling of specimens.
 - e. Test 3 cubes at 7 days.
 - f. Test 3 cubes at 28 days.

3.3 ACCEPTANCE OF REPAIRS

- A. Acceptance of completed concrete repair will be in accordance with ACI 301.
- B. Patched areas shall be sounded by Engineer and Contractor after curing for 72 hours. Contractor shall repair all hollowness detected by removing and replacing patch or affected area at no cost to Owner.
- C. If shrinkage cracks appear in patch area after the initial curing period is concluded, the patch in question shall be considered unacceptable, and it shall be removed and replaced by Contractor at no cost to Owner.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 03 30 53
MISCELLANEOUS CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes cast-in-place concrete for slab infill areas, curbs, and other miscellaneous concrete work, including reinforcement, concrete materials, mixture design, placement procedures, and finishes.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Design Mixtures: For each concrete mixture.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Ready-Mix-Concrete Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing ready-mixed concrete products and that complies with ASTM C 94/C 94M requirements for production facilities and equipment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONCRETE, GENERAL

- A. Comply with ACI 301.
- B. Comply with ACI 117.

2.2 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60, deformed.

2.3 CONCRETE MATERIALS

- A. Cementitious Materials:
 - 1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150/C 150M, Type I/II.
- B. Normal-Weight Aggregate: ASTM C 33/C 33M, 1-inch nominal maximum aggregate size.
- C. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260/C 260M.
- D. Chemical Admixtures: Certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures and that do not contribute water-soluble chloride ions exceeding

those permitted in hardened concrete. Do not use calcium chloride or admixtures containing calcium chloride.

1. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type A.
2. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type B.
3. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type F.
4. High-Range, Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type G.
5. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 1017/C 1017M, Type II.

E. Water: ASTM C 94/C 94M.

2.4 CURING MATERIALS

- A. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 3, burlap cloth or cotton mats.
- B. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.
- C. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing and Sealing Compound: ASTM C 1315, Type 1, Class A.

2.5 CONCRETE MIXTURES

- A. Normal-Weight Concrete:
 1. Minimum 28-day Compressive Strength: 5,000 psi for helical pile caps or other foundations; 4000 psi for all other concrete.
 2. Maximum W/C Ratio: 0.50.
 3. Air Content: Maintain within range permitted by ACI 301.

2.6 CONCRETE MIXING

- A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, mix, and deliver concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M, and furnish batch ticket information.
 1. When air temperature is above 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 FORMWORK INSTALLATION

- A. Design, construct, erect, brace, and maintain formwork according to ACI 301.

3.2 EMBEDDED ITEM INSTALLATION

- A. Place and secure anchorage devices and other embedded items required for adjoining work that is attached to or supported by cast-in-place concrete. Use

setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.

3.3 STEEL REINFORCEMENT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for fabricating, placing, and supporting reinforcement.
 - 1. Do not cut or puncture vapor retarder. Repair damage and reseal vapor retarder before placing concrete.

3.4 JOINTS

- A. General: Construct joints true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete.

3.5 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Before test sampling and placing concrete, water may be added at Project site, subject to limitations of ACI 301.
- B. Do not add water to concrete during delivery, at Project site, or during placement.
- C. Consolidate concrete with mechanical vibrating equipment according to ACI 301.

3.6 FINISHING FORMED SURFACES

- A. Rough-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material with tie holes and defects repaired and patched. Remove fins and other projections exceeding 1/2 inch.
 - 1. Apply to concrete surfaces not exposed to public view.
- B. Smooth-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material, arranged in an orderly and symmetrical manner with a minimum of seams. Repair and patch tie holes and defective areas. Remove fins and other projections exceeding 1/8 inch.
 - 1. Apply to concrete surfaces exposed to public view, or to be covered with a coating or covering material applied directly to concrete.
- C. Related Unformed Surfaces: At tops of walls, horizontal offsets, and similar unformed surfaces adjacent to formed surfaces, strike off smooth and finish with a texture matching adjacent formed surfaces. Continue final surface treatment of formed surfaces uniformly across adjacent unformed surfaces unless otherwise indicated.

3.7 FINISHING UNFORMED SURFACES

- A. General: Comply with ACI 302.1R for screeding, restraightening, and finishing operations for concrete surfaces. Do not wet concrete surfaces.
- B. Screed surfaces with a straightedge and strike off. Begin initial floating using bull floats or darbies to form a uniform and open-textured surface plane before excess moisture or bleedwater appears on surface.
 - 1. Do not further disturb surfaces before starting finishing operations.
- C. Scratch Finish: Apply scratch finish to surfaces indicated and surfaces to receive concrete floor topping or mortar setting beds for ceramic or quarry tile, portland cement terrazzo, and other bonded cementitious floor finishes unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Float Finish: Apply float finish to surfaces indicated, to surfaces to receive trowel finish, and to floor and slab surfaces to be covered with fluid-applied or sheet waterproofing, fluid-applied or direct-to-deck-applied membrane roofing, or sand-bed terrazzo.
- E. Trowel Finish: Apply a hard trowel finish to surfaces indicated and to floor and slab surfaces exposed to view or to be covered with resilient flooring, carpet, ceramic or quarry tile set over a cleavage membrane, paint, or another thin film-finish coating system.
- F. Slip-Resistive Broom Finish: Apply a slip-resistive finish to surfaces indicated and to exterior concrete platforms, steps, and ramps. Immediately after float finishing, slightly roughen trafficked surface by brooming with fiber-bristle broom perpendicular to main traffic route.

3.8 CONCRETE PROTECTING AND CURING

- A. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures. Comply with ACI 306.1 for cold-weather protection and with ACI 305.1 for hot-weather protection during curing.
- B. Begin curing after finishing concrete but not before free water has disappeared from concrete surface.
- C. Curing Methods: Cure formed and unformed concrete for at least seven days by one or a combination of the following methods:
 - 1. Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches, and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Cure for not less than seven days. Immediately repair any

holes or tears during curing period, using cover material and waterproof tape.

2. Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.
3. Curing and Sealing Compound: Apply uniformly to floors and slabs indicated in a continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Repeat process 24 hours later and apply a second coat. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests: Perform according to ACI 301.
 1. Testing Frequency: Obtain one composite sample for each day's pour of each concrete mixture exceeding 5 cu. yd., but less than 25 cu. yd., plus one set for each additional 50 cu. yd. or fraction thereof.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 03 65 00
EPOXY RELATED WORK

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to the work of this section.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 03 Section "Concrete Repair Materials".

1.2 SCOPE OF WORK

- A. The following epoxy related work is shown on the drawings and in this project manual:
 - 1. General location and photos of cracks in APM structure are indicated on the drawings. Contractor must field verify quantity and extent of crack repair types that are needed.
 - 2. Epoxy mortar patch locations.
 - 3. Locations requiring epoxy bonder between fresh and hardened concrete.
 - 4. Locations requiring bolts, dowels or reinforcing steel set in epoxy.
 - 5. Locations requiring epoxy penetrant sealer.
- B. These drawings are for the Contractor's guidance only and are to be considered as a minimum for pricing. Contractor shall not do any additional work beyond what is shown in the drawings without prior written approval of the Engineer.
- C. Contractor shall fully acquaint himself with the existing job site conditions and discuss the accessibility of the work areas with the Owner.
- D. Contractor shall ensure that there is adequate ventilation in areas where epoxy repair work is being performed and that no work results in nauseating, annoying or toxic fumes and odors from entering occupied areas. Provide barricades around the work area with appropriate signage to keep non-construction people from entering work area.

- E. Contractor shall provide all traffic cones or barriers to direct traffic during the repair of the parking garage. This work shall be done in consultation with the Owner.
- F. During the course of construction, Engineer may require certain items to be repaired by methods involving epoxies. Repairs may include epoxy injection of cracks, epoxy or polymer mortar patching, epoxy grouted dowels or reinforcing steel, and bonding fresh concrete to hardened concrete. Such work shall be done by the Contractor in strict conformance to these specifications.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Applicable Standards

1. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM)

C881 Standard Specification for Epoxy-Resin-Base Bonding Systems for Concrete

2. American Concrete Institute (ACI)

ACI 503 Use of Epoxy Compounds with Concrete

ACI 503.1 Standard Specification for Bonding Hardened Concrete, Steel, Wood, Brick, and Other Materials to Hardened Concrete with a Multi-Component Epoxy Adhesive

ACI 503.2 Standard Specification for Bonding Plastic Concrete to Hardened Concrete with a Multi-Component Epoxy Adhesive

ACI 503.4 Standard Specification for Repairing Concrete with Epoxy Mortars

ACI 548.1R Guide For Use of Polymers in Concrete

- B. Manufacturer's Qualifications: Companies furnishing the epoxy materials shall have a proven track record of at least five years. Furthermore, they shall have in existence a program of training, certifying and supporting a nationally organized program of approved contractors. Evidence of this shall be made available to the Engineer/Architect upon request.
- C. Contractor's Qualifications: Contractor performing the work shall be an approved contractor by the manufacturer furnishing the epoxy materials, and shall have no less than five years' experience in the various types of epoxy related work required in this project. A notarized certification from the manufacturer attesting to the training shall be submitted to the Engineer/Architect along with the proposal to do the work.

- D. Injection Equipment Requirements: Injection equipment used by the Contractor shall be from a manufacturer who has been producing such equipment for a minimum of five years. Such equipment shall have a record of satisfactorily proportioning, mixing, and dispensing of the injection resin being used.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR EPOXY MATERIALS

- A. All epoxy material shall be new and manufactured within the shelf life limitations set forth by the manufacturer.
- B. Epoxy used shall be insensitive to the presence of water and moisture and shall be capable of application and of strength development even when applied to damp surfaces having a temperature of 40° or above.
- C. Epoxy used shall develop a minimum strength of 2000 psi in tension and 4000 psi in compression at the end of seven days.
- D. Epoxies used shall not deteriorate under approximately 200 freeze thaw cycles.
- E. With the exception of epoxy penetrant sealers, epoxies used shall be 100% solids without solvents.
- F. Bonding and strength characteristics of epoxies shall be stable when exposed to ultraviolet rays.
- G. The viscosity of the epoxy used for injection work shall be low enough (about 300 cps at 77°F) to completely fill hairline cracks as small as 10 mils.

2.2 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR EPOXY MORTARS

- A. Epoxy mortar used for bonding, patching, and resurfacing, shall have the following additional properties:
 - 1. Epoxy mortar shall be non-sagging.
 - 2. Sand used in preparing mortar shall be graded oven dry quartzite and furnished in bags.
 - 3. The epoxy mortar patch material shall match the existing texture and color of exposed concrete without giving a blotchy appearance. A test patch shall be applied for approval prior to final acceptance of the mortar. Size of test patch shall be approximately equal to the size of the average mortar patch to be used on the project.

2.3 PRODUCTS AND MANUFACTURERS

- A. Epoxy Injection Work
 - 1. Refer to drawings for specified materials for each repair application.
- B. Substitutions may be considered provided complete technical information and job references are furnished to the Engineer and approved prior to commencement of work.
- C. Changes in products required to suit temperature and environmental conditions at the time of material application shall be specified as separate line items by the Contractor showing credit or additions to the price for the various tasks.
- D. In using the above products, follow strictly the manufacturer's specifications and directions for mixing and application. Also, heed all label warnings by manufacturer. Make application in accordance with applicable safety laws.

2.4 ABRASIVE MATERIAL FOR ABRASIVE BLASTING

- A. Coal slag shall be used as the blast abrasive in abrasive blasting operations.

2.5 CORROSION INHIBITING PAINT

- A. Z.R.C. Cold Galvanizing Compound manufactured by ZRC Chemical Products Company, Quincy, Massachusetts.
 - 1. Substitutions may be considered provided complete technical information and job references are furnished to and approved by the Engineer prior to commencement of work.

2.6 SAND

- A. Sand used for spreading over a surface application of the self-penetrating concrete crack filler and sealer using high molecular weight methacrylate shall be clean, washed, and dried silica sand free from all dust, dirt and organic materials.
 - 1. Free moisture content of the sand shall be limited to a maximum of 0.25% by weight at time of application.
 - 2. Sand used shall be uniformly graded with 100% passing the No. 10 sieve and retained on the No. 20 sieve.
 - 3. Contractor shall submit samples of the sand to the Owner's Testing Laboratory for acceptance testing prior to commencing work. Do not

change the source of material once the material source has been found to be acceptable.

2.7 JOINT FILLER MATERIAL

- A. Filler material shall have a minimum Shore A hardness of 80, or Shore D hardness of 50, and shall conform to ASTM D2240-00.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EPOXY INJECTION

A. Applicator's Qualifications

1. Epoxy injection work shall only be performed by contractors who have successfully used this process on at least five similar structural repairs of 1000 linear feet or longer, and which have performed successfully for a minimum period of five years.
2. Only adequately trained epoxy injection applicators shall be used on the job. Furnish certificate of training prior to commencing work.

B. Preparation

1. Before proceeding, the space in the vicinity of the crack location receiving epoxy shall be swept and be in a generally clean condition to permit proper bonding of surface seal.
2. Cracks may be dry or damp, but free of standing water and frost.
3. Entry points shall be established judiciously at a distance along the seal so that epoxy penetrates the crack completely. Spacing of entry points, however, shall be no greater than the thickness of the concrete at that location. Tighter joints will require closer spacing of entry ports.
4. Adequate surface seal shall be applied to the face of the crack between the entry points. Use masking tape at the pre-established entry points to prevent the surface sealer from sealing the entry points. Alternatively, drill and port method may be used to establish entry points. Use only rotary-percussion type drills for drilling holes. Drills shall be fitted with bits having single tooth that produce large cuttings, and hollow stem drill rods that permit simultaneous blowing of compressed air providing immediate expulsion of the cuttings from the hole. Ensure that the drilling operation does not contaminate the cracks.
5. For through cracks, surface seal shall be applied to both faces. Provide entry ports on both faces staggered with each other when the cracked concrete element is greater than 8" thick.

6. Pre-sealing between ports may be done using a material meeting the requirements of these specifications.
7. Allow adequate time for the surface seal material to cure before proceeding with the injection.

C. Equipment for Injection

1. Pumps used for injection shall be a positive displacement type with interlock to provide positive ratio control in proper proportions. The pumps used shall be electrically or air powered, portable and shall provide an in-line mixing and metering system for the two-component epoxy. The pressure hoses and injection nozzle shall be of such a design as to allow proper mixing of the two components of the epoxy. Dwell time in mixing head shall not exceed ten seconds.
2. The injection equipment shall have automatic pressure control, and shall be capable of injection pressures up to 300 psi to ensure complete penetration of cracks. Equipment used shall also have the capability of presetting the pressures, and shall be equipped with manual pressure control override.
3. The presence of a stand-by injection unit shall be required.

D. Crack Cleaning

1. All cracks shall be cleaned and flushed with water, and checked for port-to-port transmission.
2. All cracks shall be cleaned and flushed with water, checked for port-to-port transmission. Cracks which are contaminated with algae shall be flushed with chlorinated water mixed with copper sulphate.
3. Blow the water out of the cracks using compressed air and allow adequate time for drying before injecting with epoxy.
4. If in the process of water flushing the cracks, the Contractor notices rust particles being flushed out with the water, or if the water has rust stains, the Engineer shall be notified prior to doing any epoxy injection work. The Engineer will then evaluate the extent of corrosion in the embedded reinforcement and make necessary adjustments in the repair procedure. The Engineer/Owner reserves the right to either issue a change order for any additional work involved or to delete those portions of the work which show evidence of corrosion of the reinforcing steel. When work is deleted, the Contractor shall give a credit to the Owner on the basis of unit prices quoted for the project.
5. When temperature is near the freezing point of water, ensure that the crack is free of ice before doing the injection work.

E. Epoxy Injection

1. Condition epoxy materials at temperature between 65°F-80°F unless otherwise recommended by the manufacturer. Epoxies beyond this range of temperature shall not be used. Do not store epoxy (even for a short period) in direct sunlight.
2. Epoxy adhesive shall be injected into the crack at the first lower entry port with sufficient pressure to advance the epoxy to the next adjacent port. The original port shall be sealed and entry shifted to the port in which the epoxy appears. This manner of port-to-port injection shall be continued until each joint has been injected for the entire length.
3. If port-to-port travel of epoxy is not achieved, the crack shall be identified, and the Engineer notified.
4. Samples of mixed material shall be injected into a paper cup every 60 minutes to test ratio mix. These samples shall be dated and numbered and left at the sampling location until reviewed by the testing laboratory.
5. Solvents shall not be used to thin epoxy introduced into the cracks.

F. Finishing

1. Allow epoxy adhesive in the cracks to cure before removing the surface seal. Ensure that there is no drainage of epoxy from the cracks due to premature removal of surface seal.
2. The surface of the crack herein treated shall be finished flush with the adjacent concrete surfaces and shall show no indentations or evidence of port fittings.
3. All work shall be performed and conducted in a neat, orderly manner. Clean-up whatever portions of the existing structure that get soiled or stained in the process of epoxy injection work.

3.2 EPOXY MORTAR

A. Applicator's Qualifications

1. Epoxy mortar repair work shall only be performed by contractors who have successfully used this process on at least three similar structural repairs of equal scope which have performed successfully for a minimum period of five years.
2. Only adequately trained and experienced personnel shall be used on the job.

B. Surface Preparation

1. Concrete surface to which the epoxy mortar is to be applied shall be exposed parent concrete free of loose and unsound materials. Surface preparation shall be done by abrasive blasting, waterblasting or as otherwise required by the manufacturer.

2. Necessary approvals shall be obtained by the Contractor from authorizing governmental or other agencies prior to abrasive blasting. Abrasive blasting operations shall comply with the requirements of OSHA and NIOSH (National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health) Standard PB-246-697.
3. Surfaces shall be free of any deleterious materials such as laitance, dust, dirt, and oil.
4. Any exposed reinforcing steel shall also be cleaned and be free of rust and other contaminants. Cleaning shall be accomplished by mechanical means. Use powered wire brushes in locations where reinforcing steel cannot be cleaned by abrasive-blasting or water-blasting. All exposed reinforcing steel shall be coated with a corrosion inhibiting product specified elsewhere in this specification prior to mortar application.
5. Prime the cleaned surface with primer as required by the manufacturer.

C. Concrete Surface Inspection

1. Ensure that the surface temperature is at least 40°F to permit wetting of concrete surface by epoxy coating.
2. The Contractor shall evaluate the moisture content of concrete surface receiving epoxy mortar. This shall be done by determining if moisture will collect at bond lines between concrete and epoxy mortar before epoxy has cured. Evaluate this by taping a piece of polyethylene sheet to the concrete. If moisture collects on underside of the polyethylene sheet before epoxy would cure, then allow concrete to dry sufficiently to prevent the possibility of moisture between old concrete and new epoxy.

D. Mortar Application

1. Condition epoxy compound components to a temperature between 65°-80°F unless otherwise recommended by the manufacturer. Epoxies beyond this range of temperature shall not be used.
2. Stir each of the two parts of epoxy separately before mixing. Then mix in a clean container free of contaminants.
3. Thoroughly blend epoxy components and sand with Jiffy mixers (made by The Jiffy Mixer Co., Irvine, California) to a uniform and homogenous mixture. Small batches of one quart or less may be mixed by spatulas, palette knives or similar devices.
4. Mixing should be accomplished well within the pot life of epoxy (three minutes when using Jiffy mixer or five minutes when mixed by hand) after allowing for time required for application.
5. Apply mortar by trowel or other means suitable for the consistency of the epoxy-sand mortar mix.

6. Build up the repair area in layers with mortar thicknesses within those specified by the manufacturer (1/4" maximum per layer).
7. Consolidate the mortar thoroughly to remove entrapped air.
8. Finish surface of mortar to match the texture and contours of existing concrete.
9. Allow mortar to cure in accordance to manufacturers recommendations.

E. Cleanup

1. Protect surfaces surrounding the work areas against spillage.
2. Epoxy and epoxy mortar spillages shall be cleaned before they set and become difficult to remove.
3. Cleanup all portions of the existing structure that are soiled or stained in the process of epoxy mortar repair work.

3.3 EPOXY BONDING OF STEEL PLATES

A. Applicator's Qualifications

1. Epoxy bonding of steel plates shall only be performed by contractors who have had successful experience in bonding plates to concrete for three projects of similar scope, or those who have had continuous five years of epoxy application experience.
2. Only adequately trained epoxy applicators shall be used on the job. Furnish certificates of training on request.

B. Surface Preparation

1. Remove loose concrete, debris, laitance, oil, grease and other contaminants from surface receiving epoxy. All surfaces must be free of protrusions and shall be clean, sound, and free of surface water.
2. Clean concrete surface by abrasive blasting prior to applying epoxy bonder. Abrasive blasting shall take place no more than one day prior to bonding of plates.
3. The Contractor shall obtain all necessary permits from all governmental, environmental and other agencies having jurisdiction over the area where the Abrasive blasting work is to be performed. Abrasive blasting operations shall comply with the requirements of OSHA and NIOSH (National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health) Standard PB-246-697.
4. Both exterior and interior faces of the steel plate shall be abrasive blasted no more than eight hours before the application of the bonder. If evidence of oxidation exists on the plate prior to the application of the bonder, the plate shall be recleaned. Blast-clean carbon steel surfaces, using Steel Structures Painting Council,

Surface Preparation No. 6, to give a surface condition corresponding to ASa2, BSa2, CSa2 of SSPC Vis 1, depending on the initial surface condition of the steel surface. Prior to blast-cleaning, clean surfaces to conform to SSPC SP1, SP2, and SP3, as required.

5. Remove all abrasive from work area by vacuuming or other appropriate means. Remove blast cleaning residue with compressed air from an oil-and-water-free compressed air source from both concrete and steel surfaces prior to epoxy application.
6. Supply all necessary barriers to contain abrasive within the work area. The Contractor is responsible for all damage done to automobiles parked in the garage and surrounding areas as a result of abrasive blasting, as well as to the adjacent grounds and structures.

C. Protection of Concrete Member During Curing Period.

1. The Contractor shall keep all traffic off the plated member during the curing period.
2. The Contractor shall shore each member each side of each plate to the floor below during the curing period. Extent of shoring need not exceed each end and the one quarter points of the span. Shoring extent and method shall be submitted to the Engineer for review and approval. Unnecessary traffic and vibration shall be kept off the member during the curing period.

D. Epoxy Application

1. Mix epoxy materials in a clean container free of contaminants.
2. Condition epoxy compound materials at a temperature between 65°-80°F unless otherwise recommended by the manufacturer. Epoxies beyond this range of temperature shall not be used.
3. Thoroughly blend epoxy components with mechanical mixers to a uniform and homogenous mixture. Small batches may be mixed by spatulas, pallette knives or similar devices.
4. Mixing shall be accomplished well within the pot life of the epoxy after allowing for time required for application.
5. Apply sufficient amounts of bonder to both concrete and steel surfaces (approximately 1/16") so that when the plate is clamped to the concrete, a small amount of excess bonder is forced out of the joint area evenly. If no bonder is squeezed out of the joint area, immediately remove the plate and apply more bonder and repress against the concrete surface. Wipe off excess epoxy immediately before it begins to harden.
6. Keep the plates clamped and the concrete member protected from vibration until the epoxy bonder has cured and set. No traffic or loading shall be permitted until the curing is complete.

7. Devices or procedures used for clamping shall provide a uniform pressure across the entire plate. Submit the proposed procedure for clamping the plates to the Engineer for approval prior to commencement of work.

E. Corrosion Protection of Steel Plates

1. All exterior surfaces of steel plates epoxy bonded to the concrete shall be protected from corrosion.
2. Apply the corrosion inhibiting paint by brush, roller or aerosol spray on all exposed metal surfaces including the edges. Minimum dry film thickness of the paint shall be 1.5-2.0 mils.

F. Cleanup

1. Protect surfaces surrounding the work areas against spillage.
2. Epoxy spillages shall be cleaned before they set and become difficult to remove.
3. Cleanup whatever portions of the existing structure that are soiled or stained in the process of epoxy bonding of plates.
4. Cleanup and remove paint from whatever portion of the structure that is stained by paint beyond the steel plates.

G. Testing

1. The Engineer or Testing Laboratory shall evaluate the bonding of steel plate to concrete by tapping the steel plate with a blunt metal instrument.
2. Detection of a hollow sound in any area shall be reason to suspect inadequate bonding. Contractor shall fill in these areas with epoxy by injection procedures approved by the Engineer or shall remove and rebond the plates as directed by the Engineer.

3.4 EPOXY BONDING OF FRESH (PLASTIC) CONCRETE TO HARDENED CONCRETE

A. Applicator's Qualifications

1. Epoxy bonding of fresh concrete to hardened concrete shall only be performed by contractors who have had successful experience in bonding concrete on a minimum of three projects of similar scope.
2. Only adequately trained epoxy applicators shall be used on the job. Furnish certificates of training on request.

B. Surface Preparation

1. Remove loose concrete, debris, laitance, oil, grease and other contaminants from surface receiving epoxy. All surfaces shall be clean, sound and free of surface water.
2. Clean concrete surface by abrasive blasting prior to applying epoxy bonder. Abrasive blasting shall take place no more than one day prior to bonding fresh concrete.
3. The Contractor shall obtain all necessary permits from all governmental, environmental, and other agencies having jurisdiction over the area where the abrasive blasting work is to be performed. Abrasive blasting operations shall comply with the requirements of OSHA and NIOSH (National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health) Standard PB-246-697.
4. Remove all abrasive from work area by vacuuming or other appropriate means. Remove blast cleaning residue with compressed air from an oil-and-water-free compressed air source prior to epoxy application.
5. Provide all necessary barriers to contain abrasive within the work area. The Contractor is responsible for all damage to property or injury to people as a result of sandblasting.

C. Epoxy Application

1. Condition epoxy compound materials at a temperature between 65°-80°F unless otherwise recommended by the manufacturer. Epoxies beyond this range of temperature shall not be used.
2. Mix epoxy materials in a clean container free of contaminants.
3. Thoroughly blend epoxy components with mechanical mixers to a uniform and homogenous mixture.
4. Mixing shall be accomplished well within the pot life of the epoxy after allowing for time required for application.
5. Apply epoxy adhesive to concrete surface by brush, roller, broom, squeegee, or spray equipment. The minimum average application thickness shall be between 15-18 mils for normal weight concrete. For lightweight concrete, use a second coat of epoxy bonder having a minimum average thickness of 15 mils. Application of epoxy shall be in strict accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
6. Do not apply epoxy bonder in rain or in the presence of standing water.
7. Do not let the epoxy adhesive reach the gel stage before pouring concrete. This can be determined by checking whether the adhesive is still tacky. If the adhesive loses its tack before plastic concrete is placed, remove the epoxy by abrasive blasting or other suitable means prior to reapplying the epoxy adhesive.
8. Production, placing, consolidation and curing of new concrete shall conform to ACI 301-99 and the project specifications.

D. Cleanup

1. Protect surfaces surrounding the work areas against spillage.
2. Epoxy spillages shall be cleaned before they set and become difficult to remove.
3. Cleanup whatever portions of the existing structure that are soiled or stained in the process of applying epoxy adhesive.

E. Testing

1. The Engineer or Testing Laboratory shall evaluate bonding of fresh concrete to existing concrete after the fresh concrete has sufficiently cured.

3.5 EPOXY GROUTED BOLTS, DOWELS OR REINFORCING STEEL**A. Applicator's Qualifications**

1. Epoxy grouting of bolts, dowels or reinforcing steel shall only be performed by contractors who have had successful experience on a minimum of three projects of similar scope.
2. Only adequately trained epoxy applicators shall be used on the job. Furnish current certificate of training on request.

B. Surface Preparation

1. All bolts, dowels and reinforcing bars shall be abrasive blasted no more than eight hours before the grouting. If evidence of oxidation exists on the surface, the bolts, reinforcing bars and dowels shall be recleaned. Blast-clean surfaces using Steel Structures Painting Council, Surface Preparation No. 6, to give a surface condition corresponding to ASa2, BSa2, CSa2 of SSPC Vis 1, depending on the initial surface condition of the steel surface. Prior to blast-cleaning, clean surfaces to conform to SSPC SP1, SP2, and SP3, as required.
2. All holes shall be clean of dust, debris, and contaminants. Use compressed air from an oil-and-water-free compressed air source prior to epoxy application.

C. Drilling Holes for Embedment

1. Use only rotary-percussion type drills for drilling holes.
2. Drills shall be fitted with bits having single tooth that produce large cuttings, and hollow stem drill rods that permit simultaneous blowing

of compressed air providing immediate expulsion of the cuttings from the hole.

3. Do not cut through any reinforcing steel unless indicated otherwise on the drawings.
4. Core drilling equipment and electric impact hammers or other tools which do not provide for immediate expulsion of the drill cuttings shall not be used.
5. Unless noted otherwise on the drawings, the edge distance shall be at least six times the diameter of the bolt, bar or dowel.
6. Hole diameter shall normally be 1/4" larger than the outside diameter of the embedded item. In no case shall the hole diameter be 3/8" larger than the diameter of the embedded item.

D. Epoxy Application

1. Condition epoxy compound materials at a temperature between 65°-80°F unless otherwise recommended by the manufacturer. Epoxies beyond this range of temperature shall not be used.
2. Mix epoxy materials in a clean container free of contaminants.
3. Thoroughly blend epoxy components with mechanical mixers to a uniform and homogenous mixture. Mix small batches (up to 1 quart) by use of spatulas, palette knives, or similar devices. Take care to use proper proportions of the epoxy components when using small batches.
4. Mixing shall be accomplished well within the pot life of the epoxy after allowing for time required for application.
5. Partially fill the hole with epoxy. Then insert the bolt, dowel or reinforcing bar into the hole such that the resin material oozes out around the embedded item, ensuring complete contact. Twist the bolt, dowel or bar slightly as it is inserted in the hole to ensure complete contact.
6. As an alternative to inserting the embedded item after the epoxy is poured in the hole, the bolt, dowel, or bar may be positioned in the hole and filled up with epoxy by hand caulking guns or injected with an in-head mixing equipment. In either case, the nozzle shall be provided with a hose or tube of sufficient length to reach the bottom of the hole being filled.
7. Where the holes are horizontal or overhead, the opening shall be covered by a masking or a duct tape. Make a split in the tape and insert the epoxy injection tube through the split. Fill hole completely with epoxy and then insert the embedded item through the split tape. Amount of epoxy should be such that a small amount of material oozes through the split. Twist the bolt, dowel or bar slightly as it is inserted in the hole to ensure complete contact.
8. Do not apply epoxy in the rain or in the presence of standing water.

E. Cleanup

1. Protect surfaces surrounding the work area against spillage.
2. Epoxy oozed out from the holes and spillages shall be cleaned before they become difficult to remove.
3. Cleanup whatever portions of the existing structure are soiled or stained in the process of grouting the bolts, dowels or reinforcing bars.

F. Testing

1. The Owner's Testing Laboratory shall evaluate the effectiveness of grouting the bolts, dowels, or reinforcing bars by conducting field proof tests. The load test method shall be submitted to the Engineer for review and approval.
2. Field proof test 50% of the grouted bolts, dowels or bars.
3. The Engineer may elect to increase or decrease the number of tests depending upon the outcome of the tests.
4. The proof load shall be 85% of the theoretical ultimate strength of the bolt, dowel or bar or as otherwise determined by the Engineer. Any slip of the embedded bolt, dowel or bar within the epoxy grout material, or slip at the epoxy/concrete interface before the bolt, dowel or bar yields shall be considered to be a failure of the grouted item.
5. The cost of any repairs failing to meet the proof load and all additional tests deemed necessary by the Engineer shall be borne by the Contractor.

3.6 POLYMER MODIFIED CEMENTITIOUS MORTAR OVERLAY SYSTEM**A. Applicator's Qualifications**

1. Mortar overlay system work shall only be performed by contractors who have successfully used this process on at least three similar structural repairs of equal scope which have performed successfully for a minimum period of five years.
2. Only adequately trained and experienced personnel shall be used on the job.

B. Surface Preparation

1. Concrete surface to which the mortar is to be applied shall be exposed parent concrete free of loose and unsound materials. Surface preparation shall be done by using a scabber. Obtain a surface profile having a minimum amplitude of $\pm 1/16"$.
2. Surface shall then be swept clean or vacuumed to clear off debris and dust.

3. Wash surface with water and brush with hard broom to remove all contaminants and oil drippings. Oil and grease spots shall be removed by using a detergent, and then scrubbing with a power brush or a hard broom. Remove all residue by washing and brushing with water.
4. Surface then shall be wet vacuumed to remove excess water.
5. Surface to be prepared shall be wetted prior to and during scarification by a scabbler to minimize the creation of dust.
6. Provide adequate barricades around the work area to prevent injury to people around the work area from flying debris.
7. Ensure that all edges, corners, areas adjacent to columns, walls and doors are satisfactorily prepared as described above. Use small pneumatic bush-hammer or single-head scabbler for preparing such areas.
8. Any exposed reinforcing steel shall also be cleaned and free of rust and other contaminants. Cleaning shall be accomplished by mechanical means. Use powered wire brushes or abrasive-blasting. All exposed reinforcing steel shall be coated with a corrosion inhibiting product specified elsewhere in this specification prior to mortar application.

C. Concrete Surface Inspection

1. Ensure that the surface and ambient temperature is at least 45°F and rising at the time of application.
2. Inspect surface for loose aggregate and concrete particles. Remove all loose concrete.
3. Inspect surface for cracks. All cracks shall be rebonded prior to application of the overlay system.

D. Crack Repair

1. Rebond cracks using epoxy injection procedures given elsewhere in these specifications.
2. Rebond cracks using self-penetrating concrete crack filler and sealer using high molecular weight methacrylates. Procedures for filling cracks are given elsewhere in these specifications.
3. Rebond cracks using both epoxy injection and self-penetrating concrete crack filler and sealer using high molecular weight methacrylate procedures. See drawings for areas requiring the different methods of repair.

E. Mortar Application

1. Condition polymer mortar material to 65°F-80°F unless otherwise recommended by the manufacturer. Materials beyond this range of temperature shall not be used.
2. Mix the two components in a clean mortar mixer free of contaminants as recommended by the manufacturer.
3. Thoroughly blend components and aggregates with to a uniform and homogenous mixture.
4. Mixing should be accomplished within three minutes when using Jiffy mixer.
5. Dampen the surface of concrete receiving the mortar by a portable sprayer just prior to mortar application. The surface shall be saturated surface dry with no standing water.
6. Set the screed to the proper overlay thickness. See drawings for required overlay thickness. Contractor shall use only power vibrating screeds with metal edges to obtain a smooth wet finish.
7. Spread mortar uniformly on the damp surface by broom. Scrub into substrate filling all pores and voids.
8. Consolidate the mortar thoroughly to remove entrapped air.
9. After screeding, wait for a few minutes as recommended by the manufacturer such that the mortar has a desired stiffness. Wait time depends on the ambient temperature and temperature of the applied material. Then finish by power trowel. Small, difficult to reach areas may be finished by hand troweling. Use water from a portable sprayer during the troweling process.
10. After screeding, wait for a few minutes as recommended by the manufacturer such that the mortar has a desired stiffness. Wait time depends on the ambient temperature and temperature of the applied material. Then apply a broom finish on the surface parallel to the direction of flow of traffic.

F. Compressive Strength Test Cubes

1. The Testing Laboratory retained by the Owner shall take a minimum of one set of four cube compressive strength test samples to be tested in accordance with ASTM C-109-99 (modified) for every 10 cubic feet of mortar used in overlay or part thereof in a day's work.
2. Test one cube after 24 hours, second cube after 72 hours (3 days), third cube after 14 days, and fourth cube after 28 days.

G. Joints in Overlay System

1. All joints in the original surface or floor shall be reproduced in the overlay. Provide any additional joints shown in the drawings.
2. Joints in the overlay shall be produced by saw-cutting.

- a. Make saw cut as soon as overlay is able to support weight of workers and sawing equipment without damage to finish surface of overlay.
- b. All joints shall be continuous across the overlay. Do not offset or stagger joints.
- c. Width of saw cut shall be 1/4". Saw cut shall be made through the full thickness of the overlay.

H. Joint Filler Material

1. Joint filler material shall be scheduled to be applied in the last week of the construction work.
2. Joint filler material shall be applied immediately after the sawcut is made. However, a week prior to completion of the entire work, reinspect the joints. Repair and refill any joints that show gaps or tears.
3. Clean joint thoroughly prior to filling the joint. There shall be no water in the joint at the time of filler application.
4. Fill joint with filler material having a Shore A hardness of 80.
5. Condition the joint material at a temperature between 65°-80°F unless otherwise recommended by the manufacturer. Joint material beyond this range shall not be used.
6. Follow strictly the manufacturer's recommended procedures for applying the joint filler.

I. CURING

1. Cure finished surface by applying a fine mist spray of water over the finished surface. Alternatively, cover with wet burlap. Solvent type curing compounds shall not be used on the overlay system.
2. Curing shall start immediately after the finishing work is completed.
3. Overlay shall be maintained in a moist condition for a minimum of 24 hours.
4. Overlay shall be maintained in a moist condition for a minimum of 72 hours.
5. Protect overlay work from rain and freezing conditions. Contractor shall ensure that the overlay is protected by proper insulation in the event freezing conditions are expected during the curing period.

J. CLEANUP

1. Protect surfaces surrounding the work areas against spillage.
2. Mortar and joint filler material spillage shall be cleaned before they set and become difficult to remove.
3. Cleanup all portions of the existing structure that are soiled or stained in the process of mortar repair work.

K. OVERLAY SERVICE

1. Protect overlay from foot and vehicular traffic as well as equipment loads during the curing period, or until the overlay mortar has attained a compressive strength of 4,000 psi.
2. Strength shall be determined from cube compressive strength tests performed in accordance to ASTM C-109-99 (Modified).

3.7 EPOXY RESIN FLOOR OVERLAY SYSTEM

A. Applicator's Qualifications

1. Work requiring epoxy resin floor overlay system on concrete shall only be performed by contractors who have had successful experience in applying epoxy overlay systems on at least three projects of similar scope which have performed successfully for a minimum period of five years.
2. Only adequately trained epoxy applicators shall be used on the job. Furnish certificates of training on request.

B. Surface Preparation

1. Remove loose concrete, debris, laitance, oil, grease and other contaminants from surface receiving epoxy. All surfaces shall be clean, sound, and free of surface water.
2. Clean concrete by mechanical abrasion such as abrasive blasting, shotblasting, scarifying, waterblasting or as required by the manufacturer. Remove all projections and rough spots to achieve a level clean surface.
3. The Contractor shall obtain all necessary permits from all governmental, environmental and other agencies having jurisdiction over the area where the mechanical abrasion work is to be performed. Abrasive blasting operations shall comply with the requirements of OSHA and NIOSH (National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health) Standard PB-246-697.
4. Where abrasive blasting is used, all abrasive shall be removed from the work area by vacuuming or other appropriate means. Remove blast cleaning residue with compressed air from an oil-and-water-free compressed air source prior to epoxy application.
5. Provide all necessary barriers to contain the abrasive material within the work area. The Contractor is responsible for all damage to property or injury to people as a result of mechanical abrasion process. Wet surface during the surface preparation process to minimize the creation of dust. Alternatively, use equipment designed to perform abrasive blasting and vacuuming operations simultaneously which eliminates dust.

6. Any exposed reinforcing steel shall also be cleaned and free of rust and other contaminants. Cleaning shall be accomplished by mechanical means. Use powered wire brushes or abrasive-blasting. All exposed reinforcing steel shall be coated with a corrosion inhibiting product specified elsewhere in this specification prior to epoxy application.

C. Concrete Surface Inspection

1. Ensure that the surface and ambient temperature is at least 45°F and rising at the time of application.
2. Inspect surface for loose aggregate and concrete particles. Remove all loose concrete.
3. Inspect surface for cracks. All cracks shall be rebonded prior to application of the overlay system.

D. Crack Repair

1. Rebond cracks using epoxy injection procedures given elsewhere in these specifications.

E. Epoxy Primer Application

1. Condition epoxy compound material to be at a temperature between 65°-80°F unless otherwise recommended by the manufacturer. Epoxies beyond this range of temperature shall not be used.
2. Stir each of the two parts of epoxy separately before mixing. Then mix the two parts in a clean container free of contaminants.
3. Thoroughly blend epoxy components for 3 minutes with mechanical mixers having a speed of 400-600 rpm to a uniform and homogenous mixture.
4. Mixing shall be accomplished well within the pot life of the epoxy after allowing for time required for application.
5. Apply epoxy adhesive to concrete surface by brush, roller, broom, or squeegee. The minimum average application thickness shall be between 150-250 square feet per gallon. Application shall be in strict accordance to manufacturer's instructions.

F. Epoxy Mortar Application

1. Mix epoxy in the same manner as described above for epoxy primer.
2. While mixing the epoxy components, slowly add 5 parts by loose volume of oven-dried quartz sand to 1 part of the mixed epoxy material, and mix until uniform in consistency.
3. Place epoxy mortar before primer becomes tack free.
4. Place epoxy mortar with trowel. Compact and trowel with vibrating screed having metal edges. Set the screed for proper overlay

thickness. See drawings for areas requiring overlay and overlay thickness required.

5. Finish overlay surface with finishing trowel or other mechanical means.
6. Allow epoxy mortar to cure in accordance to manufacturer's recommendations.

G. Compressive Strength Tests

1. The Testing Laboratory retained by the Owner shall take a minimum of one set of four cube compressive strength test samples to be tested in accordance with ASTM C-109-99 (Modified) for every 1000 square feet of epoxy overlay work or part thereof in a day's work.
2. Test one cube after 24 hours, second cube after 72 hours (3 days), third cube after 7 days, and fourth cube after 28 days.

H. Seal Coat: Allow the overlay system to reach sufficient cure so as not to be damaged by foot traffic (minimum compressive strength 2,000 psi). Then apply a top seal coat of neat epoxy over the epoxy mortar overlay by means of a roller or flat squeegee. Method of mixing the seal coat epoxy resin and its rate of application shall be the same as that of the epoxy primer.

I. Joints in Overlay System

1. All joints in the original surface or floor shall be reproduced in the overlay. Provide any additional joints shown in the drawings.
2. Joints in the overlay shall be produced by saw-cutting.
 - a. Make saw cut as soon as overlay is able to support weight of workers and sawing equipment without damage to finish surface of overlay.
 - b. All joints shall be continuous across the overlay. Do not offset or stagger joints.
 - c. Width of saw cut shall be 1/4". Saw cut shall be made through the full thickness of the overlay.

J. Joint Filler Material

1. Joint filler material shall be scheduled to be applied in the last week of the construction work.
2. Joint filler material shall be applied immediately after the sawcut is made. However, a week prior to completion of the entire work, reinspect the joints. Repair and refill any joints that show gaps or tears.
3. Clean joint thoroughly prior to filling the joint. There shall be no water in the joint at the time of filler application.
4. Fill joint with filler material having a Shore A hardness of 80.

5. Condition the joint material at a temperature between 65°-80°F unless otherwise recommended by the manufacturer. Joint material beyond this range shall not be used.
6. Follow strictly the manufacturer's recommended procedures for applying the joint filler.

K. Testing

1. The Testing Laboratory shall evaluate that the rate of coverage of the epoxy adhesive and the thickness of the overlay complies to the specifications.
2. The Testing Laboratory shall perform pullout tests on the cured overlay surface prior to applying the seal coat. The rate of testing shall be one test for every 1000 square feet of surface area, with a minimum of three tests. The pullout strength (tested in accordance with Appendix A of ACI 503 R-93) shall be at least 100 psi. All failures shall be in the concrete. Any failure that occurs in the adhesive shall be cause for rejection of the overlay system.
3. The cost of replacement and any retesting required by the Engineer shall be borne by the Contractor.
4. Repair all tested areas in the same manner as the overlay system application.

L. Cleanup

1. Protect surfaces surrounding the work area against spillage.
2. Epoxy spillages shall be cleaned before they set and become difficult to remove.
3. Cleanup whatever portions of the existing structure that are soiled or stained in the process of applying epoxy adhesive.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 05 12 00
STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Structural steel.
 - 2. Shrinkage-resistant grout.

1.02 DEFINITIONS

- A. Structural Steel: Elements of the structural frame indicated on Drawings and as described in ANSI/AISC 303.

1.03 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
 - 1. Structural-steel materials.
 - 2. High-strength, bolt-nut-washer assemblies.
 - 3. Anchor rods.
 - 4. Shop primer.
 - 5. Galvanized-steel primer.
 - 6. Galvanized repair paint.
 - 7. Shrinkage-resistant grout.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication of structural-steel components.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For structural-steel connections indicated on Drawings to comply with design loads, include analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.05 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.

- B. Mill test reports for structural-steel materials, including chemical and physical properties.
- C. Source quality-control reports.
- D. Field quality-control reports.

1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with applicable provisions of the following specifications and documents:
 - 1. ANSI/AISC 303.
 - 2. ANSI/AISC 360.
 - 3. RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts."
- B. Connection Design Information:
 - 1. Design connections and final configuration of member reinforcement at connections in accordance with ANSI/AISC 303 by fabricator's qualified professional engineer.
 - a. Use Load and Resistance Factor Design; data are given at factored-load level.
- C. Moment Connections: Type FR, fully restrained.
- D. Construction: Combined system of moment frame, braced frame, and shear walls.

2.02 STRUCTURAL-STEEL MATERIALS

- A. W-Shapes: ASTM A992/A992M.
- B. Channels, Angles: ASTM A36/A36M.
- C. Plate and Bar: ASTM A36/A36M.

- D. Cold-Formed Hollow Structural Sections: ASTM A500/A500M, Grade B structural tubing.
- E. Steel Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M, Type E or Type S, Grade B.
- F. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS requirements.

2.03 BOLTS AND CONNECTORS

- A. High-Strength A325 Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM F3125/F3125M, Grade A325, Type 1, heavy-hex steel structural bolts; ASTM A563, Grade DH, heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F436/F436M, Type 1, hardened carbon-steel washers; all with plain finish.

2.04 RODS

- A. Headed or Unheaded Anchor Rods: ASTM F1554, Grade 36.
 - 1. Configuration: Straight.
 - 2. Finish: Mechanically deposited zinc coating, ASTM B695, Class 50.
- B. Threaded Rods: ASTM A36/A36M.

2.05 PRIMER

- A. Steel Primer:
 - 1. Fabricator's standard lead- and chromate-free, nonasphaltic, rust-inhibiting primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.
- B. Galvanized-Steel Primer: .
 - 1. Etching Cleaner: MPI#25, for galvanized steel.
 - 2. Galvanizing Repair Paint: MPI#18, MPI#19, or SSPC-Paint 20.

2.06 SHRINKAGE-RESISTANT GROUT

- A. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C1107/C1107M, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive and nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

2.07 FABRICATION

- A. Structural Steel: Fabricate and assemble in shop to greatest extent possible. Fabricate in accordance with ANSI/AISC 303 and to ANSI/AISC 360.

2.08 SHOP CONNECTIONS

- A. High-Strength Bolts: Shop install high-strength bolts in accordance with RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.
- B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.

2.09 GALVANIZING

- A. Hot-Dip Galvanized Finish: Apply zinc coating by the hot-dip process to structural steel in accordance with ASTM A123/A123M.
 - 1. Fill vent and drain holes that are exposed in the finished Work unless they function as weep holes, by plugging with zinc solder and filing off smooth.

2.10 SHOP PRIMING

- A. Shop prime steel surfaces, except the following:
 - 1. Surfaces embedded in concrete or mortar. Extend priming of partially embedded members to a depth of 2 inches.
 - 2. Surfaces to be field welded.
 - 3. Surfaces of high-strength bolted, slip-critical connections.
 - 4. Surfaces to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials (applied fireproofing).
 - 5. Galvanized surfaces unless indicated to be painted.
- B. Surface Preparation of Steel: Clean surfaces to be painted. Remove loose rust and mill scale and spatter, slag, or flux deposits. Prepare surfaces in accordance with the following specifications and standards:
 - 1. SSPC-SP 2.
 - 2. SSPC-SP 3.
- C. Surface Preparation of Galvanized Steel: Prepare galvanized-steel surfaces for shop priming by thoroughly cleaning steel of grease, dirt, oil, flux, and other foreign matter, and treating with etching cleaner or in accordance with SSPC-SP 16.
- D. Priming: Immediately after surface preparation, apply primer in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions and at rate recommended by SSPC to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils. Use priming methods that result in full coverage of joints, corners, edges, and exposed surfaces.

2.11 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform shop tests and inspections.
 - 1. Allow testing agency access to places where structural-steel work is being fabricated or produced to perform tests and inspections.
 - 2. Bolted Connections: Inspect and test shop-bolted connections in accordance with RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts."
 - 3. Welded Connections: Visually inspect shop-welded connections in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M and the following inspection procedures, at testing agency's option:
 - a. Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E165/E165M.
 - b. Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E709; performed on root pass and on finished weld. Cracks or zones of incomplete fusion or penetration are not accepted.
 - c. Ultrasonic Inspection: ASTM E164.
 - d. Radiographic Inspection: ASTM E94/E94M.
 - 4. In addition to visual inspection, test and inspect shop-welded shear stud connectors in accordance with requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
 - 5. Prepare test and inspection reports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION**3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify, with certified steel erector present, elevations of concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces and locations of anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments for compliance with requirements.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 ERECTION

- A. Set structural steel accurately in locations and to elevations indicated and in accordance with ANSI/AISC 303 and ANSI/AISC 360.
- B. Baseplates Bearing Plates and Leveling Plates: Clean concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen surfaces prior to setting plates. Clean bottom surface of plates.

1. Set plates for structural members on wedges, shims, or setting nuts as required.
2. Weld plate washers to top of baseplate.
3. Snug-tighten anchor rods after supported members have been positioned and plumbed. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of plate before packing with grout.
4. Promptly pack shrinkage-resistant grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates, so no voids remain. Neatly finish exposed surfaces; protect grout and allow to cure. Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions for grouting.

C. Maintain erection tolerances of structural steel within ANSI/AISC 303.

3.03 FIELD CONNECTIONS

A. High-Strength Bolts: Install high-strength bolts in accordance with RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts" for bolt and joint type specified.

1. Joint Type: Snug tightened unless otherwise indicated..

B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.

1. Comply with ANSI/AISC 303 and ANSI/AISC 360 for bearing, alignment, adequacy of temporary connections, and removal of paint on surfaces adjacent to field welds.

3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a special inspector to perform the following special inspections:

1. Verify structural-steel materials and inspect steel frame joint details.
2. Verify weld materials and inspect welds.
3. Verify connection materials and inspect high-strength bolted connections.

B. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

1. Bolted Connections: Inspect and test bolted connections in accordance with RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts."
2. Welded Connections: Visually inspect field welds in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

- a. In addition to visual inspection, test and inspect field welds in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M and the following inspection procedures, at testing agency's option:
 - 1) Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E165/E165M.
 - 2) Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E709; performed on root pass and on finished weld. Cracks or zones of incomplete fusion or penetration are not accepted.
 - 3) Ultrasonic Inspection: ASTM E164.
 - 4) Radiographic Inspection: ASTM E94/E94M.

END OF SECTION

**SECTION 05 40 00
COLD-FORMED METAL FRAMING**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Formed steel stud exterior wall and soffit framing.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 06 10 00 - Rough Carpentry: Wood blocking and miscellaneous framing.
- B. Section 07 62 00 - Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim: Head and sill flashings.
- C. Section 07 92 00 - Joint Sealants.
- D. Section 09 24 00 - Cement Plastering.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM C955 - Standard Specification for Cold-Formed Steel Structural Framing Members; 2018, with Editorial Revision.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Provide data on standard framing members; describe materials and finish, product criteria, limitations.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's data on factory-made framing connectors, showing compliance with requirements.
- C. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate special procedures, conditions requiring special attention .
- D. Manufacturer's Qualification Statement.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the types of products specified in this section, and with minimum three years of documented experience.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing the work of this section with minimum three years documented experience.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 FRAMING SYSTEM

- A. Provide primary and secondary framing members, bridging, bracing, plates, gussets, clips, fittings, reinforcement, and fastenings as required to provide a complete framing system.

2.02 FRAMING MATERIALS

- A. Studs and Track: ASTM C955; studs formed to channel, C- or Sigma-shaped with punched web; U-shaped track in matching nominal width and compatible height.
- B. Framing Connectors: Factory-made, formed steel sheet.
 - 1. Material: ASTM A653/A653M SS Grade 33 and 40 (minimum), with G90/Z275 hot dipped galvanized coating for base metal thickness less than 10 gage, 0.1345 inch, and factory punched holes and slots.

2.03 FASTENERS

- A. Self-Drilling, Self-Tapping Screws, Bolts, Nuts and Washers: Hot dip galvanized per ASTM A153/A153M.

2.04 ACCESSORIES

- A. Bracing, Furring, Bridging: Formed sheet steel, thickness determined for conditions encountered; finish to match framing components.
- B. Plates, Gussets, Clips: Formed Sheet Steel, thickness determined for conditions encountered; finish to match framing components.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that substrate surfaces are ready to receive work.
- B. Verify field measurements and adjust installation as required.

3.02 INSTALLATION OF STUDS

- A. Install components in accordance with manufacturers' instructions and ASTM C1007 requirements.
- B. Align floor and ceiling tracks; locate to wall layout. Secure in place with fasteners at maximum 24 inches on center. Coordinate installation of sealant with floor and ceiling tracks.

- C. Place studs at 12 inches on center; not more than 2 inches from abutting walls and at each side of openings. Connect studs to tracks using clip and tie method.
- D. Install load-bearing studs full length in one piece. Splicing of studs is not permitted.
- E. Install load-bearing studs, brace, and reinforce to develop full strength and achieve design requirements.

3.03 INSTALLATION OF JOISTS AND PURLINS

- A. Install framing components in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Make provisions for erection stresses. Provide temporary alignment and bracing.

3.04 INSTALLATION OF WALL SHEATHING

- A. Install wall sheathing with long dimension perpendicular to wall studs, with ends over firm bearing and staggered, using self-tapping screws.

END OF SECTION 05 40 00

**SECTION 06 16 00
SHEATHING**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Exterior wall and soffit sheathing.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 07 27 26 "Fluid-Applied Air-Barriers" for air-resistive barrier applied over wall sheathing.

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. Abbreviations and Acronyms:

- 1. ASTM: ASTM International.
 - 2. GA: Gypsum Association.
 - 3. IBC: International Building Code.
 - 4. ICC-ES: ICC Evaluation Service, LLC.

- B. Reference Standards: The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

- 1. ASTM A 153: Specification for Zinc-Coating (Hot-Dip) of Iron and Steel Hardware.
 - 2. ASTM C 954: Specification for Steel Drill Screws for the Application of Gypsum Panel Products or Metal Plaster Bases to Steel Studs from 0.033 in. in Thickness.

3. ASTM C 1002: Specification for Steel Self-Piercing Tapping Screws for the Application of Gypsum Panel Products or Metal Plaster Bases to Wood Studs or Steel Studs.
4. ASTM C 1177: Specification for Glass Mat Gypsum Substrate for Use as Sheathing.
5. ASTM D 3201: Test Method for Hygroscopic Properties of Fire-Retardant Wood and Wood-Based Products.
6. ASTM E 84: Test Method for Surface-Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
7. AWPA U1: Use Category System: User Specification for Treated Wood.
8. GA-253: Recommended Specifications for the Application of Gypsum Sheathing.
9. ICC-ES: Fasteners Power Driven into Concrete, Steel, and Masonry Elements.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.
 1. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated plywood complies with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Integrated Exterior Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, and set quality standards for fabrication and installation. Construct sheathing as part of integrated exterior mockups as specified in Section 01 40 00 "Mockups".

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Stack panels flat with spacers beneath and between each bundle to provide air circulation. Protect sheathing from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EXTERIOR WALL AND SOFFIT SHEATHING

A. Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing: ASTM C 1177.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. CertainTeed Corporation.
 - b. Georgia-Pacific Building Products.
 - c. National Gypsum Company.
 - d. United States Gypsum Company.
2. Type and Thickness: Type X, 5/8 inch thick.
3. Size: 48 by 96 inches for vertical installation.

2.2 FASTENERS

A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture.

1. For wall sheathing, provide fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A 153.

B. Screws for Fastening Gypsum Sheathing to Cold-Formed Metal Framing: Steel drill screws, in length recommended by sheathing manufacturer for thickness of sheathing to be attached.

1. For steel framing less than 0.0329 inch thick, use screws that comply with ASTM C 1002.
2. For steel framing from 0.033 to 0.112 inch thick, use screws that comply with ASTM C 954.

2.3 JOINT TREATMENT MATERIALS

A. Joint Compound for Glass-Mat Interior Wall Sheathing: As recommended by backing panel manufacturer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Do not use materials with defects that impair quality of sheathing or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement. Arrange joints so that pieces do not span between fewer than three support members.
- B. Cut panels at penetrations, edges, and other obstructions of work; fit tightly against abutting construction unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Securely attach to substrate by fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
 - 1. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in the ICC's International Building Code (IBC).
- D. Coordinate wall sheathing installation with flashing and air-barrier installation so these materials are installed in sequence and manner that prevent exterior moisture from passing through completed assembly.
- E. Do not bridge building expansion joints; cut and space edges of panels to match spacing of structural support elements.
- F. Coordinate sheathing installation with installation of materials installed over sheathing so sheathing is not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at end of the workday when rain is forecast.

3.2 GYPSUM SHEATHING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with GA-253 and with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Fasten gypsum sheathing to cold-formed metal framing with screws.
 - 2. Where sheathing is indicated to receive application of air-barrier membrane, coordinate maximum joint width between sheathing boards with manufacturer of membrane. Do not exceed membrane manufacturer's allowable joint width and do not exceed joint width of 1/8" between sheathing boards or at penetrations.
- B. Apply fasteners so heads bear tightly against face of sheathing, but do not cut into facing.
- C. Vertical Installation: Install vertical edges centered over studs. Abut ends and edges with those of adjacent panels. Attach at perimeter and within field of panel to each stud.

1. Space fasteners approximately 8 inches o.c. and set back a minimum of 3/8 inch from edges and ends of panels.

3.3 FINISHING GYPSUM BOARD

- A. General: Treat gypsum board joints, interior angles, edge trim, control joints, penetrations, fastener heads, surface defects, and elsewhere as required to prepare gypsum board surfaces for decoration. Promptly remove residual joint compound from adjacent surfaces.
- B. Glass-Mat Faced Panels: Finish according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 07 24 13
POLYMER-BASED EXTERIOR INSULATION AND FINISH SYSTEM (EIFS)

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes EIFS-clad barrier-wall assemblies that are field applied over substrate.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 06 16 00 "Sheathing for glass-mat gypsum sheathing.
 - 2. Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants" for sealing joints in EIFS and for perimeter joints between EIFS and other materials.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Definitions in ASTM E 2110 apply to Work of this Section.
- B. EIFS: Exterior insulation and finish system(s).
- C. IBC: International Building Code.
- D. Polymer-Based Exterior Insulation and Finish System: Class PB EIFS, as defined in ASTM E 2568.

1.4 PRE-INSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Pre-Installation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
 - 2. Review required submittals, submittal schedule, and status of submittal review.
 - 3. Review performance requirements.
 - 4. Review methods and procedures related to crystalline waterproofing installation.

5. Examine support conditions for compliance with requirements, including attachment to structural members.
6. Review temporary protection requirements for exterior insulation and finish system during and after installation.
7. Review of procedures for repair of exterior insulation and finish system damaged after installation.
8. Document proceedings, including corrective measures and actions required, and furnish copy of record to each participant.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each EIFS component, trim, and accessory.
- B. Shop Drawings: For prefabricated EIFS panels.
 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details of components, details of penetrations and terminations, flashing details, joint locations and configurations, lifting points, fastening and anchorage details including mechanical fasteners, and connections and attachments to other work.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of finish-coat color and texture indicated.
 1. Include similar Samples of exposed accessories involving color selection.
- D. Samples for Verification: 24-inch-square panels for each type of finish-coat color and texture indicated, prepared using same tools and techniques intended for actual work.
 1. Include exposed trim and accessory Samples to verify color selected.
 2. Include a typical control joint filled with sealant of color selected, as specified in Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants."

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Manufacturer Certificates: Signed by EIFS manufacturer certifying the following:
 1. EIFS substrate is acceptable to EIFS manufacturer.
 2. Accessory products installed with EIFS, including joint sealants, flashing, water-resistant barriers, trim, whether or not furnished by EIFS manufacturer

and whether or not specified in this Section, are acceptable to EIFS manufacturer.

- C. Product Test Reports: For each EIFS assembly and components, for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency or performed by a qualified testing agency.
- D. Field quality-control reports and special inspection reports.
- E. Evaluation Reports: For EIFS, including insulation fasteners, flexible membrane flashing, from ICC-ES.
- F. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's special warranty.
- G. Meeting Records: Minutes of Pre-Installation Conference.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For EIFS to include in maintenance manuals.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An installer certified in writing by EIFS manufacturer as qualified to install manufacturer's system using trained workers.
- B. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, and to set quality standards for materials and execution.
 - 1. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials in original, unopened packages with manufacturers' labels intact and clearly identifying products.
- B. Store materials inside and under cover; keep them dry and protected from weather, direct sunlight, surface contamination, aging, corrosion, damaging temperatures, construction traffic, and other causes.
 - 1. Stack insulation board flat and off the ground.
 - 2. Protect plastic insulation against ignition at all times. Do not deliver plastic insulating materials to Project site before installation time.
 - 3. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Maintain ambient temperatures above 40 deg F for a minimum of 24 hours before, during, and after adhesives or coatings are applied. Do not apply EIFS adhesives or coatings during rainfall. Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions and ambient outdoor air, humidity, and substrate temperatures permit EIFS to be applied, dried, and cured according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements.

1.11 WARRANTY

- A. General Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Article shall not deprive Owner of other rights Owner may have under other provisions of the Contract Documents and shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties made by Contractor under requirements of the Contract Documents.
- B. Manufacturer's Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace EIFS that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Bond integrity and weathertightness.
 - b. Deterioration of EIFS finishes and other EIFS materials beyond normal weathering.
 2. Warranty coverage includes the following EIFS components:
 - a. EIFS finish, including base and finish coats and reinforcing mesh.
 - b. Insulation installed as part of EIFS including build-outs.
 - c. Insulation adhesive and mechanical fasteners.
 - d. EIFS accessories, including trim components and flashing.
 3. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Basis-of-Design: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide "HZ DGG Standard WaterMaster EIFS" as manufactured by Parex USA, Inc., or a comparable product by one of the following:
1. Dryvit Systems, Inc.
 2. Finestone.

3. Sto Corp.

- B. Source Limitations: Obtain EIFS from single source from single EIFS manufacturer and from sources approved by EIFS manufacturer as tested and compatible with EIFS components.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. EIFS Performance: Comply with ASTM E 2568 and ICC-ES AC219 and with the following:

1. Weathertightness: Resistant to water penetration from exterior.
2. Structural Performance: EIFS assembly and components shall comply with ICC-ES AC219 when tested according to ASTM E 2568.
 - a. Wind Loads: Uniform pressure as indicated on Drawings.
3. Impact Performance: ASTM E 2568, Standard impact resistance unless otherwise indicated.
4. Bond Integrity: Free from bond failure within EIFS components or between EIFS and substrates, resulting from exposure to fire, wind loads, weather, or other in-service conditions.
5. Abrasion Resistance of Finish Coat: Sample consisting of 1-inch-thick EIFS mounted on 1/2-inch-thick gypsum board; cured for a minimum of 28 days and shows no cracking, checking, or loss of film integrity after exposure to 528 quarts of sand when tested according to ASTM D 968, Method A.
6. Mildew Resistance of Finish Coat: Sample applied to 2-by-2-inch clean glass substrate; cured for 28 days and shows no growth when tested according to ASTM D 3273 and evaluated according to ASTM D 3274.

2.3 EIFS MATERIALS

- A. Primer/Sealer: EIFS manufacturer's standard substrate conditioner designed to protect substrates from moisture penetration and to improve the bond between substrate and insulation adhesive.
- B. Flexible-Membrane Flashing: Cold-applied, self-adhering, self-healing, rubberized-asphalt and polyethylene-film composite sheet or tape and primer; EIFS manufacturer's standard or product recommended in writing by EIFS manufacturer.
- C. Insulation Adhesive: EIFS manufacturer's standard formulation designed for indicated use; compatible with substrate.

- D. Reinforcing Mesh: Balanced, alkali-resistant, open-weave, glass-fiber mesh treated for compatibility with other EIFS materials, made from continuous multi-end strands with retained mesh tensile strength of not less than 120 lbf/in. according to ASTM E 2098 and the following:
 - 1. Reinforcing Mesh for EIFS, General: Not less than weight required to meet impact-performance level specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.
 - 2. Strip Reinforcing Mesh: Not less than recommended by EIFS manufacturer.
 - 3. Detail Reinforcing Mesh: Not less than recommended by EIFS manufacturer.
 - 4. Corner Reinforcing Mesh: Not less than recommended by EIFS manufacturer.
- E. Base-Coat Materials: EIFS manufacturer's standard mixture complying with the following:
 - 1. Factory-blended dry formulation of portland cement, dry polymer admixture, and inert fillers to which only water is added at Project site.
- F. Waterproof Adhesive/Base-Coat Materials: EIFS manufacturer's standard waterproof formulation and complying with the following:
 - 1. Job-combined formulation of manufacturer's standard polymer-emulsion adhesive and manufacturer's standard dry mix containing portland cement.
- G. Mechanical Fasteners: EIFS manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant fasteners consisting of thermal cap, standard washer and shaft attachments, and fastener indicated below; designed to resist Project's design loads; capable of pulling fastener head below surface of insulation board; and complying with the following:
 - 1. For attachment to steel studs from 0.033 to 0.112 inch in thickness, provide steel drill screws complying with ASTM C 954.
- H. Primer: EIFS manufacturer's standard factory-mixed, elastomeric-polymer primer for preparing base-coat surface for application of finish coat.
- I. Finish-Coat Materials: EIFS manufacturer's standard acrylic-based coating with enhanced mildew resistance complying with the following:
 - 1. Factory-mixed formulation of polymer-emulsion binder, colorfast mineral pigments, sound stone particles, and fillers.
 - 2. Colors: To match Architect's sample.
 - 3. Textures: To match Architect's sample.

- J. Sealer: Manufacturer's waterproof, clear acrylic-based sealer for protecting finish coat.
- K. Water: Potable.
- L. Trim Accessories: Type as designated or required to suit conditions indicated and to comply with EIFS manufacturer's written instructions; manufactured from UV-stabilized PVC; and complying with ASTM D 1784 and ASTM C 1063.
 - 1. Casing Bead: Prefabricated, one-piece type for attachment behind insulation, of depth required to suit thickness of coating and insulation, with face leg perforated for bonding to coating and back leg.
 - 2. Drip Screed/Track: Prefabricated, one-piece type for attachment behind insulation with face leg extended to form a drip, of depth required to suit thickness of coating and insulation, with face leg perforated for bonding to coating and back leg.

2.4 MIXING

- A. Comply with EIFS manufacturer's requirements for combining and mixing materials. Do not introduce admixtures, water, or other materials except as recommended by EIFS manufacturer. Mix materials in clean containers. Use materials within time period specified by EIFS manufacturer or discard.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roof edges, wall framing, flashings, openings, substrates, and junctures at other construction for suitable conditions where EIFS will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
 - 1. Begin coating application only after surfaces are dry.
 - 2. Application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Protect contiguous work from moisture deterioration and soiling caused by application of EIFS. Provide temporary covering and other protection needed to prevent spattering of exterior finish coats on other work.

- B. Protect EIFS, substrates, and wall construction behind them from inclement weather during installation. Prevent penetration of moisture behind EIFS and deterioration of substrates.
- C. Prepare and clean substrates to comply with EIFS manufacturer's written instructions to obtain optimum bond between substrate and adhesive for insulation.
 - 1. Concrete Substrates: Provide clean, dry, neutral-pH substrate for insulation installation. Verify suitability of substrate by performing bond and moisture tests recommended by EIFS manufacturer.

3.3 EIFS INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with ASTM C 1397, ASTM E 2511, and EIFS manufacturer's written instructions for installation of EIFS as applicable to each type of substrate.

3.4 SUBSTRATE PROTECTION APPLICATION

- A. Primer/Sealer: Apply over gypsum sheathing substrates and where required by EIFS manufacturer for improving adhesion of insulation to substrate.
- B. Flexible-Membrane Flashing: Apply and lap to shed water; seal at openings, penetrations, terminations, and where required by EIFS manufacturer. Prime substrates if required and install flashing to comply with EIFS manufacturer's written instructions and details.

3.5 TRIM INSTALLATION

- A. Trim: Apply trim accessories at perimeter of EIFS, at expansion joints and elsewhere as indicated. Coordinate with installation of insulation.
 - 1. Casing Bead: Use at other locations.

3.6 INSTALLATION GENERAL

- A. General: Installation shall conform to this specification and manufacturer's Application Guide, written instructions and drawing details.

3.7 IMPACT LAYER INSTALLATION

- A. Apply base coat to a minimum 1/16" thick and fully embed ultra-high impact 20 oz. mesh in base coat of glass-mat gypsum sheathing. Mesh Edges are butted tight.

3.8 INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Board Insulation: Adhesively and mechanically attach insulation to substrate in compliance with ASTM C 1397 and the following:
1. Sheathing: Apply adhesive to insulation by notched-trowel method in a manner that results in coating the entire surface of sheathing with adhesive once insulation is adhered to substrate. Apply adhesive to a thickness of not less than 1/4 inch for factory mixed and not less than 3/8 inch for field mixed, measured from surface of insulation before placement.
 2. Press and slide insulation into place. Apply pressure over the entire surface of insulation to accomplish uniform contact, high initial grab, and overall level surface.
 3. Allow adhered insulation to remain undisturbed for not less than 24 hours, before installing mechanical fasteners, beginning rasping and sanding insulation or before applying base coat and reinforcing mesh.
 4. Mechanically attach insulation to substrate. Install top surface of fastener heads flush with plane of insulation. Install fasteners into or through substrates with the following minimum penetration:
 - a. Steel Framing: 5/16 inch.
 5. Apply insulation over dry substrates in courses with long edges of boards oriented horizontally.
 6. Begin first course of insulation from a level base line and work upward.
 7. Begin first course of insulation from screed/track and work upward. Work from perimeter casing beads toward interior of panels if possible.
 8. Stagger vertical joints of insulation boards in successive courses to produce running bond pattern. Locate joints so no piece of insulation is less than 12 inches wide or 6 inches high. Offset joints not less than 6 inches from corners of window and door openings and not less than 4 inches from aesthetic reveals.
 - a. Adhesive Attachment: Offset joints of insulation not less than 6 inches from horizontal and 4 inches from vertical joints in sheathing.
 - b. Mechanical Attachment: Offset joints of insulation from horizontal joints in sheathing.
 9. Interlock ends at internal and external corners.

10. Abut insulation tightly at joints within and between each course to produce flush, continuously even surfaces without gaps or raised edges between boards. If gaps greater than 1/16 inch occur, fill with insulation cut to fit gaps exactly; insert insulation without using adhesive or other material.
11. Cut insulation to fit openings, corners, and projections precisely and to produce edges and shapes complying with details indicated.
12. Rasp or sand flush entire surface of insulation to remove irregularities projecting more than 1/32 inch from surface of insulation and to remove yellowed areas due to sun exposure; do not create depressions deeper than 1/16 inch. Prevent airborne dispersal and immediately collect insulation raspings or sandings.
13. Cut aesthetic reveals in outside face of insulation with high-speed router and bit configured to produce grooves, rabbets, and other features that comply with profiles and locations indicated. Do not reduce insulation thickness at aesthetic reveals to less than 3/4 inch.
14. Interrupt insulation for expansion joints where indicated.
15. Form joints for sealant application by leaving gaps between adjoining insulation edges and between insulation edges and dissimilar adjoining surfaces. Make gaps wide enough to produce joint widths indicated after encapsulating joint substrates with base coat and reinforcing mesh.
16. Form joints for sealant application with back-to-back casing beads for joints within EIFS and with perimeter casing beads at dissimilar adjoining surfaces. Make gaps between casing beads and between perimeter casing beads and adjoining surfaces of width indicated.
17. Fully wrap board edges with strip reinforcing mesh.
18. Treat exposed edges of insulation as follows:
 - a. Except for edges forming substrates of sealant joints, encapsulate with base coat, reinforcing mesh, and finish coat.
 - b. Encapsulate edges forming substrates of sealant joints within EIFS or between EIFS and other work with base coat and reinforcing mesh.
 - c. At edges trimmed by accessories, extend base coat, reinforcing mesh, and finish coat over face leg of accessories.
19. Coordinate installation of flashing and insulation to produce wall assembly that does not allow water to penetrate behind flashing and EIFS lamina.

3.9 BASE-COAT INSTALLATION

- A. Base Coat: Apply to exposed surfaces of insulation in minimum thickness recommended in writing by EIFS manufacturer, but not less than 1/16-inch dry-coat thickness.
- B. Reinforcing Mesh: Embed reinforcing mesh in wet base coat to produce wrinkle-free installation with mesh continuous at corners, overlapped not less than 2-1/2 inches or otherwise treated at joints to comply with ASTM C 1397 and EIFS manufacturer's written instructions. Do not lap reinforcing mesh within 8 inches of corners. Completely embed mesh, applying additional base-coat material if necessary, so reinforcing-mesh color and pattern are invisible.

3.10 FINISH-COAT INSTALLATION

- A. Primer: Apply over dry base coat according to EIFS manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Finish Coat: Apply over dry base coat, maintaining a wet edge at all times for uniform appearance, in thickness required by EIFS manufacturer to produce a uniform finish of color and texture matching approved sample and free of cold joints, shadow lines, and texture variations.
 - 1. Embed aggregate in finish coat according to EIFS manufacturer's written instructions to produce a uniform applied-aggregate finish of color and texture matching approved sample.
- C. Sealer Coat: Apply over dry finish coat, in number of coats and thickness required by EIFS manufacturer.

3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a qualified special inspector to perform the following special inspections:
 - 1. As stipulated in Ch. 17 of the IBC.
- B. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. EIFS Tests and Inspections: According to ASTM E 2568.
- D. EIFS will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Testing agency will prepare test and inspection reports.

3.12 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Remove temporary covering and protection of other work. Promptly remove coating materials from window and door frames and other surfaces outside areas indicated to receive EIFS coatings.

END OF SECTION

**SECTION 07 25 00
WEATHER BARRIERS**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Water-Resistive Barrier: Under exterior wall cladding, over sheathing or other substrate; not air tight or vapor retardant.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 07 62 00 - Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim: Metal flashings installed in conjunction with weather barriers.
- B. Section 07 92 00 - Joint Sealants: Sealing building expansion joints.
- C. Section 09 21 16 - Gypsum Board Assemblies: Water-resistive barrier under exterior cladding.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. 40 CFR 59, Subpart D - National Volatile Organic Compound Emission Standards for Architectural Coatings; U.S. Environmental Protection Agency; current edition.
- B. AATCC Test Method 127 - Water Resistance: Hydrostatic Pressure Test; 2018.
- C. ASTM D4397 - Standard Specification for Polyethylene Sheeting for Construction, Industrial, and Agricultural Applications; 2016.
- D. ASTM D5590 - Standard Test Method for Determining the Resistance of Paint Films and Related Coatings to Fungal Defacement by Accelerated Four-Week Agar Plate Assay; 2017.
- E. ASTM E2178 - Standard Test Method for Air Permeance of Building Materials; 2013.
- F. ICC-ES AC212 - Acceptance Criteria for Water-Resistive Coatings Used as Water-Resistive Barriers over Exterior Sheathing; 2015.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Provide data on material characteristics.
- B. Shop Drawings: Provide drawings of special joint conditions.
- C. ABAA Field Quality Control Submittals: Submit third-party reports of testing and inspection required by ABAA QAP.

- D. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate preparation and installation methods.
- E. ABAA Installer Qualification: Submit documentation of current contractor accreditation and current installer certification; keep copies of each contractor accreditation and installer certification on site during and after installation, and present on-site documentation upon request.
- F. Testing Agency Qualification Statement.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Air Barrier Association of America (ABAA) Quality Assurance Program (QAP); www.airbarrier.org/#sle:
 - 1. Installer Qualification: Use accredited contractor, certified installers, evaluated materials, and third-party field quality control audit.
 - 2. Manufacturer Qualification: Use evaluated materials from a single manufacturer regularly engaged in air barrier material manufacture, and use secondary materials approved in writing by primary material manufacturer.

1.06 FIELD CONDITIONS

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 WEATHER BARRIER ASSEMBLIES

- A. Water-Resistive Barrier: Provide on exterior walls under exterior cladding.
 - 1. Use plastic sheet unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Under Portland cement stucco, use two separate layers of building paper.
 - 3. Under siding, use two separate layers of building paper.

2.02 WATER-RESISTIVE BARRIER MATERIALS (NEITHER AIR BARRIER OR VAPOR RETARDER)

- A. Plastic Sheet: Polymeric-based sheet complying with requirements of ICC-ES AC308 Grade D with 60-minute water-resistance; do not use polyethylene sheet.

2.03 ACCESSORIES

- A. Sealants, Tapes, and Accessories for Sealing Weather Barrier and Sealing Weather Barrier to Adjacent Substrates: As specified or as recommended by weather barrier manufacturer.

- B. Flexible Flashing: Self-adhesive sheet flashing complying with ASTM D1970/D1970M, except slip resistance requirement is waived if not installed on a roof.
- C. Sill Plate Sealer: Closed-cell foam tape with rubberized adhesive membrane; bridges gap between foundation structure and sill plate or skirt board.
- D. Pre-formed Transition Membrane: Semi-rigid silicone or polyester composition, tapered edges, and tear resistant.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that surfaces and conditions are ready to accept the work of this section.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Remove projections, protruding fasteners, and loose or foreign matter that might interfere with proper installation.
- B. Clean and prime substrate surfaces to receive adhesives in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Install materials in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Water-Resistive Barriers: Install continuous barrier over surfaces indicated, with sheets lapped to shed water but with seams not sealed.
- C. Apply sealants and adhesives within recommended application temperature ranges. Consult manufacturer if temperature is out of this range.
- D. Openings and Penetrations in Exterior Weather Barriers:
 - 1. Install flashing over sills, covering entire sill frame member, extending at least 5 inches onto weather barrier and at least 6 inches up jambs; mechanically fasten stretched edges.
 - 2. At openings to be filled with frames having nailing flanges, seal head and jamb flanges using a continuous bead of sealant compressed by flange and cover flanges with sealing tape at least 4 inches wide; do not seal sill flange.
 - 3. At openings to be filled with non-flanged frames, seal weather barrier to each side of opening framing, using flashing at least 9 inches wide, covering entire depth of framing.

4. At head of openings, install flashing under weather barrier extending at least 2 inches beyond face of jambs; seal weather barrier to flashing.
5. At interior face of openings, seal gap between window/door frame and rough framing, using joint sealant over backer rod.
6. Service and Other Penetrations: Form flashing around penetrating item and seal to weather barrier surface.

3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Do not cover installed weather barriers until required inspections have been completed.
- B. Obtain approval of installation procedures by the weather barrier manufacturer based on a mock-up installed in place, prior to proceeding with remainder of installation.

3.05 PROTECTION

- A. Do not leave materials exposed to weather longer than recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 07 25 00

**SECTION 07 27 26
FLUID-APPLIED MEMBRANE AIR BARRIERS**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes fluid-applied, vapor-permeable membrane air barriers.

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. Abbreviations and Acronyms:

- 1. ABAA: Air Barrier Association of America
- 2. ASTM: ASTM International.
- 3. NFPA: National Fire Protection Association.

- B. Reference Standards: The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

- 1. ASTM A 240: Specification for Chromium and Chromium-Nickel Stainless Steel Plate, Sheet, and Strip for Pressure Vessels and for General Applications
- 2. ASTM C 920: Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants
- 3. ASTM C 1193: Guide for Use of Joint Sealants
- 4. ASTM D 412: Test Methods for Vulcanized Rubber and Thermoplastic Elastomers – Tension.
- 5. ASTM D 4258: Standard Practice for Surface Cleaning Concrete for Coating
- 6. ASTM D 4263: Test Method for Indicating Moisture in Concrete by the Plastic Sheet Method
- 7. ASTM D 4541: Test Method for Pull-Off Strength of Coatings Using Portable Adhesion Testers.

8. ASTM E 96: Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials
9. ASTM E 783: Test Method for Field Measurement of Air Leakage through Installed Exterior Windows and Doors.
10. ASTM E 1186: Practices for Air Leakage Site Detection in Building Envelopes and Air Barrier Systems
11. ASTM E 2178: Test Method for Air Permeance of Building Materials
12. ASTM E 2357: Standard Test Method for Determining Air Leakage of Air Barrier Assemblies.
13. NFPA 285: Method of Test for the Evaluation of Fire Propagation Characteristics of Exterior, Nonload-Bearing Wall Assemblies Containing Combustible Components.

1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. Air-Barrier Material: A primary element that provides a continuous barrier to the movement of air.
- B. Air-Barrier Accessory: A transitional component of the air barrier that provides continuity.
- C. Air-Barrier Assembly: The collection of air-barrier materials and accessory materials applied to an opaque wall, including joints and junctions to abutting construction, to control air movement through the wall.

1.5 PRE-INSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Pre-Installation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 1. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
 2. Review required submittals, submittal schedule, and status of submittal review.
 3. Review performance requirements.
 4. Review methods and procedures related to air-barrier installation.
 5. Review schedule for permanently covering air-barriers.
 6. Examine support conditions for compliance with requirements, including attachment to structural members.

7. Review temporary protection requirements for air-barrier during and after installation.
8. Review of procedures for repair of air-barrier damaged after installation.
9. Document proceedings, including corrective measures and actions required, and furnish copy of record to each participant.

1.6 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include manufacturer's written instructions for evaluating, preparing, and treating substrate; technical data; and tested physical and performance properties of products.

B. Shop Drawings: For air-barrier assemblies.

1. Show locations and extent of air barrier. Include details for substrate joints and cracks, counterflashing strips, penetrations, inside and outside corners, terminations, and tie-ins with adjoining construction.
2. Include details of interfaces with other materials that form part of air barrier.

1.7 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer. Include list of ABAA-certified installers and supervisors employed by the Installer, who work on Project.

B. Product Certificates: From air-barrier manufacturer, certifying compatibility of air barriers and accessory materials with Project materials that connect to or that come in contact with the barrier.

C. Product Test Reports: For each air-barrier assembly, for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency or performed by a qualified testing agency.

D. Meeting Records: Minutes of pre-installation conference.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.

1. Installer shall be licensed by ABAA according to ABAA's Quality Assurance Program and shall employ ABAA-certified installers and supervisors on Project.

- B. Integrated Exterior Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, and set quality standards for fabrication and installation. Construct air barrier as part of integrated exterior mockups as specified in Section 01 40 00 "Mockups".

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Remove and replace liquid materials that cannot be applied within their stated shelf life.
- B. Protect stored materials from direct sunlight.

1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Apply air barrier within the range of ambient and substrate temperatures recommended by air-barrier manufacturer.
 - 1. Protect substrates from environmental conditions that affect air-barrier performance.
 - 2. Do not apply air barrier to a damp or wet substrate or during snow, rain, fog, or mist.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Air barrier shall be capable of performing as a continuous vapor-permeable air barrier and as a liquid-water drainage plane flashed to discharge to the exterior incidental condensation or water penetration. Air-barrier assemblies shall be capable of accommodating substrate movement and of sealing substrate expansion and control joints, construction material changes, penetrations, tie-ins to installed waterproofing, and transitions at perimeter conditions without deterioration and air leakage exceeding specified limits.
- B. Air-Barrier Assembly Air Leakage: Maximum 0.04 cfm/sq. ft. of surface area at 1.57 lbf/sq. ft., when tested according to ASTM E 2357.
- C. Source Limitations: Obtain primary air-barrier materials and air-barrier accessories from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 VAPOR-PERMEABLE MEMBRANE AIR-BARRIER

- A. Fluid-Applied, Vapor-Permeable Membrane Air Barrier: Synthetic polymer membrane.
 - 1. Synthetic Polymer Membrane:

- a. Basis-of-Design: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide "Perm-A-Barrier VPL" as manufactured by Grace Construction Products, or a comparable product by one of the following named manufacturers.
 - 1) Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing Inc.
 - 2) Henry Company.
 - 3) Sto Corp.
2. Physical and Performance Properties:
 - a. Air Permeance: Maximum 0.003 cfm/sq. ft. of surface area at 1.57-lbf/sq. ft. pressure difference; ASTM E 2178.
 - b. Vapor Permeance: Minimum 15 perms; ASTM E 96.
 - c. Ultimate Elongation: Minimum 250 percent; ASTM D 412, Die C.
 - d. Fire Propagation Characteristics: Passes NFPA 285 testing as part of an approved assembly.

2.3 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

- A. General: Accessory materials recommended by air-barrier manufacturer to produce a complete air-barrier assembly and compatible with primary air-barrier material.
- B. Primer: Liquid waterborne primer recommended for substrate by air-barrier material manufacturer.
- C. Counterflashing Strip: Modified bituminous, 40-mil-thick, self-adhering sheet consisting of 32 mils of rubberized asphalt laminated to an 8-mil-thick, cross-laminated polyethylene film with release liner backing.
- D. Joint Reinforcing Strip: Air-barrier manufacturer's glass-fiber-mesh tape.
- E. Substrate-Patching Membrane: Manufacturer's standard trowel-grade substrate filler.
- F. Adhesive and Tape: Air-barrier manufacturer's standard adhesive and pressure-sensitive adhesive tape.
- G. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 240, Type 304, 0.0187 inch thick, and Series 300 stainless-steel fasteners.

- H. Adhesive-Coated Transition Strip: Vapor-permeable, 17-mil-thick, self-adhering strip consisting of an adhesive coating over a permeable laminate with a permeance value of 37 perms.
- I. Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, single-component, neutral-curing silicone; Class 100/50 (low modulus), Grade NS, Use NT related to exposure, and, as applicable to joint substrates indicated, Use O. Comply with Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants."
- J. Termination Mastic: Air-barrier manufacturer's standard cold fluid-applied elastomeric liquid; trowel grade.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Verify that substrates are sound and free of oil, grease, dirt, excess mortar, or other contaminants.
 - 2. Verify that concrete has cured and aged for minimum time period recommended by air-barrier manufacturer.
 - 3. Verify that concrete is visibly dry and free of moisture. Test for capillary moisture by plastic sheet method according to ASTM D 4263.
 - 4. Verify that masonry joints are flush and completely filled with mortar.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 SURFACE PREPARATION

- A. Clean, prepare, treat, and seal substrate according to manufacturer's written instructions. Provide clean, dust-free, and dry substrate for air-barrier application.
- B. Mask off adjoining surfaces not covered by air barrier to prevent spillage and overspray affecting other construction.
- C. Remove grease, oil, bitumen, form-release agents, paints, curing compounds, and other penetrating contaminants or film-forming coatings from concrete.

- D. Remove fins, ridges, mortar, and other projections and fill honeycomb, aggregate pockets, holes, and other voids in concrete with substrate-patching membrane.
- E. Remove excess mortar from masonry ties, shelf angles, and other obstructions.
- F. At changes in substrate plane, apply sealant or termination mastic beads at sharp corners and edges to form a smooth transition from one plane to another.
- G. Cover gaps in substrate plane and form a smooth transition from one substrate plane to another with stainless-steel sheet mechanically fastened to structural framing to provide continuous support for air barrier.

3.3 JOINT TREATMENT

- A. Concrete and Masonry: Prepare, treat, rout, and fill joints and cracks in substrate according to ASTM C 1193 and air-barrier manufacturer's written instructions. Remove dust and dirt from joints and cracks complying with ASTM D 4258 before coating surfaces.
 - 1. Prime substrate and apply a single thickness scratch coat of air-barrier manufacturer's recommended preparation coat extending a minimum of 3 inches along each side of joints and cracks. Apply a double thickness of fluid air-barrier material and embed a joint reinforcing strip in preparation coat.
- B. Gypsum Sheathing: Fill joints greater than 1/4 inch with sealant according to ASTM C 1193 and air-barrier manufacturer's written instructions. Apply first layer of fluid air-barrier material at joints. Tape joints with joint reinforcing strip after first layer is dry. Apply a second layer of fluid air-barrier material over joint reinforcing strip.

3.4 TRANSITION STRIP INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install strips, transition strips, and accessory materials according to air-barrier manufacturer's written instructions to form a seal with adjacent construction and maintain a continuous air barrier.
 - 1. Coordinate the installation of air barrier with installation of roofing membrane and base flashing to ensure continuity of air barrier with roofing membrane.
 - 2. Install modified bituminous strip on roofing membrane or base flashing so that a minimum of 3 inches of coverage is achieved over each substrate.
- B. Connect and seal exterior wall air-barrier material continuously to roofing-membrane air barrier, concrete below-grade structures, floor-to-floor construction, exterior glazing and window systems, glazed curtain-wall systems, storefront systems, exterior louvers, exterior door framing, and other construction used in exterior wall openings, using accessory materials.

- C. At end of each working day, seal top edge of strips and transition strips to substrate with termination mastic.
- D. Apply joint sealants forming part of air-barrier assembly within manufacturer's recommended application temperature ranges. Consult manufacturer when sealant cannot be applied within these temperature ranges.
- E. Wall Openings: Prime concealed, perimeter frame surfaces of windows, curtain walls, storefronts, and doors. Apply adhesive-coated transition strip so that a minimum of 3 inches of coverage is achieved over each substrate. Maintain 3 inches of full contact over firm bearing to perimeter frames with not less than 1 inch of full contact.
 - 1. Adhesive-Coated Transition Strip: Roll firmly to enhance adhesion.
- F. Fill gaps in perimeter frame surfaces of windows, curtain walls, storefronts, and doors, and miscellaneous penetrations of air-barrier material with foam sealant.
- G. Seal strips and transition strips around masonry reinforcing or ties and penetrations with termination mastic.
- H. Seal top of through-wall flashings to air barrier with an additional 6-inch-wide, counterflashing strip.
- I. Seal exposed edges of strips at seams, cuts, penetrations, and terminations not concealed by metal counterflashings or ending in reglets with termination mastic.
- J. Repair punctures, voids, and deficient lapped seams in strips and transition strips. Slit and flatten fishmouths and blisters. Patch with transition strips extending 6 inches beyond repaired areas in strip direction.

3.5 FLUID AIR-BARRIER MEMBRANE INSTALLATION

- A. General: Apply fluid air-barrier material to form a seal with strips and transition strips and to achieve a continuous air barrier according to air-barrier manufacturer's written instructions. Apply fluid air-barrier material within manufacturer's recommended application temperature ranges.
 - 1. Apply primer to substrates at required rate and allow it to dry.
 - 2. Limit priming to areas that will be covered by fluid air-barrier material on same day. Reprime areas exposed for more than 24 hours.
 - 3. Prime glass-fiber-surfaced gypsum sheathing with number of prime coats needed to achieve required bond, with adequate drying time between coats.

- B. Membrane Air Barriers: Apply a continuous unbroken air-barrier membrane to substrates according to the following thickness. Apply air-barrier membrane in full contact around protrusions such as masonry ties.
 - 1. Vapor-Permeable Membrane Air Barrier: Total dry film thickness as recommended in writing by manufacturer to meet performance requirements, but not less than 40-mil dry film thickness, applied in one or more equal coats.
- C. Apply strip and transition strip over cured air-barrier material overlapping 3 inches onto each surface according to air-barrier manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Do not cover air barrier until it has been tested and inspected by Owner's testing agency.
- E. Correct deficiencies in or remove air barrier that does not comply with requirements; repair substrates and reapply air-barrier components.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Inspections: Air-barrier materials, accessories, and installation are subject to inspection for compliance with requirements. Inspections may include the following:
 - 1. Continuous structural support of air-barrier system has been provided.
 - 2. Masonry and concrete surfaces are smooth, clean, and free of cavities, protrusions, and mortar droppings.
 - 3. Site conditions for application temperature and dryness of substrates have been maintained.
 - 4. Maximum exposure time of materials to UV deterioration has not been exceeded.
 - 5. Surfaces have been primed, if applicable.
 - 6. Laps in strips and transition strips have complied with minimum requirements and have been shingled in the correct direction (or mastic has been applied on exposed edges), with no fishmouths.
 - 7. Termination mastic has been applied on cut edges.
 - 8. Strips and transition strips have been firmly adhered to substrate.

9. Compatible materials have been used.
 10. Transitions at changes in direction and structural support at gaps have been provided.
 11. Connections between assemblies (air-barrier and sealants) have complied with requirements for cleanliness, surface preparation and priming, structural support, integrity, and continuity of seal.
 12. All penetrations have been sealed.
- C. Tests: As determined by Owner's testing agency from among the following tests:
1. Qualitative Air-Leakage Testing: Air-barrier assemblies will be tested for evidence of air leakage according to ASTM E 1186, smoke pencil with pressurization or depressurization.
 2. Quantitative Air-Leakage Testing: Air-barrier assemblies will be tested for air leakage according to ASTM E 783.
 3. Adhesion Testing: Air-barrier assemblies will be tested for minimum air-barrier adhesion of 30 lbf/sq. in. according to ASTM D 4541 for each 600 sq. ft. of installed air barrier or part thereof.
- D. Air barriers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
1. Apply additional air-barrier material, according to manufacturer's written instructions, where inspection results indicate insufficient thickness.
 2. Remove and replace deficient air-barrier components for retesting as specified above.
- E. Repair damage to air barriers caused by testing; follow manufacturer's written instructions.

3.7 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Protect air-barrier system from damage during application and remainder of construction period, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Protect air barrier from exposure to UV light and harmful weather exposure as required by manufacturer. If exposed to these conditions for more than 30 days, remove and replace air barrier or install additional, full-thickness, air-barrier application after repairing and preparing the overexposed membrane according to air-barrier manufacturer's written instructions.
 2. Protect air barrier from contact with incompatible materials and sealants not approved by air-barrier manufacturer.

- B. Clean spills, stains, and soiling from construction that would be exposed in the completed work using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.
- C. Remove masking materials after installation.

END OF SECTION

**SECTION 07 42 13
METAL WALL PANELS**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Manufactured metal panels for exterior wall panels and subgirt framing assembly, with insulation, related flashings, and accessory components.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 05 40 00 - Cold-Formed Metal Framing: Wall panel substrate.
- B. Section 07 25 00 - Weather Barriers: Weather barrier under wall panels.
- C. Section 07 92 00 - Joint Sealants: Sealing joints between metal wall panel system and adjacent construction.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. AAMA 2605 - Voluntary Specification, Performance Requirements and Test Procedures for Superior Performing Organic Coatings on Aluminum Extrusions and Panels (with Coil Coating Appendix); 2017a.
- B. AAMA 609 & 610 - Cleaning and Maintenance Guide for Architecturally Finished Aluminum (Combined Document); 2015.
- C. ASTM A653/A653M - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process; 2019a.
- D. ASTM B209 - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate; 2014.
- E. ASTM C665 - Standard Specification for Mineral-Fiber Blanket Thermal Insulation for Light Frame Construction and Manufactured Housing; 2017.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: Indicate dimensions, layout, joints, construction details, and methods of anchorage.
- B. Samples: Submit two samples of wall panel and soffit panel, 12 inch by 12 inch in size illustrating finish color, sheen, and texture.
- C. Manufacturer's Qualification Statement.
- D. Installer's Qualification Statement.

- E. Warranty Documentation for Installation of Building Rainscreen Assembly: Submit installer warranty and ensure that forms have been completed in Owner's name and registered with installer.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum three years of documented experience.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in installing products of the type specified in this section with minimum three years of documented experience.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect panels from accelerated weathering by removing or venting sheet plastic shipping wrap.
- B. Store prefinished material off the ground and protected from weather; prevent twisting, bending, or abrasion; provide ventilation; slope metal sheets to ensure proper drainage.
- C. Prevent contact with materials that may cause discoloration or staining of products.

1.07 WARRANTY

- A. Correct defective work within a five year period after Date of Substantial Completion, including defects in water tightness and integrity of seals for metal wall panels.
- B. Installation Warranty for Building Rainscreen Assembly: Installer of exterior rainscreen assembly (including air/vapor barrier and attachments, framing, and exterior panels) to provide 10-year warranty that includes coverage for defective materials and/or workmanship. This warranty will also clearly include materials, labor, necessary activity to access these areas, and removal of any materials to effect repairs and restore to watertight conditions.
www.edacontractors.com/#sle

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURED METAL PANELS

- A. Wall Panel System: Factory fabricated prefinished metal panel system, site assembled.
 - 1. Provide exterior wall panels and subgirt framing assembly.

2. Design and size components to support assembly dead loads, and to withstand live loads caused by positive and negative wind pressure acting normal to plane of wall.
3. Maximum Allowable Deflection of Panel: $L/180$ for length(L) of span.
4. Movement: Accommodate movement within system without damage to components or deterioration of seals, movement between system and perimeter components when subject to seasonal temperature cycling; dynamic loading and release of loads; and deflection of structural support framing.
5. Drainage: Provide positive drainage to exterior for moisture entering or condensation occurring within panel system.
6. Fabrication: Formed true to shape, accurate in size, square, and free from distortion or defects; pieces of longest practical lengths.
7. Corners: Factory-fabricated in one continuous piece with minimum 2 inch returns.
8. Provide continuity of air barrier and vapor retarder seal at building enclosure elements in accordance with materials specified in Section 07 25 00.

B. Exterior Wall Panels:

1. Profile: Match existing.
2. Side Seams: Double-interlocked, tight-fitting, sealed with continuous gaskets.
3. Panel Width: Match existing.
4. Color: To match existing.

C. Subgirt Framing Assembly:

1. Match existing profile; to attach panel system to building.

D. Internal and External Corners: Same material, thickness, and finish as exterior sheets; profile to suit system; shop cut and factory mitered to required angles.

E. Trim: Same material, thickness and finish as exterior sheets; brake formed to required profiles.

F. Anchors: To match existing.

2.02 FINISHES

- A. Match existing for finish color and type.

2.03 ACCESSORIES

- A. Gaskets: Manufacturer's standard type suitable for use with system, permanently resilient; ultraviolet and ozone resistant.
- B. Concealed Sealants: Non-curing butyl sealant or tape sealant.
- C. Exposed Sealant: Elastomeric; silicone, polyurethane, or silyl-terminated polyether/polyurethane.
- D. Fasteners: Manufacturer's standard type to suit application; with soft neoprene washers, steel, hot dip galvanized. Fastener cap same color as exterior panel.
- E. Field Touch-up Paint: As recommended by panel manufacturer.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that building framing members are ready to receive panels.
- B. Verify that water-resistive barrier has been installed over substrate completely and correctly.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Install subgirts perpendicular to panel length, securely fastened to substrates and shimmed and leveled to uniform plane. Space at intervals indicated.

3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Install panels on walls and soffits in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Fasten panels to structural supports; aligned, level, and plumb.
- C. Locate joints over supports.
- D. Lap panel ends minimum 2 inches.
- E. Use concealed fasteners unless otherwise approved by Architect.
- F. Seal and place gaskets to prevent weather penetration. Maintain neat appearance.

3.04 TOLERANCES

- A. Maximum Offset From True Alignment Between Adjacent Members Butting or In Line: 1/16 inch.
- B. Maximum Variation from Plane or Location Indicated on Drawings: 1/4 inch.

3.05 CLEANING

- A. Remove site cuttings from finish surfaces.
- B. Remove protective material from wall panel surfaces.
- C. Upon completion of installation, thoroughly clean prefinished aluminum surfaces in accordance with AAMA 609 & 610.

END OF SECTION 07 42 13

**SECTION 07 62 00
SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Fabricated sheet metal items, including flashings, counterflashings, exterior penetrations, and other items indicated in Schedule.
- B. Sealants for joints within sheet metal fabrications.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 07 92 00 - Joint Sealants: Sealing non-lap joints between sheet metal fabrications and adjacent construction.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. AAMA 611 - Voluntary Specification for Anodized Architectural Aluminum; 2014 (2015 Errata).
- B. AAMA 2605 - Voluntary Specification, Performance Requirements and Test Procedures for Superior Performing Organic Coatings on Aluminum Extrusions and Panels (with Coil Coating Appendix); 2017a.
- C. ASTM A653/A653M - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process; 2019a.
- D. ASTM C920 - Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants; 2018.
- E. CDA A4050 - Copper in Architecture - Handbook; current edition.
- F. SMACNA (ASMM) - Architectural Sheet Metal Manual; 2012.

1.04 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Preinstallation Meeting: Convene one week before starting work of this section.

1.05 SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: Indicate material profile, jointing pattern, jointing details, fastening methods, flashings, terminations, and installation details.

1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Perform work in accordance with SMACNA (ASMM) and CDA A4050 requirements and standard details, except as otherwise indicated.

- B. Maintain one copy of each document on site.

1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Stack material to prevent twisting, bending, and abrasion, and to provide ventilation. Slope metal sheets to ensure drainage.
- B. Prevent contact with materials that could cause discoloration or staining.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 SHEET MATERIALS

- A. Galvanized Steel: ASTM A653/A653M, with G90/Z275 zinc coating; minimum 24 gage, (0.0239 inch) thick base metal.
- B. Stainless Steel: ASTM A666, Type 304 alloy, soft temper, 28 gage, (0.0156 inch) thick; smooth No. 4 - Brushed finish.

2.02 FABRICATION

- A. Form sections true to shape, accurate in size, square, and free from distortion or defects.
- B. Form pieces in longest possible lengths.
- C. Hem exposed edges on underside 1/2 inch; miter and seam corners.
- D. Form material with flat lock seams, except where otherwise indicated; at moving joints, use sealed lapped, bayonet-type or interlocking hooked seams.
- E. Fabricate corners from one piece with minimum 18 inch long legs; seam for rigidity, seal with sealant.
- F. Fabricate flashings to allow toe to extend 2 inches over roofing gravel. Return and brake edges.

2.03 EXTERIOR PENETRATION FLASHING PANELS

- A. Flashing Panels for Exterior Wall Penetrations: Premanufactured components and accessories as required to preserve integrity of building envelope; suitable for conduits and facade materials to be installed.

2.04 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners: Same material and finish as flashing metal, with soft neoprene washers.
- B. Concealed Sealants: Non-curing butyl sealant.

- C. Exposed Sealants: ASTM C920; elastomeric sealant, with minimum movement capability as recommended by manufacturer for substrates to be sealed; color to match adjacent material.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify roof openings, curbs, pipes, sleeves, ducts, and vents through roof are solidly set, reglets in place, and nailing strips located.
- B. Verify roofing termination and base flashings are in place, sealed, and secure.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Install starter and edge strips, and cleats before starting installation.
- B. Install surface mounted reglets true to lines and levels, and seal top of reglets with sealant.
- C. Back paint concealed metal surfaces with protective backing paint to a minimum dry film thickness of 15 mil.

3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Secure flashings in place using concealed fasteners, and use exposed fasteners only where permitted..
- B. Apply plastic cement compound between metal flashings and felt flashings.
- C. Fit flashings tight in place; make corners square, surfaces true and straight in planes, and lines accurate to profiles.
- D. Solder metal joints for full metal surface contact, and after soldering wash metal clean with neutralizing solution and rinse with water.
- E. Secure gutters and downspouts in place with concealed fasteners.
- F. Slope gutters 1/4 inch per 10 feet, minimum.
- G. Connect downspouts to downspout boots, and grout connection watertight.

3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspection will involve surveillance of work during installation to ascertain compliance with specified requirements.

END OF SECTION 07 62 00

This page intentionally left blank

**SECTION 07 92 00
JOINT SEALANTS**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Nonsag gunnable joint sealants.
- B. Joint backings and accessories.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 07 25 00 - Weather Barriers: Sealants required in conjunction with air barriers and vapor retarders.
- B. Section 08 80 00 - Glazing: Glazing sealants and accessories.
- C. Section 09 21 16 - Gypsum Board Assemblies: Sealing acoustical and sound-rated walls and ceilings.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM C920 - Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants; 2018.
- B. ASTM C1193 - Standard Guide for Use of Joint Sealants; 2016.
- C. ASTM C1248 - Standard Test Method for Staining of Porous Substrate by Joint Sealants; 2018.
- D. SCAQMD 1168 - Adhesive and Sealant Applications; 1989 (Amended 2017).

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data for Sealants: Submit manufacturer's technical data sheets for each product to be used, that includes the following.
 - 1. Physical characteristics, including movement capability, VOC content, hardness, cure time, and color availability.
 - 2. List of backing materials approved for use with the specific product.
 - 3. Substrates that product is known to satisfactorily adhere to and with which it is compatible.
 - 4. Substrates the product should not be used on.
 - 5. Substrates for which use of primer is required.

-
6. Sample product warranty.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing the work of this section and with at least three years of documented experience.

1.06 WARRANTY

- A. Correct defective work within a five year period after Date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Warranty: Include coverage for installed sealants and accessories that fail to achieve watertight seal , exhibit loss of adhesion or cohesion, or do not cure.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 JOINT SEALANT APPLICATIONS

- A. Scope:
 - 1. Exterior Joints: Seal open joints, whether or not the joint is indicated on drawings, unless specifically indicated not to be sealed. Exterior joints to be sealed include, but are not limited to, the following items.
 - a. Wall expansion and control joints.
 - b. Joints between door, window, and other frames and adjacent construction.
 - c. Joints between different exposed materials.
 - d. Openings below ledge angles in masonry.
 - e. Other joints indicated below.
 - 2. Interior Joints: Do not seal interior joints unless specifically indicated to be sealed. Interior joints to be sealed include, but are not limited to, the following items.
 - a. Joints between door, window, and other frames and adjacent construction.
 - b. Other joints indicated below.

-
3. Do not seal the following types of joints.
 - a. Intentional weepholes in masonry.
 - b. Joints indicated to be treated with manufactured expansion joint cover or some other type of sealing device.
 - c. Joints where sealant is specified to be provided by manufacturer of product to be sealed.
 - d. Joints where installation of sealant is specified in another section.
 - e. Joints between suspended panel ceilings/grid and walls.
 - B. Exterior Joints: Use non-sag non-staining silicone sealant, unless otherwise indicated.
 - C. Interior Joints: Use non-sag polyurethane sealant, unless otherwise indicated.

2.02 JOINT SEALANTS - GENERAL

- A. Sealants and Primers: Provide products having lower volatile organic compound (VOC) content than indicated in SCAQMD 1168.
- B. Colors: To match existing.

2.03 NONSAG JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Type ____ - Non-Staining Silicone Sealant: ASTM C920, Grade NS, Uses M and A; not expected to withstand continuous water immersion or traffic.
 1. Movement Capability: Plus and minus ____ percent, minimum.
 2. Non-Staining To Porous Stone: Non-staining to light-colored natural stone when tested in accordance with ASTM C1248.
 3. Dirt Pick-Up: Reduced dirt pick-up compared to other silicone sealants.
- B. Type ____ - Polyurethane Sealant: ASTM C920, Grade NS, Uses M and A; single or multi-component; not expected to withstand continuous water immersion or traffic.
 1. Movement Capability: Plus and minus ____ percent, minimum.

2.04 SELF-LEVELING SEALANTS

- A. Self-Leveling Silicone Sealant: ASTM C920, Grade P, Uses M and A; single or multicomponent, explicitly approved by manufacturer for traffic exposure when

recessed below traffic surface; not expected to withstand continuous water immersion.

1. Movement Capability: Plus 100 percent, minus 50 percent, minimum.
2. Color: Match existing.

2.05 ACCESSORIES

- A. Backer Rod: Cylindrical cellular foam rod with surface that sealant will not adhere to, compatible with specific sealant used, and recommended by backing and sealant manufacturers for specific application.
 1. Type for Joints Not Subject to Pedestrian or Vehicular Traffic: ASTM C1330; Type O - Open Cell Polyurethane.
 2. Closed Cell and Bi-Cellular: 25 to 33 percent larger in diameter than joint width.
- B. Overlay Extrusion for Glazing System Joint Protection: Rubber profiled extrusions placed over joints in glazing system and provided with watertight seal.
 1. Profile: As required to match existing metal glazing cap requirements.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that joints are ready to receive work.
- B. Verify that backing materials are compatible with sealants.
- C. Verify that backer rods are of the correct size.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Remove loose materials and foreign matter that could impair adhesion of sealant.
- B. Perform preparation in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and ASTM C1193.
- C. Mask elements and surfaces adjacent to joints from damage and disfigurement due to sealant work; be aware that sealant drips and smears may not be completely removable.

3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Perform work in accordance with sealant manufacturer's requirements for preparation of surfaces and material installation instructions.
- B. Measure joint dimensions and size joint backers to achieve the following, unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Width/depth ratio of 2:1.
 - 2. Neck dimension no greater than 1/3 of the joint width.
 - 3. Surface bond area on each side not less than 75 percent of joint width.
- C. Install sealant free of air pockets, foreign embedded matter, ridges, and sags, and without getting sealant on adjacent surfaces.
- D. Do not install sealant when ambient temperature is outside manufacturer's recommended temperature range, or will be outside that range during the entire curing period, unless manufacturer's approval is obtained and instructions are followed.
- E. Nonsag Sealants: Tool surface concave, unless otherwise indicated; remove masking tape immediately after tooling sealant surface.

3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform field quality control inspection/testing as specified in PART 1 under QUALITY ASSURANCE article.
- B. Non-Destructive Adhesion Testing: If there are any failures in first 100 linear feet, notify Architect immediately.
- C. Remove and replace failed portions of sealants using same materials and procedures as indicated for original installation.
- D. Repair destructive test location damage immediately after evaluation and recording of results.

3.05 POST-OCCUPANCY

- A. Post-Occupancy Inspection: Perform visual inspection of entire length of project sealant joints at a time that joints have opened to their greatest width; i.e. at low temperature in thermal cycle. Report failures immediately and repair.

END OF SECTION 07 92 00

SECTION 08 44 13
GLAZED ALUMINUM CURTAIN WALLS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Aluminum-framed curtain wall, with vision glazing and metal infill panels.
- B. Associated louvers.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 07 25 00 - Weather Barriers: Sealing framing to weather barrier installed on adjacent construction.
- B. Section 07 92 00 - Joint Sealants: Sealing joints between frames and adjacent construction.
- C. Section 08 80 00 - Glazing.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. AAMA 609 & 610 - Cleaning and Maintenance Guide for Architecturally Finished Aluminum (Combined Document); 2015.
- B. AAMA 611 - Voluntary Specification for Anodized Architectural Aluminum; 2014 (2015 Errata).
- C. ASTM B221 - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes; 2014.
- D. ASTM B221M - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes (Metric); 2013.
- E. ASTM E283/E283M - Standard Test Method for Determining Rate of Air Leakage Through Exterior Windows, Skylights, Curtain Walls, and Doors Under Specified Pressure Differences Across the Specimen; 2019.
- F. ASTM E1996 - Standard Specification for Performance of Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, Doors, and Impact Protective Systems Impacted by Windborne Debris in Hurricanes; 2017.

1.04 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordinate with installation of other components that comprise the exterior enclosure.

- B. Preinstallation Meeting: Conduct a preinstallation meeting one week before starting work of this section; require attendance by all affected installers.

1.05 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide component dimensions, describe components within assembly, anchorage and fasteners, internal drainage details, glazing, and infill.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate system dimensions, framed opening requirements and tolerances, affected related Work, expansion and contraction joint location and details, and field welding required.
- D. Shop Drawings: Provide details of proposed structural sealant glazing (SSG) and weather sealant joints indicating dimensions, materials, bite, thicknesses, profile, and support framing.
- E. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certify that the products supplied meet or exceed the specified requirements.
- F. Design Data: Provide framing member structural and physical characteristics and engineering calculations, and identify dimensional limitations; include load calculations at points of attachment to building structure.
- G. Structural Sealant Glazing (SSG): Submit product data and calculations showing compliance with performance requirements.
- H. Test Reports: Submit results of full-size mock-up testing. Reports of tests previously performed on the same design are acceptable.
- I. Field Quality Control Submittals: Report of field testing for water penetration and air leakage.
- J. Designer's Qualification Statement.
- K. Manufacturer's Qualification Statement.
- L. Installer's Qualification Statement.
- M. Warranty: Submit manufacturer warranty and ensure forms have been completed in Owner's name and registered with manufacturer.

1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Designer Qualifications: Design curtain wall and its structural support framing components under direct supervision of a Professional Structural Engineer

experienced in design of this work and licensed at the State in which the Project is located.

- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified in this section with not less than three years of documented experience.
- C. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing work of type specified and with at least three years of documented experience.

1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect finished aluminum surfaces with wrapping. Do not use adhesive papers or sprayed coatings that bond to aluminum when exposed to sunlight or weather.

1.08 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not install sealants when ambient temperature is less than 40 degrees F. Maintain this minimum temperature during and 48 hours after installation.

1.09 WARRANTY

- A. Correct defective Work within a five year period after Date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Provide five year manufacturer warranty against failure of glass seal on insulating glass units, including interpane dusting or misting. Include provision for replacement of failed units.
- C. Provide five year manufacturer warranty against excessive degradation of exterior finish. Include provision for replacement of units with excessive fading, chalking, or flaking.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Basis of Design: Kawneer North America; 1600: www.kawneer.com/#sle..

2.02 CURTAIN WALL

- A. Aluminum-Framed Curtain Wall: Factory fabricated, factory finished aluminum framing members with infill, and related flashings, anchorage and attachment devices.
 - 1. Finish: Class I natural anodized.

- a. Factory finish surfaces that will be exposed in completed assemblies.
- b. Touch-up surfaces cut during fabrication so that no natural aluminum is visible in completed assemblies, including joint edges.
- c. Coat concealed metal surfaces that will be in contact with cementitious materials or dissimilar metals with bituminous paint.
2. Provide flush joints and corners, weathersealed, accurately fitted and secured; prepared to receive anchors; fasteners and attachments concealed from view; reinforced as required for imposed loads.
3. Construction: Eliminate noises caused by wind and thermal movement, prevent vibration harmonics, and prevent "stack effect" in internal spaces.
4. System Internal Drainage: Drain to the exterior by means of a weep drainage network any water entering joints, condensation occurring in glazing channel, and migrating moisture occurring within system.
- B. Structural Performance Requirements: Design and size components to withstand the following load requirements without damage or permanent set.
 1. Design Wind Loads: Comply with the applicable code.
 2. Wind-Borne-Debris Resistance: Identical full-size glazed assembly without auxiliary protection tested by independent agency in accordance with ASTM E1996 for Wind Zone 3 - Enhanced Protection for Large and Small Missile impact and pressure cycling at design wind pressure.
 3. Movement: Accommodate the following movement without damage to components or deterioration of seals:
 - a. Expansion and contraction caused by 180 degrees F surface temperature.
 - b. Expansion and contraction caused by cycling temperature range of 170 degrees F over a 12 hour period.
 - c. Movement of curtain wall relative to perimeter framing.
 - d. Deflection of structural support framing, under permanent and dynamic loads.
- C. Water Penetration Resistance on Manufactured Assembly: No uncontrolled water on indoor face when tested as follows:
 1. Test Pressure Differential: 10 psf.

- D. Air Leakage Laboratory Test: Maximum of 0.06 cu ft/min sq ft of wall area, when tested in accordance with ASTM E283/E283M at 6.27 psf pressure differential across assembly.

2.03 COMPONENTS

- A. Aluminum Framing Members: Tubular aluminum sections, thermally broken with interior section insulated from exterior, drainage holes and internal weep drainage system.
- B. Glazing: As specified in Section 08 80 00.

2.04 MATERIALS

- A. Extruded Aluminum: ASTM B221 (ASTM B221M).
- B. Concealed Flashings: Galvanized steel, 26 gage, 0.0179 inch minimum base metal thickness.
- C. Glazing Gaskets: Type to suit application to achieve weather, moisture, and air infiltration requirements.
- D. Glazing Accessories: As specified in Section 08 80 00.

2.05 FINISHES

- A. Class I Natural Anodized Finish: AAMA 611 AA-M12C22A41 Clear anodic coating not less than 0.7 mils thick.
- B. Color: Silver to match existing.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify dimensions, tolerances, and method of attachment with other related work.
- B. Verify that curtain wall openings and adjoining air and vapor seal materials are ready to receive work of this section.
- C. Verify that anchorage devices have been properly installed and located.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install curtain wall system in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Attach to structure to permit sufficient adjustment to accommodate construction tolerances and other irregularities.

- C. Provide alignment attachments and shims to permanently fasten system to building structure.
- D. Align assembly plumb and level, free of warp or twist. Maintain assembly dimensional tolerances, aligning with adjacent work.
- E. Provide thermal isolation where components penetrate or disrupt building insulation.
- F. Install sill flashings. Turn up ends and edges; seal to adjacent work to form water tight dam.
- G. Touch-up minor damage to factory applied finish; replace components that cannot be satisfactorily repaired.

3.03 TOLERANCES

- A. Maximum Variation from Plumb: 0.06 inches every 3 ft non-cumulative or 0.5 inches per 100 ft, whichever is less.
- B. Maximum Misalignment of Two Adjoining Members Abutting in Plane: 1/32 inch.
- C. Sealant Space Between Curtain Wall Mullions and Adjacent Construction: Maximum of 3/4 inch and minimum of 1/4 inch.

3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Provide services of curtain wall manufacturer's field representative to observe for proper installation of system and submit report.
- B. Repair or replace curtain wall components that have failed designated field testing, and retest to verify performance complies with specified requirements.

3.05 CLEANING

- A. Remove protective material from pre-finished aluminum surfaces.
- B. Wash down surfaces with a solution of mild detergent in warm water, applied with soft, clean wiping cloths, take care to remove dirt from corners, and wipe surfaces clean.
- C. Upon completion of installation, thoroughly clean aluminum surfaces in accordance with AAMA 609 & 610.

3.06 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed products from damage until Date of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 08 44 13

This page intentionally left blank

**SECTION 08 71 00
DOOR HARDWARE**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes commercial door hardware for the following:
 - 1. Swinging doors.
 - 2. Sliding doors.
 - 3. Other doors to the extent indicated.
- B. Codes and References: Comply with the version year adopted by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.
 - 1. ANSI A117.1 - Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities.
 - 2. ICC/IBC - International Building Code.
 - 3. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code.
 - 4. NFPA 80 - Fire Doors and Windows.
 - 5. NFPA 101 - Life Safety Code.
 - 6. NFPA 105 - Installation of Smoke Door Assemblies.
 - 7. UL/ULC and CSA C22.2 - Standards for Automatic Door Operators Used on Fire and Smoke Barrier Doors and Systems of Doors.
 - 8. State Building Codes, Local Amendments.
- C. Standards: All hardware specified herein shall comply with the following industry standards as applicable. Any undated reference to a standard shall be interpreted as referring to the latest edition of that standard:
 - 1. ANSI/BHMA Certified Product Standards - A156 Series.
 - 2. UL10C - Positive Pressure Fire Tests of Door Assemblies.
 - 3. ANSI/UL 294 - Access Control System Units.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Manufacturer's product data sheets including installation details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, operational descriptions and finishes.
- B. Informational Submittals:
 - 1. Product Test Reports: Indicating compliance with cycle testing requirements, based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified independent testing agency.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturers Qualifications: Engage qualified manufacturers with a minimum 5 years of documented experience in producing hardware and equipment similar to that indicated for this Project and that have a proven record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Certified Products: Where specified, products must maintain a current listing in the Builders Hardware Manufacturers Association (BHMA) Certified Products Directory (CPD).
- C. Each unit to bear third party permanent label demonstrating compliance with the referenced standards.

1.5 WARRANTY

- A. General Warranty: Reference Division 01, General Requirements. Special warranties specified in this Article shall not deprive Owner of other rights Owner may have under other provisions of the Contract Documents and shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties made by Contractor under requirements of the Contract Documents.
- B. Warranty Period: Written warranty, executed by manufacturer(s), agreeing to repair or replace components of standard and electrified door hardware that fails in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period after final acceptance by the Owner. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Structural failures including excessive deflection, cracking, or breakage.
 - 2. Faulty operation of the hardware.
 - 3. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
 - 4. Electrical component defects and failures within the systems operation.

- C. Standard Warranty Period: One year from date of Substantial Completion, unless otherwise indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ARCHITECTURAL SEALS

- A. General: Thresholds, weatherstripping, and gasket seals to be of type and design as specified below or in the Hardware Sets. Provide continuous weatherstrip gasketing on exterior doors and provide smoke, light, or sound gasketing on interior doors where indicated. At exterior applications provide non-corrosive fasteners and elsewhere where indicated.
- B. Smoke Labeled Gasketing: Assemblies complying with NFPA 105 that are listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for smoke control ratings indicated, based on testing according to UL 1784.
 - 1. Provide smoke labeled perimeter gasketing at all smoke labeled openings.
- C. Fire Labeled Gasketing: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire ratings indicated, based on testing according to UL-10C.
 - 1. Provide intumescent seals as indicated to meet UL10C Standard for Positive Pressure Fire Tests of Door Assemblies, and NPFA 252, Standard Methods of Fire Tests of Door Assemblies.
- D. Sound-Rated Gasketing: Assemblies that are listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency, for sound ratings indicated.
- E. Replaceable Seal Strips: Provide only those units where resilient or flexible seal strips are easily replaceable and readily available from stocks maintained by manufacturer.
- F. Manufacturers:
 - 1. National Guard Products (NG).
 - 2. Pemko Products; ASSA ABLOY Architectural Door Accessories (PE).
 - 3. Reese Enterprises, Inc. (RE).

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine scheduled openings, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, labeled fire door assembly construction, wall and floor construction, and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Notify architect of any discrepancies or conflicts between the door schedule, door types, drawings and scheduled hardware. Proceed only after such discrepancies or conflicts have been resolved in writing.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Hollow Metal Doors and Frames: Comply with ANSI/DHI A115 series.
- B. Wood Doors: Comply with ANSI/DHI A115-W series.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Retrofitting: Install door hardware to comply with manufacturer's published templates and written instructions. Where cutting and fitting are required to install door hardware onto or into surfaces that are later to be painted or finished in another way, coordinate removal, storage, and reinstallation of surface protective trim units with finishing work specified in Division 9 Sections. Do not install surface-mounted items until finishes have been completed on substrates involved.
- B. Storage: Provide a secure lock up for hardware delivered to the project but not yet installed. Control the handling and installation of hardware items so that the completion of the work will not be delayed by hardware losses before and after installation.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field Inspection (Punch Report): Reference Division 01 Sections "Closeout Procedures". Produce project punch report for each installed door opening indicating compliance with approved submittals and verification hardware is properly installed, operating and adjusted. Include list of items to be completed and corrected, indicating the reasons or deficiencies causing the Work to be incomplete or rejected.

1. Organization of List: Include separate Door Opening and Deficiencies and Corrective Action Lists organized by Mark, Opening Remarks and Comments, and related Opening Images and Video Recordings.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Initial Adjustment: Adjust and check each operating item of door hardware and each door to ensure proper operation or function of every unit. Replace units that cannot be adjusted to operate as intended. Adjust door control devices to compensate for final operation of heating and ventilating equipment and to comply with referenced accessibility requirements.

3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Protect all hardware stored on construction site in a covered and dry place. Protect exposed hardware installed on doors during the construction phase. Install any and all hardware at the latest possible time frame.
- B. Clean adjacent surfaces soiled by door hardware installation.
- C. Clean operating items as necessary to restore proper finish. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure door hardware is without damage or deterioration at time of owner occupancy.

END OF SECTION

**SECTION 08 80 00
GLAZING**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Glazing units.
- B. Glazing compounds and accessories.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 07 25 00 - Weather Barriers.
- B. Section 07 92 00 - Joint Sealants: Sealants for other than glazing purposes.
- C. Section 08 44 13 - Glazed Aluminum Curtain Walls: Glazing furnished as part of wall assembly.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. 16 CFR 1201 - Safety Standard for Architectural Glazing Materials; Current Edition.
- B. ANSI Z97.1 - American National Standard for Safety Glazing Materials Used in Buildings - Safety Performance Specifications and Methods of Test; 2015.
- C. ASTM C864 - Standard Specification for Dense Elastomeric Compression Seal Gaskets, Setting Blocks, and Spacers; 2005 (Reapproved 2015).
- D. ASTM C1172 - Standard Specification for Laminated Architectural Flat Glass; 2014.
- E. ASTM E1300 - Standard Practice for Determining Load Resistance of Glass in Buildings; 2016.
- F. ASTM E1996 - Standard Specification for Performance of Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, Doors, and Impact Protective Systems Impacted by Windborne Debris in Hurricanes; 2017.
- G. IGMA TM-3000 - North American Glazing Guidelines for Sealed Insulating Glass Units for Commercial & Residential Use; 1990 (2016).
- H. NFRC 100 - Procedure for Determining Fenestration Product U-factors; 2017.
- I. NFRC 200 - Procedure for Determining Fenestration Product Solar Heat Gain Coefficient and Visible Transmittance at Normal Incidence; 2014, with Errata (2017).

- J. NFRC 300 - Test Method for Determining the Solar Optical Properties of Glazing Materials and Systems; 2017.

1.04 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Preinstallation Meeting: Convene a preinstallation meeting one week before starting work of this section; require attendance by each of the affected installers.

1.05 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data on Glazing Unit Glazing Types: Provide structural, physical and environmental characteristics, size limitations, special handling and installation requirements.
- B. Product Data on Glazing Compounds and Accessories: Provide chemical, functional, and environmental characteristics, limitations, special application requirements, and identify available colors.
- C. Samples: Submit two samples 12 by 12 inch in size of glass units.
- D. Warranty Documentation: Submit manufacturer warranty and ensure that forms have been completed in Owner's name and registered with manufacturer.

1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Perform Work in accordance with GANA (GM), GANA (SM), and IGMA TM-3000 for glazing installation methods. Maintain one copy on site.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum three years of documented experience.
- C. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing work of the type specified and with at least three years documented experience.

1.07 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not install glazing when ambient temperature is less than 40 degrees F.
- B. Maintain minimum ambient temperature before, during and 24 hours after installation of glazing compounds.

1.08 WARRANTY

- A. Laminated Glass: Provide a five (5) year manufacturer warranty to include coverage for delamination, including providing products to replace failed units.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS - EXTERIOR GLAZING ASSEMBLIES

- A. Provide type and thickness of exterior glazing assemblies to support assembly dead loads, and to withstand live loads caused by positive and negative wind pressure acting normal to plane of glass.
 - 1. Comply with ASTM E1300 for design load resistance of glass type, thickness, dimensions, and maximum lateral deflection of supported glass.
 - 2. Provide glass edge support system sufficiently stiff to limit the lateral deflection of supported glass edges to less than 1/175 of their lengths under specified design load.
 - 3. Glass thicknesses listed are minimum.
- B. Thermal and Optical Performance: Provide exterior glazing products with performance properties as indicated. Performance properties are in accordance with manufacturer's published data as determined with the following procedures and/or test methods:
 - 1. Center of Glass U-Value: Comply with NFRC 100 using Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory (LBNL) WINDOW 6.3 computer program.
 - 2. Center of Glass Solar Heat Gain Coefficient (SHGC): Comply with NFRC 200 using Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory (LBNL) WINDOW 6.3 computer program.
 - 3. Solar Optical Properties: Comply with NFRC 300 test method.

2.02 GLASS MATERIALS

- A. Laminated Glass: Float glass laminated in accordance with ASTM C1172.
 - 1. Laminated Safety Glass: Complies with ANSI Z97.1 - Class B or 16 CFR 1201 - Category I impact test requirements.

2.03 GLAZING UNITS

- A. Hurricane Impact Resistance Glazing: Laminated glass, 2-Ply.
 - 1. Applications: Locations as indicated on drawings.
 - 2. Tint: Clear.
 - 3. Thickness: 9/16 inch.
 - 4. Outside Lite: Tempered glass.

5. Interlayer: Polyvinyl butyral (PVB), thickness as required to meet performance criteria.
6. Middle Lite: Annealed glass.
7. Interlayer, Inboard Side: Polyvinyl butyral (PVB), thickness as required to meet performance criteria.
8. Inside Lite: Tempered glass.
9. Performance Criteria:
 - a. Hurricane Impact Resistance: Comply with ASTM E1996 windborne debris requirements for "Enhanced Protection" within Wind Zone 3.
10. Glazing Method: As required to meet performance criteria.

2.04 GLAZING COMPOUNDS

- A. Glazing Putty: Polymer modified latex recommended by manufacturer for outdoor use, knife grade consistency; gray color.

2.05 ACCESSORIES

- A. Setting Blocks: Silicone, with 80 to 90 Shore A durometer hardness; ASTM C864 Option II. Length of 0.1 inch for each square foot of glazing or minimum 4 inch by width of glazing rabbet space minus 1/16 inch by height to suit glazing method and pane weight and area.
- B. Spacer Shims: Neoprene, 50 to 60 Shore A durometer hardness; ASTM C864 Option II. Minimum 3 inch long by one half the height of the glazing stop by thickness to suit application, self adhesive on one face.
- C. Glazing Tape, Back Bedding Mastic Type: Preformed, butyl-based, 100 percent solids compound with integral resilient spacer rod applicable to application indicated; 5 to 30 cured Shore A durometer hardness; coiled on release paper; black color.
 1. Width: As required for application.
 2. Thickness: As required for application.
 3. Spacer Rod Diameter: As required for application.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 VERIFICATION OF CONDITIONS

- A. Verify that openings for glazing are correctly sized and within tolerances, including those for size, squareness, and offsets at corners.
- B. Verify that surfaces of glazing channels or recesses are clean, free of obstructions that may impede moisture movement, weeps are clear, and support framing is ready to receive glazing system.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Clean contact surfaces with appropriate solvent and wipe dry within maximum of 24 hours before glazing. Remove coatings that are not tightly bonded to substrates.
- B. Seal porous glazing channels or recesses with substrate compatible primer or sealer.
- C. Prime surfaces scheduled to receive sealant where required for proper sealant adhesion.

3.03 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install glazing in compliance with written instructions of glass, gaskets, and other glazing material manufacturers, unless more stringent requirements are indicated, including those in glazing referenced standards.
- B. Do not exceed edge pressures around perimeter of glass lites as stipulated by glass manufacturer.
- C. Set glass lites of system with uniform pattern, draw, bow, and similar characteristics.
- D. Set glass lites in proper orientation so that coatings face exterior or interior as indicated.

3.04 INSTALLATION - WET GLAZING METHOD (SEALANT AND SEALANT)

- A. Application - Exterior Glazed: Set glazing infills from the exterior of the building.
- B. Place setting blocks at 1/4 points and install glazing pane or unit.
- C. Install removable stops with glazing centered in space by inserting spacer shims both sides at 24 inch intervals, 1/4 inch below sight line.

- D. Fill gaps between glazing and stops with _____ type sealant to depth of bite on glazing, but not more than 3/8 inch below sight line to ensure full contact with glazing and continue the air and vapor seal.
- E. Apply sealant to uniform line, flush with sight line. Tool or wipe sealant surface smooth.

3.05 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Glass and Glazing product manufacturers to provide field surveillance of the installation of their products.
- B. Monitor and report installation procedures and unacceptable conditions.

3.06 CLEANING

- A. Remove excess glazing materials from finish surfaces immediately after application using solvents or cleaners recommended by manufacturers.
- B. Clean glass and adjacent surfaces after sealants are fully cured.
- C. Clean glass on both exposed surfaces not more than 4 days prior to Date of Substantial Completion in accordance with glass manufacturer's written recommendations.

3.07 PROTECTION

- A. After installation, mark pane with an 'X' by using removable plastic tape or paste; do not mark heat absorbing or reflective glass units.
- B. Remove and replace glass that is damaged during construction period prior to Date of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 08 80 00

**SECTION 08 91 00
LOUVERS**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Louvers, frames, and accessories.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 07 25 00 - Weather Barriers: Sealing frames to weather barrier installed on adjacent construction.
- B. Section 07 62 00 - Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim.
- C. Section 07 92 00 - Joint Sealants: Sealing joints between frames and adjacent construction.
- D. Section 08 44 13 - Glazed Aluminum Curtain Walls: Prepared openings for louvers.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. AAMA 611 - Voluntary Specification for Anodized Architectural Aluminum; 2014 (2015 Errata).
- B. AAMA 612 - Voluntary Specification, Performance Requirements, and Test Procedures for Combined Coatings of Anodic Oxide and Transparent Organic Coatings on Architectural Aluminum; 2017a.
- C. AMCA 511 - Certified Ratings Program for Air Control Devices; 2010.
- D. FEMA P-361 - Safe Rooms for Tornadoes and Hurricanes: Guidance for Community and Residential Safe Rooms; 2015.
- E. ICC 500 - ICC/NSSA Standard for the Design and Construction of Storm Shelters; National Storm Shelter Association; 2014.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Provide data describing design characteristics, maximum recommended air velocity, design free area, materials and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate louver layout plan and elevations, opening and clearance dimensions, and tolerances; head, jamb and sill details; blade configuration, screens, blank-off areas required, and frames.

- C. Test Reports: Independent agency reports showing compliance with specified performance criteria.
- D. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certify that products meet or exceed specified requirements.
- E. Maintenance Data: Include lubrication schedules, adjustment requirements.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing products of the type specified in this section, with minimum three years of documented experience.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing work of type specified and with at least three years of documented experience.

1.06 WARRANTY

- A. Provide five year manufacturer's warranty against distortion, metal degradation, and connection failures of louver components.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 LOUVERS

- A. Louvers: Factory fabricated and assembled, complete with frame, mullions, and accessories; AMCA Certified in accordance with AMCA 511.
 - 1. Wind Load Resistance: Design to resist positive and negative wind load as required by code without damage or permanent deformation.
 - 2. High-Velocity Wind Load Resistance: Design to comply with applicable requirements of ICC 500 and FEMA P-361, including resistance to horizontal debris impact.
 - 3. Drainable Blades: Continuous rain stop at front or rear of blade aligned with vertical gutter recessed into both jambs of frame.
 - 4. Screens: Provide insect screens at intake louvers and bird screens at exhaust louvers.
- B. Curtain Wall Glazing Louvers: Horizontal blade, extruded aluminum construction with glazing frame mechanically fastened onto louver.
 - 1. Free Area: 40 percent, minimum.
 - 2. Blades: Sightproof with drainable edge design.

3. Frame: 1-1/4 inch deep, channel profile; corner joints mitered, with continuous recessed caulking channel.
4. Aluminum Thickness: Frame 14 gage, 0.0641 inch minimum; blades 14 gage, 0.0641 inch minimum.
5. Aluminum Finish: Class I natural anodized; finish welded units after fabrication.

2.02 MATERIALS

- A. Extruded Aluminum: ASTM B221 (ASTM B221M).

2.03 FINISHES

- A. Class I Natural Anodized Finish: AAMA 611 AA-M12C22A41 Clear anodic coating not less than 0.7 mils thick.
- B. Color: Silver to match existing curtainwall.

2.04 ACCESSORIES

- A. Screens: Frame of same material as louver, with reinforced corners; removable, screw attached; installed on inside face of louver frame.
- B. Insect Screen: 18 x 16 size aluminum mesh.
- C. Sealant for Setting Sills and Sill Flashing: Non-curing butyl type.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that prepared openings and flashings are ready to receive this work and opening dimensions are as indicated on shop drawings.
- B. Verify that field measurements are as indicated.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install louver assembly in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Coordinate with installation of flashings by others.
- C. Install louvers level and plumb.
- D. Set sill members and sill flashing in continuous bead of sealant.

-
- E. Align louver assembly to ensure moisture shed from flashings and diversion of moisture to exterior.
 - F. Secure louver frames in openings with concealed fasteners.

3.03 CLEANING

- A. Strip protective finish coverings.

END OF SECTION 08 91 00

**SECTION 09 21 16
GYPSUM BOARD ASSEMBLIES**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Metal channel ceiling framing.
- B. Acoustic insulation.
- C. Gypsum sheathing.
- D. Joint treatment and accessories.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 05 40 00 - Cold-Formed Metal Framing: Structural steel stud framing.
- B. Section 07 25 00 - Weather Barriers: Water-resistive barrier over sheathing.
- C. Section 07 92 00 - Joint Sealants: Sealing acoustical gaps in construction other than gypsum board or plaster work.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM C754 - Standard Specification for Installation of Steel Framing Members to Receive Screw-Attached Gypsum Panel Products; 2018.
- B. ASTM C840 - Standard Specification for Application and Finishing of Gypsum Board; 2019b.
- C. ASTM C1047 - Standard Specification for Accessories For Gypsum Wallboard and Gypsum Veneer Base; 2014a.
- D. ASTM C1280 - Standard Specification for Application of Exterior Gypsum Panel Products for Use as Sheathing; 2018.
- E. ASTM C1396/C1396M - Standard Specification for Gypsum Board; 2017.
- F. GA-216 - Application and Finishing of Gypsum Panel Products; 2016.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: Indicate special details associated with fireproofing and acoustic seals.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's data on partition head to structure connectors, showing compliance with requirements.

- C. Installer's Qualification Statement.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing gypsum board installation and finishing, with minimum 5 years of experience.
- B. Copies of Documents at Site: Maintain at the project site a copy of each referenced document that prescribes execution requirements.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 BOARD MATERIALS

- A. Ceiling Board: Special sag resistant gypsum ceiling board as defined in ASTM C1396/C1396M; sizes to minimize joints in place; ends square cut.
 - 1. Application: Ceilings, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Thickness: 1/2 inch.
 - 3. Edges: Tapered.

2.02 GYPSUM WALLBOARD ACCESSORIES

- A. Water-Resistive Barrier: As specified in Section 07 25 00.
- B. Beads, Joint Accessories, and Other Trim: ASTM C1047, rigid plastic, galvanized steel, or rolled zinc, unless noted otherwise.
- C. Moisture Guard Trim: ASTM C1047, rigid plastic, 48 inch length, applied to bottom edge of gypsum board.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that project conditions are appropriate for work of this section to commence.

3.02 FRAMING INSTALLATION

- A. Metal Framing: Install in accordance with ASTM C754 and manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Suspended Ceilings and Soffits: Space framing and furring members as indicated.
 - 1. Level ceiling system to a tolerance of 1/1200.

2. Laterally brace entire suspension system.
3. Install bracing as required at exterior locations to resist wind uplift.

3.03 ACOUSTIC ACCESSORIES INSTALLATION

- A. Acoustic Insulation: Place tightly within spaces, around cut openings, behind and around electrical and mechanical items within partitions, and tight to items passing through partitions.
- B. Acoustic Sealant: Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

3.04 BOARD INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with ASTM C840, GA-216, and manufacturer's instructions. Install to minimize butt end joints, especially in highly visible locations.
- B. Single-Layer Nonrated: Install gypsum board in most economical direction, with ends and edges occurring over firm bearing.
- C. Exterior Soffits: Install exterior soffit board perpendicular to framing, with staggered end joints over framing members or other solid backing.
 1. Seal joints, cut edges, and holes with water-resistant sealant.

3.05 INSTALLATION OF TRIM AND ACCESSORIES

- A. Control Joints: Place control joints consistent with lines of building spaces and as indicated.
- B. Corner Beads: Install at external corners, using longest practical lengths.
- C. Moisture Guard Trim: Install on bottom edge of gypsum board according to manufacturer's instructions and in locations indicated on drawings.

3.06 JOINT TREATMENT

- A. Finish gypsum board in accordance with levels defined in ASTM C840, as follows:
 1. Level 1: Fire-resistance-rated wall areas above finished ceilings, whether or not accessible in the completed construction.
- B. Tape, fill, and sand exposed joints, edges, and corners to produce smooth surface ready to receive finishes.
 1. Feather coats of joint compound so that camber is maximum 1/32 inch.

3.07 TOLERANCES

- A. Maximum Variation of Finished Gypsum Board Surface from True Flatness: 1/8 inch in 10 feet in any direction.

END OF SECTION 09 21 16

SECTION 09 22 36
LATH

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Metal lath for cement plaster.
- B. Furring for metal lath.
- C. Metal ceiling framing.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 05 40 00 - Cold-Formed Metal Framing: Sheathing on exterior walls.
- B. Section 07 25 00 - Weather Barriers: Weather barrier under exterior plaster and stucco.
- C. Section 09 21 16 - Gypsum Board Assemblies: Sheathing on exterior walls.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM C841 - Standard Specification for Installation of Interior Lathing and Furring; 2003 (Reapproved 2018).
- B. ASTM C847 - Standard Specification for Metal Lath; 2018.
- C. ASTM C954 - Standard Specification for Steel Drill Screws for the Application of Gypsum Panel Products or Metal Plaster Bases to Steel Studs From 0.033 in. (0.84 mm) to 0.112 in. (2.84 mm) in Thickness; 2018.
- D. ASTM C1002 - Standard Specification for Steel Self-Piercing Tapping Screws for Application of Gypsum Panel Products or Metal Plaster Bases to Wood Studs or Steel Studs; 2018.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide data on furring and lathing components, structural characteristics, material limitations, and finish.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Maintain one copy of each installation standard referenced on site throughout the duration of lathing and plastering work.

- B. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing the work of this section with at least three years of documented experience.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 LATH ASSEMBLIES

- A. Provide completed assemblies with the following characteristics:
 - 1. Maximum Deflection of Vertical Assemblies: 1:360 under lateral point load of 100 lbs.
 - 2. Maximum Deflection of Horizontal Assemblies: 1:240 deflection under dead loads and wind uplift.

2.02 FRAMING MATERIALS

- A. Furring Channels: Formed steel, minimum 0.020 inch thick, 3/8 inch deep by 7/8 inch high, splicing permitted; galvanized.

2.03 LATH

- A. Diamond Mesh Metal Lath: ASTM C847, galvanized; self-furring.
 - 1. Weight: To suit application and as specified in ASTM C841 or ASTM C1063 for framing spacing.
 - 2. Weight: 2.5 lb/sq yd.
 - 3. Backed with material to match existing.

2.04 ACCESSORIES

- A. Anchorage: Tie wire, nails, and other metal supports, of type and size to suit application; to rigidly secure materials in place, galvanized.
- B. Fasteners: Self-piercing tapping screws; ASTM C1002 or ASTM C954.
- C. Tie Wire: Annealed galvanized steel.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify existing conditions before starting work.
- B. Verify that substrates are ready to receive work and conditions are suitable for application.

- C. Do not begin until unacceptable conditions have been corrected.
- D. If substrate preparation is the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect of unsatisfactory preparation before proceeding.

3.02 INSTALLATION - GENERAL

- A. Install interior lath and furring for gypsum plaster in accordance with ASTM C841.

3.03 LATH INSTALLATION

- A. Apply lath taut, with long dimension perpendicular to supports.
- B. Lap or nest ends of metal lath in accordance with ASTM C841.
- C. Secure end laps with tie wire where they occur between supports.
- D. Attach metal lath to metal supports using tie wire at maximum 6 inches on center.
- E. Continuously reinforce internal angles with corner mesh, except where the metal lath returns 3 inches from corner to form the angle reinforcement; fasten at perimeter edges only.
- F. Place corner bead at external wall corners; fasten at outer edges of lath only.
- G. Place base screeds at termination of plaster areas; secure rigidly in place.
- H. Place lath vertically above each top corner and each side of door frames to 6 inches above ceiling line.
- I. Place casing beads at terminations of plaster finish. Butt and align ends. Secure rigidly in place.
- J. Place additional strip mesh diagonally at corners of lathed openings. Secure rigidly in place.

3.04 TOLERANCES

- A. Maximum Variation from True Lines and Levels: 1/8 inch in 10 feet.
- B. Maximum Variation from True Position: 1/8 inch.

END OF SECTION 09 22 36

This page intentionally left blank

**SECTION 09 24 00
CEMENT PLASTERING**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Cement plastering.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 05 40 00 - Cold-Formed Metal Framing: Structural metal framing for plaster.
- B. Section 07 25 00 - Weather Barriers.
- C. Section 09 21 16 - Gypsum Board Assemblies: Acoustical sealing in conjunction with metal stud framing and furring for plaster.
- D. Section 09 91 13 - Exterior Painting.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM C150/C150M - Standard Specification for Portland Cement; 2018.
- B. ASTM C207 - Standard Specification for Hydrated Lime for Masonry Purposes; 2018.
- C. ASTM C897 - Standard Specification for Aggregate for Job-Mixed Portland Cement-Based Plasters; 2015.
- D. ASTM C926 - Standard Specification for Application of Portland Cement-Based Plaster; 2018b.
- E. ASTM C932 - Standard Specification for Surface-Applied Bonding Compounds for Exterior Plastering; 2006 (Reapproved 2019).

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Provide data on plaster materials and trim accessories.
- B. Evaluation Service Reports: Show compliance with specified requirements.
- C. Installer's Qualification Statement.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing the work of this section with minimum three years documented experience.

- B. Copies of Documents at Project Site: Maintain at the project site a copy of each referenced document that prescribes execution requirements.

1.06 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Exterior Plaster Work: Do not apply plaster when substrate or ambient air temperature is 40 degrees F or lower, or when temperature is expected to drop below 40 degrees F within 48 hours of application.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 CEMENT PLASTER APPLICATIONS

- A. Lath Plaster Base: Metal lath.
 - 1. Plaster Type: Factory prepared plaster mix.
 - 2. Number of Coats: Three.
 - 3. First Coat: Apply to a nominal thickness of 3/8 inch.
 - 4. Second Coat: Apply to a nominal thickness of 3/8 inch.
 - 5. Leveling Coat: Apply to a nominal thickness of 1/32 to 1/16 inch.
 - 6. Finish Coat: Apply to a nominal thickness of 1/8 inch.
 - a. Texture: Match existing.

2.02 FACTORY PREPARED CEMENT PLASTER

- A. Exterior Portland cement plaster system made of scratch and brown base coat, leveling coat with reinforcing mesh, and acrylic finish coat; install in accordance with ASTM C926.
 - 1. Provide continuous exterior insulation as part of the system, by the same manufacturer.
 - 2. Provide weather resistive barrier as part of the system, by the same manufacturer.
- B. Premixed One-Coat Base: Mixture of Type I Portland cement complying with ASTM C150/C150M, hydrated lime complying with ASTM C207, fibers and other approved ingredients; install in accordance with ASTM C926.
- C. Premixed Base Coats: Mixture of cement, aggregate, fibers, and proprietary admixtures for scratch and brown coats; install in accordance with ASTM C926.

- D. Premixed Leveling Coat: Acrylic polymer-based blend approved for use with plaster manufacturer's base coat and finish materials.
- E. Premixed Finish Coating: Same product as base coat.
- F. Primer: Acrylic, as recommended by coating manufacturer and compatible with plaster base coat.
- G. Premixed Finish Coating: Integrally colored, acrylic coating.
 - 1. Color: Match existing.

2.03 ACCESSORIES

- A. Lath: As specified in Section 09 22 36.
- B. Beads, Screeds, and Joint Accessories: As specified in Section 09 22 36.
- C. Bonding Compound: Provide type recommended for bonding plaster to solid surfaces, complying with ASTM C932.
- D. Water Resistive Barrier: As specified in Section 07 25 00.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify existing conditions are acceptable prior to starting this work.
- B. Verify lath is flat, secured to substrate, and joint and surface perimeter accessories are properly in place.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Dampen masonry surfaces to reduce excessive suction.
- B. Clean concrete surfaces of foreign matter using approved acid solutions, solvents, or detergents, and then rinse surfaces thoroughly with clean water.
- C. Roughen smooth concrete surfaces and apply bonding compound in accordance with manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- D. Apply dash bond coat of plaster to solid bases and moist cure for at least 24 hours before applying first coat of jobsite mixed plaster.

3.03 MIXING

- A. Mix only as much plaster as can be used prior to initial set.

- B. Mix materials dry, to uniform color and consistency, before adding water.
- C. Add air entrainment admixtures to each coat to provide 5 to 7 percent air entrainment.
- D. Do not retemper mixes after initial set has occurred.
- E. Protect mixtures from frost or freezing temperatures, contamination, and excessive evaporation.

3.04 APPLICATION

- A. Apply plaster in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions and comply with ASTM C926.
- B. Base Coats:
 - 1. Apply base coat(s) to fully embed lath and to specified thickness.
 - 2. Follow guidelines in ASTM C926 and manufacturer's written installation instructions for moist curing base coats and application of subsequent coats.
- C. Leveling Coat:
 - 1. Apply leveling coat to specified thickness.
- D. Finish Coats:
 - 1. Cement Plaster:
 - a. Apply with sufficient material and pressure to ensure complete coverage of base to specified thickness.
 - b. Apply desired surface texture while mix is still workable.
 - c. Aggregate Surfacing: Hand apply to provide full surface coverage.
 - 2. Primer and Acrylic Coatings:
 - a. Remove surface contaminants such as dust and dirt without damaging substrate.
 - b. Apply primer in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
 - c. Apply finish coating in number of coats and to thickness recommended by manufacturer.

3.05 TOLERANCES

- A. Maximum Variation from True Flatness: 1/4 inch in 10 feet.

3.06 REPAIR

- A. Patching: Remove loose, damaged or defective plaster and replace with plaster of same composition; finish to match surrounding area.

END OF SECTION 09 24 00



U.S. Department
of Transportation
Federal Aviation
Administration

Advisory Circular

Subject: Standard Specifications for
Construction of Airports

Date: 12/21/2018

AC No: 150/5370-10H

Initiated By: AAS-100

Change:

1 **Purpose.**

The standard specifications contained in this advisory circular (AC) relate to materials and methods used for construction on airports. Items covered in this AC include general provisions, earthwork, flexible base courses, rigid base courses, flexible surface courses, rigid pavement, fencing, drainage, turf, and lighting installation.

2 **Cancellation.**

This AC cancels AC 150/5370-10G, *Standards for Specifying Construction of Airports*, dated July 21, 2014.

3 **Application.**

The Federal Aviation Administration (FAA) recommends the guidelines and specifications in this AC for materials and methods used in airfield development for construction and rehabilitation projects on airports.

This AC does not constitute a regulation and is not mandatory, however the following applies:

- a. The standard specifications contained in this AC are practices that the FAA recommends for the construction of pavements and airport development serving aircraft greater than 30,000 pounds (13,600 kg).
- b. This AC contains methods and procedures for compliance with 14 CFR part 139 that are acceptable to the Administrator.
- c. The use of this AC is mandatory for all projects funded under Federal grant assistance programs, including the Airport Improvement Program (AIP). See Grant Assurance No. 34., *Policies, Standards, and Specifications*.
- d. This AC is mandatory, as required by regulation, for projects funded with the Passenger Facility Charge program. See PFC Assurance #9, *Standards and Specifications*.
- e. For building construction, the General Contract Provisions are applicable, in addition applicable laws and local building codes shall serve as construction standards acceptable to the FAA.

4 **Developing Project Specifications.**

The standard specifications in this AC must be edited to develop construction specifications for individual federally funded projects.

- a. For individual projects, pertinent portions of the standards must be copied into the contract documents.
- b. For airfield pavement projects at non-primary airports, serving aircraft less than 60,000 pounds (27216 kg), state highway specifications may be used in states where the state has requested and received FAA approval to use state highway specifications.
- c. Modifications to standards requests contained in this AC must meet the requirements of FAA Order 5300.1, *Modifications to Agency Airport Design, Construction, and Equipment Standards*.
- d. When preparing construction contracts for AIP or PFC projects or for grant obligated airports, use current contract provisions and mandatory provisions (wage, labor, Disadvantaged Business Enterprise, etc).
- e. Disadvantaged Business Enterprises (DBE), Equal Employment Opportunity (EEO), etc.) can be found at the FAA website: <http://www.faa.gov/airports/aip/procurement/>.
- f. Additional contract clauses may be required to comply with local and state laws relating to advertising, awarding, and administering construction contracts.

5 **Changes, Additions and Deletions to the FAA Standard Specifications.**

- a. Engineer Notes (shown between lines of asterisks) contained in the AC provide directions to the Engineer. These notes explain the options available to the Engineer when preparing project documents, and the appropriate changes and additions that must be made. **The final project documents must not include the Engineer Notes.**
- b. Where numbers, words, phrases or sentences are enclosed in brackets [____], a choice or modification must be made. Where blank spaces [____] occur in sentences, the appropriate data must be inserted.
- c. Where entire paragraphs are not applicable, the text should be deleted and “Not Used” entered after the paragraph number, do not renumber specification paragraphs. A modification of standards (MOS) in accordance with FAA Order 5100.1 is required for any deviation from standard specifications applicable to material and construction methods required to accommodate an unusual local condition on a specific project. Note that adding a new section and/or item requires a MOS.

6 **Principal Changes.**

This AC contains the following principal changes:

1. Extensive technical and editorial edits have been made throughout the document based on comments received during the review periods.
2. Updated references to the ACs and industry standards including ASTM International (formerly known as the American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM)), American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO), Asphalt Institute (AI), etc.
3. Added guidance in Engineer Notes on use of individual specifications.

4. Section 10: Added definitions for Apron, Certificate of Analysis (COA), Certificate of Compliance (COC), Control Strip, Modification of Standards (MOS); Quality Assurance (QA), Quality Control (QC), Quality Assurance (QA) Laboratory, Resident Project Representative (RPR); Runway Safety Area (RSA), Safety Plan Compliance Document (SPCD), Taxilane, and Taxiway/Taxilane Safety Area (TSA). Revised definitions for Change Order, Contract, Force Account, “Contractor’s laboratory” to “Contractor’s Quality Control Facilities;” “Laboratory” to “Quality Assurance (QA) Laboratory;” “Inspector” to “Quality Assurance (QA) Inspector;” “Pavement” to “Pavement Structure;” and Supplemental Agreement. Added “Owner Defined Terms” to allow addition of any project specific terms that may be needed.
5. Section 50: Removed outdated guidance on construction layout and stakes.
6. Section 60: Revised guidance for RPR’s field office.
7. Section 70: Revised 70-05 Federal Participation; Revised 70-06 Sanitary, health, and safety provisions; Retitled and revised 70-08 as “Construction Safety and Phasing Plan (CSPP).”
8. Moved Section 100 Contractor Quality Control Program (CQCP) out of the General Provisions and re-number as “Item C-100.” Clarified requirements of the CQCP; added elements that must be addressed for pavement projects; added requirements for Contractor QC testing facilities for pavement projects (P-401, P-403, P-501, and P-404; and added C-100-13 Basis of measurement and payment paragraph to allow for lump sum payment of CQCP with schedule of partial payments during contract.
9. Moved Section 105 Mobilization out of the General Provisions and re-numbered as “Item C-105.”
10. Moved Section 110 Method of Estimating Percentage of Materials Within Specification Limits (PWL) out of the General Provisions. Renumbered as “Item C-110.” Allows the Engineer to delete Item C-110 when P-401, P-501 and/or P-404 are not in a project.
11. Re-titled Item P-101 Surface Preparation to “Item P-101 Preparation/Removal of Existing Pavements” to better reflect purpose of specification.
12. Item P-156, Temporary Air and Water Pollution, Soil Erosion, and Siltation Control has been renumber as “Item C-102, Temporary Air and Water Pollution, Soil Erosion, and Siltation Control.”
13. Add new Item P-156, Cement Treated Subgrade. Added a new specification for cement treated subgrade.
14. Item P-157 [Cement] [Lime] Kiln Dust Treated Subgrade Added Lime Kiln Dust. This specification now allows either Lime Kiln Dust or Cement Kiln Dust.
15. Numerous changes within the base course specifications (P-208, P-209, P-210, P-211, P-212, P-217, and P-219) including standardizing format for materials, construction, and materials; placing material properties in table format; and adding guidance for separation fabric. Added requirement for control strip to demonstrate materials, means and methods prior to full production.
16. Added new P-207 In-place Full Depth Reclamation (FDR) Recycled Asphalt Aggregate Base Course.
17. Item P-301 Soil-Cement Treated Soil-Aggregate Subbase Course has been renumbered and renamed as Item P-220 Cement Treated Soil Base Course and moved under Part 4 Base Courses.

18. Added new P-307 Cement treated Permeable Base Course (CTPB).
19. Revised and simplified definition of “Lot size” and “Partial lot” in P-401, P-403, P-501, and P-404.
20. Swapped “Contractor Quality Control (CQC)” and “Material Acceptance” paragraphs in P-401, P-403, P-501 and P-404 so the material acceptance and measurement/payment paragraphs are together and quality control prior to measurement paragraphs.
21. P-401: Placed material properties in table format; clarified JMF submittal requirements; removed paragraph on testing facilities and placed guidance in Section C-100, Contractor Quality Control Program (CQCP); added paragraph identifying smoothness equipment requirements; added paragraph “Smoothness for Contractor Quality Control;” added paragraph “Profilograph smoothness for QA Acceptance” clarifying that final profilograph is on the full length of the project; added use of the Asphalt Pavement Analyzer (APA) to Item P-401 eliminating the need to run stability and flow when using the Marshall Method and allowing the same asphalt design criteria in Table 1 to apply regardless of which mix design method is selected, Marshall or Gyratory.
22. P-403: Clarified use of state highway specifications in initial Engineer’s Note; similar changes made throughout P-403 to those in P-401.
23. P-501: Clarified reactivity testing requirements; placed material properties in table format; clarified combined aggregate gradation paragraphs and Contractor requirements; added requirement for “Control Strip.” Added pay adjustment for repairs and grinding.
24. Renumbered P-601 as P-404 Fuel-Resistant Asphalt Mix Pavement.
25. P-404: Added Engineer Note on when to use P-404 to replace top 2 inches of P-401; placed material properties in table format; added requirement for contractor submission of manufacturer’s Certificate of Analysis (COA) for the asphalt binder; clarified JMF submission requirements.
26. Added new P-608-R RapidCure Seal Coat.
27. P-609: Retitled as “Chip Seal Coat;” placed material properties in table format; added requirement for Contractor to provide a copy of the manufacturer’s Certificate of Analysis (COA) for the asphalt material.
28. P-610: Retitled as “Concrete for Miscellaneous Structures.
29. P-620: Added table to specify marking materials by type, color, and bead type. Added acceptance tests for retro-reflectivity.
30. Added new P-623 Emulsified Asphalt Spray Seal Coat.
31. F-163 and F-164: Removed example fence skirt and fence details.
32. Added new L-125 Installation of Airport Lighting Systems.
33. D specs: Added requirement for precast concrete structures to be furnished by a plant meeting National Precast Concrete Association Plant Certification Program or another RPR approved third party certification program.
34. T specs: Added note at beginning of each T spec on wildlife hazard attractants and mitigation and appropriate selection of turf materials.
35. L specs: Added statement to concrete paragraphs specifying use of P-610 stating that “If fly ash meeting the requirements of P-610 is added to the concrete, at a rate of 30% of

cementitious material, or 55% slag cement, no reactivity testing of the aggregates shall be required.

7 **Units.**

Throughout this AC, English units are used followed with “soft” (rounded) metric units. The English units govern. One unit of measure should be selected and shown in the final project documents.

8 **Where to Find this AC.**

You can view a list of all ACs at http://www.faa.gov/regulations_policies/advisory_circulars/. You can view the Federal Aviation Regulations at http://www.faa.gov/regulations_policies/faq_regulations/.

9 **Feedback on this AC.**

If you have suggestions for improving this AC, you may use the [Advisory Circular Feedback](#) form at the end of this AC.

/Signed/

John R. Dermody
Director of Airport Safety and Standards

Table of Contents

PART 1 – GENERAL CONTRACT PROVISIONS.....	1
Section 10 Definition of Terms.....	1
Section 20 Proposal Requirements and Conditions	9
Section 30 Award and Execution of Contract.....	15
Section 40 Scope of Work	19
Section 50 Control of Work.....	23
Section 60 Control of Materials	31
Section 70 Legal Regulations and Responsibility to Public	35
Section 80 Execution and Progress.....	45
Section 90 Measurement and Payment	55
PART 2 – GENERAL CONSTRUCTION ITEMS	65
Item C-100 Contractor Quality Control Program (CQCP)	65
Item C-102 Temporary Air and Water Pollution, Soil Erosion, and Siltation Control.....	73
Item C-105 Mobilization.....	77
[Item C-110 Method of Estimating Percentage of Material Within Specification Limits (PWL)].....	81
PART 3 – SITEWORK.....	89
Item P-101 Preparation/Removal of Existing Pavements.....	89
Item P-151 Clearing and Grubbing.....	99
Item P-152 Excavation, Subgrade, and Embankment.....	103
Item P-153 Controlled Low-Strength Material (CLSM)	117
Item P-154 Subbase Course	121
Item P-155 Lime-Treated Subgrade.....	129
Item P-156 Cement Treated Subgrade	135
Item P-157 [Cement] [Lime] Kiln Dust Treated Subgrade.....	141
Item P-158 Fly Ash Treated Subgrade.....	149
PART 4 –BASE COURSES	155
Item P-207 In-place Full Depth Reclamation (FDR) Recycled Asphalt Aggregate Base Course.....	155
Item P-208 Aggregate Base Course	163
Item P-209 Crushed Aggregate Base Course.....	173
Item P-210 Caliche Base Course	183
Item P-211 Lime Rock Base Course.....	189
Item P-212 Shell Base Course	195
Item P-213 Sand-Clay Base Course.....	201
Item P-217 Aggregate-Turf Runway/Taxiway	207
Item P-219 Recycled Concrete Aggregate Base Course.....	215
Item P-220 Cement Treated Soil Base Course.....	224
PART 5 – STABILIZED BASE COURSES	232
Item P-304 Cement-Treated Aggregate Base Course (CTB).....	232
Item P-306 Lean Concrete Base Course	242
Item P-307 Cement Treated Permeable Base Course (CTPB).....	254
PART 6 – FLEXIBLE PAVEMENTS.....	263
Item P-401 Asphalt Mix Pavement.....	263

Item P-403 Asphalt Mix Pavement [Base][Leveling][Surface] Course.....	294
Item P-404 Fuel-Resistant Asphalt Mix Pavement.....	322
PART 7 – RIGID PAVEMENT.....	347
Item P-501 Cement Concrete Pavement	347
PART 8– SURFACE TREATMENTS	391
Item P-608 Emulsified Asphalt Seal Coat	391
Item P-608-R Rapid Cure Seal Coat	403
Item P-609 Chip Seal Coat	413
Item P-623 Emulsified Asphalt Spray Seal Coat	421
Item P-626 Emulsified Asphalt Slurry Seal Surface Treatment	429
Item P-629 Thermoplastic Coal Tar Emulsion Surface Treatments	439
Item P-630 Refined Coal Tar Emulsion Without Additives, Slurry Seal Surface Treatment.....	455
Item P-631 Refined Coal Tar Emulsion with Additives, Slurry Seal Surface Treatment.....	463
Item P-632 Asphalt Pavement Rejuvenation	471
PART 9– MISCELLANEOUS	483
Item P-602 Emulsified Asphalt Prime Coat.....	483
Item P-603 Emulsified Asphalt Tack Coat	487
Item P-604 Compression Joint Seals for Concrete Pavements	491
Item P-605 Joint Sealants for Pavements.....	499
Item P-606 Adhesive Compounds, Two-Component for Sealing Wire and Lights in Pavement	505
Item P-610 Concrete for Miscellaneous Structures	511
Item P-620 Runway and Taxiway Marking.....	521
Item P-621 Saw-Cut Grooves	537
PART 10 – FENCING	541
Item F-160 Wire Fence with Wood Posts (Class A and B Fences)	541
Item F-161 Wire Fence with Steel Posts (Class C and D Fence).....	547
Item F-162 Chain-Link Fence.....	553
Item F-163 Wildlife Deterrent Fence Skirt	561
Item F-164 Wildlife Exclusion Fence.....	565
PART 11 – DRAINAGE	575
Item D-701 Pipe for Storm Drains and Culverts.....	575
Item D-702 Slotted Drains.....	587
Item D-705 Pipe Underdrains for Airports	591
Item D-751 Manholes, Catch Basins, Inlets and Inspection Holes.....	601
Item D-752 Concrete Culverts, Headwalls, and Miscellaneous Drainage Structures.....	607
Item D-754 Concrete Gutters, Ditches, and Flumes	611
PART 12 – TURFING	613
Item T-901 Seeding	613
Item T-903 Sprigging.....	621
Item T-904 Sodding	627
Item T-905 Topsoil	633
Item T-908 Mulching.....	637
PART 13 – LIGHTING INSTALLATION	641
Item L-101 Airport Rotating Beacons	641
Item L-103 Airport Beacon Towers.....	647
Item L-107 Airport Wind Cones.....	653
Item L-108 Underground Power Cable for Airports.....	659

Item L-109 Airport Transformer Vault and Vault Equipment.....	675
Item L-110 Airport Underground Electrical Duct Banks and Conduits	685
Item L-115 Electrical Manholes and Junction Structures	697
Item L-119 Airport Obstruction Lights.....	707
Item L-125 Installation of Airport Lighting Systems	713

Part 1 – General Contract Provisions

Section 10 Definition of Terms

When the following terms are used in these specifications, in the contract, or in any documents or other instruments pertaining to construction where these specifications govern, the intent and meaning shall be defined as follows:

Paragraph Number	Term	Definition
10-01	AASHTO	The American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials.
10-02	Access Road	The right-of-way, the roadway and all improvements constructed thereon connecting the airport to a public roadway.
10-03	Advertisement	A public announcement, as required by local law, inviting bids for work to be performed and materials to be furnished.
10-04	Airport	Airport means an area of land or water which is used or intended to be used for the landing and takeoff of aircraft; an appurtenant area used or intended to be used for airport buildings or other airport facilities or rights of way; airport buildings and facilities located in any of these areas, and a heliport.
10-05	Airport Improvement Program (AIP)	A grant-in-aid program, administered by the Federal Aviation Administration (FAA).
10-06	Air Operations Area (AOA)	The term air operations area (AOA) shall mean any area of the airport used or intended to be used for the landing, takeoff, or surface maneuvering of aircraft. An air operation area shall include such paved or unpaved areas that are used or intended to be used for the unobstructed movement of aircraft in addition to its associated runway, taxiway, or apron.
10-07	Apron	Area where aircraft are parked, unloaded or loaded, fueled and/or serviced.
10-08	ASTM International (ASTM)	Formerly known as the American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM).

Paragraph Number	Term	Definition
10-09	Award	The Owner's notice to the successful bidder of the acceptance of the submitted bid.
10-10	Bidder	Any individual, partnership, firm, or corporation, acting directly or through a duly authorized representative, who submits a proposal for the work contemplated.
10-11	Building Area	An area on the airport to be used, considered, or intended to be used for airport buildings or other airport facilities or rights-of-way together with all airport buildings and facilities located thereon.
10-12	Calendar Day	Every day shown on the calendar.
10-13	Certificate of Analysis (COA)	The COA is the manufacturer's Certificate of Compliance (COC) including all applicable test results required by the specifications.
10-14	Certificate of Compliance (COC)	The manufacturer's certification stating that materials or assemblies furnished fully comply with the requirements of the contract. The certificate shall be signed by the manufacturer's authorized representative.
10-15	Change Order	A written order to the Contractor covering changes in the plans, specifications, or proposal quantities and establishing the basis of payment and contract time adjustment, if any, for work within the scope of the contract and necessary to complete the project.
10-16	Contract	A written agreement between the Owner and the Contractor that establishes the obligations of the parties including but not limited to performance of work, furnishing of labor, equipment and materials and the basis of payment. The awarded contract includes but may not be limited to: Advertisement, Contract form, Proposal, Performance bond, payment bond, General provisions, certifications and representations, Technical Specifications, Plans, Supplemental Provisions, standards incorporated by reference and issued addenda.
10-17	Contract Item (Pay Item)	A specific unit of work for which a price is provided in the contract.
10-18	Contract Time	The number of calendar days or working days, stated in the proposal, allowed for completion of the contract, including authorized time extensions. If a calendar date of completion is stated in the proposal, in lieu of a number of

Paragraph Number	Term	Definition
		calendar or working days, the contract shall be completed by that date.
10-19	Contractor	The individual, partnership, firm, or corporation primarily liable for the acceptable performance of the work contracted and for the payment of all legal debts pertaining to the work who acts directly or through lawful agents or employees to complete the contract work.
10-20	Contractors Quality Control (QC) Facilities	The Contractor's QC facilities in accordance with the Contractor Quality Control Program (CQCP).
10-21	Contractor Quality Control Program (CQCP)	Details the methods and procedures that will be taken to assure that all materials and completed construction required by the contract conform to contract plans, technical specifications and other requirements, whether manufactured by the Contractor, or procured from subcontractors or vendors.
10-22	Control Strip	A demonstration by the Contractor that the materials, equipment, and construction processes results in a product meeting the requirements of the specification.
10-23	Construction Safety and Phasing Plan (CSPP)	The overall plan for safety and phasing of a construction project developed by the airport operator, or developed by the airport operator's consultant and approved by the airport operator. It is included in the invitation for bids and becomes part of the project specifications.
10-24	Drainage System	The system of pipes, ditches, and structures by which surface or subsurface waters are collected and conducted from the airport area.
10-25	Engineer	The individual, partnership, firm, or corporation duly authorized by the Owner to be responsible for engineering, inspection, and/or observation of the contract work and acting directly or through an authorized representative.
10-26	Equipment	All machinery, together with the necessary supplies for upkeep and maintenance; and all tools and apparatus necessary for the proper construction and acceptable completion of the work.
10-27	Extra Work	An item of work not provided for in the awarded contract as previously modified by change order or supplemental agreement, but which is found by the Owner's Engineer or Resident Project Representative (RPR) to be necessary to

Paragraph Number	Term	Definition
		complete the work within the intended scope of the contract as previously modified.
10-28	FAA	The Federal Aviation Administration. When used to designate a person, FAA shall mean the Administrator or their duly authorized representative.
10-29	Federal Specifications	The federal specifications and standards, commercial item descriptions, and supplements, amendments, and indices prepared and issued by the General Services Administration.
10-30	Force Account	a. Contract Force Account - A method of payment that addresses extra work performed by the Contractor on a time and material basis. b. Owner Force Account - Work performed for the project by the Owner's employees.
10-31	Intention of Terms	Whenever, in these specifications or on the plans, the words “directed,” “required,” “permitted,” “ordered,” “designated,” “prescribed,” or words of like import are used, it shall be understood that the direction, requirement, permission, order, designation, or prescription of the Engineer and/or Resident Project Representative (RPR) is intended; and similarly, the words “approved,” “acceptable,” “satisfactory,” or words of like import, shall mean approved by, or acceptable to, or satisfactory to the Engineer and/or RPR, subject in each case to the final determination of the Owner. Any reference to a specific requirement of a numbered paragraph of the contract specifications or a cited standard shall be interpreted to include all general requirements of the entire section, specification item, or cited standard that may be pertinent to such specific reference.
10-32	Lighting	A system of fixtures providing or controlling the light sources used on or near the airport or within the airport buildings. The field lighting includes all luminous signals, markers, floodlights, and illuminating devices used on or near the airport or to aid in the operation of aircraft landing at, taking off from, or taxiing on the airport surface.
10-33	Major and Minor Contract Items	A major contract item shall be any item that is listed in the proposal, the total cost of which is equal to or greater than 20% of the total amount of the award contract. All other items shall be considered minor contract items.

Paragraph Number	Term	Definition
10-34	Materials	Any substance specified for use in the construction of the contract work.
10-35	Modification of Standards (MOS)	Any deviation from standard specifications applicable to material and construction methods in accordance with FAA Order 5300.1.
10-36	Notice to Proceed (NTP)	A written notice to the Contractor to begin the actual contract work on a previously agreed to date. If applicable, the Notice to Proceed shall state the date on which the contract time begins.
10-37	Owner	The term “Owner” shall mean the party of the first part or the contracting agency signatory to the contract. Where the term “Owner” is capitalized in this document, it shall mean airport Sponsor only. The Owner for this project is [____]. ***** Insert the Owner name here. *****
10-38	Passenger Facility Charge (PFC)	Per 14 Code of Federal Regulations (CFR) Part 158 and 49 United States Code (USC) § 40117, a PFC is a charge imposed by a public agency on passengers enplaned at a commercial service airport it controls.
10-39	Pavement Structure	The combined surface course, base course(s), and subbase course(s), if any, considered as a single unit.
10-40	Payment bond	The approved form of security furnished by the Contractor and their own surety as a guaranty that the Contractor will pay in full all bills and accounts for materials and labor used in the construction of the work.
10-41	Performance bond	The approved form of security furnished by the Contractor and their own surety as a guaranty that the Contractor will complete the work in accordance with the terms of the contract.
10-42	Plans	The official drawings or exact reproductions which show the location, character, dimensions and details of the airport and the work to be done and which are to be considered as a part of the contract, supplementary to the specifications. Plans may also be referred to as 'contract drawings.'

Paragraph Number	Term	Definition
10-43	Project	The agreed scope of work for accomplishing specific airport development with respect to a particular airport.
10-44	Proposal	The written offer of the bidder (when submitted on the approved proposal form) to perform the contemplated work and furnish the necessary materials in accordance with the provisions of the plans and specifications.
10-45	Proposal guaranty	The security furnished with a proposal to guarantee that the bidder will enter into a contract if their own proposal is accepted by the Owner.
10-46	Quality Assurance (QA)	Owner's responsibility to assure that construction work completed complies with specifications for payment.
10-47	Quality Control (QC)	Contractor's responsibility to control material(s) and construction processes to complete construction in accordance with project specifications.
10-48	Quality Assurance (QA) Inspector	An authorized representative of the Engineer and/or Resident Project Representative (RPR) assigned to make all necessary inspections, observations, tests, and/or observation of tests of the work performed or being performed, or of the materials furnished or being furnished by the Contractor.
10-49	Quality Assurance (QA) Laboratory	The official quality assurance testing laboratories of the Owner or such other laboratories as may be designated by the Engineer or RPR. May also be referred to as Engineer's, Owner's, or QA Laboratory.
10-50	Resident Project Representative (RPR)	The individual, partnership, firm, or corporation duly authorized by the Owner to be responsible for all necessary inspections, observations, tests, and/or observations of tests of the contract work performed or being performed, or of the materials furnished or being furnished by the Contractor, and acting directly or through an authorized representative.
10-51	Runway	The area on the airport prepared for the landing and takeoff of aircraft.
10-52	Runway Safety Area (RSA)	A defined surface surrounding the runway prepared or suitable for reducing the risk of damage to aircraft. See the construction safety and phasing plan (CSPP) for limits of the RSA.

Paragraph Number	Term	Definition
10-53	Safety Plan Compliance Document (SPCD)	Details how the Contractor will comply with the CSPP.
10-54	Specifications	A part of the contract containing the written directions and requirements for completing the contract work. Standards for specifying materials or testing which are cited in the contract specifications by reference shall have the same force and effect as if included in the contract physically.
10-55	Sponsor	A Sponsor is defined in 49 USC § 47102(24) as a public agency that submits to the FAA for an AIP grant; or a private Owner of a public-use airport that submits to the FAA an application for an AIP grant for the airport.
10-56	Structures	Airport facilities such as bridges; culverts; catch basins, inlets, retaining walls, cribbing; storm and sanitary sewer lines; water lines; underdrains; electrical ducts, manholes, handholes, lighting fixtures and bases; transformers; navigational aids; buildings; vaults; and, other manmade features of the airport that may be encountered in the work and not otherwise classified herein.
10-57	Subgrade	The soil that forms the pavement foundation.
10-58	Superintendent	The Contractor's executive representative who is present on the work during progress, authorized to receive and fulfill instructions from the RPR, and who shall supervise and direct the construction.
10-59	Supplemental Agreement	A written agreement between the Contractor and the Owner that establishes the basis of payment and contract time adjustment, if any, for the work affected by the supplemental agreement. A supplemental agreement is required if: (1) in scope work would increase or decrease the total amount of the awarded contract by more than 25%; (2) in scope work would increase or decrease the total of any major contract item by more than 25%; (3) work that is not within the scope of the originally awarded contract; or (4) adding or deleting of a major contract item.
10-60	Surety	The corporation, partnership, or individual, other than the Contractor, executing payment or performance bonds that are furnished to the Owner by the Contractor.
10-61	Taxilane	A taxiway designed for low speed movement of aircraft between aircraft parking areas and terminal areas.

Paragraph Number	Term	Definition
10-62	Taxiway	The portion of the air operations area of an airport that has been designated by competent airport authority for movement of aircraft to and from the airport's runways, aircraft parking areas, and terminal areas.
10-63	Taxiway/Taxilane Safety Area (TSA)	A defined surface alongside the taxiway prepared or suitable for reducing the risk of damage to an aircraft. See the construction safety and phasing plan (CSPP) for limits of the TSA.
10-64	Work	The furnishing of all labor, materials, tools, equipment, and incidentals necessary or convenient to the Contractor's performance of all duties and obligations imposed by the contract, plans, and specifications.
10-65	Working day	A working day shall be any day other than a legal holiday, Saturday, or Sunday on which the normal working forces of the Contractor may proceed with regular work for at least six (6) hours toward completion of the contract. When work is suspended for causes beyond the Contractor's control, it will not be counted as a working day. Saturdays, Sundays and holidays on which the Contractor's forces engage in regular work will be considered as working days.
10-66	Owner Defined terms	[None] ***** The Engineer may add and define additional terms, if necessary. On projects that utilize a Construction Manager (CM), a Construction Manager at Risk (CMAR), or a Construction Manager/General Contractor (CMGC), add a definition of their roles on the project. The CM generally acts as an agent of the owner and is not legally or financially responsible for completion of the work; a CMAR and CMGC are legally and financially obligated to complete the work. *****

END OF SECTION 10

Section 20 Proposal Requirements and Conditions

The information provided in this section is often duplicated within the Instruction-to-bidders and Invitation-for-Bidders. For the purpose of limiting redundant requirements and potential discrepancies, modifications may be made to this section to include a reference that these requirements may be found in the procurement section of the project bid documents. The language provided in this section represents model language acceptable to the FAA. The Owner may make edits to the model language that reflect established written local and state procurement versions provided such requirements do not materially alter the intent and purpose of the FAA's model language; and such alterations do not conflict with the requirements of 2 CFR part 200 or 49 USC chapter 471.

20-01 Advertisement (Notice to Bidders). [___]

Insert the project advertisement documents here or indicate the location where the documents can be found.

The published advertisement shall state the time and place for submitting sealed proposals; provide a description of the proposed work; provide instructions to bidders about obtaining proposal forms, plans, and specifications; indicate the proposal guaranty required; and the Owner's right to reject any and all bids.

20-02 Qualification of bidders. Each bidder shall submit evidence of competency and evidence of financial responsibility to perform the work to the Owner at the time of bid opening.

Evidence of competency, unless otherwise specified, shall consist of statements covering the bidder's past experience on similar work, and a list of equipment and a list of key personnel that would be available for the work.

Each bidder shall furnish the Owner satisfactory evidence of their financial responsibility. Evidence of financial responsibility, unless otherwise specified, shall consist of a confidential statement or report of the bidder's financial resources and liabilities as of the last calendar year or the bidder's last fiscal year. Such statements or reports shall be certified by a public accountant. At the time of submitting such financial statements or reports, the bidder shall further certify whether their financial responsibility is approximately the same as stated or reported by the public accountant. If the bidder's financial responsibility has changed, the bidder shall qualify the public accountant's statement or report to reflect the bidder's true financial condition at the time such qualified statement or report is submitted to the Owner.

Unless otherwise specified, a bidder may submit evidence that they are prequalified with the State Highway Division and are on the current "bidder's list" of the state in which the proposed work is

located. Evidence of State Highway Division prequalification may be submitted as evidence of financial responsibility in lieu of the certified statements or reports specified above.

This paragraph should be edited as necessary to state what will be acceptable as evidence of financial responsibility to the Owner.

20-03 Contents of proposal forms. The Owner's proposal forms state the location and description of the proposed construction; the place, date, and time of opening of the proposals; and the estimated quantities of the various items of work to be performed and materials to be furnished for which unit bid prices are asked. The proposal form states the time in which the work must be completed, and the amount of the proposal guaranty that must accompany the proposal. The Owner will accept only those Proposals properly executed on physical forms or electronic forms provided by the Owner. Bidder actions that may cause the Owner to deem a proposal irregular are given in paragraph 20-09 *Irregular proposals*.

[Mobilization is limited to [10] percent of the total project cost.]

Delete if Item C-105 Mobilization is not included in the project.

[A prebid conference is required on this project to discuss as a minimum, the following items: material requirements; submittals; Quality Control/Quality Assurance requirements; the construction safety and phasing plan including airport access and staging areas; and unique airfield paving construction requirements. [Insert the time, date, and place of the meeting.]]

Should the Owner require a prebid conference, state the time, date, and place in the proposal. Conduct a prebid conference for all projects with pavement construction costs that exceed \$500,000. As a minimum, include the following items for discussion: material requirements; submittals; Quality Control/Quality Assurance requirements; the construction safety and phasing plan including airport access and staging areas; unique airfield paving construction requirements.

20-04 Issuance of proposal forms. The Owner reserves the right to refuse to issue a proposal form to a prospective bidder if the bidder is in default for any of the following reasons:

- a. Failure to comply with any prequalification regulations of the Owner, if such regulations are cited, or otherwise included, in the proposal as a requirement for bidding.
- b. Failure to pay, or satisfactorily settle, all bills due for labor and materials on former contracts in force with the Owner at the time the Owner issues the proposal to a prospective bidder.
- c. Documented record of Contractor default under previous contracts with the Owner.
- d. Documented record of unsatisfactory work on previous contracts with the Owner.

20-05 Interpretation of estimated proposal quantities. An estimate of quantities of work to be done and materials to be furnished under these specifications is given in the proposal. It is the result of careful calculations and is believed to be correct. It is given only as a basis for comparison of proposals and the award of the contract. The Owner does not expressly, or by implication, agree that the actual quantities involved will correspond exactly therewith; nor shall the bidder plead misunderstanding or deception because of such estimates of quantities, or of the character, location, or other conditions pertaining to the work. Payment to the Contractor will be made only for the actual quantities of work performed or materials furnished in accordance with the plans and specifications. It is understood that the quantities may be increased or decreased as provided in the Section 40, paragraph 40-02, Alteration of Work and Quantities, without in any way invalidating the unit bid prices.

20-06 Examination of plans, specifications, and site. The bidder is expected to carefully examine the site of the proposed work, the proposal, plans, specifications, and contract forms. Bidders shall satisfy themselves to the character, quality, and quantities of work to be performed, materials to be furnished, and to the requirements of the proposed contract. The submission of a proposal shall be prima facie evidence that the bidder has made such examination and is satisfied to the conditions to be encountered in performing the work and the requirements of the proposed contract, plans, and specifications.

[Boring logs and other records of subsurface investigations and tests are available for inspection of bidders. It is understood and agreed that such subsurface information, whether included in the plans, specifications, or otherwise made available to the bidder, was obtained and is intended for the Owner's design and estimating purposes only. Such information has been made available for the convenience of all bidders. It is further understood and agreed that each bidder is solely responsible for all assumptions, deductions, or conclusions which the bidder may make or obtain from their own examination of the boring logs and other records of subsurface investigations and tests that are furnished by the Owner.]

20-07 Preparation of proposal. The bidder shall submit their proposal on the forms furnished by the Owner. All blank spaces in the proposal forms, unless explicitly stated otherwise, must be correctly filled in where indicated for each and every item for which a quantity is given. The bidder shall state the price (written in ink or typed) both in words and numerals which they propose for each pay item furnished in the proposal. In case of conflict between words and numerals, the words, unless obviously incorrect, shall govern.

Prices should generally be written in whole dollars and cents. The extended total amount of each item should not be rounded.

The bidder shall correctly sign the proposal in ink. If the proposal is made by an individual, their name and post office address must be shown. If made by a partnership, the name and post office address of each member of the partnership must be shown. If made by a corporation, the person signing the proposal shall give the name of the state where the corporation was chartered and the name, titles, and business address of the president, secretary, and the treasurer. Anyone signing a proposal as an agent shall file evidence of their authority to do so and that the signature is binding upon the firm or corporation.

20-08 Responsive and responsible bidder. A responsive bid conforms to all significant terms and conditions contained in the Owner's invitation for bid. It is the Owner's responsibility to decide if the

exceptions taken by a bidder to the solicitation are material or not and the extent of deviation it is willing to accept.

A responsible bidder has the ability to perform successfully under the terms and conditions of a proposed procurement, as defined in 2 CFR § 200.318(h). This includes such matters as Contractor integrity, compliance with public policy, record of past performance, and financial and technical resources.

20-09 Irregular proposals. Proposals shall be considered irregular for the following reasons:

- a. If the proposal is on a form other than that furnished by the Owner, or if the Owner's form is altered, or if any part of the proposal form is detached.
- b. If there are unauthorized additions, conditional or alternate pay items, or irregularities of any kind that make the proposal incomplete, indefinite, or otherwise ambiguous.
- c. If the proposal does not contain a unit price for each pay item listed in the proposal, except in the case of authorized alternate pay items, for which the bidder is not required to furnish a unit price.
- d. If the proposal contains unit prices that are obviously unbalanced.
- e. If the proposal is not accompanied by the proposal guaranty specified by the Owner.
- f. If the applicable Disadvantaged Business Enterprise information is incomplete.

The Owner reserves the right to reject any irregular proposal and the right to waive technicalities if such waiver is in the best interest of the Owner and conforms to local laws and ordinances pertaining to the letting of construction contracts.

20-10 Bid guarantee. Each separate proposal shall be accompanied by a bid bond, certified check, or other specified acceptable collateral, in the amount specified in the proposal form. Such bond, check, or collateral, shall be made payable to the Owner.

2 CFR 200.325 provides that for contracts exceeding the Simplified Acquisition Threshold, the Owner should use local bonding policy and requirements provided that the FAA has made a determination that the Government's interest is adequately protected. If such a determination has not been made, the bid guarantee shall be equivalent to 5% of the bid price. It shall consist of a firm commitment such as a bid bond, certified check, or other negotiable instrument accompanying a bid as assurance that the bidder will, upon acceptance of the bid, execute such contractual documents as may be required within the time specified.

20-11 Delivery of proposal. [Each proposal submitted shall be placed in a sealed envelope plainly marked with the project number, location of airport, and name and business address of the bidder on the outside. When sent by mail, preferably registered, the sealed proposal, marked as indicated above, should be enclosed in an additional envelope. No proposal will be considered unless received at the place specified in the advertisement or as modified by Addendum before the time specified for opening all bids. Proposals received after the bid opening time shall be returned to the bidder unopened.]

Bid delivery requirements, including electronic delivery, to comply with local/state regulations may be substituted for this language.

20-12 Withdrawal or revision of proposals. A bidder may withdraw or revise (by withdrawal of one proposal and submission of another) a proposal provided that the bidder's request for withdrawal is received by the Owner [in writing][by fax][by email] before the time specified for opening bids. Revised proposals must be received at the place specified in the advertisement before the time specified for opening all bids.

Edit to reflect local procurement requirements for withdrawal of proposals.

20-13 Public opening of proposals. Proposals shall be opened, and read, publicly at the time and place specified in the advertisement. Bidders, their authorized agents, and other interested persons are invited to attend. Proposals that have been withdrawn (by written or telegraphic request) or received after the time specified for opening bids shall be returned to the bidder unopened.

20-14 Disqualification of bidders. A bidder shall be considered disqualified for any of the following reasons:

a. Submitting more than one proposal from the same partnership, firm, or corporation under the same or different name.

b. Evidence of collusion among bidders. Bidders participating in such collusion shall be disqualified as bidders for any future work of the Owner until any such participating bidder has been reinstated by the Owner as a qualified bidder.

c. If the bidder is considered to be in "default" for any reason specified in paragraph 20-04, *Issuance of Proposal Forms*, of this section.

20-15 Discrepancies and Omissions. A Bidder who discovers discrepancies or omissions with the project bid documents shall immediately notify the Owner's Engineer of the matter. A bidder that has doubt as to the true meaning of a project requirement may submit to the Owner's Engineer a written request for interpretation no later than [] days prior to bid opening.

Any interpretation of the project bid documents by the Owner's Engineer will be by written addendum issued by the Owner. The Owner will not consider any instructions, clarifications or interpretations of the bidding documents in any manner other than written addendum.

END OF SECTION 20

Page Intentionally Blank

Section 30 Award and Execution of Contract

The information provided in this section is often duplicated within the Instruction-to-bidders and Invitation-for-Bidders. For the purpose of limiting redundant requirements and potential discrepancies, modifications may be made to this section to include a reference that these requirements may be found in the procurement section of the project manual. The language provide in this section represents model language acceptable to the FAA. The Owner may make edits to the model language that reflect established written local and state procurement versions provided such requirements do not materially alter the intent of the FAA's model language; and such alterations do not conflict with the requirements of 2 CFR part 200 or 49 USC chapter 471.

30-01 Consideration of proposals. After the proposals are publicly opened and read, they will be compared on the basis of the summation of the products obtained by multiplying the estimated quantities shown in the proposal by the unit bid prices. If a bidder's proposal contains a discrepancy between unit bid prices written in words and unit bid prices written in numbers, the unit bid price written in words shall govern.

Until the award of a contract is made, the Owner reserves the right to reject a bidder's proposal for any of the following reasons:

- a. If the proposal is irregular as specified in Section 20, paragraph 20-09, *Irregular Proposals*.
- b. If the bidder is disqualified for any of the reasons specified Section 20, paragraph 20-14, *Disqualification of Bidders*.

In addition, until the award of a contract is made, the Owner reserves the right to reject any or all proposals, waive technicalities, if such waiver is in the best interest of the Owner and is in conformance with applicable state and local laws or regulations pertaining to the letting of construction contracts; advertise for new proposals; or proceed with the work otherwise. All such actions shall promote the Owner's best interests.

30-02 Award of contract. The award of a contract, if it is to be awarded, shall be made within [] calendar days of the date specified for publicly opening proposals, unless otherwise specified herein.

The award of contract is recommended to be made within 30 days, but shall not exceed the maximum time allowed by the contracting authority.

If the Owner elects to proceed with an award of contract, the Owner will make award to the responsible bidder whose bid, conforming with all the material terms and conditions of the bid documents, is the lowest in price.

If the Owner includes bid alternates (additive or deductive), the bid documents must clearly state the order of evaluation the Owner will apply during evaluation of bids. Practices that establish the basis of award on the base bid plus any arbitrary combination of bid alternates may jeopardize federal participation.

For AIP contracts, unless otherwise specified in this subsection, no award shall be made until the FAA has reviewed the Owner's recommendation to make such award in accordance with 2 CFR 200.324.

30-03 Cancellation of award. The Owner reserves the right to cancel the award without liability to the bidder, except return of proposal guaranty, at any time before a contract has been fully executed by all parties and is approved by the Owner in accordance with paragraph 30-07 *Approval of Contract*.

30-04 Return of proposal guaranty. All proposal guaranties, except those of the two lowest bidders, will be returned immediately after the Owner has made a comparison of bids as specified in the paragraph 30-01, *Consideration of Proposals*. Proposal guaranties of the two lowest bidders will be retained by the Owner until such time as an award is made, at which time, the unsuccessful bidder's proposal guaranty will be returned. The successful bidder's proposal guaranty will be returned as soon as the Owner receives the contract bonds as specified in paragraph 30-05, *Requirements of Contract Bonds*.

30-05 Requirements of contract bonds. At the time of the execution of the contract, the successful bidder shall furnish the Owner a surety bond or bonds that have been fully executed by the bidder and the surety guaranteeing the performance of the work and the payment of all legal debts that may be incurred by reason of the Contractor's performance of the work. The surety and the form of the bond or bonds shall be acceptable to the Owner. Unless otherwise specified in this subsection, the surety bond or bonds shall be in a sum equal to the full amount of the contract.

2 CFR 200.325 provides that for contracts exceeding the Simplified Acquisition Threshold, the Owner should use local bonding policy and requirements provided that the FAA has made a determination that the federal interest is adequately protected.

If such a determination has not been made, the Owner shall require separate performance and payment bonds in the full amount of the awarded contract. For AIP contracts awarded in an amount of \$150,000 or less, the Owner should specify bonding in accordance with local requirements.

30-06 Execution of contract. The successful bidder shall sign (execute) the necessary agreements for entering into the contract and return the signed contract to the Owner, along with the fully executed surety bond or bonds specified in paragraph 30-05, *Requirements of Contract Bonds*, of this section, within [15] calendar days from the date mailed or otherwise delivered to the successful bidder.

**Required federal contract provisions can be found at the following FAA website:
www.faa.gov/airports/aip/procurement/federal_contract_provisions/.**

30-07 Approval of contract. Upon receipt of the contract and contract bond or bonds that have been executed by the successful bidder, the Owner shall complete the execution of the contract in accordance with local laws or ordinances, and return the fully executed contract to the Contractor. Delivery of the fully executed contract to the Contractor shall constitute the Owner's approval to be bound by the successful bidder's proposal and the terms of the contract.

30-08 Failure to execute contract. Failure of the successful bidder to execute the contract and furnish an acceptable surety bond or bonds within the period specified in paragraph 30-06, *Execution of Contract*, of this section shall be just cause for cancellation of the award and forfeiture of the proposal guaranty, not as a penalty, but as liquidated damages to the Owner.

END OF SECTION 30

Page Intentionally Blank

Section 40 Scope of Work

40-01 Intent of contract. The intent of the contract is to provide for construction and completion, in every detail, of the work described. It is further intended that the Contractor shall furnish all labor, materials, equipment, tools, transportation, and supplies required to complete the work in accordance with the plans, specifications, and terms of the contract.

40-02 Alteration of work and quantities. The Owner reserves the right to make such changes in quantities and work as may be necessary or desirable to complete, in a satisfactory manner, the original intended work. Unless otherwise specified in the Contract, the Owner's Engineer or RPR shall be and is hereby authorized to make, in writing, such in-scope alterations in the work and variation of quantities as may be necessary to complete the work, provided such action does not represent a significant change in the character of the work.

For purpose of this section, a significant change in character of work means: any change that is outside the current contract scope of work; any change (increase or decrease) in the total contract cost by more than 25%; or any change in the total cost of a major contract item by more than 25%.

Work alterations and quantity variances that do not meet the definition of significant change in character of work shall not invalidate the contract nor release the surety. Contractor agrees to accept payment for such work alterations and quantity variances in accordance with Section 90, paragraph 90-03, *Compensation for Altered Quantities*.

Should the value of altered work or quantity variance meet the criteria for significant change in character of work, such altered work and quantity variance shall be covered by a supplemental agreement. Supplemental agreements shall also require consent of the Contractor's surety and separate performance and payment bonds. If the Owner and the Contractor are unable to agree on a unit adjustment for any contract item that requires a supplemental agreement, the Owner reserves the right to terminate the contract with respect to the item and make other arrangements for its completion.

Applicable federal contract provisions for procurement and contracting under AIP are found on the following website:

www.faa.gov/airports/aip/procurement/federal_contract_provisions/

40-03 Omitted items. The Owner, the Owner's Engineer or the RPR may provide written notice to the Contractor to omit from the work any contract item that does not meet the definition of major contract item. Major contract items may be omitted by a supplemental agreement. Such omission of contract items shall not invalidate any other contract provision or requirement.

Should a contract item be omitted or otherwise ordered to be non-performed, the Contractor shall be paid for all work performed toward completion of such item prior to the date of the order to omit such item. Payment for work performed shall be in accordance with Section 90, paragraph 90-04, *Payment for Omitted Items*.

40-04 Extra work. Should acceptable completion of the contract require the Contractor to perform an item of work not provided for in the awarded contract as previously modified by change order or

supplemental agreement, Owner may issue a Change Order to cover the necessary extra work. Change orders for extra work shall contain agreed unit prices for performing the change order work in accordance with the requirements specified in the order, and shall contain any adjustment to the contract time that, in the RPR's opinion, is necessary for completion of the extra work.

When determined by the RPR to be in the Owner's best interest, the RPR may order the Contractor to proceed with extra work as provided in Section 90, paragraph 90-05, *Payment for Extra Work*. Extra work that is necessary for acceptable completion of the project, but is not within the general scope of the work covered by the original contract shall be covered by a supplemental agreement as defined in Section 10, paragraph 10-59, *Supplemental Agreement*.

If extra work is essential to maintaining the project critical path, RPR may order the Contractor to commence the extra work under a Time and Material contract method. Once sufficient detail is available to establish the level of effort necessary for the extra work, the Owner shall initiate a change order or supplemental agreement to cover the extra work.

Any claim for payment of extra work that is not covered by written agreement (change order or supplemental agreement) shall be rejected by the Owner.

All change orders, supplemental agreements, and contract modifications must eventually be reviewed by the FAA. Unless specifically requested by the FAA, the Owner does not have to obtain prior FAA approval for contract changes except for the Buy American review, if required. However, if an Owner proceeds with contract changes without FAA approval, it is at the Owner's risk.

40-05 Maintenance of traffic. It is the explicit intention of the contract that the safety of aircraft, as well as the Contractor's equipment and personnel, is the most important consideration. The Contractor shall maintain traffic in the manner detailed in the Construction Safety and Phasing Plan (CSPP).

a. It is understood and agreed that the Contractor shall provide for the free and unobstructed movement of aircraft in the air operations areas (AOAs) of the airport with respect to their own operations and the operations of all subcontractors as specified in Section 80, paragraph 80-04, *Limitation of Operations*. It is further understood and agreed that the Contractor shall provide for the uninterrupted operation of visual and electronic signals (including power supplies thereto) used in the guidance of aircraft while operating to, from, and upon the airport as specified in Section 70, paragraph 70-15, *Contractor's Responsibility for Utility Service and Facilities of Others*.

b. With respect to their own operations and the operations of all subcontractors, the Contractor shall provide marking, lighting, and other acceptable means of identifying personnel, equipment, vehicles, storage areas, and any work area or condition that may be hazardous to the operation of aircraft, fire-rescue equipment, or maintenance vehicles at the airport in accordance with the construction safety and phasing plan (CSPP) and the safety plan compliance document (SPCD).

Refer to AC 150/5210-5, Painting, Marking and Lighting of Vehicles Used on an Airport and AC 150/5370-2, Operational Safety on Airports During Construction for applicable standards.

c. When the contract requires the maintenance of an existing road, street, or highway during the Contractor's performance of work that is otherwise provided for in the contract, plans, and specifications, the Contractor shall keep the road, street, or highway open to all traffic and shall provide maintenance as may be required to accommodate traffic. The Contractor, at their expense, shall be responsible for the repair to equal or better than preconstruction conditions of any damage caused by the Contractor's equipment and personnel. The Contractor shall furnish, erect, and maintain barricades, warning signs, flag person, and other traffic control devices in reasonable conformity with the Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices (MUTCD) (<http://mutcd.fhwa.dot.gov/>), unless otherwise specified. The Contractor shall also construct and maintain in a safe condition any temporary connections necessary for ingress to and egress from abutting property or intersecting roads, streets or highways. [Unless otherwise specified herein, the Contractor will not be required to furnish snow removal for such existing road, street, or highway.]

40-06 Removal of existing structures. All existing structures encountered within the established lines, grades, or grading sections shall be removed by the Contractor, unless such existing structures are otherwise specified to be relocated, adjusted up or down, salvaged, abandoned in place, reused in the work or to remain in place. The cost of removing such existing structures shall not be measured or paid for directly, but shall be included in the various contract items.

Should the Contractor encounter an existing structure (above or below ground) in the work for which the disposition is not indicated on the plans, the Resident Project Representative (RPR) shall be notified prior to disturbing such structure. The disposition of existing structures so encountered shall be immediately determined by the RPR in accordance with the provisions of the contract.

Except as provided in Section 40, paragraph 40-07, *Rights in and Use of Materials Found in the Work*, it is intended that all existing materials or structures that may be encountered (within the lines, grades, or grading sections established for completion of the work) shall be used in the work as otherwise provided for in the contract and shall remain the property of the Owner when so used in the work.

The removal of large or complicated existing structures such as box-culverts, underground storage tanks, large underground electrical vaults, large reinforced concrete structures or foundations, or similar existing airport facilities should be provided for in separate technical specifications. Contract pay items should also be provided in the contract proposal to cover payment for such work.

40-07 Rights in and use of materials found in the work. Should the Contractor encounter any material such as (but not restricted to) sand, stone, gravel, slag, or concrete slabs within the established lines, grades, or grading sections, the use of which is intended by the terms of the contract to be embankment, the Contractor may at their own option either:

- a. Use such material in another contract item, providing such use is approved by the RPR and is in conformance with the contract specifications applicable to such use; or,
- b. Remove such material from the site, upon written approval of the RPR; or
- c. Use such material for the Contractor's own temporary construction on site; or,
- d. Use such material as intended by the terms of the contract.

Should the Contractor wish to exercise option a., b., or c., the Contractor shall request the RPR's approval in advance of such use.

Should the RPR approve the Contractor's request to exercise option a., b., or c., the Contractor shall be paid for the excavation or removal of such material at the applicable contract price. The Contractor shall replace, at their expense, such removed or excavated material with an agreed equal volume of material that is acceptable for use in constructing embankment, backfills, or otherwise to the extent that such replacement material is needed to complete the contract work. The Contractor shall not be charged for use of such material used in the work or removed from the site.

Should the RPR approve the Contractor's exercise of option a., the Contractor shall be paid, at the applicable contract price, for furnishing and installing such material in accordance with requirements of the contract item in which the material is used.

It is understood and agreed that the Contractor shall make no claim for delays by reason of their own exercise of option a., b., or c.

The Contractor shall not excavate, remove, or otherwise disturb any material, structure, or part of a structure which is located outside the lines, grades, or grading sections established for the work, except where such excavation or removal is provided for in the contract, plans, or specifications.

The engineer can modify this section if the Owner does not have rights to the material.

40-08 Final cleanup. Upon completion of the work and before acceptance and final payment will be made, the Contractor shall remove from the site all machinery, equipment, surplus and discarded materials, rubbish, temporary structures, and stumps or portions of trees. The Contractor shall cut all brush and woods within the limits indicated and shall leave the site in a neat and presentable condition. Material cleared from the site and deposited on adjacent property will not be considered as having been disposed of satisfactorily, unless the Contractor has obtained the written permission of the property Owner.

END OF SECTION 40

Section 50 Control of Work

50-01 Authority of the Resident Project Representative (RPR). The RPR has final authority regarding the interpretation of project specification requirements. The RPR shall determine acceptability of the quality of materials furnished, method of performance of work performed, and the manner and rate of performance of the work. The RPR does not have the authority to accept work that does not conform to specification requirements.

50-02 Conformity with plans and specifications. All work and all materials furnished shall be in reasonably close conformity with the lines, grades, grading sections, cross-sections, dimensions, material requirements, and testing requirements that are specified (including specified tolerances) in the contract, plans, or specifications.

If the RPR finds the materials furnished, work performed, or the finished product not within reasonably close conformity with the plans and specifications, but that the portion of the work affected will, in their opinion, result in a finished product having a level of safety, economy, durability, and workmanship acceptable to the Owner, the RPR will advise the Owner of their determination that the affected work be accepted and remain in place. The RPR will document the determination and recommend to the Owner a basis of acceptance that will provide for an adjustment in the contract price for the affected portion of the work. Changes in the contract price must be covered by contract change order or supplemental agreement as applicable.

If the RPR finds the materials furnished, work performed, or the finished product are not in reasonably close conformity with the plans and specifications and have resulted in an unacceptable finished product, the affected work or materials shall be removed and replaced or otherwise corrected by and at the expense of the Contractor in accordance with the RPR's written orders.

The term "reasonably close conformity" shall not be construed as waiving the Contractor's responsibility to complete the work in accordance with the contract, plans, and specifications. The term shall not be construed as waiving the RPR's responsibility to insist on strict compliance with the requirements of the contract, plans, and specifications during the Contractor's execution of the work, when, in the RPR's opinion, such compliance is essential to provide an acceptable finished portion of the work.

The term "reasonably close conformity" is also intended to provide the RPR with the authority, after consultation with the Sponsor and FAA, to use sound engineering judgment in their determinations to accept work that is not in strict conformity, but will provide a finished product equal to or better than that required by the requirements of the contract, plans and specifications.

For Airport Improvement Program (AIP) contracts, the Owner must keep the FAA advised of the Engineer's determinations as to acceptance of work that is not in reasonably close conformity to the contract, plans, and specifications.

All change orders, supplemental agreements, and contract modifications must eventually be reviewed by the FAA. Unless specifically requested by the FAA, the Owner does not have to obtain prior FAA approval for contract changes except for the Buy American review, if required. However, if an Owner proceeds with contract changes without FAA approval, it is at the Owner's risk.

The RPR will not be responsible for the Contractor's means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures of construction or the safety precautions incident thereto.

50-03 Coordination of contract, plans, and specifications. The contract, plans, specifications, and all referenced standards cited are essential parts of the contract requirements. If electronic files are provided and used on the project and there is a conflict between the electronic files and hard copy plans, the hard copy plans shall govern. A requirement occurring in one is as binding as though occurring in all. They are intended to be complementary and to describe and provide for a complete work. In case of discrepancy, calculated dimensions will govern over scaled dimensions; contract technical specifications shall govern over contract general provisions, plans, cited standards for materials or testing, and cited advisory circulars (ACs); contract general provisions shall govern over plans, cited standards for materials or testing, and cited ACs; plans shall govern over cited standards for materials or testing and cited ACs. If any paragraphs contained in the Special Provisions conflict with General Provisions or Technical Specifications, the Special Provisions shall govern.

From time to time, discrepancies within cited testing standards occur due to the timing of the change, edits, and/or replacement of the standards. If the Contractor discovers any apparent discrepancy within standard test methods, the Contractor shall immediately ask the RPR for an interpretation and decision, and such decision shall be final.

The Contractor shall not take advantage of any apparent error or omission on the plans or specifications. In the event the Contractor discovers any apparent error or discrepancy, Contractor shall immediately notify the Owner or the designated representative in writing requesting their written interpretation and decision.

50-04 List of Special Provisions. [___]

The Engineer must list the Special Provisions in the order of precedence.

50-05 Cooperation of Contractor. The Contractor shall be supplied with [five] hard copies or an electronic PDF of the plans and specifications. The Contractor shall have available on the construction site at all times one hardcopy each of the plans and specifications. Additional hard copies of plans and specifications may be obtained by the Contractor for the cost of reproduction.

The Contractor shall give constant attention to the work to facilitate the progress thereof, and shall cooperate with the RPR and their inspectors and with other Contractors in every way possible. The Contractor shall have a competent superintendent on the work at all times who is fully authorized as their agent on the work. The superintendent shall be capable of reading and thoroughly understanding the plans and specifications and shall receive and fulfill instructions from the RPR or their authorized representative.

50-06 Cooperation between Contractors. The Owner reserves the right to contract for and perform other or additional work on or near the work covered by this contract.

When separate contracts are let within the limits of any one project, each Contractor shall conduct the work not to interfere with or hinder the progress of completion of the work being performed by other Contractors. Contractors working on the same project shall cooperate with each other as directed.

Each Contractor involved shall assume all liability, financial or otherwise, in connection with their own contract and shall protect and hold harmless the Owner from any and all damages or claims that may arise because of inconvenience, delays, or loss experienced because of the presence and operations of other Contractors working within the limits of the same project.

The Contractor shall arrange their work and shall place and dispose of the materials being used to not interfere with the operations of the other Contractors within the limits of the same project. The Contractor shall join their work with that of the others in an acceptable manner and shall perform it in proper sequence to that of the others.

50-07 Construction layout and stakes. The Engineer/RPR shall establish necessary horizontal and vertical control. The establishment of Survey Control and/or reestablishment of survey control shall be by a State Licensed Land Surveyor. Contractor is responsible for preserving integrity of horizontal and vertical controls established by Engineer/RPR. In case of negligence on the part of the Contractor or their employees, resulting in the destruction of any horizontal and vertical control, the resulting costs will be deducted as a liquidated damage against the Contractor.

Prior to the start of construction, the Contractor will check all control points for horizontal and vertical accuracy and certify in writing to the RPR that the Contractor concurs with survey control established for the project. All lines, grades and measurements from control points necessary for the proper execution and control of the work on this project will be provided to the RPR. The Contractor is responsible to establish all layout required for the construction of the project.

Copies of survey notes will be provided to the RPR for each area of construction and for each placement of material as specified to allow the RPR to make periodic checks for conformance with plan grades, alignments and grade tolerances required by the applicable material specifications. Surveys will be provided to the RPR prior to commencing work items that cover or disturb the survey staking. Survey(s) and notes shall be provided in the following format(s): [____].)

Laser, GPS, String line, or other automatic control shall be checked with temporary control as necessary. In the case of error, on the part of the Contractor, their surveyor, employees or subcontractors, resulting in established grades, alignment or grade tolerances that do not concur with those specified or shown on the plans, the Contractor is solely responsible for correction, removal, replacement and all associated costs at no additional cost to the Owner.

[____]

The Engineer should specify the desired format and accuracy for electronic delivery of survey(s) in addition to hard copy(s). This should be applicable to all survey(s) throughout these specifications.

With FAA approval, additional survey criteria may be added.

No direct payment will be made, unless otherwise specified in contract documents, for this labor, materials, or other expenses. The cost shall be included in the price of the bid for the various items of the Contract.

50-08 Authority and duties of Quality Assurance (QA) inspectors. QA inspectors shall be authorized to inspect all work done and all material furnished. Such QA inspection may extend to all or any part of the work and to the preparation, fabrication, or manufacture of the materials to be used. QA inspectors are not authorized to revoke, alter, or waive any provision of the contract. QA inspectors are not authorized to issue instructions contrary to the plans and specifications or to act as foreman for the Contractor.

QA Inspectors are authorized to notify the Contractor or their representatives of any failure of the work or materials to conform to the requirements of the contract, plans, or specifications and to reject such nonconforming materials in question until such issues can be referred to the RPR for a decision.

50-09 Inspection of the work. All materials and each part or detail of the work shall be subject to inspection. The RPR shall be allowed access to all parts of the work and shall be furnished with such information and assistance by the Contractor as is required to make a complete and detailed inspection.

If the RPR requests it, the Contractor, at any time before acceptance of the work, shall remove or uncover such portions of the finished work as may be directed. After examination, the Contractor shall restore said portions of the work to the standard required by the specifications. Should the work thus exposed or examined prove acceptable, the uncovering, or removing, and the replacing of the covering or making good of the parts removed will be paid for as extra work; but should the work so exposed or examined prove unacceptable, the uncovering, or removing, and the replacing of the covering or making good of the parts removed will be at the Contractor's expense.

Provide advance written notice to the RPR of work the Contractor plans to perform each week and each day. Any work done or materials used without written notice and allowing opportunity for inspection by the RPR may be ordered removed and replaced at the Contractor's expense.

Should the contract work include relocation, adjustment, or any other modification to existing facilities, not the property of the (contract) Owner, authorized representatives of the Owners of such facilities shall have the right to inspect such work. Such inspection shall in no sense make any facility owner a party to the contract, and shall in no way interfere with the rights of the parties to this contract.

50-10 Removal of unacceptable and unauthorized work. All work that does not conform to the requirements of the contract, plans, and specifications will be considered unacceptable, unless otherwise determined acceptable by the RPR as provided in paragraph 50-02, *Conformity with Plans and Specifications*.

Unacceptable work, whether the result of poor workmanship, use of defective materials, damage through carelessness, or any other cause found to exist prior to the final acceptance of the work, shall be removed immediately and replaced in an acceptable manner in accordance with the provisions of Section 70, paragraph 70-14, *Contractor's Responsibility for Work*.

No removal work made under provision of this paragraph shall be done without lines and grades having been established by the RPR. Work done contrary to the instructions of the RPR, work done beyond the lines shown on the plans or as established by the RPR, except as herein specified, or any extra work done without authority, will be considered as unauthorized and will not be paid for under the provisions of the contract. Work so done may be ordered removed or replaced at the Contractor's expense.

Upon failure on the part of the Contractor to comply with any order of the RPR made under the provisions of this subsection, the RPR will have authority to cause unacceptable work to be remedied or removed and replaced; and unauthorized work to be removed and recover the resulting costs as a liquidated damage against the Contractor.

50-11 Load restrictions. The Contractor shall comply with all legal load restrictions in the hauling of materials on public roads beyond the limits of the work. A special permit will not relieve the Contractor of liability for damage that may result from the moving of material or equipment.

The operation of equipment of such weight or so loaded as to cause damage to structures or to any other type of construction will not be permitted. Hauling of materials over the base course or surface course under construction shall be limited as directed. No loads will be permitted on a concrete pavement, base, or structure before the expiration of the curing period. The Contractor, at their own expense, shall be responsible for the repair to equal or better than preconstruction conditions of any damage caused by the Contractor's equipment and personnel.

The Engineer must check to see if the on-site project access roads and haul routes will support the construction equipment. Particular attention should be paid when sections of existing airfield pavements will be used as haul routes to assure that existing pavements are not overloaded. If questionable, the Engineer should add appropriate provisions to preserve or rehabilitate any access roads or haul routes to the bid documents. Various measures such as videotape or photographs may be required to document existing conditions prior to start of construction. Construction traffic should be kept off airport pavements to the extent possible.

50-12 Maintenance during construction. The Contractor shall maintain the work during construction and until the work is accepted. Maintenance shall constitute continuous and effective work prosecuted day by day, with adequate equipment and forces so that the work is maintained in satisfactory condition at all times.

In the case of a contract for the placing of a course upon a course or subgrade previously constructed, the Contractor shall maintain the previous course or subgrade during all construction operations.

All costs of maintenance work during construction and before the project is accepted shall be included in the unit prices bid on the various contract items, and the Contractor will not be paid an additional amount for such work.

50-13 Failure to maintain the work. Should the Contractor at any time fail to maintain the work as provided in paragraph 50-12, *Maintenance during Construction*, the RPR shall immediately notify the Contractor of such noncompliance. Such notification shall specify a reasonable time within which the Contractor shall be required to remedy such unsatisfactory maintenance condition. The time specified will give due consideration to the exigency that exists.

Should the Contractor fail to respond to the RPR's notification, the Owner may suspend any work necessary for the Owner to correct such unsatisfactory maintenance condition, depending on the exigency that exists. Any maintenance cost incurred by the Owner, shall be recovered as a liquidated damage against the Contractor.

50-14 Partial acceptance. If at any time during the execution of the project the Contractor substantially completes a usable unit or portion of the work, the occupancy of which will benefit the Owner, the Contractor may request the RPR to make final inspection of that unit. If the RPR finds upon inspection that the unit has been satisfactorily completed in compliance with the contract, the RPR may accept it as being complete, and the Contractor may be relieved of further responsibility for that unit. Such partial acceptance and beneficial occupancy by the Owner shall not void or alter any provision of the contract.

50-15 Final acceptance. Upon due notice from the Contractor of presumptive completion of the entire project, the RPR and Owner will make an inspection. If all construction provided for and contemplated by the contract is found to be complete in accordance with the contract, plans, and specifications, such inspection shall constitute the final inspection. The RPR shall notify the Contractor in writing of final acceptance as of the date of the final inspection.

If, however, the inspection discloses any work, in whole or in part, as being unsatisfactory, the RPR will notify the Contractor and the Contractor shall correct the unsatisfactory work. Upon correction of the work, another inspection will be made which shall constitute the final inspection, provided the work has been satisfactorily completed. In such event, the RPR will make the final acceptance and notify the Contractor in writing of this acceptance as of the date of final inspection.

50-16 Claims for adjustment and disputes. If for any reason the Contractor deems that additional compensation is due for work or materials not clearly provided for in the contract, plans, or specifications or previously authorized as extra work, the Contractor shall notify the RPR in writing of their intention to claim such additional compensation before the Contractor begins the work on which the Contractor bases the claim. If such notification is not given or the RPR is not afforded proper opportunity by the Contractor for keeping strict account of actual cost as required, then the Contractor hereby agrees to waive any claim for such additional compensation. Such notice by the Contractor and the fact that the RPR has kept account of the cost of the work shall not in any way be construed as proving or substantiating the validity of the claim. When the work on which the claim for additional compensation is based has been completed, the Contractor shall, within 10 calendar days, submit a written claim to the RPR who will present it to the Owner for consideration in accordance with local laws or ordinances.

Nothing in this subsection shall be construed as a waiver of the Contractor's right to dispute final payment based on differences in measurements or computations.

[50-17 Value Engineering Cost Proposal.

FAA concurrence must be obtained when this paragraph is included.

This paragraph may not be applied on construction management at-risk (CMAR) and Design-build project delivery methods after a gross maximum price (GMP) is established.

Use of this paragraph in project specifications is at the option of the Owner/Engineer.

This paragraph should not be incorporated into project specifications if State or local laws prohibit its use or if the project does not lend itself to value engineering.

The provisions of this paragraph will apply only to contracts awarded to the lowest bidder pursuant to competitive bidding.

On projects with original contract amounts in excess of \$100,000, the Contractor may submit to the RPR, in writing, proposals for modifying the plans, specifications or other requirements of the contract for the sole purpose of reducing the cost of construction. The value engineering cost proposal shall not impair, in any manner, the essential functions or characteristics of the project, including but not limited to service life, economy of operation, ease of maintenance, desired appearance, design and safety standards. This provision shall not apply unless the proposal submitted is specifically identified by the Contractor as being presented for consideration as a value engineering proposal.

Not eligible for value engineering cost proposals are changes in the basic design of a pavement type, runway and taxiway lighting, visual aids, hydraulic capacity of drainage facilities, or changes in grade or alignment that reduce the geometric standards of the project.

As a minimum, the following information shall be submitted by the Contractor with each proposal:

- a. A description of both existing contract requirements for performing the work and the proposed changes, with a discussion of the comparative advantages and disadvantages of each.
- b. An itemization of the contract requirements that must be changed if the proposal is adopted.
- c. A detailed estimate of the cost of performing the work under the existing contract and under the proposed changes.
- d. A statement of the time by which a change order adopting the proposal must be issued.
- e. A statement of the effect adoption of the proposal will have on the time for completion of the contract.
- f. The contract items of work affected by the proposed changes, including any quantity variation attributable to them.

The Contractor may withdraw, in whole or in part, any value engineering cost proposal not accepted by the RPR, within the period specified in the proposal. The provisions of this subsection shall not be construed to require the RPR to consider any value engineering cost proposal that may be submitted.

The Contractor shall continue to perform the work in accordance with the requirements of the contract until a change order incorporating the value engineering cost proposal has been issued. If a change order has not been issued by the date upon which the Contractor's value engineering cost proposal specifies that a decision should be made, or such other date as the Contractor may subsequently have requested in writing, such value engineering cost proposal shall be deemed rejected.

The RPR shall be the sole judge of the acceptability of a value engineering cost proposal and of the estimated net savings from the adoption of all or any part of such proposal. In determining the estimated net savings, the RPR may disregard the contract bid prices if, in the RPR's judgment such prices do not represent a fair measure of the value of the work to be performed or deleted.

The Owner may require the Contractor to share in the Owner's costs of investigating a value engineering cost proposal submitted by the Contractor as a condition of considering such proposal. Where such a condition is imposed, the Contractor shall acknowledge acceptance of it in writing. Such acceptance shall constitute full authority for the Owner to deduct the cost of investigating a value engineering cost proposal from amounts payable to the Contractor under the contract.

If the Contractor's value engineering cost proposal is accepted in whole or in part, such acceptance will be by a contract change order that shall specifically state that it is executed pursuant to this paragraph. Such change order shall incorporate the changes in the plans and specifications which are necessary to permit the value

engineering cost proposal or such part of it as has been accepted and shall include any conditions upon which the RPR's approval is based. The change order shall also set forth the estimated net savings attributable to the value engineering cost proposal. The net savings shall be determined as the difference in costs between the original contract costs for the involved work items and the costs occurring as a result of the proposed change. The change order shall also establish the net savings agreed upon and shall provide for adjustment in the contract price that will divide the net savings equally between the Contractor and the Owner.

The Contractor's 50% share of the net savings shall constitute full compensation to the Contractor for the value engineering cost proposal and the performance of the work.

Acceptance of the value engineering cost proposal and performance of the work shall not extend the time of completion of the contract unless specifically provided for in the contract change order.]

END OF SECTION 50

Section 60 Control of Materials

60-01 Source of supply and quality requirements. The materials used in the work shall conform to the requirements of the contract, plans, and specifications. Unless otherwise specified, such materials that are manufactured or processed shall be new (as compared to used or reprocessed).

In order to expedite the inspection and testing of materials, the Contractor shall furnish documentation to the RPR as to the origin, composition, and manufacture of all materials to be used in the work. Documentation shall be furnished promptly after execution of the contract but, in all cases, prior to delivery of such materials.

Federal Contract Clauses are available at the following FAA website:
www.faa.gov/airports/aip/procurement/federal_contract_provisions/

At the RPR's option, materials may be approved at the source of supply before delivery. If it is found after trial that sources of supply for previously approved materials do not produce specified products, the Contractor shall furnish materials from other sources.

The Contractor shall furnish airport lighting equipment that meets the requirements of the specifications; and is listed in AC 150/5345-53, *Airport Lighting Equipment Certification Program and Addendum*, that is in effect on the date of advertisement.

60-02 Samples, tests, and cited specifications. All materials used in the work shall be inspected, tested, and approved by the RPR before incorporation in the work unless otherwise designated. Any work in which untested materials are used without approval or written permission of the RPR shall be performed at the Contractor's risk. Materials found to be unacceptable and unauthorized will not be paid for and, if directed by the RPR, shall be removed at the Contractor's expense.

Unless otherwise designated, quality assurance tests will be made by and at the expense of the Owner in accordance with the cited standard methods of ASTM, American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO), federal specifications, Commercial Item Descriptions, and all other cited methods, which are current on the date of advertisement for bids.

The testing organizations performing on-site quality assurance field tests shall have copies of all referenced standards on the construction site for use by all technicians and other personnel. Unless otherwise designated, samples for quality assurance will be taken by a qualified representative of the RPR. All materials being used are subject to inspection, test, or rejection at any time prior to or during incorporation into the work. Copies of all tests will be furnished to the Contractor's representative at their request after review and approval of the RPR.

A copy of all Contractor QC test data shall be provided to the RPR daily, along with printed reports, in an approved format, on a weekly basis. After completion of the project, and prior to final payment, the Contractor shall submit a final report to the RPR showing all test data reports, plus an analysis of all results showing ranges, averages, and corrective action taken on all failing tests.

[The Contractor shall employ a Quality Control (QC) testing organization to perform all Contractor required QC tests in accordance with Item C-100 Contractor Quality Control Program (CQCP).]

The Engineer may wish to include a requirement that all test data from the Contractor be furnished in electronic format. The Engineer shall provide detailed specifications to specify the acceptable format to be used.

Delete bracketed text when Item C-100 is not included in the specifications.

60-03 Certification of compliance/analysis (COC/COA). The RPR may permit the use, prior to sampling and testing, of certain materials or assemblies when accompanied by manufacturer's COC stating that such materials or assemblies fully comply with the requirements of the contract. The certificate shall be signed by the manufacturer. Each lot of such materials or assemblies delivered to the work must be accompanied by a certificate of compliance in which the lot is clearly identified. The COA is the manufacturer's COC and includes all applicable test results.

Materials or assemblies used on the basis of certificates of compliance may be sampled and tested at any time and if found not to be in conformity with contract requirements will be subject to rejection whether in place or not.

The form and distribution of certificates of compliance shall be as approved by the RPR.

When a material or assembly is specified by "brand name or equal" and the Contractor elects to furnish the specified "or equal," the Contractor shall be required to furnish the manufacturer's certificate of compliance for each lot of such material or assembly delivered to the work. Such certificate of compliance shall clearly identify each lot delivered and shall certify as to:

- a. Conformance to the specified performance, testing, quality or dimensional requirements; and,
- b. Suitability of the material or assembly for the use intended in the contract work.

The RPR shall be the sole judge as to whether the proposed "or equal" is suitable for use in the work.

The RPR reserves the right to refuse permission for use of materials or assemblies on the basis of certificates of compliance.

When it is impractical to make a clear and accurate description of a technical requirement, Owner may specify a requirement by "Brand Name or approved Equal," provided the performance features and salient requirements that establish equivalency are explicitly and clearly stated. To avoid unfair influence, provide known vendors / suppliers who can meet the stated requirements.

60-04 Plant inspection. The RPR or their authorized representative may inspect, at its source, any specified material or assembly to be used in the work. Manufacturing plants may be inspected from time to time for the purpose of determining compliance with specified manufacturing methods or materials to be used in the work and to obtain samples required for acceptance of the material or assembly.

Should the RPR conduct plant inspections, the following conditions shall exist:

a. The RPR shall have the cooperation and assistance of the Contractor and the producer with whom the Contractor has contracted for materials.

b. The RPR shall have full entry at all reasonable times to such parts of the plant that concern the manufacture or production of the materials being furnished.

c. If required by the RPR, the Contractor shall arrange for adequate office or working space that may be reasonably needed for conducting plant inspections. Place office or working space in a convenient location with respect to the plant.

It is understood and agreed that the Owner shall have the right to retest any material that has been tested and approved at the source of supply after it has been delivered to the site. The RPR shall have the right to reject only material which, when retested, does not meet the requirements of the contract, plans, or specifications.

60-05 Engineer/ Resident Project Representative (RPR) field office. [The Contractor shall provide dedicated space for the use of the engineer, RPR, and inspectors, as a field office for the duration of the project. This space shall be located conveniently near the construction and shall be separate from any space used by the Contractor. The Contractor shall furnish water, sanitary facilities, heat, air conditioning, and electricity.] [An Engineer/RPR field office is not required.]

Requirements for specifying the Engineer's (RPR) field office and a space for Quality Assurance mobile laboratory should be coordinated with the Owner and the Engineer since such facilities are not needed for all airport construction projects. If a field office is required for the project, a separate line item for payment may be established. Additional office space, with approval of the owner, may be appropriate based on the size and duration of the project.

60-06 Storage of materials. Materials shall be stored to assure the preservation of their quality and fitness for the work. Stored materials, even though approved before storage, may again be inspected prior to their use in the work. Stored materials shall be located to facilitate their prompt inspection. The Contractor shall coordinate the storage of all materials with the RPR. Materials to be stored on airport property shall not create an obstruction to air navigation nor shall they interfere with the free and unobstructed movement of aircraft. Unless otherwise shown on the plans and/or CSPP, the storage of materials and the location of the Contractor's plant and parked equipment or vehicles shall be as directed by the RPR. Private property shall not be used for storage purposes without written permission of the Owner or lessee of such property. The Contractor shall make all arrangements and bear all expenses for the storage of materials on private property. Upon request, the Contractor shall furnish the RPR a copy of the property Owner's permission.

All storage sites on private or airport property shall be restored to their original condition by the Contractor at their expense, except as otherwise agreed to (in writing) by the Owner or lessee of the property.

60-07 Unacceptable materials. Any material or assembly that does not conform to the requirements of the contract, plans, or specifications shall be considered unacceptable and shall be rejected. The Contractor shall remove any rejected material or assembly from the site of the work, unless otherwise instructed by the RPR.

Rejected material or assembly, the defects of which have been corrected by the Contractor, shall not be returned to the site of the work until such time as the RPR has approved its use in the work.

60-08 Owner furnished materials. The Contractor shall furnish all materials required to complete the work, except those specified, if any, to be furnished by the Owner. Owner-furnished materials shall be made available to the Contractor at the location specified.

All costs of handling, transportation from the specified location to the site of work, storage, and installing Owner-furnished materials shall be included in the unit price bid for the contract item in which such Owner-furnished material is used.

After any Owner-furnished material has been delivered to the location specified, the Contractor shall be responsible for any demurrage, damage, loss, or other deficiencies that may occur during the Contractor's handling, storage, or use of such Owner-furnished material. The Owner will deduct from any monies due or to become due the Contractor any cost incurred by the Owner in making good such loss due to the Contractor's handling, storage, or use of Owner-furnished materials.

END OF SECTION 60

Section 70 Legal Regulations and Responsibility to Public

70-01 Laws to be observed. The Contractor shall keep fully informed of all federal and state laws, all local laws, ordinances, and regulations and all orders and decrees of bodies or tribunals having any jurisdiction or authority, which in any manner affect those engaged or employed on the work, or which in any way affect the conduct of the work. The Contractor shall at all times observe and comply with all such laws, ordinances, regulations, orders, and decrees; and shall protect and indemnify the Owner and all their officers, agents, or servants against any claim or liability arising from or based on the violation of any such law, ordinance, regulation, order, or decree, whether by the Contractor or the Contractor's employees.

70-02 Permits, licenses, and taxes. The Contractor shall procure all permits and licenses, pay all charges, fees, and taxes, and give all notices necessary and incidental to the due and lawful execution of the work.

70-03 Patented devices, materials, and processes. If the Contractor is required or desires to use any design, device, material, or process covered by letters of patent or copyright, the Contractor shall provide for such use by suitable legal agreement with the Patentee or Owner. The Contractor and the surety shall indemnify and hold harmless the Owner, any third party, or political subdivision from any and all claims for infringement by reason of the use of any such patented design, device, material or process, or any trademark or copyright, and shall indemnify the Owner for any costs, expenses, and damages which it may be obliged to pay by reason of an infringement, at any time during the execution or after the completion of the work.

70-04 Restoration of surfaces disturbed by others. The Owner reserves the right to authorize the construction, reconstruction, or maintenance of any public or private utility service, FAA or National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) facility, or a utility service of another government agency at any time during the progress of the work. To the extent that such construction, reconstruction, or maintenance has been coordinated with the Owner, such authorized work (by others) must be shown on the plans and is indicated as follows: [____].

List all authorized work and include the following information as a minimum:

- **Owner (Utility or Other Facility)**
- **Location (See Plan Sheet No.)**
- **Person to Contact (Name, Title, Address and Phone)**

Except as listed above, the Contractor shall not permit any individual, firm, or corporation to excavate or otherwise disturb such utility services or facilities located within the limits of the work without the written permission of the RPR.

Should the Owner of public or private utility service, FAA, or NOAA facility, or a utility service of another government agency be authorized to construct, reconstruct, or maintain such utility service or facility during the progress of the work, the Contractor shall cooperate with such Owners by arranging and performing the work in this contract to facilitate such construction, reconstruction or maintenance by others whether or not such work by others is listed above. When ordered as extra work by the RPR, the

Contractor shall make all necessary repairs to the work which are due to such authorized work by others, unless otherwise provided for in the contract, plans, or specifications. It is understood and agreed that the Contractor shall not be entitled to make any claim for damages due to such authorized work by others or for any delay to the work resulting from such authorized work.

The intention of this subsection is to provide for both foreseen and unforeseen work by Owners of utility services and other facilities on the airport. Such Owners have legal rights and obligations under some form of easement with the airport Owner. Every effort should be made, during the initial design phase, to coordinate the proposed contract work with such Owners so that their rights and obligations are provided for in the contract, plans, and specifications. Where there is conflict between an existing utility service (or facility) and the proposed work or where the Owner of the utility or facility must perform work to construct, reconstruct, or maintain the utility or facility, such work should be listed in this subsection and provided for in the contract, plans and specifications. In addition, all known utility services or facilities that are within the limits of the proposed work should be shown on the plans (regardless of whether or not there is a conflict of work to be performed by the Owner) with enough detailed information to indicate the lack of conflicts.

70-05 Federal Participation. The United States Government has agreed to reimburse the Owner for some portion of the contract costs. The contract work is subject to the inspection and approval of duly authorized representatives of the FAA Administrator. No requirement of this contract shall be construed as making the United States a party to the contract nor will any such requirement interfere, in any way, with the rights of either party to the contract.

70-06 Sanitary, health, and safety provisions. The Contractor's worksite and facilities shall comply with applicable federal, state, and local requirements for health, safety and sanitary provisions.

70-07 Public convenience and safety. The Contractor shall control their operations and those of their subcontractors and all suppliers, to assure the least inconvenience to the traveling public. Under all circumstances, safety shall be the most important consideration.

The Contractor shall maintain the free and unobstructed movement of aircraft and vehicular traffic with respect to their own operations and those of their own subcontractors and all suppliers in accordance with Section 40, paragraph 40-05, *Maintenance of Traffic*, and shall limit such operations for the convenience and safety of the traveling public as specified in Section 80, paragraph 80-04, *Limitation of Operations*.

The Contractor shall remove or control debris and rubbish resulting from its work operations at frequent intervals, and upon the order of the RPR. If the RPR determines the existence of Contractor debris in the work site represents a hazard to airport operations and the Contractor is unable to respond in a prompt and reasonable manner, the RPR reserves the right to assign the task of debris removal to a third party and recover the resulting costs as a liquidated damage against the Contractor.

70-08 Construction Safety and Phasing Plan (CSPP). The Contractor shall complete the work in accordance with the approved Construction Safety and Phasing Plan (CSPP) developed in accordance with AC 150/5370-2, Operational Safety on Airports During Construction. The CSPP is on sheet(s) [] of the project plans.

The Engineer must add the location of the CSPP.

70-09 Use of explosives. [The use of explosives is not permitted on this project.] [When the use of explosives is necessary for the execution of the work, the Contractor shall exercise the utmost care not to endanger life or property, including new work. The Contractor shall be responsible for all damage resulting from the use of explosives.

All explosives shall be stored in a secure manner in compliance with all laws and ordinances, and all such storage places shall be clearly marked. Where no local laws or ordinances apply, storage shall be provided satisfactory to the RPR and, in general, not closer than 1,000 feet (300 m) from the work or from any building, road, or other place of human occupancy.

The Contractor shall notify each property Owner and public utility company having structures or facilities in proximity to the site of the work of their intention to use explosives. Such notice shall be given sufficiently in advance to enable them to take such steps as they may deem necessary to protect their property from injury.

The use of electrical blasting caps shall not be permitted on or within 1,000 feet (300 m) of the airport property.]

70-10 Protection and restoration of property and landscape. The Contractor shall be responsible for the preservation of all public and private property, and shall protect carefully from disturbance or damage all land monuments and property markers until the Engineer/RPR has witnessed or otherwise referenced their location and shall not move them until directed.

The Contractor shall be responsible for all damage or injury to property of any character, during the execution of the work, resulting from any act, omission, neglect, or misconduct in manner or method of executing the work, or at any time due to defective work or materials, and said responsibility shall not be released until the project has been completed and accepted.

When or where any direct or indirect damage or injury is done to public or private property by or on account of any act, omission, neglect, or misconduct in the execution of the work, or in consequence of the non-execution thereof by the Contractor, the Contractor shall restore, at their expense, such property to a condition similar or equal to that existing before such damage or injury was done, by repairing, or otherwise restoring as may be directed, or the Contractor shall make good such damage or injury in an acceptable manner.

70-11 Responsibility for damage claims. The Contractor shall indemnify and hold harmless the Engineer/RPR and the Owner and their officers, agents, and employees from all suits, actions, or claims, of any character, brought because of any injuries or damage received or sustained by any person, persons, or property on account of the operations of the Contractor; or on account of or in consequence of any neglect in safeguarding the work; or through use of unacceptable materials in constructing the work; or because of any act or omission, neglect, or misconduct of said Contractor; or because of any claims or amounts recovered from any infringements of patent, trademark, or copyright; or from any claims or amounts arising or recovered under the "Workmen's Compensation Act," or any other law, ordinance, order, or decree. Money due the Contractor under and by virtue of their own contract considered necessary by the Owner for such purpose may be retained for the use of the Owner or, in case no money is due, their own surety may be held until such suits, actions, or claims for injuries or damages shall have

been settled and suitable evidence to that effect furnished to the Owner, except that money due the Contractor will not be withheld when the Contractor produces satisfactory evidence that he or she is adequately protected by public liability and property damage insurance.

70-12 Third party beneficiary clause. It is specifically agreed between the parties executing the contract that it is not intended by any of the provisions of any part of the contract to create for the public or any member thereof, a third-party beneficiary or to authorize anyone not a party to the contract to maintain a suit for personal injuries or property damage pursuant to the terms or provisions of the contract.

70-13 Opening sections of the work to traffic. If it is necessary for the Contractor to complete portions of the contract work for the beneficial occupancy of the Owner prior to completion of the entire contract, such “phasing” of the work must be specified below and indicated on the approved Construction Safety and Phasing Plan (CSPP) and the project plans. When so specified, the Contractor shall complete such portions of the work on or before the date specified or as otherwise specified.

[].

The Engineer shall identify phase/description(s) and provide the following minimum information for each phase/description(s):

- **Phase or Description**
- **Required Date or Sequence of Owner’s Beneficial Occupancy**
- **Work Shown on Plan Sheet**

The Owner’s requirements for “phasing” the work should be coordinated with agencies having an interest in operational capability of the airport. Such coordination must be accomplished at the earliest possible time. See AC 150/5370-12, Quality Management for Federally Funded Airport Construction Projects.

The Engineer should include a section on airport safety in the bid documents that has, as a minimum, the information contained in AC 150/5370-2, Operational Safety on Airports During Construction; the Construction Safety and Phasing Plan (CSPP); and any additional requirements as a result of a Safety Risk Management (SRM) review, if required.

Upon completion of any portion of work listed above, such portion shall be accepted by the Owner in accordance with Section 50, paragraph 50-14, *Partial Acceptance*.

No portion of the work may be opened by the Contractor until directed by the Owner in writing. Should it become necessary to open a portion of the work to traffic on a temporary or intermittent basis, such openings shall be made when, in the opinion of the RPR, such portion of the work is in an acceptable condition to support the intended traffic. Temporary or intermittent openings are considered to be inherent in the work and shall not constitute either acceptance of the portion of the work so opened or a waiver of any provision of the contract. Any damage to the portion of the work so opened that is not attributable to traffic which is permitted by the Owner shall be repaired by the Contractor at their expense.

The Contractor shall make their own estimate of the inherent difficulties involved in completing the work under the conditions herein described and shall not claim any added compensation by reason of delay or increased cost due to opening a portion of the contract work.

The Contractor must conform to safety standards contained AC 150/5370-2 and the approved CSPP.

Contractor shall refer to the plans, specifications, and the approved CSPP to identify barricade requirements, temporary and/or permanent markings, airfield lighting, guidance signs and other safety requirements prior to opening up sections of work to traffic.

70-14 Contractor's responsibility for work. Until the RPR's final written acceptance of the entire completed work, excepting only those portions of the work accepted in accordance with Section 50, paragraph 50-14, *Partial Acceptance*, the Contractor shall have the charge and care thereof and shall take every precaution against injury or damage to any part due to the action of the elements or from any other cause, whether arising from the execution or from the non-execution of the work. The Contractor shall rebuild, repair, restore, and make good all injuries or damages to any portion of the work occasioned by any of the above causes before final acceptance and shall bear the expense thereof except damage to the work due to unforeseeable causes beyond the control of and without the fault or negligence of the Contractor, including but not restricted to acts of God such as earthquake, tidal wave, tornado, hurricane or other cataclysmic phenomenon of nature, or acts of the public enemy or of government authorities.

If the work is suspended for any cause whatever, the Contractor shall be responsible for the work and shall take such precautions necessary to prevent damage to the work. The Contractor shall provide for normal drainage and shall erect necessary temporary structures, signs, or other facilities at their own expense. During such period of suspension of work, the Contractor shall properly and continuously maintain in an acceptable growing condition all living material in newly established planting, seeding, and sodding furnished under the contract, and shall take adequate precautions to protect new tree growth and other important vegetative growth against injury.

70-15 Contractor's responsibility for utility service and facilities of others. As provided in paragraph 70-04, *Restoration of Surfaces Disturbed by Others*, the Contractor shall cooperate with the owner of any public or private utility service, FAA or NOAA, or a utility service of another government agency that may be authorized by the Owner to construct, reconstruct or maintain such utility services or facilities during the progress of the work. In addition, the Contractor shall control their operations to prevent the unscheduled interruption of such utility services and facilities.

To the extent that such public or private utility services, FAA, or NOAA facilities, or utility services of another governmental agency are known to exist within the limits of the contract work, the approximate locations have been indicated on the plans and/or in the contract documents.

[].

The Engineer shall list all known services and provide the following minimum information for each service:

- **Utility Service or Facility, or FAA Air Traffic Organization (ATO)/ Technical Operations/System Support Center (SSC)**
- **Person to Contract (Name, Title, Address, and Phone)**
- **Owner's Emergency Contact (Phone)**

The plans shall show the approximate location of the utilities or facilities known to exist within the limits of the contract work. The proposed contract plans and specifications shall be coordinated with the various Owners at the earliest possible time to avoid overlooking utility conflicts in the design and to obtain the best possible information needed to protect such utility services or facilities from damage resulting from the Contractor's operations. Where conflicts are indicated during the coordination, they shall be resolved by the airport Owner and the utility owner, in accordance with existing legal agreements, by providing for work in the proposed

contract or by the utility owner. In such cases of conflict, regardless of how the conflict is resolved, the airport Owner and utility owner should also be advised of the need to furnish the best information possible as to location of the utility service or facility to ensure protection during the proposed contract work.

It is understood and agreed that the Owner does not guarantee the accuracy or the completeness of the location information relating to existing utility services, facilities, or structures that may be shown on the plans or encountered in the work. Any inaccuracy or omission in such information shall not relieve the Contractor of the responsibility to protect such existing features from damage or unscheduled interruption of service.

It is further understood and agreed that the Contractor shall, upon execution of the contract, notify the Owners of all utility services or other facilities of their plan of operations. Such notification shall be in writing addressed to "The Person to Contact" as provided in this paragraph and paragraph 70-04, *Restoration of Surfaces Disturbed By Others*. A copy of each notification shall be given to the RPR.

In addition to the general written notification provided, it shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to keep such individual Owners advised of changes in their plan of operations that would affect such Owners.

Prior to beginning the work in the general vicinity of an existing utility service or facility, the Contractor shall again notify each such Owner of their plan of operation. If, in the Contractor's opinion, the Owner's assistance is needed to locate the utility service or facility or the presence of a representative of the Owner is desirable to observe the work, such advice should be included in the notification. Such notification shall be given by the most expeditious means to reach the utility owner's "Person to Contact" no later than two normal business days prior to the Contractor's commencement of operations in such general vicinity. The Contractor shall furnish a written summary of the notification to the RPR.

The Contractor's failure to give the two days' notice shall be cause for the Owner to suspend the Contractor's operations in the general vicinity of a utility service or facility.

Where the outside limits of an underground utility service have been located and staked on the ground, the Contractor shall be required to use hand excavation methods within 3 feet (1 m) of such outside limits at such points as may be required to ensure protection from damage due to the Contractor's operations.

Should the Contractor damage or interrupt the operation of a utility service or facility by accident or otherwise, the Contractor shall immediately notify the proper authority and the RPR and shall take all reasonable measures to prevent further damage or interruption of service. The Contractor, in such events, shall cooperate with the utility service or facility owner and the RPR continuously until such damage has been repaired and service restored to the satisfaction of the utility or facility owner.

The Contractor shall bear all costs of damage and restoration of service to any utility service or facility due to their operations whether due to negligence or accident. The Owner reserves the right to deduct such costs from any monies due or which may become due the Contractor, or their own surety.

[70-15.1 FAA facilities and cable runs. The Contractor is hereby advised that the construction limits of the project include existing facilities and buried cable runs that are owned, operated and maintained by the FAA. The Contractor, during the execution of the project work, shall comply with the following:

a. The Contractor shall permit FAA maintenance personnel the right of access to the project work site for purposes of inspecting and maintaining all existing FAA owned facilities.

b. The Contractor shall provide notice to the FAA Air Traffic Organization (ATO)/Technical Operations/System Support Center (SSC) Point-of-Contact through the airport [Owner] [operator] [manager] [] a minimum of seven (7) calendar days prior to commencement of construction activities in order to permit sufficient time to locate and mark existing buried cables and to schedule any required facility outages.

FAA Airports (ARP) will inform the Airport Owner of their requirement to notify the FAA preferably a minimum of 45 days prior to scheduled interruptions and airport projects with the potential to cause significant impacts to the National Airspace System (NAS). This is handled through the Internet Obstruction Evaluation/Airport Airspace Analysis (iOE/AAA) process and the airspace determination letter.

c. If execution of the project work requires a facility outage, the Contractor shall contact the FAA Point-of-Contact a minimum of 72 hours prior to the time of the required outage.

d. Any damage to FAA cables, access roads, or FAA facilities during construction caused by the Contractor's equipment or personnel whether by negligence or accident will require the Contractor to repair or replace the damaged cables, access road, or FAA facilities to FAA requirements. The Contractor shall not bear the cost to repair damage to underground facilities or utilities improperly located by the FAA.

Any displaced or relocated FAA facility or cables due to construction will require a signed and executed reimbursable agreement between the Owner and the FAA Tech Ops Division.

The splicing of cables may not be an acceptable form of repair for certain projects. If any FAA cables are damaged, the Owner shall replace the cables in their entirety.

e. If the project work requires the cutting or splicing of FAA owned cables, the FAA Point-of-Contact shall be contacted a minimum of 72 hours prior to the time the cable work commences. The FAA reserves the right to have a FAA representative on site to observe the splicing of the cables as a condition of acceptance. All cable splices are to be accomplished in accordance with FAA specifications and require approval by the FAA Point-of-Contact as a condition of acceptance by the Owner. The Contractor is hereby advised that FAA restricts the location of where splices may be installed. If a cable splice is required in a location that is not permitted by FAA, the Contractor

shall furnish and install a sufficient length of new cable that eliminates the need for any splice.]

The Engineer should include paragraph 70-15.1 when existing FAA owned facilities and/or cable runs are located within the construction limits.

70-16 Furnishing rights-of-way. The Owner will be responsible for furnishing all rights-of-way upon which the work is to be constructed in advance of the Contractor's operations.

70-17 Personal liability of public officials. In carrying out any of the contract provisions or in exercising any power or authority granted by this contract, there shall be no liability upon the Engineer, RPR, their authorized representatives, or any officials of the Owner either personally or as an official of the Owner. It is understood that in such matters they act solely as agents and representatives of the Owner.

70-18 No waiver of legal rights. Upon completion of the work, the Owner will expeditiously make final inspection and notify the Contractor of final acceptance. Such final acceptance, however, shall not preclude or stop the Owner from correcting any measurement, estimate, or certificate made before or after completion of the work, nor shall the Owner be precluded or stopped from recovering from the Contractor or their surety, or both, such overpayment as may be sustained, or by failure on the part of the Contractor to fulfill their obligations under the contract. A waiver on the part of the Owner of any breach of any part of the contract shall not be held to be a waiver of any other or subsequent breach.

The Contractor, without prejudice to the terms of the contract, shall be liable to the Owner for latent defects, fraud, or such gross mistakes as may amount to fraud, or as regards the Owner's rights under any warranty or guaranty.

70-19 Environmental protection. The Contractor shall comply with all federal, state, and local laws and regulations controlling pollution of the environment. The Contractor shall take necessary precautions to prevent pollution of streams, lakes, ponds, and reservoirs with fuels, oils, asphalts, chemicals, or other harmful materials and to prevent pollution of the atmosphere from particulate and gaseous matter.

[]

Engineer may add project specific requirements.

70-20 Archaeological and historical findings. Unless otherwise specified in this subsection, the Contractor is advised that the site of the work is not within any property, district, or site, and does not contain any building, structure, or object listed in the current National Register of Historic Places published by the United States Department of Interior.

Should the Contractor encounter, during their operations, any building, part of a building, structure, or object that is incongruous with its surroundings, the Contractor shall immediately cease operations in that location and notify the RPR. The RPR will immediately investigate the Contractor's finding and the Owner will direct the Contractor to either resume operations or to suspend operations as directed.

Should the Owner order suspension of the Contractor's operations in order to protect an archaeological or historical finding, or order the Contractor to perform extra work, such shall be covered by an appropriate contract change order or supplemental agreement as provided in Section 40, paragraph 40-04, *Extra Work*, and Section 90, paragraph 90-05, *Payment for Extra Work*. If appropriate, the contract change

order or supplemental agreement shall include an extension of contract time in accordance with Section 80, paragraph 80-07, *Determination and Extension of Contract Time*.

The contract language suggested in paragraph 70-20 is intended to remind airport Owners that proper planning will prevent construction delays that may be caused when objects of archaeological or historical significance are encountered in the work. Airport Owners should include in their planning the coordination with state and local planning bodies as may be required by state and local laws pertaining to the National Historic Preservation Act of 1966.

As a general rule, disposition of known archaeological or historic objects that are situated on the site of the work should be covered by a separate contract when such disposition is required as a part of FAA project approval.

70-21 Insurance Requirements. [Insert local insurance requirements for the project.]

Insert local insurance requirements for commercial general and umbrella liability; commercial auto and umbrella liability; worker's compensation; property; and/or other types of coverage required by the project.

END OF SECTION 70

Page Intentionally Blank

Section 80 Execution and Progress

80-01 Subletting of contract. The Owner will not recognize any subcontractor on the work. The Contractor shall at all times when work is in progress be represented either in person, by a qualified superintendent, or by other designated, qualified representative who is duly authorized to receive and execute orders of the Resident Project Representative (RPR).

The Contractor shall perform, with his organization, an amount of work equal to at least [] percent of the total contract cost.

Should the Contractor elect to assign their contract, said assignment shall be concurred in by the surety, shall be presented for the consideration and approval of the Owner, and shall be consummated only on the written approval of the Owner.

The Engineer should determine the percentage of work to be performed by the prime Contractor on a project basis (typically at least 25%).

The Contractor shall provide copies of all subcontracts to the RPR [14] days prior to being utilized on the project. As a minimum, the information shall include the following:

- Subcontractor's legal company name.
- Subcontractor's legal company address, including County name.
- Principal contact person's name, telephone and fax number.
- Complete narrative description, and dollar value of the work to be performed by the subcontractor.
- Copies of required insurance certificates in accordance with the specifications.
- Minority/ non-minority status.

80-02 Notice to proceed (NTP). The Owners notice to proceed will state the date on which contract time commences. The Contractor is expected to commence project operations within [] days of the NTP date. The Contractor shall notify the RPR at least [24 hours] in advance of the time contract operations begins. The Contractor shall not commence any actual operations prior to the date on which the notice to proceed is issued by the Owner.

Notification time in excess of 24 hours must be justified. Owner may allow limited mobilization to the work site provided such action does not require presence of the RPR and the Contractor assumes all risks associated with a delay to the NTP issuance.

80-03 Execution and progress. Unless otherwise specified, the Contractor shall submit their coordinated construction schedule showing all work activities for the RPR's review and acceptance at least [10 days] prior to the start of work. The Contractor's progress schedule, once accepted by the RPR, will represent the Contractor's baseline plan to accomplish the project in accordance with the terms and conditions of the Contract. The RPR will compare actual Contractor progress against the baseline schedule to determine that status of the Contractor's performance. The Contractor shall provide sufficient materials, equipment, and labor to guarantee the completion of the project in accordance with the plans and specifications within the time set forth in the proposal.

If the Contractor falls significantly behind the submitted schedule, the Contractor shall, upon the RPR's request, submit a revised schedule for completion of the work within the contract time and modify their operations to provide such additional materials, equipment, and labor necessary to meet the revised schedule. Should the execution of the work be discontinued for any reason, the Contractor shall notify the RPR at least [24 hours] in advance of resuming operations.

The Contractor shall not commence any actual construction prior to the date on which the NTP is issued by the Owner.

[The project schedule shall be prepared as a network diagram in Critical Path Method (CPM), Program Evaluation and Review Technique (PERT), or other format, or as otherwise specified. It shall include information on the sequence of work activities, milestone dates, and activity duration. The schedule shall show all work items identified in the project proposal for each work area and shall include the project start date and end date.]

For projects over \$500,000, insert the above bracketed language edited for project specific scheduling requirements.

The Contractor shall maintain the work schedule and provide an update and analysis of the progress schedule on a [twice] monthly basis, or as otherwise specified in the contract. Submission of the work schedule shall not relieve the Contractor of overall responsibility for scheduling, sequencing, and coordinating all work to comply with the requirements of the contract.

In general, it is important that the Owner issue the NTP for Airport Improvement Program (AIP) contracts because any actual construction work, performed prior to the execution of a grant agreement, (between the Owner and the FAA) may be ineligible for FAA participation in its cost. Check with the FAA for exceptions.

80-04 Limitation of operations. The Contractor shall control their operations and the operations of their subcontractors and all suppliers to provide for the free and unobstructed movement of aircraft in the air operations areas (AOA) of the airport.

When the work requires the Contractor to conduct their operations within an AOA of the airport, the work shall be coordinated with airport operations (through the RPR) at least [48 hours] prior to commencement of such work. The Contractor shall not close an AOA until so authorized by the RPR and

until the necessary temporary marking, signage and associated lighting is in place as provided in Section 70, paragraph 70-08, *Construction Safety and Phasing Plan (CSPP)*.

When the contract work requires the Contractor to work within an AOA of the airport on an intermittent basis (intermittent opening and closing of the AOA), the Contractor shall maintain constant communications as specified; immediately obey all instructions to vacate the AOA; and immediately obey all instructions to resume work in such AOA. Failure to maintain the specified communications or to obey instructions shall be cause for suspension of the Contractor's operations in the AOA until satisfactory conditions are provided. The areas of the AOA identified in the Construction Safety Phasing Plan (CSPP) and as listed below, cannot be closed to operating aircraft to permit the Contractor's operations on a continuous basis and will therefore be closed to aircraft operations intermittently as follows:

[]

The Engineer shall identify areas of the AOA that cannot be closed to operating aircraft to permit the Contractor's operations on a continuous basis. As a minimum, the following information is required for each area:

- AOA
- Time periods AOA can be closed
- Type of communication(s) required when working in an AOA
- Control authority including driver training and/or safety training

It is intended that the contract provisions which limit the Contractor's operations be specified for all AOA of the airport that are not intended to be closed to permit continuous construction operations. These contract provisions vary widely from airport to airport and require careful coordination (during the early stages of designing the work) with the Owner, FAA, and the users of the airport. Advisory circular (AC) 150/5370-12, Quality Management for Federally Funded Airport Construction Projects, contains additional information on this subject.

The Engineer should include a section on airport safety in the bid documents that has, as a minimum, the information contained in AC 150/5370-2, Operational Safety on Airports During Construction; the Construction Safety and Phasing Plan (CSPP); and any additional requirements as a result of a Safety Risk Management (SRM) review, if required.

The Contractor shall be required to conform to safety standards contained in AC 150/5370-2, Operational Safety on Airports During Construction and the approved CSPP.

80-04.1 Operational safety on airport during construction. All Contractors' operations shall be conducted in accordance with the approved project Construction Safety and Phasing Plan (CSPP) and the Safety Plan Compliance Document (SPCD) and the provisions set forth within the current version of AC 150/5370-2, Operational Safety on Airports During Construction. The CSPP included within the contract documents conveys minimum requirements for operational safety on the airport during construction activities. The Contractor shall prepare and submit a SPCD that details how it proposes to comply with the requirements presented within the CSPP.

The Contractor shall implement all necessary safety plan measures prior to commencement of any work activity. The Contractor shall conduct routine checks to assure compliance with the safety plan measures.

The Contractor is responsible to the Owner for the conduct of all subcontractors it employs on the project. The Contractor shall assure that all subcontractors are made aware of the requirements of the CSPP and SPCD and that they implement and maintain all necessary measures.

No deviation or modifications may be made to the approved CSPP and SPCD unless approved in writing by the Owner. The necessary coordination actions to review Contractor proposed modifications to an approved CSPP or approved SPCD can require a significant amount of time.

The Owner must coordinate any changes to the CSPP with the FAA.

80-05 Character of workers, methods, and equipment. The Contractor shall, at all times, employ sufficient labor and equipment for prosecuting the work to full completion in the manner and time required by the contract, plans, and specifications.

All workers shall have sufficient skill and experience to perform properly the work assigned to them. Workers engaged in special work or skilled work shall have sufficient experience in such work and in the operation of the equipment required to perform the work satisfactorily.

Any person employed by the Contractor or by any subcontractor who violates any operational regulations or operational safety requirements and, in the opinion of the RPR, does not perform his work in a proper and skillful manner or is intemperate or disorderly shall, at the written request of the RPR, be removed immediately by the Contractor or subcontractor employing such person, and shall not be employed again in any portion of the work without approval of the RPR.

Should the Contractor fail to remove such person or persons, or fail to furnish suitable and sufficient personnel for the proper execution of the work, the RPR may suspend the work by written notice until compliance with such orders.

All equipment that is proposed to be used on the work shall be of sufficient size and in such mechanical condition as to meet requirements of the work and to produce a satisfactory quality of work. Equipment used on any portion of the work shall not cause injury to previously completed work, adjacent property, or existing airport facilities due to its use.

When the methods and equipment to be used by the Contractor in accomplishing the work are not prescribed in the contract, the Contractor is free to use any methods or equipment that will accomplish the work in conformity with the requirements of the contract, plans, and specifications.

When the contract specifies the use of certain methods and equipment, such methods and equipment shall be used unless otherwise authorized by the RPR. If the Contractor desires to use a method or type of equipment other than specified in the contract, the Contractor may request authority from the RPR to do so. The request shall be in writing and shall include a full description of the methods and equipment proposed and of the reasons for desiring to make the change. If approval is given, it will be on the condition that the Contractor will be fully responsible for producing work in conformity with contract requirements. If, after trial use of the substituted methods or equipment, the RPR determines that the work produced does not meet contract requirements, the Contractor shall discontinue the use of the substitute method or equipment and shall complete the remaining work with the specified methods and equipment. The Contractor shall remove any deficient work and replace it with work of specified quality, or take such other corrective action as the RPR may direct. No change will be made in basis of payment for the

contract items involved nor in contract time as a result of authorizing a change in methods or equipment under this paragraph.

80-06 Temporary suspension of the work. The Owner shall have the authority to suspend the work wholly, or in part, for such period or periods the Owner may deem necessary, due to unsuitable weather, or other conditions considered unfavorable for the execution of the work, or for such time necessary due to the failure on the part of the Contractor to carry out orders given or perform any or all provisions of the contract.

In the event that the Contractor is ordered by the Owner, in writing, to suspend work for some unforeseen cause not otherwise provided for in the contract and over which the Contractor has no control, the Contractor may be reimbursed for actual money expended on the work during the period of shutdown. No allowance will be made for anticipated profits. The period of shutdown shall be computed from the effective date of the written order to suspend work to the effective date of the written order to resume the work. Claims for such compensation shall be filed with the RPR within the time period stated in the RPR's order to resume work. The Contractor shall submit with their own claim information substantiating the amount shown on the claim. The RPR will forward the Contractor's claim to the Owner for consideration in accordance with local laws or ordinances. No provision of this article shall be construed as entitling the Contractor to compensation for delays due to inclement weather or for any other delay provided for in the contract, plans, or specifications.

If it becomes necessary to suspend work for an indefinite period, the Contractor shall store all materials in such manner that they will not become an obstruction nor become damaged in any way. The Contractor shall take every precaution to prevent damage or deterioration of the work performed and provide for normal drainage of the work. The Contractor shall erect temporary structures where necessary to provide for traffic on, to, or from the airport.

80-07 Determination and extension of contract time. The [number of calendar days] [the number of working days] [completion date] shall be stated in the proposal and contract and shall be known as the Contract Time.

If the contract time requires extension for reasons beyond the Contractor's control, it shall be adjusted as follows:

80-07.1 [Contract time based on working days. Contract time based on working days shall be calculated weekly by the Resident Project Representative (RPR). The RPR will furnish the Contractor a copy of their weekly statement of the number of working days charged against the contract time during the week and the number of working days currently specified for completion of the contract (the original contract time plus the number of working days, if any, that have been included in approved Change Orders or Supplemental Agreements covering Extra Work).

The weekly statement of contract time charged is based on the following considerations:

(1) Time will be charged for days on which the Contractor could proceed with scheduled work under construction at the time for at least six (6) hours with the normal work force employed on such items. When normal work force is a double-shift, use 12 hours; and when the normal work force is on a triple-shift, use 18 hours. Conditions beyond the Contractor's control such as strikes, lockouts, unusual delays in transportation, temporary suspension of the scheduled work items under construction or temporary suspension of the entire work

which have been ordered by the Owner for reasons not the fault of the Contractor, shall not be charged against the contract time.

(2) The RPR will not make charges against the contract time prior to the effective date of the notice to proceed.

(3) The RPR will begin charges against the contract time on the first working day after the effective date of the notice to proceed.

(4) The RPR will not make charges against the contract time after the date of final acceptance as defined in Section 50, paragraph 50-14, *Final Acceptance*.

(5) The Contractor will be allowed one (1) week in which to file a written protest setting forth their own objections to the RPR's weekly statement. If no objection is filed within such specified time, the weekly statement shall be considered as acceptable to the Contractor.

The contract time (stated in the proposal) is based on the originally estimated quantities as described in the Section 20, paragraph 20-05, *Interpretation of Estimated Proposal Quantities*. Should the satisfactory completion of the contract require performance of work in greater quantities than those estimated in the proposal, the contract time shall be increased in the same proportion as the cost of the actually completed quantities bears to the cost of the originally estimated quantities in the proposal. Such increase in contract time shall not consider either the cost of work or the extension of contract time that has been covered by change order or supplemental agreement and shall be made at the time of final payment.]

For working day contracts, Engineer should include normal monthly weather information for the project location that bidders must take into account when preparing its proposal. As appropriate, the Engineer may include drying days. Unusually severe weather must actually cause a delay to the completion of the project. The delay must be beyond the control and without the fault or negligence of the Contractor.

[Contract time based on calendar days. Contract Time based on calendar days shall consist of the number of calendar days stated in the contract counting from the effective date of the Notice to Proceed and including all Saturdays, Sundays, holidays, and non-work days. All calendar days elapsing between the effective dates of the Owner's orders to suspend and resume all work, due to causes not the fault of the Contractor, shall be excluded.

At the time of final payment, the contract time shall be increased in the same proportion as the cost of the actually completed quantities bears to the cost of the originally estimated quantities in the proposal. Such increase in the contract time shall not consider either cost of work or the extension of contract time that has been

covered by a change order or supplemental agreement. Charges against the contract time will cease as of the date of final acceptance.]

[Contract time based on specific completion date. When the contract time is a specified completion date, it shall be the date on which all contract work shall be substantially complete.

If the Contractor finds it impossible for reasons beyond their own control to complete the work within the contract time as specified, or as extended in accordance with the provisions of this paragraph, the Contractor may, at any time prior to the expiration of the contract time as extended, make a written request to the Owner for an extension of time setting forth the reasons which the Contractor believes will justify the granting of their own request. Requests for extension of time, caused by inclement weather, shall be supported with National Weather Bureau data showing the actual amount of inclement weather exceeded what could normally be expected during the contract period. The Contractor's plea that insufficient time was specified is not a valid reason for extension of time. If the supporting documentation justify the work was delayed because of conditions beyond the control and without the fault of the Contractor, the Owner may extend the time for completion by a change order that adjusts the contract time or completion date. The extended time for completion shall then be in full force and effect, the same as though it were the original time for completion.]

Select the appropriate method identifying contract time for the contract.

80-08 Failure to complete on time. For each calendar day or working day, as specified in the contract, that any work remains uncompleted after the contract time (including all extensions and adjustments as provided in paragraph 80-07, *Determination and Extension of Contract Time*) the sum specified in the contract and proposal as liquidated damages (LD) will be deducted from any money due or to become due the Contractor or their own surety. Such deducted sums shall not be deducted as a penalty but shall be considered as liquidation of a reasonable portion of damages including but not limited to additional engineering services that will be incurred by the Owner should the Contractor fail to complete the work in the time provided in their contract.

Schedule	Liquidated Damages Cost	Allowed Construction Time

The Engineer should list the liquidated damages cost and allowed construction time in the proposal form or other appropriate contract document to clarify when more than one schedule of work is bid, or in the event all schedules bid cannot be

awarded. If LD's are listed elsewhere in the contract, provide the cross-reference link.

The amount of the liquidated damages should not be unreasonable, excessive, or punitive. Liquidated damages must reflect a reasonable estimate of the actual costs which will be incurred by the Owner and users of the airport and must not be punitive. An excessive value for liquidated damages may not be enforceable.

The maximum construction time allowed for Schedules [] will be the sum of the time allowed for individual schedules but not more than [] days. Permitting the Contractor to continue and finish the work or any part of it after the time fixed for its completion, or after the date to which the time for completion may have been extended, will in no way operate as a waiver on the part of the Owner of any of its rights under the contract.

The Engineer shall modify this paragraph for each project.

The contract time is an essential part of each contract for construction on airports and should be considered carefully in the preparation of plans and specifications.

In selecting the method of specifying the contract time (working days, calendar days, or a specified completion date), the primary consideration should be the impact on the operations of the airport should the Contractor be unable to complete the work within the time specified. These considerations should be coordinated with the airport users as indicated in AC 150/5370-12, Quality Management for Federally Funded Airport Construction Projects.

The amount of liquidated damages to be specified should be tailored to each contract and should be based on the cost per day incurred by the Owner should the Contractor overrun the contract time. For large airports (where the impact on airport operations may be great), it is not practical for the Owner to attempt to recover all loss of revenue through liquidated damages. Consequently, the amount of liquidated damages specified must be balanced somewhere between the cost per day incurred for a time overrun and the cost that bidders would have to add to their bids to cover the contingency of a time overrun.

Generally speaking, contract time is based on working days when completion is not critical to operation of the airport. As the impact on airport operations increases, the use of calendar days will give more control. Use of a specified completion date should be used only in cases where the construction operations require long-range rescheduling of airport operations. Also, generally speaking, the amount of liquidated damages would be greater for a calendar day contract than for a working day contract and would be greatest for a specified completion date contract.

80-09 Default and termination of contract. The Contractor shall be considered in default of their contract and such default will be considered as cause for the Owner to terminate the contract for any of the following reasons, if the Contractor:

- a. Fails to begin the work under the contract within the time specified in the Notice to Proceed, or

- b.** Fails to perform the work or fails to provide sufficient workers, equipment and/or materials to assure completion of work in accordance with the terms of the contract, or
- c.** Performs the work unsuitably or neglects or refuses to remove materials or to perform anew such work as may be rejected as unacceptable and unsuitable, or
- d.** Discontinues the execution of the work, or
- e.** Fails to resume work which has been discontinued within a reasonable time after notice to do so, or
- f.** Becomes insolvent or is declared bankrupt, or commits any act of bankruptcy or insolvency, or
- g.** Allows any final judgment to stand against the Contractor unsatisfied for a period of 10 days, or
- h.** Makes an assignment for the benefit of creditors, or
- i.** For any other cause whatsoever, fails to carry on the work in an acceptable manner.

Should the Owner consider the Contractor in default of the contract for any reason above, the Owner shall immediately give written notice to the Contractor and the Contractor's surety as to the reasons for considering the Contractor in default and the Owner's intentions to terminate the contract.

If the Contractor or surety, within a period of 10 days after such notice, does not proceed in accordance therewith, then the Owner will, upon written notification from the RPR of the facts of such delay, neglect, or default and the Contractor's failure to comply with such notice, have full power and authority without violating the contract, to take the execution of the work out of the hands of the Contractor. The Owner may appropriate or use any or all materials and equipment that have been mobilized for use in the work and are acceptable and may enter into an agreement for the completion of said contract according to the terms and provisions thereof, or use such other methods as in the opinion of the RPR will be required for the completion of said contract in an acceptable manner.

All costs and charges incurred by the Owner, together with the cost of completing the work under contract, will be deducted from any monies due or which may become due the Contractor. If such expense exceeds the sum which would have been payable under the contract, then the Contractor and the surety shall be liable and shall pay to the Owner the amount of such excess.

80-10 Termination for national emergencies. The Owner shall terminate the contract or portion thereof by written notice when the Contractor is prevented from proceeding with the construction contract as a direct result of an Executive Order of the President with respect to the execution of war or in the interest of national defense.

When the contract, or any portion thereof, is terminated before completion of all items of work in the contract, payment will be made for the actual number of units or items of work completed at the contract price or as mutually agreed for items of work partially completed or not started. No claims or loss of anticipated profits shall be considered.

Reimbursement for organization of the work, and other overhead expenses, (when not otherwise included in the contract) and moving equipment and materials to and from the job will be considered, the intent being that an equitable settlement will be made with the Contractor.

Acceptable materials, obtained or ordered by the Contractor for the work and that are not incorporated in the work shall, at the option of the Contractor, be purchased from the Contractor at actual cost as shown by receipted bills and actual cost records at such points of delivery as may be designated by the RPR.

Termination of the contract or a portion thereof shall neither relieve the Contractor of their responsibilities for the completed work nor shall it relieve their surety of its obligation for and concerning any just claim arising out of the work performed.

80-11 Work area, storage area and sequence of operations. The Contractor shall obtain approval from the RPR prior to beginning any work in all areas of the airport. No operating runway, taxiway, or air operations area (AOA) shall be crossed, entered, or obstructed while it is operational. The Contractor shall plan and coordinate work in accordance with the approved CSPP and SPCD.

END OF SECTION 80

Section 90 Measurement and Payment

90-01 Measurement of quantities. All work completed under the contract will be measured by the RPR, or their authorized representatives, using [United States Customary Units of Measurement] [the International System of Units].

The method of measurement and computations to be used in determination of quantities of material furnished and of work performed under the contract will be those methods generally recognized as conforming to good engineering practice.

Unless otherwise specified, longitudinal measurements for area computations will be made horizontally, and no deductions will be made for individual fixtures (or leave-outs) having an area of 9 square feet (0.8 square meters) or less. Unless otherwise specified, transverse measurements for area computations will be the neat dimensions shown on the plans or ordered in writing by the RPR.

Unless otherwise specified, all contract items which are measured by the linear foot such as electrical ducts, conduits, pipe culverts, underdrains, and similar items shall be measured parallel to the base or foundation upon which such items are placed.

The term “lump sum” when used as an item of payment will mean complete payment for the work described in the contract. When a complete structure or structural unit (in effect, “lump sum” work) is specified as the unit of measurement, the unit will be construed to include all necessary fittings and accessories.

When requested by the Contractor and approved by the RPR in writing, material specified to be measured by the cubic yard (cubic meter) may be weighed, and such weights will be converted to cubic yards (cubic meters) for payment purposes. Factors for conversion from weight measurement to volume measurement will be determined by the RPR and shall be agreed to by the Contractor before such method of measurement of pay quantities is used.

Measurement and Payment Terms

Term	Description
Excavation and Embankment Volume	In computing volumes of excavation, the average end area method will be used unless otherwise specified.
Measurement and Proportion by Weight	The term “ton” will mean the short ton consisting of 2,000 pounds (907 kg) avoirdupois. All materials that are measured or proportioned by weights shall be weighed on accurate, independently certified scales by competent, qualified personnel at locations designated by the RPR. If material is shipped by rail, the car weight may be accepted provided that only the actual weight of material is paid for. However, car weights will not be acceptable for material to be passed through mixing plants. Trucks used to haul material being paid for by weight shall be weighed empty daily at such times as the RPR directs, and each truck shall bear a plainly legible identification mark.

Term	Description
Measurement by Volume	Materials to be measured by volume in the hauling vehicle shall be hauled in approved vehicles and measured therein at the point of delivery. Vehicles for this purpose may be of any size or type acceptable for the materials hauled, provided that the body is of such shape that the actual contents may be readily and accurately determined. All vehicles shall be loaded to at least their water level capacity, and all loads shall be leveled when the vehicles arrive at the point of delivery.
Asphalt Material	Asphalt materials will be measured by the gallon (liter) or ton (kg). When measured by volume, such volumes will be measured at 60°F (16°C) or will be corrected to the volume at 60°F (16°C) using ASTM D1250 for asphalts. Net certified scale weights or weights based on certified volumes in the case of rail shipments will be used as a basis of measurement, subject to correction when asphalt material has been lost from the car or the distributor, wasted, or otherwise not incorporated in the work. When asphalt materials are shipped by truck or transport, net certified weights by volume, subject to correction for loss or foaming, will be used for computing quantities.
Cement	Cement will be measured by the ton (kg) or hundredweight (km).
Structure	Structures will be measured according to neat lines shown on the plans or as altered to fit field conditions.
Timber	Timber will be measured by the thousand feet board measure (MFBM) actually incorporated in the structure. Measurement will be based on nominal widths and thicknesses and the extreme length of each piece.
Plates and Sheets	The thickness of plates and galvanized sheet used in the manufacture of corrugated metal pipe, metal plate pipe culverts and arches, and metal cribbing will be specified and measured in decimal fraction of inch.
Miscellaneous Items	When standard manufactured items are specified such as fence, wire, plates, rolled shapes, pipe conduit, etc., and these items are identified by gauge, unit weight, section dimensions, etc., such identification will be considered to be nominal weights or dimensions. Unless more stringently controlled by tolerances in cited specifications, manufacturing tolerances established by the industries involved will be accepted.
Scales	Scales must be tested for accuracy and serviced before use. Scales for weighing materials which are required to be proportioned or measured and paid for by weight shall be furnished, erected, and maintained by the Contractor, or be certified permanently installed commercial scales. Platform scales shall be installed and maintained with the platform level and rigid bulkheads at each end. Scales shall be accurate within 0.5% of the correct weight throughout the range of use. The Contractor shall have the scales checked under the observation of the RPR before beginning work and at such other times as requested. The intervals shall be uniform in spacing throughout the graduated or marked length of the beam or dial and shall not exceed 0.1% of the nominal rated capacity of the

Term	Description
	scale, but not less than one pound (454 grams). The use of spring balances will not be permitted. In the event inspection reveals the scales have been “overweighing” (indicating more than correct weight) they will be immediately adjusted. All materials received subsequent to the last previous correct weighting-accuracy test will be reduced by the percentage of error in excess of 0.5%. In the event inspection reveals the scales have been under-weighing (indicating less than correct weight), they shall be immediately adjusted. No additional payment to the Contractor will be allowed for materials previously weighed and recorded. Beams, dials, platforms, and other scale equipment shall be so arranged that the operator and the RPR can safely and conveniently view them. Scale installations shall have available ten standard 50-pound (2.3 km) weights for testing the weighing equipment or suitable weights and devices for other approved equipment. All costs in connection with furnishing, installing, certifying, testing, and maintaining scales; for furnishing check weights and scale house; and for all other items specified in this subsection, for the weighing of materials for proportioning or payment, shall be included in the unit contract prices for the various items of the project.
Rental Equipment	Rental of equipment will be measured by time in hours of actual working time and necessary traveling time of the equipment within the limits of the work. Special equipment ordered in connection with extra work will be measured as agreed in the change order or supplemental agreement authorizing such work as provided in paragraph 90-05 <i>Payment for Extra Work</i>.
Pay Quantities	When the estimated quantities for a specific portion of the work are designated as the pay quantities in the contract, they shall be the final quantities for which payment for such specific portion of the work will be made, unless the dimensions of said portions of the work shown on the plans are revised by the RPR. If revised dimensions result in an increase or decrease in the quantities of such work, the final quantities for payment will be revised in the amount represented by the authorized changes in the dimensions.

90-02 Scope of payment. The Contractor shall receive and accept compensation provided for in the contract as full payment for furnishing all materials, for performing all work under the contract in a complete and acceptable manner, and for all risk, loss, damage, or expense of whatever character arising out of the nature of the work or the execution thereof, subject to the provisions of Section 70, paragraph 70-18, *No Waiver of Legal Rights*.

When the “basis of payment” subsection of a technical specification requires that the contract price (price bid) include compensation for certain work or material essential to the item, this same work or material will not also be measured for payment under any other contract item which may appear elsewhere in the contract, plans, or specifications.

90-03 Compensation for altered quantities. When the accepted quantities of work vary from the quantities in the proposal, the Contractor shall accept as payment in full, so far as contract items are

concerned, payment at the original contract price for the accepted quantities of work actually completed and accepted. No allowance, except as provided for in Section 40, paragraph 40-02, *Alteration of Work and Quantities*, will be made for any increased expense, loss of expected reimbursement, or loss of anticipated profits suffered or claimed by the Contractor which results directly from such alterations or indirectly from their own unbalanced allocation of overhead and profit among the contract items, or from any other cause.

90-04 Payment for omitted items. As specified in Section 40, paragraph 40-03, *Omitted Items*, the RPR shall have the right to omit from the work (order nonperformance) any contract item, except major contract items, in the best interest of the Owner.

Should the RPR omit or order nonperformance of a contract item or portion of such item from the work, the Contractor shall accept payment in full at the contract prices for any work actually completed and acceptable prior to the RPR's order to omit or non-perform such contract item.

Acceptable materials ordered by the Contractor or delivered on the work prior to the date of the RPR's order will be paid for at the actual cost to the Contractor and shall thereupon become the property of the Owner.

In addition to the reimbursement hereinbefore provided, the Contractor shall be reimbursed for all actual costs incurred for the purpose of performing the omitted contract item prior to the date of the RPR's order. Such additional costs incurred by the Contractor must be directly related to the deleted contract item and shall be supported by certified statements by the Contractor as to the nature the amount of such costs.

90-05 Payment for extra work. Extra work, performed in accordance with Section 40, paragraph 40-04, *Extra Work*, will be paid for at the contract prices or agreed prices specified in the change order or supplemental agreement authorizing the extra work.

90-06 Partial payments. Partial payments will be made to the Contractor at least once each month as the work progresses. Said payments will be based upon estimates, prepared by the RPR, of the value of the work performed and materials complete and in place, in accordance with the contract, plans, and specifications. Such partial payments may also include the delivered actual cost of those materials stockpiled and stored in accordance with paragraph 90-07, *Payment for Materials on Hand*. No partial payment will be made when the amount due to the Contractor since the last estimate amounts to less than five hundred dollars.

[Insert retainage option here.]

The Owner has three options in determining whether retainage will be withheld on the project. The Owner must insert the clauses for the option that applies and delete the clauses for the other two options. Proper use of this language assists with meeting the requirements of 49 CFR § 26.29.

Option 1: The Owner may decline to hold retainage from prime Contractors and prohibit prime Contractors from holding retainage from subcontractors. Insert this clause if Option 1 is selected:

a. Retainage will not be withheld on this project. No retainage will be withheld by the Owner from progress payments due the prime Contractor. Retainage by the prime or subcontractors is prohibited, and no retainage will be held by the prime from progress due subcontractors.

b. The Contractor is required to pay all subcontractors for satisfactory performance of their contracts no later than 30 days after the Contractor has received a partial payment. A subcontractor's work is satisfactorily completed when all the tasks called for in the subcontract have been accomplished and documented as required by the Owner. When the Owner has made an incremental acceptance of a portion of a prime contract, the work of a subcontractor covered by that acceptance is deemed to be satisfactorily completed.

c. When at least 95% of the project work has been completed to the satisfaction of the RPR, the RPR shall, at the Owner's discretion and with the consent of the surety, prepare estimates of both the contract value and the cost of the remaining work to be done.

Option 2: The Owner may decline to hold retainage from prime Contractors and require a contract clause obligating prime Contractors to make prompt and full payment of any retainage kept by prime Contractor to the subcontractor within 30 days after the subcontractor's work is satisfactorily completed. Insert this clause if Option 2 is selected:

a. No retainage will be held by the Owner from progress payments due the prime.

b. The Contractor is required to pay all subcontractors for satisfactory performance of their contracts no later than 30 days after the Contractor has received a partial payment. Contractor must provide the Owner evidence of prompt and full payment of retainage held by the prime Contractor to the subcontractor within 30 days after the subcontractor's work is satisfactorily completed. A subcontractor's work is satisfactorily completed when all the tasks called for in the subcontract have been accomplished and documented as required by the Owner. When the Owner has made an incremental acceptance of a portion of a prime contract, the work of a subcontractor covered by that acceptance is deemed to be satisfactorily completed.

c. When at least 95% of the project work has been completed to the satisfaction of the RPR, the RPR shall, at the Owner's discretion and with the consent of the surety, prepare estimates of both the contract value and the cost of the remaining work to be done.

Option 3: The Owner may hold retainage from prime Contractors and provide for prompt and regular incremental acceptances of portions of the prime contract, pay retainage to prime Contractors based on these acceptances, and require a contract clause obligating the prime Contractor to pay all retainage owed to the subcontractor for satisfactory completion of the accepted work within 30 days after the Owner's payment to the prime Contractor. If Option 3 is selected, the percent withheld may range from 0% to 10% but in no case may it exceed 10%. When establishing a suitable retainage value that protects the Owner's interests, give consideration that the performance and payment bonds also provide similar protection of Owner interests. Owner may elect to incrementally release retainage if owner is satisfied its interest with completion of the project are protected in an adequate manner. If Option 3 is selected, insert the following clause and specify a suitable value where indicated:

a. From the total of the amount determined to be payable on a partial payment, [insert amount of retainage, not to exceed 10%] percent of such total amount will be deducted and retained by the Owner for protection of the Owner's interests. Unless otherwise instructed by the Owner, the amount retained by the Owner will be in effect until the final payment is made except as follows:

(1) Contractor may request release of retainage on work that has been partially accepted by the Owner in accordance with Section 50-14. Contractor must provide a certified invoice to the RPR that supports the value of retainage held by the Owner for partially accepted work.

(2) In lieu of retainage, the Contractor may exercise at its option the establishment of an escrow account per paragraph 90-08.

b. The Contractor is required to pay all subcontractors for satisfactory performance of their contracts no later than 30 days after the Contractor has received a partial payment. Contractor must provide the Owner evidence of prompt and full payment of retainage held by the prime Contractor to the subcontractor within 30 days after the subcontractor's work is satisfactorily completed. A subcontractor's work is satisfactorily completed when all the tasks called for in the subcontract have been accomplished and documented as required by the Owner. When the Owner has made an incremental acceptance of a portion of a prime contract, the work of a subcontractor covered by that acceptance is deemed to be satisfactorily completed.

c. When at least 95% of the work has been completed to the satisfaction of the RPR, the RPR shall, at the Owner's discretion and with the consent of the surety, prepare estimates of both the contract value and the cost of the remaining work to be done. The Owner may retain an amount not less than twice the contract value or estimated cost, whichever is greater, of the work remaining to be done. The remainder, less all previous payments and deductions, will then be certified for payment to the Contractor.

It is understood and agreed that the Contractor shall not be entitled to demand or receive partial payment based on quantities of work in excess of those provided in the proposal or covered by approved change orders or supplemental agreements, except when such excess quantities have been determined by the RPR to be a part of the final quantity for the item of work in question.

No partial payment shall bind the Owner to the acceptance of any materials or work in place as to quality or quantity. All partial payments are subject to correction at the time of final payment as provided in paragraph 90-09, *Acceptance and Final Payment*.

The Contractor shall deliver to the Owner a complete release of all claims for labor and material arising out of this contract before the final payment is made. If any subcontractor or supplier fails to furnish such a release in full, the Contractor may furnish a bond or other collateral satisfactory to the Owner to indemnify the Owner against any potential lien or other such claim. The bond or collateral shall include all costs, expenses, and attorney fees the Owner may be compelled to pay in discharging any such lien or claim.

In some areas, release of liens prior to paying the full amount to the prime Contractor may void the contract. In those areas, revise the previous paragraph as required to meet all state and local regulations.

90-07 Payment for materials on hand. Partial payments may be made to the extent of the delivered cost of materials to be incorporated in the work, provided that such materials meet the requirements of the contract, plans, and specifications and are delivered to acceptable sites on the airport property or at other sites in the vicinity that are acceptable to the Owner. Such delivered costs of stored or stockpiled materials may be included in the next partial payment after the following conditions are met:

- a. The material has been stored or stockpiled in a manner acceptable to the RPR at or on an approved site.
- b. The Contractor has furnished the RPR with acceptable evidence of the quantity and quality of such stored or stockpiled materials.
- c. The Contractor has furnished the RPR with satisfactory evidence that the material and transportation costs have been paid.
- d. The Contractor has furnished the Owner legal title (free of liens or encumbrances of any kind) to the material stored or stockpiled.
- e. The Contractor has furnished the Owner evidence that the material stored or stockpiled is insured against loss by damage to or disappearance of such materials at any time prior to use in the work.

It is understood and agreed that the transfer of title and the Owner's payment for such stored or stockpiled materials shall in no way relieve the Contractor of their responsibility for furnishing and placing such materials in accordance with the requirements of the contract, plans, and specifications.

In no case will the amount of partial payments for materials on hand exceed the contract price for such materials or the contract price for the contract item in which the material is intended to be used.

No partial payment will be made for stored or stockpiled living or perishable plant materials.

The Contractor shall bear all costs associated with the partial payment of stored or stockpiled materials in accordance with the provisions of this paragraph.

90-08 Payment of withheld funds. At the Contractor's option, if an Owner withholds retainage in accordance with the methods described in paragraph 90-06 *Partial Payments*, the Contractor may request that the Owner deposit the retainage into an escrow account. The Owner's deposit of retainage into an escrow account is subject to the following conditions:

- a. The Contractor shall bear all expenses of establishing and maintaining an escrow account and escrow agreement acceptable to the Owner.
- b. The Contractor shall deposit to and maintain in such escrow only those securities or bank certificates of deposit as are acceptable to the Owner and having a value not less than the retainage that would otherwise be withheld from partial payment.
- c. The Contractor shall enter into an escrow agreement satisfactory to the Owner.
- d. The Contractor shall obtain the written consent of the surety to such agreement.

90-09 Acceptance and final payment. When the contract work has been accepted in accordance with the requirements of Section 50, paragraph 50-15, *Final Acceptance*, the RPR will prepare the final estimate of the items of work actually performed. The Contractor shall approve the RPR's final estimate or advise the

RPR of the Contractor's objections to the final estimate which are based on disputes in measurements or computations of the final quantities to be paid under the contract as amended by change order or supplemental agreement. The Contractor and the RPR shall resolve all disputes (if any) in the measurement and computation of final quantities to be paid within 30 calendar days of the Contractor's receipt of the RPR's final estimate. If, after such 30-day period, a dispute still exists, the Contractor may approve the RPR's estimate under protest of the quantities in dispute, and such disputed quantities shall be considered by the Owner as a claim in accordance with Section 50, paragraph 50-16, *Claims for Adjustment and Disputes*.

After the Contractor has approved, or approved under protest, the RPR's final estimate, and after the RPR's receipt of the project closeout documentation required in paragraph 90-11, *Contractor Final Project Documentation*, final payment will be processed based on the entire sum, or the undisputed sum in case of approval under protest, determined to be due the Contractor less all previous payments and all amounts to be deducted under the provisions of the contract. All prior partial estimates and payments shall be subject to correction in the final estimate and payment.

If the Contractor has filed a claim for additional compensation under the provisions of Section 50, paragraph 50-16, *Claims for Adjustments and Disputes*, or under the provisions of this paragraph, such claims will be considered by the Owner in accordance with local laws or ordinances. Upon final adjudication of such claims, any additional payment determined to be due the Contractor will be paid pursuant to a supplemental final estimate.

90-10 Construction warranty.

a. In addition to any other warranties in this contract, the Contractor warrants that work performed under this contract conforms to the contract requirements and is free of any defect in equipment, material, workmanship, or design furnished, or performed by the Contractor or any subcontractor or supplier at any tier.

b. This warranty shall continue for a period of one year from the date of final acceptance of the work, except as noted. If the Owner takes possession of any part of the work before final acceptance, this warranty shall continue for a period of one year from the date the Owner takes possession. [However, this will not relieve the Contractor from corrective items required by the final acceptance of the project work. Light Emitting Diode emitting diode (LED) light fixtures with the exception of obstruction lighting, must be warranted by the manufacturer for a minimum of four (4) years after date of installation inclusive of all electronics.]
[]

Delete LED item if not included in the project.

Include any project specific materials that have a greater than one-year warranty period.

c. The Contractor shall remedy at the Contractor's expense any failure to conform, or any defect. In addition, the Contractor shall remedy at the Contractor's expense any damage to Owner real or personal property, when that damage is the result of the Contractor's failure to conform to contract requirements; or any defect of equipment, material, workmanship, or design furnished by the Contractor.

d. The Contractor shall restore any work damaged in fulfilling the terms and conditions of this clause. The Contractor's warranty with respect to work repaired or replaced will run for one year from the date of repair or replacement.

e. The Owner will notify the Contractor, in writing, within [seven (7)] days after the discovery of any failure, defect, or damage.

f. If the Contractor fails to remedy any failure, defect, or damage within [14] days after receipt of notice, the Owner shall have the right to replace, repair, or otherwise remedy the failure, defect, or damage at the Contractor's expense.

g. With respect to all warranties, express or implied, from subcontractors, manufacturers, or suppliers for work performed and materials furnished under this contract, the Contractor shall: (1) Obtain all warranties that would be given in normal commercial practice; (2) Require all warranties to be executed, in writing, for the benefit of the Owner, as directed by the Owner, and (3) Enforce all warranties for the benefit of the Owner.

h. This warranty shall not limit the Owner's rights with respect to latent defects, gross mistakes, or fraud.

Notification times in Items e and f may be changed to meet specific project requirements.

Airport Improvement Program (AIP) will not typically participate in extended warranties beyond one (1) year.

Note that Engineering Brief (EB) #67, Light Sources Other than Incandescent and Xenon for Airport and Obstruction Lighting Fixtures, requires that all light-emitting diode (LED) light fixtures with the exception of obstruction lighting, (advisory circular (AC) 150/5345-43) must be warranted by the manufacturer for a minimum of four (4) years after date of installation inclusive of all electronics.

It is recommended the Owner and Engineer perform a warranty inspection with the Contractor approximately three (3) months before the end of the one year warranty period.

90-11 Contractor Final Project Documentation. Approval of final payment to the Contractor is contingent upon completion and submittal of the items listed below. The final payment will not be approved until the RPR approves the Contractor's final submittal. The Contractor shall:

a. Provide two (2) copies of all manufacturers warranties specified for materials, equipment, and installations.

b. Provide weekly payroll records (not previously received) from the general Contractor and all subcontractors.

c. Complete final cleanup in accordance with Section 40, paragraph 40-08, *Final Cleanup*.

d. Complete all punch list items identified during the Final Inspection.

e. Provide complete release of all claims for labor and material arising out of the Contract.

f. Provide a certified statement signed by the subcontractors, indicating actual amounts paid to the Disadvantaged Business Enterprise (DBE) subcontractors and/or suppliers associated with the project.

- g. When applicable per state requirements, return copies of sales tax completion forms.
- h. Manufacturer's certifications for all items incorporated in the work.
- i. All required record drawings, as-built drawings or as-constructed drawings.
- j. Project Operation and Maintenance (O&M) Manual(s).
- k. Security for Construction Warranty.
- l. Equipment commissioning documentation submitted, if required.

[]

Additional items may be added as necessary to address State requirements and specific project requirements. The intent of this section is to withhold final project payment until all necessary paperwork, project work, and cleanup of work/staging areas have been completed.

END OF SECTION 90

Part 2 – General Construction Items

Item C-100 Contractor Quality Control Program (CQCP)

It is strongly encouraged that a Contractor Quality Control Program (CQCP) be developed for all projects. All federally funded projects over \$500K dollars where paving is the major work item must have a CQCP. The intent of the CQCP is to ensure that quality of materials and production is monitored to be within acceptance limits and that as soon as materials or production processes vary beyond pre-established limits that the Contractor implements corrective action plans. Rather than waiting to develop the corrective action plan after the problem is identified it is preferable to implement a preapproved plan. In addition, the purpose of the CQCP is to ensure that Contractor Quality Control (CQC) personnel are coordinating with owners Quality Assurance (QA) personnel throughout the project, not just when disputes arise. QA is the Owner's responsibility to assure payment is only for acceptable work.

100-1 General. Quality is more than test results. Quality is the combination of proper materials, testing, workmanship, equipment, inspection, and documentation of the project. Establishing and maintaining a culture of quality is key to achieving a quality project. The Contractor shall establish, provide, and maintain an effective Contractor Quality Control Program (CQCP) that details the methods and procedures that will be taken to assure that all materials and completed construction required by this contract conform to contract plans, technical specifications and other requirements, whether manufactured by the Contractor, or procured from subcontractors or vendors. Although guidelines are established and certain minimum requirements are specified here and elsewhere in the contract technical specifications, the Contractor shall assume full responsibility for accomplishing the stated purpose.

The Contractor shall establish a CQCP that will:

- a. Provide qualified personnel to develop and implement the CQCP.
- b. Provide for the production of acceptable quality materials.
- c. Provide sufficient information to assure that the specification requirements can be met.
- d. Document the CQCP process.

The Contractor shall not begin any construction or production of materials to be incorporated into the completed work until the CQCP has been reviewed and approved by the Resident Project Representative (RPR). No partial payment will be made for materials subject to specific quality control (QC) requirements until the CQCP has been reviewed and approved.

The QC requirements contained in this section and elsewhere in the contract technical specifications are in addition to and separate from the quality assurance (QA) testing requirements. QA testing requirements are the responsibility of the RPR or Contractor as specified in the specifications.

A Quality Control (QC)/Quality Assurance (QA) workshop with the Engineer, Resident Project Representative (RPR), Contractor, subcontractors, testing laboratories, and Owner's representative must

be held prior to start of construction. The QC/QA workshop will be facilitated by the Contractor. The Contractor shall coordinate with the Airport and the RPR on time and location of the QC/QA workshop. Items to be addressed, at a minimum, will include:

- a. Review of the CQCP including submittals, QC Testing, Action & Suspension Limits for Production, Corrective Action Plans, Distribution of QC reports, and Control Charts.
- b. Discussion of the QA program.
- c. Discussion of the QC and QA Organization and authority including coordination and information exchange between QC and QA.
- d. Establish regular meetings to discuss control of materials, methods and testing.
- e. Establishment of the overall QC culture.

100-2 Description of program.

a. General description. The Contractor shall establish a CQCP to perform QC inspection and testing of all items of work required by the technical specifications, including those performed by subcontractors. The CQCP shall ensure conformance to applicable specifications and plans with respect to materials, off-site fabrication, workmanship, construction, finish, and functional performance. The CQCP shall be effective for control of all construction work performed under this Contract and shall specifically include surveillance and tests required by the technical specifications, in addition to other requirements of this section and any other activities deemed necessary by the Contractor to establish an effective level of QC.

b. Contractor Quality Control Program (CQCP). The Contractor shall describe the CQCP in a written document that shall be reviewed and approved by the RPR prior to the start of any production, construction, or off-site fabrication. The written CQCP shall be submitted to the RPR for review and approval at least [10] calendar days before the CQCP Workshop. The Contractor's CQCP and QC testing laboratory must be approved in writing by the RPR prior to the Notice to Proceed (NTP).

The Engineer should choose an adequate period for review. Submittal of the written CQCP will allow the Engineer to review the contents and make suggestions prior to the CQCP Workshop.

Submittal of the written CQCP prior to the start of work will allow for detailed discussion of the requirements before the NTP is issued.

When selecting the required days for the Contractor to submit the CQCP, adequate time should be allowed for the CQCP to be a supplement to the Owner's Construction Management Plan (CMP).

The CQCP shall be organized to address, as a minimum, the following:

1. QC organization and resumes of key staff
2. Project progress schedule
3. Submittals schedule
4. Inspection requirements
5. QC testing plan
6. Documentation of QC activities and distribution of QC reports

7. Requirements for corrective action when QC and/or QA acceptance criteria are not met
8. Material quality and construction means and methods. Address all elements applicable to the project that affect the quality of the pavement structure including subgrade, subbase, base, and surface course. Some elements that must be addressed include, but is not limited to mix design, aggregate grading, stockpile management, mixing and transporting, placing and finishing, quality control testing and inspection, smoothness, laydown plan, equipment, and temperature management plan.

The Contractor must add any additional elements to the CQCP that is necessary to adequately control all production and/or construction processes required by this contract.

100-3 CQCP organization. The CQCP shall be implemented by the establishment of a QC organization. An organizational chart shall be developed to show all QC personnel, their authority, and how these personnel integrate with other management/production and construction functions and personnel.

The organizational chart shall identify all QC staff by name and function, and shall indicate the total staff required to implement all elements of the CQCP, including inspection and testing for each item of work. If necessary, different technicians can be used for specific inspection and testing functions for different items of work. If an outside organization or independent testing laboratory is used for implementation of all or part of the CQCP, the personnel assigned shall be subject to the qualification requirements of paragraphs 100-03a and 100-03b. The organizational chart shall indicate which personnel are Contractor employees and which are provided by an outside organization.

The QC organization shall, as a minimum, consist of the following personnel:

a. Program Administrator. The Contractor Quality Control Program Administrator (CQCPA) must be a full-time [on-site] employee of the Contractor, or a consultant engaged by the Contractor. The CQCPA must have a minimum of five (5) years of experience in QC pavement construction with prior QC experience on a project of comparable size and scope as the contract.

Included in the five (5) years of paving/QC experience, the CQCPA must meet at least one of the following requirements:

- (1) Professional Engineer with one (1) year of airport paving experience.
- (2) Engineer-in-training with two (2) years of airport paving experience.
- (3) National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies (NICET) Civil Engineering Technology Level IV with three (3) years of airport paving experience.
- (4) An individual with four (4) years of airport paving experience, with a Bachelor of Science Degree in Civil Engineering, Civil Engineering Technology or Construction.

The CQCPA must have full authority to institute any and all actions necessary for the successful implementation of the CQCP to ensure compliance with the contract plans and technical specifications. The CQCPA authority must include the ability to immediately stop production until materials and/or processes are in compliance with contract specifications. The CQCPA must report directly to a principal officer of the construction firm. The CQCPA may supervise the Quality Control Program on more than one project provided that person can be at the job site within two (2) hours after being notified of a problem.

If the project is of sufficient scope and size to warrant a full time, on-site CQCPA, modify paragraph 100-03a accordingly.

b. QC technicians. A sufficient number of QC technicians necessary to adequately implement the CQCP must be provided. These personnel must be either Engineers, engineering technicians, or experienced craftsman with qualifications in the appropriate field equivalent to NICET Level II in Civil Engineering Technology or higher, and shall have a minimum of two (2) years of experience in their area of expertise.

The QC technicians must report directly to the CQCPA and shall perform the following functions:

- (1) Inspection of all materials, construction, plant, and equipment for conformance to the technical specifications, and as required by paragraph 100-6.
- (2) Performance of all QC tests as required by the technical specifications and paragraph 100-8.
- (3) Performance of tests for the RPR when required by the technical specifications.

Certification at an equivalent level of qualification and experience by a state or nationally recognized organization will be acceptable in lieu of NICET certification.

c. Staffing levels. The Contractor shall provide sufficient qualified QC personnel to monitor each work activity at all times. Where material is being produced in a plant for incorporation into the work, separate plant and field technicians shall be provided at each plant and field placement location. The scheduling and coordinating of all inspection and testing must match the type and pace of work activity. The CQCP shall state where different technicians will be required for different work elements.

100-4 Project progress schedule. Critical QC activities must be shown on the project schedule as required by Section 80, paragraph 80-03, *Execution and Progress*.

100-5 Submittals schedule. The Contractor shall submit a detailed listing of all submittals (for example, mix designs, material certifications) and shop drawings required by the technical specifications. The listing can be developed in a spreadsheet format and shall include as a minimum:

- a. Specification item number
- b. Item description
- c. Description of submittal
- d. Specification paragraph requiring submittal
- e. Scheduled date of submittal

100-6 Inspection requirements. QC inspection functions shall be organized to provide inspections for all definable features of work, as detailed below. All inspections shall be documented by the Contractor as specified by paragraph 100-9.

Inspections shall be performed as needed to ensure continuing compliance with contract requirements until completion of the particular feature of work. Inspections shall include the following minimum requirements:

a. During plant operation for material production, QC test results and periodic inspections shall be used to ensure the quality of aggregates and other mix components, and to adjust and control mix proportioning to meet the approved mix design and other requirements of the technical specifications. All equipment used in proportioning and mixing shall be inspected to ensure its proper operating condition. The CQCP shall detail how these and other QC functions will be accomplished and used.

b. During field operations, QC test results and periodic inspections shall be used to ensure the quality of all materials and workmanship. All equipment used in placing, finishing, and compacting shall be inspected to ensure its proper operating condition and to ensure that all such operations are in conformance to the technical specifications and are within the plan dimensions, lines, grades, and

tolerances specified. The CQCP shall document how these and other QC functions will be accomplished and used.

100-7 Contractor QC testing facility.

a. For projects that include Item P-401, Item P-403, and Item P-404, the Contractor shall ensure facilities, including all necessary equipment, materials, and current reference standards, are provided that meet requirements in the following paragraphs of ASTM D3666, *Standard Specification for Minimum Requirements for Agencies Testing and Inspecting Road and Paving Materials*:

- 8.1.3 Equipment Calibration and Checks;
- 8.1.9 Equipment Calibration, Standardization, and Check Records;
- 8.1.12 Test Methods and Procedures

b. For projects that include P-501, the Contractor shall ensure facilities, including all necessary equipment, materials, and current reference standards, are provided that meet requirements in the following paragraphs of ASTM C1077, *Standard Practice for Agencies Testing Concrete and Concrete Aggregates for Use in Construction and Criteria for Testing Agency Evaluation*:

- 7 Test Methods and Procedures
- 8 Facilities, Equipment, and Supplemental Procedures

100-8 QC testing plan. As a part of the overall CQCP, the Contractor shall implement a QC testing plan, as required by the technical specifications. The testing plan shall include the minimum tests and test frequencies required by each technical specification Item, as well as any additional QC tests that the Contractor deems necessary to adequately control production and/or construction processes.

The QC testing plan can be developed in a spreadsheet fashion and shall, as a minimum, include the following:

- a.** Specification item number (e.g., P-401)
- b.** Item description (e.g., Hot Mix Asphalt Pavements)
- c.** Test type (e.g., gradation, grade, asphalt content)
- d.** Test standard (e.g., ASTM or American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO) test number, as applicable)
- e.** Test frequency (e.g., as required by technical specifications or minimum frequency when requirements are not stated)
- f.** Responsibility (e.g., plant technician)
- g.** Control requirements (e.g., target, permissible deviations)

The QC testing plan shall contain a statistically-based procedure of random sampling for acquiring test samples in accordance with ASTM D3665. The RPR shall be provided the opportunity to witness QC sampling and testing.

All QC test results shall be documented by the Contractor as required by paragraph 100-9.

100-9 Documentation. The Contractor shall maintain current QC records of all inspections and tests performed. These records shall include factual evidence that the required QC inspections or tests have been performed, including type and number of inspections or tests involved; results of inspections or tests; nature of defects, deviations, causes for rejection, etc.; proposed remedial action; and corrective actions taken.

These records must cover both conforming and defective or deficient features, and must include a statement that all supplies and materials incorporated in the work are in full compliance with the terms of the contract. Legible copies of these records shall be furnished to the RPR daily. The records shall cover all work placed subsequent to the previously furnished records and shall be verified and signed by the CQCPA.

Contractor QC records required for the contract shall include, but are not necessarily limited to, the following records:

a. Daily inspection reports. Each Contractor QC technician shall maintain a daily log of all inspections performed for both Contractor and subcontractor operations. These technician's daily reports shall provide factual evidence that continuous QC inspections have been performed and shall, as a minimum, include the following:

- (1) Technical specification item number and description
- (2) Compliance with approved submittals
- (3) Proper storage of materials and equipment
- (4) Proper operation of all equipment
- (5) Adherence to plans and technical specifications
- (6) Summary of any necessary corrective actions
- (7) Safety inspection.
- [(8) Photographs and/or video]

The daily inspection reports shall identify all QC inspections and QC tests conducted, results of inspections, location and nature of defects found, causes for rejection, and remedial or corrective actions taken or proposed.

The daily inspection reports shall be signed by the responsible QC technician and the CQCPA. The RPR shall be provided at least one copy of each daily inspection report on the work day following the day of record. When QC inspection and test results are recorded and transmitted electronically, the results must be archived.

b. Daily test reports. The Contractor shall be responsible for establishing a system that will record all QC test results. Daily test reports shall document the following information:

- (1) Technical specification item number and description
- (2) Test designation
- (3) Location
- (4) Date of test
- (5) Control requirements
- (6) Test results
- (7) Causes for rejection
- (8) Recommended remedial actions
- (9) Retests

Test results from each day's work period shall be submitted to the RPR prior to the start of the next day's work period. When required by the technical specifications, the Contractor shall maintain statistical QC charts. When QC daily test results are recorded and transmitted electronically, the results must be archived.

100-10 Corrective action requirements. The CQCP shall indicate the appropriate action to be taken when a process is deemed, or believed, to be out of control (out of tolerance) and detail what action will

be taken to bring the process into control. The requirements for corrective action shall include both general requirements for operation of the CQCP as a whole, and for individual items of work contained in the technical specifications.

The CQCP shall detail how the results of QC inspections and tests will be used for determining the need for corrective action and shall contain clear rules to gauge when a process is out of control and the type of correction to be taken to regain process control.

When applicable or required by the technical specifications, the Contractor shall establish and use statistical QC charts for individual QC tests. The requirements for corrective action shall be linked to the control charts.

100-11 Inspection and/or observations by the RPR. All items of material and equipment are subject to inspection and/or observation by the RPR at the point of production, manufacture or shipment to determine if the Contractor, producer, manufacturer or shipper maintains an adequate QC system in conformance with the requirements detailed here and the applicable technical specifications and plans. In addition, all items of materials, equipment and work in place shall be subject to inspection and/or observation by the RPR at the site for the same purpose.

Inspection and/or observations by the RPR does not relieve the Contractor of performing QC inspections of either on-site or off-site Contractor's or subcontractor's work.

100-12 Noncompliance.

a. The Resident Project Representative (RPR) will provide written notice to the Contractor of any noncompliance with their CQCP. After receipt of such notice, the Contractor must take corrective action.

b. When QC activities do not comply with either the CQCP or the contract provisions or when the Contractor fails to properly operate and maintain an effective CQCP, and no effective corrective actions have been taken after notification of non-compliance, the RPR will recommend the Owner take the following actions:

(1) Order the Contractor to replace ineffective or unqualified QC personnel or subcontractors and/or

(2) Order the Contractor to stop operations until appropriate corrective actions are taken.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

100-13 Basis of measurement and payment. [Not Used] [Contractor Quality Control Program (CQCP) is for the personnel, tests, facilities and documentation required to implement the CQCP. The CQCP will be paid as a lump sum with the following schedule of partial payments:]

[**a.** With first pay request, 25% with approval of CQCP and completion of the Quality Control (QC)/Quality Assurance (QA) workshop.

b. When 25% or more of the original contract is earned, an additional 25%.

c. When 50% or more of the original contract is earned, an additional 20%.

d. When 75% or more of the original contract is earned, an additional 20%

e. After final inspection and acceptance of project, the final 10%.]

The payment schedule and percentages of payment can be altered based on the size and complexity of the project.

BASIS OF PAYMENT

100-14 Payment will be made under:

[Item C-100 Contractor Quality Control Program (CQCP)]

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies (NICET)

ASTM International (ASTM)

ASTM C1077	Standard Practice for Agencies Testing Concrete and Concrete Aggregates for Use in Construction and Criteria for Testing Agency Evaluation
ASTM D3665	Standard Practice for Random Sampling of Construction Materials
ASTM D3666	Standard Specification for Minimum Requirements for Agencies Testing and Inspecting Road and Paving Materials

END OF ITEM C-100

Item C-102 Temporary Air and Water Pollution, Soil Erosion, and Siltation Control

DESCRIPTION

The Engineer may add or edit this item as necessary to address any temporary erosion control means and methods required by Federal, state or local authorities.

The Engineer shall place all erosion control devices outside the safety areas of active runways or taxiways. All erosion control devices located within a runway safety area must be removed prior to re-activation of the runway or taxiway and upon approval of the RPR.

Refer to advisory circular (AC) 150/5200-33, Hazardous Wildlife Attractants on or Near Airports, and the FAA/USDA Wildlife Hazard Management at Airports, A Manual for Airport Personnel, for information on hazardous wildlife attractants.

The documents are available at the following website:

www.faa.gov/airports/airport_safety/wildlife/

Coordinate modifications in accordance with Order 5300.1.

102-1. This item shall consist of temporary control measures as shown on the plans or as ordered by the Resident Project Representative (RPR) during the life of a contract to control pollution of air and water, soil erosion, and siltation through the use of silt fences, berms, dikes, dams, sediment basins, fiber mats, gravel, mulches, grasses, slope drains, and other erosion control devices or methods.

Temporary erosion control shall be in accordance with the approved erosion control plan; the approved Construction Safety and Phasing Plan (CSPP) and AC 150/5370-2, *Operational Safety on Airports During Construction*. The temporary erosion control measures contained herein shall be coordinated with the permanent erosion control measures specified as part of this contract to the extent practical to assure economical, effective, and continuous erosion control throughout the construction period.

Temporary control may include work outside the construction limits such as borrow pit operations, equipment and material storage sites, waste areas, and temporary plant sites.

Temporary control measures shall be designed, installed and maintained to minimize the creation of wildlife attractants that have the potential to attract hazardous wildlife on or near public-use airports.

MATERIALS

102-2.1 Grass. Grass that will not compete with the grasses sown later for permanent cover per Item T-901 shall be a quick-growing species (such as ryegrass, Italian ryegrass, or cereal grasses) suitable to the area providing a temporary cover. Selected grass species shall not create a wildlife attractant.

102-2.2 Mulches. Mulches may be hay, straw, fiber mats, netting, bark, wood chips, or other suitable material reasonably clean and free of noxious weeds and deleterious materials per Item T-908. Mulches shall not create a wildlife attractant.

102-2.3 Fertilizer. Fertilizer shall be a standard commercial grade and shall conform to all federal and state regulations and to the standards of the Association of Official Agricultural Chemists.

102-2.4 Slope drains. Slope drains may be constructed of pipe, fiber mats, rubble, concrete, asphalt, or other materials that will adequately control erosion.

102-2.5 Silt fence. Silt fence shall consist of polymeric filaments which are formed into a stable network such that filaments retain their relative positions. Synthetic filter fabric shall contain ultraviolet ray inhibitors and stabilizers to provide a minimum of six months of expected usable construction life. Silt fence shall meet the requirements of ASTM D6461.

102-2.6 Other. All other materials shall meet commercial grade standards and shall be approved by the RPR before being incorporated into the project.

CONSTRUCTION REQUIREMENTS

102-3.1 General. In the event of conflict between these requirements and pollution control laws, rules, or regulations of other federal, state, or local agencies, the more restrictive laws, rules, or regulations shall apply.

The RPR shall be responsible for assuring compliance to the extent that construction practices, construction operations, and construction work are involved.

Some states, municipalities, and pollution control authorities have very specific regulations for air and water pollution controls. Check state and local requirements.

102-3.2 Schedule. Prior to the start of construction, the Contractor shall submit schedules in accordance with the approved Construction Safety and Phasing Plan (CSPP) and the plans for accomplishment of temporary and permanent erosion control work for clearing and grubbing; grading; construction; paving; and structures at watercourses. The Contractor shall also submit a proposed method of erosion and dust control on haul roads and borrow pits and a plan for disposal of waste materials. Work shall not be started until the erosion control schedules and methods of operation for the applicable construction have been accepted by the RPR.

102-3.3 Construction details. The Contractor will be required to incorporate all permanent erosion control features into the project at the earliest practicable time as outlined in the plans and approved CSPP. Except where future construction operations will damage slopes, the Contractor shall perform the permanent seeding and mulching and other specified slope protection work in stages, as soon as substantial areas of exposed slopes can be made available. Temporary erosion and pollution control measures will be used to correct conditions that develop during construction that were not foreseen during the design stage; that are needed prior to installation of permanent control features; or that are needed temporarily to control erosion that develops during normal construction practices, but are not associated with permanent control features on the project.

Where erosion may be a problem, schedule and perform clearing and grubbing operations so that grading operations and permanent erosion control features can follow immediately if project conditions permit. Temporary erosion control measures are required if permanent measures cannot immediately follow grading operations. The RPR shall limit the area of clearing and grubbing, excavation, borrow, and embankment operations in progress, commensurate with the Contractor's capability and progress in keeping the finish grading, mulching, seeding, and other such permanent control measures current with

the accepted schedule. If seasonal limitations make such coordination unrealistic, temporary erosion control measures shall be taken immediately to the extent feasible and justified as directed by the RPR.

The Contractor shall provide immediate permanent or temporary pollution control measures to minimize contamination of adjacent streams or other watercourses, lakes, ponds, or other areas of water impoundment as directed by the RPR. If temporary erosion and pollution control measures are required due to the Contractor's negligence, carelessness, or failure to install permanent controls as a part of the work as scheduled or directed by the RPR, the work shall be performed by the Contractor and the cost shall be incidental to this item.

The RPR may increase or decrease the area of erodible earth material that can be exposed at any time based on an analysis of project conditions.

The erosion control features installed by the Contractor shall be maintained by the Contractor during the construction period.

Provide temporary structures whenever construction equipment must cross watercourses at frequent intervals. Pollutants such as fuels, lubricants, bitumen, raw sewage, wash water from concrete mixing operations, and other harmful materials shall not be discharged into any waterways, impoundments or into natural or manmade channels.

Coordinate with the approved CSPP and wildlife hazard assessment plan.

Check state and local requirements for Stormwater Prevention Plan Best management practices.

102-3.4 Installation, maintenance and removal of silt fence. Silt fences shall extend a minimum of 16 inches (41 cm) and a maximum of 34 inches (86 cm) above the ground surface. Posts shall be set no more than 10 feet (3 m) on center. Filter fabric shall be cut from a continuous roll to the length required minimizing joints where possible. When joints are necessary, the fabric shall be spliced at a support post with a minimum 12-inch (300-mm) overlap and securely sealed. A trench shall be excavated approximately 4 inches (100 mm) deep by 4 inches (100 mm) wide on the upslope side of the silt fence. The trench shall be backfilled and the soil compacted over the silt fence fabric. The Contractor shall remove and dispose of silt that accumulates during construction and prior to establishment of permanent erosion control. The fence shall be maintained in good working condition until permanent erosion control is established. Silt fence shall be removed upon approval of the RPR.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

102-4.1 Temporary erosion and pollution control work required will be performed as scheduled or directed by the RPR. Completed and accepted work will be measured as follows:

- a. Temporary seeding and mulching will be measured by the square yard (square meter).
- b. Temporary slope drains will be measured by the linear foot (meter).
- c. Temporary benches, dikes, dams, and sediment basins will be measured by the cubic yard (cubic meter) of excavation performed, including necessary cleaning of sediment basins, and the cubic yard (cubic meter) of embankment placed as directed by the RPR.
- d. All fertilizing will be measured by the ton (kg).

e. Installation and removal of silt fence will be measured by the [linear foot (meter)]
[Lump sum].

102-4.2 Control work performed for protection of construction areas outside the construction limits, such as borrow and waste areas, haul roads, equipment and material storage sites, and temporary plant sites, will not be measured and paid for directly but shall be considered as a subsidiary obligation of the Contractor.

BASIS OF PAYMENT

102-5.1 Accepted quantities of temporary water pollution, soil erosion, and siltation control work ordered by the RPR and measured as provided in paragraph 102-4.1 will be paid for under:

Item C-102-5.1a	Temporary seeding and mulching - per square yard (square meter)
Item C-102-5.1b	Temporary slope drains - per linear foot (meter)
Item C-102-5.1c	Temporary benches, dikes, dams and sediment basins - per cubic yard (cubic meter)
Item C-102-5.1d	Fertilizing - per ton (kg)
Item C-102-5.1e	Installation and removal of silt fence [per linear feet (meter)] [lump sum]

Where other directed work falls within the specifications for a work item that has a contract price, the units of work shall be measured and paid for at the contract unit price bid for the various items.

Temporary control features not covered by contract items that are ordered by the RPR will be paid for in accordance with Section 90, paragraph 90-05 *Payment for Extra Work*.

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

Advisory Circulars (AC)

AC 150/5200-33 *Hazardous Wildlife Attractants on or Near Airports*

AC 150/5370-2 *Operational Safety on Airports During Construction*

ASTM International (ASTM)

ASTM D6461 *Standard Specification for Silt Fence Materials*

United States Department of Agriculture (USDA)

FAA/USDA Wildlife Hazard Management at Airports, A Manual for Airport Personnel

END OF ITEM C-102

Item C-105 Mobilization

105-1 Description. This item of work shall consist of, but is not limited to, work and operations necessary for the movement of personnel, equipment, material and supplies to and from the project site for work on the project except as provided in the contract as separate pay items.

105-2 Mobilization limit. Mobilization shall be limited to [10] percent of the total project cost.

Coordinate with Section 20, paragraph 20-03, *Contents of Proposal Forms*. A percentage cap based on overall project price such as any mobilization costs over 10% of the project total must be documented and will be paid on an as-incurred basis. Any non-incurred costs will not be paid.

105-3 Posted notices. Prior to commencement of construction activities, the Contractor must post the following documents in a prominent and accessible place where they may be easily viewed by all employees of the prime Contractor and by all employees of subcontractors engaged by the prime Contractor: Equal Employment Opportunity (EEO) Poster “Equal Employment Opportunity is the Law” in accordance with the Office of Federal Contract Compliance Programs Executive Order 11246, as amended; Davis Bacon Wage Poster (WH 1321) - DOL “Notice to All Employees” Poster; and Applicable Davis-Bacon Wage Rate Determination. These notices must remain posted until final acceptance of the work by the Owner.

The Owner may include additional posted notices as required by local and State law. Links to the posters available at: <https://www.faa.gov/airports/engineering/>

105-4 Engineer/RPR field office. [The Contractor shall provide dedicated space for the use of the field RPR and inspectors, as a field office for the duration of the project. This space shall be located conveniently near the construction and shall be separate from any space used by the Contractor. The Contractor shall furnish water, sanitary facilities, heat, air conditioning, and electricity in accordance with local building codes.] [An Engineer/RPR field office is not required.]

Requirements for specifying the Engineer/RPR field office should be coordinated with the Owner and the Engineer/RPR since such facilities are not needed for all airport construction projects. If a field office is required for the project, a separate line item for payment may be established. Other equipment may be appropriate with approval of the owner based on the size and duration of the project.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

105-5 Basis of measurement and payment. Based upon the contract lump sum price for “Mobilization” partial payments will be allowed as follows:

- [a. With first pay request, 25%.
- b. When 25% or more of the original contract is earned, an additional 25%.
- c. When 50% or more of the original contract is earned, an additional 40%.
- d. After Final Inspection, Staging area clean-up and delivery of all Project Closeout materials as required by Section 90, paragraph 90-11, *Contractor Final Project Documentation*, the final 10%.]

The payment schedule and percentages of payment can be altered based on the size and complexity of the project.

BASIS OF PAYMENT

105-6 Payment will be made under:

- [Item C-105 Mobilization]

Item Mobilization may be added to project at Owner’s discretion. Rather than paying Contractor 100% of mobilization on first pay request, many Owners have found a payment schedule to be an effective way to reimburse Contractor for mobilization and demobilization. It is recommended that the final 10% of this bid item not be paid until the Contractor has cleaned up the project staging area. The payment schedule can be altered, e.g., on small projects may not be appropriate to have more than two (2) payments.

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

Office of Federal Contract Compliance Programs (OFCCP)

Executive Order 11246, as amended

EEOC-P/E-1 – Equal Employment Opportunity is the Law Poster

United States Department of Labor, Wage and Hour Division (WHD)

WH 1321 – Employee Rights under the Davis-Bacon Act Poster

END OF ITEM C-105

Page Intentionally Blank

**[Item C-110 Method of Estimating Percentage of Material Within
Specification Limits (PWL)]**

Item C-110 should be deleted in its entirety when Item P-401, Item P-501, and/or Item P-404 are not required. On very small projects, or on projects that are maintenance repair type projects, PWL may not be appropriate. The PWL concept works best when sufficient material is placed to have at least one lot per day.

**Spreadsheets for PWL calculations are available at the following website:
http://www.faa.gov/airports/engineering/design_software/.**

**Use Engineering Brief (EB) 57 Extended Q-Value Table for Estimating Percent of Lot Within Limits (PWL) and the MS Excel PWL Table when the number of samples (n) is greater than 10. The EBs are available at the following website:
http://www.faa.gov/airports/engineering/engineering_briefs/.**

110-1 General. When the specifications provide for acceptance of material based on the method of estimating percentage of material within specification limits (PWL), the PWL will be determined in accordance with this section. All test results for a lot will be analyzed statistically to determine the total estimated percent of the lot that is within specification limits. The PWL is computed using the sample average ($\bar{X}$) and sample standard deviation (S_n) of the specified number (n) of sublots for the lot and the specification tolerance limits, L for lower and U for upper, for the particular acceptance parameter. From these values, the respective Quality index, Q_L for Lower Quality Index and/or Q_U for Upper Quality Index, is computed and the PWL for the lot for the specified n is determined from Table 1. All specification limits specified in the technical sections shall be absolute values. Test results used in the calculations shall be to the significant figure given in the test procedure.

There is some degree of uncertainty (risk) in the measurement for acceptance because only a small fraction of production material (the population) is sampled and tested. This uncertainty exists because all portions of the production material have the same probability to be randomly sampled. The Contractor's risk is the probability that material produced at the acceptable quality level is rejected or subjected to a pay adjustment. The Owner's risk is the probability that material produced at the rejectable quality level is accepted.

It is the intent of this section to inform the Contractor that, in order to consistently offset the Contractor's risk for material evaluated, production quality (using population average and population standard deviation) must be maintained at the acceptable quality specified or higher. In all cases, it is the responsibility of the Contractor to produce at quality levels that will meet the specified acceptance criteria when sampled and tested at the frequencies specified.

110-2 Method for computing PWL. The computational sequence for computing PWL is as follows:

- a. Divide the lot into n sublots in accordance with the acceptance requirements of the specification.
- b. Locate the random sampling position within the subplot in accordance with the requirements of the specification.

c. Make a measurement at each location, or take a test portion and make the measurement on the test portion in accordance with the testing requirements of the specification.

d. Find the sample average ($\bar{X}$) for all subplot test values within the lot by using the following formula:

$$\bar{X} = (x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + \dots + x_n) / n$$

Where: $\bar{X}$ = Sample average of all subplot test values within a lot

$x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n$ = Individual subplot test values

n = Number of subplot test values

e. Find the sample standard deviation (S_n) by use of the following formula:

$$S_n = [(d_1^2 + d_2^2 + d_3^2 + \dots + d_n^2)/(n-1)]^{1/2}$$

Where: S_n = Sample standard deviation of the number of subplot test values in the set

$d_1, d_2, \dots, d_n$ = Deviations of the individual subplot test values $x_1, x_2, \dots$ from the average value $\bar{X}$

that is: $d_1 = (x_1 - \bar{X}), d_2 = (x_2 - \bar{X}) \dots d_n = (x_n - \bar{X})$

n = Number of subplot test values

f. For single sided specification limits (i.e., L only), compute the Lower Quality Index Q_L by use of the following formula:

$$Q_L = (\bar{X} - L) / S_n$$

Where: L = specification lower tolerance limit

Estimate the percentage of material within limits (PWL) by entering Table 1 with Q_L , using the column appropriate to the total number (n) of measurements. If the value of Q_L falls between values shown on the table, use the next higher value of PWL.

g. For double-sided specification limits (i.e., L and U), compute the Quality Indexes Q_L and Q_U by use of the following formulas:

$$Q_L = (\bar{X} - L) / S_n$$

and

$$Q_U = (U - \bar{X}) / S_n$$

Where: L and U = specification lower and upper tolerance limits

Estimate the percentage of material between the lower (L) and upper (U) tolerance limits (PWL) by entering Table 1 separately with Q_L and Q_U , using the column appropriate to the total number (n) of measurements, and determining the percent of material above P_L and percent of material below P_U for each tolerance limit. If the values of Q_L fall between values shown on the table, use the next higher value of P_L or P_U . Determine the PWL by use of the following formula:

$$PWL = (P_U + P_L) - 100$$

Where: P_L = percent within lower specification limit

P_U = percent within upper specification limit

EXAMPLE OF PWL CALCULATION

Project: Example Project

Test Item: Item P-401, Lot A.

A. PWL Determination for Mat Density.

1. Density of four random cores taken from Lot A.

$$A-1 = 96.60$$

$$A-2 = 97.55$$

$$A-3 = 99.30$$

$$A-4 = 98.35$$

$$n = 4$$

2. Calculate average density for the lot.

$$X = (x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + \dots + x_n) / n$$

$$X = (96.60 + 97.55 + 99.30 + 98.35) / 4$$

$$X = 97.95\% \text{ density}$$

3. Calculate the standard deviation for the lot.

$$S_n = [((96.60 - 97.95)^2 + (97.55 - 97.95)^2 + (99.30 - 97.95)^2 + (98.35 - 97.95)^2) / (4 - 1)]^{1/2}$$

$$S_n = [(1.82 + 0.16 + 1.82 + 0.16) / 3]^{1/2}$$

$$S_n = 1.15$$

4. Calculate the Lower Quality Index Q_L for the lot. ($L=96.3$)

$$Q_L = (X - L) / S_n$$

$$Q_L = (97.95 - 96.30) / 1.15$$

$$Q_L = 1.4348$$

5. Determine PWL by entering Table 1 with $Q_L = 1.44$ and $n = 4$.

$$PWL = 98$$

B. PWL Determination for Air Voids.

1. Air Voids of four random samples taken from Lot A.

$$A-1 = 5.00$$

$$A-2 = 3.74$$

$$A-3 = 2.30$$

$$A-4 = 3.25$$

2. Calculate the average air voids for the lot.

$$X = (x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + \dots + x_n) / n$$

$$X = (5.00 + 3.74 + 2.30 + 3.25) / 4$$

$$X = 3.57\%$$

3. Calculate the standard deviation S_n for the lot.

$$S_n = [((3.57 - 5.00)^2 + (3.57 - 3.74)^2 + (3.57 - 2.30)^2 + (3.57 - 3.25)^2) / (4 - 1)]^{1/2}$$

$$S_n = [(2.04 + 0.03 + 1.62 + 0.10) / 3]^{1/2}$$

$$S_n = 1.12$$

4. Calculate the Lower Quality Index Q_L for the lot. ($L = 2.0$)

$$Q_L = (X - L) / S_n$$

$$Q_L = (3.57 - 2.00) / 1.12$$

$$Q_L = 1.3992$$

5. Determine P_L by entering Table 1 with $Q_L = 1.41$ and $n = 4$.

$$P_L = 97$$

6. Calculate the Upper Quality Index Q_U for the lot. ($U = 5.0$)

$$Q_U = (U - X) / S_n$$

$$Q_U = (5.00 - 3.57) / 1.12$$

$$Q_U = 1.2702$$

7. Determine P_U by entering Table 1 with $Q_U = 1.29$ and $n = 4$.

$$P_U = 93$$

8. Calculate Air Voids PWL

$$PWL = (P_L + P_U) - 100$$

$$PWL = (97 + 93) - 100 = 90$$

EXAMPLE OF OUTLIER CALCULATION (REFERENCE ASTM E178)

Project: Example Project

Test Item: Item P-401, Lot A.

A. Outlier Determination for Mat Density.

1. Density of four random cores taken from Lot A arranged in descending order.

$$A-3 = 99.30$$

$$A-4 = 98.35$$

$$A-2 = 97.55$$

$$A-1 = 96.60$$

2. From ASTM E178, Table 1, for $n=4$ an upper 5% significance level, the critical value for test criterion = 1.463.

3. Use average density, standard deviation, and test criterion value to evaluate density measurements.

- a. For measurements greater than the average:

If (measurement - average)/(standard deviation) is less than test criterion, then the measurement is not considered an outlier.

For A-3, check if $(99.30 - 97.95) / 1.15$ is greater than 1.463.

Since 1.174 is less than 1.463, the value is not an outlier.

- b. For measurements less than the average:

If (average - measurement)/(standard deviation) is less than test criterion, then the measurement is not considered an outlier.

For A-1, check if $(97.95 - 96.60) / 1.15$ is greater than 1.463.

Since 1.435 is less than 1.463, the value is not an outlier.

Note: In this example, a measurement would be considered an outlier if the density were:

Greater than $(97.95 + 1.463 \times 1.15) = 99.63\%$

OR

less than $(97.95 - 1.463 \times 1.15) = 96.27\%$.

Table 1. Table for Estimating Percent of Lot Within Limits (PWL)

Percent Within Limits (P _L and P _U)	Positive Values of Q (Q _L and Q _U)							
	n=3	n=4	n=5	n=6	n=7	n=8	n=9	n=10
99	1.1541	1.4700	1.6714	1.8008	1.8888	1.9520	1.9994	2.0362
98	1.1524	1.4400	1.6016	1.6982	1.7612	1.8053	1.8379	1.8630
97	1.1496	1.4100	1.5427	1.6181	1.6661	1.6993	1.7235	1.7420
96	1.1456	1.3800	1.4897	1.5497	1.5871	1.6127	1.6313	1.6454
95	1.1405	1.3500	1.4407	1.4887	1.5181	1.5381	1.5525	1.5635
94	1.1342	1.3200	1.3946	1.4329	1.4561	1.4717	1.4829	1.4914
93	1.1269	1.2900	1.3508	1.3810	1.3991	1.4112	1.4199	1.4265
92	1.1184	1.2600	1.3088	1.3323	1.3461	1.3554	1.3620	1.3670
91	1.1089	1.2300	1.2683	1.2860	1.2964	1.3032	1.3081	1.3118
90	1.0982	1.2000	1.2290	1.2419	1.2492	1.2541	1.2576	1.2602
89	1.0864	1.1700	1.1909	1.1995	1.2043	1.2075	1.2098	1.2115
88	1.0736	1.1400	1.1537	1.1587	1.1613	1.1630	1.1643	1.1653
87	1.0597	1.1100	1.1173	1.1192	1.1199	1.1204	1.1208	1.1212
86	1.0448	1.0800	1.0817	1.0808	1.0800	1.0794	1.0791	1.0789
85	1.0288	1.0500	1.0467	1.0435	1.0413	1.0399	1.0389	1.0382
84	1.0119	1.0200	1.0124	1.0071	1.0037	1.0015	1.0000	0.9990
83	0.9939	0.9900	0.9785	0.9715	0.9671	0.9643	0.9624	0.9610
82	0.9749	0.9600	0.9452	0.9367	0.9315	0.9281	0.9258	0.9241
81	0.9550	0.9300	0.9123	0.9025	0.8966	0.8928	0.8901	0.8882
80	0.9342	0.9000	0.8799	0.8690	0.8625	0.8583	0.8554	0.8533
79	0.9124	0.8700	0.8478	0.8360	0.8291	0.8245	0.8214	0.8192
78	0.8897	0.8400	0.8160	0.8036	0.7962	0.7915	0.7882	0.7858
77	0.8662	0.8100	0.7846	0.7716	0.7640	0.7590	0.7556	0.7531
76	0.8417	0.7800	0.7535	0.7401	0.7322	0.7271	0.7236	0.7211
75	0.8165	0.7500	0.7226	0.7089	0.7009	0.6958	0.6922	0.6896
74	0.7904	0.7200	0.6921	0.6781	0.6701	0.6649	0.6613	0.6587
73	0.7636	0.6900	0.6617	0.6477	0.6396	0.6344	0.6308	0.6282
72	0.7360	0.6600	0.6316	0.6176	0.6095	0.6044	0.6008	0.5982
71	0.7077	0.6300	0.6016	0.5878	0.5798	0.5747	0.5712	0.5686
70	0.6787	0.6000	0.5719	0.5582	0.5504	0.5454	0.5419	0.5394
69	0.6490	0.5700	0.5423	0.5290	0.5213	0.5164	0.5130	0.5105
68	0.6187	0.5400	0.5129	0.4999	0.4924	0.4877	0.4844	0.4820
67	0.5878	0.5100	0.4836	0.4710	0.4638	0.4592	0.4560	0.4537
66	0.5563	0.4800	0.4545	0.4424	0.4355	0.4310	0.4280	0.4257
65	0.5242	0.4500	0.4255	0.4139	0.4073	0.4030	0.4001	0.3980
64	0.4916	0.4200	0.3967	0.3856	0.3793	0.3753	0.3725	0.3705
63	0.4586	0.3900	0.3679	0.3575	0.3515	0.3477	0.3451	0.3432
62	0.4251	0.3600	0.3392	0.3295	0.3239	0.3203	0.3179	0.3161
61	0.3911	0.3300	0.3107	0.3016	0.2964	0.2931	0.2908	0.2892
60	0.3568	0.3000	0.2822	0.2738	0.2691	0.2660	0.2639	0.2624
59	0.3222	0.2700	0.2537	0.2461	0.2418	0.2391	0.2372	0.2358
58	0.2872	0.2400	0.2254	0.2186	0.2147	0.2122	0.2105	0.2093
57	0.2519	0.2100	0.1971	0.1911	0.1877	0.1855	0.1840	0.1829
56	0.2164	0.1800	0.1688	0.1636	0.1607	0.1588	0.1575	0.1566
55	0.1806	0.1500	0.1406	0.1363	0.1338	0.1322	0.1312	0.1304
54	0.1447	0.1200	0.1125	0.1090	0.1070	0.1057	0.1049	0.1042
53	0.1087	0.0900	0.0843	0.0817	0.0802	0.0793	0.0786	0.0781
52	0.0725	0.0600	0.0562	0.0544	0.0534	0.0528	0.0524	0.0521
51	0.0363	0.0300	0.0281	0.0272	0.0267	0.0264	0.0262	0.0260
50	0.0000	0.0000	0.0000	0.0000	0.0000	0.0000	0.0000	0.0000

Percent Within Limits (P _L and P _U)	Negative Values of Q (Q _L and Q _U)							
	n=3	n=4	n=5	n=6	n=7	n=8	n=9	n=10
49	-0.0363	-0.0300	-0.0281	-0.0272	-0.0267	-0.0264	-0.0262	-0.0260
48	-0.0725	-0.0600	-0.0562	-0.0544	-0.0534	-0.0528	-0.0524	-0.0521
47	-0.1087	-0.0900	-0.0843	-0.0817	-0.0802	-0.0793	-0.0786	-0.0781
46	-0.1447	-0.1200	-0.1125	-0.1090	-0.1070	-0.1057	-0.1049	-0.1042
45	-0.1806	-0.1500	-0.1406	-0.1363	-0.1338	-0.1322	-0.1312	-0.1304
44	-0.2164	-0.1800	-0.1688	-0.1636	-0.1607	-0.1588	-0.1575	-0.1566
43	-0.2519	-0.2100	-0.1971	-0.1911	-0.1877	-0.1855	-0.1840	-0.1829
42	-0.2872	-0.2400	-0.2254	-0.2186	-0.2147	-0.2122	-0.2105	-0.2093
41	-0.3222	-0.2700	-0.2537	-0.2461	-0.2418	-0.2391	-0.2372	-0.2358
40	-0.3568	-0.3000	-0.2822	-0.2738	-0.2691	-0.2660	-0.2639	-0.2624
39	-0.3911	-0.3300	-0.3107	-0.3016	-0.2964	-0.2931	-0.2908	-0.2892
38	-0.4251	-0.3600	-0.3392	-0.3295	-0.3239	-0.3203	-0.3179	-0.3161
37	-0.4586	-0.3900	-0.3679	-0.3575	-0.3515	-0.3477	-0.3451	-0.3432
36	-0.4916	-0.4200	-0.3967	-0.3856	-0.3793	-0.3753	-0.3725	-0.3705
35	-0.5242	-0.4500	-0.4255	-0.4139	-0.4073	-0.4030	-0.4001	-0.3980
34	-0.5563	-0.4800	-0.4545	-0.4424	-0.4355	-0.4310	-0.4280	-0.4257
33	-0.5878	-0.5100	-0.4836	-0.4710	-0.4638	-0.4592	-0.4560	-0.4537
32	-0.6187	-0.5400	-0.5129	-0.4999	-0.4924	-0.4877	-0.4844	-0.4820
31	-0.6490	-0.5700	-0.5423	-0.5290	-0.5213	-0.5164	-0.5130	-0.5105
30	-0.6787	-0.6000	-0.5719	-0.5582	-0.5504	-0.5454	-0.5419	-0.5394
29	-0.7077	-0.6300	-0.6016	-0.5878	-0.5798	-0.5747	-0.5712	-0.5686
28	-0.7360	-0.6600	-0.6316	-0.6176	-0.6095	-0.6044	-0.6008	-0.5982
27	-0.7636	-0.6900	-0.6617	-0.6477	-0.6396	-0.6344	-0.6308	-0.6282
26	-0.7904	-0.7200	-0.6921	-0.6781	-0.6701	-0.6649	-0.6613	-0.6587
25	-0.8165	-0.7500	-0.7226	-0.7089	-0.7009	-0.6958	-0.6922	-0.6896
24	-0.8417	-0.7800	-0.7535	-0.7401	-0.7322	-0.7271	-0.7236	-0.7211
23	-0.8662	-0.8100	-0.7846	-0.7716	-0.7640	-0.7590	-0.7556	-0.7531
22	-0.8897	-0.8400	-0.8160	-0.8036	-0.7962	-0.7915	-0.7882	-0.7858
21	-0.9124	-0.8700	-0.8478	-0.8360	-0.8291	-0.8245	-0.8214	-0.8192
20	-0.9342	-0.9000	-0.8799	-0.8690	-0.8625	-0.8583	-0.8554	-0.8533
19	-0.9550	-0.9300	-0.9123	-0.9025	-0.8966	-0.8928	-0.8901	-0.8882
18	-0.9749	-0.9600	-0.9452	-0.9367	-0.9315	-0.9281	-0.9258	-0.9241
17	-0.9939	-0.9900	-0.9785	-0.9715	-0.9671	-0.9643	-0.9624	-0.9610
16	-1.0119	-1.0200	-1.0124	-1.0071	-1.0037	-1.0015	-1.0000	-0.9990
15	-1.0288	-1.0500	-1.0467	-1.0435	-1.0413	-1.0399	-1.0389	-1.0382
14	-1.0448	-1.0800	-1.0817	-1.0808	-1.0800	-1.0794	-1.0791	-1.0789
13	-1.0597	-1.1100	-1.1173	-1.1192	-1.1199	-1.1204	-1.1208	-1.1212
12	-1.0736	-1.1400	-1.1537	-1.1587	-1.1613	-1.1630	-1.1643	-1.1653
11	-1.0864	-1.1700	-1.1909	-1.1995	-1.2043	-1.2075	-1.2098	-1.2115
10	-1.0982	-1.2000	-1.2290	-1.2419	-1.2492	-1.2541	-1.2576	-1.2602
9	-1.1089	-1.2300	-1.2683	-1.2860	-1.2964	-1.3032	-1.3081	-1.3118
8	-1.1184	-1.2600	-1.3088	-1.3323	-1.3461	-1.3554	-1.3620	-1.3670
7	-1.1269	-1.2900	-1.3508	-1.3810	-1.3991	-1.4112	-1.4199	-1.4265
6	-1.1342	-1.3200	-1.3946	-1.4329	-1.4561	-1.4717	-1.4829	-1.4914
5	-1.1405	-1.3500	-1.4407	-1.4887	-1.5181	-1.5381	-1.5525	-1.5635
4	-1.1456	-1.3800	-1.4897	-1.5497	-1.5871	-1.6127	-1.6313	-1.6454
3	-1.1496	-1.4100	-1.5427	-1.6181	-1.6661	-1.6993	-1.7235	-1.7420
2	-1.1524	-1.4400	-1.6016	-1.6982	-1.7612	-1.8053	-1.8379	-1.8630
1	-1.1541	-1.4700	-1.6714	-1.8008	-1.8888	-1.9520	-1.9994	-2.0362

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM International (ASTM)

ASTM E178 Standard Practice for Dealing with Outlying Observations

END OF ITEM C-110

Page Intentionally Blank

Part 3 – Sitework

Item P-101 Preparation/Removal of Existing Pavements

The Engineer may add or edit this item as necessary to address project requirements.

Coordinate modifications in accordance with Order 5300.1.

DESCRIPTION

101-1 This item shall consist of preparation of existing pavement surfaces for overlay, surface treatments, removal of existing pavement, and other miscellaneous items. The work shall be accomplished in accordance with these specifications and the applicable plans.

EQUIPMENT AND MATERIALS

101-2 All equipment and materials shall be specified here and in the following paragraphs or approved by the Resident Project Representative (RPR). The equipment shall not cause damage to the pavement to remain in place.

CONSTRUCTION

101-3.1 Removal of existing pavement.

The Contractor's removal operation shall be controlled to not damage adjacent pavement structure, and base material, cables, utility ducts, pipelines, or drainage structures which are to remain under the pavement.

a. Concrete pavement removal. Full depth saw cuts shall be made perpendicular to the slab surface. The Contractor shall saw through the full depth of the slab including any dowels at the joint, removing the pavement and installing new dowels as shown on the plans and per the specifications. Where the perimeter of the removal limits is not located on the joint and there are no dowels present, the perimeter shall be saw cut the full depth of the pavement. The pavement inside the saw cut shall be removed by methods which will not cause distress in the pavement which is to remain in place. If the material is to be wasted on the airport site, it shall be reduced to a maximum size of [____]. Concrete slabs that are damaged by under breaking shall be repaired or removed and replaced as directed by the RPR.

The edge of existing concrete pavement against which new pavement abuts shall be protected from damage at all times. Spall and underbreak repair shall be in accordance with the plans. Any underlying material that is to remain in place, shall be recompact and/or replaced as shown on the plans. Adjacent areas damaged during repair shall be repaired or replaced at the Contractor's expense.

Indicate repair details for spalls, underbreaks, and remaining underlaying materials on the plans.

Select the maximum size for materials wasted on the airport site.

b. Asphalt pavement removal. Asphalt pavement to be removed shall be cut to the full depth of the asphalt pavement around the perimeter of the area to be removed. If the material is to be [wasted on the airport site] [incorporated into embankment], it shall be [broken to a maximum size of [] inches (mm)]. [meet the following gradation: []].

The pavement shall be removed so the joint for each layer of pavement replacement is offset 1 foot (30 cm) from the joint in the preceding layer. This does not apply if the removed pavement is to be replaced with concrete or soil.

The Engineer shall designate the maximum size or insert the gradation required.

c. Repair or removal of Base, Subbase, and/or Subgrade. All failed material including surface, base course, subbase course, and subgrade shall be removed and repaired as shown on the plans or as directed by the RPR. Materials and methods of construction shall comply with the applicable sections of these specifications. Any damage caused by Contractor's removal process shall be repaired at the Contractor's expense.

101-3.2 Preparation of joints and cracks prior to overlay/surface treatment. Remove all vegetation and debris from cracks to a minimum depth of 1 inch (25 mm). If extensive vegetation exists, treat the specific area with a concentrated solution of a water-based herbicide approved by the RPR. Fill all cracks greater than 1/4 inch (6 mm) wide) with a crack sealant [per ASTM D6690]. The crack sealant, preparation, and application shall be compatible with the surface treatment/overlay to be used. To minimize contamination of the asphalt with the crack sealant, underfill the crack sealant a minimum of 1/8 inch (3 mm), not to exceed 1/4 inch (6 mm). Any excess joint or crack sealer shall be removed from the pavement surface.

[Wider cracks (over 1-1/2 inch wide (38 mm)), along with soft or sunken spots, indicate that the pavement or the pavement base should be repaired or replaced as stated below.

Cracks and joints may be filled with a mixture of emulsified asphalt and aggregate. The aggregate shall consist of limestone, volcanic ash, sand, or other material that will cure to form a hard substance. The combined gradation shall be as shown in the following table.

Gradation

Sieve Size	Percent Passing
No. 4 (4.75 mm)	100
No. 8 (2.36 mm)	90-100
No. 16 (1.18 mm)	65-90
No. 30 (600 µm)	40-60
No. 50 (300 µm)	25-42
No. 100 (150 µm)	15-30
No. 200 (75 µm)	10-20

Up to 3% cement can be added to accelerate the set time. The mixture shall not contain more than 20% natural sand without approval in writing from the RPR.

The proportions of asphalt emulsion and aggregate shall be determined in the field and may be varied to facilitate construction requirements. Normally, these proportions will be approximately one part asphalt emulsion to five parts aggregate by volume. The material shall be poured or placed into the joints or cracks and compacted to form a voidless mass. The joint or crack shall be filled to within +0 to -1/8 inches (+0 to -3 mm) of the surface. Any material spilled outside the width of the joint shall be removed from the pavement surface prior to constructing the overlay. Where concrete overlays are to be constructed, only the excess joint material on the pavement surface and vegetation in the joints need to be removed.]

Then Engineer may also include the option for the emulsified asphalt and aggregate and allow the Contractor to use either option.

Guidance on crack repair materials and procedures is available in advisory circular (AC) 150/5380-6, Guidelines and Procedures for Maintenance of Airport Pavements.

101-3.3 Removal of Foreign Substances/contaminates prior to [overlay][seal-coat][remarking]. Removal of foreign substances/contaminates from existing pavement that will affect the bond of the new treatment shall consist of removal of rubber, fuel spills, oil, crack sealer, at least 90% of paint, and other foreign substances from the surface of the pavement. Areas that require removal are designated on the plans and as directed by the RPR in the field during construction.

[Chemicals][high-pressure water][heater scarifier (asphaltic concrete only)][cold milling][rotary grinding][sandblasting] may be used. If chemicals are used, they shall comply with the state's environmental protection regulations. Removal methods used shall not cause major damage to the pavement, or to any structure or utility within or adjacent to the work area. Major damage is defined as changing the properties of the pavement, removal of asphalt causing the aggregate to ravel, or removing pavement over 1/8 inch (3 mm) deep. If it is deemed by the RPR that damage to the existing pavement is caused by operational error,

such as permitting the application method to dwell in one location for too long, the Contractor shall repair the damaged area without compensation and as directed by the RPR.

Removal of foreign substances shall not proceed until approved by the RPR. Water used for high-pressure water equipment shall be provided by the Contractor at the Contractor's expense. No material shall be deposited on the pavement shoulders. All wastes shall be disposed of in areas indicated in this specification or shown on the plans.

Designate the areas and methods for removal of foreign substances/contaminates on the project plans.

Select the method of paint and rubber removal and designate where the wastes will be disposed.

This specification shall not be used for removal of rubber deposits to improve skid resistance or obliterate traffic markings where a new overlay is not constructed.

Refer to AC 150/5320-12, Measurement, Construction, and Maintenance of Skid-Resistant Airport Pavement Surfaces, for guidance on removing contaminants.

101-3.4 Concrete spall or failed asphaltic concrete pavement repair.

a. Repair of concrete spalls in areas to be overlaid with asphalt. The Contractor shall repair all spalled concrete as shown on the plans or as directed by the RPR. The perimeter of the repair shall be saw cut a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) outside the affected area and 2 inches (50 mm) deep. The deteriorated material shall be removed to a depth where the existing material is firm or cannot be easily removed with a geologist pick. The removed area shall be filled with asphalt mixture with aggregate sized appropriately for the depth of the patch. The material shall be compacted with equipment approved by the RPR until the material is dense and no movement or marks are visible. The material shall not be placed in lifts over 4 inches (100 mm) in depth. This method of repair applies only to pavement to be overlaid.

Asphalt mix pavement repair of concrete pavement should only be allowed to depths less than 1/3 of the PCC pavement thickness.

b. Asphalt pavement repair. The Contractor shall repair all spalled concrete as shown on the plans or as directed by the RPR. The failed areas shall be removed as specified in paragraph 101-3.1b. All failed material including surface, base course, subbase course, and subgrade shall be removed. Materials and methods of construction shall comply with the applicable sections of these specifications.

Designate the areas and methods for asphalt pavement repair on the project plans.

101-3.5 Cold milling. Milling shall be performed with a power-operated milling machine or grinder, capable of producing a uniform finished surface. The milling machine or grinder shall operate without tearing or gouging the underlying surface. The milling machine or grinder shall be equipped with grade and slope controls, and a positive means of dust control. All millings shall be removed and disposed

[off Airport property] [in areas designated on the plans]. If the Contractor mills or grinds deeper or wider than the plans specify, the Contractor shall replace the material removed with new material at the Contractor's Expense.

The Engineer must consider the overall weight of milling equipment proposed by the Contractor to ensure there is no damage to the existing pavements and pavement remaining after milling due to the weight of the equipment.

Sufficient information must be obtained to determine available pavement structure and prior construction lift thickness. The limits of milling must consider leaving or taking sufficient material to minimize the potential for delamination or the entire layer may require removal or consider full depth reclamation in lieu of cold milling. Delamination potential exist anytime cold milling depth is approximately equal to the layer placed.

a. Patching. The milling machine shall be capable of cutting a vertical edge without chipping or spalling the edges of the remaining pavement and it shall have a positive method of controlling the depth of cut. The RPR shall layout the area to be milled with a straightedge in increments of 1-foot (30 cm) widths. The area to be milled shall cover only the failed area. Any excessive area that is milled because the Contractor doesn't have the appropriate milling machine, or areas that are damaged because of his negligence, shall be repaired by the Contractor at the Contractor's Expense.

b. Profiling, grade correction, or surface correction. The milling machine shall have a minimum width of [7] feet ([2] m) and it shall be equipped with electronic grade control devices that will cut the surface to the grade specified. The tolerances shall be maintained within +0 inch and -1/4 inch (+0 mm and -6mm) of the specified grade. The machine must cut vertical edges and have a positive method of dust control. The machine must have the ability to [windrow the millings or cuttings] [remove the millings or cuttings from the pavement and load them into a truck]. All millings shall be removed and disposed of [off the airport] [in areas designated on the plans].

c. Clean-up. The Contractor shall sweep the milled surface daily and immediately after the milling until all residual materials are removed from the pavement surface. Prior to paving, the Contractor shall wet down the milled pavement and thoroughly sweep and/or blow the surface to remove loose residual material. Waste materials shall be collected and removed from the pavement surface and adjacent areas by sweeping or vacuuming. Waste materials shall be removed and disposed [off Airport property] [in areas designated on the plans].

101-3.6. Preparation of asphalt pavement surfaces prior to surface treatment. Existing asphalt pavements to be treated with a surface treatment shall be prepared as follows:

a. Patch asphalt pavement surfaces that have been softened by petroleum derivatives or have failed due to any other cause. Remove damaged pavement to the full depth of the damage and replace with new asphalt pavement similar to that of the existing pavement in accordance with paragraph 101-3.4b.

b. Repair joints and cracks in accordance with paragraph 101-3.2.

c. Remove oil or grease that has not penetrated the asphalt pavement by scrubbing with a detergent and washing thoroughly with clean water. After cleaning, treat these areas with an oil spot primer. []

Provide primer requirements if required.

d. Clean pavement surface immediately prior to placing the surface treatment so that it is free of dust, dirt, grease, vegetation, oil or any type of objectionable surface film.

101-3.7 Maintenance. The Contractor shall perform all maintenance work necessary to keep the pavement in a satisfactory condition until the full section is complete and accepted by the RPR. The surface shall be kept clean and free from foreign material. The pavement shall be properly drained at all times. If cleaning is necessary or if the pavement becomes disturbed, any work repairs necessary shall be performed at the Contractor's expense.

101-3.8 Preparation of Joints in Rigid Pavement prior to resealing. Prior to application of sealant material, clean and dry the joints of all scale, dirt, dust, old sealant, curing compound, moisture and other foreign matter. The Contractor shall demonstrate, in the presence of the RPR, that the method used cleans the joint and does not damage the joint.

101-3.8.1 Removal of Existing Joint Sealant. All existing joint sealants will be removed by plowing or use of hand tools. Any remaining sealant and or debris will be removed by use of wire brushes or other tools as necessary. Resaw joints removing no more than 1/16 inch (2 mm) from each joint face. Immediately after sawing, flush out joint with water and other tools as necessary to completely remove the slurry.

101-3.8.2 Cleaning prior to sealing. Immediately before sealing, joints shall be cleaned by removing any remaining laitance and other foreign material. Allow sufficient time to dry out joints prior to sealing. Joint surfaces will be surface-dry prior to installation of sealant.

101-3.8.3 Joint sealant. Joint material and installation will be in accordance with [Item P-605] [Item P-604].

101-3.9 Preparation of Cracks in Flexible Pavement prior to sealing. Prior to application of sealant material, clean and dry the joints of all scale, dirt, dust, old sealant, curing compound, moisture and other foreign matter. The Contractor shall demonstrate, in the presence of the RPR, that the method used cleans the cracks and does not damage the pavement.

101-3.9.1 Preparation of Crack. Widen crack with [router] [random crack saw] by removing a minimum of 1/16 inch (2 mm) from each side of crack. Immediately before sealing, cracks will be blown out with a hot air lance combined with oil and water-free compressed air.

101-3.9.2 Removal of Existing Crack Sealant. Existing sealants will be removed by [routing] [random crack saw]. Following [routing] [sawing] any remaining debris will be removed by use of a hot lance combined with oil and water-free compressed air.

101-3.9.3 Crack Sealant. Crack sealant material and installation will be in accordance with [Item P-605].

101-3.9.4 Removal of Pipe and other Buried Structures.

a. **Removal of Existing Pipe Material.** [Remove the types of pipe as indicated on the plans. The pipe material shall be legally disposed of off-site in a timely manner following removal. Trenches shall be backfilled with material equal to or better in quality than adjacent embankment. Trenches under paved areas must be compacted to [95%] of ASTM [D1557] [D698]. [Not used.]]

b. Removal of Inlets/Manholes. [Where indicated on the plans or as directed by the RPR, inlets and/or manholes shall be removed and legally disposed of off-site in a timely fashion after removal. Excavations after removal shall be backfilled with material equal or better in quality than adjacent embankment. When under paved areas must be compacted to [95%] of ASTM [D1557] [D698], when outside of paved areas must be compacted to [95%] of ASTM D698. [Not used.]]

c. Removal of [].

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

[101-4.1 Lump sum. No separate measurement for payment will be made. The work covered by this section shall be considered as a subsidiary obligation of the Contractor and covered under the other contract items.]

[101-4.1 Pavement removal. The unit of measurement for pavement removal shall be the number of square yards (square meters) removed by the Contractor. Any pavement removed outside the limits of removal because the pavement was damaged by negligence on the part of the Contractor shall not be included in the measurement for payment. No direct measurement or payment shall be made for saw cutting. Saw cutting shall be incidental to pavement removal. Dowel bar installation shall be incidental to pavement removal.

101-4.2 Joint and crack repair. The unit of measurement for joint and crack repair shall be the linear foot (meter) of joint.

101-4.3 Removal of Foreign Substances/contaminates. The unit of measurement for foreign Substances/contaminates removal shall be the square foot (meter).

101-4.4 Spalled and failed asphalt pavement repair. The unit of measure for failed asphalt pavement repair shall be square foot (square meter).

101-4.5 Concrete Spall Repair. The unit of measure for concrete spall repair shall be the number of square feet (square meter). The location and average depth of the patch shall be determined and agreed upon by the RPR and the Contractor.

101-4.6 Cold milling. The unit of measure for cold milling shall be [] inches of milling per square yard (square meter). The location and average depth of the cold milling shall be as shown on the plans. If the initial cut does not correct the condition, the Contractor shall re-mill the area and will be paid for the total depth of milling.]

101-4.7 Removal of Pipe and other Buried Structures. [Not require.] [The unit of measurement for removal of pipe and other buried structures will be [lump sum. No separate measurement for payment will be made. The work covered by this section shall be considered as a subsidiary obligation of the Contractor and covered under the other contract items.] [made at the contract unit price for each completed and

accepted item. This price shall be full compensation for all labor, equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete this item in accordance with paragraph 101-3.9.4.]]

The Engineer shall select the applicable items above for each project and delete the others. Items such as cold milling may be specified multiple times.

BASIS OF PAYMENT

101-5.1 Payment. Payment shall be made at contract unit price for the unit of measurement as specified above. This price shall be full compensation for furnishing all materials and for all preparation, hauling, and placing of the material and for all labor, equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete this item.

[Item P 101-5.1 Pavement Removal - [Lump sum] [per square yard
(square meter)]

Item P 101-5.2 Joint and Crack Repair - per linear foot (meter)

Item P 101-5.3 Removal of Foreign Substances/contaminates - per
square foot (square meter)

Item P-101-5.4 Spalled and Failed Asphalt Pavement Repair - per
square foot (square meter)

Item P-101-5.5 Concrete Spall Repair - per square foot (square
meter)

Item P-101-5.6 Cold Milling-per square yard (square meter)]

Item P-101-5.7 Removal of Pipe and other Buried Structures - [Lump sum]
[per each] [Not required.]

The Engineer shall coordinate paragraphs 101-4.1 and 101-5.1 for each project.

For a lump sum contract, replace paragraph 101-5.1 Payment with the following:

101-5.1 Payment. The work covered by this section shall be considered as a subsidiary obligation of the Contractor covered under the other contract items. No separate payment will be made. This shall be full compensation for furnishing all materials and for all preparation, hauling, and placing of the material and for all labor, equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete this item.

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

Advisory Circulars (AC)

AC 150/5380-6

Guidelines and Procedures for Maintenance of Airport Pavements.

ASTM International (ASTM)

ASTM D6690

Standard Specification for Joint and Crack Sealants, Hot Applied, for Concrete and Asphalt Pavements

END OF ITEM P-101

Page Intentionally Blank

Item P-151 Clearing and Grubbing

The Engineer may add or edit this item as necessary to address project requirements.

Coordinate modifications in accordance with Order 5300.1.

DESCRIPTION

151-1.1 This item shall consist of clearing or clearing and grubbing, including the disposal of materials, for all areas within the limits designated on the plans or as required by the Resident Project Representative (RPR).

a. Clearing shall consist of the cutting and removal of all trees, stumps, brush, logs, hedges, the removal of fences and other loose or projecting material from the designated areas. The grubbing of stumps and roots will not be required.

b. Clearing and grubbing shall consist of clearing the surface of the ground of the designated areas of all trees, stumps, down timber, logs, snags, brush, undergrowth, hedges, heavy growth of grass or weeds, fences, structures, debris, and rubbish of any nature, natural obstructions or such material which in the opinion of the RPR is unsuitable for the foundation of strips, pavements, or other required structures, including the grubbing of stumps, roots, matted roots, foundations, and the disposal from the project of all spoil materials resulting from clearing and grubbing.

c. Tree Removal. Tree Removal shall consist of the cutting and removal of isolated single trees or isolated groups of trees, and the grubbing of stumps and roots. The removal of all the trees of this classification shall be in accordance with the requirements for the particular area being cleared.

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

151-2.1 General. The areas denoted on the plans to be [cleared] [cleared and grubbed] shall be staked on the ground by the [RPR] [Contractor as indicated on the plans].

The removal of existing structures and utilities required to permit orderly progress of work shall be accomplished by local agencies, unless otherwise shown on the plans. Whenever a telephone pole, pipeline, conduit, sewer, roadway, or other utility is encountered and must be removed or relocated, the Contractor shall advise the RPR who will notify the proper local authority or owner to secure prompt action.

151-2.1.1 Disposal. All materials removed by clearing or by clearing and grubbing shall be disposed of [in the designated waste disposal area] [outside the Airport's limits at the Contractor's responsibility] [by burning], except when otherwise directed by the RPR. [When burning of material is permitted, it shall be burned under the constant overseeing of a watchman to assure the

surrounding vegetation and other adjacent property is not jeopardized. Burning shall be done in accordance with all applicable federal, state and local laws, ordinances, and regulations. The Contractor shall notify the agency having jurisdiction and obtain all approvals in writing before starting any burning operations.] As far as practicable, waste concrete and masonry shall be placed on slopes of embankments or channels. When embankments are constructed of such material, this material shall be placed in accordance with requirements for formation of embankments. Any broken concrete or masonry that cannot be used in construction and all other materials not considered suitable for use elsewhere, shall be disposed of by the Contractor. In no case, shall any discarded materials be left in windrows or piles adjacent to or within the airport limits. The manner and location of disposal of materials shall be subject to the approval of the RPR and shall not create an unsightly or objectionable view. When the Contractor is required to locate a disposal area outside the airport property limits, the Contractor shall obtain and file with the RPR permission in writing from the property owner for the use of private property for this purpose.

151-2.1.2 Blasting. [Blasting shall not be allowed.] [Blasting and explosive storage shall be in accordance with Section 70, paragraph 70-09 and all federal, state, and local safety regulations. Submit notice 15 days prior to starting work. Submit a Blasting Plan, prepared and sealed by a registered professional Engineer, that includes calculations for overpressure and debris hazard. Obtain written approval prior to performing any blasting and notify the RPR 24 hours prior to blasting. Include provisions for storing, handling and transporting explosives as well as for the blasting operations in the plan. The Contractor is responsible for damage caused by blasting operations.]

151-2.2 Clearing. The Contractor shall clear the staked or indicated area of all materials as indicated on the plans. Trees unavoidably falling outside the specified clearing limits must be cut up, removed, and disposed of in a satisfactory manner. To minimize damage to trees that are to be left standing, trees shall be felled toward the center of the area being cleared. The Contractor shall preserve and protect from injury all trees not to be removed. The trees, stumps, and brush shall be cut flush with the original ground surface. The grubbing of stumps and roots will not be required.

Fences shall be removed and disposed of as directed by the RPR. Fence wire shall be neatly rolled and the wire and posts stored on the airport if they are to be used again, or stored at a location designated by the RPR if the fence is to remain the property of a local owner or authority.

151-2.3 Clearing and grubbing. In areas designated to be cleared and grubbed, all stumps, roots, buried logs, brush, grass, and other unsatisfactory materials as indicated on the plans, shall be removed, except where embankments exceeding 3-1/2 feet (105 cm) in depth will be constructed outside of paved areas. For embankments constructed outside of paved areas, all unsatisfactory materials shall be removed, but sound trees, stumps, and brush can be cut off flush with the original ground and allowed to remain. Tap roots and other projections over 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) in diameter shall be grubbed out to a depth of at least 18 inches (0.5 m) below the finished subgrade or slope elevation.

Any buildings and miscellaneous structures that are shown on the plans to be removed shall be demolished or removed, and all materials shall be disposed of by removal from the site. The cost of removal is incidental to this item. The remaining or existing foundations, wells, cesspools, and like structures shall be destroyed by breaking down the materials of which the foundations, wells, cesspools, etc., are built to a depth at least 2 feet (60 cm) below the existing surrounding ground. Any broken concrete, blocks, or other objectionable material that cannot be used in backfill shall be removed and

disposed of at the Contractor's expense. The holes or openings shall be backfilled with acceptable material and properly compacted.

All holes in embankment areas remaining after the grubbing operation shall have the sides of the holes flattened to facilitate filling with acceptable material and compacting as required in Item P-152. The same procedure shall be applied to all holes remaining after grubbing in areas where the depth of holes exceeds the depth of the proposed excavation.

Indicate extent of grading required after clearing, or clearing and grubbing, on the plans including any required surface tolerances.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

151-3.1 The quantities of clearing as shown by the limits on the plans shall be [the number of acres (square meters) or fractions thereof,][per lump sum] of land specifically cleared.

151-3.2 The quantities of clearing and grubbing as shown by the limits on the plans shall be [the number of acres (square meters) or fractions thereof][per lump sum] of land specifically cleared and grubbed.

151-3.3 The quantity of tree removal as shown on the plans shall be the [number of individual trees][number of acres (square meters) or fractions thereof][per lump sum] of land specifically cleared.

BASIS OF PAYMENT

151-4.1 Payment shall be made at the contract unit price [per acre (square meter) or fractions thereof][per lump sum] for clearing. This price shall be full compensation for furnishing all materials and for all labor, equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete the item.

151-4.2 Payment shall be made at the contract unit price [per acre (square meter)][per lump sum] for clearing and grubbing. This price shall be full compensation for furnishing all materials and for all labor, equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete the item.

151-4.3 Payment shall be made at the contract unit price [per number of individual trees][per acre (square meter)][per lump sum] for tree removal. This price shall be full compensation for furnishing all materials and for all labor, equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete the item.

Payment will be made under:

Item P-151-4.1	Clearing – [per acre (square meter) or fractions thereof][per lump sum]
Item P-151-4.2	Clearing and grubbing - [per acre (square meter) or fractions thereof][per lump sum]

Item P-152-4.3 Tree Removal – [per number of individual trees]
[per acre (square meter) or fractions thereof]
[per lump sum]

END OF ITEM P-151

Item P-152 Excavation, Subgrade, and Embankment

Some projects may require use of local materials or methods not included in this item and subsurface investigations by the geotechnical engineer may require additions or edits of this item to address specific project requirements. When adding local materials or methods include item description, construction method, method of measurement, and basis of payment. Typical items may include, but are not limited to, additional classifications of materials, such as shot or quarried rock; blasting techniques and requirements; specialized types of excavation; or use of local materials or methods identified during project design such as dewatering.

Coordinate modifications in accordance with Order 5300.1.

DESCRIPTION

152-1.1 This item covers excavation, disposal, placement, and compaction of all materials within the limits of the work required to construct safety areas, runways, taxiways, aprons, and intermediate areas as well as other areas for drainage, building construction, parking, or other purposes in accordance with these specifications and in conformity to the dimensions and typical sections shown on the plans.

152-1.2 Classification. All material excavated shall be classified as defined below:

a. Unclassified excavation. Unclassified excavation shall consist of the excavation and disposal of all material, regardless of its nature [which is not otherwise classified and paid for under one of the following items].

[b. []]

[**Rock excavation.** Rock excavation shall include all solid rock in ledges, in bedded deposits, in unstratified masses, and conglomerate deposits which are so firmly cemented they cannot be removed without blasting or using rippers. All boulders containing a volume of more than 1/2 cubic yard (0.4 m³) will be classified as "rock excavation."]

[**Muck excavation.** Muck excavation shall consist of the removal and disposal of deposits or mixtures of soils and organic matter not suitable for foundation material. Muck shall include materials that will decay or produce subsidence in the embankment. It may consist of decaying stumps, roots, logs, humus, or other material not satisfactory for incorporation in the embankment.]

[**Drainage excavation.** Drainage excavation shall consist of all excavation made for the primary purpose of drainage and includes drainage ditches, such as intercepting, inlet or outlet ditches; temporary levee construction; or any other type as shown on the plans.]

[**Borrow excavation.** Borrow excavation shall consist of approved material required for the construction of embankments or for other portions of the work in excess of the quantity of usable material available from required excavations. Borrow material shall be obtained from areas designated by the Resident Project Representative (RPR) within the limits of the airport property but outside the normal limits of necessary grading, or from areas outside the airport boundaries.]

[**Other.**]]

All material excavated shall be considered “unclassified” unless the Engineer specifies other classifications in the project specifications.

Add or delete the classifications not applicable for the project.

152-1.3 Unsuitable excavation. Unsuitable material shall be disposed in designated waste areas as shown on the plans. Materials containing vegetable or organic matter, such as muck, peat, organic silt, or sod shall be considered unsuitable for use in embankment construction. Material suitable for topsoil may be used on the embankment slope when approved by the RPR.

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

152-2.1 General. Before beginning excavation, grading, and embankment operations in any area, the area shall be cleared or cleared and grubbed in accordance with Item P-151.

The suitability of material to be placed in embankments shall be subject to approval by the RPR. All unsuitable material shall be disposed of in waste areas as shown on the plans. All waste areas shall be graded to allow positive drainage of the area and adjacent areas. The surface elevation of waste areas shall be specified on the plans or approved by the RPR.

When the Contractor’s excavating operations encounter artifacts of historical or archaeological significance, the operations shall be temporarily discontinued and the RPR notified per Section 70, paragraph 70-20. At the direction of the RPR, the Contractor shall excavate the site in such a manner as to preserve the artifacts encountered and allow for their removal. Such excavation will be paid for as extra work.

Areas outside the limits of the pavement areas where the top layer of soil has become compacted by hauling or other Contractor activities shall be scarified and disked to a depth of 4 inches (100 mm), to loosen and pulverize the soil. Stones or rock fragments larger than 4 inches (100 mm) in their greatest dimension will not be permitted in the top 6 inches (150 mm) of the subgrade.

If it is necessary to interrupt existing surface drainage, sewers or under-drainage, conduits, utilities, or similar underground structures, the Contractor shall be responsible for and shall take all necessary precautions to preserve them or provide temporary services. When such facilities are encountered, the Contractor shall notify the RPR, who shall arrange for their removal if necessary. The Contractor, at their own expense, shall satisfactorily repair or pay the cost of all damage to such facilities or structures that may result from any of the Contractor’s operations during the period of the contract.

a. Blasting. [Blasting shall not be allowed.] [Blasting will be permitted as directed by the RPR and in accordance with the following:

Blasting will be permitted only when proper precautions are taken for the safety of all persons, work, and property. All damage done to the work or property shall be repaired by the Contractor. The cost of repair is incidental to this item. All operations of the Contractor in connection with the transportation, storage, and use of explosives shall conform to all federal, state and local regulations and explosive manufacturers' instructions, with applicable approved permits reviewed by the RPR. Any approval will not relieve the Contractor of their responsibility in blasting operations.

Where blasting is approved, the Contractor shall employ a vibration consultant, approved by the RPR, to advise on explosive charge weights per delay and to analyze records from seismograph recordings. The seismograph shall be capable of producing a permanent record of the three components of the motion in terms of particle velocity, and in addition shall be capable of internal dynamic calibration.

In each distinct blasting area, where pertinent factors affecting blast vibrations and their effects in the area remain the same, the Contractor shall submit a blasting plan of the initial blasts to the RPR for approval. This plan must consist of hole size, depth, spacing, burden, type of explosives, type of delay sequence, maximum amount of explosive on any one delay period, depth of rock, and depth of overburden if any. The maximum explosive charge weights per delay included in the plan shall not be increased without the approval of the RPR.

The Contractor shall keep a record of each blast: its date, time and location; the amount of explosives used, maximum explosive charge weight per delay period, and, where necessary, seismograph records identified by instrument number and location.

Blasting and explosive storage shall be in accordance with Section 70, paragraph 70-09 and all federal, state, and local safety regulations.

These records shall be made available to the RPR on a monthly basis or in tabulated form at other times as required.]

152-2.2 Excavation. No excavation shall be started until the work has been staked out by the Contractor and the RPR has obtained from the Contractor, the survey notes of the elevations and measurements of the ground surface. The Contractor and RPR shall agree that the original ground lines shown on the original topographic mapping are accurate, or agree to any adjustments made to the original ground lines.

[Digital terrain model (DTM) files of the existing surfaces, finished surfaces and other various surfaces were used to develop the design plans.

[Volumetric quantities were calculated by comparing DTM files of the applicable design surfaces and generating Triangle Volume Reports. Electronic copies of DTM files and a paper copy of the original topographic map will be issued to the successful bidder.]

[Volumetric quantities were calculated using design cross sections which were created for this project using the DTM files of the applicable design surfaces and generating End Area Volume Reports.

Paper copies of design cross sections and a paper copy of the original topographic map will be issued to the successful bidder.]

Existing grades on the design cross sections or DTM's, where they do not match the locations of actual spot elevations shown on the topographic map, were developed by computer interpolation from those spot elevations. Prior to disturbing original grade, Contractor shall verify the accuracy of the existing ground surface by verifying spot elevations at the same locations where original field survey data was obtained as indicated on the topographic map. Contractor shall recognize that, due to the interpolation process, the actual ground surface at any particular location may differ somewhat from the interpolated surface shown on the design cross sections or obtained from the DTM's. Contractor's verification of original ground surface, however, shall be limited to verification of spot elevations as indicated herein, and no adjustments will be made to the original ground surface unless the Contractor demonstrates that spot elevations shown are incorrect. For this purpose, spot elevations which are within [0.1 foot (30 mm)] of the stated elevations for ground surfaces, or within [0.04 foot (12 mm)] for hard surfaces (pavements, buildings, foundations, structures, etc.) shall be considered "no change". Only deviations in excess of these will be considered for adjustment of the original ground surface. If Contractor's verification identifies discrepancies in the topographic map, Contractor shall notify the RPR in writing at least [two weeks] before disturbance of existing grade to allow sufficient time to verify the submitted information and make adjustments to the design cross sections or DTM's. Disturbance of existing grade in any area shall constitute acceptance by the Contractor of the accuracy of the original elevations shown on the topographic map for that area.]

Delete bracketed DTM paragraphs if DTM not used.

All areas to be excavated shall be stripped of vegetation and topsoil. Topsoil shall be stockpiled for future use in areas designated on the plans or by the RPR. All suitable excavated material shall be used in the formation of embankment, subgrade, or other purposes as shown on the plans. All unsuitable material shall be disposed of as shown on the plans.

The grade shall be maintained so that the surface is well drained at all times.

When the volume of the excavation exceeds that required to construct the embankments to the grades as indicated on the plans, the excess shall be used to grade the areas of ultimate development or disposed as directed by the RPR. When the volume of excavation is not sufficient for constructing the embankments to the grades indicated, the deficiency shall be obtained from borrow areas.

During the design phase, perform subsurface investigations to identify existing subsurface conditions to minimize the potential for unforeseen conditions arising

during excavation such as the need for dewatering or removal of unsuitable materials.

a. Selective grading. When selective grading is indicated on the plans, the more suitable material designated by the RPR shall be used in constructing the embankment or in capping the pavement subgrade. If, at the time of excavation, it is not possible to place this material in its final location, it shall be stockpiled in approved areas until it can be placed. The more suitable material shall then be placed and compacted as specified. Selective grading shall be considered incidental to the work involved. The cost of stockpiling and placing the material shall be included in the various pay items of work involved.

b. Undercutting. Rock, shale, hardpan, loose rock, boulders, or other material unsatisfactory for safety areas, subgrades, roads, shoulders, or any areas intended for turf shall be excavated to a minimum depth of 12 inches (300 mm) below the subgrade or to the depth specified by the RPR. Muck, peat, matted roots, or other yielding material, unsatisfactory for subgrade foundation, shall be removed to the depth specified. Unsuitable materials shall be [disposed of at locations shown on the plans.] [disposed off the airport. The cost is incidental to this item.] This excavated material shall be paid for at the contract unit price per cubic yard (per cubic meter) for [____]. The excavated area shall be backfilled with suitable material obtained from the grading operations or borrow areas and compacted to specified densities. The necessary backfill will constitute a part of the embankment. Where rock cuts are made, backfill with select material. Any pockets created in the rock surface shall be drained in accordance with the details shown on the plans. Undercutting will be paid as [unclassified excavation] [rock excavation].

The Engineer shall specify the appropriate class of excavation. If rock or muck excavation is not included under paragraph 152-1.2, unclassified excavation should be specified.

The plans shall show details for draining pockets created in rock cuts.

c. Over-break. Over-break, including slides, is that portion of any material displaced or loosened beyond the finished work as planned or authorized by the RPR. All over-break shall be graded or removed by the Contractor and disposed of as directed by the RPR. The RPR shall determine if the displacement of such material was unavoidable and their own decision shall be final. Payment will not be made for the removal and disposal of over-break that the RPR determines as avoidable. Unavoidable over-break will be classified as "Unclassified Excavation."

d. Removal of utilities. The removal of existing structures and utilities required to permit the orderly progress of work will be accomplished [by someone other than the Contractor] [by the Contractor as indicated on the plans]. All existing foundations shall be excavated at least 2 feet (60 cm) below the top of subgrade or as indicated on the plans, and the material disposed of as directed by the RPR. All foundations thus excavated shall be backfilled with suitable material and compacted as specified for embankment or as shown on the plans.

152-2.3 Borrow excavation. [Borrow areas are not required.] [Borrow areas within the airport property are indicated on the plans. Borrow excavation shall be made only at these designated locations and within the horizontal and vertical limits as staked or as directed by the RPR. All unsuitable material shall be disposed of by the Contractor as

shown on the plans. All borrow pits shall be opened to expose the various strata of acceptable material to allow obtaining a uniform product. Borrow areas shall be drained and left in a neat, presentable condition with all slopes dressed uniformly. Borrow areas shall not create a hazardous wildlife attractant. []]

[There are no borrow sources within the boundaries of the airport property. The Contractor shall locate and obtain borrow sources, subject to the approval of the RPR. The Contractor shall notify the RPR at least [15] days prior to beginning the excavation so necessary measurements and tests can be made by the RPR. All borrow pits shall be opened to expose the various strata of acceptable material to allow obtaining a uniform product. Borrow areas shall be drained and left in a neat, presentable condition with all slopes dressed uniformly. Borrow areas shall not create a hazardous wildlife attractant. []]

For on-site borrow areas, the Engineer must determine the acceptability of the borrow material before identifying the area on the plans.

For off-site borrow areas obtained by the Contractor, the RPR must determine the acceptability of the borrow material before its use on the project.

Address hazardous wildlife attractants when opening borrow sites on or near an airport. Add references and sources addressing standing water, permitting, approvals, and zoning. Reference AC 150/5200-33, Hazardous Wildlife Attractants on or near Airports.

152-2.4 Drainage excavation. Drainage excavation shall consist of excavating drainage ditches including intercepting, inlet, or outlet ditches; or other types as shown on the plans. The work shall be performed in sequence with the other construction. Ditches shall be constructed prior to starting adjacent excavation operations. All satisfactory material shall be placed in embankment fills; unsuitable material shall be placed in designated waste areas or as directed by the RPR. All necessary work shall be performed true to final line, elevation, and cross-section. The Contractor shall maintain ditches constructed on the project to the required cross-section and shall keep them free of debris or obstructions until the project is accepted.

152-2.5 Preparation of cut areas or areas where existing pavement has been removed. In those areas on which a subbase or base course is to be placed, the top [12 inches (300 mm)] of subgrade shall be compacted to not less than [100 %] of maximum density for non-cohesive soils, and [95%] of maximum density for cohesive soils as determined by ASTM []. As used in this specification, "non-cohesive" shall mean those soils having a plasticity index (PI) of less than 3 as determined by ASTM D4318.

**For subgrade under flexible and rigid pavements, the Engineer shall specify the required compaction depth and density as determined from the geotechnical report and the FAARFIELD Airport Pavement Design compaction recommendations. The current version of FAARFIELD is available at:
www.faa.gov/airports/engineering/design_software/**

Specify ASTM D698 for areas designated for aircraft with gross weights of 60,000 pounds (27200 kg) or less and ASTM D1557 for areas designated for aircraft with gross weights greater than 60,000 pounds (27200 kg).

For soils with expansive characteristics, the maximum density should be determined in accordance with ASTM D698 regardless of aircraft weight.

152-2.6 Preparation of embankment area. All sod and vegetative matter shall be removed from the surface upon which the embankment is to be placed. The cleared surface shall be broken up by plowing or scarifying to a minimum depth of 6 inches (150 mm) and shall then be compacted per paragraph 152-2.10.

Sloped surfaces steeper than one (1) vertical to four (4) horizontal shall be plowed, stepped, benched, or broken up so that the fill material will bond with the existing material. When the subgrade is part fill and part excavation or natural ground, the excavated or natural ground portion shall be scarified to a depth of 12 inches (300 mm) and compacted as specified for the adjacent fill.

The Engineer shall include benching details on the plans based on the type of material, degree of consolidation of the material, and the degree of homogeneity of the material. The minimum width of the bench shall be sufficient to accommodate construction equipment.

The Engineer should consider the consolidation of embankments over 4 feet (1.2 m) and consider installation of monitoring equipment such as settlement plates and inclinometers for deep fills.

No direct payment shall be made for the work performed under this section. The necessary clearing and grubbing and the quantity of excavation removed will be paid for under the respective items of work.

152-2.7 Control Strip. The first half-day of construction of subgrade and/or embankment shall be considered as a control strip for the Contractor to demonstrate, in the presence of the RPR, that the materials, equipment, and construction processes meet the requirements of this specification. The sequence and manner of rolling necessary to obtain specified density requirements shall be determined. The maximum compacted thickness may be increased to a maximum of 12 inches (300 mm) upon the Contractor's demonstration that approved equipment and operations will uniformly compact the lift to the specified density. The RPR must witness this demonstration and approve the lift thickness prior to full production.

Control strips that do not meet specification requirements shall be reworked, re-compacted, or removed and replaced at the Contractor's expense. Full operations shall not begin until the control strip has been accepted by the RPR. The Contractor shall use the same equipment, materials, and construction methods for the remainder of construction, unless adjustments made by the Contractor are approved in advance by the RPR.

152-2.8 Formation of embankments. The material shall be constructed in lifts as established in the control strip, but not less than 6 inches (150 mm) nor more than 12 inches (300 mm) of compacted thickness.

When more than one lift is required to establish the layer thickness shown on the plans, the construction procedure described here shall apply to each lift. No lift shall be covered by subsequent lifts until tests

verify that compaction requirements have been met. The Contractor shall rework, re-compact and retest any material placed which does not meet the specifications.

The lifts shall be placed, to produce a soil structure as shown on the typical cross-section or as directed by the RPR. Materials such as brush, hedge, roots, stumps, grass and other organic matter, shall not be incorporated or buried in the embankment.

Earthwork operations shall be suspended at any time when satisfactory results cannot be obtained due to rain, freezing, or other unsatisfactory weather conditions in the field. Frozen material shall not be placed in the embankment nor shall embankment be placed upon frozen material. Material shall not be placed on surfaces that are muddy, frozen, or contain frost. The Contractor shall drag, blade, or slope the embankment to provide surface drainage at all times.

The material in each lift shall be within $\pm 2\%$ of optimum moisture content before rolling to obtain the prescribed compaction. The material shall be moistened or aerated as necessary to achieve a uniform moisture content throughout the lift. Natural drying may be accelerated by blending in dry material or manipulation alone to increase the rate of evaporation.

The Contractor shall make the necessary corrections and adjustments in methods, materials or moisture content to achieve the specified embankment density.

The [RPR][contractor] will take samples of excavated materials which will be used in embankment for testing and develop a Moisture-Density Relations of Soils Report (Proctor) in accordance with [ASTM D698] [D 1557]. A new Proctor shall be developed for each soil type based on visual classification.

Density tests will be taken by the [RPR][contractor] for every [3,000] square yards of compacted embankment for each lift which is required to be compacted, or other appropriate frequencies as determined by the RPR.

If the material has greater than 30% retained on the 3/4-inch (19.0 mm) sieve, follow AASHTO T-180 Annex Correction of maximum dry density and optimum moisture for oversized particles.

It is recommended that density tests be made for each 3,000 square yards (2500 square meters) of material placed per lift. Testing frequency should be determined by the Geotechnical Engineer. The Engineer may specify other frequencies as appropriate to the job size. If necessary to apply special controls to the moisture content of the soil during or after compaction to ensure strength because of the presence of expansive soils or other unusually sensitive soils), the Engineer must specify the appropriate moisture content. The moisture limitations shall be specified using acceptable moisture ranges as determined by ASTM D698 or ASTM D1557. Refer to FAA RD-76-66, Design and Construction of Airport Pavements on Expansive Soils, for additional guidance.

If the material has greater than 30% retained on the 3/4-inch (19.0 mm) sieve, follow the methods in the ASTM D698 or D1557; or AASHTO T180 Annex for correction of maximum dry density and optimum moisture for oversized particles.

If nuclear density machines are to be used for density determination, the machines shall be calibrated in accordance with ASTM D6938.

Include testing frequencies per square yard for density and moisture acceptance tests.

Rolling operations shall be continued until the embankment is compacted to not less than [100%] of maximum density for non-cohesive soils, and [95%] of maximum density for cohesive soils as determined by ASTM [____]. Under all areas to be paved, the embankments shall be compacted to a depth of [____] and to a density of not less than [____] percent of the maximum density as determined by ASTM [____]. As used in this specification, "non-cohesive" shall mean those soils having a plasticity index (PI) of less than 3 as determined by ASTM D4318.

**For subgrade under flexible and rigid pavements, the Engineer shall specify the required compaction depth and density as determined from the geotechnical report and the FAARFIELD Airport Pavement Design compaction recommendations. The current version of FAARFIELD is available at:
www.faa.gov/airports/engineering/design_software/**

Specify ASTM D698 for areas designated for aircraft with gross weights of 60,000 pounds (27200 kg) or less and ASTM D1557 for areas designated for aircraft with gross weights greater than 60,000 pounds (27200 kg).

For soils with expansive characteristics, the maximum density should be determined in accordance with ASTM D698 regardless of aircraft weight.

On all areas outside of the pavement areas, no compaction will be required on the top [4 inches (100 mm)] which shall be prepared for a seedbed in accordance with [Item T-901] [T-906].

The in-place field density shall be determined in accordance with [ASTM D1556] [ASTM 6938 using Procedure A, the direct transmission method, and ASTM D6938 shall be used to determine the moisture content of the material. The machine shall be calibrated in accordance with ASTM D6938.]. The [RPR shall perform all density tests] [Contractor's laboratory shall perform all density tests in the RPR's presence and provide the test results upon completion to the RPR for acceptance]. If the specified density is not attained, the area represented by the test or as designated by the RPR shall be reworked and/or re-compacted and additional random tests made. This procedure shall be followed until the specified density is reached.

Compaction areas shall be kept separate, and no lift shall be covered by another lift until the proper density is obtained.

During construction of the embankment, the Contractor shall route all construction equipment evenly over the entire width of the embankment as each lift is placed. Lift placement shall begin in the deepest portion of the embankment fill. As placement progresses, the lifts shall be constructed approximately parallel to the finished pavement grade line.

When rock, concrete pavement, asphalt pavement, and other embankment material are excavated at approximately the same time as the subgrade, the material shall be incorporated into the outer portion of the embankment and the subgrade material shall be incorporated under the future paved areas. Stones, fragmentary rock, and recycled pavement larger than 4 inches (100 mm) in their greatest dimensions will not be allowed in the top 12 inches (300 mm) of the subgrade. Rockfill shall be brought up in lifts as specified or as directed by the RPR and the finer material shall be used to fill the voids forming a dense,

compact mass. Rock, cement concrete pavement, asphalt pavement, and other embankment material shall not be disposed of except at places and in the manner designated on the plans or by the RPR.

When the excavated material consists predominantly of rock fragments of such size that the material cannot be placed in lifts of the prescribed thickness without crushing, pulverizing or further breaking down the pieces, such material may be placed in the embankment as directed in lifts not exceeding 2 feet (60 cm) in thickness. Each lift shall be leveled and smoothed with suitable equipment by distribution of spalls and finer fragments of rock. The lift shall not be constructed above an elevation 4 feet (1.2 m) below the finished subgrade.

[There will be no separate measurement of payment for compacted embankment. All costs incidental to placing in lifts, compacting, discing, watering, mixing, sloping, and other operations necessary for construction of embankments will be included in the contract price for excavation, borrow, or other items.] [Payment for compacted embankment will be made under embankment in-place and no payment will be made for excavation, borrow, or other items.]

152-2.9 Proof rolling. [Not Used] The purpose of proof rolling the subgrade is to identify any weak areas in the subgrade and not for compaction of the subgrade. [Before start of embankment,] [and] [After compaction is completed,] the subgrade area shall be proof rolled with a [[20 ton (18.1 metric ton)] Tandem axle Dual Wheel Dump Truck loaded to the legal limit with tires inflated to [80/100/150 psi (0.551 MPa/0.689 MPa/1.034 MPa)] [[] ton Proof Roller with tires spaced not more than 32 inches (0.8 m) on-center with tires inflated to [100/125/150 psi (0.689 MPa/0.861 MPa/1.034 MPa)]] in the presence of the RPR. Apply a minimum of [] coverage, or as specified by the RPR, under pavement areas. A coverage is defined as the application of one tire print over the designated area. Soft areas of subgrade that deflect more than 1 inch (25 mm) or show permanent deformation greater than 1 inch (25 mm) shall be removed and replaced with suitable material or reworked to conform to the moisture content and compaction requirements in accordance with these specifications. Removal and replacement of soft areas is incidental to this item.

The Engineer shall select the proof-rolling method and number of coverages.

Drawings should be checked to ensure that any supplementary information required by this paragraph has been shown and that there is no conflict between the drawings and the specifications.

When proof rolling not used, delete all text from Paragraph 152-2.9 and insert Not Used.

152-2.10 Compaction requirements. The subgrade under areas to be paved shall be compacted to a depth of [12 inches (300 mm)] and to a density of not less than [100] percent of the maximum dry density as determined by ASTM [D1557] [D698]. The subgrade in areas outside the limits of the pavement areas shall be compacted to a depth of [12 inches (300 mm)] and to a density of not less than [95] percent of the maximum density as determined by ASTM [D698].

The material to be compacted shall be within $\pm 2\%$ of optimum moisture content before being rolled to obtain the prescribed compaction (except for expansive soils). When the material has greater than 30

percent retained on the $\frac{3}{4}$ inch (19.0 mm) sieve, follow the [methods in [ASTM D698] [ASTM D1557]] procedures in AASHTO T180 Annex for correction of maximum dry density and optimum moisture for oversized particles.] Tests for moisture content and compaction will be taken at a minimum of [] S.Y. of subgrade. All quality assurance testing shall be done by [the RPR.] [the Contractor's laboratory in the presence of the RPR, and density test results shall be furnished upon completion to the RPR for acceptance determination.]

The Engineer shall specify the required compaction depths and densities as determined from FAARFIELD Airport Pavement Design Report. The current version of FAARFIELD is available at:

https://www.faa.gov/airports/engineering/design_software/

The Engineer shall specify ASTM D698 for areas designated for aircraft with gross weights of 60,000 pounds (27200 kg) or less, and ASTM D1557 for areas designated for aircraft with gross weights greater than 60,000 pounds (27200 kg).

If the material has greater than 30% retained on the 3/4-inch (19.0 mm) sieve, follow the methods in the ASTM D698 or D1557; or AASHTO T180 Annex for correction of maximum dry density and optimum moisture for oversized particles.

Include testing frequencies per square yard (square meter) for density and moisture acceptance tests.

The in-place field density shall be determined in accordance with [ASTM D1556] [ASTM D6938 using Procedure A, the direct transmission method, and ASTM D6938 shall be used to determine the moisture content of the material. The machine shall be calibrated in accordance with ASTM D6938 within 12 months prior to its use on this contract. The gage shall be field standardized daily.]

Maximum density refers to maximum dry density at optimum moisture content unless otherwise specified.

If the specified density is not attained, the entire lot shall be reworked and/or re-compacted and additional random tests made. This procedure shall be followed until the specified density is reached.

All cut-and-fill slopes shall be uniformly dressed to the slope, cross-section, and alignment shown on the plans or as directed by the RPR and the finished subgrade shall be maintained.

152-2.11 Finishing and protection of subgrade. Finishing and protection of the subgrade is incidental to this item. Grading and compacting of the subgrade shall be performed so that it will drain readily. All low areas, holes or depressions in the subgrade shall be brought to grade. Scarifying, blading, rolling and other methods shall be performed to provide a thoroughly compacted subgrade shaped to the lines and grades shown on the plans. All ruts or rough places that develop in the completed subgrade shall be graded, re-compacted, and retested. The Contractor shall protect the subgrade from damage and limit hauling over the finished subgrade to only traffic essential for construction purposes.

The Contractor shall maintain the completed course in satisfactory condition throughout placement of subsequent layers. No subbase, base, or surface course shall be placed on the subgrade until the subgrade has been accepted by the RPR.

152-2.12 Haul. All hauling will be considered a necessary and incidental part of the work. The Contractor shall include the cost in the contract unit price for the pay of items of work involved. No payment will be made separately or directly for hauling on any part of the work.

The Contractor's equipment shall not cause damage to any excavated surface, compacted lift or to the subgrade as a result of hauling operations. Any damage caused as a result of the Contractor's hauling operations shall be repaired at the Contractor's expense.

The Contractor shall be responsible for providing, maintaining and removing any haul roads or routes within or outside of the work area, and shall return the affected areas to their former condition, unless otherwise authorized in writing by the Owner. No separate payment will be made for any work or materials associated with providing, maintaining and removing haul roads or routes.

152-2.13 Surface Tolerances. In those areas on which a subbase or base course is to be placed, the surface shall be tested for smoothness and accuracy of grade and crown. Any portion lacking the required smoothness or failing in accuracy of grade or crown shall be scarified to a depth of at least 3 inches (75 mm), reshaped and re-compacted to grade until the required smoothness and accuracy are obtained and approved by the RPR. The Contractor shall perform all final smoothness and grade checks in the presence of the RPR. Any deviation in surface tolerances shall be corrected by the Contractor at the Contractor's expense.

- a. Smoothness.** The finished surface shall not vary more than $\pm \frac{1}{2}$ inch (12 mm) when tested with a 12-foot (3.7-m) straightedge applied parallel with and at right angles to the centerline. The straightedge shall be moved continuously forward at half the length of the 12-foot (3.7-m) straightedge for the full length of each line on a 50-foot (15-m) grid.
- b. Grade.** The grade and crown shall be measured on a 50-foot (15-m) grid and shall be within ± 0.05 feet (15 mm) of the specified grade.

On safety areas, turfed areas and other designated areas within the grading limits where no subbase or base is to be placed, grade shall not vary more than 0.10 feet (30 mm) from specified grade. Any deviation in excess of this amount shall be corrected by loosening, adding or removing materials, and reshaping.

152-2.14 Topsoil. When topsoil is specified or required as shown on the plans or under Item T-905, it shall be salvaged from stripping or other grading operations. The topsoil shall meet the requirements of Item T-905. If, at the time of excavation or stripping, the topsoil cannot be placed in its final section of finished construction, the material shall be stockpiled at approved locations. Stockpiles shall be located as shown on the plans and the approved CSPP, and shall not be placed on areas that subsequently will require any excavation or embankment fill. If, in the judgment of the RPR, it is practical to place the salvaged topsoil at the time of excavation or stripping, the material shall be placed in its final position without stockpiling or further re-handling.

Refer to AC 150/5370-2, Operational Safety on Airports During Construction when developing the Construction Safety and Phasing Plan (CSPP).

Upon completion of grading operations, stockpiled topsoil shall be handled and placed as shown on the plans and as required in Item T-905. Topsoil shall be paid for as provided in Item T-905. No direct payment will be made for topsoil under Item P-152.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

152-3.1 Measurement for payment specified by the cubic yard (cubic meter) shall be computed by the [average end areas of design cross sections] [the comparison of digital terrain model (DTM) surfaces] for computation of neat line design quantities]. The end area is that bound by the original ground line established by field cross-sections and the final theoretical pay line established by cross-sections shown on the plans, subject to verification by the RPR.

The Engineer may edit method of volume calculations. The method of calculating volumes must meet or exceed the accuracy of the average end area method. The method of field verification should be described and must meet or exceed what is currently specified for the average end area method.

152-3.1 [The quantity of [unclassified] [rock] [muck] [drainage] excavation to be paid for shall be the number of cubic yards (cubic meters) measured in its original position. Measurement shall not include the quantity of materials excavated without authorization beyond normal slope lines, or the quantity of material used for purposes other than those directed.]

[**152-3.2** The quantity of embankment in place shall be the number of cubic yards (cubic meters) measured in its final position.]

[**152-3.3** [Stockpiled material shall be paid for on the basis of the number of cubic yards (cubic meters) measured in the stockpiled position.] [Stockpiled material shall not be measured for payment in the stockpiled position.]]

BASIS OF PAYMENT

152-4.1 [Unclassified excavation] [Rock Excavation] [Muck Excavation] [Drainage Excavation] [Stockpiled Material] payment shall be made at the contract unit price per cubic yard (cubic meter). This price shall be full compensation for furnishing all materials, labor, equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete the item.

[**152-4.2** For embankment in place, payment shall be made at the contract unit price per cubic yard (cubic meter). This price shall be full compensation for furnishing all materials, labor, equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete the item.]

[**152-4.3** Stockpiled material shall be paid for on the basis of the number of cubic yards (cubic meters) measured in the stockpiled position.]

Payment will be made under:

[Item P-152-4.1 [[Unclassified][Rock][Muck][Drainage]
[Excavation][Stockpiled material]]-per cubic
yard (cubic meter)]

[Item P-152-4.2 Embankment in place - per cubic yard (cubic
meter)]

[Item P-152-4.3 Stockpiled material - per cubic yard (cubic
meter)]

The Engineer shall include only those classifications shown in the bid schedule.

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO)

AASHTO T-180 Standard Method of Test for Moisture-Density Relations of Soils Using a
4.54-kg (10-lb) Rammer and a 457-mm (18-in.) Drop

ASTM International (ASTM)

ASTM D698 Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of
Soil Using Standard Effort (12,400 ft-lbf/ft³ (600 kN-m/m³))

ASTM D1556 Standard Test Method for Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place by
the Sand-Cone Method

ASTM D1557 Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of
Soil Using Modified Effort (56,000 ft-lbf/ft³ (2700 kN-m/m³))

ASTM D6938 Standard Test Methods for In-Place Density and Water Content of Soil
and Soil-Aggregate by Nuclear Methods (Shallow Depth)

Advisory Circulars (AC)

AC 150/5370-2 Operational Safety on Airports During Construction Software

Software

FAARFIELD – FAA Rigid and Flexible Iterative Elastic Layered Design

U.S. Department of Transportation

FAA RD-76-66 Design and Construction of Airport Pavements on Expansive Soils

END OF ITEM P-152

Item P-153 Controlled Low-Strength Material (CLSM)

Item P-153 is for backfill around conduits and/or any irregular areas where it is difficult to achieve compaction. Note conduits must be secured to preclude floatation prior to placement of CLSM.

DESCRIPTION

153-1.1 This item shall consist of furnishing, transporting, and placing a controlled low-strength material (CLSM) as flowable backfill in trenches or at other locations shown on the plans or as directed by the Resident Project Representative (RPR).

MATERIALS

153-2.1 Materials.

a. Cement. Cement shall conform to the requirements of ASTM [___] Type [___].

The Engineer shall specify all applicable cements:

ASTM C150 - Type I, II, V

ASTM C595 - Type IL, IS, IP, IT

b. Fly ash. Fly ash shall conform to ASTM C618, Class C or F.

c. Fine aggregate (sand). Fine aggregate shall conform to the requirements of ASTM C33 except for aggregate gradation. Any aggregate gradation which produces the specified performance characteristics of the CLSM and meets the following requirements, will be accepted.

Sieve Size	Percent Passing by weight
3/4 inch (19.0 mm)	100
No. 200 (75 µm)	0 - 12

d. Water. Water used in mixing or curing shall be from potable water sources. Other sources shall be tested in accordance with ASTM C1602 prior to use.

Dyes and other methods of coloring the backfill material may be incorporated if desired.

MIX DESIGN

153-3.1 Proportions. The Contractor shall submit, to the RPR, a mix design including the proportions and source of aggregate, fly ash, cement, water, and approved admixtures. No CLSM mixture shall be produced for payment until the RPR has given written approval of the proportions. The proportions shall be prepared by a laboratory and shall remain in effect for the duration of the project. The proportions shall establish a single percentage or weight for aggregate, fly ash, cement, water, and any admixtures proposed. Laboratory costs are incidental to this item.

a. Compressive strength. CLSM shall be designed to achieve a 28-day compressive strength of 100 to 200 psi (690 to 1379 kPa) when tested in accordance with ASTM D4832, with no significant strength gain after 28 days.

b. Consistency. Design CLSM to achieve a consistency that will produce an approximate 8-inch (200 mm) diameter circular-type spread without segregation. CLSM consistency shall be determined per ASTM D6103.

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

153-4.1 Placement.

a. Placement. CLSM may be placed by any reasonable means from the mixing unit into the space to be filled. Agitation is required during transportation and waiting time. Placement shall be performed so structures or pipes are not displaced from their final position and intrusion of CLSM into unwanted areas is avoided. The material shall be brought up uniformly to the fill line shown on the plans or as directed by the RPR. Each placement of CLSM shall be as continuous an operation as possible. If CLSM is placed in more than one lift, the base lift shall be free of surface water and loose foreign material prior to placement of the next lift.

b. Contractor Quality Control. The Contractor shall collect all batch tickets to verify the CLSM delivered to the project conforms to the mix design. The Contractor shall verify daily that the CLSM is consistent with 153-3.1a and 153-3.1b. Adjustments shall be made as necessary to the proportions and materials as needed. The Contractor shall provide all batch tickets to the RPR.

c. Limitations of placement. CLSM shall not be placed on frozen ground. Mixing and placing may begin when the air or ground temperature is at least 35°F (2°C) and rising. Mixing and placement shall stop when the air temperature is 40°F (4°C) and falling or when the anticipated air or ground temperature will be 35°F (2°C) or less in the 24-hour period following proposed placement. At the time of placement, CLSM shall have a temperature of at least 40°F (4°C).

153-4.2 Curing and protection

a. Curing. The air in contact with the CLSM shall be maintained at temperatures above freezing for a minimum of 72 hours. If the CLSM is subjected to temperatures below 32°F (0°C), the material may be rejected by the RPR if damage to the material is observed.

b. Protection. The CLSM shall not be subject to loads and shall remain undisturbed by construction activities for a period of 48 hours or until a compressive strength of 15 psi (105 kPa) is obtained. The

Contractor shall be responsible for providing evidence to the RPR that the material has reached the desired strength. Acceptable evidence shall be based upon compressive tests made in accordance with paragraph 153-3.1a.

153-4.3 Quality Assurance (QA) Acceptance. CLSM QA acceptance shall be based upon batch tickets provided by the Contractor to the RPR to confirm that the delivered material conforms to the mix design.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

153-5.1 Measurement.

[No separate measurement for payment shall be made for controlled low strength material (CLSM). CLSM shall be considered necessary and incidental to the work of this Contract.]

[Controlled low-strength material (CLSM) shall be measured by the number of [cubic yards (cubic meters)] as specified, completed, and accepted.]

BASIS OF PAYMENT

153-6.1 Payment.

[No payment will be made separately or directly for controlled low strength material (CLSM). CLSM shall be considered necessary and incidental to the work of this Contract.]

[Controlled low-strength material (CLSM) shall be paid for at the contract unit price per [cubic yard (cubic meter)]. Payment shall be full compensation for all materials, equipment, labor, and incidentals required to complete the work as specified.

Payment will be made under:

Item P-153-6.1 Controlled low-strength material (CLSM) per
[cubic yard] [cubic meter].]

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM International (ASTM)

ASTM C33	Standard Specification for Concrete Aggregates
ASTM C150	Standard Specification for Portland Cement
ASTM C618	Standard Specification for Coal Fly Ash and Raw or Calcined Natural Pozzolan for Use in Concrete
ASTM C595	Standard Specification for Blended Hydraulic Cements
ASTM C1602	Standard Specification for Mixing Water Used in the Production of Hydraulic Cement Concrete

ASTM D4832	Standard Test Method for Preparation and Testing of Controlled Low-Strength Material (CLSM) Test Cylinders
ASTM D6103	Flow Consistency of Controlled Low Strength Material (CLSM)

Item P-154 Subbase Course

Item P-154 can be used as a subbase under flexible and rigid pavements.

DESCRIPTION

154-1.1 This item shall consist of a subbase course composed of granular materials constructed on a prepared subgrade or underlying course in accordance with these specifications, and in conformity with the dimensions and typical cross-section shown on the plans.

MATERIALS

154-2.1 Materials. The subbase material shall consist of hard durable particles or fragments of granular aggregates [, recycled asphalt pavement (RAP), and/or recycled concrete pavement (RCO)]. The material may be obtained from gravel pits, stockpiles, or may be produced from a crushing and screening plant with proper blending. The materials from these sources shall meet the requirements for gradation, quality, and consistency. The material shall be free from vegetative matter, excessive amounts of clay, and other objectionable substances; uniformly blended; and be capable of being compacted into a dense, stable subbase.

The subbase material shall exhibit a California Bearing Ratio (CBR) value of at least 20 when tested in accordance with ASTM D1883. The subbase material shall meet the gradation specified in the table below.

Excessive amounts of RAP and/or RCO may not be capable of compaction into a dense, stable subbase.

Recycled asphalt pavement (RAP), and/or recycled concrete pavement (RCO) may be removed in the text and the gradation requirements table below.

When non-frost susceptible material is required, the maximum allowable material passing the No. 200 (75 µm) sieve shall be reduced from 0-15% to 0-10%. The Engineer should reference the geotechnical report.

Subbase Gradation Requirements

Sieve designation	Percentage by weight passing sieves		Contractor's Final Gradation	Job Control Grading Band Tolerances ¹ (Percent)
	Subbase Aggregate	Recycled pavement (RAP or RCO)		
3 inch (75 mm)	100			0
1 1/2 inch (37.5 mm)		100		0
3/4 inch (19.0 mm)	70-100	70-100		±10
No. 10 (2.00 mm)	20-100	20-100		±10
No. 40 (425 µm)	5-60	5-60		±5
No. 200 (75 µm)	[0-15]	[0-15]		±5

¹The "Job Control Grading Band Tolerances" shall be applied to "Contractor's Final Gradation" to establish the job control grading band.

The portion of the material passing the No. 40 (425 µm) sieve shall have a liquid limit of not more than 25 and a plasticity index of not more than six (6) when tested in accordance with ASTM D4318.

154-2.2 Sampling and testing.

a. Aggregate base materials. Samples shall be taken by the Contractor per ASTM D75 for initial aggregate subbase requirements and gradation. Material shall meet the requirements in paragraphs 154-2.1. The Contractor shall submit to the Resident Project Representative (RPR) certified test results showing that the aggregate meets the Material requirements of this section. Tests shall be representative of the material to be used for the project.

b. Gradation requirements. The Contractor shall take at least [one] aggregate subbase sample per day in the presence of the RPR to check the final gradation. Samples shall be taken from the in-place, un-compacted material at sampling locations determined by the RPR on a random basis per ASTM D3665. Sampling shall be per ASTM D75 and tested per ASTM C136 and ASTM C117. Results shall be furnished to the RPR by the Contractor each day during construction. Material shall meet the requirements in paragraph 154-2.1.

154-2.3 Separation Geotextile. [Not used.] [Separation geotextile shall be [Class 2]; [0.02 sec⁻¹] permittivity per ASTM D4491; Apparent opening size per ASTM D4751 with [0.60 mm] maximum average roll value.]

The use of a geotextile for separation, to prevent mixing of a subgrade soil and an aggregate subbase/base, is generally appropriate for pavement structures constructed over soils with a California Bearing Ratio greater than 3.

Generally, on airport projects a Class 2 geotextile with a permittivity of 0.02 and maximum average roll value (AOS) of 0.60 mm will be sufficient.

See AASHTO M288 for additional notes regarding separation geotextiles.

154-2.4 Geogrid. [Not used.] []

Geogrid material acceptance is based on ASTM D4759. Insert specific geogrid property requirements above as necessary to describe salient features of the geogrid.

The use of geogrid must be supported and designed by a geotechnical engineer; and accepted by the FAA. The FAA does not consider any reductions in pavement structure for the use of any geosynthetics.

The FAA is currently researching the use of geosynthetics with aircraft loadings.

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

154-3.1 General. The subbase course shall be placed where designated on the plans or as directed by the RPR. The material shall be shaped and thoroughly compacted within the tolerances specified.

Granular subbases which, due to grain sizes or shapes, are not sufficiently stable to support the construction equipment without movement, shall be mechanically modified to the depth necessary to provide stability as directed by the RPR. The mechanical modification shall include the addition of a fine-grained medium to bind the particles of the subbase material sufficiently to furnish a bearing strength, so the course will not deform under construction equipment traffic.

154-3.2 Preparing underlying course. Prior to constructing the subbase course, clean the underlying course or subgrade of all foreign substances. The surface of the underlying course or subgrade shall meet specified compaction and surface tolerances in accordance with Item P-152. Correct ruts, soft yielding spots in the underlying courses, and subgrade areas having inadequate compaction and/or deviations of the surface from the specified requirements, by loosening and removing soft or unsatisfactory material, adding approved material, reshaping to line and grade, and recompacting to specified density requirements. For cohesionless underlying courses or subgrades containing sands or gravels, as defined in ASTM D2487, the surface shall be stabilized prior to placement of the overlying course by mixing the overlying course material into the underlying course, and compacting by approved methods. [The stabilized material shall be considered as part of the underlying course and shall meet all requirements for the underlying course.] The finished underlying course shall not be disturbed by traffic or other operations and shall be maintained in a satisfactory condition until the overlying course is placed. The underlying course shall be checked and accepted by the RPR before placing and spreading operations are started.

To protect the subgrade and to ensure proper drainage, spreading of the subbase shall begin along the centerline of the pavement on a crowned section or on the high side of pavements with a one-way slope.

154-3.3 Control Strip. The first half-day of subbase construction shall be considered as a control strip for the Contractor to demonstrate, in the presence of the RPR, that the materials, equipment, and construction processes meet the requirements of this specification. The sequence and manner of rolling necessary to obtain specified density requirements shall be determined. The maximum compacted thickness may be increased to a maximum of 12 inches (300 mm) upon the Contractor's demonstration

that approved equipment and operations will uniformly compact the lift to the specified density. The RPR must witness this demonstration and approve the lift thickness prior to full production.

Control strips that do not meet specification requirements shall be reworked, re-compacted, or removed and replaced at the Contractor's expense. Full operations shall not begin until the control strip has been accepted by the RPR. The Contractor shall use the same equipment, materials, and construction methods for the remainder of construction, unless adjustments made by the Contractor are approved in advance by the RPR.

154-3.4 Placement. The material shall be placed and spread on the prepared underlying layer by spreader boxes or other devices as approved by the RPR, to a uniform thickness and width. The equipment shall have positive thickness controls to minimize the need for additional manipulation of the material. Dumping from vehicles that require re-handling shall not be permitted. Hauling over the uncompacted base course shall not be permitted. The material shall not be placed when the underlying course is soft or yielding.

The material shall meet gradation and moisture requirements prior to compaction. Material may be free-draining and the minimum moisture content shall be established for placement and compaction of the material.

The material shall be constructed in lifts as established in the control strip, but not less than 4 inches (100 mm) nor more than 12 inches (300 mm) of compacted thickness.

When more than one lift is required to establish the layer thickness shown on the plans, the construction procedure described here shall apply to each lift. No lift shall be covered by subsequent lifts until tests verify that compaction requirements have been met. The Contractor shall rework, re-compact and retest any material placed which does not meet the specifications.

154-3.5 Compaction. The subbase material shall be compacted, adjusting moisture as necessary, to be within $\pm 2\%$ of optimum moisture. The field density of the compacted material shall be at least [100%] of the maximum density as specified in paragraph 154-3.9a. If the specified density is not attained, the area of the lift represented by the test shall be reworked and/or re-compacted and additional random tests made. This procedure shall be followed until the specified density is reached. Maximum density refers to maximum dry density at optimum moisture content unless otherwise specified.

154-3.6 Weather limitation. Material shall not be placed unless the ambient air temperature is at least 40°F (4°C) and rising. Work on subbase course shall not be conducted when the subgrade is wet or frozen or the subbase material contains frozen material.

154-3.7 Maintenance. No base or surface course shall be placed on the subbase until the subbase has been accepted by the RPR. The Contractor shall maintain the completed course in satisfactory condition throughout placement of subsequent layers. When material has been exposed to excessive rain, snow, or freeze-thaw conditions, the Contractor shall verify that materials still meet all specification requirements before placement of additional material. Equipment may be routed over completed sections of subbase course, provided the equipment does not damage the subbase course and the equipment is routed over the full width of the completed subbase course. Any damage to the subbase course from routing equipment over the subbase course shall be repaired by the Contractor at their expense.

154-3.8 Surface tolerance. In those areas on which a subbase or base course is to be placed, the surface shall be tested for smoothness and accuracy of grade and crown. Any portion lacking the required smoothness or failing in accuracy of grade or crown shall be scarified to a depth of at least 3 inches (75 mm), reshaped and re-compacted to grade until the required smoothness and accuracy are obtained and approved by the RPR. The Contractor shall perform all final smoothness and grade checks in the presence of the RPR. Any deviation in surface tolerances shall be corrected by the Contractor at the Contractor's expense.

a. Smoothness. The finished surface shall not vary more than $\pm \frac{1}{2}$ inch (12 mm) when tested with a 12-foot (3.7-m) straightedge applied parallel with and at right angles to the centerline. The straightedge shall be moved continuously forward at half the length of the 12-foot (3.7-m) straightedge for the full length of each line on a 50-foot (15-m) grid.

b. Grade. The grade and crown shall be measured on a 50-foot (15-m) grid and shall be within ± 0.05 feet (15 mm) of the specified grade.

154-3.9 Acceptance sampling and testing. The aggregate base course shall be accepted for density and thickness on an area basis. Two test shall be made for density and thickness for each [1200 square yards (1000 square meters)]. Sampling locations will be determined on a random basis per ASTM D3665.

a. Density. The [RPR shall perform all density tests][Contractor's laboratory shall perform all density tests in the RPR's presence and provide the test results upon completion to the RPR for acceptance].

Each area shall be accepted for density when the field density is at least [100%] of the maximum density of laboratory specimens compacted and tested per ASTM [D1557][D698]. The in-place field density shall be determined per [ASTM D1556.][or][ASTM D6938 using Procedure A, the direct transmission method, and ASTM D6938 shall be used to determine the moisture content of the material. The machine shall be calibrated in accordance with ASTM D6938.]. If the specified density is not attained, the area represented by the failed test shall be reworked and/or recompacted and two additional random tests made. This procedure shall be followed until the specified density is reached. Maximum density refers to maximum dry density at optimum moisture content unless otherwise specified.

When the material has greater than 30 percent retained on the $\frac{3}{4}$ inch (19.0 mm) sieve, use methods in [ASTM D698][ASTM D1557] and the procedures in AASHTO T180 Annex for correction of maximum dry density and optimum moisture for oversized particles.

The Engineer may adjust the testing area as appropriate to the job size.

Specify ASTM D698 or ASTM D1557 for areas designated for aircraft with gross weights of less than 60,000 pounds (27200 kg). Specify ASTM D1557 for areas designated for aircraft with gross weights of 60,000 pounds (27200 kg) or greater.

b. Thickness. The thickness of the base course shall be within +0 and -1/2 inch (12 mm) of the specified thickness as determined by depth tests taken by the Contractor in the presence of the RPR for each area. Where the thickness is deficient by more than 1/2-inch (12 mm), the Contractor shall correct such areas at no additional cost by scarifying to a depth of at least 3 inches (75 mm), adding new material of proper gradation, and the material shall be blended and recompacted to grade. The Contractor shall replace, at his expense, base material where depth tests have been taken.

The Engineer may modify the above thickness control paragraph to permit the thickness determination by survey. Survey shall be required before and after

placement of the base. The survey interval should be specified based on the size of the project.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

154-4.1 Subbase course shall be measured by the number of [square yards (square meters)][cubic yards (cubic meters)] of subbase course material placed and compacted to specified density and plan thickness requirements in the completed course. The quantity of subbase course material shall be measured in final position based upon [depth tests or cores taken as directed by the RPR, at the rate of two test per each [1200 square yards (1000 square meters)] of subbase course][survey of the completed work computed from elevations to the nearest 0.01 foot (3 mm)]. On individual depth measurements, thicknesses more than 1/2 inch (12 mm) in excess of that shown on the plans shall be considered as the specified thickness plus 1/2 inch (12 mm) in computing the yardage for payment. Subbase materials shall not be included in any other excavation quantities.

The Engineer may edit method of volume calculations.

[**154-4.2** Separation geotextile shall be measured by the number of [square yards][square meters] of materials placed and accepted by the RPR as complying with the plans and specifications excluding seam overlaps and edge anchoring.]

BASIS OF PAYMENT

154-5.1 Payment shall be made at the contract unit price per [square yard (square meter)][cubic yard (cubic meter)] for subbase course. This price shall be full compensation for furnishing all materials; for all preparation, hauling, and placing of these materials; and for all labor, equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete the item.

[**154-5.2** Payment shall be made at the contract unit price per [square yard][square meter] for separation geotextile-class 2. The price shall be full compensation for furnishing all labor, equipment, material, anchors, and necessary incidentals.]

Payment will be made under:

Item P-154-5.1 Subbase Course - per [square yard (square meter)]
[cubic yard (cubic meter)]

[Item P-154-5.2 Separation geotextile per [square yard]
[square meter]]

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM International (ASTM)

ASTM C117	Standard Test Method for Materials Finer than 75- μm (No. 200) Sieve in Mineral Aggregates by Washing
ASTM C136	Standard Test Method for Sieve Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates
ASTM D75	Standard Practice for Sampling Aggregates
ASTM D698	Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Standard Effort (12,400 ft-lbf/ft ³ (600 kN-m/m ³))
ASTM D1556	Standard Test Method for Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place by the Sand-Cone Method
ASTM D1557	Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Modified Effort (56,000 ft-lbf/ft ³ (2,700 kN-m/m ³))
ASTM D2487	Standard Practice for Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes (Unified Soil Classification System)
ASTM D4253	Standard Test Methods for Maximum Index Density and Unit Weight of Soils Using a Vibratory Table
ASTM D4759	Practice for Determining the Specification Conformance of Geosynthetics
ASTM D4318	Standard Test Methods for Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit, and Plasticity Index of Soils
ASTM D6938	Standard Test Method for In-Place Density and Water Content of Soil and Soil-Aggregate by Nuclear Methods (Shallow Depth)

American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO)

M 288	Geotextile Specification for Highway Applications

END OF ITEM P-154

Page Intentionally Blank

Item P-155 Lime-Treated Subgrade

Lime treatment is generally performed on clay soils to reduce the plasticity index (PI). This increases the optimum water content, permits compaction under wet conditions, allowing soils to dry out more rapidly. Secondary benefits are increased strength and stability. The typical lime content required to bring the soil pH to greater than 12 identifies the minimum lime content needed. Generally, this is between 3-7%. In areas susceptible to freeze-thaw, a drainage layer should be provided over the modified layer.

Caution: The Engineer must check the soluble sulfate contents of the soils during design to determine if stabilization with lime can react and induce heave. Sulfate reaction with either the soil to be stabilized or mixing water used in the stabilization process may be detrimental to the finished product due to the expansive nature of the sulfate reaction. During the design phase soils and water anticipated to be included in the stabilized material should be tested for potential to cause an adverse expansion reaction.

DESCRIPTION

155-1.1 This item shall be used for soil modification that require strength gain to a specific level. This item shall consist of constructing one or more courses of a mixture of soil, lime, and water in accordance with this specification, and in conformity with the lines, grades, thicknesses, and typical cross-sections shown on the plans.

MATERIALS

155-2.1 Lime. Quicklime, hydrated lime, and either high-calcium dolomitic, or magnesium lime, as defined by ASTM C51, shall conform to the requirements of ASTM C977. Lime not produced from calcining limestone is not permitted.

155-2.2 Commercial lime slurry. Commercial lime slurry shall be a pumpable suspension of solids in water. The water or liquid portion of the slurry shall not contain dissolved material injurious or objectionable for the intended purpose. The solids portion of the mixture, when considered on the basis of “solids content,” shall consist principally of hydrated lime of a quality and fineness sufficient to meet the following chemical composition and residue requirements.

a. Chemical composition. The “solids content” of the lime slurry shall consist of a minimum of 70%, by weight, of calcium and magnesium oxides.

b. Residue. The percent by weight of residue retained in the “solids content” of lime slurry shall conform to the following requirements:

- Residue retained on a No. 6 (3.35 µm) sieve = maximum 0.0%
- Residue retained on a No. 10 (2.00 µm) sieve = maximum 1.0%

- Residue retained on a No. 30 (600 μ m) sieve = maximum 2.5%

c. Grade. Commercial lime slurry shall conform to one of the following two grades:

- Grade 1. The “dry solids content” shall be at least 31% by weight, of the slurry.
- Grade 2. The “dry solids content” shall be at least 35%, by weight, of the slurry.

155-2.3 Water. Water used in mixing or curing shall be from potable water sources. Other sources shall be tested in accordance with ASTM C1602 prior to use.

155-2.4 Soil. The soil for this work shall consist of on-site materials free of roots, sod, weeds, and stones larger than 2-1/2 inches (60 mm) and have a sulfate content of less than 0.3%.

COMPOSITION

155-3.1 Soil-lime mixture. Lime shall be applied at [] % dry unit weight of soil for the depth of subgrade treatment as shown on the plans.

The Engineer will, based on the results of the Geotechnical Report, specify the amount of lime sufficient to lower the Liquid Limit to less than 30 and the Plasticity Index to less than 10 and depth of treatment.

155-3.2 Tolerances. At final compaction, the lime and water content for each course of subgrade treatment shall conform to the following tolerances:

Tolerances

Material	Tolerance
Lime	+ 0.5%
Water	+ 2%, -0%

WEATHER LIMITATIONS

155-4.1 Weather limitation. Subgrade shall not be constructed when weather conditions detrimentally affect the quality of the materials. Lime shall not be applied unless the air temperature is at least 40°F (4°C) and rising. Lime shall not be applied to soils that are frozen or contain frost. Protect completed lime-treated areas by approved methods against the detrimental effects of freezing if the air temperature falls below 35°F (2°C). Remove and replace any damaged portion of the completed soil-lime treated area with new soil-lime material in accordance with this specification.

EQUIPMENT

155-5.1 Equipment. All equipment necessary to grade, scarify, spread, mix and compact the material shall be provided. The Resident Project Representative (RPR) must approve the Contractor’s proposed equipment prior to the start of the treatment.

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

155-6.1 General. This specification is to construct a subgrade consisting of a uniform lime mixture which shall be free from loose or segregated areas. The subgrade shall be of uniform density and moisture content, well mixed for its full depth, and have a smooth surface suitable for placing subsequent lifts. The Contractor shall be responsible to meet the above requirements.

Prior to any treatment, the subgrade shall be constructed as specified in Item P-152, Excavation, Subgrade and Embankment, and shaped to conform to the typical sections, lines, and grades as shown on the plans.

The mixing equipment must give visible indication at all times that it is cutting, pulverizing and mixing the material uniformly to the proper depth over the full width of the cut.

155-6.2 Application. Lime shall be uniformly spread only over an area where the initial mixing operations can be completed during the same work day. Lime shall not be applied when wind conditions are detrimental to proper application. A motor grader shall not be used to spread the lime. Adequate moisture shall be added to the cement/soil mixture to maintain the proper moisture content. Materials shall be handled, stored, and applied in accordance with all federal, state, and local requirements.

155-6.3 Mixing. The mixing procedure shall be as described below:

a. Preliminary mixing. The full depth of the treated subgrade shall be mixed with an approved mixing machine. Lime shall not be left exposed for more than six (6) hours. The mixing machine shall make two coverages. Water shall be added to the subgrade during mixing to provide a moisture content approximately 3% to 5% above the optimum moisture of the material and to ensure chemical reaction of the lime and subgrade. After mixing, the subgrade shall be lightly rolled to seal the surface and help prevent evaporation of moisture. The water content of the subgrade mixture shall be maintained at a moisture content above the optimum moisture content for a minimum of 4 to 24 hours or until the material becomes friable. During the mellowing period, the material shall be sprinkled as directed by the RPR.

b. Final mixing. After the required mellowing time, the material shall be uniformly mixed by approved methods. Any clods shall be reduced in size by blading, discing, harrowing, scarifying, or by the use of other approved pulverization methods. After curing, pulverize lime treated material until 100% of soil particles pass a one-inch (25.0 mm) sieve and 60% pass the No. 4 (4.75 mm) sieve when tested dry by laboratory sieves. If resultant mixture contains clods, reduce their size by scarifying, remixing, or pulverization to meet specified gradation.

155-6.4 Control Strip. The first half-day of construction shall be considered the control strip. The Contractor shall demonstrate, in the presence of the RPR, that the materials, equipment, and construction processes meet the requirements of the specification. The sequence and manner of rolling necessary to obtain specified density requirements shall be determined. Control strips that do not meet specification requirements shall be reworked, re-compacted, or removed and replaced at the Contractor's expense. Full operations shall not continue until the control strip has been accepted by the RPR. Upon acceptance of the control strip by the RPR, the Contractor shall use the same equipment, materials, and construction methods for the remainder of construction, unless adjustments made by the Contractor are approved in advance by the RPR.

155-6.5 Treatment Application and Depth Checks. The depth and amount of stabilization shall be measured by the Contractor with no less than 2 tests per day of material placed; test shall be witnessed by the RPR. Measurements shall be made in test holes excavated to show the full depth of mixing and the pH checked by spraying the side of the test hole with a pH indicator such as phenolphthalein. Phenolphthalein changes from clear to red between pH 8.3 and 10. The color change indicates the location of the bottom of the mixing zone. pH indicators other than phenolphthalein can be used to measure pH levels. If the pH is not at least 8.3 and/or if the depth of the treated subgrade is more than 1/2

inch (12 mm) deficient, additional lime treatment shall be added and the material remixed. The Contractor shall correct all such areas in a manner satisfactory to the RPR.

155-6.6 Compaction. Compaction of the mixture shall immediately follow the final mixing operation with the mixture compacted within 1 to 4 hours after final mixing. The material shall be at the moisture content specified in paragraph 155-3.2 during compaction. The field density of the compacted mixture shall be at least [95%] of the maximum density as specified in paragraph 155-6.10. Perform in-place density test to determine degree of compaction between 24 and 72 hours after final compaction and the 24-hour moist cure period. If the material fails to meet the density requirements, it shall be reworked to meet the density requirements. Maximum density refers to maximum dry density at optimum moisture content unless otherwise specified.

155-6.7 Finishing and curing. After the final lift or course of lime-treated subgrade has been compacted, it shall be brought to the required lines and grades in accordance with the typical sections. The completed section shall then be finished by rolling, as directed by the RPR, with a pneumatic or other suitable roller sufficiently light to prevent hairline cracking. The finished surface shall not vary more than 1/2-inch (12 mm) when tested with a 12-foot (3.7 m) straightedge applied parallel with and at right angles to the pavement centerline. Any variations in excess of this tolerance shall be corrected by the Contractor at the Contractor's expense in a manner satisfactory to the RPR.

The completed section shall be moist-cured for a minimum of seven (7) days before further courses are added or any traffic is permitted, unless otherwise directed by the RPR. The final lift should not be exposed for more than 14 days without protection or the placement of a base course material.

155-6.8 Maintenance. The Contractor shall protect and maintain the lime-treated subgrade from yielding until the lime-treated subgrade is covered by placement of the next lift. When material has been exposed to excessive rain, snow, or freeze-thaw conditions, prior to placement of additional material, the Contractor shall verify that materials still meets all specification requirements. The maintenance cost shall be incidental to this item.

155-6.9 Surface tolerance. In those areas on which a subbase or base course is to be placed, the surface shall be tested for smoothness and accuracy of grade and crown. Any portion lacking the required smoothness or failing in accuracy of grade or crown shall be scarified to a depth of at least 3 inches (75 mm), reshaped and re-compacted to grade until the required smoothness and accuracy are obtained and approved by the RPR. The Contractor shall perform all final smoothness and grade checks in the presence of the RPR. Any deviation in surface tolerances shall be corrected by the Contractor at the Contractor's expense.

a. Smoothness. The finished surface shall not vary more than +/- 1/2 inch (12 mm) when tested with a 12-foot (3.7-m) straightedge applied parallel with and at right angles to the centerline. The straightedge shall be moved continuously forward at half the length of the 12-foot (3.7-m) straightedge for the full length of each line on a 50-foot (15-m) grid.

b. Grade. The grade and crown shall be measured on a 50-foot (15-m) grid and shall be within +/- 0.05 feet (15 mm) of the specified grade.

155-6.10 Acceptance sampling and testing. The lime treated subgrade shall be accepted for density and thickness on an area basis. Testing frequency shall be a minimum of one compaction and thickness test per [[1000] square yards ([840] square meters)] of lime treated subgrade, but not less than four (4) tests per day of production. Sampling locations will be determined on a random basis per ASTM D3665.

a. Density. All testing shall be done by [the RPR.] [the Contractor's laboratory in the presence of the RPR and density test results shall be furnished upon completion to the RPR for acceptance determination.]

The field density of the compacted mixture shall be at least [95%] of the maximum density of laboratory specimens prepared from samples taken from the material in place. The specimens shall be compacted and tested in accordance with ASTM D698 to determine maximum density and optimum moisture content. The in-place field density shall be determined in accordance with [ASTM D1556] [ASTM D6938, Procedure A, direct transmission method]. If the material fails to meet the density requirements, the area represented by the failed test shall be reworked to meet the density requirements. Maximum density refers to maximum dry density at optimum moisture content unless otherwise specified.

May be modified as appropriate to comply with the Geotechnical Engineer's recommendations and/or requirements to achieve a specified strength, etc.

Test frequency should reflect typical day's placement. Recommend not less than one test per 1,000 square yards (840 m²) or a minimum of 4 tests per day.

b. Thickness. The thickness of the course shall be within +0 and -1/2 inch (12 mm) of the specified thickness as determined by depth tests taken by the Contractor in the presence of the RPR for each area. Where the thickness is deficient by more than 1/2-inch (12 mm), the Contractor shall correct such areas at no additional cost. The Contractor shall replace, at his expense, material where depth tests have been taken.

The Engineer may modify the above thickness control paragraph to permit the thickness determination by survey. Survey shall be required before and after placement of the base. The survey interval should be specified based on the size of the project.

155-6.11 Handling and safety. The Contractor shall obtain and enforce the lime supplier's instructions for proper safety and handling of the lime to prevent physical eye or skin contact with lime during transport or application.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

155-7.1 Lime-treated subgrade shall be paid for by the square yard (square meter) in the completed and accepted work.

155-7.2 Lime shall be paid by the number of tons (kg) of Hydrated Lime applied at the application rate specified in paragraph 155-3.1.

a. Hydrated lime delivered to the project in dry form will be measured according to the actual tonnage either spread on the subgrade or batched on site into a slurry, whichever is applicable.

b. Quicklime delivered to the project in dry form will be measured for payment on the basis of the tons of equivalent hydrated lime using the following formula:

$$\text{Equivalent Hydrated Lime (Ca(OH)}_2\text{)} = \text{Total Quicklime (CaO)} \times 1.32$$

c. Lime delivered to the project in slurry form will be measured for payment in tons [kg], dry weight of hydrated lime or equivalent hydrated lime in accordance with paragraph b above.

BASIS OF PAYMENT

155-8.1 Payment shall be made at the contract unit price per square yard (square meter) for the lime-treated subgrade at the thickness specified. The price shall be full compensation for furnishing all material, except the lime, and for all preparation, delivering, placing and mixing these materials, and all labor, equipment, tools and incidentals necessary to complete this item.

155-8.2 Payment shall be made at the contract unit price per ton (kg). This price shall be full compensation for furnishing, delivery, and placing this material.

Payment will be made under:

Item P-155-8.1	Lime-treated subgrade - per square yard (m ²)
Item P-155-8.2	Lime - per pound (kg)

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM International (ASTM)

ASTM C51	Standard Terminology Relating to Lime and Limestone (as used by the Industry)
ASTM C977	Standard Specification for Quicklime and Hydrated Lime for Soil Stabilization
ASTM C1602	Standard Specification for Mixing Water Used in the Production of Hydraulic Cement Concrete
ASTM D698	Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Standard Effort (12,400 ft-lbf/ft ³) (600 kN-m/m ³)
ASTM D1556	Standard Test Method for Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place by the Sand-Cone Method
ASTM D2487	Standard Practice for Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes (Unified Soil Classification System)
ASTM D6938	Standard Test Method for In-Place Density and Water Content of Soil and Soil-Aggregate by Nuclear Methods (Shallow Depth)

Software

FAARFIELD – FAA Rigid and Flexible Iterative Elastic Layered Design

END OF ITEM P-155

Item P-156 Cement Treated Subgrade

Cement stabilization works best with granular soils combined with granular pavement material. Coarse grained soils which conform to ASTM D2487 classified as GW, GP, GM, GC, SW, SM, SC, SP and/or combination(s), generally may be cement stabilized.

In areas susceptible to freeze-thaw, a drainage layer should be provided over the cement stabilized subgrade.

No structural credit is given in FAARFIELD. The objective of stabilization is to reduce the PI of the soil, increase the strength and reduce permeability. Cement is typically added at 3-5%.

The Engineer must check the soluble sulfate contents of the soils during design to determine if stabilization can react and induce heave. Sulfate reaction with either the soil to be stabilized or mixing water used in the stabilization process may be detrimental to the finished product due to the expansive nature of the sulfate reaction. During the design phase soils and water anticipated to be included in the stabilized material should be tested for potential to cause an adverse expansion reaction.

DESCRIPTION

156-1.1 This item shall consist of constructing one or more courses of a mixture of soil, stabilizer, and water in accordance with this specification, and in conformity with the lines, grades, thickness, and typical cross-sections shown on the plans.

MATERIALS

156-2.1 Cement. Cement shall conform to the requirements of ASTM C150, Type I, IA, II, or IIA or ASTM C595, Type IS, IL, IP, or IS(A).

156-2.2 Water. Water used in mixing or curing shall be from potable water sources. Other sources shall be tested in accordance with ASTM C1602 prior to use.

156-2.3 Soil. The soil for this work shall consist of on-site materials free of roots, sod, weeds, and stones larger than 2-1/2 inches (60 mm) and have a sulfate content of less than 0.3%.

COMPOSITION

156-3.1 Soil-cement mixture. Cement shall be added at an application rate of [3] percent of dry unit weight of soil.

The Engineer will, based on the results of the Geotechnical Report, specify the application rate of cement to achieve the desired properties for the treated material.

156-3.2 Tolerances. At final compaction, the cement and water content for each course of subgrade treatment shall conform to the following tolerances:

Tolerances

Material/Properties	Target	Tolerance	Specifications
Cement	[]%	0 to +1%	% Total Dry Materials
Moisture Content	Optimum +2%	0 to +1%	ASTM D1557

Enter the appropriate value as identified in paragraph 156-3.1

WEATHER LIMITATIONS

156-4.1 Weather limitation. Do not construct subgrade when weather conditions detrimentally affect the quality of the materials. Do not apply cement unless the air temperature is at least 40°F (4°C) and rising. Do not apply cement to soils that are frozen or contain frost. Do not apply cement when conditions are too windy to allow even distribution of the cement to the subgrade. If the air temperature falls below 35°F (2°C), protect completed treated areas against freezing. Remove and replace any damaged portion of the completed treated area with new material in accordance with this specification.

EQUIPMENT

156-5.1 Equipment. All equipment necessary to grade, scarify, spread, mix and compact the material shall be provided. The Resident Project Representative (RPR) must approve the Contractor's proposed equipment prior to the start of the treatment.

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

156-6.1 General. This specification is to construct a subgrade consisting of a uniform cement mixture which shall be free from loose or segregated areas. The subgrade shall be of uniform density and moisture content, well mixed for its full depth and have a smooth surface suitable for placing subsequent courses. The Contractor shall be responsible for meeting the above requirements.

Prior to any treatment, the subgrade shall be constructed as specified in Item P-152, Excavation, Subgrade and Embankment, and shaped to conform to the typical sections, lines, and grades as shown on the plans.

The mixing machine must give visible indication at all times that it is cutting, pulverizing and mixing the material uniformly to the proper depth over the full width of the cut.

156-6.2 Application. Cement shall be uniformly spread only over an area where the initial mixing operations and compaction can be completed during the same workday. The cement shall not be applied

when wind conditions are detrimental to proper application. A motor grader shall not be used to spread the lime. Adequate moisture shall be added to the cement/soil mixture to maintain the proper moisture content. Materials shall be handled, stored, and applied in accordance with all federal, state, and local requirements.

156-6.3 Mixing Procedure. The full depth of the treated subgrade shall be mixed with equipment as approved by the RPR. Cement shall not be left exposed for more than one (1) hour after distribution. Mixing and pulverization shall continue until the soil cement mixture contains no clods greater than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) in size. Final moisture content of the mix shall be determined by the Contractor immediately prior to compaction in accordance with ASTM D2216 or ASTM D4959.

156-6.4 Control Strip. The first half-day of construction shall be considered the control strip. The Contractor shall demonstrate, in the presence of the RPR, that the materials, equipment, and construction processes meet the requirements of the specification. The sequence and manner of rolling necessary to obtain specified density requirements shall be determined. Control strips that do not meet specification requirements shall be reworked, re-compacted, or removed and replaced at the Contractor's expense. Full operations shall not continue until the control strip has been accepted by the RPR. Upon acceptance of the control strip by the RPR, the Contractor shall use the same equipment, materials, and construction methods for the remainder of construction, unless adjustments made by the Contractor are approved in advance by the RPR.

156-6.5 Treatment Application and Depth Checks. The amount of cement applied shall be monitored by the Contractor to assure that no less than the amount of cement required by the mix design is applied. The depth of stabilization shall be measured by the Contractor no less than 2 tests per day of material placed; test shall be witnessed by the RPR. Measurements shall be made in test holes excavated to show the full depth of mixing.

156-6.6 Compaction. The moisture content shall be within the tolerance as specified in paragraph 156-3.2. The field density of the compacted mixture shall be at least [95%] of the maximum density as specified in paragraph 156-6.10. Compaction of the soil/cement mixture shall begin within [30 minutes] after mixing the cement into the subgrade. All compaction operations shall be completed within [2 hours] from the start of mixing.

Perform in-place density test immediately after completion of compaction to determine degree of compaction. If the material fails to meet the density requirements, compaction shall continue or the material shall be removed and replaced. Maximum density refers to maximum dry density at optimum moisture content unless otherwise specified.

156-6.7 Finishing and curing. After the final lift or course of treated subgrade has been compacted, it shall be brought to the required lines and grades in accordance with the typical sections. Finished portions of treated subgrade shall be protected to prevent equipment from marring, permanently deforming, or damaging completed work.

Not later than 24 hours after completion of final finishing, the surface shall be cured by [application of an emulsified asphalt] [being kept continuously moist for a period of 7 days with a fog-type water spray] [application of an curing compound or other moisture retention methods as approved by the RPR].

Sufficient protection from freezing shall be provided for at least 7 days after its construction or as approved by the RPR.

156-6.8 Maintenance. The Contractor shall maintain the entire treated subgrade in good condition from the start of work until all the work has been completed, cured, and accepted by the RPR. When material has been exposed to excessive rain, snow, or freeze-thaw conditions, prior to placement of additional

material, the Contractor shall verify that materials still meets all specification requirements. The cost shall be incidental to this item.

156-6.9 Surface tolerance. In those areas on which a subbase or base course is to be placed, the surface shall be tested for smoothness and accuracy of grade and crown. Any portion lacking the required smoothness or failing in accuracy of grade or crown shall be scarified to a depth of at least 3 inches (75 mm), reshaped and re-compacted to grade until the required smoothness and accuracy are obtained and approved by the RPR. The Contractor shall perform all final smoothness and grade checks in the presence of the RPR. Any deviation in surface tolerances shall be corrected by the Contractor at the Contractor's expense.

a. Smoothness. The finished surface shall not vary more than $\pm \frac{1}{2}$ inch (12 mm) when tested with a 12-foot (3.7-m) straightedge applied parallel with and at right angles to the centerline. The straightedge shall be moved continuously forward at half the length of the 12-foot (3.7-m) straightedge for the full length of each line on a 50-foot (15-m) grid.

b. Grade. The grade and crown shall be measured on a 50-foot (15-m) grid and shall be within ± 0.05 feet (15 mm) of the specified grade.

156-6.10 Acceptance sampling and testing. Aggregate base course shall be accepted for density and thickness on an area basis. Testing frequency shall be a minimum of one (1) compaction and thickness test per [1000] square yards [[840] m^2] of stabilized subgrade, but not less than four (4) tests per day of production. Sampling locations will be determined on a random basis per ASTM D3665.

a. Density. All testing shall be done by [the RPR.] [the Contractor's] laboratory in the presence of the RPR and density test results shall be furnished upon completion to the RPR for acceptance determination.]

The field density of the compacted mixture shall be at least [95%] of the maximum density as determined by ASTM [D558]. The in-place field density shall be determined in accordance with [ASTM D1556] [ASTM D6938, Procedure A, direct transmission method]. The in-place moisture content shall be determined in accordance with ASTM D2216. If the material fails to meet the density requirements, compaction shall continue or the material shall be removed and replaced. Maximum density refers to maximum dry density at optimum moisture content unless otherwise specified.

May be modified as appropriate to comply with the Geotechnical Engineer's recommendations and/or requirements to achieve a specified strength, etc.

Test frequency should reflect typical day's placement. Recommend not less than one test per 1,000 square yards (840 m^2) or a minimum of 4 tests per day.

b. Thickness. The thickness of the base course shall be within +0 and -1/2 inch (12 mm) of the specified thickness as determined by depth tests taken by the Contractor in the presence of the RPR for each subplot. Where the thickness is deficient by more than 1/2-inch (12 mm), the material shall be removed to full depth and replaced, at Contractor's expense.

The Engineer may modify the above thickness control paragraph to permit the thickness determination by survey. Survey shall be required before and after placement of the base. The survey interval should be specified based on the size of the project.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

156-7.1 [The amount of cement treated subgrade shall be based on the number of square yards [square meters] complete and accepted.]

[The amount of cement used is based upon an application rate as specified in paragraph 156-3.1. The amount of cement shall be paid by the number of tons (kg) of cement used in the completed and accepted work.]

Select the method of measurement and associated basis of payment and delete the other option.

BASIS OF PAYMENT

156-8.1 [Payment for placement shall be made at the contract unit price per square yard (m) for the cement treated subgrade for the thickness specified. The price shall be full compensation for all preparation, delivering, placing and mixing these materials, and all labor, equipment, tools and incidentals necessary to complete this item.]

[Payment for cement shall be made at the contract unit price per ton [kg] for the cement. The price shall be full compensation for all preparation, delivering, placing and mixing these materials, and all labor, equipment, tools and incidentals necessary to complete this item.]

Payment will be made under:

Item P 156-8.1 [Cement treated subgrade per square yard
(meter)]
[Cement per ton [kg]]

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM International (ASTM)

ASTM C150 Standard Specification for Portland Cement

ASTM C595	Standard Specification for Blended Hydraulic Cements
ASTM C1602	Standard Specification for Mixing Water Used in the Production of Hydraulic Cement Concrete
ASTM D558	Standard Test Methods for Moisture-Density (Unit Weight) Relations of Soil-Cement Mixtures
ASTM D1556	Standard Test Method for Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place by the Sand-Cone Method
ASTM D1557	Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Modified Effort (56,000 ft-lbf/ft ³ (2,700 kN-m/m ³))
ASTM D1663	Standard Test Methods for Compressive Strength of Molded Soil-Cement Cylinders
ASTM D2216	Test Methods for Laboratory Determination of Water (Moisture) Soil and Rock by Mass
ASTM D2487	Standard Practice for Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes (Unified Soil Classification System)
ASTM D4318	Standard Test Methods for Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit and Plasticity Index of Soils
ASTM D4959	Standard Test Method for Determination of Water Content of Soil by Direct Heating
ASTM D6938	Standard Test Methods for In-Place Density and Water Content of Soil and Soil-Aggregate by Nuclear Methods (Shallow Depth)

END OF ITEM P-156

Item P-157 [Cement][Lime] Kiln Dust Treated Subgrade

Lime kiln dust (LKD) or cement kiln dust (CKD) will work with fine grained or granular soils. In areas susceptible to freeze-thaw, a drainage layer should be provided over the stabilized layer.

Stabilization with cementitious materials results in a stabilized subgrade layer that may be used under either a flexible or rigid pavement structure. No structural credit is given in FAARFIELD. The objective of stabilization is to reduce the PI of the soil, increase the strength and reduce shrink-swell potential. LKD or CKD is typically added at 4-7%. To allow for field variations the field LKD / CKD content is generally increased by 1-2% over the design criteria.

Kiln dust is not readily available throughout the U.S. The Engineer should confirm an adequate supply is available prior to advertisement.

Caution: The Engineer must check the soluble sulfate contents of the soils during design to determine if stabilization can react and induce heave. Sulfate reaction with either the soil to be stabilized or mixing water used in the stabilization process may be detrimental to the finished product due to the expansive nature of the sulfate reaction. During the design phase soils and water anticipated to be included in the stabilized material should be tested for potential to cause an adverse expansion reaction.

DESCRIPTION

157-1.1 This item shall consist of constructing one or more courses of a mixture of soil, stabilizer, and water in accordance with this specification, and in conformity with the lines, grades, thickness, and typical cross-sections shown on the plans.

MATERIALS

157-2.1 [Cement kiln dust (CKD) . Cement kiln dust shall contain a minimum of 40% CaO, a maximum of 6% SO₃, and be capable of providing the soil modification specified for this project. Sources shall be identified and approved in advance of stabilization operations.

Cement kiln dust shall be stored and handled in closed waterproof containers until immediately before distribution. Cement kiln dust exposed to moisture prior to mixing with soils shall be discarded.]

[Lime Kiln Dust (LKD) . LKD used for stabilization shall meet the following chemical and physical requirements:

LKD Properties

Total Calcium & Magnesium Oxides (non-volatile basis) minimum	60%
Available Calcium Hydroxide (ASTM C25) plus total MgO content to be equivalent to CaOH ₂ ; minimum	30%
Free Water (as received); maximum	4%
Loss on Ignition (as received, carbon dioxide plus moisture, combined and free); maximum	40%

Lime kiln dust shall be stored and handled in closed waterproof containers until immediately before distribution. Lime kiln dust exposed to moisture prior to mixing with soils shall be discarded.]

157-2.2 Water. Water used in mixing or curing shall be from potable water sources. Other sources shall be tested in accordance with ASTM C1602 prior to use.

157-2.3 Soil. The soil shall consist of on-site materials and shall be free of roots, sod, weeds, and stones larger than 2-1/2 inches (60 mm) with a sulfate content of less than 0.3%.

COMPOSITION

157-3.1 Soil-Kiln Dust Mixture. Kiln dust shall be added at an application rate of [3] percent dry unit weight of soil. Payment will be based on the amount of kiln dust required to obtain the minimum soil properties specified.

157-3.2 Tolerances. At final compaction, the kiln dust and water content for each course of subgrade treatment shall conform to the following tolerances:

Tolerances

Material/Properties	Target	Tolerance	Specifications
Kiln Dust	[]%	0 to +2%	% Total Dry Materials
Moisture Content	Optimum	0% to 4%	ASTM D558
Plastic Index	< []	None	ASTM D4318

Enter the appropriate values as identified in paragraph 157-3.1

WEATHER LIMITATIONS

157-4.1 Weather limitation. Do not construct subgrade when weather conditions detrimentally affect the quality of the materials. Do not apply kiln dust unless the air temperature is at least 40°F (4°C) and rising. Do not apply kiln dust to soils that are frozen or contain frost. Do not apply kiln dust when conditions are too windy to allow even distribution of the kiln dust to the subgrade. If the air temperature falls below

35°F (2°C), protect completed kiln dust-treated areas by approved methods against the detrimental effects of freezing. Remove and replace any damaged portion of the completed soil-kiln dust treated area in accordance with this specification.

EQUIPMENT

157-5.1 Equipment. All equipment necessary to grade, scarify, spread, mix and compact the material shall be provided. The Resident Project Representative (RPR) must approve the Contractor's proposed equipment prior to the start of the treatment.

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

157-6.1 General. This specification is to construct a subgrade consisting of a uniform kiln dust/soil mixture which shall be free from loose or segregated areas. The subgrade shall be of uniform density and moisture content, well mixed for its full depth and have a smooth surface suitable for placing subsequent courses. The Contractor shall be responsible for meeting the above requirements.

Prior to any treatment, the subgrade shall be constructed as specified in Item P-152, Excavation, Subgrade, and Embankment, and shaped to conform to the typical sections, lines, and grades as shown on the plans.

The machine must give visible indication at all times that it is cutting, pulverizing and mixing the material uniformly to the proper depth over the full width of the cut.

157-6.2 Application. Kiln dust shall be uniformly spread only over an area where the initial mixing operations and compaction can be completed during the same workday. The kiln dust shall not be applied when wind conditions are detrimental to proper application. Adequate moisture shall be added to the kiln dust-soil mixture to maintain the proper moisture content. Materials shall be handled, stored, and applied in accordance with all federal, state, and local requirements.

157-6.3 Mixing Procedure. The full depth of the treated subgrade shall be mixed with equipment as approved by the RPR. Kiln dust shall not be left exposed for more than one (1) hour after distribution. Mixing shall continue until the mixture contains no clods greater than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) in size. Final moisture content of the mix shall be determined by the Contractor immediately prior to compaction in accordance with ASTM D2216 or ASTM D4959. [Not more than 60 minutes shall elapse between start of moist mixing and start of compaction of CKD treated layer.] [1 to 4 hours shall be allowed between start of moist mixing and start of compaction for LKD treated layer to ensure complete hydration prior to compaction.]

**May be modified as appropriate to comply with the Geotechnical Engineer's
recommendations and/or requirements to achieve a specified strength, etc.**

157-6.4 Control Strip. The first half-day of construction shall be considered the control strip. The Contractor shall demonstrate, in the presence of the RPR, that the materials, equipment, and construction processes meet the requirements of the specification. The sequence and manner of rolling necessary to obtain specified density requirements shall be determined. Control strips that do not meet specification requirements shall be reworked, re-compacted, or removed and replaced at the Contractor's expense. Full operations shall not continue until the control strip has been accepted by the RPR. Upon acceptance of the

control strip by the RPR, the Contractor shall use the same equipment, materials, and construction methods for the remainder of construction, unless adjustments made by the Contractor are approved in advance by the RPR.

157-6.5 Treatment Application and Depth Checks. The amount of kiln dust applied shall be monitored by the Contractor to assure that no less than the amount of kiln dust as specified in paragraph 157-3.1 is applied. The depth of stabilization shall be measured by the Contractor no less than 2 tests per day of material placed; test shall be witnessed by the RPR. Measurements shall be made in test holes excavated to show the full depth of mixing.

157-6.6 Compaction. The moisture content shall be within the tolerance as specified in paragraph 156-3.2. The field density of the compacted mixture shall be at least [95%] of the maximum density as specified in paragraph 157-6.10. Compaction of the soil/cement mixture shall begin within [30 minutes] after mixing the cement into the subgrade. All compaction operations shall be completed within [2 hours] from the start of mixing. Perform in-place density test immediately after completion of compaction to determine compaction. If the material fails to meet the density requirements, compaction shall continue or the material shall be removed and replaced. Maximum density refers to maximum dry density at optimum moisture content unless otherwise specified.

157-6.7 Finishing and curing. After the final lift or course of treated subgrade has been compacted, it shall be brought to the required lines and grades in accordance with the typical sections.

Finished portions of treated subgrade shall be protected to prevent equipment from marring, permanently deforming, or damaging completed work.

Not later than 24 hours after completion of final finishing, the surface shall be cured by [application of an emulsified asphalt] [being kept continuously moist for a period of 7 days with a fog-type water spray].

Sufficient protection from freezing shall be provided for at least 7 days after its construction or as approved by the RPR.

157-6.8 Maintenance. The Contractor shall maintain the entire treated subgrade in good condition from the start of work until all the work has been completed, cured, and accepted by the RPR. When material has been exposed to excessive rain, snow, or freeze-thaw conditions, prior to placement of additional material, the Contractor shall verify that materials still meets all specification requirements. The cost shall be incidental to this item.

157-6.9 Surface tolerance. In those areas on which a subbase or base course is to be placed, the surface shall be tested for smoothness and accuracy of grade and crown. Any portion lacking the required smoothness or failing in accuracy of grade or crown shall be scarified to a depth of at least 3 inches (75 mm), reshaped and re-compacted to grade until the required smoothness and accuracy are obtained and approved by the RPR. The Contractor shall perform all final smoothness and grade checks in the presence of the RPR. Any deviation in surface tolerances shall be corrected by the Contractor at the Contractor's expense.

a. Smoothness. The finished surface shall not vary more than +/- ½ inch (12 mm) when tested with a 12-foot (3.7-m) straightedge applied parallel with and at right angles to the centerline. The straightedge shall be moved continuously forward at half the length of the 12-foot (3.7-m) straightedge for the full length of each line on a 50-foot (15-m) grid.

b. Grade. The grade and crown shall be measured on a 50-foot (15-m) grid and shall be within +/- 0.05 feet (15 mm) of the specified grade.

157- 6.10 Acceptance sampling and testing. Treated subgrade shall be accepted for density and thickness on an area basis. Testing frequency shall be a minimum of one (1) compaction and thickness

test per [1000] square yards [840] m²] of stabilized subgrade, but not less than four (4) tests per day of production. Sampling locations will be determined on a random basis per ASTM D3665.

a. Density. The [RPR shall perform all density tests] [Contractor's laboratory shall perform all density tests in the RPR's presence and provide the test results upon completion to the RPR for acceptance].

Each area shall be accepted for density when the field density is at least [95%] of the maximum density of laboratory specimens compacted and tested per ASTM [D1557] [D698]. The in-place moisture content shall be determined in accordance with ASTM D4959. The in-place field density shall be determined per [ASTM D1556.] [or] [ASTM D6938 using Procedure A, the direct transmission method, and ASTM D6938 shall be used to determine the moisture content of the material. The machine shall be calibrated in accordance with ASTM D6938]. Perform in-place density test immediately after completion of compaction to determine compaction. If the material fails to meet the density requirements, compaction shall continue or the material shall be removed and replaced. Maximum density refers to maximum dry density at optimum moisture content unless otherwise specified.

The Engineer may specify ASTM D698 or ASTM D1557 for areas designated for aircraft with gross weights of less than 60,000 pounds (27200 kg). The Engineer shall specify ASTM D1557 for areas designated for aircraft with gross weights of 60,000 pounds (27200 kg) or greater.

May be modified as appropriate to comply with the Geotechnical Engineer's recommendations and/or requirements to achieve a specified strength, etc.

Test frequency should reflect typical day's placement. Recommend not less than one test per 1,000 square yards (840 m²) or a minimum of 4 tests per day.

b. Thickness. The thickness of the base course shall be within +0 and -1/2 inch (12 mm) of the specified thickness as determined by depth tests taken by the Contractor in the presence of the RPR for each area. Where the thickness is deficient by more than 1/2-inch (12 mm), the Contractor shall correct such areas at no additional cost by scarifying to a depth of at least 3 inches (75 mm), adding new material of proper gradation, and the material shall be blended and recompact to grade. The Contractor shall replace, at his expense, base material where depth tests have been taken.

The Engineer may modify the above thickness control paragraph to permit the thickness determination by survey. Survey shall be required before and after placement of the base. The survey interval should be specified based on the size of the project.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

157-7.1 [The amount of kiln dust treated subgrade shall be based on the number of square yards [square meters] complete and accepted. The

price shall be full compensation for all preparation, delivering, placing and mixing these materials, and all labor, equipment, tools and incidentals necessary to complete this item.]

[The amount of kiln dust used is based upon the application rate as determined in paragraph 157-3.1. The amount of kiln dust shall be paid by the number of tons (kg) of kiln dust used in the completed and accepted work. The price shall be full compensation for all preparation, delivering, placing and mixing these materials, and all labor, equipment, tools and incidentals necessary to complete this item.]

Select the method of measurement and associated basis of payment and delete the other option.

BASIS OF PAYMENT

157-8.1 [Payment shall be made at the contract unit price per square yard for the kiln dust treated subgrade for the thickness specified. The price shall be full compensation for furnishing all material, and for all preparation, delivering, placing and mixing these materials, and all labor, equipment, tools and incidentals necessary to complete this item.]

[Payment for kiln dust shall be made at the contract unit price per ton [kg].

Payment will be made under:

Item P 157-8.1 [Kiln dust treated subgrade per square yard
(square meter)]
[Kiln dust per ton [kg]]]

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM International (ASTM)

ASTM C558	Standard Test Methods for Moisture-Density (Unit Weight) Relations of Soil-Cement Mixtures
ASTM C1602	Standard Specification for Mixing Water Used in the Production of Hydraulic Cement Concrete
ASTM D1556	Standard Test Method for Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place by the Sand-Cone Method
ASTM D1557	Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Modified Effort (56,000 ft-lbf/ft ³ (2,700 kN-m/m ³))

ASTM D1883	Standard Test Method for California Bearing Ratio (CBR) of Laboratory-Compacted Soils
ASTM D2216	Test Methods for Laboratory Determination of Water (Moisture) Soil and Rock by Mass
ASTM D2487	Standard Practice for Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes (Unified Soil Classification System)
ASTM D4318	Standard Test Methods for Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit and Plasticity Index of Soils
ASTM D4959	Standard Test Method for Determination of Water Content of Soil by Direct Heating
ASTM D6938	Standard Test Methods for In-Place Density and Water Content of Soil and Soil-Aggregate by Nuclear Methods (Shallow Depth)

END OF ITEM P-157

Page Intentionally Blank

Item P-158 Fly Ash Treated Subgrade

Class C Fly Ash will work to modify fine grained or granular soils. In areas susceptible to freeze-thaw, a drainage layer should be provided over the modified layer.

Use of fly ash treated subgrade is generally to create a stable work platform. No structural credit is given in FAARFIELD for fly ash treated subgrades. Class C fly ash is typically added at 7-15% by dry weight. To allow for field variations the field fly ash content is generally increased by 2-3% over the design criteria.

Caution: The Engineer must check the soluble sulfate contents of the soils during design to determine if modification can react and induce heave. Sulfate reaction with either the soil to be modified or mixing water used in the modification process may be detrimental to the finished product due to the expansive nature of the sulfate reaction. During the design phase soils and water anticipated to be included in the modified material should be tested for potential to cause an adverse expansion reaction.

DESCRIPTION

158-1.1 This item shall consist of constructing one or more courses of a mixture of soil, fly ash, and water in accordance with this specification, and in conformity with the lines, grades, thicknesses, and typical cross-sections shown on the plans.

MATERIALS

158-2.1 Fly ash. Fly ash shall meet ASTM C618, Class C and contain a minimum of 25% CaO. Sample and test the fly ash in accordance with ASTM C311. The source of the fly ash shall be identified by the Contractor and approved by the Resident Project Representative (RPR) in advance of modification operations so laboratory tests can be completed prior to beginning work.

Fly ash shall be handled and stored in closed weatherproof containers until immediately before distribution. Fly ash exposed to moisture prior to mixing with soils shall be discarded.

158-2.2 Water. Water used in mixing or curing shall be from potable water sources. Other sources shall be tested in accordance with ASTM C1602 prior to use.

158-2.3 Soil. The soil shall consist of on-site materials and shall be free of roots, sod, weeds, and stones larger than 2-1/2 inches (60 mm) with a sulfate content of less than 0.3%.

COMPOSITION

158-3.1 Fly ash. Fly ash shall be applied at [12] percent dry weight, at a depth of [12] inches of subgrade treatment.

This paragraph should specify the amount of fly ash and the depth to be incorporated to achieve the results recommended by the Geotechnical Engineer.

Samples for determination of fly ash content should be from material which will represent the final placement of material to be treated. The fly ash content should be sufficient at target design, such that the liquid limit of the soils is reduced, the PH is increased, and an increase in bearing capacity is achieved.

158-3.2 Tolerances. At final compaction, the fly ash and water content for each course of subgrade treatment shall conform to the following tolerances:

Tolerances

Material	Target	Tolerance	Specifications
Fly ash	[] %	0 to + 2%	% Total Dry Materials
Moisture Content	Optimum	0 to +2%	ASTM D558

Enter the appropriate values as identified in paragraph 157-3.1

WEATHER LIMITATIONS

158-4.1 Weather limitation. Do not construct subgrade when weather conditions detrimentally affect the quality of the materials. Do not apply fly ash unless the air temperature is at least 40°F (4°C) and rising. Do not apply fly ash to soils that are frozen or contain frost. If the air temperature falls below 35°F (2°C), protect completed fly ash-treated areas by approved methods against the detrimental effects of freezing.

EQUIPMENT

158-5.1 Equipment. All equipment necessary to grade, scarify, spread, mix and compact the material shall be provided. The RPR must approve the Contractor's proposed equipment prior to the start of the treatment.

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

158-6.1 General. This specification is to construct a complete subgrade with a uniform fly ash/soil mixture which shall be free from loose or segregated areas. The subgrade shall be of uniform density and moisture content uniformly mixed for its full depth, and have with a smooth surface suitable for placing subsequent courses. The Contractor shall be responsible to meet these requirements.

Prior to any treatment, the subgrade shall be constructed as specified in Item P-152, Excavation, Subgrade and Embankment, and shaped to conform to the typical sections, lines, and grades as shown on the plans.

The machine must give visible indication at all times that it is cutting, pulverizing and mixing the material uniformly to the proper depth over the full width of the cut.

158-6.2 Application. Fly ash shall be uniformly spread only over an area where the initial mixing and compaction operations can be completed within the same workday. Fly ash shall not be applied when wind conditions are detrimental to proper application. A motor grader shall not be used to spread the fly ash. Adequate moisture shall be added to the fly ash/soil mixture to maintain the proper moisture content. Materials shall be handled, stored, and applied in accordance with all federal, state, and local requirements.

158-6.3 Mixing. The full depth of the treated subgrade shall be mixed with equipment as approved by the RPR. Fly ash shall not be left exposed for more than one (1) hour after distribution. Mixing and pulverization shall continue until the mixture contains no clods greater than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) in size. Final moisture content of the mix shall be determined by the Contractor immediately prior to compaction in accordance with ASTM D2216 or ASTM D4959. Not more than 60 minutes shall elapse between start of moist mixing and start of compaction of the treated layer.

158-6.4 Control Strip. The first half-day of construction shall be considered the control strip. The Contractor shall demonstrate, in the presence of the RPR, that the materials, equipment, and construction processes meet the requirements of the specification. The sequence and manner of rolling necessary to obtain specified density requirements shall be determined. Control strips that do not meet specification requirements shall be reworked, re-compacted, or removed and replaced at the Contractor's expense. Full operations shall not continue until the control strip has been accepted by the RPR. Upon acceptance of the control strip by the RPR, the Contractor shall use the same equipment, materials, and construction methods for the remainder of construction, unless adjustments made by the Contractor are approved in advance by the RPR.

158-6.5 Treatment Application and Depth Checks. The amount of fly ash applied shall be monitored by the Contractor to assure that no less than the amount of fly ash specified in paragraph 158-3.1 is applied. The depth of modification shall be measured by the Contractor no less than 2 tests per day of material placed; test shall be witnessed by the RPR. Measurements shall be made in test holes excavated to show the full depth of mixing.

158-6.6 Compaction. The moisture content shall be at the moisture content as specified in paragraph 158-3.2 during compaction. The field density of the compacted mixture shall be at least [95%] of the maximum density as specified in paragraph 158-6.10. Compaction of the fly ash mixture shall begin within [30 minutes] after mixing the fly ash into the subgrade. All compaction operations shall be completed within [2 hours] from the start of mixing. Perform in-place density test to determine degree of compaction. If the material fails to meet the density requirements, compaction shall continue or the material shall be removed and replaced. Maximum density refers to maximum dry density at optimum moisture content unless otherwise specified.

158-6.7 Finishing and curing. After the final lift or course of treated subgrade has been compacted, it shall be brought to the required lines and grades in accordance with the typical sections.

Finished portions of treated subgrade shall be protected to prevent equipment from marring, permanently deforming, or damaging completed work.

Sufficient protection from freezing shall be provided for at least 7 days after its construction or as approved by the RPR.

158-6.8 Maintenance. The Contractor shall maintain the fly ash treated subgrade in good condition until all the work has been completed, cured, and accepted by the RPR. When material has been exposed to excessive rain, snow, or freeze-thaw conditions, prior to placement of additional material, the Contractor shall verify that materials still meets all specification requirements. The cost is incidental to this item.

158-6.9 Surface tolerance. In those areas on which a subbase or base course is to be placed, the surface shall be tested for smoothness and accuracy of grade and crown. Any portion lacking the required

smoothness or failing in accuracy of grade or crown shall be scarified to a depth of at least 3 inches (75 mm), reshaped and re-compacted to grade until the required smoothness and accuracy are obtained and approved by the RPR. The Contractor shall perform all final smoothness and grade checks in the presence of the RPR. Any deviation in surface tolerances shall be corrected by the Contractor at the Contractor's expense.

a. Smoothness. The finished surface shall not vary more than $\pm \frac{1}{2}$ inch (12 mm) when tested with a 12-foot (3.7-m) straightedge applied parallel with and at right angles to the centerline. The straightedge shall be moved continuously forward at half the length of the 12-foot (3.7-m) straightedge for the full length of each line on a 50-foot (15-m) grid.

b. Grade. The grade and crown shall be measured on a 50-foot (15-m) grid and shall be within ± 0.05 feet (15 mm) of the specified grade.

158-6.10 Acceptance sampling and testing. Subgrade shall be accepted for density and thickness on an area basis. Testing frequency shall be a minimum of one (1) compaction and thickness test per [1000] square yards [[840] m²] of stabilized subgrade, but not less than four (4) tests per day of production. Sampling locations will be determined on a random basis per ASTM D3665.

a. Density. The [RPR shall perform all density tests] [Contractor's laboratory shall perform all density tests in the RPR's presence and provide the test results upon completion to the RPR for acceptance].

The field density of the compacted mixture shall be at least [95%] of the maximum density as determined by ASTM [D558]. Each area shall be accepted for density when the field density is at least [95%] of the maximum density of laboratory specimens compacted and tested per ASTM [D1557] [D698]. The in-place field density shall be determined per [ASTM D1556] [or] [ASTM D6938 using Procedure A, the direct transmission method, and ASTM D6938 shall be used to determine the moisture content of the material. The machine shall be calibrated in accordance with ASTM D6938]. If the specified density is not attained, the area represented by the failed test must be reworked and/or recompacted and two additional random tests made. This procedure shall be followed until the specified density is reached. Maximum density refers to maximum dry density at optimum moisture content unless otherwise specified.

May be modified as appropriate to comply with the Geotechnical Engineer's recommendations and/or requirements to achieve a specified strength, etc.

Test frequency should reflect typical day's placement. Recommend not less than one test per 1,000 square yards (840 m²) or a minimum of 4 tests per day.

The Engineer may specify ASTM D698 or ASTM D1557 for areas designated for aircraft with gross weights of less than 60,000 pounds (27200 kg). The Engineer shall specify ASTM D1557 for areas designated for aircraft with gross weights of 60,000 pounds (27200 kg) or greater.

b. Thickness. The thickness of the base course shall be within +0 and -1/2 inch (12 mm) of the specified thickness as determined by depth tests taken by the Contractor in the presence of the RPR for each area. Where the thickness is deficient by more than 1/2-inch (12 mm), the Contractor shall correct such areas at no additional cost by scarifying to a depth of at least 3 inches (75 mm), adding new material

of proper gradation, and the material shall be blended and recompact to grade. The Contractor shall replace, at his expense, base material where depth tests have been taken.

The Engineer may modify the above thickness control paragraph to permit the thickness determination by survey. Survey shall be required before and after placement of the base. The survey interval should be specified based on the size of the project.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

158-7.1 [Fly ash treated subgrade shall be paid for by the number of square yards (square meters) completed and accepted.]

[Fly ash shall be paid for by the number of tons (kg) of fly ash to achieve the application rate specified in paragraph 158-3.1.]

BASIS OF PAYMENT

158-8.1 [Payment shall be made at the contract unit price per square yard (square meter) for the fly ash treated subgrade at the specified thickness. The price shall be full compensation for furnishing all material, except the fly ash, and for all preparation, delivering, placing and mixing these materials, and all labor, equipment, tools and incidentals necessary to complete this item.]

[Payment shall be made at the contract unit price per pound (kg) of fly ash. This price shall be full compensation for furnishing this material; for all delivery, placing and incorporation of this material; and for all labor, equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete this item.]

Payment will be made under:

Item P-158-8.1	[Fly ash treated subgrade per square yard (square meter)]
	[Fly ash per ton (kg)]

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM International (ASTM)

ASTM C311	Standard Test Methods for Sampling and Testing Fly Ash or Natural Pozzolans for Use in Portland-Cement Concrete
ASTM C618	Standard Specification for Coal Fly Ash and Raw or Calcined Natural Pozzolan for Use in Concrete

ASTM C1602	Standard Specification for Mixing Water Used in the Production of Hydraulic Cement Concrete
ASTM D698	Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Standard Effort (12,400 ft-lbf/ft ³ (600 kN-m/m ³))
ASTM D1556	Standard Test Method for Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place by the Sand-Cone Method
ASTM D1557	Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Modified Effort (56,000 ft-lbf/ft ³ (2,700 kN-m/m ³))
ASTM D2487	Standard Practice for Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes (Unified Soil Classification System)
ASTM D4959	Standard Test Method for Determination of Water Content of Soil by Direct Heating
ASTM D6938	Standard Test Method for In-Place Density and Water Content of Soil and Soil-Aggregate by Nuclear Methods (Shallow Depth)

END OF ITEM P-158

Part 4 –Base Courses

Item P-207 In-place Full Depth Reclamation (FDR) Recycled Asphalt Aggregate Base Course

Item P-207 may be used as a base course under flexible and rigid pavements when pavement loads are 60,000 pounds or less, or when used as a base under stabilized bases. With FAA approval, P-207 may be used under pavement loads greater than 60,000 pounds.

This specification is intended for projects that will utilize recycling operations to reuse existing asphalt pavement and aggregate base course to create a recycled asphalt aggregate base course. Refer to P-219 for recycled concrete aggregate base course.

During the design phase the Engineer and Geotechnical engineer must (1) determine the structure of the existing pavement (2) Determine if the existing asphalt surface must be milled off (3) Determine depth of pulverization (4) Determine if mechanical or chemical stabilization is required, and if so, what type and how much stabilizing agent will be used.

Prior to full production, construction of a control strip is required to demonstrate the equipment and process to be used to pulverize, mix, spread and compact the FDR material.

DESCRIPTION

207-1.1 This item consists of a recycled asphalt aggregate base course resulting from the in-place full depth reclamation (FDR) of the existing pavement section (asphalt wearing surface and aggregate base), plus mechanical stabilization with additional aggregate or chemical stabilization with cement, asphalt emulsion or fly ash when required.

MATERIALS

207-2.1 Aggregate. The FDR shall consist of materials produced by recycling (pulverizing and mixing) the existing asphalt pavement, aggregate base, subgrade, and any additional aggregate as necessary. Material larger than 2 inches in any dimension shall not be permitted in the recycle asphalt aggregate base course.

The FDR shall meet the gradation in the table below.

FDR Gradation

Sieve	Minimum Percentage by weight passing sieves
2 inch (51 mm)	100
No. 4 (4.75 mm)	55
No. 200 (75 μ m)	[0-15]

a. Deleterious substances. Materials for aggregate base shall be kept free from weeds, sticks, grass, roots and other foreign matter.

b. Uniformity. The materials shall be thoroughly recycled (pulverized and mixed) to ensure a uniform gradation.

207-2.2 Stabilization.

a. Mechanical stabilization. [Not required.] [Addition of corrective aggregate material to adjust gradation shall be equivalent to P-208 or better.]

b. Chemical Stabilization. [Cement shall meet the requirements of ASTM C150 or ASTM C595.] [Fly ash shall meet the requirements of ASTM C618.] [Emulsified asphalt cement shall meet the requirements of ASTM D977.] [Stabilizing agent is not required.]. Materials shall be handled, stored, and applied in accordance with all federal, state, and local requirements.

The Engineer/Geotechnical Engineer shall select and designate the method of stabilization required if any.

207-2.3 Water. Water used in mixing or curing shall be from potable water sources. Other sources shall be tested in accordance with ASTM C1602 prior to use.

207-2.4 Quality Control (QC) Sampling and testing. The Contractor shall take at least [two] FDR samples per day of production in the presence of the Resident Project Representative (RPR) to check the gradation. Sampling shall be per ASTM D75. Material shall meet the requirements in paragraph 207-2.1. Samples shall be taken from the in-place, un-compacted material at random sampling locations per ASTM D3665.

The Engineer shall define if additional sampling and testing is needed.

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

207-3.1 Milling. [Milling is not required.] [The existing asphalt pavement shall be milled to a depth of [] inches below surface grade.]]

207-3.2 Control Strip. The first half-day of construction shall be considered the control strip. The Contractor shall demonstrate, in the presence of the RPR, that the materials, equipment, and construction processes meet the requirements of the specification. The sequence and manner of rolling necessary to obtain specified density requirements shall be determined. Control strips that do not meet specification requirements shall be reworked, re-compacted, or removed and replaced at the Contractor's expense. Full operations shall not begin until the control strip has been accepted by the RPR. Upon acceptance of the control strip by the RPR, the Contractor shall use the same equipment, materials, and construction methods for the remainder of construction, unless adjustments made by the Contractor are approved in advance by the RPR.

The purpose of the control strip is to establish the target speed and/or revolutions per minute (RPM) of the reclaimer and spreading equipment to assure that the moisture content and stabilized agent (if applicable) spread rates will be acceptable.

207-3.3 Recycling (Pulverization and mixing). The asphalt pavement, aggregate base and subgrade shall be recycled (pulverized and mixed) into a uniformly blended mixture with [4] inches (100 mm) of [P-208] aggregate base [and] [6]% cement [3] percent of emulsified asphalt [12]% fly ash [by dry unit weight and water to the depth indicated on the plans. All material over approximately 2 inches (50 mm) shall be removed by the Contractor. The mixture shall be brought to the desired moisture content.

The maximum lift thickness of the recycled aggregate base course material to be compacted shall be [12 inches (300 mm)].

Depth of cut must be shown on the plans and verified during construction of the Control Strip.

207-3.4 Grading and compaction. Immediately upon completion of recycling (pulverization and mixing), the material shall be shaped and graded in accordance with the project plans. The recycled asphalt aggregate base course shall be compacted within the same day to an in-place density of [95%] as determined by [ASTM D1557] [ASTM D558]. The moisture content of the material during compaction shall be within $\pm 2\%$ of the optimum moisture content as determined by ASTM D2216. The number, type and weight of rollers shall be sufficient to compact the material to the required density. Maximum density refers to maximum dry density at optimum moisture content unless otherwise specified.

207-3.5 Finishing. The surface of the aggregate base course shall be finished by blading or with automated equipment designed for this purpose. If the top layer is 1/2 inch (12 mm) or more below grade, the top layer shall be scarified to a depth of at least 3 inches (75mm), new material added, and the layer blended and re-compacted to bring it to grade. The addition of layers less than 3 inches (75mm) shall not be allowed.

207-3.6 Proof rolling. Compacted asphalt aggregate base course shall be proof rolled with a [tandem axle dual wheel dump truck loaded to the legal limit with tires inflated to 80 psi (550 kPa)] [] ton Proof Roller with tires spaced not more than 32 inches (0.8 m) on-center with tires inflated to [100

(690) [125 (860)] [150 (1030)] psi (kPa)] in the presence of the RPR. Soft areas that deflect greater than 0.5 inch (12 mm) or show permanent deformation greater than 0.5 inch (12 mm) shall be removed and reworked at the Contractor's expense.

The Engineer shall select the proof-rolling method and number of coverages.

207-3.7 Weather limitations. When weather conditions detrimentally affect the construction process and/or quality of the materials, the Contractor shall stop construction. Cement or fly ash shall not be applied when wind conditions affect the distribution of the materials. When the aggregates contain frozen materials or when the underlying course is frozen or wet, the construction shall be stopped. Construction shall not be performed unless the atmospheric temperature is above 35°F (2°C) and rising or approved by the RPR. When the temperature falls below 35°F (2°C), protect all completed areas against detrimental effects of freezing by approved methods. Correct completed areas damaged by freezing, rainfall, or other weather conditions to meet specified requirements.

207-3.8 Maintenance. The asphalt aggregate base course shall be maintained in a satisfactory condition until the work is accepted by the RPR. Equipment used in the construction of an adjoining section may be routed over completed sections of asphalt aggregate base course, provided that no damage results and equipment is routed over the full width of the completed asphalt aggregate base course. Any damage to the recycled asphalt aggregate base course shall be repaired by the Contractor at the Contractor's expense.

207-3.9 Surface tolerances. The finished surface shall be tested for smoothness and accuracy of grade. Any area failing smoothness or grade shall be scarified to a depth of at least 3 inches (75 mm), reshaped and re-compacted by the Contractor at the Contractor's expense.

a. Smoothness. The finished surface shall not vary more than 3/8-inch (9 mm) when tested with a 12-foot (3.7-m) straightedge applied parallel with and at right angles to the centerline. The straightedge shall be moved continuously forward at half the length of the 12-foot (3.7-m) straightedge for the full length of each line on a 50-foot (15-m) grid.

b. Grade. The grade shall be measured on a 50-foot (15-m) grid and shall be within +0 and -1/2 inch (12 mm) of the specified grade.

207-3.10 Acceptance sampling and testing for density. FDR base course shall be accepted for density and thickness on an area basis. One (1) test for density and thickness will be made for each [1200 square yds (1000 square meters)]. Sampling locations will be determined on a random basis in accordance with ASTM D3665.

a. Density. The [RPR shall perform all density tests] [Contractor's laboratory shall perform all density tests in the RPR's presence and provide the test results upon completion to the RPR for acceptance].

Each area will be accepted for density when the field density is at least [95%] of the maximum density of the FDR base course in accordance with [ASTM D1557] [ASTM D558]. The in-place field density shall be determined in accordance with [ASTM D1556] [or] [ASTM D6938 using Procedure A, the direct transmission method, and ASTM D6938 shall be used to determine the moisture content of the material. The machine shall be calibrated in accordance with ASTM D6938]. If the specified density is not attained, the area represented by the failed test must be reworked and/or recompacted and two additional random tests made. This procedure shall be followed until the specified density is reached.

Maximum density refers to maximum dry density at optimum moisture content unless otherwise specified.

The Engineer may adjust the testing area as appropriate to the job size.

Specify ASTM D698 or ASTM D1557 for areas designated for aircraft with gross weights of less than 60,000 pounds (27200 kg). Specify ASTM D1557 for areas designated for aircraft with gross weights of 60,000 pounds (27200 kg) or greater.

b. Thickness. The thickness of the base course shall be within +0 and -1/2 inch (12 mm) of the specified thickness as determined by depth tests taken by the Contractor in the presence of the RPR for each area. Where the thickness is deficient by more than 1/2-inch (12 mm), the Contractor shall correct such areas at no additional cost by scarifying to a depth of at least 3 inches (75 mm), adding new material, and recompacted to grade. The Contractor shall replace, at his expense, base material where depth tests have been taken.

The Engineer may modify the above thickness control paragraph to permit the thickness determination by survey. Survey shall be required before and after placement of the base. The survey interval should be specified based on the size of the project.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

207-4.1 The quantity of FDR asphalt aggregate base course shall be measured by the number of square yards (m²) of material in compliance with the plans and specifications.

207-4.2 [The quantity of corrective aggregate material shall be measured by the [ton][kg][cubic yards][cubic meters].]

[The quantity of emulsified asphalt shall be measured by the [ton][kg].]

[The quantity of cement shall be measured by the [ton][kg].]

[The quantity of fly ash shall be measured by the [ton][kg].]

BASIS OF PAYMENT

207-5.1 Payment shall be made at the contract unit price per square yard (m²) for recycling the existing asphalt pavement, aggregate base course, subgrade and mixing with stabilizing agent, if required, spreading, compacting, and maintaining the recycled material to the compacted thickness as indicated on the drawings. This price shall be full compensation for furnishing all materials, for preparing and placing these materials, and for all labor, equipment tools and incidentals to complete the item.

Payment will be made under:

Item P207-5.1 In-place Full Depth Recycled (FDR) asphalt aggregate base course –per square yard (m²)

207-5.2 Payment shall be made at the contract unit price per [ton (kg)] for the stabilizing agent.

Item P207-5.2 [Corrective aggregate material per[ton][kg]
[cubic yards][cubic meters]].
[Emulsified asphalt, per[ton][kg]]
[Cement, per[ton][kg]]
[Fly ash, per[ton][kg]]

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM International (ASTM)

ASTM C29	Unit Weight of Aggregate
ASTM C88	Soundness of Aggregates by Use of Sodium or Magnesium Sulfate
ASTM C117	Materials Finer than 75-μm (No. 200) Sieve in Mineral Aggregate by Washing
ASTM C131	Resistance to abrasion of Small Size Coarse Aggregate by Use of Los Angeles Machine
ASTM C136	Sieve or Screen Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregate
ASTM C150	Standard Specification for Portland Cement
ASTM C595	Standard Specification for Blended Hydraulic Cements
ASTM C1602	Standard Specification for Mixing Water Used in the Production of Hydraulic Cement Concrete
ASTM D75	Sampling Aggregate
ASTM D558	ASTM D558 Standard Test Methods for Moisture-Density (Unit Weight) Relations of Soil-Cement Mixtures
ASTM D698	Moisture Density Relations of Soils and Aggregate using 5.5 lb Rammer and 12 in drop
ASTM D977	Standard Specification for Emulsified Asphalt
ASTM D1556	Test Method for Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place by the Sand Cone Method
ASTM D1557	Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Modified Effort
ASTM D2216	Test Methods for Laboratory Determination of Water (Moisture) Soil and Rock by Mass
ASTM D2419	Test Method for Sand Equivalent Value of Soils and Fine Aggregate

ASTM D2487	Standard Practice for Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes (Unified Soil Classification System)
ASTM D3665	Standard Practice for Random Sampling of Construction Materials
ASTM D4318	Standard Test Methods for Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit, and Plasticity Index of Soils
ASTM D4491	Standard Test Methods for Water Permeability of Geotextiles by Permittivity
ASTM D4751	Standard Test Methods for Determining Apparent Opening Size of a Geotextile
ASTM D5821	Standard Test Method for Determining the Percentage of Fractured Particles in Coarse Aggregate
ASTM D6938	Standard Test Method for In-Place Density and Water Content of Soil and Soil Aggregate by Nuclear Methods (Shallow Depth)
American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO)	
M288	Standard Specification for Geosynthetic Specification for Highway Applications

END OF ITEM P-207

Page Intentionally Blank

Item P-208 Aggregate Base Course

Use Item P-208 as a base course when pavement loads are 60,000 pounds or less or when Item P-208 is placed as a subbase under Item P-209 or other stabilized bases.

DESCRIPTION

208-1.1 This item shall consist of a base course composed of course aggregate bonded with fine aggregate base. It shall be constructed on a prepared subgrade or subbase course per these specifications and shall conform to the dimensions and typical cross-section shown on the plans.

MATERIALS

208-2.1 Aggregate base. The aggregate base material shall consist of both fine and coarse aggregate. Material shall be clean, sound, durable particles and fragments of stone or gravel, crushed stone, [crushed slag,] or crushed gravel mixed or blended with sand, screenings, or other materials. Materials shall be handled and stored in accordance with all federal, state, and local requirements. The aggregate shall be free from clay lumps, organic matter, or other deleterious materials or coatings. The method used to produce the crushed gravel shall result in the fractured particles in the finished product as nearly constant and uniform as practicable. The fine aggregate portion, defined as the portion passing the No. 4 (4.75 mm) sieve produced in crushing operations, shall be incorporated in the base material to the extent permitted by the gradation requirements. Aggregate base material requirements are listed in the following table.

Aggregate Base Material Requirements

Material Test	Requirement	Standard
Coarse Aggregate		
Resistance to Degradation	Loss: 50% maximum	ASTM C131
Soundness of Aggregates by Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate	Loss after 5 cycles: 12% maximum using Sodium sulfate - or - 18% maximum using magnesium sulfate	ASTM C88
Percentage of Fractured Particles	Minimum 60% by weight of particles with at least two fractured faces and 75% with at least one fractured face ¹	ASTM D5821
Flat Particles, Elongated Particles, or Flat and Elongated Particles	10% maximum, by weight, of flat, elongated, or flat and elongated particles ²	ASTM D4791
[Bulk density of slag	Weigh not less than 70 pounds per cubic foot (1.12 Mg/cubic meter)	ASTM C29]
[Clay lumps and friable particles	Less than or equal to 3 percent	ASTM C142]
Fine Aggregate		
Liquid limit	Less than or equal to 25	ASTM D4318
Plasticity Index	Not more than five (5)	ASTM D4318

¹ The area of each face shall be equal to at least 75% of the smallest mid-sectional area of the piece. When two fractured faces are contiguous, the angle between the planes of fractures shall be at least 30 degrees to count as two fractured faces.

² A flat particle is one having a ratio of width to thickness greater than five (5); an elongated particle is one having a ratio of length to width greater than five (5).

Delete bracketed reference to crushed slag in above paragraph and table if slag will not be used in the project.

208-2.2 Gradation requirements. The gradation of the aggregate base material shall meet the requirements of the gradation given in the following table when tested per ASTM C117 and ASTM C136. The gradation shall be well graded from coarse to fine and shall not vary from the lower limit on one sieve to the high limit on an adjacent sieve or vice versa.

Gradation of Aggregate Base

Sieve Size	Design Range Percentage by Weight passing	Contractor's Final Gradation	Job Control Grading Band Tolerances for Contractor's Final Gradation ¹ Percent
2 inch (50 mm)	*		±0
1-1/2 inch (37.5 mm)	*		±5
1 inch (25.0 mm)	*		±8
3/4 inch (19.0 mm)	*		±8
No. 4 (4.75 mm)	*		±8
No. 40 (425 µm)	*		±5
No. 200 (75 µm)	*		±3

- 1 The "Job Control Grading Band Tolerances for Contractor's Final Gradation" in the table shall be applied to "Contractor's Final Gradation" to establish a job control grading band. The full tolerance still applies if application of the tolerances results in a job control grading band outside the design range.

The Engineer shall select the required gradation from the following table and replace the asterisks in the column titled "Design Range Percentage by Weight." Leave the column titled "Contractor's Final Gradation" blank. The Contractor's Final Gradation approved by the RPR will be used to populate this column and the "Job Control Grading Band Tolerances for Contractor's Final Gradation" will apply to this column for the project duration, and these limits establish quality control action limit for the Contractor.

When non frost susceptible material is required, the maximum allowable material passing the No. 200 (75 µm) sieve shall be reduced to 0-5%. For areas subject to substantial frost penetration into base and subbase a separation filter layer or geosynthetic separation layer is recommended.

Gradation of Aggregate Base

Sieve Designation	Percentage by weight passing		
	2" maximum	1-1/2" maximum	1" maximum
2 inch (50 mm)	100	--	--
1-1/2 inch (37.5 mm)	70-100	100	--
1 inch (25.0 mm)	55-85	70-100	100
3/4 inch (19.0 mm)	50-80	55-85	70-100
No. 4 (4.75 mm)	30-60	30-60	35-65
No. 40 (425 µm) ¹	10-30	10-30	10-25
No. 200 (75 µm) ¹	5-15	5-15	5-15

¹The fraction of material passing the No. 200 (75 µm) sieve shall not exceed two-thirds the fraction passing the No. 40 (425 µm) sieve.

208-2.3 Sampling and testing.

a. Aggregate base materials. The Contractor shall take samples of the aggregate base in accordance with ASTM D75 to verify initial aggregate base requirements and gradation. Material shall meet the requirements in paragraphs 208-2.1 and 208-2.2. This sampling and testing will be the basis for approval of the aggregate base quality requirements. []

b. Gradation requirements. The Contractor shall take at least [two] aggregate base samples per day in the presence of the Resident Project Representative (RPR) to check the final gradation. Sampling shall be per ASTM D75. Material shall meet the requirements in paragraph 208-2.2. The samples shall be taken from the in-place, un-compacted material at sampling points and intervals designated by the RPR.

**The Engineer may require additional sampling points for quality requirements.
The Engineer shall define when additional sampling points are needed in the above paragraph.**

**On large projects and/or projects that span multiple construction seasons,
additional aggregate tests may be necessary to validate consistency of aggregate
produced and delivered for the project.**

208-2.4 Separation Geotextile. [Not used.] [Separation geotextile shall be
[[Class 2], [0.02 sec⁻¹] permittivity per ASTM D4491, Apparent
opening size per ASTM D4751 with [0.60 mm] maximum average roll
value.]

**The use of a geotextile to prevent mixing of a subgrade soil and an aggregate
subbase/base is appropriate for pavement structures constructed over soils with a
California Bearing Ratio greater than 3.**

**Generally, a Class 2 geotextile with a permittivity of 0.02 and AOS of 0.6 mm will be
sufficient.**

See AASHTO M288 for additional notes regarding separation geotextiles.

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

208-3.1 Control strip. The first half-day of construction shall be considered the control strip. The Contractor shall demonstrate, in the presence of the RPR, that the materials, equipment, and construction processes meet the requirements of the specification. The sequence and manner of rolling necessary to obtain specified density requirements shall be determined. The maximum compacted thickness may be increased to a maximum of 12 inches (300 mm) upon the Contractor's demonstration that approved equipment and operations will uniformly compact the lift to the specified density. The RPR must witness this demonstration and approve the lift thickness prior to full production.

Control strips that do not meet specification requirements shall be reworked, re-compacted or removed and replaced at the Contractor's expense. Full operations shall not continue until the control strip has been accepted by the RPR. The Contractor shall use the same equipment, materials, and construction

methods for the remainder of construction, unless adjustments made by the Contractor are approved by the RPR.

208-3.2 Preparing underlying subgrade and/or subbase. The underlying subgrade and/or subbase shall be checked and accepted by the RPR before base course placing and spreading operations begin. Re-proof rolling of the subgrade or proof rolling of the subbase in accordance with Item P-152, at the Contractor's expense, may be required by the RPR if the Contractor fails to ensure proper drainage or protect the subgrade and/or subbase. Any ruts or soft, yielding areas due to improper drainage conditions, hauling, or any other cause, shall be corrected before the base course is placed. To ensure proper drainage, the spreading of the base shall begin along the centerline of the pavement on a crowned section or on the high side of the pavement with a one-way slope.

208-3.3 Production. The aggregate shall be uniformly blended and, when at a satisfactory moisture content per paragraph 208-3.5, the approved material may be transported directly to the placement.

208-3.4 Placement. The aggregate shall be placed and spread on the prepared underlying layer by spreader boxes or other devices as approved by the RPR, to a uniform thickness and width. The equipment shall have positive thickness controls to minimize the need for additional manipulation of the material. Dumping from vehicles that require re-handling shall not be permitted. Hauling over the uncompacted base course shall not be permitted.

The aggregate shall meet gradation and moisture requirements prior to compaction. The base course layer shall be constructed in lifts as established in the control strip, but not less than 4 inches (100 mm) nor more than 12 inches (300 mm) of compacted thickness.

When more than one lift is required to establish the layer thickness shown on the plans, the construction procedure described here shall apply to each lift. No lift shall be covered by subsequent lifts until tests verify that compaction requirements have been met. The Contractor shall rework, re-compact and retest any material placed which does not meet the specifications at the Contractor's expense.

208-3.5 Compaction. Immediately upon completion of the spreading operations, compact each layer of the base course, as specified, with approved compaction equipment. The number, type, and weight of rollers shall be sufficient to compact the material to the required density within the same day that the aggregate is placed on the subgrade.

The field density of each compacted lift of material shall be at least [100%] of the maximum density of laboratory specimens prepared from samples of the base material delivered to the jobsite. The laboratory specimens shall be compacted and tested in accordance with [____]. The moisture content of the material during placing operations shall be within ± 2 percentage points of the optimum moisture content as determined by ASTM [____]. Maximum density refers to maximum dry density at optimum moisture content unless otherwise specified.

Material meeting the requirements of P-208 may be free-draining and to achieve compaction may need to be compacted on the wet-side of optimum.

The Engineer shall specify ASTM D698 or ASTM D1557 for areas designated for aircraft with gross weights of 60,000 pounds (27200 kg) or less and ASTM D1557 for areas designated for aircraft with gross weights greater than 60,000 pounds (27200 kg).

If the material has greater than 30% retained on the 3/4-inch (19.0 mm) sieve, ASTM D1557 or D698 has suggested procedures for dealing with oversize material.

208-3.6 Weather limitations. Material shall not be placed unless the ambient air temperature is at least 40°F (4°C) and rising. Work on base course shall not be conducted when the subgrade or subbase is wet or frozen or the base material contains frozen material.

208-3.7 Maintenance. The base course shall be maintained in a condition that will meet all specification requirements. When material has been exposed to excessive rain, snow, or freeze-thaw conditions, prior to placement of additional material, the Contractor shall verify that materials still meet all specification requirements. Equipment may be routed over completed sections of base course, provided that no damage results and the equipment is routed over the full width of the completed base course. Any damage resulting to the base course from routing equipment over the base course shall be repaired by the Contractor at their expense.

208-3.8 Surface tolerances. After the course has been compacted, the surface shall be tested for smoothness and accuracy of grade and crown. Any portion lacking the required smoothness or failing in accuracy of grade or crown shall be scarified to a depth of at least 3 inches (75 mm), reshaped and recompact to grade until the required smoothness and accuracy are obtained and approved by the RPR. Any deviation in surface tolerances shall be corrected by the Contractor at the Contractor's expense. The smoothness and accuracy requirements specified here apply only to the top layer when base course is constructed in more than one layer.

a. Smoothness. The finished surface shall not vary more than 3/8-inch (9 mm) when tested with a 12-foot (3.7-m) straightedge applied parallel with and at right angles to the centerline. The straightedge shall be moved continuously forward at half the length of the 12-foot (3.7-m) straightedge for the full length of each line on a 50-foot (15-m) grid.

b. Grade. The grade and crown shall be measured on a 50-foot (15-m) grid and shall be within +0 and -1/2 inch (12 mm) of the specified grade.

208-3.9 Acceptance sampling and testing. Aggregate base course shall be accepted for density and thickness on an area basis. Two tests will be made for density and thickness for each [1200 square yards (1000 square meters)]. Sampling locations will be determined on a random basis per ASTM D3665.

a. Density. The [RPR shall perform all density tests][Contractor's laboratory shall perform all density tests in the RPR's presence and provide the test results upon completion to the RPR for acceptance].

Each area shall be accepted for density when the field density is at least [100%] of the maximum density of laboratory specimens compacted and tested per ASTM [D1557][D698]. The in-place field density shall be determined per [ASTM D1556.][or][ASTM D6938 using Procedure A, the direct transmission method, and ASTM D6938 shall be used to determine the moisture content of the material. The machine shall be calibrated in accordance with ASTM D6938.]. If the specified density is not attained, the area represented by the failed test must be reworked and/or recompact and two additional random tests made. This procedure shall be followed until the specified density is reached. Maximum density refers to maximum dry density at optimum moisture content unless otherwise specified.

The Engineer may adjust the testing area as appropriate to the job size.

Specify ASTM D698 or ASTM D1557 for areas designated for aircraft with gross weights of less than 60,000 pounds (27200 kg). Specify ASTM D1557 for areas designated for aircraft with gross weights of 60,000 pounds (27200 kg) or greater.

b. Thickness. Depth tests shall be made by test holes at least 3 inches (75 mm) in diameter that extend through the base. The thickness of the base course shall be within +0 and -1/2 inch (12 mm) of the specified thickness as determined by depth tests taken by the Contractor in the presence of the RPR for each area. Where the thickness is deficient by more than 1/2-inch (12 mm), the Contractor shall correct such areas at no additional cost by scarifying to a depth of at least 3 inches (75 mm), adding new material of proper gradation, and the material shall be blended and recompact to grade. The Contractor shall replace, at his expense, base material where depth tests have been taken.

The Engineer may modify the above thickness control paragraph to permit the thickness determination by survey. Survey shall be required before and after placement of the base. The survey interval should be specified based on the size of the project.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

208-4.1 The quantity of aggregate base course shall be measured by the number of [square yards (square meters)][cubic yards (cubic meters)] of material actually constructed and accepted by the RPR as complying with the plans and specifications. Base materials shall not be included in any other excavation quantities.

[**208-4.2** Separation geotextile shall be measured by the number of [square yards][square meters] of materials placed and accepted by the RPR as complying with the plans and specifications excluding seam overlaps and edge anchoring.]

BASIS OF PAYMENT

208-5.1 Payment shall be made at the contract unit price per [square yards (square meters)][cubic yard (cubic meter)] for aggregate base course. This price shall be full compensation for furnishing all materials and for all operations, hauling, placing, and compacting of these materials, and for all labor, equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete the item.

[**208-5.2** Payment shall be made at the contract unit price per [square yard][square meter] for separation geotextile. The price shall be full compensation for furnishing all labor, equipment, material, anchors, and incidentals necessary.]

Payment will be made under:

Item P-208-5.1	Aggregate Base Course - per [square yards (square meters)][cubic yard (cubic meter)]

[Item P-208-5.2 Separation geotextile per [square yard] [square meter]]

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM International (ASTM)

ASTM C29	Standard Test Method for Bulk Density (“Unit Weight”) and Voids in Aggregate
ASTM C88	Standard Test Method for Soundness of Aggregates by Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate
ASTM C117	Standard Test Method for Materials Finer than 75- μm (No. 200) Sieve in Mineral Aggregates by Washing
ASTM C131	Standard Test Method for Resistance to Degradation of Small-Size Coarse Aggregate by Abrasion and Impact in the Los Angeles Machine
ASTM C136	Standard Test Method for Sieve or Screen Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates
ASTM C142	Standard Test Method for Clay Lumps and Friable Particles in Aggregates
ASTM D75	Standard Practice for Sampling Aggregates
ASTM D698	Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Standard Effort (12,400 ft-lbf/ft ³ (600 kN-m/m ³))
ASTM D1556	Standard Test Method for Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place by the Sand-Cone Method
ASTM D1557	Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Modified Effort (56,000 ft-lbf/ft ³ (2700 kN-m/m ³))
ASTM D2167	Standard Test Method for Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place by the Rubber Balloon Method
ASTM D2487	Standard Practice for Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes (Unified Soil Classification System)
ASTM D3665	Standard Practice for Random Sampling of Construction Materials
ASTM D4318	Standard Test Methods for Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit, and Plasticity Index of Soils
ASTM D4491	Standard Test Methods for Water Permeability of Geotextiles by Permittivity
ASTM D4643	Standard Test Method for Determination of Water Content of Soil and Rock by Microwave Oven Heating
ASTM D4751	Standard Test Methods for Determining Apparent Opening Size of a Geotextile

ASTM D4791	Standard Test Method for Flat Particles, Elongated Particles, or Flat and Elongated Particles in Coarse Aggregate
ASTM D5821	Standard Test Method for Determining the Percentage of Fractured Particles in Coarse Aggregate
ASTM D6938	Standard Test Method for In-Place Density and Water Content of Soil and Soil-Aggregate by Nuclear Methods (Shallow Depth)
ASTM D7928	Standard Test Method for Particle-Size Distribution (Gradation) of Fine-Grained Soils Using the Sedimentation (Hydrometer) Analysis
American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO)	
M288	Standard Specification for Geosynthetic Specification for Highway Applications

END OF ITEM P-208

Page Intentionally Blank

Item P-209 Crushed Aggregate Base Course

Item P-209, Crushed Aggregate Base Course, can be used as a base course under flexible or rigid pavements. See AC 150/5320-6 for additional guidance.

DESCRIPTION

209-1.1 This item consists of a base course composed of crushed aggregate base constructed on a prepared course in accordance with these specifications and in conformity to the dimensions and typical cross-sections shown on the plans.

MATERIALS

209-2.1 Crushed aggregate base. Crushed aggregate shall consist of clean, sound, durable particles of crushed stone, crushed gravel, [or crushed slag] and shall be free from coatings of clay, silt, organic material, clay lumps or balls or other deleterious materials or coatings. The method used to produce the crushed gravel shall result in the fractured particles in the finished product as consistent and uniform as practicable. Fine aggregate portion, defined as the portion passing the No. 4 (4.75 mm) sieve shall consist of fines from the coarse aggregate crushing operation. The fine aggregate shall be produced by crushing stone, gravel, [or slag] that meet the coarse aggregate requirements for wear and soundness. Aggregate base material requirements are listed in the following table.

Crushed Aggregate Base Material Requirements

Material Test	Requirement	Standard
Coarse Aggregate		
Resistance to Degradation	Loss: 45% maximum	ASTM C131
Soundness of Aggregates by Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate	Loss after 5 cycles: 12% maximum using Sodium sulfate - or - 18% maximum using magnesium sulfate	ASTM C88
Percentage of Fractured Particles	Minimum 90% by weight of particles with at least two fractured faces and 98% with at least one fractured face ¹	ASTM D5821
Flat Particles, Elongated Particles, or Flat and Elongated Particles	10% maximum, by weight, of flat, elongated, or flat and elongated particles ²	ASTM D4791
[Bulk density of slag	Weigh not less than 70 pounds per cubic foot (1.12 Mg/cubic meter)	ASTM C29]
[Clay lumps and friable particles	Less than or equal to 3 percent	ASTM C142]
Fine Aggregate		
Liquid limit	Less than or equal to 25	ASTM D4318
Plasticity Index	Not more than five (5)	ASTM D4318

¹ The area of each face shall be equal to at least 75% of the smallest mid-sectional area of the piece. When two fractured faces are contiguous, the angle between the planes of fractures shall be at least 30 degrees to count as two fractured faces.

² A flat particle is one having a ratio of width to thickness greater than five (5); an elongated particle is one having a ratio of length to width greater than five (5).

Delete bracketed reference to crushed slag in above paragraph and table if slag will not be used in the project.

209-2.2 Gradation requirements. The gradation of the aggregate base material shall meet the requirements of the gradation given in the following table when tested per ASTM C117 and ASTM C136. The gradation shall be well graded from coarse to fine and shall not vary from the lower limit on one sieve to the high limit on an adjacent sieve or vice versa.

Gradation of Aggregate Base

Sieve Size	Design Range Percentage by Weight passing	Contractor's Final Gradation	Job Control Grading Band Tolerances ¹ (Percent)
2 inch (50 mm)	100		0
1-1/2 inch (37.5 mm)	95-100		±5
1 inch (25.0 mm)	70-95		±8
3/4 inch (19.0 mm)	55-85		±8
No. 4 (4.75 mm)	30-60		±8
No. 40 ² (425 µm)	10-30		±5
No. 200 ² (75 µm)	[0-10]		±3

¹ The "Job Control Grading Band Tolerances for Contractor's Final Gradation" in the table shall be applied to "Contractor's Final Gradation" to establish a job control grading band. The full tolerance still applies if application of the tolerances results in a job control grading band outside the design range.

² The fraction of material passing the No 200 (75 µm) sieve shall not exceed two-thirds the fraction passing the No 40 (425 µm) sieve.

When non frost susceptible material is required, the maximum material passing the No. 200 (75 µm) sieve shall be reduced to 0-5%. For areas subject to substantial frost penetration into base and subgrade layers, a separation filter layer or geosynthetic separation layer is recommended.

Leave the column titled "Contractor's Final Gradation" blank in the above table. The Contractor's Final Gradation approved by the Engineer/RPR will be used to populate this column and the "Job Control Grading Band Tolerances for Contractor's Final Gradation" will apply to this column for the project duration, and these limits establish quality control action limits for the Contractor.

209-2.3 Sampling and Testing.

a. Aggregate base materials. The Contractor shall take samples of the aggregate base in accordance with ASTM D75 to verify initial aggregate base requirements and gradation. Material shall meet the requirements in paragraph 209-2.1. This sampling and testing will be the basis for approval of the aggregate base quality requirements. []

b. Gradation requirements. The Contractor shall take at least [two] aggregate base samples per day in the presence of the Resident Project Representative (RPR) to check the final gradation. Sampling shall be per ASTM D75. Material shall meet the requirements in paragraph 209-2.2. The samples shall be taken from the in-place, un-compacted material at sampling points and intervals designated by the RPR.

The Engineer may require additional sampling points for quality requirements. The Engineer shall define when additional sampling points are needed in the above paragraph.

On large projects and/or projects that span multiple construction seasons, additional aggregate tests may be necessary to validate consistency of aggregate produced and delivered for the project.

209-2.4 Separation Geotextile. [Not used.][Separation geotextile shall be [Class 2], [0.02 sec⁻¹] permittivity per ASTM D4491, Apparent opening size per ASTM D4751 with [0.60 mm] maximum average roll value.]

The use of a geotextile to prevent mixing of a subgrade soil and an aggregate subbase/base is appropriate for pavement structures constructed over soils with a California Bearing Ratio greater than 3.

Generally, on airport projects, a Class 2 geotextile with a permittivity of 0.02 and AOS of 0.6 mm will be sufficient.

See AASHTO M288 for additional notes regarding separation geotextiles.

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

209-3.1 Control strip. The first half-day of construction shall be considered the control strip. The Contractor shall demonstrate, in the presence of the RPR, that the materials, equipment, and construction processes meet the requirements of the specification. The sequence and manner of rolling necessary to obtain specified density requirements shall be determined. The maximum compacted thickness may be increased to a maximum of 12 inches (300 mm) upon the Contractor's demonstration that approved equipment and operations will uniformly compact the lift to the specified density. The RPR must witness this demonstration and approve the lift thickness prior to full production.

Control strips that do not meet specification requirements shall be reworked, re-compacted or removed and replaced at the Contractor's expense. Full operations shall not continue until the control strip has been accepted by the RPR. The Contractor shall use the same equipment, materials, and construction methods for the remainder of construction, unless adjustments made by the Contractor are approved by the RPR.

209-3.2 Preparing underlying subgrade and/or subbase. The underlying subgrade and/or subbase shall be checked and accepted by the RPR before base course placing and spreading operations begin. Re-proof rolling of the subgrade or proof rolling of the subbase in accordance with Item P-152, at the Contractor's expense, may be required by the RPR if the Contractor fails to ensure proper drainage or protect the subgrade and/or subbase. Any ruts or soft, yielding areas due to improper drainage conditions, hauling, or any other cause, shall be corrected before the base course is placed. To ensure proper drainage, the spreading of the base shall begin along the centerline of the pavement on a crowned section or on the high side of the pavement with a one-way slope.

209-3.3 Production. The aggregate shall be uniformly blended and, when at a satisfactory moisture content per paragraph 209-3.5, the approved material may be transported directly to the placement.

209-3.4 Placement. The aggregate shall be placed and spread on the prepared underlying layer by spreader boxes or other devices as approved by the RPR, to a uniform thickness and width. The equipment shall have positive thickness controls to minimize the need for additional manipulation of the material. Dumping from vehicles that require re-handling shall not be permitted. Hauling over the uncompacted base course shall not be permitted.

The aggregate shall meet gradation and moisture requirements prior to compaction. The base course shall be constructed in lifts as established in the control strip, but not less than 4 inches (100 mm) nor more than 12 inches (300 mm) of compacted thickness.

When more than one lift is required to establish the layer thickness shown on the plans, the construction procedure described here shall apply to each lift. No lift shall be covered by subsequent lifts until tests verify that compaction requirements have been met. The Contractor shall rework, re-compact and retest any material placed which does not meet the specifications at the Contractor's expense.

209-3.5 Compaction. Immediately after completion of the spreading operations, compact each layer of the base course, as specified, with approved compaction equipment. The number, type, and weight of rollers shall be sufficient to compact the material to the required density within the same day that the aggregate is placed on the subgrade.

The field density of each compacted lift of material shall be at least [100%] of the maximum density of laboratory specimens prepared from samples of the base material delivered to the jobsite. The laboratory specimens shall be compacted and tested in accordance with [ASTM D1557]. The moisture content of the material during placing operations shall be within ± 2 percentage points of the optimum moisture content as determined by ASTM [____]. Maximum density refers to maximum dry density at optimum moisture content unless otherwise specified.

Material meeting the requirements of P-209 may be free-draining and to achieve compaction may need to be compacted on the wet-side of optimum.

The Engineer may specify ASTM D698 for areas designated for aircraft with gross weights of 60,000 pounds (27200 kg) or less and ASTM D1557 for areas designated for aircraft with gross weights greater than 60,000 pounds (27200 kg).

If the material has greater than 30% retained on the 3/4-inch (19.0 mm) sieve, ASTM D1557 or D698 has suggested procedures for dealing with oversize material.

209-3.6 Weather limitations. Material shall not be placed unless the ambient air temperature is at least 40°F (4°C) and rising. Work on base course shall not be conducted when the subgrade or subbase is wet or frozen or the base material contains frozen material.

209-3.7 Maintenance. The base course shall be maintained in a condition that will meet all specification requirements. When material has been exposed to excessive rain, snow, or freeze-thaw conditions, prior to placement of additional material, the Contractor shall verify that materials still meet all specification requirements. Equipment may be routed over completed sections of base course, provided that no damage results and the equipment is routed over the full width of the completed base course. Any damage resulting to the base course from routing equipment over the base course shall be repaired by the Contractor at the Contractor's expense.

209-3.8 Surface tolerances. After the course has been compacted, the surface shall be tested for smoothness and accuracy of grade and crown. Any portion lacking the required smoothness or failing in accuracy of grade or crown shall be scarified to a depth of at least 3 inches (75 mm), reshaped and recompact to grade until the required smoothness and accuracy are obtained and approved by the RPR. Any deviation in surface tolerances shall be corrected by the Contractor at the Contractor's expense. The smoothness and accuracy requirements specified here apply only to the top layer when base course is constructed in more than one layer.

a. Smoothness. The finished surface shall not vary more than 3/8-inch (9 mm) when tested with a 12-foot (3.7-m) straightedge applied parallel with and at right angles to the centerline. The straightedge shall be moved continuously forward at half the length of the 12-foot (3.7-m) straightedge for the full length of each line on a 50-foot (15-m) grid.

b. Grade. The grade and crown shall be measured on a 50-foot (15-m) grid and shall be within +0 and -1/2 inch (12 mm) of the specified grade.

209-3.9 Acceptance sampling and testing. Crushed aggregate base course shall be accepted for density and thickness on an area basis. Two tests shall be made for density and thickness for each [1200 square yds (1000 m²)]. Sampling locations will be determined on a random basis per ASTM D3665

a. Density. The [RPR shall perform all density tests] [Contractor's laboratory shall perform all density tests in the RPR's presence and provide the test results upon completion to the RPR for acceptance].

Each area shall be accepted for density when the field density is at least [100%] of the maximum density of laboratory specimens compacted and tested per ASTM [1557] [D698]. The in-place field density shall be determined per [ASTM D1556.] [or] [ASTM D6938 using Procedure A, the direct transmission method, and ASTM D6938 shall be used to determine the moisture content of the material. The machine shall be calibrated in accordance with ASTM D6938.]. If the specified density is not attained, the area represented by the failed test must be reworked and/or recompact and two additional random tests made. This procedure shall be followed until the specified density is reached. Maximum density refers to maximum dry density at optimum moisture content unless otherwise specified.

The Engineer may specify ASTM D698 or ASTM D1557 for areas designated for aircraft with gross weights of less than 60,000 pounds (27200 kg). The Engineer shall specify ASTM D1557 for areas designated for aircraft with gross weights of 60,000 pounds (27200 kg) or greater.

b. Thickness. Depth tests shall be made by test holes at least 3 inches (75 mm) in diameter that extend through the base. The thickness of the base course shall be within +0 and -1/2 inch (12 mm) of the specified thickness as determined by depth tests taken by the Contractor in the presence of the RPR for each area. Where the thickness is deficient by more than 1/2-inch (12 mm), the Contractor shall correct such areas at no additional cost by scarifying to a depth of at least 3 inches (75 mm), adding new material of proper gradation, and the material shall be blended and recompact to grade. The Contractor shall replace, at his expense, base material where depth tests have been taken.

The Engineer may modify the above thickness control paragraph to permit the thickness determination by survey. Survey shall be required before and after placement of the base. The survey interval should be specified based on the size of the project.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

209-4.1 The quantity of crushed aggregate base course will be determined by measurement of the number of [square yards (square meters)][cubic yards (cubic meters)] of material actually constructed and accepted by the RPR as complying with the plans and specifications. Base materials shall not be included in any other excavation quantities.

[**209-4.2** Separation geotextile shall be measured by the number of [square yards][square meters] of materials placed and accepted by the RPR as complying with the plans and specifications excluding seam overlaps and edge anchoring.]

BASIS OF PAYMENT

209-5.1 Payment shall be made at the contract unit price per [square yard (square meter)] [cubic yard (cubic meter)] for crushed aggregate base course. This price shall be full compensation for furnishing all materials, for preparing and placing these materials, and for all labor, equipment tools, and incidentals necessary to complete the item.

[**209-5.2** Payment shall be made at the contract unit price per [square yard][square meter] for separation geotextile. The price shall be full compensation for furnishing all labor, equipment, material, anchors, and incidentals necessary.]

Payment will be made under:

Item P-209-5.1 Crushed Aggregate Base Course - per [square yard (square meter)][cubic yard (cubic meter)]

[Item P-209-5.2 Separation geotextile per [square yard][square meter]]

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM International (ASTM)

ASTM C29 Standard Test Method for Bulk Density ("Unit Weight") and Voids in Aggregate

ASTM C88 Standard Test Method for Soundness of Aggregates by Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate

ASTM C117	Standard Test Method for Materials Finer than 75- μm (No. 200) Sieve in Mineral Aggregates by Washing
ASTM C131	Standard Test Method for Resistance to Degradation of Small-Size Coarse Aggregate by Abrasion and Impact in the Los Angeles Machine
ASTM C136	Standard Test Method for Sieve or Screen Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates
ASTM C142	Standard Test Method for Clay Lumps and Friable Particles in Aggregates
ASTM D75	Standard Practice for Sampling Aggregates
ASTM D698	Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Standard Effort (12,400 ft-lbf/ft ³ (600 kN-m/m ³))
ASTM D1556	Standard Test Method for Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place by the Sand-Cone Method
ASTM D1557	Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Modified Effort (56,000 ft-lbf/ft ³ (2700 kN-m/m ³))
ASTM D2167	Standard Test Method for Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place by the Rubber Balloon Method
ASTM D2419	Standard Test Method for Sand Equivalent Value of Soils and Fine Aggregate
ASTM D3665	Standard Practice for Random Sampling of Construction Materials
ASTM D4318	Standard Test Methods for Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit, and Plasticity Index of Soils
ASTM D4491	Standard Test Methods for Water Permeability of Geotextiles by Permittivity
ASTM D4643	Standard Test Method for Determination of Water Content of Soil and Rock by Microwave Oven Heating
ASTM D4751	Standard Test Methods for Determining Apparent Opening Size of a Geotextile
ASTM D4791	Standard Test Method for Flat Particles, Elongated Particles, or Flat and Elongated Particles in Coarse Aggregate
ASTM D5821	Standard Test Method for Determining the Percentage of Fractured Particles in Coarse Aggregate
ASTM D6938	Standard Test Method for In-Place Density and Water Content of Soil and Soil-Aggregate by Nuclear Methods (Shallow Depth)
ASTM D7928	Standard Test Method for Particle-Size Distribution (Gradation) of Fine-Grained Soils Using the Sedimentation (Hydrometer) Analysis

American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO)

M288

Standard Specification for Geosynthetic Specification for Highway
Applications

END OF ITEM P-209

Page Intentionally Blank

Item P-210 Caliche Base Course

Item P-210 may be used as a base course under flexible and rigid pavements when pavement loads are 60,000 pounds or less, or when used under stabilized bases. The Engineer may specify this item if approved by the FAA and the material is readily available.

DESCRIPTION

210-1.1 This item shall consist of a base course composed of caliche, caliche-gravel, caliche limestone, or material of similar characteristics, constructed on the prepared underlying course per these specifications and in conformity to the dimensions and typical cross-section shown on the plans.

MATERIALS

210-2.1 Materials. The base course material shall consist of caliche, caliche-gravel, or caliche limestone. The base course material shall meet the following gradation when tested per ASTM C136.

Caliche Base Coarse Gradation

Sieve Designation (Square Openings)	Percentage by Weight Passing Sieves
2 inch (50 mm)	100
No. 40 (425 µm)	15-35
No. 200 (75 µm)	0-15

210-2.2 Binder. Binder shall be that portion of the material passing a No. 40 (425 µm) sieve. The binder shall have a liquid limit (LL) of not more than 35 and a plasticity index (PI) of not more than 10 per ASTM D4318.

[Additional binder material shall be uniformly blended with the base course material to correct the gradation and/or to provide sufficient fines passing the No. 40 (425 µm) sieve for satisfactory bonding.]

Need for additional binder (filler) will be based on the Geotechnical Engineer's recommendations.

210-2.3 Sampling and Testing.

a. Aggregate base materials. The Contractor shall take samples of the aggregate base in accordance with ASTM D75 to verify initial aggregate base requirements and gradation. Material shall meet the

requirements in paragraph 210-2.1 and 210-2.2. This sampling and testing will be the basis for approval of the aggregate base quality requirements. []

b. Gradation requirements. The Contractor shall take at least [two] aggregate base samples per day in the presence of the Resident Project Representative (RPR) to check the final gradation. Sampling shall be per ASTM D75. Material shall meet the requirements in paragraph 210-2.1 and 210-2.2. The lot will be consistent with the lot size used for density. The samples shall be taken from the in-place, un-compacted material at sampling points and intervals designated by the RPR.

**The Engineer may require additional sampling points for quality requirements.
The Engineer shall define when additional sampling points are needed in the above paragraph.**

210-2.4 Separation Geotextile. [Not used.] [Separation geotextile shall be [Class 2, 0.02 sec⁻¹ permittivity] per ASTM D4491.] [Apparent opening size per ASTM D4751 with [0.60 mm] maximum average roll value.]

The use of a geotextile to prevent mixing of a subgrade soil and an aggregate subbase/base is appropriate for pavement structures constructed over soils with a California bearing ratio greater than 3.

Generally, on airport projects a Class 2 geotextile with a permittivity of 0.02 and apparent opening size of 0.60 mm will be sufficient.

See AASHTO M288 for additional notes regarding separation geotextiles.

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

210-3.1 Control strip. The first half-day of construction shall be considered the control strip. The Contractor shall demonstrate, in the presence of the RPR, that the materials, equipment, and construction processes meet the requirements of the specification. The sequence and manner of rolling necessary to obtain specified density requirements shall be determined. The maximum compacted thickness may be increased to a maximum of 12 inches (300 mm) upon the Contractor's demonstration that approved equipment and operations will uniformly compact the lift to the specified density. The RPR must witness this demonstration and approve the lift thickness prior to full production.

Control strips that do not meet specification requirements shall be reworked, re-compacted or removed and replaced at the Contractor's expense. Full operations shall not continue until the control strip has been accepted by the RPR. The Contractor shall use the same equipment, materials, and construction methods for the remainder of construction, unless adjustments made by the Contractor are approved by the RPR.

210-3.2 Preparing underlying course. The underlying course shall be checked and accepted by the RPR before placing and spreading operations begin. Any ruts or soft, yielding places caused by improper drainage conditions, hauling, or any other cause, shall be corrected before the base course is placed. To protect the underlying course and to ensure proper drainage, the spreading of the base shall begin along

the centerline of the pavement on a crowned section or on the high side of the pavement with a one-way slope. Material shall not be placed on frozen subgrade or subbase.

210-3.3 Placement. The material shall be placed and spread on the prepared underlying layer by spreader boxes or other devices as approved by the RPR, to a uniform thickness and width. The equipment shall have positive thickness controls to minimize the need for additional manipulation of the material. Dumping from vehicles that require re-handling shall not be permitted. Hauling over the uncompacted base course shall not be permitted.

The material shall meet gradation and moisture requirements prior to compaction. The layer shall be constructed in lifts as established in the control strip, but not less than 4 inches (100 mm) nor more than 12 inches (300 mm) of compacted thickness.

When more than one lift is required to establish the layer thickness shown on the plans, the construction procedure described here shall apply to each lift. No lift shall be covered by subsequent lifts until tests verify that compaction requirements have been met. The Contractor shall rework, re-compact and retest any material placed which does not meet the specifications.

210-3.4 Compaction. Immediately upon completion of the spreading operations, compact each layer of the base course, as specified, with approved compaction equipment. The number, type, and weight of rollers shall be sufficient to compact the material to the required density within the same day that the aggregate is placed on the subgrade. The field density of each compacted lift of material shall be at least [100%] of the maximum density of laboratory specimens prepared from samples of the subbase material delivered to the jobsite. The moisture content of the material at the start of compaction shall be within $\pm 1 \frac{1}{2}$ percentage points of the optimum moisture content. Maximum density refers to maximum dry density at optimum moisture content unless otherwise specified.

The Engineer shall specify ASTM D698 or ASTM D1557 for areas designated for aircraft with gross weights of 60,000 pounds (27200 kg) or less and ASTM D1557 for areas designated for aircraft with gross weights greater than 60,000 pounds (27200 kg).

If the material has greater than 30% retained on the 3/4-inch (19.0 mm) sieve, ASTM D1557 or D698 has suggested procedures for dealing with oversize material.

Proof rolling is required when a method specification is used for compaction.

210-3.5 Finishing. The surface of the base course shall be finished by blading or other approved equipment designed for this purpose.

Adding thin layers of material to the top layer of base course to meet grade shall not be allowed. If the elevation of the top layer is 1/2 inch (12 mm) or more below grade, the top layer of base shall be scarified to a depth of at least 3 inches (75 mm), new material added, and the layer blended and recompacted to bring it to grade at the Contractor's expense. If the finished surface is above plan grade, it shall be cut to grade and rerolled.

210-3.6 Weather limitations. Material shall not be placed unless the ambient air temperature is at least 40°F (4°C) and rising. Work on base course shall not be conducted when the subgrade or subbase is wet or frozen or the base material contains frozen material.

210-3.7 Maintenance. The base course shall be maintained in a condition that will meet all specification requirements until the work is accepted. When material has been exposed to excessive rain, snow, or freeze-thaw conditions, prior to placement of additional material, the Contractor shall verify that materials

still meets all specification requirements. Equipment may be routed over completed sections of base course, provided that no damage results and the equipment is routed over the full width of the completed base course. Any damage resulting to the base course from routing equipment over the base course shall be repaired by the Contractor at the Contractor's expense.

210-3.8 Surface tolerance. After the course has been compacted, the surface shall be tested for smoothness and accuracy of grade and crown. Any portion lacking the required smoothness or failing in accuracy of grade or crown shall be scarified to a depth of at least 3 inches (75 mm), reshaped and recompact to grade, until the required smoothness and accuracy are obtained and approved by the RPR. Any deviation in surface tolerances shall be corrected by the Contractor at the Contractor's expense. The smoothness and accuracy requirements specified here apply only to the top layer when base course is constructed in more than one layer.

a. Smoothness. The finished surface shall not vary more than 3/8-inch (9 mm) when tested with a 12-foot (3.7-m) straightedge applied parallel with and at right angles to the centerline. The straightedge shall be moved continuously at half the length of the 12-foot (3.7-m) straightedge for the full length of each line on a 50-foot (15-m) grid.

b. Grade. The grade and crown shall be measured on a 50-foot (15-m) grid and shall be within +0 and -1/2 inch (12 mm) of the specified grade.

210-3.9 Acceptance sampling and testing. Caliche base course shall be accepted for density and thickness on an area basis. Two tests shall be made for density and thickness for each [1200 square yds (1000 m²)]. Sampling locations will be determined on a random basis per ASTM D3665.

a. Density. The [RPR shall perform all density tests][Contractor's laboratory shall perform all density tests in the RPR's presence and provide the test results upon completion to the RPR for acceptance].

Each lot shall be accepted for density when the field density is at least [100%] of the maximum density of laboratory specimens compacted and tested per ASTM [D1557][D698]. The in-place field density shall be determined per [ASTM D1556.][or][ASTM D6938 using Procedure A, the direct transmission method, and ASTM D6938 shall be used to determine the moisture content of the material. The machine shall be calibrated in accordance with ASTM D6938.]. If the specified density is not attained, the area represented by the failed test must be reworked and/or recompact and two additional random tests made. This procedure shall be followed until the specified density is reached. Maximum density refers to maximum dry density at optimum moisture content unless otherwise specified.

The Engineer may adjust the testing area as appropriate to the job size.

The Engineer may specify ASTM D698 or ASTM D1557 for areas designated for aircraft with gross weights of less than 60,000 pounds (27200 kg). The Engineer shall specify ASTM D1557 for areas designated for aircraft with gross weights of 60,000 pounds (27200 kg) or greater.

b. Thickness. Depth tests shall be made by test holes or cores at least 3 inches (75 mm) in diameter that extend through the base. The thickness of the base course shall be within +0 and -1/2 inch (12 mm) of the specified thickness as determined by depth tests taken by the Contractor in the presence of the RPR for each area. Where the thickness is deficient by more than 1/2-inch (12 mm), the Contractor shall

correct such areas at no additional cost by scarifying to a depth of at least 3 inches (75 mm), adding new material of proper gradation, and the material shall be blended and recompact to grade. The Contractor shall replace, at his expense, base material where depth tests have been taken.

The Engineer may modify the above thickness control paragraph to permit the thickness determination by survey. Survey shall be required before and after placement of the base. The survey interval should be specified based on the size of the project.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

210-4.1 The quantity of caliche base course shall be the number of [square yards (square meters)] [cubic yards (cubic meters)] of base course material placed, bonded, and accepted in the completed base course. The quantity of base course material shall be measured in final position, [based upon depth tests or cores taken by the Contractor as directed by the RPR.] [based on the average end areas on the complete work computed from elevations to the nearest 0.01 foot (3 mm)]. On individual depth measurements, thickness more than 1/2 inch (12 mm) in excess of that shown on the plans shall be considered as specified thickness, plus 1/2 inch (12 mm) in computing the yardage for payment. Base material shall not be included in any other excavation quantities.

The Engineer may modify the above measurement paragraph to permit the thickness acceptance determination by a survey before and after placement of the base. The survey interval should be specified based on the size of the project. Delete this sentence if surveys are not allowed.

[**210-4.2** Separation Geotextile shall be measured by the number of [square yards] [square meters] of materials placed and accepted by the RPR as complying with the plans and specifications excluding seam overlaps and edge anchoring.]

BASIS OF PAYMENT

210-5.1 Payment shall be made at the contract unit price per [square yards (square meters)] [cubic yard (cubic meter)] for caliche base course. This price shall be full compensation for furnishing all materials and for all preparation, hauling, and placing of these materials, and for all labor, equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete the item.

[**210-5.2** Payment shall be made at the contract unit price per [square yard] [square meter] for separation geotextile. The price shall be full compensation for furnishing all labor, equipment, material, anchors, and incidentals necessary.]

Payment will be made under:

Item P-210-5.1 Caliche Base Course - per [square yards (square
meters)][cubic yard (cubic meter)]
[Item P-210-5.2 Separation geotextile per [square yard]
[square meter]]

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM International (ASTM)

ASTM C136	Standard Test Method for Sieve or Screen Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates
ASTM D75	Standard Practice for Sampling Aggregates
ASTM D698	Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Standard Effort (12,400 ft-lbf/ft ³ (600 kN-m/m ³))
ASTM D1557	Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Modified Effort (56,000 ft-lbf/ft ³ (2700 kN-m/m ³))
ASTM D3665	Standard Practice for Random Sampling of Construction Materials
ASTM D4318	Standard Test Methods for Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit, and Plasticity Index of Soils
ASTM D4491	Standard Test Methods for Water Permeability of Geotextiles by Permittivity
ASTM D4751	Standard Test Methods for Determining Apparent Opening Size of a Geotextile
ASTM D6938	Standard Test Method for In-Place Density and Water Content of Soil and Soil-Aggregate by Nuclear Methods (Shallow Depth)

American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO)

M288	Standard Specification for Geosynthetic Specification for Highway Applications

END OF ITEM P-210

Item P-211 Lime Rock Base Course

Item P-211 may be used under flexible and rigid pavements.

DESCRIPTION

211-1.1 This item shall consist of a base course composed of lime rock constructed on the prepared underlying course per these specifications and shall conform to the dimensions and typical cross-section shown on the plans.

MATERIALS

211-2.1 Materials. The lime rock base course material shall consist of fossiliferous limestone of uniform quality. The material shall not contain hard or flinty pieces that will cause a rough surface containing pits and pockets. The rock shall show no tendency to “air slake” or undergo chemical change when exposed to the weather. The material when watered and rolled shall be capable of compacting to a dense and well-bonded base.

Lime Rock Base Course Material Properties²

	Oolitic	Non-Oolitic
Carbonates of calcium and magnesium ¹	70% minimum	75% minimum
Oxides of iron and aluminum ¹	Less than or equal to 2%	Less than or equal to 2%
Liquid limit	NA	Not greater than 35
Plasticity Index	NA	Not greater than 6
Organic or foreign matter	Not more than 0.5%	Not more than 0.5%
Lime Bearing Ratio (LBR) ³ at 0 to +1.5% optimum	125	125

¹ The combined amount of carbonates, oxides, and silica shall be at least 97%. The material shall be non-plastic.

² The chemical analysis of lime rock shall consist of determining the insoluble silica, iron oxide, and alumina by solution of the sample in hydrochloric (HCl) acid, evaporating, dehydrating, re-dissolving the residue, and neutralizing with ammonium hydroxide, filtering, washing, and igniting the residue lime rock. The difference between the percentage of insoluble matter and 100% is reported as carbonates of calcium and magnesium.

³ FM 5-515, Florida Method of Test for Lime Rock Bearing Ratio

Lime Rock Base Course Gradation

Sieve Designation (square openings)	Percentage by Weight Passing Sieves
3-1/2 inch (87.5 mm)	100
3/4 inch (19.0 mm)	50-100

All fine material shall consist entirely of dust of fracture (fine portion passing the No. 10 (2.00 mm) sieve).

211-2.2 Sampling and Testing.

a. Aggregate base materials. The Contractor shall take samples of the aggregate base in accordance with ASTM D75 to verify initial aggregate base requirements and gradation. Material shall meet the requirements in paragraph 211-2.1. This sampling and testing will be the basis for approval of the aggregate base quality requirements. []

b. Gradation requirements. The Contractor shall take at least [two] aggregate base samples per day in the presence of the Resident Project Representative (RPR) to check the final gradation. Sampling shall be per ASTM D75. Material shall meet the requirements in paragraph 209-2.1. The lot will be consistent with the lot size used for density. The samples shall be taken from the in-place, un-compacted material at sampling points and intervals designated by the RPR.

The RPR may require additional sampling points for quality requirements. The RPR shall define when additional sampling points are needed in the above paragraph.

211-2.3 Separation Geotextile. [Not used.] [Separation geotextile shall be [Class 2, 0.02 sec⁻¹] permittivity per ASTM D4491, Apparent opening size per ASTM D4751 with [0.60 mm] maximum average roll value.]

The use of a geotextile to prevent mixing of a subgrade soil and an aggregate subbase/base is appropriate for pavement structures constructed over soils with a California Bearing Ratio greater than 3.

Generally, on airport projects, a Class 2 geotextile with a permittivity of 0.02 and AOS of 0.6 mm will be sufficient.

See AASHTO M288 for additional notes regarding separation geotextile.

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

211-3.1 Control strip. The first half-day of construction shall be considered the control strip. The Contractor shall demonstrate, in the presence of the RPR, that the materials, equipment, and construction processes meet the requirements of the specification. The sequence and manner of rolling necessary to obtain specified density requirements shall be determined. Control strips that do not meet specification requirements shall be removed and replaced at the Contractor's expense. Full operations shall not

continue until the control strip has been accepted by the RPR. Upon acceptance of the control strip by the RPR, the Contractor shall use the same equipment, materials, and construction methods for the remainder of construction, unless adjustments made by the Contractor are approved in advance by the RPR.

211-3.2 Preparing underlying course. The RPR shall check and accept the underlying course before placing and spreading operations are started. Any ruts or soft yielding places caused by improper drainage conditions, hauling, or any other cause shall be corrected at the Contractor's expense before the base course is placed. Material shall not be placed on frozen subgrade.

211-3.3 Placement. The material shall be placed and spread on the prepared underlying layer by spreader boxes or other devices as approved by the RPR, to a uniform thickness and width. The equipment shall have positive thickness controls to minimize the need for additional manipulation of the material. Dumping from vehicles that require re-handling shall not be permitted. Hauling over the uncompacted base course shall not be permitted.

The material shall meet gradation and moisture requirements prior to compaction. The layer shall be constructed in lifts as established in the control strip, but not less than 4 inches (100 mm) nor more than 12 inches (300 mm) of compacted thickness.

When more than one lift is required to establish the layer thickness shown on the plans, the construction procedure described here shall apply to each lift. No lift shall be covered by subsequent lifts until tests verify that compaction requirements have been met. The Contractor shall rework, re-compact and retest any material placed which does not meet the specifications.

211-3.4 Compaction. Immediately upon completion of the spreading operations, compact each layer of the base course, as specified, with approved compaction equipment. The number, type, and weight of rollers shall be sufficient to compact the material to the required density within the same day that the aggregate is placed on the subgrade. The field density of each compacted lift of material shall be at least [100%] of the maximum density of laboratory specimens prepared from samples of the subbase material delivered to the jobsite. The moisture content of the material during placing operations shall be within ± 2 percentage points of the optimum moisture content as determined by ASTM [____]. Maximum density refers to maximum dry density at optimum moisture content unless otherwise specified.

The Engineer shall specify ASTM D698 or ASTM D1557 for areas designated for aircraft with gross weights of 60,000 pounds (27200 kg) or less and ASTM D1557 for areas designated for aircraft with gross weights greater than 60,000 pounds (27200 kg).

If the material has greater than 30% retained on the 3/4-inch (19.0 mm) sieve, ASTM D1557 or D698 has suggested procedures for dealing with oversize material.

Proof rolling is required when a method specification is used for compaction.

211-3.5 Finishing. After the watering and rolling of the base course, the entire surface shall be scarified to a depth of at least 3 inches (75 mm) and shaped to the exact crown and cross-section with a blade grader. The scarified material shall be rewetted and thoroughly rolled. Rolling shall continue until the base is bonded and compacted to a dense, unyielding mass, true to grade and cross-section. Scarifying and rolling of the surface of the base shall follow the initial rolling of the lime rock by not more than four (4) days. When the lime rock base is constructed in two layers, the scarifying of the surface shall be to a depth of 2 inches (50 mm).

If cracks or checks appear in the base before the surface course is laid, the Contractor shall rescarifying, reshaping, watering, add lime rock where necessary, and recompact. If the underlying material becomes mixed with the base course material, the Contractor shall, without additional compensation, remove, reshape, and recompact the mixture.

211-3.6 Weather limitations. Material shall not be placed unless the ambient air temperature is at least 40°F (4°C) and rising. Work on base course shall not be conducted when the subgrade or subbase is wet or frozen or the base material contains frozen material.

211-3.7 Maintenance. The base course shall be maintained in a condition that will meet all specification requirements until the work is accepted by the RPR. When material has been exposed to excessive rain, snow, or freeze-thaw conditions, prior to placement of additional material, the Contractor shall verify that materials still meet all specification requirements. Equipment may be routed over completed sections of base course, provided that no damage results and the equipment is routed over the full width of the completed base course. Any damage resulting to the base course from routing equipment over the base course shall be repaired by the Contractor at the Contractor's expense.

211-3.8 Surface tolerance. After the course has been compacted, the surface shall be tested for smoothness and accuracy of grade and crown. Any portion lacking the required smoothness or failing in accuracy of grade or crown shall be scarified to a depth of at least 3 inches (75 mm), reshaped and recompact to grade, until the required smoothness and accuracy are obtained and approved by the RPR. Any deviation in surface tolerances shall be corrected by the Contractor at the Contractor's expense. The smoothness and accuracy requirements specified here apply only to the top layer when base course is constructed in more than one layer.

a. Smoothness. The finished surface shall not vary more than 3/8-inch (9 mm) when tested with a 12-foot (3.7-m) straightedge applied parallel with and at right angles to the centerline. The straightedge shall be moved continuously at half the length of the 12-foot (3.7-m) straightedge for the full length of each line on a 50-foot (15-m) grid.

b. Grade. The grade and crown shall be measured on a 50-foot (15-m) grid and shall be within +0 and -1/2 inch (12 mm) of the specified grade.

211-3.9 Acceptance sampling and testing. Lime rock base course shall be accepted for density on an area basis. Two tests shall be made for density and thickness for each [1200 square yds (1000 m²)]. Sampling locations will be determined on a random basis per ASTM D3665.

a. Density. The [RPR shall perform all density tests][Contractor's laboratory shall perform all density tests in the RPR's presence and provide the test results upon completion to the RPR for acceptance].

Each area shall be accepted for density when the field density is at least [100%] of the maximum density of laboratory specimens compacted and tested per ASTM [D1557][D698]. The in-place field density shall be determined per [ASTM D1556.][ASTM D6938 using Procedure A, the direct transmission method, and ASTM D6938 shall be used to determine the moisture content of the material. The machine shall be calibrated in accordance with ASTM D6938.] If the specified density is not attained, the entire area shall be reworked and/or recompact and two additional random tests made. This procedure shall be followed until the specified density is reached. Maximum density refers to maximum dry density at optimum moisture content unless otherwise specified.

The Engineer shall specify ASTM D698 or ASTM D1557 for areas designated for aircraft with gross weights of 60,000 pounds (27200 kg) or less and ASTM D1557 for

areas designated for aircraft with gross weights greater than 60,000 pounds (27200 kg).

b. Thickness. Depth tests shall be made by test holes or cores at least 3 inches (75 mm) in diameter that extend through the base. The thickness of the base course shall be within +0 and -1/2 inch (12 mm) of the specified thickness as determined by depth tests taken by the Contractor in the presence of the RPR for each area. Where the thickness is deficient by more than 1/2-inch (12 mm), the Contractor shall correct such areas at no additional cost by scarifying to a depth of at least 3 inches (75 mm), adding new material of proper gradation, and the material shall be blended and recompact to grade. The Contractor shall replace, at his expense, base material where depth tests have been taken.

The Engineer may modify the above thickness control paragraph to permit the thickness determination by survey. Survey shall be required before and after placement of the base. The survey interval should be specified based on the size of the project.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

211-4.1 The quantity of lime rock base course shall be the number of [square yards (square meters)][cubic yards (cubic meters)] of base material placed, bonded, and accepted in the completed base course. The quantity of base course material shall be measured in final position [based upon depth tests taken as directed by the RPR.][by means of average end areas on the complete work computed from elevations to the nearest 0.01 foot (3 mm)]. On individual depth measurements, thicknesses more than 1/2 inch (12 mm) in excess of that shown on the plans shall be considered as the specified thickness plus 1/2 inch (12 mm) in computing the yardage for payment.

[**211-4.2** Separation geotextile shall be measured by the number of [square yards][square meters] of materials placed and accepted by the RPR as complying with the plans and specifications excluding seam overlaps and edge anchoring.]

The Engineer shall select the method of measurement.

BASIS OF PAYMENT

211-5.1 Payment shall be made at the contract unit price per [square yards (square meters)][cubic yard (cubic meter)] for lime rock base course. This price shall be full compensation for furnishing all materials and for all preparation, hauling, and placing of these materials, and for all labor, equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete the item.

The cost of removing cracks and checks including the labor, and the additional lime rock necessary for crack elimination, will not be paid for separately but shall be included in the contract price per

[square yard (square meter)][cubic yard (cubic meter)] for lime rock base course.

[**211-5.2** Payment shall be made at the contract unit price per [square yard][square meter] for separation geotextile. The price shall be full compensation for furnishing all labor, equipment, material, anchors, and incidentals necessary.]

Payment will be made under:

Item P-211-5.1	Lime rock base course per [square yard (square meter)] [cubic yard (cubic meter)]
[Item P-211-5.2	Separation geotextile per [square yard][square meter]]

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM International (ASTM)

ASTM C136	Standard Test Method for Sieve or Screen Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates
ASTM D75	Standard Practice for Sampling Aggregates
ASTM D698	Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Standard Effort (12,400 ft-lbf/ft ³ (600 kN-m/m ³))
ASTM D1556	Standard Test Method for Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place by the Sand-Cone Method
ASTM D1557	Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Modified Effort (56,000 ft-lbf/ft ³ (2700 kN-m/m ³))
ASTM D3665	Standard Practice for Random Sampling of Construction Materials
ASTM D4318	Standard Test Methods for Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit, and Plasticity Index of Soils
ASTM D4491	Standard Test Methods for Water Permeability of Geotextiles by Permittivity
ASTM D4751	Standard Test Methods for Determining Apparent Opening Size of a Geotextile

American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO)

M288	Standard Specification for Geosynthetic Specification for Highway Applications

END OF ITEM P-211

Item P-212 Shell Base Course

Item P-212 may be used under flexible and rigid pavements when pavement loads are 60,000 pounds or less, or when used under stabilized bases. The engineer may specify this item if approved by the FAA and the material is readily available.

DESCRIPTION

212-1.1 This item shall consist of a base course composed of shell and binder constructed on a prepared underlying course per these specifications and shall conform to the dimensions and typical cross-section shown on the plans.

MATERIALS

212-2.1 Materials. The shell shall consist of durable particles of oyster or clam shell. The base material shall consist of oyster shell, together with an approved binder or filler material, blended or processed to produce a uniform mixture complying with the specifications for gradation, soil constants, and compaction capability. Clam shell may be used only in combination with oyster shell in the proportion up to and including 50%.

The shell shall be reasonably clean and free from excess amounts of clay or organic matter such as leaves, grass, roots, and other objectionable foreign material.

The gradation of the blended or processed material shall meet the requirements of the gradation given in the following table, when tested per ASTM C136.

Shell Base Coarse Gradation

Sieve Designation (square openings)	Percentage by Weight Passing Sieves
3 inch (75 mm)	100
3/4 inch (19.0 mm)	60-90
No. 4 (4.75 mm)	15-55
No. 200 (75 µm)	0-15

Soil binder shall be that portion of the material, including the blended filler, passing a No. 40 (425 µm) mesh sieve. The soil binder shall have a liquid limit of not more than 25 and a plasticity index of not more than eight (8) as determined by ASTM D4318.

The Contractor shall blend or combine materials so that the final processed material meets all the specifications. The Contractor shall make modifications in materials and methods necessary to produce a material can be compacted into a dense, well-bonded base without an excess of soil binder.

212-2.2 Filler for blending. If filler, in addition to that naturally present in the base course material, is necessary for satisfactory bonding of the material, or for changing the soil constants of the material passing the No. 40 (425 μ m) mesh sieve, or for correcting the gradation, it shall be uniformly blended with the base course material on the pavement or at the plant. The material shall be obtained from sources approved by the Resident Project Representative (RPR).

212-2.3 Sampling and Testing.

a. Aggregate base materials. The Contractor shall take samples of the aggregate base in accordance with ASTM D75 to verify initial aggregate base requirements and gradation. Material shall meet the requirements in paragraph 212-2.1 and 212-2.2. This sampling and testing will be the basis for approval of the aggregate base quality requirements. []

b. Gradation requirements. The Contractor shall take at least [two] aggregate base samples per day in the presence of the RPR to check the final gradation. Sampling shall be per ASTM D75. Material shall meet the requirements in paragraph 212-2.1 and 212-2.2. The samples shall be taken from the in-place, un-compacted material at sampling points and intervals designated by the RPR.

**The Engineer may require additional sampling points for quality requirements.
The Engineer shall define when additional sampling points are needed in the above paragraph.**

212-2.4 Separation Geotextile. [Not used.] [Separation Geotextile shall be [Class 2, 0.02 sec⁻¹ permittivity] per ASTM D4491, Apparent opening size per ASTM D4751 with [0.60 mm] maximum average roll value.]

The use of a geotextile to prevent mixing of a subgrade soil and an aggregate subbase/base is appropriate for pavement structures constructed over soils with a California Bearing Ratio greater than 3.

Generally, on airport projects, a Class 2 geotextile with a permittivity of 0.02 and AOS of 0.6 mm will be sufficient.

See AASHTO M288 for additional notes regarding separation geotextiles.

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

212-3.1 Control Strip. The first half-day of construction shall be considered the control strip. The Contractor shall demonstrate, in the presence of the RPR, that the materials, equipment, and construction processes meet the requirements of the specification. The sequence and manner of rolling necessary to obtain specified density requirements shall be determined. The maximum compacted thickness may be increased to a maximum of 12 inches (300 mm) upon the Contractor's demonstration that approved equipment and operations will uniformly compact the lift to the specified density. The RPR must witness this demonstration and approve the lift thickness prior to full production.

Control strips that do not meet specification requirements shall be reworked, re-compacted or removed and replaced at the Contractor's expense. Full operations shall not continue until the control strip has

been accepted by the RPR. The Contractor shall use the same equipment, materials, and construction methods for the remainder of construction, unless adjustments made by the Contractor are approved by the RPR.

212-3.2 Preparing underlying course. The underlying course shall be checked and accepted by the RPR before placing and spreading operations are started. To protect the underlying course and to ensure proper drainage, the spreading of the base shall begin along the centerline of the pavement on a crowned section or on the high side of the pavement with a one-way slope. Material shall not be placed on frozen subgrade or subbase.

212-3.3 Placement. The aggregate shall be placed and spread on the prepared underlying layer by spreader boxes or other devices as approved by the RPR, to a uniform thickness and width. The equipment shall have positive thickness controls to minimize the need for additional manipulation of the material. Dumping from vehicles that require re-handling shall not be permitted. Hauling over the uncompacted base course shall not be permitted.

The aggregate shall meet gradation and moisture requirements prior to compaction. The subbase course shall be constructed in lifts as established in the control strip, but not less than 4 inches (100 mm) nor more than 12 inches (300 mm) of compacted thickness.

When more than one lift is required to establish the layer thickness shown on the plans, the construction procedure described here shall apply to each lift. No lift shall be covered by subsequent lifts until tests verify that compaction requirements have been met. The Contractor shall rework, re-compact and retest any material placed which does not meet the specifications.

212-3.4 Compaction. Immediately after completion of the spreading operations, the base course shall be thoroughly compacted. The number, type, and weight of rollers shall be sufficient to compact the material to the required density within the same day that the aggregate is placed on the subgrade. The moisture content of the material at the start of compaction shall be within $\pm 1\frac{1}{2}$ percentage points of the optimum moisture content as determined by ASTM [____]. The field density of the compacted material shall be at least [100%] of the maximum density of laboratory specimens prepared from samples of the base material. Maximum density refers to maximum dry density at optimum moisture content unless otherwise specified.

The Engineer shall specify ASTM D698 or ASTM D1557 for areas designated for aircraft with gross weights of 60,000 pounds (27200 kg) or less and ASTM D1557 for areas designated for aircraft with gross weights greater than 60,000 pounds (27200 kg).

210-3.5 Finishing. The surface of the base course shall be finished by blading or other approved equipment designed for this purpose. Adding thin layers of material to the top layer of base course to meet grade shall not be allowed. If the elevation of the top layer is 1/2 inch (12 mm) or more below grade, the top layer of base shall be scarified to a depth of at least 3 inches (75 mm), new material added, and the layer blended and recompact to bring it to grade at the Contractor's expense. If the finished surface is above plan grade, it shall be cut to grade and rerolled.

212-3.6 Weather limitations. Material shall not be placed unless the ambient air temperature is at least 40°F (4°C) and rising. Work on base course shall not be conducted when the subgrade or subbase is wet or frozen or the base material contains frozen material.

212-3.7 Maintenance. The base course shall be maintained in a condition that will meet all specification requirements until the work is accepted by the RPR. When material has been exposed to excessive rain, snow, or freeze-thaw conditions, prior to placement of additional material, the Contractor shall verify that materials still meet all specification requirements. Equipment may be routed over completed sections of base course, provided that no damage results and the equipment is routed over the full width of the completed base course. Any damage resulting to the base course from routing equipment over the base course shall be repaired by the Contractor at the Contractor's expense.

212-3.8 Surface Tolerance. After the course has been compacted, the surface shall be tested for smoothness and accuracy of grade and crown. Any portion lacking the required smoothness or failing in accuracy of grade or crown shall be scarified to a depth of at least 3 inches (75 mm), reshaped and recompact to grade, until the required smoothness and accuracy are obtained and approved by the RPR. Any deviation in surface tolerances shall be corrected by the Contractor at the Contractor's expense. The smoothness and accuracy requirements specified here apply only to the top layer when base course is constructed in more than one layer.

a. Smoothness. The finished surface shall not vary more than 3/8-inch (9 mm) when tested with a 12-foot (3.7-m) straightedge applied parallel with and at right angles to the centerline. The straightedge shall be moved continuously at half the length of the 12-foot (3.7-m) straightedge for the full length of each line on a 50-foot [15 meter] grid.

b. Grade. The grade and crown shall be measured on a 50-foot (15-m) grid and shall be within +0 and -1/2 inch (12 mm) of the specified grade.

212-3.9 Acceptance sampling and testing. Shell base course shall be accepted for density based on the area specified in paragraph 212-3.9. Two tests shall be made for density and thickness for each [1200 square yds (1000 m²)]. Sampling locations will be determined on a random basis per ASTM D3665.

a. Density. The [RPR shall perform all density tests] [Contractor's laboratory shall perform all density tests in the RPR's presence and provide the test results upon completion to the RPR for acceptance].

Each area shall be accepted for density when the field density is at least [100%] of the maximum density of laboratory specimens compacted and tested per ASTM [D1557] [D698]. The in-place field density shall be determined per [ASTM D1556.] [or] [ASTM D6938 using Procedure A, the direct transmission method, and ASTM D6938 shall be used to determine the moisture content of the material. The machine shall be calibrated in accordance with ASTM D6938]. If the specified density is not attained, the area represented by the failed test must be reworked and/or recompact and two additional random tests made. This procedure shall be followed until the specified density is reached. Maximum density refers to maximum dry density at optimum moisture content unless otherwise specified.

The Engineer shall specify ASTM D698 or ASTM D1557 for areas designated for aircraft with gross weights of 60,000 pounds (27200 kg) or less and ASTM D1557 for areas designated for aircraft with gross weights greater than 60,000 pounds (27200 kg).

The Engineer may adjust the testing area as appropriate to the job size.

b. Thickness control. Depth tests shall be made by test holes at least 3 inches (75 mm) in diameter that extend through the base. The thickness of the base course shall be within +0 and -1/2 inch (12 mm) of the specified thickness as determined by depth tests taken by the Contractor in the presence of the RPR for each area. Where the thickness is deficient by more than 1/2-inch (12 mm), the Contractor shall correct such areas at no additional cost by scarifying to a depth of at least 3 inches (75 mm), adding new material of proper gradation, and the material shall be blended and recompact to grade. The Contractor shall replace, at his expense, base material where depth tests have been taken.

The Engineer may modify the above thickness control paragraph to permit the thickness determination by survey. Survey shall be required before and after placement of the base. The survey interval should be specified based on the size of the project.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

212-4.1 The quantity of shell base course shall be the number of [square yards (square meters)][cubic yards (cubic meters)] of base course material placed, bonded, and accepted in the completed base course. The quantity of base course material shall be measured in final position [based upon depth tests or cores taken by the Contractor as directed by the RPR.][by means of average end areas on the complete work computed from elevations to the nearest 0.01 foot (3 mm)]. On individual depth measurements, thicknesses more than 1/2 inch (12 mm) in excess of that shown on the plans shall be considered as specified thickness, plus 1/2 inch (12 mm) in computing the yardage for payment. Base materials shall not be included in any other excavation quantities.

[**212-4.2** Separation geotextile shall be measured by the number of [square yards][square meters] of materials placed and accepted by the RPR as complying with the plans and specifications excluding seam overlaps and edge anchoring.]

BASIS OF PAYMENT

212-5.1 Payment shall be made at the contract unit price per [square yards (square meters)][cubic yard (cubic meter)] for shell base course. This price shall be full compensation for furnishing all materials and for all preparation, hauling, and placing of these materials, and for all labor, equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete the item.

[**212-5.2** Payment shall be made at the contract unit price per [square yard][square meter] for separation geotextile. The price shall be full compensation for furnishing all labor, equipment, material, anchors, and incidentals necessary.]

Payment will be made under:

Item P-212-5.1 Shell Base Course - per [square yards (square meters)]
[cubic yard (cubic meter)]

[Item P-212-5.2 Separation Geotextile per [square yard]
[square meter]]

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM International (ASTM)

ASTM C136	Standard Test Method for Sieve or Screen Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates
ASTM D698	Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Standard Effort (12,400 ft-lbf/ft ³ (600 kN-m/m ³))
ASTM D1556	Standard Test Method for Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place by the Sand-Cone Method
ASTM D1557	Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Modified Effort (56,000 ft-lbf/ft ³ (2700 kN-m/m ³))
ASTM D4318	Standard Test Methods for Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit, and Plasticity Index of Soils

END OF ITEM P-212

Item P-213 Sand-Clay Base Course

Item P-213 may be used under flexible and rigid pavements when pavement loads are 60,000 pounds or less, or when used under stabilized bases. Item P-213 is similar or slightly better than a subbase material. The engineer may specify this item if approved by the FAA and the material is readily available.

DESCRIPTION

213-1.1 This item shall consist of a base course constructed on a prepared underlying course per these specifications and shall conform to the dimensions and typical cross-section shown on the plans.

MATERIALS

213-2.1 Sand-clay. The materials shall be a mixture of clay and mineral aggregate. This mixture shall consist of topsoil, sand-clay, sand-clay gravel, disintegrated granite, or aggregate containing sufficient binder material to produce a uniform mixture when blended or processed complying with the requirements of these specifications.

The materials shall be uniform and free from excess amounts of clay or organic matter such as leaves, grass, roots, and other objectionable or foreign substances. The coarse aggregate (particles coarser than a No. 4 mesh (4.75 mm) sieve) shall consist of hard, durable pieces or fragments of stone or gravel.

The gradation of the blended or processed material shall meet the requirements of one of the gradations given in the following table, when tested per ASTM C136.

Sand-Clay Base Coarse Gradation

Sieve designation	Percentage by Weight Passing Sieves	
	A	B
1-1/2 inch (37.5 mm)	100	100
1 inch (25.0 mm)	85-100	85-100
No. 4 (4.75 mm)	45-75	65-100
No. 10 (2.00 mm)	30-60	60-100
No. 40 (425 µm)	10-40	20-70
No. 200 (75 µm)	2-15	4-25

The fraction passing the No. 40 (425 µm) sieve shall be referred to as binder. The material passing the No. 40 mesh (425 µm) sieve shall have a plasticity index not to exceed six (6) and have a liquid limit of not more than 25, when tested per ASTM D4318.

213-2.2 Filler for blending. If filler, in addition to that naturally present in the base course material, is necessary for satisfactory bonding of the material, or for changing the soil constants of the material passing the No. 40 (425 μm) sieve, or for correcting the gradation within the limits of the specified gradation, it shall be uniformly blended with the base course material. The material for this purpose shall be obtained from sources approved by the Resident Project Representative (RPR) at the gradation required to produce the required blended material.

213-2.3 Sampling and testing.

a. Aggregate base materials. The Contractor shall take samples of the aggregate base in accordance with ASTM D75 to verify initial aggregate base requirements and gradation. Material shall meet the requirements in paragraphs 213-2.1 and 213-2.2. This sampling and testing will be the basis for approval of the aggregate base quality requirements. []

b. Gradation requirements. The Contractor shall take at least [two] aggregate base samples per day in the presence of the RPR to check the final gradation. Sampling shall be per ASTM D75. Material shall meet the requirements in paragraph 213-2.1 and 213-2.2. The samples shall be taken from the in-place, un-compacted material at sampling points and intervals designated by the RPR.

**The Engineer may require additional sampling points for quality requirements.
The Engineer shall define when additional sampling points are needed in the above paragraph.**

213-2.4 Separation Geotextile. [Not used.] [Separation Geotextile shall be [Class 2, 0.02 sec^{-1}] permittivity per ASTM D4491, apparent opening size per ASTM D4751 with [0.60 mm] maximum average roll value.]

The use of a geotextile to prevent mixing of a subgrade soil and an aggregate subbase/base is appropriate for pavement structures constructed over soils with a California Bearing Ratio greater than 3.

Generally, on airport projects a Class 2 geotextile with a permittivity of 0.02 and AOS of 0.60 mm will be sufficient.

See AASHTO M288 for additional notes regarding separation geotextiles.

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

213-3.1 Control Strip. The first half-day of construction shall be considered the control strip. The Contractor shall demonstrate, in the presence of the RPR, that the materials, equipment, and construction processes meet the requirements of the specification. The sequence and manner of rolling necessary to obtain specified density requirements shall be determined. The maximum compacted thickness may be increased to a maximum of 12 inches (300 mm) upon the Contractor's demonstration that approved equipment and operations will uniformly compact the lift to the specified density. The RPR must witness this demonstration and approve the lift thickness prior to full production.

Control strips that do not meet specification requirements shall be reworked, re-compacted or removed and replaced at the Contractor's expense. Full operations shall not continue until the control strip has been accepted by the RPR. The Contractor shall use the same equipment, materials, and construction methods for the remainder of construction, unless adjustments made by the Contractor are approved by the RPR.

213-3.2 Preparing underlying course. The underlying course shall be checked and accepted by the RPR before placing and spreading operations are started. Any ruts or soft yielding places caused by improper drainage conditions, hauling, or any other cause shall be corrected at the Contractor's expense before the base course is placed thereon. Material shall not be placed on frozen subgrade or subbase.

213-3.3 Placement. The material shall be placed and spread on the prepared underlying layer by spreader boxes or other devices as approved by the RPR, to a uniform thickness and width. The equipment shall have positive thickness controls to minimize the need for additional manipulation of the material. Dumping from vehicles that require re-handling shall not be permitted. Hauling over the uncompacted base course shall not be permitted.

The aggregate shall meet gradation and moisture requirements prior to compaction. The base course shall be constructed in lifts as established in the control strip, but not less than 4 inches (100 mm) nor more than 12 inches (300 mm) of compacted thickness.

When more than one lift is required to establish the layer thickness shown on the plans, the construction procedure described here shall apply to each lift. No lift shall be covered by subsequent lifts until tests verify that compaction requirements have been met. The Contractor shall rework, re-compact and retest any material placed which does not meet the specifications.

213-3.4 Compaction. Immediately upon completion of the spreading operations, compact each layer of the base course, as specified, with approved compaction equipment. The number, type, and weight of rollers shall be sufficient to compact the material to the required density within the same day that the aggregate is placed on the subgrade. The field density of each compacted lift of material shall be at least [100%] of the maximum density of laboratory specimens prepared from samples of the subbase material delivered to the jobsite. The moisture content of the material during placing operations shall be within ± 2 percentage points of the optimum moisture content as determined by ASTM [____]. Maximum density refers to maximum dry density at optimum moisture content unless otherwise specified.

The Engineer shall specify ASTM D698 or ASTM D1557 for areas designated for aircraft with gross weights of 60,000 pounds (27200 kg) or less and ASTM D1557 for areas designated for aircraft with gross weights greater than 60,000 pounds (27200 kg).

If the material has greater than 30% retained on the 3/4-inch (19.0 mm) sieve, ASTM D1557 or D698 has suggested procedures for dealing with oversize material.

Proof rolling is required when a method specification is used for compaction.

210-3.5 Finishing. The surface of the base course shall be finished by blading or other approved equipment designed for this purpose. Adding thin layers of material to the top layer of base course to meet grade shall not be allowed. If the elevation of the top layer is 1/2 inch (12 mm) or more below grade, the top layer of base shall be scarified to a depth of at least 3 inches (75 mm), new material added, and the layer blended and recompacted to bring it to grade at the Contractor's expense. If the finished surface is above plan grade, it shall be cut to grade and rerolled.

213-3.6 Weather limitations. Material shall not be placed unless the ambient air temperature is at least 40°F (4°C) and rising. Work on base course shall not be conducted when the subgrade or subbase is wet or frozen or the base material contains frozen material.

213-3.7 Maintenance. The base course shall be maintained in a condition that will meet all specification requirements. When material has been exposed to excessive rain, snow, or freeze-thaw conditions, prior to placement of additional material, the Contractor shall verify that materials still meet all specification requirements. Equipment may be routed over completed sections of base course, provided that no damage results and the equipment is routed over the full width of the completed base course. Any damage resulting to the base course from routing equipment over the base course shall be repaired by the Contractor at their expense.

213-3.8 Surface tolerance. After the course has been compacted, the surface shall be tested for smoothness and accuracy of grade and crown. Any portion lacking the required smoothness or failing in accuracy of grade or crown shall be scarified to a depth of at least 3 inches (75 mm), reshaped and recompacted to grade, until the required smoothness and accuracy are obtained and approved by the RPR. Any deviation in surface tolerances shall be corrected by the Contractor at the Contractor's expense. The smoothness and accuracy requirements specified here apply only to the top layer when base course is constructed in more than one layer.

a. Smoothness. The finished surface shall not vary more than 3/8-inch (9 mm) when tested with a 12-foot (3.7-m) straightedge applied parallel with and at right angles to the centerline. The straightedge shall be moved continuously at half the length of the 12-foot (3.7-m) straightedge for the full length of each line on a 50-foot [15-meter] grid.

b. Grade. The grade and crown shall be measured on a 50-foot (15-m) grid and shall be within +0 and -1/2 inch (12 mm) of the specified grade.

213-3.9 Acceptance sampling and testing. Sand-clay base course shall be accepted for density and thickness on an area basis. One test shall be made for each [2400 square yards (2000 sq m)]. Sampling locations will be determined on a random basis per ASTM D3665.

a. Density. The [RPR shall perform all density tests][Contractor's laboratory shall perform all density tests in the RPR's presence and provide the test results upon completion to the RPR for acceptance].

Each area will be accepted for density when the field density is at least 100% of the maximum density of laboratory specimens compacted and tested per ASTM [____]. The in-place field density shall be determined per [ASTM D1556.][ASTM D2167][ASTM D6938]. If the specified density is not attained, the area shall be reworked and/or recompacted and two additional random tests made. This procedure shall be followed until the specified density is reached. Maximum density refers to maximum dry density at optimum moisture content unless otherwise specified.

The Engineer shall specify ASTM D698 for areas designated for aircraft with gross weights of 60,000 pounds (27200 kg) or less and ASTM D1557 for areas designated for aircraft with gross weights greater than 60,000 pounds (27200 kg).

The Engineer may adjust the testing area as appropriate to the job size.

b. Thickness control. Depth tests shall be made by test holes at least 3 inches (75 mm) in diameter that extend through the base. The thickness of the base course shall be determined by depth tests or cores taken by the Contractor in the presence of the RPR. When the base is more than 1/2 inch (12 mm)

deficient, the Contractor shall correct the areas by scarifying, adding satisfactory base mixture, rolling, sprinkling, reshaping, and refinishing per these specifications. The Contractor shall replace, at the Contractor's expense, the base material where depth tests or cores have been taken.

The Engineer may modify the above thickness paragraph to permit the thickness determination by a survey before and after placement of the base. The survey interval should be specified based on the size of the project. Delete reference to depth tests or cores if surveys are specified.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

213-4.1 The quantity of sand-clay base course shall be the number of [square yards (cubic meters)][cubic yards (cubic meters)] of base course material placed, bonded, and accepted in the completed base course. The quantity of base course material shall be measured in final position based upon [depth tests or cores taken as directed by the RPR.] [by means of average end areas on the complete work computed from elevations to the nearest 0.01 foot (3 mm)]. On individual depth measurements, thicknesses more than 1/2 inch (12 mm) in excess of that shown on the plans shall be considered as the specified thickness, plus 1/2 inch (12 mm) in computing the yardage for payment. Base materials shall not be included in any other excavation quantities.

[**213-4.2** Separation geotextile shall be measured by the number of [square yards][square meters] of materials placed and accepted by the RPR as complying with the plans and specifications excluding seam overlaps and edge anchoring.]

Engineer shall select the method of measurement.

BASIS OF PAYMENT

213-5.1 Payment shall be made at the contract unit price per [square yards (cubic meters)][cubic yard (cubic meter)] for sand-clay base course. This price shall be full compensation for furnishing all materials and for all preparation, hauling, and placing of these materials, and for all labor, equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete the item.

[**213-5.2** Payment shall be made at the contract unit price per [square yard][square meter] for separation geotextile. The price shall be full compensation for furnishing all labor, equipment, material, anchors, and incidentals necessary.]

Payment will be made under:

Item P-213-5.1	Sand-Clay Base Course - per [square yards (cubic meters)][cubic yard (cubic meter)]

[Item P-213-5.2 Separation Geotextile per [square yard]
[square meter]]

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM International (ASTM)

ASTM C136	Standard Test Method for Sieve or Screen Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates
ASTM D698	Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Standard Effort (12,400 ft-lbf/ft ³ (600 kN-m/m ³))
ASTM D1556	Standard Test Method for Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place by the Sand-Cone Method
ASTM D1557	Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Modified Effort (56,000 ft-lbf/ft ³ (2700 kN-m/m ³))
ASTM D2167	Standard Test Method for Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place by the Rubber Balloon Method
ASTM D4318	Standard Test Methods for Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit, and Plasticity Index of Soils

END OF ITEM P-213

Item P-217 Aggregate-Turf Runway/Taxiway

Item P-217 may be used for general aviation runways, taxiways, or shoulders adjacent to runways accommodating ADG-I and ADG-II aircraft.

DESCRIPTION

217-1.1 This item shall consist of an aggregate-turf composed of a base course of soil-bound crushed stone, soil-bound gravel, or soil-bound sand, and a seedbed of suitable soil or combination of soil and aggregate, constructed on a prepared subgrade or a previously constructed underlying course per these specifications, and shall conform to the dimensions and typical cross-section shown on the plans.

This item may include the furnishing and applying of fertilizer, lime, top-soil, or other plant nutrients; the furnishing and planting of seed; and the furnishing and spreading of mulch. When any turfing materials are required, the quality, quantity, and construction methods shall be per paragraph 217-3.10 Turf. When turf is to be established, the seedbed soil or topsoil shall be a natural friable soil, possessing characteristics of the best locally obtainable soils, which can produce a fairly heavy growth of crops, grass, or other vegetation.

The prepared composite mixture of aggregates used for the base course shall be [Type A, B, or C, of the table below (titled Gradation of Mixture)][stabilizer aggregate of the table below (titled Gradation of Stabilizer Aggregate) mixed with in-place materials].

MATERIALS

217-2.1 Stabilized mixes. The designated stabilized base course mixtures shall conform to the following requirements.

[Type A - The materials shall be natural or artificial mixtures of clay or soil binder and gravel, stone or sand, as screenings proportioned to meet the requirements specified.]

[Type B or C - The materials shall be natural or artificial mixtures of gravel, stone, or slag and soil so proportioned to meet the requirement specified. The aggregate shall consist of clean, hard durable particles of crushed or uncrushed gravel, stone, or slag, and shall be free from soft, thin, elongated, or laminated pieces, and vegetable or other deleterious substances.]

The prepared composite mixture used shall meet the applicable gradation requirements as follows when tested per ASTM C136.

Gradation of Mixture

Sieve Designation (square openings)	Percentage by weight passing sieves
	[*]
2 inch (50 mm)	*
1 inch (25.0 mm)	*
3/4 inch (19.0 mm)	*
No. 4 (4.75 mm)	*
No. 10 (2.00 mm)	*
No. 20 (850 µm)	*
No. 40 (425 µm)	*
No. 200 (75 µm)	*

The Engineer shall select the gradation from the following table to populate the above table titled “Gradation of Mixture.”

Gradation of Mixture

Sieve Designation (square openings)	Percentage by weight passing sieves		
	A	B	C
2 inch (50 mm)			100
1 inch (25.0 mm)	100	100	70-95
3/4 inch (19.0 mm)		70-100	
No. 4 (4.75 mm)		40-70	
No. 10 (2.00 mm)	60-100	40-70	32-60
No. 20 (850 µm)	50-90		
No. 40 (425 µm)	40-75	20-45	20-40
No. 200 (75 µm)	12-30	10-20	10-20

The fraction passing the No. 40 (425 µm) mesh sieve shall have a liquid limit not greater than 30 and a plasticity index not greater than eight (8) when tested per ASTM D4318.

217-2.2 Stabilizer aggregate. Stabilizer aggregate conforming to the gradation(s) specified in the table below, when tested per ASTM C136, shall be placed upon the existing soil or base course in the specified quantity per square yard (square meter). The aggregate shall be uniformly blended with the soil or base course material to the depth required or as shown on the plans. The aggregate shall consist of crushed stone, crushed or uncrushed gravel, or crushed slag, and it shall have a percent of wear not more than 60 at 500 revolutions as determined by ASTM C131. The aggregate shall be free from soft, thin, elongated, or laminated pieces, disintegrated material, or other deleterious substances.

Where sand, as existing subgrade or base, requires modification, it shall be modified by the addition of clay or lime rock. The operation of spreading and mixing shall be handled as stated under construction methods.

Gradation of Stabilizer Aggregate

Sieve designation (square openings)	Percentage by weight passing sieves
	[*]
2 inch (50 mm)	*
1-1/2 inch (37.5 mm)	*
1 inch (25.0 mm)	*
1/2 inch (12.5 mm)	*
No. 4 (4.75 mm)	*
No. 10 (2.00 mm)	*
No. 100 (150 µm)	*

The Engineer shall select the appropriate gradation(s) from the following table.

Gradation of Stabilizer Aggregate

Sieve designation (square openings)	Percentage by weight passing sieves		
	D	E	F
2 inch (50 mm)		100	
1-1/2 inch (37.5 mm)	100		
1 inch (25.0 mm)	90-100		
1/2 inch (12.5 mm)		0-15	100
No. 4 (4.75 mm)	20-50		85-100
No. 10 (2.00 mm)	0-10		
No. 100 (150 µm)			0-30

217-2.3 Sampling and Testing.

a. Aggregate base materials. The Contractor shall take samples of the aggregate base in accordance with ASTM D75 to verify initial aggregate base requirements and gradation. Material shall meet the requirements in paragraph 217-2.1. This sampling and testing will be the basis for approval of the aggregate base quality requirements. []

b. Gradation requirements. The Contractor shall take at least [two] aggregate base samples per day in the presence of the Resident Project Representative (RPR) to check the final gradation. Sampling shall be per ASTM D75. Material shall meet the requirements in paragraph 217-2.2. The samples shall be taken from the in-place, un-compacted material at sampling points and intervals designated by the RPR.

**The Engineer may require additional sampling points for quality requirements.
The Engineer shall define when additional sampling points are needed in the above paragraph.**

217-2.4 Separation Geotextile. [Not used.] [Separation Geotextile shall be [Class 2], [0.02 sec⁻¹] permittivity per ASTM D4491, Apparent opening size per ASTM D4751 with [0.60 mm] maximum average roll value.]

The use of a geotextile to prevent mixing of a subgrade soil and an aggregate subbase/base is appropriate for pavement structures constructed over soils with a California Bearing Ratio greater than 3.

Generally, on airport projects, a Class 2 geotextile with a permittivity of 0.02 and AOS of 0.60 mm will be sufficient.

See AASHTO M288 for additional notes regarding separation geotextiles.

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

217-3.1 Control Strip. The first half-day of construction shall be considered the control strip. The Contractor shall demonstrate, in the presence of the RPR, that the materials, equipment, and construction processes meet the requirements of the specification. The sequence and manner of rolling necessary to obtain specified density requirements shall be determined.

Control strips that do not meet specification requirements shall be reworked, re-compacted, or removed and replaced at the Contractor's expense. Full operations shall not begin until the control strip has been accepted by the RPR. Upon acceptance of the control strip by the RPR, the Contractor shall use the same equipment, materials, and construction methods for the remainder of construction, unless adjustments made by the Contractor are approved in advance by the RPR.

217-3.2 Preparing underlying course. The underlying course shall be checked and accepted by the RPR before placing and spreading operations begin. Any ruts or soft, yielding places caused by improper drainage conditions, hauling, or any other cause, shall be corrected before the base course is placed. To protect the underlying course and to ensure proper drainage, the spreading of the base shall begin along the centerline of the pavement on a crowned section or on the high side of the pavement with a one-way slope. Material shall not be placed on frozen subgrade or subbase.

217-3.3 Placement. The material shall be placed and spread on the prepared underlying layer by spreader boxes or other devices as approved by the RPR, to a uniform thickness and width. The material shall be thoroughly pulverized and mixed to produce a homogeneous mass forming a layer. The equipment shall have positive thickness controls to minimize the need for additional manipulation of the material. Dumping from vehicles that require re-handling shall not be permitted. Hauling over the uncompacted base course shall not be permitted.

The material shall meet gradation and moisture requirements prior to compaction. The layer shall be constructed in lifts as established in the control strip, but not less than 4 inches (100 mm) nor more than 12 inches (300 mm) of compacted thickness.

When more than one lift is required to establish the layer thickness shown on the plans, the construction procedure described here shall apply to each lift. No lift shall be covered by subsequent lifts until tests verify that compaction requirements have been met. The Contractor shall rework, re-compact and retest any material placed which does not meet the specifications.

217-3.4 Compaction. Immediately upon completion of the spreading operations, compact each layer of the base course, as specified, with approved compaction equipment. The number, type, and weight of rollers shall be sufficient to compact the material to the required density within the same day that the aggregate is placed on the subgrade. The field density of each compacted lift of material shall be at least [90%] of the maximum density of laboratory specimens prepared from samples of the subbase material delivered to the jobsite. The moisture content of the material during placing operations shall be within ± 2 percentage points of the optimum moisture content as determined by ASTM [D698]. Maximum density refers to maximum dry density at optimum moisture content unless otherwise specified.

210-3.5 Finishing. The surface of the base course shall be finished by blading or other approved equipment designed for this purpose. Adding thin layers of material to the top layer of base course to meet grade shall not be allowed. If the elevation of the top layer is 1/2 inch (12 mm) or more below grade, the top layer of base shall be scarified to a depth of at least 3 inches (75 mm), new material added, and the layer blended and recompact to bring it to grade at the Contractor's expense. If the finished surface is above plan grade, it shall be cut to grade and rerolled.

208-3.6 Weather limitations. Material shall not be placed unless the ambient air temperature is at least 40°F (4°C) and rising. Work on base course shall not be conducted when the subgrade or subbase is wet or frozen or the base material contains frozen material.

210-3.7 Maintenance. The layer shall be maintained in a condition that will meet all specification requirements until the work is accepted. When material has been exposed to excessive rain, snow, or freeze-thaw conditions, prior to placement of additional material, the Contractor shall verify that materials still meets all specification requirements. Equipment may be routed over completed sections of base course, provided that no damage results and the equipment is routed over the full width of the completed base course. Any damage resulting to the base course from routing equipment over the base course shall be repaired by the Contractor at their expense.

217-3.8 Surface tolerance. After the course has been compacted, the surface shall be tested for smoothness and accuracy of grade and crown. Any portion lacking the required smoothness or failing in accuracy of grade or crown shall be scarified to a depth of at least 3 inches (75 mm), reshaped and recompact to grade, until the required smoothness and accuracy are obtained and approved by the RPR. Any deviation in surface tolerances shall be corrected by the Contractor at the Contractor's expense. The smoothness and accuracy requirements specified here apply only to the top layer when base course is constructed in more than one layer.

a. Smoothness. The finished surface shall not vary more than 1/2-inch (12 mm) when tested with a 12-foot (3.7-m) straightedge applied parallel with and at right angles to the centerline. The straightedge shall be moved continuously at half the length of the 12-foot (3.7-m) straightedge for the full length of each line on a 50-foot (15-m) grid.

b. Grade. The grade and crown shall be measured on a 50-foot (15-m) grid and shall be within +0 and -1/2 inch (12 mm) of the specified grade.

217-3.9 Acceptance sampling and testing. Aggregate-Turf course shall be accepted for density and thickness on an area basis. Two tests for density and thickness shall be made for each [1200 square yds (1000 m²)]. Sampling locations will be determined on a random basis per ASTM D3665.

a. Density. The [RPR shall perform all density tests] [Contractor's laboratory shall perform all density tests in the RPR's presence and provide the test results upon completion to the RPR for acceptance].

Each lot shall be accepted for density when the field density is at least [90%] of the maximum density of laboratory specimens compacted and tested per ASTM [D698]. The in-place field density shall be determined per [ASTM D1556.] [or] [ASTM D6938 using Procedure A, the direct transmission method, and ASTM D6938 shall be used to determine the moisture content of the material. The machine shall be calibrated in accordance with ASTM D6938.]. If the specified density is not attained, the area represented by the failed test must be reworked and/or recompacted and two additional random tests made. This procedure shall be followed until the specified density is reached. Maximum density refers to maximum dry density at optimum moisture content unless otherwise specified.

The Engineer may adjust the testing area as appropriate to the job size.

Specify ASTM D698 or ASTM D1557 for areas designated for aircraft with gross weights of less than 60,000 pounds (27200 kg). Specify ASTM D1557 for areas designated for aircraft with gross weights of 60,000 pounds (27200 kg) or greater.

b. Thickness. Depth tests shall be made by test holes or cores at least 3 inches (75 mm) in diameter that extend through the base. The thickness of the base course shall be within +0 and -1/2 inch (12 mm) of the specified thickness as determined by depth tests taken by the Contractor in the presence of the RPR for each area. Where the thickness is deficient by more than 1/2-inch (12 mm), the Contractor shall correct such areas at no additional cost by scarifying to a depth of at least 3 inches (75 mm), adding new material of proper gradation, and the material shall be blended and recompacted to grade. The Contractor shall replace, at his expense, base material where depth tests have been taken.

The Engineer may modify the above thickness control paragraph to permit the thickness determination by survey. Survey shall be required before and after placement of the base. The survey interval should be specified based on the size of the project.

217-3.10 Turf. Seeding shall be in accordance with Item T-901, Seeding [and T-905, Topsoiling].

If topsoil is required, include Item T-905.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

217-4.1 Soil-aggregate base course shall be measured by the number of [square yard (square meter)] [cubic yards (cubic meters)] of base course material placed, bonded, and

accepted in the completed base course. The quantity shall be measured in final position based on [depth tests or cores][, by means of average end areas on the completed work].

217-4.2 Stabilizer aggregate shall be measured by the number of [square yard (square meter)][cubic yards (cubic meters)] of aggregate furnished, placed, and accepted in the completed base course.

217-4.3 When approved materials in-place are used in the base course, the preparation and incorporation of other materials in the base mixture shall be measured as a conditioning and mixing operation measured by the number of square yards (square meters) of such material prepared and incorporated in the mix and accepted.

[**217-4.4** Separation geotextile shall be measured by the number of [square yards][square meters] of materials placed and accepted by the RPR as complying with the plans and specifications excluding seam overlaps and edge anchoring.]

Topsoil, lime, fertilizer, seeding and mulching will be paid under the applicable T-specs.

BASIS OF PAYMENT

217-5.1 Payment shall be made at the contract unit price per [square yard (square meter)] [cubic yard (cubic meter)] for soil-aggregate base course. These prices shall be full compensation for furnishing all materials and for all preparation, hauling, and placing of these materials; and for all labor, equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete the item.

217-5.2 Payment shall be made at the contract unit price per [square yard (square meter)] [cubic yard (cubic meter)] for stabilizer aggregate. These prices shall be full compensation for furnishing all materials and for all preparation, hauling, and placing of these materials; and for all labor, equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete the item.

217-5.3 Payment shall be made at the contract unit price per square yard (square meter) for conditioning operation. These prices shall be full compensation for furnishing all materials and for all preparation, hauling, and placing of these materials; and for all labor, equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete the item.

[**217-5.4** Separation geotextile shall be measured by the number of [square yards][square meters] of materials placed and accepted by the RPR as complying with the plans and specifications excluding seam overlaps and edge anchoring.]

Payment will be made under:

Item P-217-5.1	Soil Aggregate Base Course - per [square yard (square meter)][cubic yard (cubic meter)]
Item P-217-5.2	Stabilizer Aggregate - per [square yard (square meter)] [cubic yard (cubic meter)]

Item P-217-5.3 Conditioning Operation - per square yard (square meter)

[Item P-217-5.4 Separation Geotextile per [square yard]
[square meter]]

The Engineer shall include only those items shown in the bid schedule.

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM International (ASTM)

ASTM C131	Standard Test Method for Resistance to Degradation of Small-Size Coarse Aggregate by Abrasion and Impact in the Los Angeles Machine
ASTM C136	Standard Test Method for Sieve or Screen Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates
ASTM D698	Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Standard Effort (12,400 ft-lbf/ft ³ (600 kN-m/m ³))
ASTM D1556	Standard Test Method for Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place by the Sand-Cone Method
ASTM D4318	Standard Test Methods for Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit, and Plasticity Index of Soils
ASTM D4491	Standard Test Methods for Water Permeability of Geotextiles by Permittivity
ASTM D4751	Standard Test Methods for Determining Apparent Opening Size of a Geotextile

American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO)

M288	Standard Specification for Geosynthetic Specification for Highway Applications

END OF ITEM P-217

Item P-219 Recycled Concrete Aggregate Base Course

Item P-219 can be used as a subbase under flexible and rigid pavement and may be used as base depending on quality of materials and gradation. The quality of the recycled aggregate base course is directly related to the quality of the source material it is produced from and how it is processed and stored. With adequate production controls, P-219 can be equivalent to P-209.

DESCRIPTION

219-1.1 This item consists of a base course composed of recycled concrete aggregate, crushed to meet a particular gradation, constructed on a prepared course per these specifications and in conformity to the dimensions and typical cross-sections shown on the plans.

MATERIALS

219-2.1 Aggregate. Recycled concrete aggregate shall consist of cement concrete. The recycled concrete material shall be free of reinforcing steel and expansion material. Asphalt overlays and any full slab asphalt panels shall be removed from the concrete surface prior to removal and crushing.

Recycled concrete aggregate shall consist of at least 90%, by weight, cement concrete; virgin aggregates may be added to meet the 90% minimum concrete requirement. The remaining 10% may consist of the following materials:

Deleterious Materials

Material	Quantity
Wood	0.1% maximum
Brick, mica, schist, or other friable materials	4% maximum
Asphalt concrete	10% maximum
Total	10 % maximum

Recycled Concrete Aggregate Base Material Requirements

Material Test	Requirement	Standard
Coarse Aggregate		
Resistance to Degradation	Loss: 45% maximum	ASTM C131
Flat Particles, Elongated Particles, or Flat and Elongated Particles ¹	10% maximum, by weight, for fraction retained on the ½ inch (12.5mm) sieve and 10% maximum, by weight, for the fraction passing the 1/2-inch (12.5 mm) sieve	ASTM D4791
Clay lumps and friable particles	Less than or equal to 3 percent	ASTM C142
Fine Aggregate Portion		
Liquid limit	Less than or equal to 25	ASTM D4318
Plasticity Index	Not more than four (4)	ASTM D4318

¹ A flat particle is one having a ratio of width to thickness greater than five (5); an elongated particle is one having a ratio of length to width greater than five (5).

The fine aggregate shall be produced by crushing stone, gravel, slag, or recycled concrete that meet the requirements for wear and soundness specified for coarse aggregate. Fine aggregate may be added to produce the correct gradation.

Each source of recycled concrete aggregate shall meet the above requirements.

Recycled concrete aggregate shape depends on the characteristics of the recycled concrete, plant type, and plant operation speed. This may require a number of trial batches before crushed recycled concrete aggregate meeting the shape and gradation requirements can be produced.

Concrete affected by alkali-silica reaction (ASR) may be used for recycled base course with appropriate analysis.

Recycled concrete aggregate shall not be used in locations with high sulfate content soils (no more than 0.5%).

Recycled concrete aggregate shape depends on the characteristics of the recycled concrete, plant type, and plant operation speed.

219-2.2 Gradation requirements. The gradation (job mix) of the final mixture shall fall within the design range indicated in the following table, when tested per ASTM C117 and ASTM C136. The final gradation shall be continuously graded from coarse to fine and shall not vary from the low limit on one sieve to the high limit on an adjacent sieve or vice versa.

Gradation of Recycled Concrete Aggregate Base

Sieve Size	Percentage by Weight Passing Sieves	Contractor's Final Gradation	Job Mix Tolerances Percent
2 inch (50 mm)	100		--
1-1/2 inch (37.5 mm)	95 - 100		±5
1 inch (25.0 mm)	70 - 95		±8
3/4 inch (19.0 mm)	55 - 85		±8
No. 4 (4.75 mm)	30 - 60		±8
No. 30 (600 µm)	12 - 30		±5
No. 200 (75 µm)	0 - 10		±3

The job mix tolerances in the table shall be applied to the job mix gradation to establish a job control gradation band. The full tolerance still will apply if application of the tolerances results in a job control gradation band outside the design range.

219-2.3 Sampling and testing.

a. Aggregate base materials. The Contractor shall take samples of the aggregate base in accordance with ASTM D75 to verify initial aggregate base requirements and gradation. Material shall meet the requirements in paragraphs 219-2.1 and 219-2.2. This sampling and testing will be the basis for approval of the aggregate base quality requirements. []

b. Gradation requirements. The Contractor shall take at least [two] aggregate base samples per day in the presence of the Resident Project Representative (RPR) to check the final gradation. Sampling shall be per ASTM D75. Material shall meet the requirements in paragraph 219-2.2. The lot will be consistent with the lot size used for density. The samples shall be taken from the in-place, un-compacted material at sampling points and intervals designated by the RPR.

**The Engineer may require additional sampling points for quality requirements.
The Engineer shall define when additional sampling points are needed in the above paragraph.**

219-2.4 Separation Geotextile. [Not used.] [Separation Geotextile shall be [class 2], [0.02 sec⁻¹] permittivity per ASTM D4491, Apparent opening size per ASTM D4751 with [0.60 mm] maximum average roll value.]

The use of a geotextile to prevent mixing of a subgrade soil and an aggregate subbase/base is appropriate for pavement structures constructed over soils with a California Bearing Ratio greater than 3.

Generally, on airport projects, a Class 2 geotextile with a permittivity of 0.02 and AOS of 0.6 mm will be sufficient.

See AASHTO M288 for additional notes regarding separation geotextiles.

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

219-3.1 Control Strip. The first half-day of construction shall be considered the control strip. The Contractor shall demonstrate, in the presence of the RPR, that the materials, equipment, and construction processes meet the requirements of the specification. The sequence and manner of rolling necessary to obtain specified density requirements shall be determined. The maximum compacted thickness may be increased to a maximum of 12 inches (300 mm) upon the Contractor's demonstration that approved equipment and operations will uniformly compact the lift to the specified density. The RPR must witness this demonstration and approve the lift thickness prior to full production.

Control strips that do not meet specification requirements shall be reworked, re-compacted or removed and replaced at the Contractor's expense. Full operations shall not continue until the control strip has been accepted by the RPR. The Contractor shall use the same equipment, materials, and construction methods for the remainder of construction, unless adjustments made by the Contractor are approved by the RPR.

219-3.2 Preparing underlying course. The underlying course shall be checked by the RPR before placing and spreading operations are started. Any ruts or soft yielding places caused by improper drainage conditions, hauling, or any other cause shall be corrected at the Contractor's expense before the base course is placed there. Material shall not be placed on frozen material.

To protect the existing layers and to ensure proper drainage, the spreading of the recycled concrete aggregate base course shall begin along the centerline of the pavement on a crowned section or on the greatest contour elevation of a pavement with a variable uniform cross slope.

219-3.3 Placement. The aggregate shall be placed and spread on the prepared underlying layer by spreader boxes or other devices as approved by the RPR, to a uniform thickness and width. The equipment shall have positive thickness controls to minimize the need for additional manipulation of the material. Dumping from vehicles that require re-handling shall not be permitted. Hauling over the uncompacted base course shall not be permitted.

The aggregate shall meet gradation and moisture requirements prior to compaction. The subbase course shall be constructed in lifts as established in the control strip, but not less than 4 inches (100 mm) nor more than 12 inches (300 mm) of compacted thickness.

When more than one lift is required to establish the layer thickness shown on the plans, the construction procedure described here shall apply to each lift. No lift shall be covered by subsequent lifts until tests verify that compaction requirements have been met. The Contractor shall rework, re-compact and retest any material placed which does not meet the specifications.

219-3.4 Compaction. Immediately upon completion of the spreading operations, compact each layer of the base course, as specified, with approved compaction equipment. The number, type, and weight of rollers shall be sufficient to compact the material to the required density within the same day that the aggregate is placed on the subgrade.

The field density of each compacted lift of material shall be at least [100%] of the maximum density of laboratory specimens prepared from samples of the subbase material delivered to the jobsite. The laboratory specimens shall be compacted and tested in accordance with [ASTM D1557]. The moisture content of the material during placing operations shall be within ± 2 percentage points of the optimum moisture content as determined by ASTM [D1557]. Maximum density refers to maximum dry density at optimum moisture content unless otherwise specified.

Material meeting the requirements of P-219 may be free-draining and to achieve compaction may need to be compacted on the wet-side of optimum.

The Engineer shall specify ASTM D698 or ASTM D1557 for areas designated for aircraft with gross weights of 60,000 pounds (27200 kg) or less and ASTM D1557 for areas designated for aircraft with gross weights greater than 60,000 pounds (27200 kg).

219-3.5 Weather limitations. Material shall not be placed unless the ambient air temperature is at least 40°F (4°C) and rising. Work on base course shall not be conducted when the subgrade or subbase is wet or frozen or the base material contains frozen material.

219-3.6 Maintenance. The base course shall be maintained in a condition that will meet all specification requirements. When material has been exposed to excessive rain, snow, or freeze-thaw conditions, prior to placement of additional material, the Contractor shall verify that materials still meet all specification requirements. Equipment may be routed over completed sections of base course, provided that no damage results and the equipment is routed over the full width of the completed base course. Any damage resulting to the base course from routing equipment over the base course shall be repaired by the Contractor at their expense.

219-3.7 Surface tolerances. After the course has been compacted, the surface shall be tested for smoothness and accuracy of grade and crown. Any portion lacking the required smoothness or failing in accuracy of grade or crown shall be scarified to a depth of at least 3 inches (75 mm), reshaped and recompact to grade until the required smoothness and accuracy are obtained and approved by the RPR. Any deviation in surface tolerances shall be corrected by the Contractor at the Contractor's expense. The smoothness and accuracy requirements specified here apply only to the top layer when base course is constructed in more than one layer.

a. Smoothness. The finished surface shall not vary more than 3/8-inch (9 mm) when tested with a 12-foot (3.7-m) straightedge applied parallel with and at right angles to the centerline. The straightedge shall be moved continuously forward at half the length of the 12-foot (3.7-m) straightedge for the full length of each line on a 50-foot (15-m) grid.

b. Grade. The grade and crown shall be measured on a 50-foot (15-m) grid and shall be within +0 and 1/2 inch (12 mm) of the specified grade.

219-3.8 Acceptance sampling and testing for density. Recycled Concrete Aggregate base course shall be accepted for density and thickness on an area basis. Two tests shall be made for density and thickness for each [1200 square yds (1000 m²)]. Sampling locations will be determined on a random basis per ASTM D3665

a. Density. The [RPR shall perform all density tests] [Contractor's laboratory shall perform all density tests in the RPR's presence and provide the test results upon completion to the RPR for acceptance].

Each area shall be accepted for density when the field density is at least [100%] of the maximum density of laboratory specimens compacted and tested per ASTM [1557] [D698]. The in-place field density shall be determined per [ASTM D1556.] [or] [ASTM D6938 using Procedure A, the direct transmission method, and ASTM D6938 shall be used to determine the moisture content of the material. The machine shall be calibrated in accordance with ASTM D6938.]. If the specified density is not attained, the area represented by the failed test must be reworked and/or recompact and two

additional random tests made. This procedure shall be followed until the specified density is reached. Maximum density refers to maximum dry density at optimum moisture content unless otherwise specified.

The Engineer may specify ASTM D698 or ASTM D1557 for areas designated for aircraft with gross weights of less than 60,000 pounds (27200 kg). The Engineer shall specify ASTM D1557 for areas designated for aircraft with gross weights of 60,000 pounds (27200 kg) or greater.

The Engineer may adjust the testing area as appropriate to the job size.

b. Thickness. Depth tests shall be made by test holes at least 3 inches (75 mm) in diameter that extend through the base. The thickness of the base course shall be within +0 and -1/2 inch (12 mm) of the specified thickness as determined by depth tests taken by the Contractor in the presence of the RPR for each area. Where the thickness is deficient by more than 1/2-inch (12 mm), the Contractor shall correct such areas at no additional cost by scarifying to a depth of at least 3 inches (75 mm), adding new material of proper gradation, and the material shall be blended and recompacted to grade. The Contractor shall replace, at his expense, base material where depth tests have been taken.

The Engineer may modify the above thickness control paragraph to permit the thickness determination by survey. Survey shall be required before and after placement of the base. The survey interval should be specified based on the size of the project.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

219-4.1 The quantity of recycled concrete aggregate base course will be determined by measurement of the number of square yards (square meters) of material actually constructed and accepted as complying with the plans and specifications.

[**219-4.2** Separation geotextile shall be measured by the number of [square yards][square meters] of materials placed and accepted by the RPR as complying with the plans and specifications excluding seam overlaps and edge anchoring.]

BASIS OF PAYMENT

219-5.1 Payment shall be made at the contract unit price per square yard (square meter) for recycled concrete aggregate base course. This price shall be full compensation for furnishing all materials, for preparing and placing these materials, and for all labor, equipment tools, and incidentals necessary to complete the item.

[**219-5.2** Payment shall be made at the contract unit price per [square yard][square meter] for separation geotextile. The price shall be

full compensation for furnishing all labor, equipment, material, anchors, and incidentals necessary.]

Payment will be made under:

Item P-219-5.1	Recycled Concrete Aggregate Base Course per square yard (square meter)
[Item P-219-5.2	Separation Geotextile per [square yard][square meter]]

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM International (ASTM)

ASTM C29	Standard Test Method for Bulk Density (“Unit Weight”) and Voids in Aggregate
ASTM C88	Standard Test Method for Soundness of Aggregates by Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate
ASTM C117	Standard Test Method for Materials Finer than 75 μm (No. 200) Sieve in Mineral Aggregates by Washing
ASTM C131	Standard Test Method for Resistance to Degradation of Small-Size Coarse Aggregate by Abrasion and Impact in the Los Angeles Machine
ASTM C136	Standard Test Method for Sieve or Screen Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregate
ASTM D75	Standard Practice for Sampling Aggregates
ASTM D698	Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Standard Effort (12,400 ft-lbf/ft ³ (600 kN-m/m ³))
ASTM D1556	Standard Test Method for Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place by the Sand Cone Method
ASTM D1557	Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Modified Effort (56,000 ft-lbf/ft ³ (2700 kN-m/m ³))
ASTM D2419	Standard Test Method for Sand Equivalent Value of Soils and Fine Aggregate
ASTM D3665	Standard Practice for Random Sampling of Construction Materials
ASTM D4318	Standard Test Methods for Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit, and Plasticity Index of Soils
ASTM D4643	Standard Test Method for Determination of Water (Moisture) Content of Soil by Microwave Oven Heating
ASTM D4791	Standard Test Method for Flat Particles, Elongated Particles, or Flat and Elongated Particles in Coarse Aggregate
ASTM D6938	Standard Test Method for In-Place Density and Water Content of Soil and Soil-Aggregate by Nuclear Methods (Shallow Depth)

END OF ITEM P-219

Page Intentionally Blank

Item P-220 Cement Treated Soil Base Course

When Item P-220 is used as a stabilized base course, the layer must be a minimum 12 inch (300 mm) thick. Use of Item P-220 as a stabilized base course is not recommended where frost penetration into the subbase is anticipated. If not used as a stabilized pavement layer, Item P-156 may be used.

Cement stabilization works best with granular soils combined with granular pavement material. Coarse grained soils which conform to ASTM D2487 classified as GW, GP, GM, GC, SW, SM, SC, SP and/or combination(s), generally may be cement stabilized.

In areas susceptible to freeze-thaw, a drainage layer should be provided over the cement stabilized subgrade.

The Engineer must check the soluble sulfate contents of the soils during design to determine if stabilization can react and induce heave. Sulfate reaction with either the soil to be stabilized or mixing water used in the stabilization process may be detrimental to the finished product due to the expansive nature of the sulfate reaction. During the design phase soils and water anticipated to be included in the stabilized material should be tested for potential to cause an adverse expansion reaction.

DESCRIPTION

220-1.1 This item shall consist of constructing a base course by uniformly mixing soil, cement, and water. The mixed material shall be spread, shaped, and compacted in accordance with these specifications and in conformity to the dimensions and typical cross-section shown on the plans. Tests shall be required for each approved soil included within the treated layer.

Runway, taxiway, or apron pavements shall be built in a series of parallel lanes using a plan that reduces the number of longitudinal and transverse joints to a minimum.

MATERIALS

220-2.1 Cement. Cement shall conform to the requirements of ASTM C150, Type I, IA, II, or IIA or ASTM C595, Type IS, IS(A), IP or IL.

220-2.2 Water. Water used in mixing or curing shall be from potable water sources. Other sources shall be tested in accordance with ASTM C1602 prior to use.

220-2.3 Soil. The soil for this work shall consist of on-site materials and shall be free of roots, sod, weeds, and stones larger than 2-1/2 inches (60 mm) with a sulfate content of less than 0.3%.

220-2.4 Asphalt material. The types, grades, controlling specifications, and application temperatures for the asphalt materials used for curing the soil-cement shall be [____].

MIX DESIGN

220-3.1 Proportions. Before the start of base course construction, tests shall be made on the soil or soil-aggregate material to be stabilized to determine the quantity of cement required for the mix design.

Test specimens containing various amounts of cement shall be compacted per ASTM D558, and the optimum moisture determined for each test specimen. Samples at the optimum moisture shall be subjected to the wet-dry and the freeze-thaw test in accordance with ASTM D559 and ASTM D560, respectively.

Cement shall be added at an application rate of [8] percent of dry unit weight of soil.

The Engineer will, based on the results of the Geotechnical Report, specify the application rate of cement to achieve the desired properties for the treated material.

When the cement treated material is used as a structural layer, add cement until a minimum California Bearing Ration (CBR) of 100 or a 7-day compressive strength of 300 to 800 psi (2068 to 5516 kPa) per ASTM C1633 is achieved.

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

220-4.1 Control Strip. The first half-day of construction shall be considered the control strip. The Contractor shall demonstrate, in the presence of the Resident Project Representative (RPR), that the materials, equipment, and construction processes meet the requirements of the specification. The sequence and manner of rolling necessary to obtain specified density requirements shall be determined. The maximum compacted thickness may be increased to a maximum of 12 inches (300 mm) upon the Contractor's demonstration that approved equipment and operations will uniformly compact the lift to the specified density. The RPR must witness this demonstration and approve the lift thickness prior to full production.

Control strips that do not meet specification requirements shall be reworked, re-compacted or removed and replaced at the Contractor's expense. Full operations shall not continue until the control strip has been accepted by the RPR. The Contractor shall use the same equipment, materials, and construction methods for the remainder of construction, unless adjustments made by the Contractor are approved by the RPR.

220-4.2 Weather limitations. The material shall not be mixed or placed while the atmospheric temperature is below 40°F (4°C) or when conditions indicate that the temperature may fall below 40°F (4°C) within 24 hours, or when the weather is foggy or rainy, or to soils that are frozen or contain frost, or when the underlying material is frozen.

220-4.3 Maintenance. The material shall be maintained in a condition that will meet all specification requirements. When material has been exposed to excessive rain, snow, or freeze-thaw conditions, prior to placement of additional material, the Contractor shall verify that materials still meet all specification requirements. Equipment may be routed over completed sections of base course, provided that no damage results and the equipment is routed over the full width of the completed base course. Any damage resulting to the base course from routing equipment over the base course shall be repaired by the Contractor at their expense.

220-4.4 Equipment. The course may be constructed with any equipment that will meet the requirements for soil pulverization, cement application, mixing, water application, incorporation of materials, compaction, finishing, and curing specified here.

220-4.5 Preparation. The area to be stabilized shall be graded and shaped to conform to the lines, grades and cross-section shown on the plans. Any soft or yielding areas in the subgrade shall be removed and replaced with acceptable soil and compacted to the specified density.

220-4.6 Pulverization. After completion of moist-mixing, the soil for the base course shall be pulverized so that 100% by dry weight passes a 1-inch (25.0 mm) sieve and a minimum of 80% passes a No. 4 (4.75 mm) sieve.

220-4.7 Cement application, mixing, and finishing. [Mixing of the soil, cement, and water shall be accomplished by the mixed-in-place method. Shape pulverized material to the cross-section indicated. Cement shall be applied so that when uniformly mixed with the soil, the specified cement content is obtained, and a sufficient quantity of cement-treated soil is produced to construct a compacted cement-treated course conforming to the lines, grades, and cross-section indicated. Immediately after the cement has been distributed, it shall be mixed with the soil. The cement shall not be mixed below the required depth. Continue mixing until the cement has been sufficiently blended with the soil to prevent the formation of cement balls when water is applied. Determine moisture content of the mixture immediately after completion of mixing of the soil and cement. Provide water supply and pressure distributing equipment that will permit the application within three (3) hours of all mixing water on the section being processed. Incorporate water in the mix so that concentration of water near the surface does not occur. After all mixing water has been applied, continue mixing until the water is uniformly distributed throughout the full depth of the mixture. Do not apply cement if the soil moisture content exceeds the optimum moisture content specified for the cement-treated mixture. After mixing is complete, the proportions of the mixture shall be in accordance with the approved mix design.]

In lieu of the mixed in place method, the Engineer may select the central plant mix method. If the central plant mix method is selected, replace the above paragraph with the following:

220-4.7 Cement application, mixing, and spreading. Mixing of the soil, cement, and water shall be accomplished by the central-plant-mixed method. The soil, cement, and water shall be mixed in either a batch or continuous-flow type pugmill. The plant shall be equipped with feeding and metering devices that will add the soil, cement, and water into the mixer in the specified quantities. Soil and cement shall be mixed sufficiently to prevent cement balls from forming when water is added. Mixing shall continue until a uniform mixture of soil, cement, and water is obtained.

The mixture shall be hauled to the project in trucks equipped with protective covers. The mixture shall be placed on the moistened subgrade in a uniform layer by an approved spreader. Not more than 30 minutes shall elapse between the placement of soil-cement in adjacent lanes.

The layer of soil-cement shall be uniform in thickness and surface contour and of sufficient quantity that the completed base conforms to the required line, grade and

cross-section. Dumping of the mixture in piles or windrows on the subgrade shall not be permitted.

Not more than 60 minutes shall elapse between the start of moist mixing and the start of compaction of soil-cement.

220-4.8 Compaction. Compaction of the course shall begin within 30 minutes after mixing the cement into the subgrade. All compaction operations shall be completed within 2 hours from the start of mixing.

The field density of the compacted mixture shall be at least [98%] of the maximum density as determined by ASTM [D558]. The in-place moisture content shall be determined in accordance with ASTM D2216. The moisture content of the mixture at the start of compaction shall be within ± 2 percentage points of the optimum moisture content. Maximum density refers to maximum dry density at optimum moisture content unless otherwise specified.

May be modified as appropriate to comply with the Geotechnical Engineer's recommendations and/or requirements to achieve a specified strength, etc.

Test frequency should reflect typical day's placement. Recommend not less than one test per 1,000 square yards (840 m²) or a minimum of 4 tests per day.

220-4.9 Finishing and curing. After the final lift or course of treated subgrade has been compacted, it shall be brought to the required lines and grades in accordance with the typical sections.

Finished portions of treated subgrade shall be protected to prevent equipment from marring, permanently deforming, or damaging completed work.

Not later than 24 hours after completion of final finishing, the surface shall be cured by [application of an emulsified asphalt uniformly applied to the surface of the completed base course at the rate of approximately 0.2 gallons per square yard (0.91 l/m²)] [being kept continuously moist for a period of 7 days with a fog-type water spray] [application of an curing compound or other moisture retention methods as approved by the RPR]. The curing material shall be maintained and applied as needed by the Contractor during the 7-day protection period.

Sufficient protection from freezing shall be provided for at least 7 days after its construction or as approved by the RPR.

220-4.10 Construction limitations. At the end of each day's construction and/or when operations after application of the cement are interrupted for more than 30 minutes, a straight transverse construction joint shall be formed by a header or by cutting back into the compacted material to form a true vertical face.

Completed portions may be opened to light traffic, if approved by the RPR, and provided the curing is not impaired.

220-4.11 Surface tolerance. In those areas on which a subbase or base course is to be placed, the surface shall be tested for smoothness and accuracy of grade and crown. Any portion lacking the required smoothness or failing in accuracy of grade or crown shall be scarified to a depth of at least 3 inches (75 mm), reshaped and re-compacted to grade until the required smoothness and accuracy are obtained and approved by the RPR. The Contractor shall perform all final smoothness and grade checks in the presence

of the RPR. Any deviation in surface tolerances shall be corrected by the Contractor at the Contractor's expense.

a. Smoothness. The finished surface shall not vary more than +/- 3/8 inch (9 mm) when tested with a 12-foot (3.7-m) straightedge applied parallel with and at right angles to the centerline. The straightedge shall be moved continuously forward at half the length of the 12-foot (3.7-m) straightedge for the full length of each line on a 50-foot (15-m) grid.

b. Grade. The grade and crown shall be measured on a 50-foot (15-m) grid and shall be within +/- 0.05 feet (15 mm) of the specified grade.

220-4.12 Acceptance sampling and testing. Cement Treated Solid Base course shall be accepted for density and thickness on an area basis. Two test will be made for density and thickness for each [1200 square yards (1000 square meters)], but not less than four (4) tests per day of production. Sampling locations will be determined on a random basis per ASTM D3665.

a. Density. The [RPR shall perform all density tests] [Contractor's laboratory shall perform all density tests in the RPR's presence and provide the test results upon completion to the RPR for acceptance].

Each area shall be accepted for density when the field density is at least [98%] of the maximum density of laboratory specimens compacted and tested per ASTM [D558]. The in-place field density shall be determined per [ASTM D1556.] [or] [ASTM D6938 using Procedure A, the direct transmission method, and ASTM D6938 shall be used to determine the moisture content of the material. The machine shall be calibrated in accordance with ASTM D6938.]. The in-place moisture content shall be determined in accordance with ASTM D2216. Perform in-place density test immediately after completion of compaction to determine degree of compaction. Maximum density refers to maximum dry density at optimum moisture content unless otherwise specified. If the specified density is not attained, the area represented by the failed test must be reworked and/or recompacted at the Contractor's expense and two additional random tests made. This procedure shall be followed until the specified density is reached. Maximum density refers to maximum dry density at optimum moisture content unless otherwise specified.

The Engineer may adjust the testing area as appropriate to the job size.

b. Thickness. Depth tests shall be made by test holes or cores at least 3 inches (75 mm) in diameter that extend through the base. The thickness of the base course shall be within +0 and -1/2 inch (12 mm) of the specified thickness as determined by depth tests taken by the Contractor in the presence of the RPR for each subplot. Where the thickness is deficient by more than 1/2-inch (12 mm), the material shall be removed to full depth and replaced, at Contractor's expense.

The Engineer may modify the above thickness control paragraph to permit the thickness determination by survey. Survey shall be required before and after placement of the base. The survey interval should be specified based on the size of the project.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

220-5.1 The quantity of cement treated soil base course shall be the number of square yards (square meter) of completed and accepted base course.

220-5.2 Cement shall be measured by the ton (kg).

BASIS OF PAYMENT

220-6.1 Payment shall be made at the contract unit price per square yard (m²) for cement treated soil base course. This price shall be full compensation for furnishing all materials, except cement, and for all preparation, delivering, placing, and mixing of these materials; and for all labor, equipment, tools and incidentals necessary to complete the item.

220-6.2 Payment shall be made at the contract unit price per ton (kg) for cement. This price shall be full compensation for furnishing this material and for all delivery, placing, and incorporation of this material, and for all labor, equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete the item.

Payment will be made under:

Item P-220-6.1	Cement treated soil Base Course - per square yard (square meter)
Item P-220-6.2	Cement - per ton (kg)

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM International (ASTM)

ASTM C136	Standard Test Method for Sieve or Screen Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates
ASTM C150	Standard Specification for Portland Cement
ASTM C1602	Standard Specification for Mixing Water Used in the Production of Hydraulic Cement Concrete
ASTM C1632	Standard Practice for Making and Curing Soil-Cement Compression and Flexure Test Specimens in the Laboratory ¹
ASTM C1633	Standard Test Methods for Compressive Strength of Molded Soil-Cement Cylinders
ASTM D558	Standard Test Methods for Moisture-Density (Unit Weight) Relations of Soil-Cement Mixtures
ASTM D559	Standard Test Methods for Wetting and Drying Compacted Soil-Cement Mixtures
ASTM D560	Standard Test Methods for Freezing and Thawing Compacted Soil-Cement Mixtures
ASTM D977	Standard Specification for Emulsified Asphalt
ASTM D1556	Standard Test Method for Density and Unit Weight of Soil In-Place by the Sand Cone Method

ASTM D2027	Standard Specification for Cutback Asphalt (Medium-Curing Type)
ASTM D2028	Standard Specification for Cutback Asphalt (Rapid-Curing Type)
ASTM D2397	Standard Specification for Cationic Emulsified Asphalt
ASTM D2487	Standard Practice for Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes (Unified Soil Classification System)
ASTM D6938	Standard Test Method for In-Place Density and Water Content of Soil and Soil-Aggregate by Nuclear Methods (Shallow Depth)

END OF ITEM P-220

Page Intentionally Blank

Part 5 – Stabilized Base Courses

Item P-304 Cement-Treated Aggregate Base Course (CTB)

Item P-304 can be used as a stabilized base course, however it is susceptible to reflective cracking and should be used with caution.

DESCRIPTION

304-1.1 This item shall consist of a cement-treated base (CTB) course composed of mineral aggregate and cement, uniformly blended and mixed with water. The mixed material shall be spread and shaped with a mechanical spreader, and compacted with rollers in accordance with these specifications and in conformance to the lines, grades, dimensions, and cross-sections shown on the plans.

MATERIALS

304-2.1 Aggregate. The aggregate shall be select granular materials, comprised of crushed or uncrushed gravel and/or stone, or recycled cement concrete. The material shall be free of roots, sod, and weeds. The crushed or uncrushed aggregate shall consist of hard, durable particles meeting the requirements in the table below.

Cement Treated Aggregate Base Material Requirements

Material Test	Requirement	Standard
Coarse Aggregate Portion (retained on the No. 4 (4.75 mm) sieve)		
Resistance to Degradation	Loss: 40% maximum	ASTM C131
Soundness of Aggregates by Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate	Loss after 5 cycles: 10% maximum using Sodium sulfate - or - 15% maximum using magnesium sulfate	ASTM C88
Flat Particles, Elongated Particles, or Flat and Elongated Particles ¹	10% maximum, by weight, for fraction retained on the ½ inch (12.5mm) sieve and 10% maximum, by weight, for the fraction passing the 1/2-inch (12.5 mm) sieve	ASTM D4791
Clay lumps and friable particles	Less than or equal to 3 percent	ASTM C142
Fine Aggregate Portion (Passing the No. 40 (425µm) sieve)		
Liquid limit	Less than or equal to 25	ASTM D4318
Plasticity Index	Not more than 6	ASTM D4318

¹ A flat particle is one having a ratio of width to thickness greater than five (5); an elongated particle is one having a ratio of length to width greater than five (5).

304-2.2 Gradation Requirements. The aggregate shall conform to the gradation(s) shown in the table below per ASTM C136, A dense, well-graded aggregate blend that meets the requirements of the table shall be selected by the Contractor and used in the final mix design. The final aggregate blend shall be well graded from coarse to fine within the limits designated in the table and shall not vary from the low limit on one sieve to the high limit on adjacent sieves, or vice versa.

Aggregate Gradation for CTB Material

Sieve Size	Design Range Percentage by Weight Passing	Contractor's Final Gradation	Job Control Grading Band Tolerances for Contractor's Final Gradation ² Percent
2 inch (50 mm)	100		±0
1 inch (25.0 mm)	90-100		±5
No. 4 (4.75 mm)	45-95		±8
No. 10 (2.00 mm)	37-80		±8
No. 40 (425 µm)	15-50		±5
No. 200 (75 µm)	0-15		±3

For Contractor quality control, sample the aggregate stockpile in accordance with ASTM D75 and perform gradation tests in accordance with ASTM C136 a minimum of [once per week] during production of CTB.

Gradations that meet locally available aggregate similar to P-209 gradation are acceptable.

304-2.3 Sampling and testing.

a. Aggregate base materials. The Contractor shall take samples of the aggregate base stockpile in accordance with ASTM D75 to verify initial aggregate base requirements and gradation. Material shall meet the requirements in paragraphs 304-2.1 and 304-2.2. This sampling and testing will be the basis for approval of the aggregate base quality requirements. []

The Engineer shall define when additional sampling points are needed in the above paragraph.

304-2.4 Cement. Cement shall conform to the requirements of ASTM [].

**The Engineer shall specify ASTM C150, [Type I][Type I or II]
[Type II, low alkali] or ASTM C595 [Type IP][Type IL].**

304-2.5 Cementitious additives. Pozzolanic and slag cement may be added to the CTB mix. If used, each material must meet the following requirements:

a. Pozzolan. Pozzolanic materials must meet the requirements of ASTM C618, Class F, or N with the exception of loss of ignition, where the maximum shall be less than 6%. [The supplementary optional physical requirements of Table 3 contained in ASTM C618 shall apply.]

b. Slag cement (ground granulated blast furnace (GGBF) slag). Slag shall conform to ASTM C989, Grade 100, or 120.

304-2.6 Water. Water used in mixing or curing shall be from potable water sources. Other sources shall be tested in accordance with ASTM C1602 prior to use.

304-2.7 Curing materials. Curing material shall be [a white-pigmented, liquid membrane-forming compound conforming to ASTM C309, Type 2, Class A or Class B (wax-based).][[an emulsified asphalt conforming to ASTM D977.]

For curing CTB placed under concrete pavement, use white-pigmented, liquid membrane-forming compound.

For curing CTB placed under asphalt pavement use emulsified asphalt may be used. The Engineer will designate the specific material used from ASTM D977 or ASTM D2397.

[**304-2.8 Bond Breaker.** [Choke stone shall be an ASTM C33 Number 89 stone.] [Fabric shall meet the requirements of AASHTO M 288 Class I fabric with elongation not less than 50% at the specified strengths, and a minimum weight of 14.5 oz/sy. A certificate of compliance (COC) shall be provided by the fabric manufacturer that the material may be used as a bond breaker.] [Liquid membrane forming compound shall be in accordance with paragraph 304-2.7.]]

Delete paragraph 304-2.8 if asphalt pavement will be placed directly above the lean concrete base.

The Engineer must select the bond breaker when concrete pavement will be placed directly above the lean concrete base. Coordinate with paragraph 304-5.1.

304-2.9 Sand blotter. Sand shall be applied, when required, to prevent tracking of the emulsion curing materials. The sand material shall be clean, dry, and non-plastic.]

COMPOSITION OF MIXTURE

304-3.1 General. The CTB material shall be composed of a mixture of aggregate, cementitious material, and water. Fly ash or slag cement may be used as a partial replacement for cement.

304-3.2 Mix design. The mix design shall use a cement content that, when tested in the laboratory per ASTM D1633, produces a 7-day compressive strength between 300 pounds per square inch (2068 kPa) minimum and 600 pounds per square inch (3447 kPa) maximum. Avoid higher strengths due to potential to cause shrinkage and reflective cracks.

[Wet-dry and/or freeze-thaw tests shall be performed in accordance with ASTM D559 and ASTM D560 respectively. The weight loss for each type of test shall not exceed 14% after 12 cycles.]

In areas not subject to considerable wet-dry and/or freeze-thaw cycles, delete the bracketed paragraph.

Note that an estimated cement content may be determined from Table 1, Chapter 2, of the Soil-Cement Laboratory Handbook, published by the Portland Cement Association (PCA). In designing the mixture, cement contents above and below the initial estimated amount should be tested to determine the minimum quantity of cement needed to achieve the required strength (or strength and durability where freeze-thaw resistance is deemed necessary by the Engineer.

The mix design shall include a complete list of materials, including type, brand, source, and amount of cement, fine aggregate, coarse aggregate, water, and cementitious additives.

Should a change be made in aggregate sources or type of cement, or if cementitious additives are added or deleted from the mix, production of the CTB mix shall be stopped and a new mix design shall be submitted.

304-3.3 Submittals. At least 30 days prior to the placement of the CTB, the Contractor shall submit certified test reports to the Resident Project Representative (RPR) for those materials proposed for use during construction, as well as the mix design information for the CTB material. Tests older than six (6) months shall not be used. The certification shall show the ASTM or AASHTO specifications or tests for the material, the name of the company performing the tests, the date of the tests, the test results, and a statement that the material did or did not comply with the applicable specifications. The submittal package shall include the following:

a. Source(s) of materials, including aggregate, cement, cementitious additives, curing, and bond-breaking materials.

b. Physical properties of the aggregates, cement, cementitious additives, curing, and bond-breaking materials.

c. Mix design:

- Mix identification number
- Aggregate gradation
- Cement content
- Water content
- Cementitious materials content
- Compaction and strength results
- Laboratory compaction characteristics (maximum dry density and optimum moisture content)
- Compressive strength at seven (7) days
- [Wet-dry and/or freeze-thaw weight loss]

No CTB material shall be placed until the submittal is accepted in writing by the RPR.

During production, the Contractor shall submit batch tickets for each delivered load.

In areas not subject to considerable wet-dry and/or freeze-thaw cycles, delete the bracketed bullet.

EQUIPMENT

304-4.1 Mixing. The mixer shall be a batch or continuous-flow type stationary mixer that produces a well-blended, uniform mixture of aggregate, cement, water, and pozzolan. The mixer shall be equipped with calibrated metering and feeding devices that introduce the aggregate, cement, water, and cementitious additives (if used) into the mixer in the specified quantities.

The RPR shall have free access to the plant at all times for inspection of the plant's equipment and operation and for sampling the CTB mixture.

304-4.2 Hauling. The CTB material shall be transported from the plant to the job site in trucks or other hauling equipment having beds that are smooth, clean, and tight. Truck bed covers shall be provided and used to protect the CTB from weather. CTB material that becomes wet during transport shall be rejected.

304-4.3 Placing. CTB material shall be placed with a mechanical spreader capable of receiving, spreading, and shaping the mixture without segregation into a uniform layer or lift. The equipment shall be equipped with a strike-off plate and end gates capable of being adjusted to the layer thickness and width.

304-4.4 Compaction. The number, type, and weight of rollers and/or compactors shall be sufficient to compact the mixture to the required density.

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

304-5.1 Control Strip. The first half-day of construction shall be considered the control strip. The Contractor shall demonstrate, in the presence of the RPR, that the materials, equipment, and construction processes meet the requirements of the specification. Control strips that do not meet specification requirements shall be removed and replaced at the Contractor's expense. Full operations shall not continue until the control strip has been accepted by the RPR. Upon acceptance of the control strip by the RPR, the Contractor shall use the same equipment, materials, and construction methods for the remainder of construction, unless adjustments made by the Contractor are approved in advance by the RPR.

A control strip is not required on jobs less than 2,000 square yards (1700 sq m).

304-5.2 Weather limitations. The CTB shall not be placed on frozen surfaces or when weather conditions will detrimentally affect quality of the finished course. Apply cement when the ambient temperature is a minimum of 40°F (4°C) and rising and aggregate are not frozen or contain frost. If ambient temperature falls below 40°F (4°C), protect completed CTB areas against freezing.

The Contractor should stop operations prior to and during rain allowing time to cover and protect any freshly placed material. Areas damaged by rain shall be replaced at the Contractor's expense.

304-5.3 Maintenance. Completed portions of the cement-stabilized area may be opened to local traffic provided the curing process is not impaired and to other traffic after the curing period has elapsed, provided that the cement-stabilized course has hardened sufficiently to prevent surface marring or distortion by equipment or traffic. Protect finished portions of cement stabilized base from traffic of equipment used in constructing adjoining sections in a manner to prevent marring or damaging completed work. The CTB shall be protected from freezing until covered.

304-5.4 Preparation of underlying course. The underlying course shall be checked by the RPR before placing and spreading operations are started. Prior to placing the material, the final grade should be firm, moist and free of frost. Use of chemicals to eliminate frost will not be permitted. The underlying course shall be wetted in advance of placing the CTB layer.

304-5.5 Grade control. Grade control between the edges of the CTB shall be accomplished at intervals of [50 feet (15 m)] on the longitudinal grade and at [25 feet (7.5 m)] on the transverse grade.

304-5.6 Placing. The CTB mixture shall be deposited on the moistened subgrade or subbase and spread into a uniform layer of specified width and thickness that, when compacted and trimmed, conforms to the required line, grade, and cross-section. The longitudinal joints shall be located so there is [no

offset] [a 2 foot (600 mm) minimum offset] from planned joints in any overlying layer. Placement of the material shall begin along the centerline of the pavement on a crowned section or on the highest elevation contour of a pavement with variable cross slope.

The Contractor shall install the CTB layer in single compacted layer no greater than [6 inches (150 mm)] thick.

When concrete surface layer, no longitudinal joint offset. When asphalt surface layer, 2 foot (600 mm) minimum offset.

Insert CTB thickness per design analysis. Thicknesses greater than 6 inches (150 mm) require FAA approval.

304-5.7 Compaction. All compaction operations shall be completed within 2 hours from the start of mixing. The field density of the compacted mixture shall be at least [98%] of the maximum density in accordance with paragraph 304-6.1a. At the start of compaction, the moisture content shall be within ± 2 percentage points of the specified optimum moisture. Maximum density refers to maximum dry density at optimum moisture content unless otherwise specified.

304-5.8 Finishing. After compaction, shape the surface of the CTB layer to the specified lines, grades, and cross-section. During the finishing process, the surface shall be kept moist by means of fog-type sprayers. Compaction and finishing shall produce a smooth, dense surface, free of ruts, cracks, ridges, and loose material.

304-5.9 Construction limitations. All placement, compaction, and finishing operations shall be completed within two (2) hours from the start of mixing. Material not completed within the 2-hour time limit shall be removed and replaced at the Contractor's expense.

At the end of each day's construction and/or when operations are interrupted for more than 30 minutes, a straight transverse construction joint shall be formed by a header or by cutting back into the compacted material to form a true vertical face.

Completed portions may be opened to light traffic, if approved by the RPR, and provided the curing is not impaired.

304-5.10 Curing. The compacted and finished CTB shall be cured with the approved curing agents as soon as possible, but in no case later than two (2) hours after completion of the finishing operations. Curing material(s) shall meet the requirements in paragraph 304-2.7. The layer shall be kept moist using a moisture-retaining cover or a light application of water until the curing material is applied.

[The entire surface of the CTB layer shall be uniformly sprayed with an asphalt emulsion at a rate of between 0.15 and 0.30 gallons per square yard (0.7 and 1.4 l/m²); the exact temperature and rate of application being that required to achieve complete and uniform coverage without runoff. Apply sand at [] pounds per square yard (kg/m²) to treated surfaces requiring protection from traffic.]

[The surface of the CTB layer shall be uniformly sprayed with a liquid membrane-forming curing compound at the rate of one gallon (3.8 liters) to not more than 100 square feet (9.3 m²) to obtain a uniform cover over the surface. Hand spraying of odd widths or shapes and CTB surfaces exposed by the removal of forms is permitted.]

The Engineer shall select the curing method in accordance with paragraph 304-2.7.

The curing seal shall be maintained and protected until the pavement is placed. If the surface of the finished CTB and/or the curing seal becomes damaged, additional curing material shall be applied at the time it is damaged or when the damage is first observed.

304-5.11 Surface tolerance. The Contractor shall perform smoothness and grade checks in the presence of the RPR. Any area not meeting smoothness and grade shall be corrected by the Contractor at the Contractor's expense.

a. Smoothness. The finished surface shall not vary more than $\pm 3/8$ -inch (9 mm) when tested with a 12-foot (3.7-m) straightedge applied parallel with and at right angles to the centerline, and, moved continuously forward at half the length of the 12-foot (3.7-m) straightedge for the full length of each line on a [50-foot (15-m)] grid.

b. Grade. The grade shall be measured on a [50-foot (15-m)] grid and shall be within ± 0.05 feet (15 mm) of the specified grade.

304-5.12 Bond-breaker. [No bond breaker is required.] [Choke stone per paragraph 304-2.8 shall be placed on the surface of the lean concrete to prevent bonding. The choke stone shall be placed in a layer approximately 1/4-inch (6 mm) thick.] [Fabric per paragraph 304-2.8 shall be placed on the surface of the lean concrete to prevent bonding. The fabric shall be placed with a minimum 1 foot (0.3 m) of overlap where adjoining sections of fabric come together.]

Delete paragraph 304-5.12 if the CTB will not be placed directly beneath concrete pavement.

The initial application of the curing compound is not adequate as a bond breaker.

MATERIAL ACCEPTANCE

304-6.1 Acceptance sampling and testing. Cement Treated Aggregate base course shall be accepted for density and thickness on an area basis. Two tests shall be made for density and thickness for each [1200 square yards (1000 square meters), but not less than four (4) tests per day of production]. Sampling locations will be determined on a random basis per ASTM D3665.

a. Density testing. CTB samples representing the material placed shall be taken to establish density and moisture requirements in accordance with ASTM D558. Additional CTB samples will be taken [daily] [weekly] [as necessary] to verify density and moisture requirements. The [RPR shall perform all density tests] [Contractor's laboratory shall perform all density tests in the RPR's presence and provide the test results upon completion to the RPR for acceptance].

Each area shall be accepted for density when the field density is at least [98%] of the maximum density of laboratory specimens. The in-place field density shall be determined in accordance with

[ASTM D1556][ASTM D6938, Procedure A, direct transmission method]. The in-place moisture content shall be determined in accordance with ASTM D2216. Perform in-place density test immediately after completion of compaction to determine degree of compaction. If the material fails to meet the density requirements, compaction shall continue or the material shall be removed and replaced at the Contractor's expense. Maximum density refers to maximum dry density at optimum moisture content unless otherwise specified.

b. Thickness. [Thickness shall be determined by measuring the depth of core holes in the CTB at random locations, per ASTM D3665. The resulting core holes shall be filled by the Contractor with CTB or non-shrink grout.]

[The thickness of the CTB shall be determined by survey on a [25-foot (7.5 m)] by [25-foot (7.5 m)] survey grid.]

When the thickness measurement is deficient by more than 1/2 inch (12 mm), the area represented by the tests shall be removed and replaced at the Contractor's expense.

The Engineer will select the method used to determine the thickness of the CTB. If thickness will be determined by survey, the Engineer will specify the minimum survey grid.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

304-7.1 Cement-treated base course. The quantity of cement-treated base course will be determined by measurement of the number of square yards (m²) of CTB actually constructed and accepted by the RPR as complying with the plans and specifications.

BASIS OF PAYMENT

304-8.1 Cement-treated base course. Payment shall be made at the contract unit price per square yard (m²) for cement-treated base course. This price shall be full compensation for furnishing all materials, including cement; for all preparation, manipulation, placing, and curing of these materials; and for all labor, equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete the item.

Item P-304-8.1	Payment will be made for cement-treated base course – per [square yard (m ²)].

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM International (ASTM)

ASTM C88	Standard Test Method for Soundness of Aggregates by Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate
ASTM C150	Standard Specification for Portland Cement

ASTM C131	Standard Test Method for Resistance to Degradation of Small-Size Coarse Aggregate by Abrasion and Impact in the Los Angeles Machine
ASTM C136	Standard Test Method for Sieve or Screen Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregate
ASTM C174	Standard Test Method for Measuring Thickness of Concrete Elements Using Drilled Concrete Cores
ASTM C309	Standard Specification for Liquid Membrane-Forming Compounds for Curing Concrete
ASTM C595	Standard Specification for Blended Hydraulic Cements
ASTM C618	Standard Specification for Coal Fly Ash and Raw or Calcined Natural Pozzolan for Use in Concrete
ASTM C989	Standard Specification for Slag Cement for Use in Concrete and Mortars
ASTM C1602	Standard Specification for Mixing Water Used in the Production of Hydraulic Cement Concrete
ASTM D75	Standard Practice for Sampling Aggregates
ASTM D558	Standard Test Methods for Moisture-Density (Unit Weight) Relations of Soil-Cement Mixtures
ASTM D559	Standard Test Methods for Wetting and Drying Compacted Soil-Cement Mixtures
ASTM D560	Standard Test Methods for Freezing and Thawing Compacted Soil-Cement Mixtures
ASTM D977	Standard Specification for Emulsified Asphalt
ASTM D1556	Standard Test Method for Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place by the Sand-Cone Method
ASTM D1633	Standard Test Methods for Compressive Strength of Molded Soil-Cement Cylinders
ASTM D2397	Standard Specification for Cationic Emulsified Asphalt
ASTM D3665	Standard Practice for Random Sampling of Construction Materials
ASTM D3666	Standard Specification for Minimum Requirements for Agencies Testing and Inspecting Road and Paving Materials
ASTM D4318	Standard Test Methods for Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit, and Plasticity Index of Soils
ASTM D6938	Standard Test Method for In-Place Density and Water Content of Soil and Soil-Aggregate by Nuclear Methods (Shallow Depth)

END OF ITEM P-304

Item P-306 Lean Concrete Base Course

Item P-306 can be used as a stabilized base under flexible and rigid pavements. However, it is not recommended for use in flexible pavement structures and should be used with caution because it is susceptible to reflective cracking.

DESCRIPTION

306-1.1 This item shall consist of a lean concrete subbase material that is composed of aggregate and cement uniformly blended together and mixed with water. The mixture may also include approved cementitious additives, in the form of fly ash or slag, and chemical admixtures. The mixed material shall be spread, shaped, and consolidated using concrete paving equipment in accordance with these specifications and in conformity to the lines, grades, dimensions, and typical cross-sections shown on the plans.

MATERIALS

306-2.1 Aggregate. The coarse aggregate fraction shall be crushed stone, crushed or uncrushed gravel, crushed and adequately seasoned, air-cooled, iron blast furnace slag, crushed recycled concrete, or a combination thereof. The fine aggregate fraction may be part of the natural aggregate blend as obtained from the borrow source or it may be natural sand that is added at the time of mixing. The aggregate shall meet the gradation and material requirements in the tables below.

Aggregate Material Requirements

Material Test	Requirement	Standard
Coarse Aggregate Portion (retained on the No. 4 (4.75 mm) sieve)		
Resistance to Degradation	Loss: 40% maximum	ASTM C131
Soundness of Aggregates by Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate	Loss after 5 cycles: 10% maximum using Sodium sulfate - or - 15% maximum using magnesium sulfate	ASTM C88
Flat Particles, Elongated Particles, or Flat and Elongated Particles ¹	10% maximum, by weight, for fraction retained on the ½ inch (12.5mm) sieve and 10% maximum, by weight, for the fraction passing the 1/2-inch (12.5 mm) sieve	ASTM D4791
Clay lumps and friable particles	Less than or equal to 3 percent	ASTM C142
Fine Aggregate Portion (passing the No. 40 (425µm) sieve)		
Clay lumps and friable particles	Less than or equal to 3 percent	ASTM C142
Soundness of Aggregates by Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate	Loss after 5 cycles: 10% maximum using Sodium sulfate - or - 15% maximum using magnesium sulfate	ASTM C88

¹ A flat particle is one having a ratio of width to thickness greater than five (5); an elongated particle is one having a ratio of length to width greater than five (5).

Aggregate Gradation for Lean Concrete

Sieve Size (square openings)	Percentage by Weight Passing Sieves
	Gradation [*]
1-1/2 inch (37.5 mm)	*
1 inch (25.0 mm)	*
3/4 inch (19.0 mm)	*
No. 4 (4.75 mm)	*
No. 40 (425 µm)	*
No. 200 (75 µm)	*

The Engineer shall select the specified gradation from table below. When deciding which gradation to use, the Engineer should consider aggregates size(s) which are

locally available. Gradation may be modified to suit locally available aggregate or recycled concrete pavement, provided the strength requirements are met.

Aggregate Gradation for Lean Concrete

Sieve Size (square openings)	Percentage by Weight Passing Sieves	
	Gradation A	Gradation B
1-1/2 inch (37.5 mm)	100	--
1 inch (25.0 mm)	70 - 95	100
3/4 inch (19.0 mm)	55 - 85	70 - 100
No. 4 (4.75 mm)	30 - 60	35 - 65
No. 40 (425 µm)	10 - 30	15 - 30
No. 200 (75 µm)	0 - 15	0 - 15

306-2.2 Sampling and testing.

a. Aggregate base materials. The Contractor shall take samples of the aggregate base stockpile in accordance with ASTM D75 to verify initial aggregate base requirements and gradation. Material shall meet the requirements in paragraphs 306-2.1 and 306-2.2. This sampling and testing will be the basis for approval of the aggregate base quality requirements. []

The Engineer shall define when additional sampling points are needed in the above paragraph.

306-2.3 Cement. Cement shall conform to the requirements of ASTM [].

The Engineer shall specify ASTM C150, Type(s) [I][II][I or II]
[Type III, for high early strength concrete] or [ASTM C595,
Type IS, IL or IP].

Type II cement shall be specified in areas with a history of sulfate reaction with the selected aggregate.

306-2.4 Cementitious additives. Pozzolanic and slag cement may be added to the lean concrete mix. If used, each material must meet the following requirements:

a. Pozzolan. Pozzolanic materials must meet the requirements of ASTM C618, Class F, or N with the exception of loss of ignition, where the maximum shall be less than 6%. [The supplementary optional physical requirements of Table 3 contained in ASTM C618 shall apply.]

b. Slag cement (ground granulated blast furnace (GGBF) slag). Slag shall conform to ASTM C989, Grade 100 or 120.

306-2.5 Chemical admixtures. The Contractor shall submit certificates indicating that the material to be furnished meets all the requirements listed below. In addition, the RPR may require the Contractor to submit complete test data showing that the material to be furnished meets all the requirements of the cited specification.

a. Air-entraining admixtures. Air-entraining admixtures shall meet the requirements of ASTM C260.

b. Water-reducing admixtures. Water-reducing, set-controlling admixtures shall meet the requirements of ASTM C494, Type A, D, E, F, or G. Water-reducing admixtures shall be added at the mixer separately from air-entraining admixtures in accordance with the manufacturer's printed instructions. The air entrainment agent and the water-reducing admixture shall be compatible.

c. Retarding admixtures. Retarding admixtures shall meet the requirements of ASTM C494, Type B or D.

d. Accelerating admixtures. Accelerating admixtures shall meet the requirements of ASTM C494, Type C.

306-2.6 Water. Water used in mixing or curing shall be from potable water sources. Other sources shall be tested in accordance with ASTM C1602 prior to use.

306-2.7 Curing materials. For curing lean concrete, use white-pigmented, liquid membrane-forming compound conforming to ASTM C309, Type 2, Class B, or clear or translucent Type 1-D, Class B with white fugitive dye. []

The Engineer may add additional curing materials. Modify paragraph 306-5.12 accordingly.

[**306-2.8 Bond Breaker.** [Choke stone shall be an ASTM C33 Number 89 stone.] [Fabric shall meet the requirements of AASHTO M 288 Class I fabric with elongation not less than 50% at the specified strengths, and a minimum weight of 14.5 oz/sy. A certificate of compliance (COC) shall be provided by the fabric manufacturer that the material may be used as a bond breaker.] [Liquid membrane forming compound shall be in accordance with paragraph 306-2.7.]]

Delete paragraph 306-2.8 if asphalt pavement will be placed directly above the lean concrete base.

The Engineer must select the bond breaker when concrete pavement will be placed directly above the lean concrete base. Coordinate with paragraph 306-5.14.

COMPOSITION OF MIXTURE

306-3.1 Mix design. The lean concrete mix design shall be based on trial batch results conducted in the laboratory. The lean concrete shall be designed to meet the criteria in this section.

Compressive strength shall not be less than 500 pounds per square inch (3,445 kPa) nor greater than 800 pounds per square inch (5,516 kPa) at seven (7) days. Compressive strengths shall be taken as the average of two compressive strength test results. All compressive strength specimens shall be prepared and tested in accordance with ASTM C192 and ASTM C39, respectively.

The percentage of air entrainment shall be [6%], $\pm 1/2\%$. Air content shall be determined by testing in accordance with ASTM C231 for gravel and stone coarse aggregate and ASTM C173 for slag and other highly porous coarse aggregate.

If there is a change in aggregate sources, type of cement used, or pozzolanic materials, a new mix design must be submitted

306-3.2 Submittals. At least [30 days] prior to the placement of the lean concrete, the Contractor shall submit certified test reports to the RPR for those materials proposed for use during construction, as well as the mix design information for the lean concrete material. The certification shall identify the specifications and test standard, the name of the testing laboratory, the date of the tests, and a statement that the materials comply with the applicable specifications. Tests older than six (6) months shall not be used. The submittal package shall include the following:

- a. Sources of materials, including aggregate, cement, admixtures, and curing and bond breaking materials.
- b. Physical properties of the aggregates, cement, admixtures, curing and bond breaking materials.
- c. Mix design:
 - Mix identification number
 - Weight of saturated surface-dry aggregates (fine and coarse)
 - Combined aggregate gradation
 - Cement factor
 - Water content
 - Water-cementitious material ratio (by weight)
 - Volume of admixtures and yield for one cubic yard (cubic meter) of lean concrete
 - Laboratory test results:
 - Slump
 - Unit weight
 - Air content
 - Compressive strength at 3, 7, and 28 days (average values)
 - [Wet-dry and/or Freeze-thaw weight loss]

Where applicable, the Contractor shall submit a jointing plan for transverse joints in the lean concrete layer for approval by the RPR.

During production, the Contractor shall submit batch tickets for each delivered load.

A control strip is not required on jobs less than 3000 square yards.

In areas not subject to considerable wet-dry and/or freeze-thaw cycles, delete the bracketed bullet.

EQUIPMENT

306-4.1 All equipment necessary to mix, transport, place, compact, and finish the lean concrete material shall be furnished by the Contractor and is subject to inspection and approval by the RPR. The Contractor shall provide certification that all equipment conforms to the requirements of ASTM C94.

306-4.2 Forms. Straight side forms shall be made of steel and shall be furnished in sections not less than 10 feet (3 m) in length. Forms shall have a depth equal to the pavement thickness at the edge. Flexible or curved forms of proper radius shall be used for curves of 100 feet (30 m) radius or less. Forms shall be provided with adequate devices for secure settings so that when in place they will withstand, without visible spring or settlement, the impact and vibration of the consolidating and finishing equipment. Forms with battered top surfaces and bent, twisted or broken forms shall not be used. Built-up forms shall not be used, except as approved by the RPR. The forms shall contain provisions for locking the ends of abutting sections together tightly for secure setting. Wood forms may be used under special conditions, when accepted by the RPR.

306-4.3 Concrete pavers. A fixed form or slip-form concrete paver may be used to place lean concrete. The paver shall be fully energized, self-propelled and capable of spreading, consolidating, and finishing the lean concrete material, true to grade, tolerances, and cross-sections. The paver shall be of sufficient weight and power to construct the maximum specified concrete paving lane width, at adequate forward speed, without transverse, longitudinal or vertical instability or without displacement. Slip-form pavers shall be equipped with electronic or hydraulic horizontal and vertical control devices. Bridge deck pavers are approved as paver-finishing machines for lean concrete, provided they are capable of handling the amount of lean concrete required for the full-lane width specified, and capable of spreading, consolidating, and finishing the lean concrete material, true to grade, tolerances, and cross-sections.

306-4.4 Vibrators. For fixed-form construction, vibrators may be either the surface pan type or internal type with either immersed tube or multiple spuds for the full width of the slab. They may be attached to the spreader, the finishing machine, or mounted on a separate carriage. They shall not come in contact with the subgrade or forms.

For slip-form construction, the paver shall be accomplished by internal vibrators for the full width and depth of the pavement being placed. The number, spacing, frequency, and eccentric weights of vibrators shall be provided to achieve acceptable consolidation without segregation and finishing quality. Internal vibrators may be supplemented by vibrating screeds operating on the surface of the lean concrete. Vibrators and screeds shall automatically stop operation when forward motion ceases. An override switch shall be provided.

Hand held vibrators may be used in irregular areas.

306-4.5 Joint saws. The Contractor shall provide a sufficient number of saws with adequate power to cut contraction or construction joints to the required dimensions as shown on the plans. The Contractor shall provide at least one standby saw in good working order.

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

306-5.1 Control Strip. The first half-day of construction shall be considered the control strip. The Contractor shall demonstrate, in the presence of the RPR, that the materials, equipment, and construction processes meet the requirements of the specification. Control strips that do not meet specification requirements shall be removed and replaced at the Contractor's expense. Full operations shall not continue until the control strip has been accepted by the RPR. Upon acceptance of the control strip by the RPR, the Contractor shall use the same equipment, materials, and construction methods for the remainder of construction, unless adjustments made by the Contractor are approved in advance by the RPR.

306-5.2 Weather limitations. The Contractor shall follow the recommended practices in American Concrete Institute (ACI) 306R, Guide to Cold Weather Concreting. The temperature of the mixed lean concrete shall not be less than 50°F (10°C) at the time of placement. The lean concrete shall not be placed when the ambient temperature is below 40°F (4°C) or when conditions indicate that the temperature may fall below 35°F (2°C) within 24 hours. The lean concrete shall not be placed on frozen underlying courses.

The Contractor shall follow the recommended practices in ACI 305R, Guide to Hot Weather Concreting. The lean concrete temperature from initial mixing through final cure shall not exceed 90°F (32°C). When the maximum daily air temperature exceeds 85°F (30°C), the forms and/or the underlying material shall be sprinkled with water before placing the lean concrete.

The Contractor should stop operations prior to and during rain allowing time to cover and protect any plastic lean concrete. Areas damaged by rain shall be refinished or replaced at the Contractor's expense.

306-5.3 Maintenance. The Contractor shall protect the lean concrete from environmental or mechanical damage. Traffic shall not be allowed on the pavement until test specimens made per ASTM C31 have attained a compressive strength of 500 psi (3445 kPa) when tested per ASTM C39. The Contractor shall maintain continuity of the applied curing method for the entire curing period.

306-5.4 Form setting. Form sections shall be tightly locked and shall be free from play or movement in any direction. The forms shall not deviate from true line by more than 1/4 inch (6 mm) at any joint. The top face of the form shall not vary from a true plane more than 1/8 inch (3 mm) in 10 feet (3 m), and the upstanding leg shall not vary more than 1/4 inch (6 mm). Forms shall be cleaned and oiled prior to the placing of lean concrete.

306-5.5 Preparation of underlying course. The underlying course shall be checked and accepted by the RPR before placing operations begin. Prior to placing the material, the final grade should be firm, moist and free of frost. Use of chemicals to eliminate frost will not be permitted. The underlying course shall be wetted in advance of placing the lean concrete base course.

306-5.6 Grade control. Grade control shall be as necessary to construct the layer to the profile and cross-sections as shown on the plans.

306-5.7 Mixing. The batch plant site, layout, equipment, and provisions for transporting material shall assure a continuous supply of material to the work. Stockpiles shall be constructed in a manner that prevents segregation and intermixing of deleterious materials.

All lean concrete shall be mixed and delivered to the site per the requirements of ASTM C94. The mixing time should be adequate to produce lean concrete that is uniform in appearance, with all ingredients evenly distributed. Mixing time shall be measured from the time all materials are emptied into the drum (provided all the water is added before one-fourth the preset mixing time has elapsed) and continues until the time the discharge chute is opened to deliver the lean concrete.

If mixing in a batch plant, the mixing time shall not be less than 50 or greater than 90 seconds. If mixing in a truck mixer, the mixing time shall not be less than 70 or more than 125 truck-drum revolutions at a mixing speed of not less than six (6) or more than 18 truck-drum revolutions per minute.

The elapsed time from the addition of cementitious material to the mix until the lean concrete is deposited in place at the work site shall not exceed 45 minutes when the concrete is hauled in non-agitating trucks, or 90 minutes when it is hauled in truck mixers or truck agitators.

Re-tempering lean concrete will not be permitted, except when delivered in truck mixers. With truck mixers, additional water may be added to the batch materials if the addition of water is added within 45 minutes after the initial mixing operations and the water/cement ratio specified in the mix design is not exceeded.

306-5.8 Placing. The lean concrete material shall be placed continuously at a uniform rate on the underlying course minimizing segregation and handling of the mix. Rakes shall not be allowed for spreading the lean concrete.

306-5.9 Finishing. Shape the finished surface of the lean concrete base layer to the specified lines, grades, and cross-section. Hand finishing will not be permitted except in areas where the mechanical finisher cannot operate.

[The surface of the lean concrete shall not be textured.] [The surface of the lean concrete shall have a coarse texture.]

If a concrete overlay is required, select the no texture option. If an asphalt overlay is required, select the coarse texture option.

306-5.10 Construction limitations. All placement and finishing operations shall be completed within two (2) hours from the start of mixing. Material not completed within the 2-hour time limit shall be removed and replaced at the Contractor's expense.

At the end of each day's construction and/or when operations are interrupted for more than 30 minutes, a straight transverse construction joint shall be formed by a header or by cutting back into the compacted material to form a true vertical face.

Completed portions may be opened to light traffic when it has achieved its [7-day strength] and the curing is not damaged.

306-5.11 Joints. Locate all longitudinal and transverse construction joints as shown on the plans. Longitudinal joints shall be within 6 inches (150 mm) of planned joints in the overlaying concrete pavement and transverse joints shall be within 3 inches (75 mm) the planned joints of the overlying concrete surface. Joints shall be sawn as soon as the base can support the saws without damage to the lean concrete base. Joints shall be constructed by sawing the hardened lean concrete to a depth of at least one-third the thickness of the lean concrete base, or 1/5th the depth of the lean concrete base when constructed using early entry saws.

The Engineer must include a detail on the plans of the control joint. When used under concrete pavement, joint plan must match joints for surface concrete pavement.

306-5.12 Curing. Immediately after the finishing operations are complete and within two (2) hours of placement of the lean concrete, the entire surface and edges of the newly placed lean concrete shall be sprayed uniformly with [white pigmented, liquid membrane forming curing compound conforming to ASTM C309, Type 2, Class B or clear or translucent Type 1-D, Class B with white fugitive dye] in accordance with paragraph 306-2.7. The layer should be kept moist using a moisture-retaining cover or a light application of water until the curing material is applied. The curing compound shall not be applied during rainfall.

Excessive delays in applying the curing compound can result in uncontrolled shrinkage cracking, which can reflect into the overlying pavement over time.

The curing material shall be applied at a maximum coverage of 200 square feet per gallon (5.0 m²/l) using pressurized mechanical sprayers. The spraying equipment shall be a fully atomizing type equipped with a tank agitator. At the time of use, the curing compound in the tank shall be thoroughly and uniformly mixed with the pigment. During application, the curing compound shall be continuously stirred by mechanical means. Edges of the lean concrete layer shall be sprayed with curing compound immediately following placement with slip-form pavers or when side-forms are removed. Hand spraying of odd widths or shapes and lean concrete surfaces exposed by the removal of forms is permitted.

The lean concrete temperature during curing shall be in accordance with paragraph 306-5.2.

If the curing material becomes damaged from any cause, including sawing operations, within the required 7-day curing period or until the overlying course is constructed, the Contractor shall immediately repair the damaged areas by application of additional curing compound or other means approved by the RPR.

306-5.13 Surface tolerance. The Contractor shall perform smoothness and grade checks daily. Any area not meeting smoothness and grade shall be corrected by the Contractor at the Contractor's expense. The Contractor shall provide smoothness and grade data to the RPR on a daily basis.

a. Smoothness. The finished surface shall not vary more than $\pm 3/8$ -inch (9 mm) when tested with a 12-foot (3.7-m) straightedge applied parallel with and at right angles to the centerline, and, moved continuously forward at half the length of the 12-foot (3.7-m) straightedge for the full length of each line on a [50-foot (15-m)] grid. The Contractor shall correct any high spots more than 3/8 inch (9 mm) in 12-foot (3.7-m) with a grinding machine or remove and replace the material at the Contractor's expense. Any areas that have been ground shall have curing compound reapplied.

b. Grade. The grade shall be measured on a [50-foot (15-m)] grid and shall be within ± 0.05 feet (15 mm) of the specified grade. When the surface is more than 1/2 inch (12 mm) above the grade shown in the plans, the surface shall be corrected at the Contractor's expense to an elevation that falls within a tolerance of 1/4 inch (6 mm).

306-5.14 Bond-breaker. [No bond breaker is required.] [Choke stone per paragraph 306-2.8 shall be placed on the surface of the lean concrete to prevent bonding. The choke stone shall be placed in a layer approximately 1/4-inch (6 mm) thick.] [Fabric per paragraph 306-2.8 shall be placed on the surface of the lean concrete to prevent bonding. The fabric shall be placed with a minimum 1 foot (0.3 m) of overlap where adjoining sections of fabric come together.] [Liquid membrane forming compound per paragraph 306-2.8 shall be placed on the surface of the lean concrete to prevent bonding. The liquid membrane forming compound when used as a bond breaker shall be applied at least eight (8) hours and not more than 24 hours before placement of the concrete pavement. The curing material shall be applied at a maximum coverage rate of 200 square feet per gallon (5.0 m²/l) using pressurized mechanical sprayers.]

If asphalt pavement will be placed directly above the lean concrete base, no bond breaker is required.

If concrete pavement will be placed directly above the lean concrete base, the Engineer must select the bond breaker method and coordinate with paragraph 306-2.8

MATERIAL ACCEPTANCE

306-6.1 Sampling and testing. Acceptance sampling and testing to determine conformance with the requirements specified in this section will be performed by the RPR for each [1200 square yards (1000 square meters)]. Sampling locations will be determined by the RPR on a random basis per ASTM D3665.

a. Compressive Strength. One sample of freshly delivered lean concrete will be taken for compressive strength for each [1200 square yards (1000 square meters)] in accordance with ASTM C172 and air content tests in accordance with ASTM C231. Two test cylinders will be made and cured from the sample per ASTM C31 and the 7-day compressive strength of each cylinder determined per ASTM C39. The compressive strength will be computed by averaging the two 7-day compressive strengths.

The Contractor shall provide for the initial curing of cylinders in accordance with ASTM C31 during the 24 hours after molding.

b. Thickness. [Cores shall be drilled by the Contractor at two different sampling locations for thickness determination for each [1200 square yards (1000 square meters)]. Thickness will be determined by measuring the depth of core holes and computed by averaging the thickness determination of the two locations.

Core holes shall be filled by the Contractor with lean concrete base or non-shrink grout.]

[Thickness will be determined by survey on a [25-foot] by [25-foot] grid.]

The Engineer may change sampling frequency to compensate for project size and anticipated production.

The Engineer must select the method to determine the thickness and delete the other option. When the survey method is selected, the Engineer will specify the minimum survey grid.

306-6.2 Acceptance.

a. Strength. If the lean concrete fails to meet the minimum compressive strength requirements, the Contractor shall remove and replaced the material at the Contractor's expense.

b. Thickness. If the average thickness is not deficient by more than 1/2 inch (12 mm) from the plan thickness, full payment shall be made. When such measurement is deficient by more than 1/2 inch (12 mm) but less than one inch (25 mm) from the plan thickness, the area **represented by the test** shall be removed and replaced at the Contractor's expense or shall be permitted to remain in-place at an adjusted payment of 75% of the contract unit price.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

306-7.1 The quantity of lean concrete base course will be determined by the number of square yard (m²) of lean concrete actually constructed and accepted by the RPR as complying with the plans and specifications.

BASIS OF PAYMENT

306-8.1 The accepted quantities of lean concrete will be paid for at the contract unit price per square yard (m²) for lean concrete base. The price and payment shall be full compensation for furnishing and placing all materials, provided; however, for any pavement found deficient in thickness as specified in paragraph 306-6.2b, the reduced unit price shall be paid.

Item P-306-8.1	Payment will be made for lean concrete base course - per [square yard (m ²)].

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM International (ASTM)

ASTM C31	Standard Practice for Making and Curing Concrete Test Specimens in the Field
ASTM C33	Standard Specification for Concrete Aggregates
ASTM C39	Standard Test Method for Compressive Strength of Cylindrical Concrete Specimens
ASTM C94	Standard Specification for Ready-Mixed Concrete
ASTM C136	Standard Test Method for Sieve or Screen Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates
ASTM C150	Standard Specification for Portland Cement
ASTM C172	Standard Practice for Sampling Freshly Mixed Concrete
ASTM C173	Standard Test Method for Air Content of Freshly Mixed Concrete by the Volumetric Method
ASTM C174	Standard Test Method for Measuring Thickness of Concrete Elements Using Drilled Concrete Cores
ASTM C192	Standard Practice for Making and Curing Concrete Test Specimens in the Laboratory

ASTM C231	Standard Test Method for Air Content of Freshly Mixed Concrete by the Pressure Method
ASTM C260	Standard Specification for Air-Entraining Admixtures for Concrete
ASTM C1260	Standard Test Method for Potential Alkali Reactivity of Aggregates (Mortar-Bar Method)
ASTM C309	Standard Specification for Liquid Membrane-Forming Compounds for Curing Concrete
ASTM C494	Standard Specification for Chemical Admixtures for Concrete
ASTM C595	Standard Specification for Blended Hydraulic Cements
ASTM C618	Specification for Coal Fly Ash and Raw and Calcined Natural Pozzolans for Use in Concrete
ASTM C989	Standard Specification for Slag Cement for Use in Concrete and Mortars
ASTM C1567	Standard Test Method for Determining the Potential Alkali-Silica Reactivity of Combinations of Cementitious Materials and Aggregates (Accelerated Mortar-Bar Method)
ASTM C1602	Standard Specification for Mixing Water Used in the Production of Hydraulic Cement Concrete
American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO)	
AASHTO T136	Standard Method of Test for Freezing-and-Thawing Tests of Compacted Soil-Cement Mixtures
ASTM D3665	Standard Practice for Random Sampling of Construction Materials
American Concrete Institute (ACI)	
ACI 305R	Guide to Hot Weather Concreting
ACI 306R	Guide to Cold Weather Concreting

END OF ITEM P-306

Item P-307 Cement Treated Permeable Base Course (CTPB)

Item P-307 can be used as a stabilized base under flexible and rigid pavements. However, it is not recommended for use in flexible pavement structures and should be used with caution because it is susceptible to reflective cracking.

DESCRIPTION

307-1.1 This item shall consist of an open-graded drainable base composed of mineral aggregate, cement and water mixed in a central mixing plant and placed on a prepared subgrade or subbase course in accordance with these specifications and shall conform to the lines, grades, thickness, and typical cross sections shown in the plans.

MATERIALS

307-2.1 Aggregate. Coarse aggregate shall be crushed gravel or crushed stone and shall meet the gradation requirements of ASTM C33 [Size 67] [or] [Size 57]. Fine aggregate shall consist of natural sand or manufactured sand meeting the requirements of ASTM C33. The aggregate shall meet the material requirements in the table below.

Aggregate Material Requirements

Material Test	Requirement	Standard
Coarse Aggregate		
Resistance to Degradation	Loss: 40% maximum	ASTM C131
Soundness of Aggregates by Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate	Loss after 5 cycles: 10% maximum using Sodium sulfate - or - 15% maximum using magnesium sulfate	ASTM C88
Flat Particles, Elongated Particles, or Flat and Elongated Particles ¹	10% maximum, by weight, for fraction retained on the ½ inch (12.5mm) sieve and 10% maximum, by weight, for the fraction passing the 1/2-inch (12.5 mm) sieve	ASTM D4791
Clay lumps and friable particles	Less than or equal to 3 percent	ASTM C142
Fine Aggregate		
Clay lumps and friable particles	Less than or equal to 3 percent	ASTM C142
Soundness of Aggregates by Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate	Loss after 5 cycles: 10% maximum using Sodium sulfate - or - 15% maximum using magnesium sulfate	ASTM C88

¹ A flat particle is one having a ratio of width to thickness greater than five (5); an elongated particle is one having a ratio of length to width greater than five (5).

307-2.2 Sampling and testing.

a. Aggregate base materials. The Contractor shall take samples of the aggregate base stockpile in accordance with ASTM D75 to verify initial aggregate base requirements and gradation. Material shall meet the requirements in paragraph 307-2.1. This sampling and testing will be the basis for approval of the aggregate base quality requirements. []

The Engineer shall define when additional sampling points are needed in the above paragraph.

*****.

307-2.3 Cement. Cement shall conform to the requirements of ASTM C150, Type I or II; ASTM C595, Type IP, IL, or IS.

The Contractor shall furnish vendor's certified test reports for cement shipped to the project.

307-2.4 Water. Water used in mixing or curing shall be from potable water sources. Other sources shall be tested in accordance with ASTM C1602 prior to use.

307-2.5 Admixtures. The use of any material to be added to the mixture shall be approved by the RPR.

307-2.6 Curing Material. Curing materials shall be a liquid membrane-forming compounds for curing concrete shall conform to the requirements of ASTM C309, Type 2, Class B.

307-2.7 Bond Breaker. [Choke stone shall be an ASTM C33 Number 89 stone.]
[Fabric shall meet the requirements of AASHTO M 288 Class I fabric with elongation not less than 50% at the specified strengths, with a minimum weight of 14.5 oz/sy. A certificate of compliance (COC) shall be provided by the fabric manufacturer that the material may be used as a bond breaker.] [Liquid membrane forming compound shall be in accordance with paragraph 307-2.6.]]

Delete paragraph 307-2.7 if asphalt pavement will be placed directly above the lean concrete base.

The Engineer must select the bond breaker when concrete pavement will be placed directly above the lean concrete base. Coordinate with paragraph 307-4.14.

307-2.8 Separation Geotextile. [Not used.] [Separation geotextile shall be [[Class 2], [0.02 sec⁻¹] permittivity per ASTM D4491, Apparent opening size per ASTM D4751 with [0.60 mm] maximum average roll value.]

Use of a separation geotextile may be considered to maintain the integrity of the drainage layer. Generally, a Class 2 geotextile with a permittivity of 0.02 and AOS of 0.6 mm will be sufficient.

See AASHTO M288 for additional notes regarding separation geotextiles.

COMPOSITION OF MIXTURE

307-3.1 Mix design. The Mix Design shall be composed of a mixture of aggregate, cement, and water meeting the following requirements:

Mix Design Requirements

Material or Test	Requirements	Standard	
7-day Compressive strength, psi (kPa)	Between minimum 400 psi (2758 kPa) and maximum 800 psi (5516 kPa)	ASTM C31 and ASTM C39	Cylinders in accordance with ASTM C31 and test per ASTM C39
Coefficient of permeability (ft/day)	Between 500 to 1500 ft/day (150 to 450 m/day)	AASHTO T215	
Water-Cement Ratio	Approx. 0.36		Cement content shall be adequate to hold the material together and meet strength requirements.
Coarse aggregate	[Size #67] [or] [Size #57].	ASTM C33	
Fine aggregate	Approximately 300 to 400 pounds per cubic yard (178 to 237 kg/m ³)		As necessary to meet stability while maintaining permeability

The mix design shall include a complete list of materials, including type, brand, source, and amount of cement, fine aggregate, coarse aggregate, water, and cementitious additives, if used. It shall also contain the [3], [5], 7, and [14] day compressive strength test results and the results of the permeability tests. Data shall be provided to the RPR for 7-day breaks to serve as a basis for field testing requirements and comparison.

If the Contractor makes a change in aggregate sources or type of cement, or if cementitious additives are added or deleted from the mix, production of the drainable base course shall be stopped and a new mix design shall be submitted to the RPR for approval at the Contractor's expense.

307-3.2 Submittals. At least [30 days] prior to the placement of the CTPB, the Contractor shall submit certified test reports to the RPR for those materials proposed for use during construction, as well as the mix design information for the material. The certification shall show the specifications and tests for the material, the name of the testing laboratory, the date of the tests, and a statement that the materials comply with the applicable specifications. Tests shall be representative of the material to be used for the project. The submittal package shall include the following:

- a. Sources of materials, including aggregate, cement, cementitious additives, curing, and bond-breaking materials.
- b. Physical properties of the aggregates, cement, cementitious additives, curing, and bond-breaking materials.

c. Mix design

- Mix identification number
- Aggregate gradation
- Cement content
- Water content
- Content of any additional cementitious materials or additives
- Compressive strength at [3], [5], 7, and [14] days.
- Coefficient of Permeability

No drainable base course material shall be placed until the submittal is accepted in writing by the RPR.

During production, the Contractor shall submit batch tickets for each delivered load.

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

307-4.1 Control strip. The first half-day of construction shall be considered the control strip. The Contractor shall demonstrate, in the presence of the RPR, that the materials, equipment, and construction processes meet the requirements of the specification. Control strips that do not meet specification requirements shall be removed and replaced at the Contractor's expense. Full operations shall not continue until the control strip has been accepted by the RPR. Upon acceptance of the control strip by the RPR, the Contractor shall use the same equipment, materials, and construction methods for the remainder of construction, unless adjustments made by the Contractor are approved in advance by the RPR.

When additional effort beyond that provided by the paver is required to seat the aggregate, additional compaction shall be initiated within 30 minutes following the placing and striking-off operations. The actual rolling pattern and sequence shall be established during placement of the control strip and approved by the RPR. In areas inaccessible to the paver and roller, hand operated vibrator-plate compactors may be used to seat the aggregate.

The additional compaction, if required, shall be one to three passes of a self-propelled, steel-wheel static roller with weight between 5 and 12 tons (4.5 to 10.9 metric tons). The roller shall be in good condition and shall be capable of reversing without backlash and of compacting the CTPB without undue displacement or excessive crushing of the aggregate.

The control strip CTPB layer shall be considered acceptable when aggregate is completely coated with cement paste with no evidence of crushing; the surface is firm, unyielding and stable under construction traffic; and the layer meets the field permeability per paragraph 307-3.1.

307-4.2 Weather limitations. The CTPB material shall not be mixed or placed while the air temperature is below 40°F (4°C) or when conditions indicate that the temperature may fall below 35°F (2°C) within 24 hours. The CTPB shall not be placed on frozen underlying courses or mixed when aggregate is frozen. The CTPB may not be placed when rainfall is occurring or where rain is imminent. Any CTPB material that has become excessively wet by rain during transport and/or placement will be rejected.

307-4.3 Equipment. All equipment necessary to mix, transport, place, compact, and finish the CTDB material shall be furnished by the Contractor and approved by the RPR. The equipment will be inspected by the RPR prior to the start of construction operations.

307-4.4 Preparation of the underlying course. The underlying course shall be checked and accepted by the RPR before placing operations begin. Prior to placing the material, the final grade should be firm, moist and free of frost. Use of chemicals to eliminate frost will not be permitted. The underlying course shall be wetted in advance of placing the lean concrete base course.

307-4.5 Mixing. The batch plant site, layout, equipment, and provisions for transporting material shall assure a continuous supply of material to the work. Stockpiles shall be constructed in a manner that prevents segregation and intermixing of deleterious materials. Free access to the plant must be provided to the RPR at all times for inspection of the plant's equipment and operation and for sampling the CTPB mixture and its components.

The mixers shall be examined daily by the Contractor and periodically by the RPR for changes in condition due to accumulation of hard concrete or mortar or wear of blades. The pick-up and throw-over blades shall be replaced as necessary to provide adequate mixing. Aggregate and cement may be proportioned either by weight or volume, and shall be mixed sufficiently to prevent the forming of cement balls when water is added. Batching weights shall be within a tolerance of 1% for cement and 2% for aggregates. The mixing time shall be that required to produce a uniform mixture of aggregate, cement, and water.

307-4.6 Hauling. The CTPB mixture shall be transported from the plant to the job site in trucks or other hauling equipment having beds that are smooth and clean. Truck bed covers shall be provided to protect the CTPB during transport from rain. CTPB material that becomes wet during transport will be rejected.

The elapsed time between the start of moist mixing and the time the CTPB is deposited in-place at the work site shall not exceed (a) 30 minutes when the CTPB is hauled in non-agitating trucks, or (b) 45 minutes when the CTPB is hauled in transit mixers. Re-tempering the CTPB material by adding water or by other means shall not be permitted.

307-4.7 Placing. The CTPB material shall be placed using a mechanical spreader or an asphalt paver. The CTPB shall be installed in a single [6 inch (150 mm)] lift. The spreader shall be capable of placing a uniform, full-depth layer of material across the full width of the base in one pass. When two or more spreaders are required, they shall be operated so that spreading progresses along the full width of the base in a uniform manner, and the placement is no more than 1 hour apart.

304-4.8 Finishing. Shape the finished surface of the lean concrete base layer to the specified lines, grades, and cross-section.

307-4.9 Compaction. Immediately upon completion of the spreading operations, the CTPB material shall be compacted using the approved compaction equipment and roller pattern/sequence, as determined in the approved control strip. Sufficient rollers shall be furnished to handle the output of the plant. If the rolling pattern/sequence results in undue displacement of the surface, or causes crushing of the aggregate, work shall be stopped until the cause(s) can be determined and corrections are made.

A large asphalt paving machine with dual tamping bars may be used in lieu of rolling if approved during the control strip.

In all places not accessible to the rollers (or the alternative paving machine), the CTPB material shall be compacted with approved mechanical hand-operated tampers.

When additional effort beyond that provided by the paver is required to seat the aggregate, additional compaction shall be initiated within 30 minutes following the placing and striking-off operations

307-4.10 Joints. The formation of all joints shall be made in such a manner as to ensure a continuous bond between old and new sections of the course. All joints shall present the same texture and smoothness as other sections of the course.

All contact surfaces of previously constructed courses shall be cleaned of all dirt or other objectionable material and thoroughly moistened with water prior to placing new material.

307-4.11 Curing. The completed drainage layer shall be moist cured for a period of twelve hours followed by application of an impervious membrane curing compound in accordance with paragraph 307-2.6.

307-4.12 Surface Tolerance. The Contractor shall perform smoothness and grade checks daily. Any area not meeting smoothness and grade shall be corrected by the Contractor at the Contractor's expense. The Contractor shall provide smoothness and grade data to the RPR on a daily basis.

a. Smoothness. The finished surface shall not vary more than $\pm 3/8$ -inch (9 mm) when tested with a 12-foot (3.7-m) straightedge applied parallel with and at right angles to the centerline, and, moved continuously forward at half the length of the 12-foot (3.7-m) straightedge for the full length of each line on a [50-foot (15-m)] grid. The Contractor shall correct any high spots more than $3/8$ inch (9 mm) in 12-foot (3.7-m) with a grinding machine or remove and replace the material at the Contractor's expense. Any areas that have been ground shall have curing compound reapplied.

b. Grade. The grade shall be measured on a [50-foot (15-m)] grid and shall be within ± 0.05 feet (15 mm) of the specified grade. When the surface is more than $1/2$ inch (12 mm) above the grade shown in the plans, the surface shall be corrected at the Contractor's expense to an elevation that falls within a tolerance of $1/4$ inch (6 mm).

307-4.13 Field Permeability. One test shall be performed by the [Contractor in the presence of the RPR] [RPR] for [1200 square yards (1000 square meters)]. Test locations will be determined on a random basis in accordance with ASTM D3665. The permeability of the base will be determined in accordance with ASTM C1701.

307-4.14 Bond breaker. Prior to placing the overlaying concrete pavement a bond breaker shall be placed on the surface to prevent bonding. [Fabric per paragraph 307-2.7 shall be placed on the surface of the lean concrete to prevent bonding. There shall be at least 1 foot (0.3 m) of overlay where adjoining sections of fabric come together.] [Choke stone per paragraph 307-2.7 shall be an ASTM C33 Number 89 stone placed in a layer approximately $1/4$ -inch to $1/2$ inch (6 to 12 mm) thick.]

When lean concrete is placed directly beneath concrete pavement a bond breaker is required. When a choke stone bond breaker is used, the thickness of the choke stone layer must be accounted for in the pavement section to assure proper elevation and thickness of surface course. Include the bracketed text above when a fabric will be used as the bond breaker.

307-4.15 Maintenance. The completed drainable base shall be maintained by the Contractor in a condition to meet all specification requirements until the pavement has been placed. Placement of the pavement shall be made within thirty (30) calendar days after placement of the drainage layer. The CTPB shall not be opened to traffic until specimens made in accordance with ASTM C31 and tested in accordance with ASTM C39 show that a 7-day compressive strength of 500 psi (35.2 kg/square cm) has been achieved.

MATERIAL ACCEPTANCE

307-5.1 Sampling and testing. All acceptance sampling and testing necessary to determine conformance with the requirements specified in this section will be performed by the RPR for each [1200 square yards (1000 square meters)]. Sampling locations will be determined by the RPR on a random basis per ASTM D3665. The Contractor shall bear the cost of providing curing facilities for the strength specimens.

a. Compressive Strength. One sample CTPB will be taken for compressive strength for each [1200 square yards (1000 square meters)] in accordance with ASTM C172. Two test cylinders will be made and cured from the sample per ASTM C31 and the 7-day compressive strength of each cylinder determined per ASTM C39. The compressive strength will be computed by averaging the two 7-day compressive strengths.

The Contractor shall provide for the initial curing of cylinders in accordance with ASTM C31 during the 24 hours after molding.

b. Thickness. [One core shall be drilled by the Contractor for thickness determination for each [1200 square yards (1000 square meters)].] Thickness will be determined by measuring the depth of core hole.

Core holes shall be filled by the Contractor with lean concrete base or non-shrink grout.]

[Thickness will be determined by survey on a [25-foot] by [25-foot] grid.]

The Engineer may change sampling frequency to compensate for project size and anticipated production.

The Engineer must select the method to determine the thickness and delete the other option. When the survey method is selected, the Engineer will specify the minimum survey grid.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

307-6.1 Measurement. The quantity of CTPB to be paid for shall be the number of square yards (m^2) of material placed, and accepted in the completed base course.

BASIS OF PAYMENT

307-7.1 Payment. Payment will be made at the contract unit price per square yard (m^2) for CTPB as measured by RPR. This price shall be full compensation for furnishing all materials, for all preparation, mixing, placing, compacting curing and placement of overlaying bond breaker; and for all labor, equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete the item.

Payment will be made under:

Item P-307	Cement treated permeable base course (CTPB) - per square yard (m^2).

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM International (ASTM)

ASTM C31	Standard Practice for Making and Curing Concrete Test Specimens in the Field
ASTM C33	Standard Specification for Concrete Aggregates
ASTM C39	Standard Test Method for Compressive Strength of Cylindrical Concrete Specimens
ASTM C94	Standard Specification for Ready-Mixed Concrete
ASTM C150	Standard Specification for Portland Cement
ASTM C172	Standard Practice for Sampling Freshly Mixed Concrete
ASTM C174	Standard Test Method for Measuring Thickness of Concrete Elements Using Drilled Concrete Cores
ASTM C595	Standard Specification for Blended Hydraulic Cements
ASTM C309	Standard Specification for Liquid Membrane-Forming Compounds for Curing Concrete
ASTM C1077	Standard Practice for Agencies Testing Concrete and Concrete Aggregates for Use in Construction and Criteria for Testing Agency Evaluation
ASTM C1701	Standard Test Method for Infiltration Rate of In Place Pervious Concrete
ASTM D3665	Standard Practice for Random Sampling of Construction Materials
ASTM C174	Measuring Thickness of Concrete Elements Using Drilled Concrete Cores
ASTM C150	Standard Specification for Portland Cement
ASTM C1602	Standard Specification for Mixing Water Used in the Production of Hydraulic Cement Concrete

American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO)

M288	Standard Specification for Geosynthetic Specification for Highway Applications
T215	Standard Method of Test for Permeability of Granular Soils (Constant Head)

END ITEM P-307

Part 6 – Flexible Pavements

Item P-401 Asphalt Mix Pavement

This specification is intended to be used for the surface course for airfield flexible pavements subject to aircraft loadings of gross weights greater than 30,000 pounds (13,600 kg) and is to apply within the limits of the pavement designed for full load bearing capacity. Item P-401 may also be used as a stabilized base course. For airfield pavement projects at non primary airports, serving aircraft less than 60,000 pounds (27216 kg), state highway specifications may be used in states where the state has requested and received FAA approval to use state highway specifications.

The dimensions and depth of the “surface course” this specification applies to shall be as defined by the Engineer’s pavement design performed in accordance with advisory circular (AC) 150/5320-6, Airport Pavement Design and Evaluation and FAARFIELD. The current version of FAARFIELD is available at: www.faa.gov/airports/engineering/design_software/

For small maintenance and repair projects less than 3000 tons (2720 tonnes), P-403 may be used for the surface course.

For courses other than the surface course, such as stabilized base courses, asphalt binder courses and/or truing and leveling courses; for pavements designed to accommodate aircraft gross weights of 30,000 pounds (13,600 kg) or less; and for pavements intended to be used for roads, shoulder pavements, blast pads, and other pavements not subject to full aircraft loading, specification Item P-403 may be used.

This specification contains job mix formula options for both Marshall and Gyratory Mix Design Methods. The Engineer shall select the method to be used for the project, considering the prevalent method in use in the local project area. The specifications must be edited to follow one methodology or the other. The bid documents can not include both design methodologies.

DESCRIPTION

401-1.1 This item shall consist of pavement courses composed of mineral aggregate and asphalt binder mixed in a central mixing plant and placed on a prepared base or stabilized course in accordance with these specifications and shall conform to the lines, grades, thicknesses, and typical cross-sections shown on the plans. Each course shall be constructed to the depth, typical section, and elevation required by the plans and shall be rolled, finished, and approved before the placement of the next course.

MATERIALS

401-2.1 Aggregate. Aggregates shall consist of crushed stone, crushed gravel, crushed slag, screenings, natural sand, and mineral filler, as required. The aggregates should have no known history of detrimental

pavement staining due to ferrous sulfides, such as pyrite. Coarse aggregate is the material retained on the No. 4 (4.75 mm) sieve. Fine aggregate is the material passing the No. 4 (4.75 mm) sieve.

Some aggregates may contain ferrous sulfides and iron oxides which can cause stains on exposed surfaces. In areas where staining has been a problem or is suspected, the Engineer should verify that producers and aggregate suppliers have taken steps to minimize the inclusion of any ferrous sulfides or iron oxides in aggregate to be used in the project.

On large projects and/or projects that span multiple construction seasons, additional aggregate tests may be necessary to validate consistency of aggregate produced and delivered for the project.

a. Coarse aggregate. Coarse aggregate shall consist of sound, tough, durable particles, free from films of matter that would prevent thorough coating and bonding with the asphalt material and free from organic matter and other deleterious substances. Coarse aggregate material requirements are given in the table below.

Coarse Aggregate Material Requirements

Material Test	Requirement	Standard
Resistance to Degradation	Loss: 40% maximum	ASTM C131
Soundness of Aggregates by Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate	Loss after 5 cycles: 12% maximum using Sodium sulfate - or - 18% maximum using magnesium sulfate	ASTM C88
Clay lumps and friable particles	1.0 % maximum	ASTM C142
Percentage of Fractured Particles	For pavements designed for aircraft gross weights of 60,000 pounds (27200 kg) or more: Minimum 75% by weight of particles with at least two fractured faces and 85% with at least one fractured face ¹	ASTM D5821
	For pavements designed for aircraft gross weights less than 60,000 pounds (27200 kg): Minimum 50% by weight of particles with at least two fractured faces and 65% with at least one fractured face ¹	
Flat, Elongated, or Flat and Elongated Particles	8% maximum, by weight, of flat, elongated, or flat and elongated particles at 5:1 ²	ASTM D4791
Bulk density of slag ³	Weigh not less than 70 pounds per cubic foot (1.12 Mg/cubic meter)	ASTM C29.

¹ The area of each face shall be equal to at least 75% of the smallest mid-sectional area of the piece. When two fractured faces are contiguous, the angle between the planes of fractures shall be at least 30 degrees to count as two fractured faces.

² A flat particle is one having a ratio of width to thickness greater than five (5); an elongated particle is one having a ratio of length to width greater than five (5).

³ Only required if slag is specified.

b. Fine aggregate. Fine aggregate shall consist of clean, sound, tough, durable, angular shaped particles produced by crushing stone, slag, or gravel and shall be free from coatings of clay, silt, or other objectionable matter. Natural (non-manufactured) sand may be used to obtain the gradation of the fine aggregate blend or to improve the workability of the mix. Fine aggregate material requirements are listed in the table below.

Fine Aggregate Material Requirements

Material Test	Requirement	Standard
Liquid limit	25 maximum	ASTM D4318
Plasticity Index	4 maximum	ASTM D4318
Soundness of Aggregates by Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate	Loss after 5 cycles: 10% maximum using Sodium sulfate - or - 15% maximum using magnesium sulfate	ASTM C88
Clay lumps and friable particles	1.0% maximum	ASTM C142
Sand equivalent	[45 minimum]	ASTM D2419
[Natural Sand	[0% to 15%] maximum by weight of total aggregate	ASTM D1073]

The addition of natural sand to a mix containing all crushed coarse and fine aggregates will normally increase its workability and compactability. The addition of natural sand tends to decrease the stability of the mixture, therefore, it is recommended to not use natural sand. However, if natural sand is used, use the minimum amount necessary to achieve a workable mixture.

c. Sampling. ASTM D75 shall be used in sampling coarse and fine aggregate.

401-2.2 Mineral filler. Mineral filler (baghouse fines) may be added in addition to material naturally present in the aggregate. Mineral filler shall meet the requirements of ASTM D242.

Mineral Filler Requirements

Material Test	Requirement	Standard
Plasticity Index	4 maximum	ASTM D4318

401-2.3 Asphalt binder. Asphalt binder shall conform to ASTM D6373 Performance Grade (PG) [____].

[

Asphalt Binder PG Plus Test Requirements

Material Test	Requirement	Standard
Elastic Recovery	[75%] minimum	ASTM D6084 ¹

¹ Follow procedure B on RTFO aged binder.]

The Engineer should use the following guidance in selecting the asphalt binder PG to include in the above paragraph.

Prior to bumping for traffic, the initial asphalt binder PG should be consistent with the recommendations of the applicable State DOT requirements for pavement environmental conditions. Additional guidance on selecting the asphalt binder PG prior to bumping include the following:

- Asphalt Institute MS-26, The Asphalt Binder Handbook.
- The Asphalt Institute's State Binder Specification Database at: <http://www.asphaltinstitute.org/specification-databases/us-state-binder-specification-database/>
- The Long Term Pavement Performance Binder program at <https://infopave.fhwa.dot.gov/>

Using the initial PG selected, apply the applicable grade bump in accordance with the table below; which will determine the PG that will be inserted in the above paragraph.

Required Grade Bump

Aircraft Gross Weight	High Temperature Adjustment to Asphalt binder Grade	
	All Pavement Types	Pavement area with slow or stationary aircraft
≤ 12,500 lbs (5670 kg)	--	1 Grade
< 100,000 lbs (45360 kg)	1 Grade	2 Grade
≥ 100,000 lbs (45360 kg)	2 Grade	3 Grade

Typically, when the PG spread between the high and low temperature is 92 or more, the asphalt binder has been modified. The Engineer may use the PG Plus Test found in the Asphalt Institute's State Binder Specification Database for the project location which requires modification of the table. If the PG spread is less than 92, delete the Asphalt Binder PG Plus Test Requirements table.

Note asphalt industry is in a state of change regarding binder designations. Some States are following ASTM D6373, while others are following AASHTO M332. Ensure that the binder supplied meets minimum requirements of ASTM D6373.

401-2.4 Anti-stripping agent. Any anti-stripping agent or additive (anti-strip) shall be heat stable and shall not change the asphalt binder grade beyond specifications. Anti-strip shall be an approved material of the Department of Transportation of the State in which the project is located.

COMPOSITION

401-3.1 Composition of mixture(s). The asphalt mix shall be composed of a mixture of aggregates, filler and anti-strip agent if required, and asphalt binder. The aggregate fractions shall be sized, handled in separate size groups, and combined in such proportions that the resulting mixture meets the grading requirements of the job mix formula (JMF).

401-3.2 Job mix formula (JMF) laboratory. The laboratory used to develop the JMF shall possess a current certificate of accreditation, listing D3666 from a national accrediting authority and all test methods required for developing the JMF; and be listed on the accrediting authority's website. A copy of

the laboratory's current accreditation and accredited test methods shall be submitted to the Resident Project Representative (RPR) prior to start of construction.

401-3.3 Job mix formula (JMF). No asphalt mixture shall be placed until an acceptable mix design has been submitted to the RPR for review and accepted in writing. The RPR's review shall not relieve the Contractor of the responsibility to select and proportion the materials to comply with this section.

When the project requires asphalt mixtures of differing aggregate gradations and/or binders, a separate JMF shall be submitted for each mix. Add anti-stripping agent to meet tensile strength requirements.

The JMF shall be prepared by an accredited laboratory that meets the requirements of paragraph 401-3.2. The asphalt mixture shall be designed using procedures contained in Asphalt Institute MS-2 Mix Design Manual, 7th Edition. [Samples shall be prepared and compacted using a Marshall compactor in accordance with ASTM D6926.] [Samples shall be prepared and compacted using the gyratory compactor in accordance with ASTM D6925.]

Should a change in sources of materials be made, a new JMF must be submitted to the RPR for review and accepted in writing before the new material is used. After the initial production JMF has been approved by the RPR and a new or modified JMF is required for whatever reason, the subsequent cost of the new or modified JMF, including a new control strip when required by the RPR, will be borne by the Contractor.

The RPR may request samples at any time for testing, prior to and during production, to verify the quality of the materials and to ensure conformance with the applicable specifications.

Select the method for mix design, Marshall Method, ASTM D6926 or Gyratory Method, ASTM D6925.

The design criteria in Table 1 are target values necessary to meet the acceptance requirements contained in paragraph 401-6.2. The criteria is based on a production process which has a material variability with the following standard deviations: Air Voids = 0.65%.

The JMF shall be submitted in writing by the Contractor at least [30] days prior to the start of paving operations. The JMF shall be developed within the same construction season using aggregates proposed for project use.

The JMF shall be dated, and stamped or sealed by the responsible professional Engineer of the laboratory and shall include the following items as a minimum:

- Manufacturer's Certificate of Analysis (COA) for the asphalt binder used in the JMF in accordance with paragraph 401-2.3. Certificate of asphalt performance grade is with modifier already added, if used and must indicate compliance with ASTM D6373. For plant modified asphalt binder, certified test report indicating grade certification of modified asphalt binder.
- Manufacturer's Certificate of Analysis (COA) for the anti-stripping agent if used in the JMF in accordance with paragraph 401-2.4.
- Certified material test reports for the course and fine aggregate and mineral filler in accordance with paragraphs 401-2.1.

- Percent passing each sieve size for individual gradation of each aggregate cold feed and/or hot bin; percent by weight of each cold feed and/or hot bin used; and the total combined gradation in the JMF.
- Specific Gravity and absorption of each coarse and fine aggregate.
- Percent natural sand.
- Percent fractured faces.
- Percent by weight of flat particles, elongated particles, and flat and elongated particles (and criteria).
- Percent of asphalt.
- Number of blows or gyrations
- Laboratory mixing and compaction temperatures.
- Supplier-recommended field mixing and compaction temperatures.
- Plot of the combined gradation on a 0.45 power gradation curve.
- Graphical plots of air voids, voids in the mineral aggregate (VMA), and unit weight versus asphalt content. To achieve minimum VMA during production, the mix design needs to account for material breakdown during production.
- Tensile Strength Ratio (TSR).
- Type and amount of Anti-strip agent when used.
- Asphalt Pavement Analyzer (APA) results.
- Date the JMF was developed. Mix designs that are not dated or which are from a prior construction season shall not be accepted.
- [Percentage and properties (asphalt content, asphalt binder properties, and aggregate properties) of reclaimed asphalt mix pavement (RAP) in accordance with paragraph 401-3.4.]
- []

Delete if RAP is not allowed per paragraph 401-3.4.

The Owner may add additional testing to meet local conditions with FAA concurrence.

Table 1. Asphalt Design Criteria

Test Property	Value	Test Method
Number of blows or gyrations	[75]	
Air voids (%)	3.5	ASTM D3203
Percent voids in mineral aggregate (VMA), minimum	See Table 2	ASTM D6995
Tensile Strength Ratio (TSR) ¹	not less than [80] at a saturation of 70-80%	ASTM D4867
[Asphalt Pavement Analyzer (APA) ^{2,3}]	[Less than 10 mm @ 4000 passes]	[AASHTO T340 at 250 psi hose pressure at 64°C test temperature]

¹ Test specimens for TSR shall be compacted at 7 ± 1.0 % air voids. In areas subject to freeze-thaw, use freeze-thaw conditioning in lieu of moisture conditioning per ASTM D4867.

² AASHTO T340 at 100 psi hose pressure at 64°C test temperature may be used in the interim. If this method is used the required Value shall be less than 5 mm @ 8000 passes

³ Where APA not available , use Hamburg Wheel test (AASHTO T-324) 10mm @ 20,000 passes at 50°C.

75 blows or gyrations shall be specified for airports serving aircraft greater than 60,000 pounds. 50 blows or gyrations may be specified for airports serving aircraft 60,000 pounds or less.

The APA procedure has shown that mixes that meet the requirements above perform well under aircraft loading. If APA is not available in an area, compacted mix design samples may be sent to a laboratory that has an APA or the Hamburg wheel test (AASHTO T 324) 10mm @ 20,000 passes at 50°C may be used with FAA approval of ADO. The use of APA or Hamburg is not required for pavements serving aircraft less than 60,000 pounds.

Specify a TSR of not less than 85 in areas with aggregate that have a history of stripping.

The mineral aggregate shall be of such size that the percentage composition by weight, as determined by laboratory sieves, will conform to the gradation or gradations specified in Table 2 when tested in accordance with ASTM C136 and ASTM C117.

The gradations in Table 2 represent the limits that shall determine the suitability of aggregate for use from the sources of supply; be well graded from coarse to fine and shall not vary from the low limit on one sieve to the high limit on the adjacent sieve, or vice versa.

Table 2. Aggregate - Asphalt Pavements

Sieve Size	Percentage by Weight Passing Sieve
1 inch (25.0 mm)	*
3/4 inch (19.0 mm)	*
1/2 inch (12.5 mm)	*
3/8 inch (9.5 mm)	*
No. 4 (4.75 mm)	*
No. 8 (2.36 mm)	*
No. 16 (1.18 mm)	*
No. 30 (600 µm)	*
No. 50 (300 µm)	*
No. 100 (150 µm)	*
No. 200 (75 µm)	*
Minimum Voids in Mineral Aggregate (VMA)¹	*
Asphalt Percent:	
Stone or gravel	*
Slag	*
Recommended Minimum Construction Lift Thickness	*

¹To achieve minimum VMA during production, the mix design needs to account for material breakdown during production.

The aggregate gradations shown are based on aggregates of uniform specific gravity. The percentages passing the various sieves shall be corrected when aggregates of varying specific gravities are used, as indicated in the Asphalt Institute MS-2 Mix Design Manual, 7th Edition.

The aggregate gradation shall be specified by the Engineer from the gradations shown in this note. The gradation shall be inserted into Table 2. Asterisks denote insert points.

Where locally-available aggregates cannot be economically blended to meet the grading requirements of the gradations shown, the gradations may be modified to fit the characteristics of such local aggregates with approval of the FAA. The modified gradation must produce a paving mixture that satisfies the mix design requirements.

Table 2. Aggregate - Asphalt Pavements

Sieve Size	Percentage by Weight Passing Sieves		
	Gradation 1	Gradation 2	Gradation 3 ¹
1 inch (25.0 mm)	100	--	--
3/4 inch (19.0 mm)	90-100	100	--
1/2 inch (12.5 mm)	68-88	90-100	100
3/8 inch (9.5 mm)	60-82	72-88	90-100
No. 4 (4.75 mm)	45-67	53-73	58-78
No. 8 (2.36 mm)	32-54	38-60	40-60
No. 16 (1.18 mm)	22-44	26-48	28-48
No. 30 (600 µm)	15-35	18-38	18-38
No. 50 (300 µm)	9-25	11-27	11-27
No. 100 (150 µm)	6-18	6-18	6-18
No. 200 (75 µm)	3-6	3-6	3-6
Minimum Voids in Mineral Aggregate (VMA)	14.0	15.0	16.0
Asphalt percent by total weight of mixture:			
Stone or gravel	4.5-7.0	5.0-7.5	5.5-8.0
Slag	5.0-7.5	6.5-9.5	7.0-10.5
Recommended Minimum Construction Lift Thickness	3 inch	2 inch	1 1/2 inch

¹ Gradation 3 is intended for leveling courses. FAA approval is required for use in other locations.

401-3.4 Reclaimed asphalt pavement (RAP). [RAP shall not be used.] [Reclaimed asphalt shall consist of reclaimed asphalt pavement (RAP), coarse aggregate, fine aggregate, mineral filler, and asphalt. The RAP shall be of a consistent gradation and asphalt content and properties. When RAP is fed into the plant, the maximum RAP size shall not exceed one inch (25 mm). The reclaimed asphalt pavement mix shall be designed using procedures contained in the Asphalt Institute MS-2 Mix Design Manual, 7th Edition. The percentage of asphalt in the RAP shall be established for the mixture design according to ASTM D2172 using the appropriate dust correction procedure. The JMF shall meet the requirements of paragraph 401-3.3. RAP shall only be used for shoulder surface course mixes and for any intermediate courses. The amount of RAP shall be limited to [___] percent. In addition to the requirements of paragraph 401-3.3, the JMF shall indicate the percent of reclaimed asphalt pavement and the percent and grade of new asphalt binder. For the PG graded asphalt binder selected in 401-2.3, adjust as follows:

a. For 0-20% RAP, there is no change in virgin asphalt binder content.

b. For >20 to 30% RAP, select asphalt binder one grade softer, i.e., PG 64-22 would soften to PG 58-28.

RAP containing Coal Tar shall not be used. Coal Tar surface treatments must be removed prior to recycling underlying asphalt material.

Recycled asphalt shingles (RAS) shall not be used.]

Engineer will determine if RAP is/is not allowed and make appropriate selection.

RAP should not be used for surface mixes, except on shoulders. It can be used very effectively in lower layers or for shoulders. Engineer to specify the maximum percentage of reclaimed asphalt allowed in the mix. The amount of RAP shall be limited to 30%, as long as the resulting recycled mix meets all requirements that are specified for virgin mixtures. The Contractor may obtain the RAP from the job site or an existing source.

401-3.5 Control Strip. [A control strip is not required.][Full production shall not begin until an acceptable control strip has been constructed and accepted in writing by the RPR. The Contractor shall prepare and place a quantity of asphalt according to the JMF. The underlying grade or pavement structure upon which the control strip is to be constructed shall be the same as the remainder of the course represented by the control strip.

The Contractor will not be allowed to place the control strip until the Contractor quality control program (CQCP), showing conformance with the requirements of paragraph 401-5.1, has been accepted, in writing, by the RPR.

The control strip will consist of at least 250 tons (227 metric tons) or 1/2 subplot, whichever is greater. The control strip shall be placed in two lanes of the same width and depth to be used in production with a longitudinal cold joint. The cold joint must be cut back in accordance with paragraph 401-4.14 using the same procedure that will be used during production. The cold joint for the control strip will be an exposed construction joint at least four (4) hours old or when the mat has cooled to less than 160°F (71°C). The equipment used in construction of the control strip shall be the same type, configuration and weight to be used on the project.

The control strip will be considered acceptable by the RPR if the gradation, asphalt content, and VMA are within the action limits specified in paragraph 401-5.5a; and Mat density greater than or equal to 94.5%, air voids 3.5% +/- 1%, and joint density greater than or equal to 92.5%.

If the control strip is unacceptable, necessary adjustments to the JMF, plant operation, placing procedures, and/or rolling procedures shall be made and another control strip shall be placed. Unacceptable control strips shall be removed at the Contractor's expense.

The control strip will be considered one lot for payment based upon the average of a minimum of 3 samples (no sublots required for control strip). Payment will only be made for an acceptable control strip in accordance with paragraph 401-8.1 using a lot pay factor equal to 100.]

For small projects, less than 3,000 tons (2722 metric tons), a control strip is not required.

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

401-4.1 Weather limitations. The asphalt shall not be placed upon a wet surface or when the surface temperature of the underlying course is less than specified in Table 4. The temperature requirements may be waived by the RPR, if requested; however, all other requirements including compaction shall be met.

Table 4. Surface Temperature Limitations of Underlying Course

Mat Thickness	Base Temperature (Minimum)	
	°F	°C
3 inches (7.5 cm) or greater	40 ¹	4
Greater than 2 inches (50 mm) but less than 3 inches (7.5 cm)	45	7

401-4.2 Asphalt plant. Plants used for the preparation of asphalt shall conform to the requirements of American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO) M156 including the following items.

a. Inspection of plant. The RPR, or RPR's authorized representative, shall have access, at all times, to all areas of the plant for checking adequacy of equipment; inspecting operation of the plant: verifying weights, proportions, and material properties; and checking the temperatures maintained in the preparation of the mixtures.

b. Storage bins and surge bins. The asphalt mixture stored in storage and/or surge bins shall meet the same requirements as asphalt mixture loaded directly into trucks. Asphalt mixture shall not be stored in storage and/or surge bins for a period greater than twelve (12) hours. If the RPR determines there is an excessive heat loss, segregation, or oxidation of the asphalt mixture due to temporary storage, temporary storage shall not be allowed.

401-4.3 Aggregate stockpile management. Aggregate stockpiles shall be constructed in a manner that prevents segregation and intermixing of deleterious materials. Aggregates from different sources shall be stockpiled, weighed and batched separately at the asphalt batch plant. Aggregates that have become segregated or mixed with earth or foreign material shall not be used.

A continuous supply of materials shall be provided to the work to ensure continuous placement.

401-4.4 Hauling equipment. Trucks used for hauling asphalt shall have tight, clean, and smooth metal beds. To prevent the asphalt from sticking to the truck beds, the truck beds shall be lightly coated with a minimum amount of paraffin oil, lime solution, or other material approved by the RPR. Petroleum products shall not be used for coating truck beds. Each truck shall have a suitable cover to protect the

mixture from adverse weather. When necessary, to ensure that the mixture will be delivered to the site at the specified temperature, truck beds shall be insulated or heated and covers shall be securely fastened.

401-4.4.1 Material transfer vehicle (MTV). [Material transfer vehicles used to transfer the material from the hauling equipment to the paver, shall use a self-propelled, material transfer vehicle with a swing conveyor that can deliver material to the paver without making contact with the paver. The MTV shall be able to move back and forth between the hauling equipment and the paver providing material transfer to the paver, while allowing the paver to operate at a constant speed. The Material Transfer Vehicle will have remixing and storage capability to prevent physical and thermal segregation.] [Material transfer vehicles are not required.]

An MTV is required for runway and taxiway construction on pavements designed for aircraft weighing 100,000 lbs (45360 kg) or more. The MTV is recommended for all pavements where the weight of the MTV will not damage the pavement structure. The use of an MTV is optional for shoulder construction.

401-4.5 Asphalt pavers. Asphalt pavers shall be self-propelled with an activated heated screed, capable of spreading and finishing courses of asphalt that will meet the specified thickness, smoothness, and grade. The paver shall have sufficient power to propel itself and the hauling equipment without adversely affecting the finished surface. The asphalt paver shall be equipped with a control system capable of automatically maintaining the specified screed grade and elevation.

If the spreading and finishing equipment in use leaves tracks or indented areas, or produces other blemishes in the pavement that are not satisfactorily corrected by the scheduled operations, the use of such equipment shall be discontinued.

The paver shall be capable of paving to a minimum width specified in paragraph 401-4.12.

401-4.6 Rollers. The number, type, and weight of rollers shall be sufficient to compact the asphalt to the required density while it is still in a workable condition without crushing of the aggregate, depressions or other damage to the pavement surface. Rollers shall be in good condition, clean, and capable of operating at slow speeds to avoid displacement of the asphalt. All rollers shall be specifically designed and suitable for compacting asphalt concrete and shall be properly used. Rollers that impair the stability of any layer of a pavement structure or underlying soils shall not be used.

401-4.7 Density device. The Contractor shall have on site a density gauge during all paving operations in order to assist in the determination of the optimum rolling pattern, type of roller and frequencies, as well as to monitor the effect of the rolling operations during production paving. The Contractor shall supply a qualified technician during all paving operations to calibrate the gauge and obtain accurate density readings for all new asphalt. These densities shall be supplied to the RPR upon request at any time during construction. No separate payment will be made for supplying the density gauge and technician.

401-4.8 Preparation of asphalt binder. The asphalt binder shall be heated in a manner that will avoid local overheating and provide a continuous supply of the asphalt binder to the mixer at a uniform temperature. The temperature of unmodified asphalt binder delivered to the mixer shall be sufficient to provide a suitable viscosity for adequate coating of the aggregate particles, but shall not exceed 325°F (160°C) when added to the aggregate. The temperature of modified asphalt binder shall be no more than 350°F (175°C) when added to the aggregate.

401-4.9 Preparation of mineral aggregate. The aggregate for the asphalt shall be heated and dried. The maximum temperature and rate of heating shall be such that no damage occurs to the aggregates. The temperature of the aggregate and mineral filler shall not exceed 350°F (175°C) when the asphalt binder is added. Particular care shall be taken that aggregates high in calcium or magnesium content are not damaged by overheating. The temperature shall not be lower than is required to obtain complete coating and uniform distribution on the aggregate particles and to provide a mixture of satisfactory workability.

401-4.10 Preparation of Asphalt mixture. The aggregates and the asphalt binder shall be weighed or metered and mixed in the amount specified by the JMF. The combined materials shall be mixed until the aggregate obtains a uniform coating of asphalt binder and is thoroughly distributed throughout the mixture. Wet mixing time shall be the shortest time that will produce a satisfactory mixture, but not less than 25 seconds for batch plants. The wet mixing time for all plants shall be established by the Contractor, based on the procedure for determining the percentage of coated particles described in ASTM D2489, for each individual plant and for each type of aggregate used. The wet mixing time will be set to achieve 95% of coated particles. For continuous mix plants, the minimum mixing time shall be determined by dividing the weight of its contents at operating level by the weight of the mixture delivered per second by the mixer. The moisture content of all asphalt upon discharge shall not exceed 0.5%.

For batch plants, wet mixing time begins with the introduction of asphalt binder into the mixer and ends with the opening of the mixer discharge gate. Mixing time should be the shortest time required to obtain uniform distribution of aggregate sizes and thorough coating of aggregate particles with asphalt binder.

401-4.11 Application of Prime and Tack Coat. Immediately before placing the asphalt mixture, the underlying course shall be cleaned of all dust and debris.

[A prime coat in accordance with Item P-602 shall be applied to aggregate base prior to placing the asphalt mixture.]

A tack coat shall be applied in accordance with Item P-603 to all vertical and horizontal asphalt and concrete surfaces prior to placement of the first and each subsequent lift of asphalt mixture.

401-4.12 Laydown plan, transporting, placing, and finishing. Prior to the placement of the asphalt, the Contractor shall prepare a laydown plan with the sequence of paving lanes and width to minimize the number of cold joints; the location of any temporary ramps; laydown temperature; and estimated time of completion for each portion of the work (milling, paving, rolling, cooling, etc.). The laydown plan and any modifications shall be approved by the RPR.

Deliveries shall be scheduled so that placing and compacting of asphalt is uniform with minimum stopping and starting of the paver. Hauling over freshly placed material shall not be permitted until the material has been compacted, as specified, and allowed to cool to approximately ambient temperature. The Contractor, at their expense, shall be responsible for repair of any damage to the pavement caused by hauling operations.

Contractor shall survey each lift of asphalt surface course and certify to RPR that every lot of each lift meets the grade tolerances of paragraph 401-6.2d before the next lift can be placed.

Edges of existing asphalt pavement abutting the new work shall be saw cut and the cut off material and laitance removed. Apply a tack coat in accordance with P-603 before new asphalt material is placed against it.

The speed of the paver shall be regulated to eliminate pulling and tearing of the asphalt mat. Placement of the asphalt mix shall begin along the centerline of a crowned section or on the high side of areas with a one way slope unless shown otherwise on the laydown plan as accepted by the RPR. The asphalt mix shall be placed in consecutive adjacent lanes having a minimum width of [] feet (m) except where edge lanes require less width to complete the area. Additional screed sections attached to widen the paver to meet the minimum lane width requirements must include additional auger sections to move the asphalt mixture uniformly along the screed extension. []

The Engineer should specify the widest paving lane practicable in an effort to hold the number of longitudinal joints to a minimum. Additional job specific construction limitations may be added as necessary covering such items as echelon paving, hot joint construction, etc.

The longitudinal joint in one course shall offset the longitudinal joint in the course immediately below by at least one foot (30 cm); however, the joint in the surface top course shall be at the centerline of crowned pavements. Transverse joints in one course shall be offset by at least 10 feet (3 m) from transverse joints in the previous course. Transverse joints in adjacent lanes shall be offset a minimum of 10 feet (3 m). On areas where irregularities or unavoidable obstacles make the use of mechanical spreading and finishing equipment impractical, the asphalt may be spread and luted by hand tools.

The RPR may at any time, reject any batch of asphalt, on the truck or placed in the mat, which is rendered unfit for use due to contamination, segregation, incomplete coating of aggregate, or overheated asphalt mixture. Such rejection may be based on only visual inspection or temperature measurements. In the event of such rejection, the Contractor may take a representative sample of the rejected material in the presence of the RPR, and if it can be demonstrated in the laboratory, in the presence of the RPR, that such material was erroneously rejected, payment will be made for the material at the contract unit price.

Areas of segregation in the surface course, as determined by the RPR, shall be removed and replaced at the Contractor's expense. The area shall be removed by saw cutting and milling a minimum of the construction lift thickness as specified in paragraph 401-3.3, Table 2 for the approved mix design. The area to be removed and replaced shall be a minimum width of the paver and a minimum of 10 feet (3 m) long.

401-4.13 Compaction of asphalt mixture. After placing, the asphalt mixture shall be thoroughly and uniformly compacted by self-propelled rollers. The surface shall be compacted as soon as possible when the asphalt has attained sufficient stability so that the rolling does not cause undue displacement, cracking or shoving. The sequence of rolling operations and the type of rollers used shall be at the discretion of the Contractor. The speed of the roller shall, at all times, be sufficiently slow to avoid displacement of the hot mixture and be effective in compaction. Any surface defects and/or displacement occurring as a result of the roller, or from any other cause, shall be corrected at the Contractor's expense.

Sufficient rollers shall be furnished to handle the output of the plant. Rolling shall continue until the surface is of uniform texture, true to grade and cross-section, and the required field density is obtained. To prevent adhesion of the asphalt to the roller, the wheels shall be equipped with a scraper and kept moistened with water as necessary.

In areas not accessible to the roller, the mixture shall be thoroughly compacted with approved power tampers.

Any asphalt that becomes loose and broken, mixed with dirt, contains check-cracking, or in any way defective shall be removed and replaced with fresh hot mixture and immediately compacted to conform to

the surrounding area. This work shall be done at the Contractor's expense. Skin patching shall not be allowed.

401-4.14 Joints. The formation of all joints shall be made to ensure a continuous bond between the courses and obtain the required density. All joints shall have the same texture as other sections of the course and meet the requirements for smoothness and grade.

The roller shall not pass over the unprotected end of the freshly laid asphalt except when necessary to form a transverse joint. When necessary to form a transverse joint, it shall be made by means of placing a bulkhead or by tapering the course. The tapered edge shall be cut back to its full depth and width on a straight line to expose a vertical face prior to placing the adjacent lane. In both methods, all contact surfaces shall be coated with an asphalt tack coat before placing any fresh asphalt against the joint.

Longitudinal joints which have been left exposed for more than four (4) hours; the surface temperature has cooled to less than 175°F (80°C); or are irregular, damaged, uncompacted or otherwise defective shall be cut back with a cutting wheel or pavement saw a maximum of 3 inches (75 mm) to expose a clean, sound, uniform vertical surface for the full depth of the course. All cutback material and any laitance produced from cutting joints shall be removed from the project. Asphalt tack coat in accordance with P-603 shall be applied to the clean, dry joint prior to placing any additional fresh asphalt against the joint. The cost of this work shall be considered incidental to the cost of the asphalt.

Cut back of all cold joints is required as specified above.

The Contractor may provide additional joint density QC by use of joint heaters at the Contractor's expense. Electrically powered infrared heating equipment should consist of one or more low-level radiant energy heaters to uniformly heat and soften the pavement joints. The heaters should be configured to uniformly heat an area up to 18 inches (0.5 m) in width and 3 inches (75 mm) in depth. Infrared equipment shall be thermostatically controlled to provide a uniform, consistent temperature increase throughout the layer being heated up to a maximum temperature range of 200 to 300°F (93 to 150°C).

Propane powered infrared heating equipment shall be attached to the paving machine and the output of infrared energy shall be in the one to six-micron range. Converters shall be arranged end to end directly over the joint to be heated in sufficient numbers to continuously produce, when in operation, a minimum of 240,000 BTU per hour. The joint heater shall be positioned not more than one inch (25 mm) above the pavement to be heated and in front of the paver screed and shall be fully adjustable. Heaters will be required to be in operation at all times.

The heaters shall be operated so they do not produce excessive heat when the units pass over new or previously paved material.

401-4.15 Saw-cut grooving. Saw-cut grooves shall be provided as specified in Item P-621. [Saw-cut grooving is not required.]

401-4.16 Diamond grinding. Diamond grinding shall be completed prior to pavement grooving. Diamond grinding shall be accomplished by sawing with saw blades impregnated with industrial diamond abrasive.

Diamond grinding shall be performed with a machine designed specifically for diamond grinding capable of cutting a path at least 3 feet (0.9 m) wide. The saw blades shall be 1/8-inch (3-mm) wide with a

sufficient number of blades to create grooves between 0.090 and 0.130 inches (2 and 3.5 mm) wide; and peaks and ridges approximately 1/32 inch (1 mm) higher than the bottom of the grinding cut. The actual number of blades will be determined by the Contractor and depend on the hardness of the aggregate. Equipment or grinding procedures that cause ravels, aggregate fractures, spalls or disturbance to the pavement will not be permitted. Contractor shall demonstrate to the RPR that the grinding equipment will produce satisfactory results prior to making corrections to surfaces. Grinding will be tapered in all directions to provide smooth transitions to areas not requiring grinding. The slurry resulting from the grinding operation shall be continuously removed and the pavement left in a clean condition. The Contractor shall apply a surface treatment per P-608 to all areas that have been subject to grinding.

401-4.17 Nighttime paving requirements. The Contractor shall provide adequate lighting during any nighttime construction. A lighting plan shall be submitted by the Contractor and approved by the RPR prior to the start of any nighttime work. All work shall be in accordance with the approved CSPP and lighting plan.

CONTRACTOR QUALITY CONTROL (CQC)

All federally funded projects over \$500K dollars where paving is the major work item must have a CQCP. It is strongly encouraged that a Contractor Quality Control Program (CQCP) be developed for all projects.

For projects that do not include a formal CQCP, this section can be edited to remove reference to a CQCP. However, QC testing is still required regardless of project size.

401-5.1 General. [The Contractor shall develop a Contractor Quality Control Program (CQCP) in accordance with Item C-100. No partial payment will be made for materials without an approved CQCP.]

401-5.2 Contractor quality control (QC) facilities. [The Contractor shall provide or contract for testing facilities in accordance with Item C-100. The RPR shall be permitted unrestricted access to inspect the Contractor's QC facilities and witness QC activities. The RPR will advise the Contractor in writing of any noted deficiencies concerning the QC facility, equipment, supplies, or testing personnel and procedures. When the deficiencies are serious enough to be adversely affecting the test results, the incorporation of the materials into the work shall be suspended immediately and will not be permitted to resume until the deficiencies are satisfactorily corrected.]

401-5.3 Contractor QC testing. The Contractor shall perform all QC tests necessary to control the production and construction processes applicable to these specifications [and as set forth in the approved CQCP. The testing program shall include, but not necessarily be limited to, tests for the control of asphalt content, aggregate gradation, temperatures, aggregate moisture, field compaction, and surface smoothness. A QC Testing Plan shall be developed as part of the CQCP.]

a. Asphalt content. A minimum of two tests shall be performed per day in accordance with ASTM D6307 or ASTM D2172 for determination of asphalt content. When using ASTM D6307, the correction factor shall be determined as part of the first test performed at the beginning of plant production; and as part of every tenth test performed thereafter. The asphalt content for the day will be determined by averaging the test results.

b. Gradation. Aggregate gradations shall be determined a minimum of twice per day from mechanical analysis of extracted aggregate in accordance with ASTM D5444, ASTM C136, and ASTM C117.

c. Moisture content of aggregate. The moisture content of aggregate used for production shall be determined a minimum of once per day in accordance with ASTM C566.

d. Moisture content of asphalt. The moisture content shall be determined once per day in accordance with AASHTO T329 or ASTM D1461.

e. Temperatures. Temperatures shall be checked, at least four times per day, at necessary locations to determine the temperatures of the dryer, the asphalt binder in the storage tank, the asphalt at the plant, and the asphalt at the job site.

f. In-place density monitoring. The Contractor shall conduct any necessary testing to ensure that the specified density is being achieved. A nuclear gauge may be used to monitor the pavement density in accordance with ASTM D2950.

g. Smoothness for Contractor Quality Control.

Note change in deviations on final surface course that require grinding, limited to deviations greater than 1/4 inch that trap water, intent here is to focus on areas that may cause issues with the safe operation of aircraft and to minimize grinding if it will not improve safety

The Contractor shall perform smoothness testing in transverse and longitudinal directions daily to verify that the construction processes are producing pavement with variances less than ¼ inch in 12 feet, identifying areas that may pond water which could lead to hydroplaning of aircraft. If the smoothness criteria is not met, appropriate changes and corrections to the construction process shall be made by the Contractor before construction continues

The Contractor may use a 12-foot (3.7 m) “straightedge, a rolling inclinometer meeting the requirements of ASTM E2133 or rolling external reference device that can simulate a 12-foot (3.7m) straightedge approved by the RPR. Straight-edge testing shall start with one-half the length of the straightedge at the edge of pavement section being tested and then moved ahead one-half the length of the straightedge for each successive measurement. Testing shall be continuous across all joints. The surface irregularity shall be determined by placing the freestanding (unleveled) straightedge on the pavement surface and allowing it to rest upon the two highest spots covered by its length, and measuring the maximum gap between the straightedge and the pavement surface in the area between the two high points. If the rolling inclinometer or external reference device is used, the data may be evaluated using either the FAA profile program, ProFAA, or FHWA ProVal, using the 12-foot straightedge simulation function.

Smoothness readings shall not be made across grade changes or cross slope transitions. The transition between new and existing pavement shall be evaluated separately for conformance with the plans.

Include detail for transition between new and existing pavement including smoothness and grade limitations.

(1) Transverse measurements. Transverse measurements shall be taken for each day's production placed. Transverse measurements shall be taken perpendicular to the pavement centerline each 50 feet (15 m) or more often as determined by the RPR. The joint between lanes shall be tested separately to facilitate smoothness between lanes.

(2) Longitudinal measurements. Longitudinal measurements shall be taken for each day's production placed. Longitudinal tests shall be parallel to the centerline of paving; at the center of paving lanes when widths of paving lanes are less than 20 feet (6 m); and at the third points of paving lanes when widths of paving lanes are 20 ft (6 m) or greater. When placement abuts previously placed material the first measurement shall start with one half the length of the straight edge on the previously placed material.

Deviations on the final surface course in either the transverse or longitudinal direction that will trap water greater than 1/4 inch (6 mm) shall be corrected with diamond grinding per paragraph 401-4.16 or by removing and replacing the surface course to full depth. Grinding shall be tapered in all directions to provide smooth transitions to areas not requiring grinding. All areas in which diamond grinding has been performed shall be subject to the final pavement thickness tolerances specified in paragraph 401-6.1d(3). Areas that have been ground shall be sealed with a surface treatment in accordance with Item P-608. To avoid the surface treatment creating any conflict with runway or taxiway markings, it may be necessary to seal a larger area.

Control charts shall be kept to show area of each day's placement and the percentage of corrective grinding required. Corrections to production and placement shall be initiated when corrective grinding is required. If the Contractor's machines and/or methods produce significant areas that need corrective actions in excess of 10 percent of a day's production, production shall be stopped until corrective measures are implemented by the Contractor.

h. Grade. Grade shall be evaluated daily to allow adjustments to paving operations when grade measurements do not meet specifications. As a minimum, grade shall be evaluated prior to and after the placement of the first lift and after placement of the surface lift.

Measurements will be taken at appropriate gradelines (as a minimum at center and edges of paving lane) and longitudinal spacing as shown on cross-sections and plans. The final surface of the pavement will not vary from the gradeline elevations and cross-sections shown on the plans by more than 1/2 inch (12 mm) vertically [and 0.1 feet (30 mm) laterally]. The documentation will be provided by the Contractor to the RPR [within 24 hours] [by the end of the following working day].

Areas with humps or depressions that exceed grade or smoothness criteria and that retain water on the surface must be ground off provided the course thickness after grinding is not more than 1/2 inch (12 mm) less than the thickness specified on the plans. Grinding shall be in accordance with paragraph 401-4.16.

The Contractor shall repair low areas or areas that cannot be corrected by grinding by removal of deficient areas to the depth of the final course plus 1/2 inch and replacing with new material. Skin patching is not allowed.

401-5.4 Sampling. When directed by the RPR, the Contractor shall sample and test any material that appears inconsistent with similar material being sampled, unless such material is voluntarily removed and replaced or deficiencies corrected by the Contractor. All sampling shall be in accordance with standard procedures specified.

401-5.5 Control charts. The Contractor shall maintain linear control charts for both individual measurements and range (i.e. difference between highest and lowest measurements) for aggregate gradation, asphalt content, and VMA. The VMA for each day will be calculated and monitored by the QC laboratory.

Control charts shall be posted in a location satisfactory to the RPR and kept current. As a minimum, the control charts shall identify the project number, the contract item number, the test number, each test parameter, the Action and Suspension Limits applicable to each test parameter, and the Contractor's test results. The Contractor shall use the control charts as part of a process control system for identifying potential problems and assignable causes before they occur. If the Contractor's projected data during production indicates a problem and the Contractor is not taking satisfactory corrective action, the RPR may suspend production or acceptance of the material.

a. Individual measurements. Control charts for individual measurements shall be established to maintain process control within tolerance for aggregate gradation, asphalt content, and VMA. The control charts shall use the job mix formula target values as indicators of central tendency for the following test parameters with associated Action and Suspension Limits:

Control Chart Limits for Individual Measurements

Sieve	Action Limit	Suspension Limit
3/4 inch (19.0 mm)	±6%	±9%
1/2 inch (12.5 mm)	±6%	±9%
3/8 inch (9.5 mm)	±6%	±9%
No. 4 (4.75 mm)	±6%	±9%
No. 16 (1.18 mm)	±5%	±7.5%
No. 50 (300 µm)	±3%	±4.5%
No. 200 (75 µm)	±2%	±3%
Asphalt Content	±0.45%	±0.70%
Minimum VMA	-0.5%	-1.0%

b. Range. Control charts shall be established to control gradation process variability. The range shall be plotted as the difference between the two test results for each control parameter. The Suspension Limits specified below are based on a sample size of $n = 2$. Should the Contractor elect to perform more than two tests per lot, the Suspension Limits shall be adjusted by multiplying the Suspension Limit by 1.18 for $n = 3$ and by 1.27 for $n = 4$.

Control Chart Limits Based on Range

Sieve	Suspension Limit
1/2 inch (12.5 mm)	11%
3/8 inch (9.5 mm)	11%
No. 4 (4.75 mm)	11%
No. 16 (1.18 mm)	9%
No. 50 (300 µm)	6%
No. 200 (75 µm)	3.5%
Asphalt Content	0.8%

c. Corrective Action. [The CQCP shall indicate that appropriate action shall be taken when the process is believed to be out of tolerance. The Plan shall contain rules to gauge when a process is out of control and detail what action will be taken to bring the process into control. As a minimum, a process shall be deemed out of control and production stopped and corrective action taken, if:

(1) One point falls outside the Suspension Limit line for individual measurements or range; or

(2) Two points in a row fall outside the Action Limit line for individual measurements.]

401-5.6 QC reports. The Contractor shall maintain records and shall submit reports of QC activities daily [, in accordance with Item C-100].

MATERIAL ACCEPTANCE

401-6.1 Acceptance sampling and testing. Unless otherwise specified, all acceptance sampling and testing necessary to determine conformance with the requirements specified in this section will be performed by the RPR at no cost to the Contractor except that coring as required in this section shall be completed and paid for by the Contractor.

a. Quality assurance (QA) testing laboratory. The QA testing laboratory performing these acceptance tests will be accredited in accordance with ASTM D3666. The QA laboratory accreditation will be current and listed on the accrediting authority's website. All test methods required for acceptance sampling and testing will be listed on the lab accreditation.

b. Lot size. A standard lot will be equal to one day's production divided into approximately equal sublots of between 400 to 600 tons. When only one or two sublots are produced in a day's production, the sublots will be combined with the production lot from the previous or next day.

Where more than one plant is simultaneously producing asphalt for the job, the lot sizes will apply separately for each plant.

For large projects with high production rates, the Engineer may adjust the lot size to be ½ days production.

For small projects, with multiple small placements or if the total project size is less than 3000 tons (2270 metric tons), acceptable material will be paid for by the ton (metric ton) placed per day.

For small maintenance and repair projects, P-403 should be used.

c. Asphalt air voids. Plant-produced asphalt will be tested for air voids on a subplot basis.

(1) Sampling. Material from each subplot shall be sampled in accordance with ASTM D3665. Samples shall be taken from material deposited into trucks at the plant or at the job site in accordance with ASTM D979. The sample of asphalt may be put in a covered metal tin and placed in an oven for [not less than 30 minutes nor more than 60 minutes] to maintain the material at or above the compaction temperature as specified in the JMF.

Engineer should increase hold times to not less than 60 minutes and not more than 90 minutes when absorptive aggregates are used.

(2) Testing. Air voids will be determined for each subplot in accordance with ASTM D3203 for a set of three compacted specimens prepared in accordance with [ASTM D6926][ASTM D6925].

d. In-place asphalt mat and joint density. Each subplot will be tested for in-place mat and joint density as a percentage of the theoretical maximum density (TMD).

(1) Sampling. The [Contractor][RPR] will cut minimum 5 inch (125 mm) diameter samples in accordance with ASTM D5361. The Contractor shall furnish all tools, labor, and materials for cleaning, and filling the cored pavement. Laitance produced by the coring operation shall be removed immediately after coring, and core holes shall be filled within one day after sampling in a manner acceptable to the RPR.

(2) Bond. Each lift of asphalt shall be bonded to the underlying layer. If cores reveal that the surface is not bonded, additional cores shall be taken as directed by the RPR to determine the extent of unbonded areas. Unbonded areas shall be removed by milling and replaced at no additional cost as directed by the RPR.

(3) Thickness. Thickness of each lift of surface course will be evaluated by the RPR for compliance to the requirements shown on the plans after any necessary corrections for grade. Measurements of thickness will be made using the cores extracted for each subplot for density measurement. The maximum allowable deficiency at any point will not be more than 1/4 inch (6 mm) less than the thickness indicated for the lift. Average thickness of lift, or combined lifts, will not be less than the indicated thickness. Where the thickness tolerances are not met, the lot or subplot shall be corrected by the Contractor at his expense by removing the deficient area and replacing with new pavement. The Contractor, at his expense, may take additional cores as approved by the RPR to circumscribe the deficient area.

(4) Mat density. One core shall be taken from each subplot. Core locations will be determined by the RPR in accordance with ASTM D3665. Cores for mat density shall not be taken closer than one foot (30 cm) from a transverse or longitudinal joint. The bulk specific gravity of each cored sample will be determined in accordance with ASTM D2726. The percent compaction (density) of each sample will be determined by dividing the bulk specific gravity of each subplot sample by the TMD for that subplot.

(5) Joint density. One core centered over the longitudinal joint shall be taken for each subplot that has a longitudinal joint. Core locations will be determined by the RPR in accordance with ASTM D3665. The bulk specific gravity of each core sample will be determined in accordance with ASTM D2726. The percent compaction (density) of each sample will be determined by dividing the bulk specific gravity of each joint density sample by the average TMD for the lot. The TMD used to determine the joint density at joints formed between lots will be the lower of the average TMD values from the adjacent lots.

401-6.2 Acceptance criteria.

a. General. Acceptance will be based on the implementation of the Contractor Quality Control Program (CQCP) and the following characteristics of the asphalt and completed pavements: air voids, mat density, joint density, grade [and Profilograph roughness].

Only include profilograph roughness for runway and/or taxiway pavement projects greater than 500 feet (150 m) in length.

b. Air Voids and Mat density. Acceptance of each lot of plant produced material for mat density and air voids will be based on the percentage of material within specification limits (PWL). If the PWL of the lot equals or exceeds 90%, the lot will be acceptable. Acceptance and payment will be determined in accordance with paragraph 401-8.1.

c. Joint density. Acceptance of each lot of plant produced asphalt for joint density will be based on the PWL. If the PWL of the lot is equal to or exceeds 90%, the lot will be considered acceptable. If the PWL is less than 90%, the Contractor shall evaluate the reason and act accordingly. If the PWL is less than 80%, the Contractor shall cease operations and until the reason for poor compaction has been determined. If the PWL is less than 71%, the pay factor for the lot used to complete the joint will be reduced by five (5) percentage points. This lot pay factor reduction will be incorporated and evaluated in accordance with paragraph 401-8.1.

d. Grade. The final finished surface of the pavement shall be surveyed to verify that the grade elevations and cross-sections shown on the plans do not deviate more than 1/2 inch (12 mm) vertically [or 0.1 feet (30 mm) laterally].

Cross-sections of the pavement shall be taken at a minimum [50-foot (15-m)] longitudinal spacing, at all longitudinal grade breaks, and at start and end of each lane placed. Minimum cross-section grade points shall include grade at centerline, [± 10 feet of centerline], and edge of [runway][taxiway] pavement.

The survey and documentation shall be stamped and signed by a licensed surveyor. Payment for sublots that do not meet grade for over 25% of the subplot shall not be more than 95%.

e. Profilograph roughness for QA Acceptance. [The final profilograph shall be the full length of the project to facilitate testing of roughness between lots. The [Contractor, in the presence of the RPR shall] [RPR will] perform a profilograph roughness test on the completed project with a profilograph meeting the requirements of ASTM E1274 or a Class I inertial profiler meeting ASTM E950. Data and results shall be provided within [48 hrs] of profilograph roughness tests.

The pavement shall have an average profile index less than 15 inches per mile per 1/10 mile. The equipment shall utilize electronic recording and automatic computerized reduction of data to indicate

"must grind" bumps and the Profile Index for the pavement using a 0.2-inch (5 mm) blanking band. The bump template must span one inch (25 mm) with an offset of 0.4 inches (10 mm). The profilograph must be calibrated prior to use and operated by a factory or State DOT approved, trained operator. Profilograms shall be recorded on a longitudinal scale of one inch (25 mm) equals 25 feet (7.5 m) and a vertical scale of one inch (25 mm) equals one inch (25 mm). Profilograph shall be performed one foot right and left of project centerline and 15 feet (4.5 m) right and left of project centerline. Any areas that indicate "must grind" shall be corrected with diamond grinding per paragraph 401-4.16 or by removing and replacing full depth of surface course. as directed by the RPR. Where corrections are necessary, a second profilograph run shall be performed to verify that the corrections produced an average profile index of 15 inches per mile per 1/10 mile or less.] [Not used.]

Edit as required for the project.

Profilograph roughness and acceptance paragraphs only apply when the overall project is a new and/or reconstructed runway(s) and/or taxiway(s) greater than 500 feet (152 m) in length.

Profilograph roughness is not applicable to aprons and should be used with caution on projects to rehabilitate runways and/or taxiways unless the project includes provisions to correct existing deficiencies.

Any changes to the profilograph roughness acceptance limits requires a modification to standards in accordance with FAA Order 5300.1, Modifications to Agency Airport Design, Construction, and Equipment Standards.

The Engineer must select who will provide the specified equipment and the timeframe for receiving the test data. The Airport should retain a copy of the profilograph roughness test and reports for inclusion in the Airport's Pavement Maintenance Management Program (PMP).

401-6.3 Percentage of material within specification limits (PWL). The PWL will be determined in accordance with procedures specified in Item C-110. The specification tolerance limits (L) for lower and (U) for upper are contained in Table 5.

Table 5. Acceptance Limits for Air Voids and Density

Test Property	Pavements Specification Tolerance Limits	
	L	U
Air Voids Total Mix (%)	2.0	5.0
Surface Course Mat Density (%)	92.8	-
Base Course Mat Density (%)	92.0	-
Joint density (%)	90.5	--

a. Outliers. All individual tests for mat density and air voids will be checked for outliers (test criterion) in accordance with ASTM E178, at a significance level of 5%. Outliers will be discarded, and the PWL will be determined using the remaining test values. The criteria in Table 5 is based on production processes which have a variability with the following standard deviations: Surface Course Mat Density (%), 1.30; Base Course Mat Density (%), 1.55; Joint Density (%), 1.55.

The Contractor should note that (1) 90 PWL is achieved when consistently producing a surface course with an average mat density of at least 94.5% with 1.30% or less variability, (2) 90 PWL is achieved when consistently producing a base course with an average mat density of at least 94.0% with 1.55% or less variability, and (3) 90 PWL is achieved when consistently producing joints with an average joint density of at least 92.5% with 1.55% or less variability.

401-6.4 Resampling pavement for mat density.

a. General. Resampling of a lot of pavement will only be allowed for mat density, and then, only if the Contractor requests same, in writing, within 48 hours after receiving the written test results from the RPR. A retest will consist of all the sampling and testing procedures contained in paragraphs 401-6.1d and 401-6.2b. Only one resampling per lot will be permitted.

(1) A redefined PWL will be calculated for the resampled lot. The number of tests used to calculate the redefined PWL will include the initial tests made for that lot plus the retests.

(2) The cost for resampling and retesting shall be borne by the Contractor.

b. Payment for resampled lots. The redefined PWL for a resampled lot will be used to calculate the payment for that lot in accordance with Table 6.

c. Outliers. Check for outliers in accordance with ASTM E178, at a significance level of 5%.

[401-6.5 Leveling course. The leveling course is the first variable thickness lift placed to correct surface irregularities prior to placement of subsequent courses. The leveling course shall meet the aggregate gradation in Table 2, paragraph 401-3.3. The leveling course shall meet the requirements of paragraph 401-3.3, 401-6.2b for air voids, but shall not be subject to the density requirements of paragraph 401-6.2b for mat density and 401-6.2c for joint density. The leveling course shall be compacted with the same effort used to achieve density of the control strip. The leveling course shall not exceed the lift thickness associated with each gradation in Table 2, paragraph 401-3.3.]

Use this paragraph only when there is a need to restore proper cross-section prior to overlaying. Areas of the pavement requiring a leveling course shall be shown on the plans.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

401-7.1 Measurement. Asphalt shall be measured by the number of tons [kg] of asphalt used in the accepted work. Batch weights or truck scale weights will be used to determine the basis for the tonnage.

BASIS OF PAYMENT

401-8.1 Payment. Payment for a lot of asphalt meeting all acceptance criteria as specified in paragraph 401-6.2 shall be made based on results of tests for mat density and air voids. Payment for acceptable lots shall be adjusted according to paragraph 401-8.1c for mat density and air voids; and paragraph 401-6.2c for joint density, subject to the limitation that:

a. The total project payment for plant mix asphalt pavement shall not exceed [] percent of the product of the contract unit price and the total number of tons (kg) of asphalt used in the accepted work.

b. The price shall be compensation for furnishing all materials, for all preparation, mixing, and placing of these materials, and for all labor, equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete the item.

The Engineer shall specify a value ranging from 100% to the maximum lot pay factor amount of 106%.

For mixtures that contain RAP, do not include separate payment for asphalt binder.

c. Basis of adjusted payment. The pay factor for each individual lot shall be calculated in accordance with Table 6. A pay factor shall be calculated for both mat density and air voids. The lot pay factor shall be the higher of the two values when calculations for both mat density and air voids are 100% or higher. The lot pay factor shall be the product of the two values when only one of the calculations for either mat density or air voids is 100% or higher. The lot pay factor shall be the lower of the two values when calculations for both mat density and air voids are less than 100%. If PWL for joint density is less than 71% then the lot pay factor shall be reduced by 5% but be no higher than 95%.

For each lot accepted, the adjusted contract unit price shall be the product of the lot pay factor for the lot and the contract unit price. Payment shall be subject to the total project payment limitation specified in paragraph 401-8.1a. Payment in excess of 100% for accepted lots of asphalt shall be used to offset payment for accepted lots of asphalt pavement that achieve a lot pay factor less than 100%.

Payment for sublots which do not meet grade in accordance with paragraph 401-6.2d after correction for over 25% of the subplot shall be reduced by 5%.

Table 6. Price adjustment schedule¹

Percentage of material within specification limits (PWL)	Lot pay factor (percent of contract unit price)
96 – 100	106
90 – 95	PWL + 10
75 – 89	0.5 PWL + 55
55 – 74	1.4 PWL – 12
Below 55	Reject ²

¹ Although it is theoretically possible to achieve a pay factor of 106% for each lot, actual payment above 100% shall be subject to the total project payment limitation specified in paragraph 401-8.1a.

² The lot shall be removed and replaced. However, the RPR may decide to allow the rejected lot to remain. In that case, if the RPR and Contractor agree in writing that the lot shall not be removed, it shall be paid for at 50% of the contract unit price and the total project payment shall be reduced by the amount withheld for the rejected lot.

d. Profilograph Roughness. [The Contractor will receive full payment when the profilograph average profile index is in accordance with paragraph 401-6.2e. When the final average profile index for the entire length of pavement does not exceed 15 inches per mile per 1/10 mile, payment will be made at the contract unit price for the completed pavement.]
[Not used.]

Edit as required for project.

401-8.1 Payment.

Payment will be made under:

Item P-401-8.1	Asphalt [Surface] [Base] [Binder] [Leveling] Course - per ton (kg)

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM International (ASTM)

ASTM C29	Standard Test Method for Bulk Density (“Unit Weight”) and Voids in Aggregate
ASTM C88	Standard Test Method for Soundness of Aggregates by Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate
ASTM C117	Standard Test Method for Materials Finer than 75-μm (No. 200) Sieve in Mineral Aggregates by Washing
ASTM C127	Standard Test Method for Density, Relative Density (Specific Gravity) and Absorption of Coarse Aggregate
ASTM C131	Standard Test Method for Resistance to Degradation of Small-Size Coarse Aggregate by Abrasion and Impact in the Los Angeles Machine
ASTM C136	Standard Test Method for Sieve or Screen Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates
ASTM C142	Standard Test Method for Clay Lumps and Friable Particles in Aggregates
ASTM C566	Standard Test Method for Total Evaporable Moisture Content of Aggregate by Drying
ASTM D75	Standard Practice for Sampling Aggregates
ASTM D242	Standard Specification for Mineral Filler for Bituminous Paving Mixtures
ASTM D946	Standard Specification for Penetration-Graded Asphalt Cement for Use in Pavement Construction

ASTM D979	Standard Practice for Sampling Asphalt Paving Mixtures
ASTM D1073	Standard Specification for Fine Aggregate for Asphalt Paving Mixtures
ASTM D1188	Standard Test Method for Bulk Specific Gravity and Density of Compacted Bituminous Mixtures Using Coated Samples
ASTM D2172	Standard Test Method for Quantitative Extraction of Bitumen from Asphalt Paving Mixtures
ASTM D1461	Standard Test Method for Moisture or Volatile Distillates in Asphalt Paving Mixtures
ASTM D2041	Standard Test Method for Theoretical Maximum Specific Gravity and Density of Bituminous Paving Mixtures
ASTM D2419	Standard Test Method for Sand Equivalent Value of Soils and Fine Aggregate
ASTM D2489	Standard Practice for Estimating Degree of Particle Coating of Bituminous-Aggregate Mixtures
ASTM D2726	Standard Test Method for Bulk Specific Gravity and Density of Non-Absorptive Compacted Bituminous Mixtures
ASTM D2950	Standard Test Method for Density of Bituminous Concrete in Place by Nuclear Methods
ASTM D3203	Standard Test Method for Percent Air Voids in Compacted Dense and Open Bituminous Paving Mixtures
ASTM D3381	Standard Specification for Viscosity-Graded Asphalt Cement for Use in Pavement Construction
ASTM D3665	Standard Practice for Random Sampling of Construction Materials
ASTM D3666	Standard Specification for Minimum Requirements for Agencies Testing and Inspecting Road and Paving Materials
ASTM D4318	Standard Test Methods for Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit, and Plasticity Index of Soils
ASTM D4552	Standard Practice for Classifying Hot-Mix Recycling Agents
ASTM D4791	Standard Test Method for Flat Particles, Elongated Particles, or Flat and Elongated Particles in Coarse Aggregate
ASTM D4867	Standard Test Method for Effect of Moisture on Asphalt Concrete Paving Mixtures
ASTM D5361	Standard Practice for Sampling Compacted Asphalt Mixtures for Laboratory Testing
ASTM D5444	Standard Test Method for Mechanical Size Analysis of Extracted Aggregate
ASTM D5821	Standard Test Method for Determining the Percentage of Fractured Particles in Coarse Aggregate
ASTM D6084	Standard Test Method for Elastic Recovery of Bituminous Materials by Ductilometer

ASTM D6307	Standard Test Method for Asphalt Content of Hot Mix Asphalt by Ignition Method
ASTM D6373	Standard Specification for Performance Graded Asphalt Binder
ASTM D6752	Standard Test Method for Bulk Specific Gravity and Density of Compacted Bituminous Mixtures Using Automatic Vacuum Sealing Method
ASTM D6925	Standard Test Method for Preparation and Determination of the Relative Density of Hot Mix Asphalt (HMA) Specimens by Means of the SuperPave Gyratory Compactor.
ASTM D6926	Standard Practice for Preparation of Bituminous Specimens Using Marshall Apparatus
ASTM D6927	Standard Test Method for Marshall Stability and Flow of Bituminous Mixtures
ASTM D6995	Standard Test Method for Determining Field VMA based on the Maximum Specific Gravity of the Mix (Gmm)
ASTM E11	Standard Specification for Woven Wire Test Sieve Cloth and Test Sieves
ASTM E178	Standard Practice for Dealing with Outlying Observations
ASTM E1274	Standard Test Method for Measuring Pavement Roughness Using a Profilograph
ASTM E950	Standard Test Method for Measuring the Longitudinal Profile of Traveled Surfaces with an Accelerometer Established Inertial Profiling Reference
ASTM E2133	Standard Test Method for Using a Rolling Inclinator to Measure Longitudinal and Transverse Profiles of a Traveled Surface
American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO)	
AASHTO M156	Standard Specification for Requirements for Mixing Plants for Hot-Mixed, Hot-Laid Bituminous Paving Mixtures.
AASHTO T329	Standard Method of Test for Moisture Content of Hot Mix Asphalt (HMA) by Oven Method
AASHTO T324	Standard Method of Test for Hamburg Wheel-Track Testing of Compacted Asphalt Mixtures
AASHTO T 340	Standard Method of Test for Determining the Rutting Susceptibility of Hot Mix Asphalt (APA) Using the Asphalt Pavement Analyzer (APA)
Asphalt Institute (AI)	
Asphalt Institute Handbook MS-26, Asphalt Binder	
Asphalt Institute MS-2 Mix Design Manual, 7th Edition	
AI State Binder Specification Database	
Federal Highway Administration (FHWA)	
Long Term Pavement Performance Binder Program	

Advisory Circulars (AC)

AC 150/5320-6

Airport Pavement Design and Evaluation

FAA Orders

5300.1

Modifications to Agency Airport Design, Construction, and Equipment Standards

Software

FAARFIELD

END OF ITEM P-401

Page Intentionally Blank

Item P-403 Asphalt Mix Pavement [Base][Leveling][Surface] Course

Specify base and/or leveling course. Surface course may also be specified but only for those pavements designed to accommodate aircraft of gross weights less than or equal to 30,000 pounds (13,600 kg) or for surface course of shoulders, blast pads, service roads, etc. Item P-401 shall be specified for surface courses for pavements designed to accommodate aircraft gross weights greater than 30,000 pounds (13,600 kg). For airfield pavement projects at non primary airports, serving aircraft less than 60,000 pounds (27216 kg), state highway specifications may be used in states where the state has requested and received FAA approval to use state highway specifications.

For small maintenance and repair projects less than 3000 tons (2720 tonnes), P-403 may be used for the surface course.

This specification is to be used as a base or leveling course for pavements designed to accommodate aircraft of gross weights greater than 30,000 pounds (13,600 kg).

When used as a stabilized base course under P-501, include a bond breaker.

This specification contains job mix formula options for both Marshall and Gyratory Mix Design Methods. The Engineer shall select the method to be used for the project, considering the prevalent method in use in the local project area.

State highway department specifications may be used in lieu of this specification for access roads, perimeter roads, stabilized base courses under Item P-501, and other pavements not subject to aircraft loading, or for pavements designed for aircraft gross weights of 30,000 pounds (13,600 kg) or less. When state highway department material specification are used:

- The state specification must have a demonstrated satisfactory performance record under equivalent loadings and exposure.
- When a density requirement is not specified by a state specification, it shall be modified to include the language found in paragraphs 403-6.1, 403-6.2, 403-6.3, and 403-6.4
- When state highway specifications are approved, include all applicable/approved state specifications in the contract documents.
- Update any references to State Department of Transportation (DOT), State Materials Laboratory, etc., to "Owner," "Engineer," etc. as appropriate for project.

The use of state highway department specifications for airfield pavements subject to aircraft loading by aircraft greater than 30,000 pounds and less than 60,000 pounds requires a modification to standards in accordance with FAA Order 5300.1, Modifications to Agency Airport Design, Construction, and Equipment Standards.

DESCRIPTION

403-1.1 This item shall consist of pavement courses composed of mineral aggregate and asphalt binder mixed in a central mixing plant and placed on a prepared course in accordance with these specifications and shall conform to the lines, grades, thicknesses, and typical cross-sections shown on the plans. Each course shall be constructed to the depth, typical section, and elevation required by the plans and shall be rolled, finished, and approved before the placement of the next course.

MATERIALS

403-2.1 Aggregate. Aggregates shall consist of crushed stone, crushed gravel, crushed slag, screenings, natural sand and mineral filler, as required. The aggregates should have no known history of detrimental pavement staining due to ferrous sulfides, such as pyrite. Coarse aggregate is the material retained on the No. 4 (4.75 mm) sieve. Fine aggregate is the material passing the No. 4 (4.75 mm) sieve.

Some aggregates may contain ferrous sulfides and iron oxides which can cause stains on exposed surfaces. In areas where staining has been a problem or is suspected, the Engineer should verify that producers and aggregate suppliers have taken steps to minimize the inclusion of any ferrous sulfides or iron oxides in aggregate to be used in the project.

On large projects and/or projects that span multiple construction seasons, additional aggregate tests may be necessary to validate consistency of aggregate produced and delivered for the project.

a. Coarse aggregate. Coarse aggregate shall consist of sound, tough, durable particles, free from films of matter that would prevent thorough coating and bonding with the asphalt material and free from organic matter and other deleterious substances. Coarse aggregate material requirements are given in the table below.

Coarse Aggregate Material Requirements

Material Test	Requirement	Standard
Resistance to Degradation	Loss: 40% maximum for surface, asphalt binder, and leveling course Loss: 50% maximum for base course	ASTM C131
Soundness of Aggregates by Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate	Loss after 5 cycles: 12% maximum using Sodium sulfate - or - 18% maximum using magnesium sulfate	ASTM C88
Clay lumps and friable particles	1.0 % maximum	ASTM C142
Percentage of Fractured Particles	For pavements designed for aircraft gross weights of 60,000 pounds (27200 kg) or more: Minimum 75% by weight of particles with at least two fractured faces and 85% with at least one fractured face ¹	ASTM D5821
	For pavements designed for aircraft gross weights less than 60,000 pounds (27200 kg): Minimum 50% by weight of particles with at least two fractured faces and 65% with at least one fractured face ¹	
Flat, Elongated, or Flat and Elongated Particles	8% maximum, by weight, of flat, elongated, or flat and elongated particles with a value of 5:1 ²	ASTM D4791
Bulk density of slag ³	Weigh not less than 70 pounds per cubic foot (1.12 Mg/cubic meter)	ASTM C29.

¹ The area of each face shall be equal to at least 75% of the smallest mid-sectional area of the piece. When two fractured faces are contiguous, the angle between the planes of fractures shall be at least 30 degrees to count as two fractured faces.

² A flat particle is one having a ratio of width to thickness greater than five (5); an elongated particle is one having a ratio of length to width greater than five (5).

³ Only required if slag is specified.

b. Fine aggregate. Fine aggregate shall consist of clean, sound, tough, durable, angular shaped particles produced by crushing stone, slag, or gravel and shall be free from coatings of clay, silt, or other objectionable matter. Natural (non-manufactured) sand may be used to obtain the gradation of the aggregate blend or to improve the workability of the mix. Fine aggregate material requirements are listed in the table below.

Fine Aggregate Material Requirements

Material Test	Requirement	Standard
Liquid limit	25 maximum	ASTM D4318
Plasticity Index	4 maximum	ASTM D4318
Soundness of Aggregates by Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate	Loss after 5 cycles: 10% maximum using Sodium sulfate - or - 15% maximum using magnesium sulfate	ASTM C88
Clay lumps and friable particles	1.0 % maximum	ASTM C142
Sand equivalent	[45 minimum]	ASTM D2419
Natural Sand	[0 to 15%] maximum by weight of total aggregate	ASTM D1073

The addition of natural sand to a mix containing all crushed coarse and fine aggregates will normally increase its workability and compactability. The addition of natural sand tends to decrease the stability of the mixture, therefore, it is recommended to not use natural sand. However, if natural sand is used, use the minimum amount necessary to achieve a workable mixture.

c. Sampling. ASTM D75 shall be used in sampling coarse and fine aggregate, and ASTM C183 shall be used in sampling mineral filler.

403-2.2 Mineral filler. Mineral filler (baghouse fines) may be added in addition to material naturally present in the aggregate. Mineral filler shall meet the requirements of ASTM D242.

Mineral filler Requirements

Material Test	Requirement	Standard
Plasticity Index	4 maximum	ASTM D4318

403-2.3 Asphalt binder. Asphalt binder shall conform to ASTM D6373 Performance Grade (PG) [____].

[

Asphalt Binder PG Plus Test Requirements

Material Test	Requirement	Standard
Elastic Recovery	[75%] minimum	ASTM D6084 ¹

¹ Follow procedure B on RTFO aged binder.]

Use the following guidance in selecting the asphalt binder PG to include in the above paragraph.

Prior to bumping for traffic, the initial PG asphalt binder should be consistent with the recommendations of the applicable State Department of Transportation requirements for pavement environmental conditions.

Additional guidance on selecting the asphalt binder PG include the following:

- Asphalt Institute MS-26, The Asphalt Binder Handbook.
- The Asphalt Institute's State Binder Specification Database at: <http://www.asphaltinstitute.org/specification-databases/us-state-binder-specification-database/The Long Term Pavement Performance Binder program at https://infopave.fhwa.dot.gov/>
- Using the initial PG selected, apply the applicable grade bump in accordance with the table below to determine the PG that will be inserted in the above paragraph.

Required Grade Bump

Aircraft Gross Weight	High Temperature Adjustment to Asphalt Binder Grade	
	All Pavement Types	Pavement area with slow or stationary aircraft
≤ 12,500 lbs (5670 kg)	--	1 Grade
< 100,000 lbs (45360 kg)	1 Grade	2 Grade
≥ 100,000 lbs (45360 kg)	2 Grade	3 Grade

Typically, when the PG spread between the high and low temperature is 92 or more, the asphalt binder has been modified. The Engineer may use the PG Plus Test found in the Asphalt Institute's State Binder Specification Database for the project location which requires modification of the table. If the PG spread is less than 92, delete the Asphalt Binder PG Plus Test Requirements table.

Note asphalt industry is in a state of change regarding binder designations. Some States are following ASTM D6373, while others are following AASHTO M332. Ensure that binder supplied meets minimum requirements of ASTM D6373.

403-2.4 Anti-stripping agent. Any anti-stripping agent or additive (anti-strip) shall be heat stable and shall not change the asphalt binder grade beyond specifications. Anti-strip shall be an approved material of the Department of Transportation of the State in which the project is located.

[**403-2.5 Bond Breaker.** [Choke stone shall be an ASTM C33 Number 89 stone.] [Fabric shall meet the requirements of AASHTO M 288 Class I fabric with elongation not less than 50% at the specified strengths, and a weight not less than 14.5 oz/sy. A certificate of compliance (COC) shall be provided by the fabric manufacturer that the material may be used as a bond breaker.] [Liquid membrane forming compound shall be []].]

Delete paragraph 403-2.5 if asphalt pavement will be placed directly above the lean concrete base.

The Engineer must select the bond breaker when concrete pavement will be placed directly above the lean concrete base. Coordinate with P-501.

COMPOSITION

403-3.1 Composition of mixture. The asphalt plant mix shall be composed of a mixture of well-graded aggregate, filler and anti-strip agent if required, and asphalt binder. The several aggregate fractions shall be sized, handled in separate size groups, and combined in such proportions that the resulting mixture meets the grading requirements of the job mix formula (JMF).

403-3.2 Job mix formula (JMF) laboratory. The laboratory used to develop the JMF shall possess a current certificate of accreditation, listing D3666 from a national accrediting authority and all test methods required for developing the JMF, and listed on the accrediting authority's website. A copy of the laboratory's current accreditation and accredited test methods shall be submitted to the RPR prior to start of construction.

403-3.3 Job mix formula (JMF). No asphalt mixture shall be placed until an acceptable mix design has been submitted to the RPR for review and accepted in writing. The RPR's review shall not relieve the Contractor of the responsibility to select and proportion the materials to comply with this section.

When the project requires asphalt mixtures of differing aggregate gradations and/or binders, a separate JMF shall be submitted for each mix. Add anti-stripping agent to meet tensile strength requirements.

The JMF shall be prepared by an accredited laboratory that meets the requirements of paragraph 403-3.2. The asphalt mixture shall be designed using procedures contained in Asphalt Institute MS-2 Mix Design Manual, 7th Edition. [Samples shall be prepared and compacted using a Marshall compactor in accordance with ASTM D6926.] [Samples shall be prepared and compacted using the gyratory compactor in accordance with ASTM D6925.]

Should a change in sources of materials be made, a new JMF must be submitted to the RPR for review and accepted in writing before the new material is used. After the initial production JMF has been approved by the RPR and a new or modified JMF is required for whatever reason, the subsequent cost of the new or modified JMF, including a new control strip when required by the RPR, will be borne by the Contractor.

The RPR may request samples at any time for testing, prior to and during production, to verify the quality of the materials and to ensure conformance with the applicable specifications.

Select the method for mix design, Marshall Method, ASTM D6926 or Gyratory method, ASTM D6925.

The design criteria in Table 1 are target values necessary to meet the acceptance requirements contained in paragraph 403-6.2. The criteria is based on a production process which has a material variability with the following standard deviations Air Voids = 0.65%.

The JMF shall be submitted in writing by the Contractor at least [30] days prior to the start of paving operations. The JMF shall be developed within the same construction season using aggregates proposed for project use.

The submitted JMF shall be dated, and stamped or sealed by the responsible professional Engineer of the laboratory and shall include the following items as a minimum:

- Manufacturer's Certificate of Analysis (COA) for the asphalt binder used in the JMF in accordance with paragraph 403-2.3. Certificate of asphalt performance grade is with modifier already added, if used and must indicate compliance with ASTM D6373. For plant modified asphalt binder, certified test report indicating grade certification of modified asphalt binder.
- Manufacturer's Certificate of Analysis (COA) for the anti-stripping agent if used in the JMF in accordance with paragraph 403-2.4.
- Certified material test reports for the course and fine aggregate and mineral filler in accordance with paragraphs 403-2.1 and 403-2.2.
- Percent passing each sieve size for individual gradation of each aggregate cold feed and/or hot bin; percent by weight of each cold feed and/or hot bin used; and the total combined gradation in the JMF.
- Specific Gravity and absorption of each course and fine aggregate.
- Percent natural sand.
- Percent fractured faces.
- Percent by weight of flat particles, elongated particles, and flat and elongated particles (and criteria).
- Percent of asphalt.
- Number of blows or gyrations.
- Laboratory mixing and compaction temperatures.
- Supplier recommended mixing and compaction temperatures.
- Plot of the combined gradation on the 0.45 power gradation curve.
- Graphical plots of air voids, voids in the mineral aggregate (VMA), and unit weight versus asphalt content. To achieve minimum VMA during production, the mix design needs to account for material breakdown during production.
- Tensile Strength Ratio (TSR).
- Type and amount of Anti-strip agent when used.
- Asphalt Pavement Analyzer (APA) results.
- Date the JMF was developed. Mix designs that are not dated or which are from a prior construction season shall not be accepted.
- [Percentage and properties (asphalt content, asphalt binder properties, and aggregate properties) of reclaimed asphalt pavement (RAP) in accordance with paragraph 403-3.4, Reclaimed Hot-Mix Asphalt, if RAP is used.]
- []

Delete if RAP is not allowed per paragraph 403-3.4.

The Owner may add additional testing to meet local conditions with FAA concurrence.

Table 1. Asphalt Design Criteria

Test Property	Value	Test Method
Number of blows/gyrations	[75]	
Air voids (%)	3.5	ASTM D3203
Percent voids in mineral aggregate (VMA), minimum	See Table 2	ASTM D6995
TSR ¹	not less than [80] at a saturation of 70-80%	ASTM D4867
[Asphalt Pavement Analyzer (APA) ^{2,3}]	[Less than 10 mm @ 4000 passes]	[AASHTO T340 at 250 psi hose pressure at 64°C test temperature]

¹ Test specimens for TSR shall be compacted at 7 ± 1.0 % air voids. In areas subject to freeze-thaw, use freeze-thaw conditioning in lieu of moisture conditioning per ASTM D4867.

² AASHTO T340 at 100 psi hose pressure at 64°C test temperature may be used in the interim. If this method is used the required Value shall be less than 5 mm @ 8000 passes

³ Where APA not available, use Hamburg wheel test (AASHTO T 324) 10 mm@ 20,000 passes at 50°C.

75 blows or gyrations shall be specified for airports serving aircraft greater than 60,000 pounds. 50 blows or gyrations may be specified for airports serving aircraft 60,000 pounds or less.

The APA procedure has shown that mixes that meet the requirements above perform well under aircraft loading. If APA is not available in an area, compacted mix design samples may be sent to a laboratory that has an APA or the Hamburg wheel test (AASHTO T 324) 10mm @ 20,000 passes at 50°C may be used with FAA approval. The use of APA or Hamburg is not required for pavements serving aircraft less than 60,000 pounds.

Specify a TSR of not less than 85 in areas with aggregate that have a history of stripping.

The mineral aggregate shall be of such size that the percentage composition by weight, as determined by laboratory sieves, will conform to the gradation or gradations specified in Table 2 when tested in accordance with ASTM C136 and ASTM C117.

The gradations in Table 2 represent the limits that shall determine the suitability of aggregate for use from the sources of supply, be well graded from coarse to fine and shall not vary from the low limit on one sieve to the high limit on the adjacent sieve, or vice versa.

Table 2. Aggregate - Asphalt Pavements

Sieve Size	Percentage by Weight Passing Sieve
1 inch (25.0 mm)	*
3/4 inch (19.0 mm)	*
1/2 inch (12.5 mm)	*
3/8 inch (9.5 mm)	*
No. 4 (4.75 mm)	*
No. 8 (2.36 mm)	*
No. 16 (1.18 mm)	*
No. 30 (600 µm)	*
No. 50 (300 µm)	*
No. 100 (150 µm)	*
No. 200 (75 µm)	*
Voids in Mineral Aggregate (VMA)¹	*
Asphalt Percent:	
Stone or gravel	*
Slag	*
Recommended Minimum Construction Lift Thickness	

¹To achieve minimum VMA during production, the mix design needs to account for material breakdown during production.

The aggregate gradations shown are based on aggregates of uniform specific gravity. The percentages passing the various sieves shall be corrected when aggregates of varying specific gravities are used, as indicated in the Asphalt Institute MS-2 Mix Design Manual, 7th Edition.

The aggregate gradation shall be specified by the Engineer from the gradations shown in this note. The gradation shall be inserted into Table 2. Asterisks denote insert points.

Where locally-available aggregates cannot be economically blended to meet the grading requirements of the gradations shown, the gradations may be modified to fit the characteristics of such local aggregates with approval of the FAA. The modified gradation must produce a paving mixture that satisfies the mix design requirements.

Table 2. Aggregate - Asphalt Pavements

Sieve Size	Percentage by Weight Passing Sieves		
	Gradation 1	Gradation 2	Gradation 3 ¹
1 inch (25.0 mm)	100	--	--
3/4 inch (19.0 mm)	90-100	100	--
1/2 inch (12.5 mm)	68-88	90-100	100
3/8 inch (9.5 mm)	60-82	72-88	90-100
No. 4 (4.75 mm)	45-67	53-73	58-78
No. 8 (2.36 mm)	32-54	38-60	40-60
No. 16 (1.18 mm)	22-44	26-48	28-48
No. 30 (600 µm)	15-35	18-38	18-38
No. 50 (300 µm)	9-25	11-27	11-27
No. 100 (150 µm)	6-18	6-18	6-18
No. 200 (75 µm)	3-6	3-6	3-6
Voids in Mineral Aggregate (VMA)	14	15	16
Asphalt percent by total weight of mixture:			
Stone or gravel	4.5-7.0	5.0-7.5	5.5-8.0
Slag	5.0-7.5	6.5-9.5	7.0-10.5
Recommended Minimum Construction Lift Thickness	3 inch	2 inch	1 1/2 inch

¹Gradation 3 is intended for leveling courses. FAA approval is required for use in other locations.

403-3.4 Reclaimed Asphalt Pavement (RAP). [Reclaimed asphalt pavement shall consist of reclaimed asphalt pavement (RAP), coarse aggregate, fine aggregate, mineral filler, and asphalt. Recycled asphalt shingles (RAS) shall not be allowed. The RAP shall be of a consistent gradation and asphalt content and properties. When RAP is fed into the plant, the maximum RAP chunk size shall not exceed 1-1/2 inches (38 mm). The reclaimed asphalt mix shall be designed using procedures contained in the Asphalt Institute MS-2 Mix Design Manual, 7th Edition. The percentage of asphalt in the RAP shall be established for the mixture design according to ASTM D2172 using the appropriate dust correction procedure. The JMF shall meet the requirements of paragraph 403-3.3. RAP should only be used for shoulder surface course mixes and for any intermediate courses. The use of RAP containing Coal Tar shall not be allowed. Coal Tar surface treatments must be removed prior to recycling underlying asphalt material. The amount of RAP shall be limited to [] percent.

In addition to the requirements of paragraph 403-3.3, the JMF shall indicate the percent of reclaimed asphalt pavement and the percent and grade of new asphalt binder.

For the PG graded asphalt binder selected in paragraph 403-2.3, adjust as follows:

a. For 0-20% RAP, there is no change in virgin asphalt binder content.

b. For >20 to 30% RAP, select asphalt binder one grade softer, i.e., PG 64-22 would soften to PG 58-28.]

[RAP shall not be used.]

Engineer will determine if RAP is/is not allowed and make appropriate selection.

RAP should not be used for surface mixes, except on shoulders. It can be used very effectively in lower layers or for shoulders. Engineer to specify the maximum percentage of reclaimed asphalt allowed in the mix. The amount of RAP shall be limited to 30%, as long as the resulting reclaimed mix meets all requirements that are specified for virgin mixtures. The Contractor may obtain the RAP from the job site or an existing source.

403-3.5 Control strip. [A control strip is not required.][Full production shall not begin until an acceptable control strip has been constructed and accepted in writing by the RPR. The Contractor shall prepare and place a quantity of asphalt according to the JMF. The underlying grade or pavement structure upon which the control strip is to be constructed shall be the same as the remainder of the course represented by the control strip.

The Contractor will not be allowed to place the control strip until the Contractor quality control program (CQCP), showing conformance with the requirements of paragraph 403-5.1, has been accepted, in writing, by the RPR.

The control strip will consist of at least 250 tons (227 metric tons) or 1/2 subplot, whichever is greater. The control strip shall be placed in two lanes of the same width and depth to be used in production with a longitudinal cold joint. The cold joint must be cut back in accordance with paragraph 403-4.13 using the same procedure that will be used during production. The cold joint for the control strip will be an exposed construction joint at least four (4) hours old or when the mat has cooled to less than 160°F (71°C). The equipment used in construction of the control strip shall be the same type, configuration and weight to be used on the project.

The control strip shall be evaluated for acceptance as a single lot in accordance with the acceptance criteria in paragraph 403-6.1 and 403-6.2.

The control strip will be considered acceptable by the RPR if the gradation, asphalt content, and VMA are within the action limits specified in paragraph 403-5.5a; and Mat density greater than or equal to 94%, air voids 3.5% +/- 1%, and joint density greater than or equal to 92%.

If the control strip is unacceptable, necessary adjustments to the JMF, plant operation, placing procedures, and/or rolling procedures shall be made and another control strip shall be placed. Unacceptable control strips shall be removed at the Contractor's expense.

The control strip will be considered one lot for payment based upon the average of a minimum of 3 samples (no sublots required for control strip). Payment will only be made for an acceptable control strip in accordance with paragraph 403-8.1.]

For small projects, less than 3,000 tons (2722 metric tons), a control strip is not required.

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

403-4.1 Weather limitations. The asphalt shall not be placed upon a wet surface or when the surface temperature of the underlying course is less than specified in Table 4. The temperature requirements may be waived by the RPR, if requested; however, all other requirements including compaction shall be met.

Table 4. Surface Temperature Limitations of Underlying Course

Mat Thickness	Base Temperature (Minimum)	
	Degrees F	Degrees C
3 inches (7.5 cm) or greater	40	4
Greater than 2 inches (50 mm) but less than 3 inches (7.5 cm)	45	7

403-4.2 Asphalt plant. Plants used for the preparation of asphalt shall conform to the requirements of American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO) M156 including the following items:

a. Inspection of plant. The RPR, or RPR's authorized representative, shall have access, at all times, to all areas of the plant for checking adequacy of equipment; inspecting operation of the plant: verifying weights, proportions, and material properties; and checking the temperatures maintained in the preparation of the mixtures.

b. Storage bins and surge bins. The asphalt mixture stored in storage and/or surge bins shall meet the same requirements as asphalt mixture loaded directly into trucks. Asphalt mixture shall not be stored in storage and/or surge bins for a period greater than twelve (12) hours. If the RPR determines there is an excessive heat loss, segregation or oxidation of the asphalt mixture due to temporary storage, temporary storage shall not be allowed.

403-4.3 Aggregate stockpile management. Aggregate stockpiles shall be constructed in such a manner that prevents segregation and intermixing of deleterious materials. Aggregates from different sources shall be stockpiled, weighed and batched separately at the concrete batch plant. Aggregates that have become segregated or mixed with earth or foreign material shall not be used.

A continuous supply of materials shall be provided to the work to ensure continuous placement.

403-4.4 Hauling equipment. Trucks used for hauling asphalt shall have tight, clean, and smooth metal beds. To prevent the asphalt from sticking to the truck beds, the truck beds shall be lightly coated with a minimum amount of paraffin oil, lime solution, or other material approved by the RPR. Petroleum products shall not be used for coating truck beds. Each truck shall have a suitable cover to protect the mixture from adverse weather. When necessary, to ensure that the mixture will be delivered to the site at the specified temperature, truck beds shall be insulated or heated and covers shall be securely fastened.

403-4.4.1 Material transfer vehicle (MTV). [A material transfer vehicle is not required.] [Material transfer Vehicles shall be required due to the improvement in smoothness and decrease in both physical and thermal segregation. To transfer the material from the hauling equipment to the paver, use a self-propelled, material transfer vehicle with a swing conveyor that can deliver material to the paver without making contact with the paver. The MTV shall be able to move back and forth between the hauling equipment and the paver providing material transfer to the paver, while allowing the paver to operate at a constant speed. The Material Transfer Vehicle will have remixing and storage capability to prevent physical and thermal segregation.]

An MTV is required for runway and taxiway construction on pavements designed for aircraft weighing 100,000 lbs (45360 kg) or more. The MTV is recommended for all pavements where the weight of the MTV will not damage the pavement structure. The use of an MTV is optional for shoulder construction.

403-4.5 Asphalt pavers. Asphalt pavers shall be self-propelled with an activated heated screed, capable of spreading and finishing courses of asphalt that will meet the specified thickness, smoothness, and grade. The paver shall have sufficient power to propel itself and the hauling equipment without adversely affecting the finished surface. The asphalt paver shall be equipped with a control system capable of automatically maintaining the specified screed grade and elevation.

If the spreading and finishing equipment in use leaves tracks or indented areas, or produces other blemishes in the pavement that are not satisfactorily corrected by the scheduled operations, the use of such equipment shall be discontinued.

The paver shall be capable of paving to a minimum width specified in paragraph 401-4.11.

403-4.6 Rollers. The number, type, and weight of rollers shall be sufficient to compact the asphalt to the required density while it is still in a workable condition without crushing of the aggregate, depressions or other damage to the pavement surface. Rollers shall be in good condition, capable of operating at slow speeds to avoid displacement of the asphalt. All rollers shall be specifically designed and suitable for compacting asphalt concrete and shall be properly used. Rollers that impair the stability of any layer of a pavement structure or underlying soils shall not be used.

403-4.6.1 Density device. The Contractor shall have on site a density gauge during all paving operations in order to assist in the determination of the optimum rolling pattern, type of roller and frequencies, as well as to monitor the effect of the rolling operations during production paving. The Contractor shall also supply a qualified technician during all paving operations to calibrate the density gauge and obtain accurate density readings for all new asphalt. These densities shall be supplied to the RPR upon request at any time during construction. No separate payment will be made for supplying the density gauge and technician.

403-4.7 Preparation of asphalt binder. The asphalt binder shall be heated in a manner that will avoid local overheating and provide a continuous supply of the asphalt material to the mixer at a uniform temperature. The temperature of the unmodified asphalt binder delivered to the mixer shall be sufficient to provide a suitable viscosity for adequate coating of the aggregate particles, but shall not exceed 325°F (160°C) when added to the aggregate. The temperature of modified asphalt binder shall be no more than 350°F (175°C) when added to the aggregate.

403-4.8 Preparation of mineral aggregate. The aggregate for the asphalt shall be heated and dried. The maximum temperature and rate of heating shall be such that no damage occurs to the aggregates. The temperature of the aggregate and mineral filler shall not exceed 350°F (175°C) when the asphalt binder is added. Particular care shall be taken that aggregates high in calcium or magnesium content are not damaged by overheating. The temperature shall not be lower than is required to obtain complete coating and uniform distribution on the aggregate particles and to provide a mixture of satisfactory workability.

403-4.9 Preparation of asphalt mixture. The aggregates and the asphalt binder shall be weighed or metered and introduced into the mixer in the amount specified by the JMF. The combined materials shall be mixed until the aggregate obtains a uniform coating of asphalt binder and is thoroughly distributed throughout the mixture. Wet mixing time shall be the shortest time that will produce a satisfactory mixture, but not less than 25 seconds for batch plants. The wet mixing time for all plants shall be established by the Contractor, based on the procedure for determining the percentage of coated particles described in ASTM D2489, for each individual plant and for each type of aggregate used. The wet mixing time will be set to achieve 95% of coated particles. For continuous mix plants, the minimum mixing time shall be determined by dividing the weight of its contents at operating level by the weight of the mixture delivered per second by the mixer. The moisture content of all asphalt upon discharge shall not exceed 0.5%.

For batch plants, wet mixing time begins with the introduction of asphalt binder into the mixer and ends with the opening of the mixer discharge gate. Mixing time should be the shortest time required to obtain uniform distribution of aggregate sizes and thorough coating of aggregate particles with asphalt binder.

403-4.10 Application of Prime and Tack Coat. Immediately before placing the asphalt mixture, the underlying course shall be cleaned of all dust and debris.

[A prime coat in accordance with Item P-602 shall be applied to aggregate base prior to placing the asphalt mixture.]

A tack coat shall be applied in accordance with Item P-603 to all vertical and horizontal asphalt and concrete surfaces prior to placement of the first and each subsequent lift of asphalt mixture.

403-4.11 Laydown plan, transporting, placing, and finishing. Prior to the placement of the asphalt, the Contractor shall prepare a laydown plan with the sequence of paving lanes and width to minimize the number of cold joints; the location of any temporary ramps; laydown temperature; and estimated time of

completion for each portion of the work (milling, paving, rolling, cooling, etc.). The laydown plan and any modifications shall be approved by the RPR.

Deliveries shall be scheduled so that placing and compacting of asphalt is uniform with minimum stopping and starting of the paver. Hauling over freshly placed material shall not be permitted until the material has been compacted, as specified, and allowed to cool to approximately ambient temperature. The Contractor, at their expense, shall be responsible for repair of any damage to the pavement caused by hauling operations.

Contractor shall survey each lift of asphalt surface course and certify to RPR that every lot of each lift meets the grade tolerances of paragraph 401-6.2e before the next lift can be placed.

Edges of existing asphalt pavement abutting the new work shall be saw cut and the cut off material and laitance removed. Apply a tack coat in accordance with P-603 before new asphalt material is placed against it.

The speed of the paver shall be regulated to eliminate pulling and tearing of the asphalt mat. Placement of the asphalt mix shall begin along the centerline of a crowned section or on the high side of areas with a one way slope unless shown otherwise on the laydown plan as accepted by the RPR. The asphalt mix shall be placed in consecutive adjacent lanes having a minimum width of [] feet (m) except where edge lanes require less width to complete the area. Additional screed sections attached to widen the paver to meet the minimum lane width requirements must include additional auger sections to move the asphalt mixture uniformly along the screed extension. []

The Engineer should specify the widest paving lane practicable in an effort to hold the number of longitudinal joints to a minimum. Additional job specific construction limitations may be added as necessary covering such items as echelon paving, hot joint construction, etc.

The longitudinal joint in one course shall offset the longitudinal joint in the course immediately below by at least 1 foot (30 cm); however, the joint in the surface top course shall be at the centerline of crowned pavements. Transverse joints in one course shall be offset by at least 10 feet (3 m) from transverse joints in the previous course. Transverse joints in adjacent lanes shall be offset a minimum of 10 feet (3 m). On areas where irregularities or unavoidable obstacles make the use of mechanical spreading and finishing equipment impractical, the asphalt may be spread and luted by hand tools.

The RPR may at any time, reject any batch of asphalt, on the truck or placed in the mat, which is rendered unfit for use due to contamination, segregation, incomplete coating of aggregate, or overheated asphalt mixture. Such rejection may be based on only visual inspection or temperature measurements. In the event of such rejection, the Contractor may take a representative sample of the rejected material in the presence of the RPR, and if it can be demonstrated in the laboratory, in the presence of the RPR, that such material was erroneously rejected, payment will be made for the material at the contract unit price.

Areas of segregation in the surface course, as determined by the RPR, shall be removed and replaced at the Contractor's expense. The area shall be removed by saw cutting and milling a minimum of the construction lift thickness as specified in paragraph 401-3.3, Table 2 for the approved mix design. The area to be removed and replaced shall be a minimum width of the paver and a minimum of 10 feet (3 m) long.

403-4.12 Compaction of asphalt mixture. After placing, the asphalt mixture shall be thoroughly and uniformly compacted by self-propelled rollers. The surface shall be compacted as soon as possible when the asphalt has attained sufficient stability so that the rolling does not cause undue displacement, cracking

or shoving. The sequence of rolling operations and the type of rollers used shall be at the discretion of the Contractor. The speed of the roller shall, at all times, be sufficiently slow to avoid displacement of the hot mixture and be effective in compaction. Any surface defects and/or displacement occurring as a result of the roller, or from any other cause, shall be corrected at the Contractor's expense.

Sufficient rollers shall be furnished to handle the output of the plant. Rolling shall continue until the surface is of uniform texture, true to grade and cross-section, and the required field density is obtained. To prevent adhesion of the asphalt to the roller, the wheels shall be equipped with a scraper and kept moistened with water as necessary.

In areas not accessible to the roller, the mixture shall be thoroughly compacted with approved power tampers.

Any asphalt that becomes loose and broken, mixed with dirt, contains check-cracking, or in any way defective shall be removed and replaced with fresh hot mixture and immediately compacted to conform to the surrounding area. This work shall be done at the Contractor's expense. Skin patching shall not be allowed.

403-4.13 Joints. The formation of all joints shall be made in such a manner as to ensure a continuous bond between the courses and obtain the required density. All joints shall have the same texture as other sections of the course and meet the requirements for smoothness and grade.

The roller shall not pass over the unprotected end of the freshly laid asphalt except when necessary to form a transverse joint. When necessary to form a transverse joint, it shall be made by means of placing a bulkhead or by tapering the course. The tapered edge shall be cut back to its full depth and width on a straight line to expose a vertical face prior to placing the adjacent lane. In both methods, all contact surfaces shall be coated with an asphalt tack coat before placing any fresh asphalt against the joint.

Longitudinal joints which have been left exposed for more than four (4) hours; the surface temperature has cooled to less than 175°F (80°C); or are irregular, damaged, uncompacted or otherwise defective shall be cut back with a cutting wheel or pavement saw a maximum of 3 inches (75 mm) to expose a clean, sound, uniform vertical surface for the full depth of the course. All cutback material and any laitance produced from cutting joints shall be removed from the project. An asphalt tack coat or other product approved by the RPR shall be applied to the clean, dry joint prior to placing any additional fresh asphalt against the joint. The cost of this work shall be considered incidental to the cost of the asphalt.

Cut back of all cold joints is required as specified above.

The Contractor may provide additional joint density QC by use of joint heaters at the Contractor's expense. Electrically powered infrared heating equipment should consist of one or more low-level radiant energy heaters to uniformly heat and soften the pavement joints. The heaters should be configured to uniformly heat an area up to 18 inches (0.5 m) in width and 3 inches (75 mm) in depth. Infrared equipment shall be thermostatically controlled to provide a uniform, consistent temperature increase throughout the layer being heated up to a maximum temperature range of 200°F to 300°F (93°C to 150°C).

Propane powered infrared heating equipment shall be attached to the paving machine and the output of infrared energy shall be in the one to six-micron range. Converters shall be arranged end to end directly over the joint to be heated in sufficient numbers to continuously produce, when in operation, a minimum of 240,000 BTU per hour. The joint heater shall be positioned not more than one inch (25 mm) above the pavement to be heated and in front of the paver screed and shall be fully adjustable. Heaters will be required to be in operation at all times.

The heaters shall be operated so they do not produce excessive heat when the units pass over new or previously paved material.

403-4.14 Saw-cut grooving. [Saw-cut grooving is not required.] [Saw-cut grooves shall be provided as specified in Item P-621.]

403-4.15 Diamond grinding. Diamond grinding shall be completed prior to pavement grooving. Diamond grinding shall be accomplished by sawing with saw blades impregnated with industrial diamond abrasive.

Diamond grinding shall be performed with a machine designed specifically for diamond grinding capable of cutting a path at least 3 feet (0.9 m) wide. The saw blades shall be 1/8-inch (3-mm) wide with a minimum of 55 to 60 blades per 12 inches (300 mm) of cutting head width; grooves between 0.090 and 0.130 inches (2 and 3.5 mm) wide; and peaks and ridges approximately 1/32 inch (1 mm) higher than the bottom of the grinding cut. The actual number of blades will be determined by the Contractor and depend on the hardness of the aggregate. Equipment or grinding procedures that causes ravels, aggregate fractures, spalls or disturbance to the pavement will not be permitted.

Grinding will be tapered in all directions to provide smooth transitions to areas not requiring grinding. The slurry resulting from the grinding operation shall be continuously removed and the pavement left in a clean condition. The Contractor shall apply a surface treatment per P-608 to all areas that have been subject to grinding.

403-4.16 Nighttime Paving Requirements. The Contractor shall provide adequate lighting during any nighttime construction. A lighting plan shall be submitted by the Contractor and approved by the RPR prior to the start of any nighttime work. All work shall be in accordance with the approved CSPP and lighting plan.

CONTRACTOR QUALITY CONTROL (CQC)

All federally funded projects over \$500K dollars where paving is the major work item must have a CQCP. It is strongly encouraged that a Contractor Quality Control Program (CQCP) be developed for all projects.

For projects that do not include a formal CQCP, this section can be edited to remove reference to a CQCP. However, QC testing is still required regardless of project size.

403-5.1 General. [The Contractor shall develop a CQCP in accordance with Item C-100. No partial payment will be made for materials that are subject to specific QC requirements without an approved CQCP.]

403-5.2 Contractor quality control (QC) facilities. [The Contractor shall provide or contract for testing facilities in accordance with Item C-100. The RPR shall be permitted unrestricted access to inspect the Contractor's QC facilities and witness QC activities. The RPR will advise the Contractor in writing of any noted deficiencies concerning the QC facility, equipment, supplies, or testing personnel and procedures.

When the deficiencies are serious enough to be adversely affecting the test results, the incorporation of the materials into the work shall be suspended immediately and will not be permitted to resume until the deficiencies are satisfactorily corrected.]

403-5.3 Quality Control (QC) testing. The Contractor shall perform all QC tests necessary to control the production and construction processes applicable to these specifications [and as set forth in the approved CQCP. The testing program shall include, but not necessarily be limited to, tests for the control of asphalt content, aggregate gradation, temperatures, aggregate moisture, field compaction, and surface smoothness. A QC Testing Plan shall be developed as part of the CQCP].

a. Asphalt content. A minimum of two tests shall be performed per day in accordance with ASTM D6307 or ASTM D2172 for determination of asphalt content. When using ASTM D6307, the correction factor shall be determined as part of the first test performed at the beginning of plant production; and as part of every tenth test performed thereafter. The asphalt content for the day will be determined by averaging the test results.

b. Gradation. Aggregate gradations shall be determined a minimum of twice per lot from mechanical analysis of extracted aggregate in accordance with ASTM D5444 and ASTM C136, and ASTM C117.

c. Moisture content of aggregate. The moisture content of aggregate used for production shall be determined a minimum of once per lot in accordance with ASTM C566.

d. Moisture content of asphalt. The moisture content of the asphalt shall be determined once per lot in accordance with AASHTO T329 or ASTM D1461.

ASTM D1461 may be replaced with AASHTO T329 when moisture content will be determined by conventional oven or microwave.

e. Temperatures. Temperatures shall be checked, at least four times per lot, at necessary locations to determine the temperatures of the dryer, the asphalt binder in the storage tank, the asphalt at the plant, and the asphalt at the job site.

f. In-place density monitoring. The Contractor shall conduct any necessary testing to ensure that the specified density is being achieved. A nuclear gauge may be used to monitor the pavement density in accordance with ASTM D2950.

g. Smoothness for Contractor Quality Control.

Note change in deviations on final surface course that require grinding, limited to deviations > 1/4 inch that trap water, intent here is to focus on areas that may cause issues with the safe operation of aircraft and to minimize grinding if it will not improve safety.

The Contractor shall perform smoothness testing in transverse and longitudinal directions daily to verify that the construction processes are producing pavement with variances less than ¼ inch in 12 feet, identifying areas that may pond water which could lead to hydroplaning of aircraft. If the smoothness

criteria is not met, appropriate changes and corrections to the construction process shall be made by the Contractor before construction continues

The Contractor may use a 12-foot (3.7 m) “straightedge, a rolling inclinometer meeting the requirements of ASTM E2133 or rolling external reference device that can simulate a 12-foot (3.7m) straightedge approved by the RPR. Straight-edge testing shall start with one-half the length of the straightedge at the edge of pavement section being tested and then moved ahead one-half the length of the straightedge for each successive measurement. Testing shall be continuous across all joints. The surface irregularity shall be determined by placing the freestanding (unleveled) straightedge on the pavement surface and allowing it to rest upon the two highest spots covered by its length, and measuring the maximum gap between the straightedge and the pavement surface in the area between the two high points. If the rolling inclinometer or external reference device is used, the data may be evaluated using the FAA profile program, ProFAA, using the 12-foot straightedge simulation function.

Smoothness readings shall not be made across grade changes or cross slope transitions. The transition between new and existing pavement and between the start and stop of lanes place shall be evaluated separately for conformance with the plans.

Include detail for transition between new and existing pavement including smoothness and grade limitations.

(1) Transverse measurements. Transverse measurements shall be taken for each day’s production placed. Transverse measurements will be taken perpendicular to the pavement centerline each 50 feet (15 m) or more often as determined by the RPR. The joint between lanes shall be tested separately to facilitate smoothness between lanes.

(2) Longitudinal measurements. Longitudinal measurements shall be taken for each day’s production placed. Longitudinal tests will be parallel to the centerline of paving; at the center of paving lanes when widths of paving lanes are less than 20 feet (6 m); and at the third points of paving lanes when widths of paving lanes are 20 ft (6 m) or greater. When placement abuts previously placed material the first measurement shall start with one half the length of the straight edge on the previously placed material.

Deviations on the final surface course in either the transverse or longitudinal direction that will trap water greater than 1/4 inch (6 mm) shall be corrected with diamond grinding per paragraph 403-4.15 or by removing and replacing the surface course to full depth. Grinding shall be tapered in all directions to provide smooth transitions to areas not requiring grinding. All areas in which diamond grinding has been performed shall be subject to the final pavement thickness tolerances specified in paragraph 401-6.1d(3). Areas that have been ground shall be sealed with a surface treatment in accordance with Item P-608. To avoid the surface treatment creating any conflict with runway or taxiway markings, it may be necessary to seal a larger area.

Control charts shall be kept to show area of each day’s placement and the percentage of corrective grinding required. Corrections to production and placement shall be initiated when corrective grinding is required. If the Contractor’s machines and/or methods produce significant areas that need corrective actions in excess of 10 percent of a day’s production, production shall be stopped until corrective measures are implemented by the Contractor.

h. Grade. Grade shall be evaluated daily to allow adjustments to paving operations when grade measurements do not meet specifications. As a minimum, grade shall be evaluated prior to the placement of the first lift and then prior to and after placement of the surface lift.

Measurements will be taken at appropriate gradelines (as a minimum at center and edges of paving lane) and longitudinal spacing as shown on cross-sections and plans. The final surface of the pavement will not vary from the gradeline elevations and cross-sections shown on the plans by more than 1/2 inch (12 mm) vertically [and 0.1 feet (30 mm) laterally]. The documentation will be provided by the Contractor to the RPR [within 24 hours] [by the end of the following working day].

Areas with humps or depressions that exceed grade or smoothness criteria and that retain water on the surface must be ground off provided the course thickness after grinding is not more than 1/2 inch (12 mm) less than the thickness specified on the plans. Grinding shall be in accordance with paragraph 403-4.15.

The Contractor shall repair low areas or areas that cannot be corrected by grinding by removal of deficient areas to the depth of the final course plus 1/2 inch and replacing with new material. Skin patching is not allowed.

403-5.4 Sampling. When directed by the RPR, the Contractor shall sample and test any material that appears inconsistent with similar material being sampled, unless such material is voluntarily removed and replaced or deficiencies corrected by the Contractor. All sampling shall be in accordance with standard procedures specified.

403-5.5 Control charts. The Contractor shall maintain linear control charts both for individual measurements and range (i.e., difference between highest and lowest measurements) for aggregate gradation, asphalt content, and VMA. The VMA for each day shall be calculated and monitored by the QC laboratory.

Control charts shall be posted in a location satisfactory to the RPR and kept current. As a minimum, the control charts shall identify the project number, the contract item number, the test number, each test parameter, the Action and Suspension Limits applicable to each test parameter, and the Contractor's test results. The Contractor shall use the control charts as part of a process control system for identifying potential problems and assignable causes before they occur. If the Contractor's projected data during production indicates a problem and the Contractor is not taking satisfactory corrective action, the RPR may suspend production or acceptance of the material.

a. Individual measurements. Control charts for individual measurements shall be established to maintain process control within tolerance for aggregate gradation, asphalt content, and VMA. The control charts shall use the JMF target values as indicators of central tendency for the following test parameters with associated Action and Suspension Limits:

Control Chart Limits for Individual Measurements

Sieve	Action Limit	Suspension Limit
3/4 inch (19.0 mm)	±6%	±9%
1/2 inch (12.5 mm)	±6%	±9%
3/8 inch (9.5 mm)	±6%	±9%
No. 4 (4.75 mm)	±6%	±9%
No. 16 (1.18 mm)	±5%	±7.5%
No. 50 (300 µm)	±3%	±4.5%
No. 200 (75 µm)	±2%	±3%
Asphalt Content	±0.45%	±0.70%
Minimum VMA	-0.5%	-1.0%

b. Range. Control charts for range shall be established to control process variability for the test parameters and Suspension Limits listed below. The range shall be computed for each lot as the difference between the two test results for each control parameter. The Suspension Limits specified below are based on a sample size of $n = 2$. Should the Contractor elect to perform more than two tests per lot, the Suspension Limits shall be adjusted by multiplying the Suspension Limit by 1.18 for $n = 3$ and by 1.27 for $n = 4$.

Control Chart Limits Based on Range
($n = 2$)

Sieve	Suspension Limit
1/2 inch (12.5 mm)	11%
3/8 inch (9.5 mm)	11%
No. 4 (4.75 mm)	11%
No. 16 (1.18 mm)	9%
No. 50 (300 μ m)	6%
No. 200 (75 μ m)	3.5%
Asphalt Content	0.8%

c. Corrective action. [The CQCP shall indicate that appropriate action shall be taken when the process is believed to be out of tolerance. The Plan shall contain sets of rules to gauge when a process is out of control and detail what action will be taken to bring the process into control. As a minimum, a process shall be deemed out of control and production stopped and corrective action taken, if:

(1) One point falls outside the Suspension Limit line for individual measurements or range; or

(2) Two points in a row fall outside the Action Limit line for individual measurements.]

403-5.6 Quality control (QC) reports. The Contractor shall maintain records and shall submit reports of QC activities daily [, in accordance with the CQCP described in Item C-100].

MATERIAL ACCEPTANCE

403-6.1. Quality Assurance Acceptance sampling and testing. Unless otherwise specified, all acceptance sampling and testing necessary to determine conformance with the requirements specified in this section will be performed by the RPR at no cost to the Contractor except that coring as required in this section shall be completed and paid for by the Contractor.

a. Quality Assurance (QA) testing laboratory. The QA testing laboratory performing these acceptance tests will be accredited in accordance with ASTM D3666. The QA laboratory accreditation will be current and listed on the accrediting authority's website. All test methods required for acceptance sampling and testing will be listed on the lab accreditation.

b. Lot Size. A standard lot will be equal to one day's production divided into approximately equal sublots of between 400 to 600 tons. When only one or two sublots are produced in a day's production, the sublots will be combined with the production lot from the previous or next day.

Where more than one plant is simultaneously producing asphalt for the job, the lot sizes will apply separately for each plant.

For large projects with high production rates, the Engineer may adjust the lot size to be ½ days production.

For small projects, with multiple small placements or if the total project size is less than 3000 tons (2270 metric tons), acceptable material will be paid for by the ton (metric ton) placed per day.

c. Asphalt air voids. Plant-produced asphalt will be tested for air voids on a subplot basis.

(1) Sampling. Material from each subplot shall be sampled in accordance with ASTM D3665. Samples shall be taken from material deposited into trucks at the plant or at the job site in accordance with ASTM D979. The sample of asphalt may be put in a covered metal tin and placed in an oven for [not less than 30 minutes nor more than 60 minutes] to maintain the material at or above the compaction temperature as specified in the JMF.

Engineer should increase hold times to not less than 60 minutes and not more than 90 minutes when absorptive aggregates are used.

(2) Testing. Air voids will be determined for each subplot in accordance with ASTM D3203 for a set of three compacted specimens prepared in accordance with [ASTM D6926][ASTM D6925].

d. In-place asphalt mat and joint density. Each subplot will be tested for in-place mat and joint density as a percentage of the theoretical maximum density (TMD).

(1) Sampling. The [Contractor][RPR] will cut minimum 5 inches (125 mm) diameter samples in accordance with ASTM D5361. The Contractor shall furnish all tools, labor, and materials for cleaning, and filling the cored pavement. Laitance produced by the coring operation shall be removed immediately after coring, and core holes shall be filled within one day after sampling in a manner acceptable to the RPR.

(2) Bond. Each lift of asphalt shall be bonded to the underlying layer. If cores reveal that the surface is not bonded, additional cores shall be taken as directed by the RPR to determine the extent of unbonded areas. Unbonded areas shall be removed by milling and replaced at no additional cost as directed by the RPR.

(3) Thickness. Thickness of each lift of surface course will be evaluated by the RPR for compliance to the requirements shown on the plans after any necessary corrections for grade. Measurements of thickness will be made using the cores extracted for each subplot for density measurement. The maximum allowable deficiency at any point will not be more than 1/4 inch (6 mm) less than the thickness indicated for the lift. Average thickness of lift, or combined lifts, will not be less than the indicated thickness. Where the thickness tolerances are not met, the lot or subplot shall be corrected by the Contractor at his expense by removing the deficient area and replacing with new pavement. The Contractor, at his expense, may take additional cores as approved by the RPR to circumscribe the deficient area.

(4) Mat density. One core shall be taken from each subplot. Core locations will be determined by the RPR in accordance with ASTM D3665. Cores for mat density shall not be taken closer than one foot (30 cm) from a transverse or longitudinal joint. The bulk specific gravity of each cored sample will be determined in accordance with ASTM D2726. The percent compaction (density) of each sample will be determined by dividing the bulk specific gravity of each subplot sample by the TMD for that subplot.

(5) Joint density. One core centered over the longitudinal joint shall be taken for each subplot which contains a longitudinal joint. Core locations will be determined by the RPR in accordance with ASTM D3665. The bulk specific gravity of each core sample will be determined in accordance with ASTM D2726. The percent compaction (density) of each sample will be determined by dividing the bulk specific gravity of each joint density sample by the average TMD for the lot. The TMD used to determine the joint density at joints formed between lots will be the lower of the average TMD values from the adjacent lots.

403-6.2 Acceptance criteria.

a. General. Acceptance will be based on the implementation of the Contractor Quality Control Program (CQCP) and the following characteristics of the asphalt and completed pavements: air voids, mat density, joint density, grade [and Profilograph smoothness]

Only include profilograph smoothness for runway and/or taxiway pavement projects greater than 500 feet (150 m) in length.

b. Air voids. Acceptance of each lot of plant produced material for air voids will be based upon the average air void from the sublots. If the average air voids of the lot are equal to or greater than 2% and equal to or less than 5%, then the lot will be acceptable. If the average is below 2% or greater than 5%, the lot shall be removed and replaced at the Contractor's expense.

c. Mat density. Acceptance of each lot of plant produced material for mat density will be based on the average of all of the densities taken from the sublots. If the average mat density of the lot so established equals or exceeds 94%, the lot will be acceptable. If the average mat density of the lot is below 94%, the lot shall be removed and replaced at the Contractor's expense.

d. Joint density. Acceptance of each lot of plant produced asphalt for joint density will be based on the average of all of the joint densities taken from the sublots. If the average joint density of the lot so established equals or exceeds 92%, the lot will be acceptable. If the average joint density of the lot is less than 92%, the Contractor shall stop production and evaluate the method of compacting joints. Production may resume once the reason for poor compaction has been determined and appropriate measures have been taken to ensure proper compaction.

e. Grade. The final finished surface of the pavement of the completed project shall be surveyed to verify that the grade elevations and cross-sections shown on the plans do not deviate more than 1/2 inch (12 mm) vertically [or 0.1 feet (30 mm) laterally].

Cross-sections of the pavement shall be taken at a minimum [50-foot (15-m)] longitudinal spacing and at all longitudinal grade breaks. Minimum cross-section grade points shall include grade at centerline, [± 10 feet of centerline], and edge of [runway][taxiway] pavement.

The survey and documentation shall be stamped and signed by a licensed surveyor. Payment for sublots that do not meet grade for over 25% of the subplot shall not be more than 95%.

[f. Profilograph roughness for QA Acceptance. The final profilograph shall be the full length of the project to facilitate testing of roughness between lots. The [Contractor, in the presence of the RPR shall] [RPR will] perform a profilograph roughness test on the completed project with a profilograph meeting the requirements of ASTM E1274 or a Class I inertial profiler meeting ASTM E950. Data and results shall be provided within [48 hrs] of profilograph roughness tests.

The pavement shall have an average profile index less than 15 inches per mile per 1/10 mile. The equipment shall utilize electronic recording and automatic computerized reduction of data to indicate "must grind" bumps and the Profile Index for the pavement using a 0.2-inch (5 mm) blanking band. The bump template must span one inch (25 mm) with an offset of 0.4 inches (10 mm). The profilograph must be calibrated prior to use and operated by a factory or State DOT approved, trained operator. Profilograms shall be recorded on a longitudinal scale of one inch (25 mm) equals 25 feet (7.5 m) and a vertical scale of one inch (25 mm) equals one inch (25 mm). Profilograph shall be performed one foot right and left of project centerline and 15 feet (4.5 m) right and left of project centerline. Any areas that indicate "must grind" shall be corrected with diamond grinding per paragraph 401-4.15 or by removing and replacing full depth of surface course. as directed by the RPR. Where corrections are necessary, a second profilograph run shall be performed to verify that the corrections produced an average profile index of 15 inches per mile per 1/10 mile or less.]

Profilograph roughness and acceptance adjustment paragraphs only apply when the overall project is a new and/or reconstructed runway(s) and/or taxiway(s) greater than 500 feet (152 m) in length.

Profilograph roughness is not applicable to aprons and should be used with caution on projects to rehabilitate runways and/or taxiways unless the project includes provisions to correct existing deficiencies.

Any changes to the profilograph roughness acceptance limits requires a modification to standards in accordance with FAA Order 5300.1, Modifications to Agency Airport Design, Construction, and Equipment Standards.

The Engineer must select who will provide the specified equipment and the timeframe for receiving the test data. The Airport should retain a copy of the profilograph roughness test and reports for inclusion in the Airport's Pavement Maintenance Management Program (PMP).

403-6.3 Resampling Pavement for Mat Density.

a. General. Resampling of a lot of pavement will only be allowed for mat density and then, only if the Contractor requests same in writing, within 48 hours after receiving the written test results from the

RPR. A retest will consist of all the sampling and testing procedures contained in paragraphs 403-6.1. Only one resampling per lot will be permitted.

(1) A redefined mat density will be calculated for the resampled lot. The number of tests used to calculate the redefined mat density will include the initial tests made for that lot plus the retests.

(2) The cost for resampling and retesting shall be borne by the Contractor.

b. Payment for resampled lots. The redefined mat density for a resampled lot will be used to evaluate the acceptance of that lot in accordance with paragraph 403-6.2.

c. Outliers. Check for outliers in accordance with ASTM E178, at a significance level of 5%. Outliers will be discarded and density determined using the remaining test values.

[**403-6.4 Leveling course.** The leveling course is the first variable thickness lift placed to correct surface irregularities prior to placement of subsequent courses. The leveling course shall meet the aggregate gradation in Table 2, paragraph 403-3.3. The leveling course shall meet the requirements of paragraph 403-3.3, 403-6.1b for air voids, but shall not be subject to the density requirements of paragraph 403-6.1c. The leveling course shall be compacted with the same effort used to achieve density of the control strip. The leveling course shall not exceed the lift thickness associated with each gradation in Table 2, paragraph 403-3.3.]

Use this paragraph only when there is a need to restore proper cross-section prior to overlaying. Areas of the pavement requiring a leveling course shall be shown on the plans.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

403-7.1 Measurement. Plant mix asphalt mix pavement shall be measured by the number of tons (kg) of asphalt pavement used in the accepted work. Recorded batch weights or truck scale weights will be used to determine the basis for the tonnage.

BASIS OF PAYMENT

403-8.1 Payment. Payment for a lot of asphalt mixture meeting all acceptance criteria as specified in paragraph 403-6.2 shall be made at the contract unit price per ton (kg) for asphalt. The price shall be compensation for furnishing all materials, for all preparation, mixing, and placing of these materials, and for all labor, equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete the item.

Payment will be made under:

Item P-403-8.1 Asphalt Mixture [___] [Surface] [Base] [Binder]
 [Leveling] Course - per ton (kg)

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM International (ASTM)

ASTM C29	Standard Test Method for Bulk Density (“Unit Weight”) and Voids in Aggregate
ASTM C88	Standard Test Method for Soundness of Aggregates by Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate
ASTM C117	Standard Test Method for Materials Finer than 75- μ m (No. 200) Sieve in Mineral Aggregates by Washing
ASTM C127	Standard Test Method for Density, Relative Density (Specific Gravity), and Absorption of Coarse Aggregate
ASTM C131	Standard Test Method for Resistance to Degradation of Small-Size Coarse Aggregate by Abrasion and Impact in the Los Angeles Machine
ASTM C136	Standard Test Method for Sieve or Screen Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates
ASTM C142	Standard Test Method for Clay Lumps and Friable Particles in Aggregates
ASTM C183	Standard Practice for Sampling and the Amount of Testing of Hydraulic Cement
ASTM C566	Standard Test Method for Total Evaporable Moisture Content of Aggregate by Drying
ASTM D75	Standard Practice for Sampling Aggregates
ASTM D242	Standard Specification for Mineral Filler for Bituminous Paving Mixtures
ASTM D946	Standard Specification for Penetration-Graded Asphalt Cement for Use in Pavement Construction
ASTM D979	Standard Practice for Sampling Bituminous Paving Mixtures
ASTM D1073	Standard Specification for Fine Aggregate for Bituminous Paving Mixtures
ASTM D1074	Standard Test Method for Compressive Strength of Bituminous Mixtures
ASTM D1461	Standard Test Method for Moisture or Volatile Distillates in Bituminous Paving Mixtures
ASTM D2041	Standard Test Method for Theoretical Maximum Specific Gravity and Density of Bituminous Paving Mixtures
ASTM D2172	Standard Test Method for Quantitative Extraction of Bitumen from Bituminous Paving Mixtures
ASTM D2419	Standard Test Method for Sand Equivalent Value of Soils and Fine Aggregate

ASTM D2489	Standard Practice for Estimating Degree of Particle Coating of Bituminous-Aggregate Mixtures
ASTM D2726	Standard Test Method for Bulk Specific Gravity and Density of Non-Absorptive Compacted Bituminous Mixtures
ASTM D2950	Standard Test Method for Density of Bituminous Concrete in Place by Nuclear Methods
ASTM D3203	Standard Test Method for Percent Air Voids in Compacted Dense and Open Bituminous Paving Mixtures
ASTM D3381	Standard Specification for Viscosity-Graded Asphalt Cement for Use in Pavement Construction
ASTM D3665	Standard Practice for Random Sampling of Construction Materials
ASTM D3666	Standard Specification for Minimum Requirements for Agencies Testing and Inspecting Road and Paving Materials
ASTM D4125	Standard Test Methods for Asphalt Content of Bituminous mixtures by the Nuclear Method
ASTM D4318	Standard Test Methods for Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit, and Plasticity Index of Soils
ASTM D4552	Standard Practice for Classifying Hot-Mix Recycling Agents
ASTM D4791	Standard Test Method for Flat Particles, Elongated Particles, or Flat and Elongated Particles in Coarse Aggregate
ASTM D4867	Standard Test Method for Effect of Moisture on Asphalt Concrete Paving Mixtures
ASTM D5444	Standard Test Method for Mechanical Size Analysis of Extracted Aggregate
ASTM D5581	Standard Test Method for Resistance to Plastic Flow of Bituminous Mixtures Using Marshall Apparatus (6 inch-Diameter Specimen)
ASTM D5821	Standard Test Method for Determining the Percentage of Fractured Particles in Coarse Aggregate
ASTM D6307	Standard Test Method for Asphalt Content of Hot-Mix Asphalt by Ignition Method
ASTM D6373	Standard Specification for Performance Graded Asphalt Binder
ASTM D6752	Standard Test Method for Bulk Specific Gravity and Density of Compacted Bituminous Mixtures Using Automatic Vacuum Sealing Method
ASTM D6925	Standard Test Method for Preparation and Determination of the Relative Density of Hot Mix Asphalt (HMA) Specimens by Means of the SuperPave Gyratory Compactor
ASTM D6926	Standard Practice for Preparation of Bituminous Specimens Using Marshall Apparatus
ASTM D6927	Standard Test Method for Marshall Stability and Flow of Bituminous Mixtures

ASTM D6995	Standard Test Method for Determining Field VMA based on the Maximum Specific Gravity of the Mix (Gmm)
ASTM E11	Standard Specification for Woven Wire Test Sieve Cloth and Test Sieves
ASTM E178	Standard Practice for Dealing with Outlying Observations
ASTM E2133	Standard Test Method for Using a Rolling Inclinator to Measure Longitudinal and Transverse Profiles of a Traveled Surface
American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO)	
AASHTO M156	Standard Specification for Requirements for Mixing Plants for Hot-Mixed, Hot-Laid Bituminous Paving Mixtures
AASHTO T329	Standard Method of Test for Moisture Content of Hot Mix Asphalt (HMA) by Oven Method
AASHTO T 340	Standard Method of Test for Determining the Rutting Susceptibility of Hot Mix Asphalt (APA) Using the Asphalt Pavement Analyzer (APA)
Asphalt Institute (AI)	
MS-2	Mix Design Manual, 7th Edition
MS-26	Asphalt Binder Handbook AI State Binder Specification Database
FAA Orders	
5300.1	Modifications to Agency Airport Design, Construction, and Equipment Standards
Federal Highway Administration (FHWA)	
Long Term Pavement Performance Binder program	
Software	
FAARFIELD	

END OF ITEM P-403

Item P-404 Fuel-Resistant Asphalt Mix Pavement

Item P 404 is to be used only as a surface course for locations that need a fuel resistant surface.

P 404 is intentionally specified as a 50 blow Marshall mix due to the required low air voids and high asphalt content. The allowable lift thickness is between 1 ½ inches (37 mm) and 3 inches (75 mm).

DESCRIPTION

404-1.1 This item shall consist of surface courses composed of mineral aggregate, fuel-resistant asphalt binder, and additives mixed in a central mixing plant and placed as asphalt mix pavement in accordance with these specifications and shall conform to the lines, grades, thicknesses, and typical cross-sections shown on the plans. This mix is to be used only as a surface course. The purpose of this fuel-resistant asphalt is to provide a fuel-resistant surface where pavements are subjected to fuel spills. The course thickness shall be as shown on the plans.

MATERIALS

404-2.1 Aggregate. Aggregates shall consist of crushed stone, crushed gravel, crushed slag, screenings, and mineral filler, as required. The aggregate shall contain no natural sand. The aggregates should have no known history of detrimental pavement staining due to ferrous sulfides. Coarse aggregate is the material retained on the No. 4 (4.75 mm) sieve. Fine aggregate is the material passing the No. 4 (4.75 mm) sieve.

a. Coarse aggregate. Coarse aggregate shall consist of sound, tough, durable particles, free from films of matter that would prevent thorough coating and bonding with the asphalt material and free from organic matter and other deleterious substances. Coarse aggregate material requirements are given in the table below.

Coarse Aggregate Material Requirements

Material Test	Requirement	Standard
Resistance to Degradation	Loss: 40% maximum	ASTM C131
Soundness of Aggregates by Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate	Loss after 5 cycles: 10% maximum using Sodium sulfate - or - 13% maximum using magnesium sulfate	ASTM C88
Clay lumps and friable particles	0.3% maximum	ASTM C142
Percentage of Fractured Particles	Minimum 70% by weight of particles with at least two fractured faces and 85% with at least one fractured face ¹	ASTM D5821
Flat, Elongated, or Flat and Elongated Particles	8% maximum, by weight, of flat, elongated, or flat and elongated particles at 5:1 ²	ASTM D4791
Bulk density of slag ³	Weigh not less than 70 pounds per cubic foot (1.12 Mg/cubic meter)	ASTM C29

¹ The area of each face shall be equal to at least 75% of the smallest mid-sectional area of the piece. When two fractured faces are contiguous, the angle between the planes of fractures shall be at least 30 degrees to count as two fractured faces.

² A flat particle is one having a ratio of width to thickness greater than five (5); an elongated particle is one having a ratio of length to width greater than five (5).

³ Only required if slag is specified.

b. Fine aggregate. Fine aggregate shall consist of clean, sound, durable, angular shaped particles produced by crushing stone, slag, or gravel that meets the requirements for soundness specified for coarse aggregate. The aggregate particles shall be free from coatings of clay, silt, or other objectionable matter. Fine aggregate material requirements are listed in the table below.

Fine Aggregate Material Requirements¹

Material Test	Requirement	Standard
Liquid limit	25 maximum	ASTM D4318
Plasticity Index	4 maximum	ASTM D4318
Soundness of Aggregates by Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate	Loss after 5 cycles: 10% maximum using Sodium sulfate - or - 13% maximum using magnesium sulfate	ASTM C88
Clay lumps and friable particles	0.3% maximum	ASTM C142
Sand equivalent	35 minimum	ASTM D2419

¹Natural sand is not allowed.

c. Sampling. ASTM D75 shall be used in sampling coarse and fine aggregate.

404-2.2 Mineral filler. Mineral filler (baghouse fines) may be added in addition to material naturally present in the aggregate. Mineral filler shall meet the requirements of ASTM D242.

Mineral filler Requirements

Material Test	Requirement	Standard
Plasticity Index	4 maximum	ASTM D4318

404-2.3 Asphalt binder. Asphalt binder shall conform to the following requirements of ASTM D6373 for performance grade (PG) 82-28 or 88-22 with the changes annotated below:

- The original asphalt binder shall be tested according to ASTM D6084 Elastic Recovery at 25°C and shall be a minimum of 85%, using procedure A on the RTFO aged binder.
- The original asphalt binder shall be tested according to ASTM D7173 and meet the maximum binder temperature difference of 4 degrees C when using the ASTM D36 Ring-and-Ball apparatus.
- The asphalt specimens prepared with the asphalt binder must also meet the fuel resistance requirements in Table 1 when tested in accordance with paragraph 404-3.4. After passing the requirements of Table 1, the grade of the asphalt binder shall be identified as PG 82-28FR or 88-22FR.

The Contractor shall provide a copy of the manufacturer's Certificate of Analysis (COA) for the asphalt binder. The test reports shall be provided to and approved by the Resident Project Representative (RPR) before the asphalt binder is applied. The furnishing of the vendor's certified test report for the asphalt material shall not be interpreted as a basis for final acceptance. The manufacturer's COA may be subject to verification by testing the material delivered for use on the project.

401-2.4 Anti-stripping agent. Any anti-stripping agent or additive (anti-strip) shall be heat stable and shall not change the asphalt binder grade beyond specifications. Anti-strip shall be an approved material of the Department of Transportation of the State in which the project is located.

COMPOSITION

404-3.1 Composition of mixture. The asphalt plant mix shall be composed of a mixture of well-graded aggregate, filler and anti-strip agent if required, and asphalt material. The several aggregate fractions shall be sized, handled in separate size groups, and combined in such proportions that the resulting mixture meets the grading requirements of the job mix formula (JMF).

404-3.2 Job mix formula (JMF) laboratory. The laboratory used to develop the JMF shall possess a current certificate of accreditation, listing D3666 from a national accrediting authority and all test methods required for developing the JMF, and listed on the accrediting authority's website. A copy of the laboratory's current accreditation and accredited test methods shall be submitted to the RPR prior to start of construction.

404-3.3 Job mix formula (JMF). No asphalt mixture shall be placed until an acceptable mix design has been submitted to the RPR for review and accepted in writing. The RPR's review shall not relieve the Contractor of the responsibility to select and proportion the materials to comply with this section.

Add anti-stripping agent to meet tensile strength requirements.

The JMF shall be prepared by an accredited laboratory that meets the requirements of paragraph 404-3.2. The asphalt mixture shall be designed using procedures contained in the Asphalt Institute MS-2 Mix

Design Manual, 7th Edition. Samples shall be prepared and compacted using a Marshall compactor in accordance with ASTM D6926.

If material variability exceeds the standard deviations indicated, the job mix formula and subsequent production targets shall be based on stability greater than shown in paragraph 404-3.3, Table 1, and the air voids shall be targeted close to the mid-range of the criteria in order to meet the acceptance requirements.

Should a change in sources of materials be made, a new JMF must be submitted to the RPR for review and accepted in writing before the new material is used. After the initial production JMF has been approved by the RPR and a new or modified JMF is required for whatever reason, the subsequent cost of the new or modified JMF, including a new control strip when required by the RPR, will be borne by the Contractor.

The RPR may request samples at any time for testing, prior to and during production, to verify the quality of the materials and to ensure conformance with the applicable specifications.

Table 1. Marshall Design Criteria

Test Properties	All Aircraft	Test Method
Number of blows	50	ASTM D6926
Stability, minimum	2150 lbs.	ASTM D6927
Air Voids ¹	2.5 ±0.2 %	ASTM D3203
Minimum voids in mineral aggregate (VMA)	14%	ASTM D6995
Maximum weight loss by fuel immersion	1.5%	in accordance with procedures outlined in paragraph 404-3.4
Tensile Strength Ratio (TSR) ²	not less than 80 at a saturation of 70-80%	ASTM D4867
Asphalt Pavement Analyzer (APA) ³	Less than 10 mm @ 4000 passes	AASHTO T340 at 250 psi hose pressure at 64°C test temperature

- 1 If the water absorption of the combined aggregates in the mix exceeds 1.7% (ASTM C127 and ASTM C128) then the mix must be short term aged in accordance with American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO) PP-2 – Section 7.2. The short term aged material will then be used for the Marshall specimens and the maximum specific gravity test (ASTM D2041).
- 2 Test specimens for TSR shall be compacted at 7 ± 1.0 % air voids. Use freeze-thaw conditioning in lieu of moisture conditioning per ASTM D4867.
- 3 AASHTO T340 at 100 psi hose pressure at 64°C test temperature may be used in the interim. If this method is used the required value shall be less than 5 mm @ 8000 passes.

The APA procedure has shown that mixes that meet the requirements above perform well under aircraft loading. If APA is not available in an area, compacted mix design samples may be sent to a laboratory that has an APA or the Hamburg wheel test (AASHTO T 324) 10mm @ 20,000 passes may be used with FAA approval of ADO.

Specify a TSR of not less than 85 in areas with aggregate that have a history of stripping.

The JMF shall be submitted in writing by the Contractor to the RPR at least [30] days prior to the start of paving operations for the control strip in accordance with paragraph 404-3.3. The JMF shall be developed within the same construction season using aggregates currently being produced.

The JMF shall be dated, and stamped or sealed by the responsible professional Engineer of the laboratory and shall include the following items as a minimum:

- Manufacturer's Certificate of Analysis (COA) for the asphalt binder used in the JMF in accordance with paragraph 401-2.3. Certificate of asphalt performance grade is with modifier already added, if used and must indicate compliance with ASTM D6373. For plant modified asphalt binder, certified test report indicating grade certification of modified asphalt binder.
- Manufacturer's Certificate of Analysis (COA) for the anti-stripping agent if used in the JMF in accordance with paragraph 401-2.4.
- Certified material test reports for the course and fine aggregate and mineral filler in accordance with paragraphs 401-2.1 and 401-2.2.
- Percent passing each sieve size for individual gradation of each aggregate cold feed and/or hot bin; percent by weight of each cold feed and/or hot bin used; and the total combined gradation in the JMF.
- Specific Gravity and absorption of each coarse and fine aggregate.
- Percent fractured faces.
- Percent by weight of flat particles, elongated particles, and flat and elongated particles (and criteria).
- Percent of asphalt.
- Number of blows
- Laboratory mixing and compaction temperatures.
- Supplier-recommended field mixing and compaction temperatures.
- Plot of the combined gradation on a 0.45 power gradation curve.
- Graphical plots of air voids, voids in the mineral aggregate, and unit weight versus asphalt content. To achieve minimum VMA during production, the mix design needs to account for material breakdown during production.
- Tensile Strength Ratio (TSR).
- Type and amount of Anti-strip agent when used.
- Asphalt Pavement Analyzer (APA) results.
- Date the JMF was developed. Mix designs that are not dated or which are from a prior construction season shall not be accepted.
- Test results for asphalt resistance to fuel in accordance with paragraph 404-3.4.

- []

The Owner may add additional testing to meet local conditions with FAA concurrence.

The mineral aggregate shall be of such size that the percentage composition by weight, as determined by laboratory screens, will conform to the gradation or gradations specified in paragraph 404-3.3, Table 2 when tested in accordance with ASTM C136 and ASTM C117.

The gradations in Table 2 represent the limits that shall determine the suitability of aggregate for use from the sources of supply; be well graded from coarse to fine and shall not vary from the low limit on one sieve to the high limit on the adjacent sieve, or vice versa.

Table 2. Aggregate – Fuel-Resistant Asphalt Pavement

Sieve Size	¾ inch (19.5MM) mix % passing by weight	1/2 inch (12.5 mm) mix % passing by weight
¾ inch (19.5mm)	100	
1/2 inch (12.5 mm)	90-100	100
3/8 inch (9.5 mm)	72-88	90-100
No. 4 (4.75 mm)	53-73	58-78
No. 8 (2.36 mm)	38-60	40-60
No. 16 (1.18 mm)	26-48	28-48
No. 30 (600 µm)	18-38	18-38
No. 50 (300 µm)	11-27	11-27
No. 100 (150 µm)	6-18	6-18
No. 200 (75 µm)	3-6	3-6
Minimum Voids in Mineral Aggregate (VMA)¹	15	16
Asphalt Percent		
Stone or gravel	5-7.5	5.5-8.0
Slag	6.5-9.5	7.0-10.5
Recommended Minimum Construction Lift Thickness	2" (51mm)	1 1/2 inch (37.0 mm)

¹To achieve minimum VMA during production, the mix design needs to account for material breakdown during production.

The aggregate gradation shown is based on aggregates of uniform specific gravity. The percentages passing the various sieves shall be corrected when aggregates of varying specific gravities are used, as indicated in the Asphalt Institute MS-2 Mix Design Manual, 7th Edition.

404-3.4 Testing requirement for asphalt resistance to fuel. Procedures for testing asphalt resistance to fuel shall be as follows:

- a. Prepare three test specimens in accordance with the Mix Design requirements at optimum asphalt binder content and $2.5 \pm 0.7\%$ air voids.
- b. Determine the percent air voids in each specimen, if any do not meet the requirements above discard and replace them. Dry the specimens under a fan at room temperature $68^{\circ}\text{F} - 80^{\circ}\text{F}$ ($20^{\circ}\text{C} - 27^{\circ}\text{C}$) for a minimum of 24 hours.
- c. Totally immerse the sample in kerosene meeting ASTM D3699 at room temperature $68^{\circ}\text{F} - 80^{\circ}\text{F}$ ($20^{\circ}\text{C} - 27^{\circ}\text{C}$) for 2.0 minutes. (Suspending the sample with metal insect screen in a one gallon (4 liters) paint can has been found to be satisfactory.)
- d. After submersing for 2.0 minutes ± 30 sec, remove the sample and immediately surface dry it with a clean paper towel. Then immediately determine the weight in air to the nearest 0.1 grams. Report this as weight "A" (weight before).
- e. Resubmerge the sample in kerosene for 24 hours.
- f. After 24 hours ± 10 minutes carefully remove the sample from the kerosene and suspension container and place it on an absorptive cloth or paper towel. Dry the specimen under a fan at room temperature for 24 hours.
- g. After drying for 24 hours ± 10 minutes weigh the sample in air to the nearest 0.1 grams. Report this as weight "B" (weight after immersion).
- h. Calculations:

$$\% \text{ of weight loss by fuel immersion} = (A - B / A) \times 100$$

Where: A = Weight before

B = Weight after

404-3.5 Recycled Asphalt Mix Pavement. No reclaimed asphalt pavement (RAP) or recycled asphalt shingles (RAS) shall be permitted in this mix.

404-3.6 Control strip. [A control strip is not required.] Full production shall not begin until an acceptable control strip has been constructed and accepted in writing by the RPR. The Contractor shall prepare and place a quantity of asphalt according to the JMF. The underlying grade or pavement structure upon which the control strip is to be constructed shall be the same as the remainder of the course represented by the control strip.

The Contractor will not be allowed to place the control strip until the Contractor quality control program (CQCP), showing conformance with the requirements of paragraph 404-5.1, has been accepted, in writing, by the RPR.

The control strip will consist of at least 250 tons (227 metric tons) or 1/2 subplot, whichever is greater. The control strip shall be placed in two lanes of the same width and depth to be used in production with a longitudinal cold joint. The cold joint must be cut back in accordance with paragraph 404-4.14 using the same procedure that will be used during production. The cold joint for the control strip will be an exposed construction joint at least four (4) hours old or when the mat has cooled to less than 160°F (71°C). The equipment used in construction of the control strip shall be the same type, configuration and weight to be used on the project.

The control strip will be considered acceptable by the RPR if the gradation, asphalt content, and VMA are within the action limits specified in paragraph 404-5.5a; and Mat density, air voids, and joint density meet the requirements specified in paragraphs 404-6.2

If the control strip is unacceptable, necessary adjustments to the JMF, plant operation, placing procedures, and/or rolling procedures shall be made and another control strip shall be placed. Unacceptable control strips shall be removed at the Contractor's expense.

Payment will only be made for an acceptable control strip in accordance with paragraph 401-8.1 using a lot pay factor equal to 100.]

For small projects, less than 1,500 tons (1360 metric tons), a control strip is not required.

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

404-4.1 Weather limitations. The asphalt mixture shall not be placed upon a wet surface or when the surface temperature of the underlying course is less than 45°F (7°C). The temperature requirements may be waived by the RPR, if requested; however, all other requirements including compaction shall be met.

404-4.2 Asphalt plant. Plants used for the preparation of asphalt shall conform to the requirements of American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO) M156 including the following items.

a. Inspection of plant. The RPR, or RPR's authorized representative, shall have access, at all times, to all areas of the plant for checking adequacy of equipment; inspecting operation of the plant: verifying weights, proportions, and material properties; and checking the temperatures maintained in the preparation of the mixtures.

b. Storage bins and surge bins. The asphalt mixture stored in storage and/or surge bins shall meet the same requirements as asphalt mixture loaded directly into trucks. Asphalt mixture shall not be stored in storage and/or surge bins for a period greater than eight (8) hours. If the RPR determines there is an excessive heat loss, segregation or oxidation of the asphalt mixture due to temporary storage, temporary storage shall not be allowed.

404-4.3 Aggregate stockpile management. Aggregate stockpiles shall be constructed in such a manner that prevents segregation and intermixing of deleterious materials. Aggregates from different sources shall be stockpiled, weighed and batched separately at the asphalt batch plant. Aggregates that have become segregated or mixed with earth or foreign material shall not be used.

A continuous supply of materials shall be provided to the work to ensure continuous placement.

404-4.4 Hauling equipment. Trucks used for hauling asphalt mixtures shall have tight, clean, and smooth metal beds. To prevent the mixture from adhering to them, the truck beds shall be lightly coated with a minimum amount of paraffin oil, lime solution, or other approved material. Petroleum products shall not be used for coating truck beds. Each truck shall have a suitable cover to protect the mixture from adverse weather. When necessary, to ensure that the mixture will be delivered to the site at the specified temperature, truck beds shall be insulated or heated and covers shall be securely fastened.

404-4.5 Asphalts pavers. Asphalt pavers shall be self-propelled with an activated heated screed, capable of spreading and finishing courses of asphalt that will meet the specified thickness, smoothness, and grade. The paver shall have sufficient power to propel itself and the hauling equipment without adversely affecting the finished surface. The asphalt paver shall be equipped with a control system capable of automatically maintaining the specified screed grade and elevation.

If the spreading and finishing equipment in use leaves tracks or indented areas, or produces other blemishes in the pavement that are not satisfactorily corrected by the scheduled operations, the use of such equipment shall be discontinued.

The paver shall be capable of paving to a minimum width specified in paragraph 404-4.12.

404-4.6 Rollers. The number, type, and weight of rollers shall be sufficient to compact the asphalt to the required density while it is still in a workable condition without crushing of the aggregate, depressions or other damage to the pavement surface. Rollers shall be in good condition, capable of operating at slow speeds to avoid displacement of the asphalt. All rollers shall be specifically designed and suitable for compacting asphalt concrete and shall be properly used. Rollers that impair the stability of any layer of a pavement structure or underlying soils shall not be used.

404-4.7 Density device. The Contractor shall have on site a density gauge during all paving operations in order to assist in the determination of the optimum rolling pattern, type of roller and frequencies, as well as to monitor the effect of the rolling operations during production paving. The Contractor shall supply a qualified technician during all paving operations to calibrate the gauge and obtain accurate density readings for all new asphalt. These densities shall be supplied to the RPR upon request at any time during construction. No separate payment will be made for supplying the density gauge and technician.

404-4.8 Preparation of asphalt binder. The asphalt binder shall be heated in a manner that will avoid local overheating and provide a continuous supply of the asphalt binder to the mixer at a uniform temperature. The temperature of the asphalt binder delivered to the mixer shall be sufficient to provide a suitable viscosity for adequate coating of the aggregate particles, but shall not exceed 350°F (182°C), unless otherwise required by the manufacturer.

404-4.9 Preparation of mineral aggregate. The aggregate for the mixture shall be heated and dried prior to introduction into the mixer. The maximum temperature and rate of heating shall be such that no damage occurs to the aggregates. The temperature of the aggregate and mineral filler shall not exceed 350°F (175°C) when the asphalt is added. Particular care shall be taken that aggregates high in calcium or magnesium content are not damaged by overheating. The temperature shall not be lower than is required to obtain complete coating and uniform distribution on the aggregate particles and to provide a mixture of satisfactory workability.

404-4.10 Preparation of asphalt mixture. The aggregates and the asphalt binder shall be weighed or metered and introduced into the mixer in the amount specified by the job mix formula. The combined materials shall be mixed until the aggregate obtains a uniform coating of bitumen and is thoroughly distributed throughout the mixture. Wet mixing time shall be the shortest time that will produce a satisfactory mixture, but not less than 25 seconds for batch plants. The wet mixing time for all plants shall be established by the Contractor, based on the procedure for determining the percentage of coated particles described in ASTM D2489, for each individual plant and for each type of aggregate used. The wet mixing time will be set to achieve 95% of coated particles. For continuous mix plants, the minimum mixing time shall be determined by dividing the weight of its contents at operating level by the weight of the mixture delivered per second by the mixer. The moisture content of all asphalt mixtures upon discharge shall not exceed 0.5%.

For batch plants, wet mixing time begins with the introduction of asphalt binder into the mixer and ends with the opening of the mixer discharge gate. Mixing time should be the shortest time required to obtain uniform distribution of aggregate sizes and thorough coating of aggregate particles with asphalt binder.

401-4.11 Application of Tack Coat. Immediately before placing the asphalt mixture, the underlying course shall be cleaned of all dust and debris. A tack coat shall be applied in accordance with Item P-603 to all vertical and horizontal asphalt and concrete surfaces prior to placement of the first and each subsequent lift of asphalt mixture.

404-4.12 Laydown plan, transporting, placing, and finishing. Prior to the placement of the asphalt, the Contractor shall prepare a laydown plan with the sequence of paving lanes and width to minimize the number of cold joints; the location of any temporary ramps; laydown temperature; and estimated time of completion for each portion of the work (milling, paving, rolling, cooling, etc.). The laydown plan and any modifications shall be approved by the RPR.

Deliveries shall be scheduled so that placing and compacting of mixture is uniform with minimum stopping and starting of the paver. Hauling over freshly placed material shall not be permitted until the material has been compacted, as specified, and allowed to cool to atmospheric temperature. The Contractor, at their expense, shall be responsible for repair of any damage to the pavement caused by hauling operations.

Contractor shall survey each lift of asphalt surface course and certify to RPR that every lot of each lift meets the grade tolerances of paragraph 404-5.3h before the next lift can be placed.

Edges of existing asphalt pavement abutting the new work shall be saw cut and the cut off material and laitance removed. Apply a tack coat in accordance with P-603 before new asphalt material is placed against it.

The speed of the paver shall be regulated to eliminate pulling and tearing of the asphalt mat. Placement of the asphalt mix shall begin along the centerline of a crowned section or on the high side of areas with a one way slope unless shown otherwise on the laydown plan as accepted by the RPR. The asphalt mix shall be placed in consecutive adjacent lanes having a minimum width of [] feet (m) except where edge lanes require less width to complete the area. Additional screed sections attached to widen the paver to meet the minimum lane width requirements must include additional auger sections to move the asphalt mixture uniformly along the screed extension. []

The Engineer should specify the widest paving lane practicable in an effort to hold the number of longitudinal joints to a minimum. Additional job specific construction limitations may be added as necessary covering such items as echelon paving, hot joint construction, etc.

The longitudinal joint in one course shall offset the longitudinal joint in the course immediately below by at least one foot (30 cm); however, the joint in the surface top course shall be at the centerline of crowned pavements. Transverse joints in one course shall be offset by at least 10 feet (3 m) from transverse joints in the previous course. Transverse joints in adjacent lanes shall be offset a minimum of 10 feet (3 m). On areas where irregularities or unavoidable obstacles make the use of mechanical spreading and finishing equipment impractical, the mixture may be spread and luted by hand tools.

The RPR may at any time, notwithstanding previous plant acceptance, reject and require the Contractor to dispose of any batch of asphalt mixture which is rendered unfit for use due to contamination, segregation, incomplete coating of aggregate, or improper mix temperature. Such rejection may be based on only visual inspection or temperature measurements. In the event of such rejection, the Contractor may take a representative sample of the rejected material in the presence of the RPR and, if it can be demonstrated in the laboratory, in the presence of the RPR, that such material was erroneously rejected, payment will be made for the material at the contract unit price.

Areas of segregation in the surface course, as determined by the RPR, shall be removed and replaced at the Contractor's expense. The area shall be removed by saw cutting and milling a minimum of the construction lift thickness as specified in paragraph 404-3.3, Table 2 for the approved mix design. The area to be removed and replaced shall be a minimum width of the paver and a minimum of 10 feet (3 m) long.

404-4.13 Compaction of asphalt mixture. After placing, the asphalt mixture shall be thoroughly and uniformly compacted by rolling. The surface shall be compacted as soon as possible when the mixture has attained sufficient stability so that the rolling does not cause undue displacement, cracking or shoving. The sequence of rolling operations and the type of rollers used shall be at the discretion of the Contractor. The speed of the roller shall, at all times, be sufficiently slow to avoid displacement of the hot mixture and be effective in compaction. Any displacement occurring as a result of reversing the direction of the roller, or from any other cause, shall be corrected at once.

Sufficient rollers shall be furnished to handle the output of the plant. Rolling shall continue until the surface is of uniform texture, true to grade and cross-section, and the required field density is obtained.

To prevent adhesion of the mixture to the roller, the wheels shall be equipped with a scraper and kept properly moistened but excessive water will not be permitted.

In areas not accessible to the roller, the mixture shall be thoroughly compacted with approved power tampers.

Any mixture that becomes loose and broken, mixed with dirt, contains check-cracking, or in any way defective shall be removed and replaced with fresh hot mixture and immediately compacted to conform to the surrounding area. This work shall be done at the Contractor's expense. Skin patching shall not be allowed.

404-4.14 Joints. The formation of all joints shall be made in such a manner as to ensure a continuous bond between the courses and obtain the required density. All joints shall have the same texture as other sections of the course and meet the requirements for smoothness and grade.

The roller shall not pass over the unprotected end of the freshly laid mixture except when necessary to form a transverse joint. When necessary to form a transverse joint, it shall be made by means of placing a bulkhead or by tapering the course. The tapered edge shall be cut back to its full depth and width on a straight line to expose a vertical face prior to placing the adjacent lane. In both methods, all contact surfaces shall be given a tack coat of asphalt material before placing any fresh mixture against the joint.

Longitudinal joints which have been left exposed for more than four (4) hours; the surface temperature has cooled to less than 175°F (80°C); or are irregular, damaged, uncompacted or otherwise defective shall be cut back with a cutting wheel or pavement saw a maximum of 3 inches (75 mm) to expose a clean, sound, uniform vertical surface for the full depth of the course. All cutback material and any laitance produced from cutting joints shall be removed from the project. Asphalt tack coat in accordance with P-603 shall be applied to the clean, dry joint, prior to placing any additional fresh asphalt against the joint. The cost of this work shall be considered incidental to the cost of the asphalt.

Cut back of all cold joints is required as specified above.

404-4.15 Diamond grinding. Diamond grinding shall be completed prior to pavement grooving. Diamond grinding shall be accomplished by sawing with saw blades impregnated with industrial diamond abrasive.

Diamond grinding shall be performed with a machine designed specifically for diamond grinding capable of cutting a path at least 3 feet (0.9 m) wide. The saw blades shall be 1/8-inch (3-mm) wide with a minimum of 55 to 60 blades per 12 inches (300 mm) of cutting head width; grooves between 0.090 and 0.130 inches (2 and 3.5 mm) wide; and peaks and ridges approximately 1/32 inch (1 mm) higher than the bottom of the grinding cut. The actual number of blades will be determined by the Contractor and depend on the hardness of the aggregate. Equipment or grinding procedures that causes ravels, aggregate fractures, spalls or disturbance to the pavement will not be permitted.

Grinding will be tapered in all directions to provide smooth transitions to areas not requiring grinding. The slurry resulting from the grinding operation shall be continuously removed and the pavement left in a clean condition. The Contractor shall apply a surface treatment per P-608 to all areas that have been subject to grinding.

404-4.16 Nighttime paving requirements. The Contractor shall provide adequate lighting during any nighttime construction. A lighting plan must be submitted by the Contractor and approved by the RPR prior to the start of any nighttime work. All work shall be in accordance with the approved CSPP and lighting plan.

CONTRACTOR QUALITY CONTROL (CQC)

All federally funded projects over \$500K dollars where paving is the major work item must have a CQCP. It is strongly encouraged that a Contractor Quality Control Program (CQCP) be developed for all projects.

For projects that do not include a formal CQCP, this section can be edited to remove reference to a CQCP. However, QC testing is still required regardless of project size.

404-5.1 General. [The Contractor shall develop a CQCP in accordance with Item C-100. No partial payment will be made for materials that are subject to specific QC requirements without an approved CQCP.]

404-5.2 Contractor quality control (QC) facilities. [The Contractor shall provide or contract for testing facilities in accordance with Item C-100. The RPR shall be permitted unrestricted access to inspect the Contractor's QC facilities and witness QC activities. The RPR will advise the Contractor in writing of any noted deficiencies concerning the QC facility, equipment, supplies, or testing personnel and procedures. When the deficiencies are serious enough to be adversely affecting the test results, the incorporation of the materials into the work shall

be suspended immediately and will not be permitted to resume until the deficiencies are satisfactorily corrected.]

404-5.3 Contractor QC testing. The Contractor shall perform all QC tests necessary to control the production and construction processes applicable to these specifications [and as set forth in the approved CQCP. The testing program shall include, but not necessarily be limited to, tests for the control of asphalt content, aggregate gradation, temperatures, aggregate moisture, field compaction, and surface smoothness. A QC Testing Plan shall be developed as part of the CQCP.]

a. Asphalt content. A minimum of two tests shall be performed per day in accordance with ASTM D6307 or ASTM D2172 for determination of asphalt content. When using ASTM D6307, the correction factor shall be determined as part of the first test performed at the beginning of plant production; and as part of every tenth test performed thereafter. The asphalt content for the day will be determined by averaging the test results.

b. Gradation. Aggregate gradations shall be determined a minimum of twice per day from mechanical analysis of extracted aggregate in accordance with ASTM D5444, ASTM C136, and ASTM C117.

c. Moisture content of aggregate. The moisture content of aggregate used for production shall be determined a minimum of once per day in accordance with ASTM C566.

d. Moisture content of asphalt. The moisture content of the mixture shall be determined once per day in accordance with AASHTO T329 or ASTM D1461.

e. Temperatures. Temperatures shall be checked, at least four times per day, at necessary locations to determine the temperatures of the dryer, the asphalt binder in the storage tank, the mixture at the plant, and the asphalt at the job site.

f. In-place density monitoring. The Contractor shall conduct any necessary testing to ensure that the specified density is being achieved. A nuclear gauge may be used to monitor the pavement density in accordance with ASTM D2950.

g. Smoothness for Contractor Quality Control.

Note change in deviations on final surface course that require grinding, limited to deviations > 1/4 inch that trap water, intent here is to focus on areas that may cause issues with the safe operation of aircraft and to minimize grinding if it will not improve safety

The Contractor shall perform smoothness testing in transverse and longitudinal directions daily to verify that the construction processes are producing pavement with variances less than 1/4 inch in 12 feet, identifying areas that may pond water which could lead to hydroplaning of aircraft. If the smoothness criteria is not met, appropriate changes and corrections to the construction process shall be made by the Contractor before construction continues

The Contractor may use a 12-foot (3.7 m) “straightedge, a rolling inclinometer meeting the requirements of ASTM E2133 or rolling external reference device that can simulate a 12-foot (3.7m) straightedge approved by the RPR. Straight-edge testing shall start with one-half the length of the straightedge at the edge of pavement section being tested and then moved ahead one-half the length of the

straightedge for each successive measurement. Testing shall be continuous across all joints. The surface irregularity shall be determined by placing the freestanding (unleveled) straightedge on the pavement surface and allowing it to rest upon the two highest spots covered by its length, and measuring the maximum gap between the straightedge and the pavement surface in the area between the two high points. If the rolling inclinometer or external reference device is used, the data may be evaluated using the FAA profile program, ProFAA, or FHWA ProVal, using the 12-foot straightedge simulation function.

Smoothness readings shall not be made across grade changes or cross slope transitions. The transition between new and existing pavement shall be evaluated separately for conformance with the plans.

Include detail for transition between new and existing pavement including smoothness and grade limitations.

(1) Transverse measurements. Transverse measurements shall be taken for each day's production placed. Transverse measurements shall be taken perpendicular to the pavement centerline each 50 feet (15 m) or more often as determined by the RPR. The joint between lanes shall be tested separately to facilitate smoothness between lanes.

(2) Longitudinal measurements. Longitudinal measurements shall be taken for each day's production placed. Longitudinal tests shall be parallel to the centerline of paving; at the center of paving lanes when widths of paving lanes are less than 20 feet (6 m); and at the third points of paving lanes when widths of paving lanes are 20 ft (6 m) or greater.

Deviations on the final surface course in either the transverse or longitudinal direction that will trap water greater than 1/4 inch (6 mm) shall be corrected with diamond grinding per paragraph 401-4.15 or by removing and replacing the surface course to full depth. Grinding shall be tapered in all directions to provide smooth transitions to areas not requiring grinding. All areas in which diamond grinding has been performed shall be subject to the final pavement thickness tolerances specified in paragraph 404-6.2d. Areas that have been ground shall be sealed with a surface treatment in accordance with Item P-608. To avoid the surface treatment creating any conflict with runway or taxiway markings, it may be necessary to seal a larger area.

Control charts shall be kept to show area of each day's placement and the percentage of corrective grinding required. Corrections to production and placement shall be initiated when corrective grinding is required. If the Contractor's machines and/or methods produce significant areas that need corrective actions in excess of 10 percent of a day's production, production shall be stopped until corrective measures are implemented by the Contractor.

h. Grade. Grade shall be evaluated daily to allow adjustments to paving operations when grade measurements do not meet specifications. As a minimum, grade shall be evaluated prior and after the placement of the first lift and then after placement of the surface lift.

Measurements will be taken at appropriate gradelines (as a minimum at center and edges of paving lane) and longitudinal spacing as shown on cross-sections and plans. The final surface of the pavement will not vary from the gradeline elevations and cross-sections shown on the plans by more than 1/2 inch (12 mm) vertically [and 0.1 feet (30 mm) laterally]. The documentation will be provided by the Contractor to the RPR [within 24 hours] [by the end of the following working day.]

Areas of surface course that exceed grade or smoothness criteria and that retain water on the surface must be ground off provided the course thickness after grinding is not more than 1/2 inch (12 mm) less than the thickness specified on the plans. Grinding shall be in accordance with paragraph 404-4.15.

The Contractor shall repair low areas or areas that cannot be corrected by grinding by removal of deficient areas to the depth of the final course plus 1/2 inch and replacing with new material. Skin patching is not allowed.

404-5.4 Sampling. When directed by the RPR, the Contractor shall sample and test any material that appears inconsistent with similar material being sampled, unless such material is voluntarily removed and replaced or deficiencies corrected by the Contractor. All sampling shall be in accordance with standard procedures specified.

404-5.5 Control charts. The Contractor shall maintain linear control charts for both individual measurements and range (i.e. difference between highest and lowest measurements) for aggregate gradation, asphalt content, and VMA. The VMA for each day will be calculated and monitored by the QC laboratory.

Control charts shall be posted in a location satisfactory to the RPR and kept current. As a minimum, the control charts shall identify the project number, the contract item number, the test number, each test parameter, the Action and Suspension Limits applicable to each test parameter, and the Contractor's test results. The Contractor shall use the control charts as part of a process control system for identifying potential problems and assignable causes before they occur. If the Contractor's projected data during production indicates a problem and the Contractor is not taking satisfactory corrective action, the RPR may suspend production or acceptance of the material.

a. Individual measurements. Control charts for individual measurements shall be established to maintain process control within tolerance for aggregate gradation, asphalt content, and VMA. The control charts shall use the job mix formula target values as indicators of central tendency for the following test parameters with associated Action and Suspension Limits:

Control Chart Limits for Individual Measurements

Sieve	Action limit	Suspension limit
3/8 inch (9.5 mm)	±6%	±9%
No. 4 (4.75 mm)	±6%	±9%
No. 16 (1.18 mm)	±5%	±7.5%
No. 50 (300 µm)	±3%	±4.5%
No. 200 (75 µm)	±2%	±3%
Asphalt Content	±0.45%	±0.70%
Minimum VMA	-0.5%	-1.0%

b. Range. Control charts shall be established to control gradation process variability. The range shall be plotted as the difference between the two test results for each control parameter. The Suspension Limits specified below are based on a sample size of $n = 2$. Should the Contractor elect to perform more than two tests per lot, the Suspension Limits shall be adjusted by multiplying the Suspension Limit by 1.18 for $n = 3$ and by 1.27 for $n = 4$.

Control Chart Limits Based on Range

Sieve	Suspension Limit
3/8 inch (9.5 mm)	11%
No. 4 (4.75 mm)	11%
No. 16 (1.18 mm)	9%
No. 50 (300 µm)	6%
No. 200 (75 µm)	3.5%
Asphalt content	0.8%

c. Corrective action. [The CQCP shall indicate that appropriate action shall be taken when the process is believed to be out of tolerance. The Plan shall contain sets of rules to gauge when a process is out of control and detail what action will be taken to bring the process into control. As a minimum, a process shall be deemed out of control and production stopped and corrective action taken, if:

(1) one point falls outside the Suspension Limit line for individual measurements or range; or

(2) two points in a row fall outside the Action Limit line for individual measurements.]

404-5.6 QC reports. The Contractor shall maintain records and shall submit reports of QC activities daily [, in accordance with the CQCP described in Item C-100].

MATERIAL ACCEPTANCE

404-6.1 Acceptance sampling and testing. Unless otherwise specified, all acceptance sampling and testing necessary to determine conformance with the requirements specified in this section will be performed by the RPR at no cost to the Contractor except that coring as required in this section shall be completed and paid for by the Contractor.

a. Quality Assurance (QA) testing laboratory. The QA testing laboratory performing these acceptance tests will be accredited in accordance with ASTM D3666. The QA laboratory accreditation will be current and listed on the accrediting authority's website. All test methods required for acceptance sampling and testing will be listed on the lab accreditation.

b. Lot size. A standard lot will be equal to one day's production divided into approximately equal sublots of between 400 to 600 tons. When only one or two sublots are produced in a day's production, the sublots will be combined with the production lot from the previous or next day.

Where more than one plant is simultaneously producing asphalt for the job, the lot sizes will apply separately for each plant.

For large projects with high production rates, the Engineer may adjust the lot size to be ½ days production.

For small projects, with multiple small placements or if the total project size is less than 3000 tons (2270 metric tons), acceptable material will be paid for by the ton (metric ton) placed per day.

c. Asphalt air voids. Plant-produced asphalt will be tested for air voids on a subplot basis.

(1) Sampling. Material from each subplot shall be sampled in accordance with ASTM D3665. Samples shall be taken from material deposited into trucks at the plant or at the job site in accordance with ASTM D979. The sample of asphalt may be put in a covered metal tin and placed in an oven for [not less than 30 minutes nor more than 60 minutes] to maintain the material at or above the compaction temperature as specified in the JMF.

Engineer should increase hold times to not less than 60 minutes and not more than 90 minutes when absorptive aggregates are used.

(2) Testing. Air voids will be determined for each subplot in accordance with ASTM D3203 for a set of three compacted specimens prepared in accordance with [ASTM D6926][ASTM D6925].

d. In-place asphalt mat and joint density. Each subplot will be tested for in-place mat and joint density as a percentage of the theoretical maximum density (TMD).

(1) Sampling. The [Contractor][RPR] will cut minimum 5 inches (125 mm) diameter samples in accordance with ASTM D5361. The Contractor shall furnish all tools, labor, and materials for cleaning, and filling the cored pavement. Laitance produced by the coring operation shall be removed immediately after coring, and core holes shall be filled within one day after sampling in a manner acceptable to the RPR.

(2) Bond. Each lift of asphalt shall be bonded to the underlying layer. If cores reveal that the surface is not bonded, additional cores shall be taken as directed by the RPR to determine the extent of unbonded areas. Unbonded areas shall be removed by milling and replaced at no additional cost as directed by the RPR.

(3) Thickness. Thickness of each lift of surface course will be evaluated by the RPR for compliance to the requirements shown on the plans after any necessary corrections for grade. Measurements of thickness will be made using the cores extracted for each subplot for density measurement. The maximum allowable deficiency at any point will not be more than 1/4 inch (6 mm) less than the thickness indicated for the lift. Average thickness of lift, or combined lifts, will not be less than the indicated thickness. Where the thickness tolerances are not met, the lot or subplot shall be corrected by the Contractor at his expense by removing the deficient area and replacing with new pavement. The Contractor, at his expense, may take additional cores as approved by the RPR to circumscribe the deficient area.

(4) Mat density. One core shall be taken from each subplot. Core locations will be determined by the RPR in accordance with ASTM D3665. Cores for mat density shall not be taken closer than one foot (30 cm) from a transverse or longitudinal joint. The bulk specific gravity of each cored sample will be determined in accordance with ASTM D2726. The percent compaction (density) of each sample will be determined by dividing the bulk specific gravity of each subplot sample by the TMD for that subplot.

(5) Joint density. One core centered over the longitudinal joint shall be taken for each subplot which contains a longitudinal joint. Core locations will be determined by the RPR in accordance with ASTM D3665. The bulk specific gravity of each core sample will be determined in accordance with

ASTM D2726. The percent compaction (density) of each sample will be determined by dividing the bulk specific gravity of each joint density sample by the average TMD for the lot. The TMD used to determine the joint density at joints formed between lots will be the lower of the average TMD values from the adjacent lots.

404-6.2 Acceptance criteria.

a. General. Acceptance will be based on the implementation of the Contractor Quality Control Program (CQCP) and the following characteristics of the asphalt and completed pavements: air voids, mat density, joint density, grade [and profilograph roughness].

Only include profilograph roughness for runway and/or taxiway pavement projects greater than 500 feet (150 m) in length.

b. Air Voids and Mat density. Acceptance of each lot of plant produced material for mat density and air voids will be based on the percentage of material within specification limits (PWL). If the PWL of the lot equals or exceeds 90%, the lot will be acceptable. Acceptance and payment will be determined in accordance with paragraph 401-8.1.

c. Joint density. Acceptance of each lot of plant produced asphalt for joint density will be based on the PWL. If the PWL of the lot is equal to or exceeds 90%, the lot will be considered acceptable. If the PWL is less than 90%, the Contractor shall evaluate the reason and act accordingly. If the PWL is less than 80%, the Contractor shall cease operations and until the reason for poor compaction has been determined. If the PWL is less than 71%, the pay factor for the lot used to complete the joint will be reduced by five (5) percentage points. This lot pay factor reduction will be incorporated and evaluated in accordance with paragraph 401-8.1.

d. Grade. The final finished surface of the pavement of the completed project shall be surveyed to verify that the grade elevations and cross-sections shown on the plans do not deviate more than 1/2 inch (12 mm) vertically [or 0.1 feet (30 mm) laterally].

Cross-sections of the pavement shall be taken at a minimum [50-foot (15-m)] longitudinal spacing and at all longitudinal grade breaks. Minimum cross-section grade points shall include grade at centerline, [± 10 feet of centerline], and edge of [runway][taxiway] pavement.

The survey and documentation shall be stamped and signed by a licensed surveyor. Payment for sublots that do not meet grade for over 25% of the sublot shall not be more than 95%.

[e. Profilograph roughness for QA Acceptance. The final profilograph shall be the full length of the project to facilitate testing of roughness between lots. The [Contractor, in the presence of the RPR shall][RPR will] perform a profilograph roughness test on the completed project with a profilograph meeting the requirements of ASTM E1274 or a Class I inertial profiler meeting ASTM E950. Data and results shall be provided within [48 hrs] of profilograph roughness tests.

The pavement shall have an average profile index less than 15 inches per mile per 1/10 mile. The equipment shall utilize electronic recording and automatic computerized reduction of data to indicate "must grind" bumps and the Profile Index for the pavement using a 0.2-

inch (5 mm) blanking band. The bump template must span one inch (25 mm) with an offset of 0.4 inches (10 mm). The profilograph must be calibrated prior to use and operated by a factory or State DOT approved, trained operator. Profilograms shall be recorded on a longitudinal scale of one inch (25 mm) equals 25 feet (7.5 m) and a vertical scale of one inch (25 mm) equals one inch (25 mm). Profilograph shall be performed one foot right and left of project centerline and 15 feet (4.5 m) right and left of project centerline. Any areas that indicate "must grind" shall be corrected with diamond grinding per paragraph 401-4.13 or by removing and replacing full depth of surface course. as directed by the RPR. Where corrections are necessary, a second profilograph run shall be performed to verify that the corrections produced an average profile index of 15 inches per mile per 1/10 mile or less.]

Profilograph roughness and acceptance adjustment paragraphs only apply when the overall project is a new and/or reconstructed runway(s) and/or taxiway(s) greater than 500 feet (152 m) in length.

Profilograph roughness is not applicable to aprons and should be used with caution on projects to rehabilitate runways and/or taxiways unless the project includes provisions to correct existing deficiencies.

Any changes to the profilograph roughness acceptance limits requires a modification to standards in accordance with FAA Order 5300.1, Modifications to Agency Airport Design, Construction, and Equipment Standards.

The Engineer must select who will provide the specified equipment and the timeframe for receiving the test data. The Airport should retain a copy of the profilograph roughness test and reports for inclusion in the Airport's Pavement Maintenance Management Program (PMP).

404-6.3. Percentage of material within specification limits (PWL). The PWL will be determined in accordance with procedures specified in Item C-110. The specification tolerance limits (L) for lower and (U) for upper are contained in Table 5.

Table 5. Marshall acceptance limits for stability, air voids, density

Test Property	Pavements designed for aircraft gross weights of 60,000 lbs (27216 kg) or more or tire pressures of 100 psi or more	
Number of blows	50	
	Specification tolerance limits	
	L	U
Stability, minimum, lbs	2150	-
Air voids total mix, %	1.5	3.5
Surface course mat density, %	96.0	-
Joint density, %	92.0	-

a. Outliers. All individual tests for mat density and air voids will be checked for outliers (test criterion) in accordance with ASTM E178, at a significance level of 5%. Outliers will be discarded, and the PWL will be determined using the remaining test values. The criteria in Table 5 is based on production processes which have a variability with the following standard deviations: Surface Course Mat Density (%), 1.20; Base Course Mat Density (%), 1.55; Joint Density (%), 1.8.

404-6.4 Resampling pavement for mat density.

a. General. Resampling of a lot of pavement will only be allowed for mat density, and then, only if the Contractor requests same, in writing, within 48 hours after receiving the written test results from the RPR. A retest will consist of all the sampling and testing procedures contained in paragraph 404-6.1d. Only one resampling per lot will be permitted.

(1) A redefined PWL will be calculated for the resampled lot. The number of tests used to calculate the redefined PWL will include the initial tests made for that lot plus the retests.

(2) The cost for resampling and retesting shall be borne by the Contractor.

b. Payment for resampled lots. The redefined PWL for a resampled lot will be used to calculate the payment for that lot in accordance with Table 5.

c. Outliers. Check for outliers in accordance with ASTM E178, at a significance level of 5%.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

404-7.1 Measurement. Asphalt shall be measured by the number of tons (kg) of asphalt used in the accepted work. Batch weights or truck scale weights will be used to determine the basis for the tonnage.

BASIS OF PAYMENT

404-8.1 Payment. Payment for an accepted lot of asphalt mix pavement shall be made at the contract unit price per ton for the P-404 Fuel-Resistant Asphalt Surface Course and adjusted according to paragraph 404-8.1a.

- The total project payment for plant mix asphalt mix pavement shall not exceed [100%] of the product of the contract unit price and the total number of tons of asphalt surface mixture used in the accepted work.
- This price shall be full compensation for furnishing all materials, for all preparation, mixing, and placing of these materials, and for all labor, equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete the items.

The Engineer shall specify a value ranging from 100 to the maximum lot pay factor amount of 106%.

a. Basis of adjusted payment. The pay factor for each individual lot shall be calculated in accordance with Table 6. A pay factor shall be calculated for both mat density and air voids. The lot pay factor shall be the higher of the two values when calculations for both mat density and air voids are 100% or higher. The lot pay factor shall be the product of the two values when only one of the calculations for either mat density or air voids is 100% or higher. The lot pay factor shall be the lower of the two values

when calculations for both mat density and air voids are less than 100%. If PWL for joint density is less than 71% then the lot pay factor shall be reduced by 5% but be no higher than 95%.

For each lot accepted, the adjusted contract unit price shall be the product of the lot pay factor for the lot and the contract unit price. Payment shall be subject to the total project payment limitation specified in paragraph 404-8.1. Payment in excess of 100% for accepted lots of asphalt shall be used to offset payment for accepted lots of asphalt mix pavement that achieve a lot pay factor less than 100%.

Table 6. Price adjustment schedule¹

Percentage of material within the specification limit (PWL)	Percent of Contract Unit Price to be Paid
96-100	106
90-95	PWL + 10
75-89 0.5	PWL + 55.0
55-74 1.4	PWL - 12.0
Below 55	Reject ²

¹ Although it is theoretically possible to achieve a pay factor of 106% for each lot, actual payment above 100% shall be subject to the total payment limitation specified in paragraph 404-8.1, and the total project payment limitation shall be reduced by the amount withheld for the rejected lot.

² The lot shall be removed and replaced. However, the RPR and Owner may decide to accept the deficient lot. In that case, if the RPR and Owner decide that the lot shall not be removed, it will be paid for at 50% of the contract price.

For each lot accepted, the adjusted contract unit price shall be the product of the lot pay factor for the lot and the contract unit price. Payment shall be subject to the total project payment limitation specified in paragraph 404-8.1. Payment in excess of 100% for accepted lots of asphalt mix pavement shall be used to offset payment for accepted lots of asphalt mix pavement that achieve a lot factor less than 100%.

Payment for sublots that do not meet grade for over 25% of the subplot shall not be more than 95%.

b. Payment. Payment will be made under:

Item P-404-8.1 Fuel-Resistant Asphalt Mix Pavement Surface Course -- per ton (kg)

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM International (ASTM)

ASTM C29	Standard Test Method for Bulk Density ("Unit Weight") and Voids in Aggregate
ASTM C88	Standard Test Method for Soundness of Aggregates by Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate
ASTM C117	Standard Test Method for Materials Finer than 75-μm (No.200) Sieve in Mineral Aggregates by Washing
ASTM C127	Standard Test Method for Density, Relative Density (Specific Gravity) and Absorption of Coarse Aggregate

ASTM C128	Standard Test Method for Density, Relative Density (Specific Gravity), and Absorption of Fine Aggregate
ASTM C131	Standard Test Method for Resistance to Degradation of Small-Size Coarse Aggregate by Abrasion and Impact in the Los Angeles Machine
ASTM C136	Standard Test Method for Sieve or Screen Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates
ASTM C142	Standard Test Method for Clay Lumps and Friable Particles in Aggregates
ASTM C183	Standard Practice for Sampling and the Amount of Testing of Hydraulic Cement
ASTM C566	Standard Test Method for Total Evaporable Moisture Content of Aggregate by Drying
ASTM D36	Standard Test Method for Softening Point of Bitumen (Ring-and-Ball Apparatus)
ASTM D75	Standard Practice for Sampling Aggregates
ASTM D242	Standard Specification for Mineral Filler for Bituminous Paving Mixtures
ASTM D946	Standard Specification for Penetration Graded Asphalt Cement for Use in Pavement Construction
ASTM D979	Standard Practice for Sampling Bituminous Paving Mixtures
ASTM D1073	Standard Specification for Fine Aggregate for Bituminous Paving Mixtures
ASTM D1188	Standard Test Method for Bulk Specific Gravity and Density of Compacted Bituminous Mixtures Using Coated Samples
ASTM D1461	Standard Test Method for Moisture or Volatile Distillates in Bituminous Paving Mixtures
ASTM D2041	Standard Test Method for Theoretical Maximum Specific Gravity and Density of Bituminous Paving Mixtures
ASTM D2172	Standard Test Method for Quantitative Extraction of Bitumen from Bituminous Paving Mixtures
ASTM D2419	Standard Test Method for Sand Equivalent Value of Soils and Fine Aggregate
ASTM D2489	Standard Practice for Estimating Degree of Particle Coating of Bituminous-Aggregate Mixtures
ASTM D2726	Standard Test Method for Bulk Specific Gravity and Density of Non-Absorptive Compacted Bituminous Mixtures
ASTM D2950	Standard Test Method for Density of Bituminous Concrete in Place by Nuclear Methods
ASTM D2995	Standard Practice for Estimating Application Rate of Bituminous Distributors

ASTM D3203	Standard Test Method for Percent Air Voids in Compacted Dense and Open Bituminous Paving Mixtures
ASTM D3381	Standard Specification for Viscosity-Graded Asphalt Cement for Use in Pavement Construction
ASTM D3665	Standard Practice for Random Sampling of Construction Materials
ASTM D3666	Standard Specification for Minimum Requirements for Agencies Testing and Inspecting Road and Paving Materials
ASTM D3699	Standard Specification for Kerosine
ASTM D4125	Standard Test Methods for Asphalt Content of Bituminous Mixtures by the Nuclear Method
ASTM D4318	Standard Test Method for Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit, and Plasticity Index of Soils
ASTM D4552	Standard Practice for Classifying Hot-Mix Recycling Agents
ASTM D4791	Standard Test Method for Flat Particles, Elongated Particles, or Flat and Elongated Particles in Coarse Aggregate
ASTM D4867	Standard Test Method for Effect of Moisture on Asphalt Concrete Paving Mixtures
ASTM D5444	Standard Test Method for Mechanical Size Analysis of Extracted Aggregate
ASTM D5821	Standard Test Method for Determining the Percentage of Fractured Particles in Coarse Aggregate
ASTM D6084	Standard Test Method for Elastic Recovery of Bituminous Materials by Durometer
ASTM D6307	Standard Test Method for Asphalt Content of Hot-Mix Asphalt by Ignition Method
ASTM D6373	Standard Specification for Performance Graded Asphalt Binder
ASTM D6926	Standard Practice for Preparation of Bituminous Specimens Using Marshall Apparatus
ASTM D6927	Standard Test Method for Marshall Stability and Flow of Bituminous Mixtures
ASTM D7173	Standard Practice for Determining the Separation Tendency of Polymer from Polymer Modified Asphalt
ASTM E11	Standard Specification for Woven Wire Test Sieve Cloth and Test Sieves
ASTM E178	Standard Practice for Dealing with Outlying Observations
ASTM E2133	Standard Test Method for Using a Rolling Inclinator to Measure Longitudinal and Transverse Profiles of a Traveled Surface
Asphalt Institute (AI)	
MS-2	Mix Design Manual, 7th Edition

American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO)

AASHTO M156	Standard Specification for Requirements for Mixing Plants for Hot-Mixed, Hot-Laid Bituminous Paving Mixtures
AASHTO T329	Standard Method of Test for Moisture Content of Asphalt Mixtures by Oven Method
AASHTO M320	Standard Specification for Performance-Graded Asphalt Binder

END OF ITEM P-404

Page Intentionally Blank

Part 7 – Rigid Pavement

Item P-501 Cement Concrete Pavement

This specification is to be used for the surface course for airfield rigid pavements subject to aircraft loadings greater than 30,000 pounds. For airfield pavement projects at non primary airports, serving aircraft less than 60,000 pounds (27216 kg), state highway specifications may be used in states where the state has requested and received FAA approval to use state highway specifications.

State highway department material specifications may be used for access roads, perimeter roads, and other pavements subject to aircraft loading less than or equal to 30,000 pounds.

When state highway material specifications are used, include all applicable/approved state specifications in the contract documents. State specifications must include the material requirements of paragraph 501-2.1 for reactivity.

DESCRIPTION

501-1.1 This work shall consist of pavement composed of cement concrete [with reinforcement] [without reinforcement] constructed on a prepared underlying surface in accordance with these specifications and shall conform to the lines, grades, thickness, and typical cross-sections shown on the plans. The terms cement concrete, hydraulic cement concrete, and concrete are interchangeable in this specification.

The Engineer shall specify with or without reinforcement. Item P-610, Cement Concrete shall be used for sign bases and other formed concrete structures.

The dimensions and depth of the concrete shall be as defined by the Engineer's pavement design performed in accordance with advisory circular (AC) 150/5320-6, Airport Pavement Design and Evaluation and FAARFIELD. The current version of FAARFIELD is available at: www.faa.gov/airports/engineering/design_software/

MATERIALS

501-2.1 Aggregates.

a. Reactivity. Fine and Coarse aggregates to be used in PCC on this project shall be tested and evaluated by the Contractor for alkali-aggregate reactivity in accordance with both ASTM C1260 and

ASTM C1567. Tests must be representative of aggregate sources which will be providing material for production. ASTM C1260 and ASTM C1567 tests may be run concurrently.

(1) Coarse aggregate and fine aggregate shall be tested separately in accordance with ASTM C1260, however, the length of test shall be extended to 28 days (30 days from casting). Tests must have been completed within 6 months of the date of the concrete mix submittal.

(2) The combined coarse and fine aggregate shall be tested in accordance with ASTM C1567, modified for combined aggregates, using the proposed mixture design proportions of aggregates, cementitious materials, and/or specific reactivity reducing chemicals. If the expansion does not exceed 0.10% at 28 days, the proposed combined materials will be accepted. If the expansion is greater than 0.10% at 28 days, the aggregates will not be accepted unless adjustments to the combined materials mixture can reduce the expansion to less than 0.10% at 28 days, or new aggregates shall be evaluated and tested.

(3) If lithium nitrate is proposed for use with or without supplementary cementitious materials, the aggregates shall be tested in accordance with Corps of Engineers (COE) Concrete Research Division (CRD) C662 in lieu of ASTM C1567. If lithium nitrate admixture is used, it shall be nominal 30% $\pm$ 0.5% weight lithium nitrate in water. If the expansion does not exceed 0.10% at 28 days, the proposed combined materials will be accepted. If the expansion is greater than 0.10% at 28 days, the aggregates will not be accepted unless adjustments to the combined materials mixture can reduce the expansion to less than 0.10% at 28 days, or new aggregates shall be evaluated and tested.

b. Fine aggregate. Grading of the fine aggregate, as delivered to the mixer, shall conform to the requirements of ASTM C33 and the parameters identified in the fine aggregate material requirements below. Fine aggregate material requirements and deleterious limits are shown in the table below.

Fine Aggregate Material Requirements		
Soundness of Aggregates by Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate	Loss after 5 cycles: 10% maximum using Sodium sulfate - or - 15% maximum using magnesium sulfate	ASTM C88
Sand Equivalent	[45] minimum	ASTM D2419
Fineness Modulus (FM)	$2.50 \leq FM \leq 3.40$	ASTM C136
Limits for Deleterious Substances in Fine Aggregate for Concrete		
Clay lumps and friable particles	1.0% maximum	ASTM C142
Coal and lignite	0.5% using a medium with a density of Sp. Gr. of 2.0	ASTM C123
Total Deleterious Material	1.0% maximum	

c. Coarse aggregate. The maximum size coarse aggregate shall be [___].

Aggregates delivered to the mixer shall be clean, hard, uncoated aggregates consisting of crushed stone, crushed or uncrushed gravel, air-cooled iron blast furnace slag, crushed recycled concrete pavement, or a combination. The aggregates shall have no known history of detrimental pavement staining. Steel blast furnace slag shall not be permitted. Coarse aggregate material requirements and deleterious limits are shown in the table below; washing may be required to meet aggregate requirements.

Select maximum aggregate size (typically 1-1/2-inch, 1-inch, or 3/4-inch) based on what is locally available and considering freeze-thaw vulnerability.

Dust and other coatings may need to be removed from the aggregate by washing in order to meet material requirements.

On large projects and/or projects that span multiple construction seasons, additional aggregate tests may be necessary to validate consistency of aggregate produced and delivered for the project.

Some aggregates may contain ferrous sulfides and iron oxides which can cause stains on exposed concrete surfaces. In areas where staining has been a problem or is suspected, the Engineer should verify that producers and aggregate suppliers have taken steps to minimize the inclusion of any ferrous sulfides or iron oxides in aggregate to be used in the project.

If there is a concern that these may exist, a known indicator to identify staining particles is to immerse the aggregate in a lime slurry. If staining particles are present, a blue-green gelatinous precipitate will form within five (5) to 10 minutes, rapidly changing to a brown color on exposure to air and light. The reaction should be complete in 30 minutes. If no brown gelatinous precipitate forms, there is little chance of reaction in concrete. (Portland Concrete Association, Design and Control of Concrete Mixtures)

Coarse Aggregate Material Requirements

Material Test	Requirement	Standard
Resistance to Degradation	Loss: 40% maximum	ASTM C131
Soundness of Aggregates by Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate	Loss after 5 cycles: 12% maximum using Sodium sulfate - or - 18% maximum using magnesium sulfate	ASTM C88
Flat, Elongated, or Flat and Elongated Particles	8% maximum, by weight, of flat, elongated, or flat and elongated particles at 5:1 for any size group coarser than 3/8 (9.5 mm) sieve ¹	ASTM D4791
Bulk density of slag ²	Weigh not less than 70 pounds per cubic foot (1.12 Mg/cubic meter)	ASTM C29
[D-cracking (Freeze-Thaw) ³	Durability factor ≥ 95	ASTM C666]

¹ A flat particle is one having a ratio of width to thickness greater than five (5); an elongated particle is one having a ratio of length to width greater than five (5).

² Only required if slag is specified.

[³ Coarse aggregate may only be accepted from sources that have a 20-year service history for the same gradation to be supplied with no history of D-Cracking. Aggregates that do not have a 20-year record of service free from major repairs (less than 5% of slabs replaced) in similar conditions without D-cracking shall not be used unless the material currently being produced has a durability factor greater than or equal to 95 per ASTM C666. The Contractor shall submit a current certification and test results to verify the aggregate acceptability. Test results

will only be accepted from a State Department of Transportation (DOT) materials laboratory or an accredited laboratory. Certification and test results which are not dated or which are over one (1) year old or which are for different gradations will not be accepted. 1

In areas where D-cracking is not a concern, delete the D-cracking (ASTM C666) and corresponding footnote in the above table.

Crushed granite, calcite cemented sandstone, quartzite, basalt, diabase, rhyolite or trap rock are considered to meet the D-cracking test requirements but must meet all other quality tests specified in Item P-501.

In areas of freeze-thaw that have had problems with Chert popouts, prior to reducing the limit on Chert verify that aggregate sources are available that can meet specification. Very rare for sedimentary deposits to meet requirements less than 1%. Elimination of Chert may require that contractor utilize non sedimentary aggregates.

The amount of deleterious material in the coarse aggregate shall not exceed the following limits:

Limits for Deleterious Substances in Coarse Aggregate

Deleterious material	ASTM	Percentage by Mass
Clay Lumps and friable particles	ASTM C142	1.0
Material finer than No. 200 sieve (75 µm)	ASTM C117	1.0 ¹
Lightweight particles	ASTM C123 using a medium with a density of Sp. Gr. of 2.0	0.5
Chert ² (less than 2.40 Sp Gr.)	ASTM C123 using a medium with a density of Sp. Gr. of 2.40)	[0.1] ³

¹ The limit for material finer than 75-µm is allowed to be increased to 1.5% for crushed aggregates consisting of dust of fracture that is essentially free from clay or shale. Test results supporting acceptance of increasing limit to 1.5% with statement indicating material is dust of fracture must be submitted with Concrete mix. Acceptable techniques to characterizing these fines include methylene blue adsorption or X-ray diffraction analysis.

² Chert and aggregates with less than 2.4 specific gravity.

³ The limit for chert may be increased to 1.0 percent by mass in areas not subject to severe freeze and thaw.

d. Combined aggregate gradation. This specification is targeted for a combined aggregate gradation developed following the guidance presented in United States Air Force Engineering Technical Letter (ETL) 97-5: Proportioning Concrete Mixtures with Graded Aggregates for Rigid Airfield Pavements. Base the aggregate grading upon a combination of all the aggregates (coarse and fine) to be used for the mixture proportioning. Three aggregate sizes may be required to achieve an optimized combined gradation that will produce a workable concrete mixture for its intended use. Use aggregate gradations that produce concrete mixtures with well-graded or optimized aggregate combinations. The Contractor shall submit complete mixture information necessary to calculate the volumetric components of the mixture. The combined aggregate grading shall meet the following requirements:

(1) The materials selected and the proportions used shall be such that when the Coarseness Factor (CF) and the Workability Factor (WF) are plotted on a diagram as described in paragraph 501-2.1d(4) below, the point thus determined shall fall within the parallelogram described therein.

(2) The CF shall be determined from the following equation:

$$CF = \frac{\text{(cumulative percent retained on the 3/8 in. (9.5 mm) sieve)}(100)}{\text{(cumulative percent retained on the No. 8 (2.36 mm) sieve)}}$$

(3) The WF is defined as the percent passing the No. 8 (2.36 mm) sieve based on the combined gradation. However, WF shall be adjusted, upwards only, by 2.5 percentage points for each 94 pounds (42 kg) of cementitious material per cubic meter yard greater than 564 pounds per cubic yard (335 kg per cubic meter).

(4) A diagram shall be plotted using a rectangular scale with WF on the Y-axis with units from 20 (bottom) to 45 (top), and with CF on the X-axis with units from 80 (left side) to 30 (right side). On this diagram a parallelogram shall be plotted with corners at the following coordinates (CF-75, WF-28), (CF-75, WF-40), (CF-45, WF-32.5), and (CF-45, WF-44.5). If the point determined by the intersection of the computed CF and WF does not fall within the above parallelogram, the grading of each size of aggregate used and the proportions selected shall be changed as necessary. The point determined by the plotting of the CF and WF may be adjusted during production ± 3 WF and ± 5 CF. Adjustments to gradation may not take the point outside of the parallelogram.

e. Contractors combined aggregate gradation. The Contractor shall submit their combined aggregate gradation using the following format:

Contractor's Combined Aggregate Gradation

Sieve Size	Contractor's Concrete mix Gradation (Percent passing by weight)
2 inch (50 mm)	*
1-1/2 inch (37.5 mm)	*
1 inch (25.0 mm)	*
3/4 inch (19.0 mm)	*
1/2 inch (12.5 mm)	*
3/8 inch (9.5 mm)	*
No. 4 (4.75 mm)	*
No. 8 (2.36 mm)	*
No. 16 (1.18 mm)	*
No. 30 (600 μ m)	*
No. 50 (300 μ m)	*
No. 100 (150 μ m)	*

Table remains blank until the Contractor submits the concrete mix.

Reference United States Air Force Engineering Technical Letter (ETL) 97-5: Proportioning Concrete Mixtures with Graded Aggregates for Rigid Airfield Pavements. The ETL is available at the following website:

<https://www.wbdg.org/ffc/dod/supplemental-technical-criteria/tspwg-m-3-250-04-97-05>

501-2.2 Cement. Cement shall conform to the requirements of ASTM [] Type [].

The Engineer shall specify all of the following that are acceptable for use on the project:

ASTM C150 - Type I, II, or V.

ASTM C595 - Type IP, IS, IL.

ASTM C1157 – Types GU, HS, MH.

Other cements may be specified with concurrence of the FAA.

Low alkali cements (less than 0.6% equivalent alkali, the low reactivity option in ASTM C595, or Option R in ASTM C1157) shall be specified.

501-2.3 Cementitious materials.

a. Fly ash. Fly ash shall meet the requirements of ASTM C618, with the exception of loss of ignition, where the maximum shall be less than 6%. Fly ash shall have a Calcium Oxide (CaO) content of less than 15% and a total alkali content less than 3% per ASTM C311. The Contractor shall furnish the previous three most recent, consecutive ASTM C618 reports for each source of fly ash proposed in the concrete mix, and shall furnish each additional report as they become available during the project. The reports can be used for acceptance or the material may be tested independently by the Resident Project Representative (RPR).

b. Slag cement (ground granulated blast furnace (GGBF)). Slag cement shall conform to ASTM C989, Grade 100 or Grade 120. Slag cement shall be used only at a rate between 25% and 55% of the total cementitious material by mass.

c. Raw or calcined natural pozzolan. Natural pozzolan shall be raw or calcined and conform to ASTM C618, Class N, including the optional requirements for uniformity and effectiveness in controlling Alkali-Silica reaction and shall have a loss on ignition not exceeding 6%. Class N pozzolan for use in mitigating Alkali-Silica Reactivity shall have a total available alkali content less than 3%.

[d. Ultrafine fly ash and ultrafine pozzolan. UltraFine Fly Ash (UFFA) and UltraFine Pozzolan (UFP) shall conform to ASTM C618, Class F or N, and the following additional requirements:

(1) The strength activity index at 28 days of age shall be at least 95% of the control specimens.

(2) The average particle size shall not exceed 6 microns.]

501-2.4 Joint seal. The joint seal for the joints in the concrete pavement shall meet the requirements of [Item P-604] [Item P-605] and shall be of the type specified in the plans.

501-2.5 Isolation joint filler. Premolded joint filler for isolation joints shall conform to the requirements of ASTM D1751 or ASTM D1752 and shall be where shown on the plans. The filler for each joint shall be furnished in a single piece for the full depth and width required for the joint, unless otherwise specified by the RPR. When the use of more than one piece is required for a joint, the abutting ends shall be fastened securely and held accurately to shape by stapling or other positive fastening means satisfactory to the RPR.

501-2.6 Steel reinforcement. Reinforcing shall consist of [____] conforming to the requirements of ASTM [____].

The Engineer shall designate one of the following:

ASTM A615 Standard Specification for Deformed and Plain Carbon-Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement

ASTM A706 Standard Specification for Low-Alloy Steel Deformed and Plain Bars for Concrete Reinforcement

ASTM A775 Standard Specification for Epoxy-Coated Steel Reinforcing Bars

ASTM A934 Standard Specification for Epoxy-Coated Prefabricated Steel Reinforcing Bars

ASTM A1064 Standard Specification for Carbon-Steel Wire and Welded Wire Reinforcement, Plain and Deformed, for Concrete

ASTM A184 or A704 Bar mats

ASTM A1035 Standard Specification for Deformed and Plain, Low-Carbon, Chromium, Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement

ASTM A884 Standard Specification for Epoxy-Coated Steel Wire and Welded Wire Reinforcement

Welded wire fabric shall be furnished in flat sheets only.

Delete this paragraph when not applicable to the project.

501-2.7 Dowel and tie bars. Dowel bars shall be plain steel bars conforming to ASTM A615 and shall be free from burring or other deformation restricting slippage in the concrete.

a. Dowel Bars. Before delivery to the construction site each dowel bar shall be epoxy coated per ASTM A1078, Type 1, with a coating thickness after curing greater than 10 mils. Patched ends are not required for Type 1 coated dowels. The dowels shall be coated with a bond-breaker recommended by the manufacturer. Dowel sleeves or inserts are not permitted. Grout retention rings shall be fully circular metal or plastic devices capable of supporting the dowel until the grout hardens.

b. Tie Bars. Tie bars shall be deformed steel bars and conform to the requirements of ASTM A615. Tie bars designated as Grade 60 in ASTM A615 or ASTM A706 shall be used for construction requiring bent bars.

After coordination with the FAA regarding need and eligibility of additional corrosion protection, the Engineer may require additional corrosion protection or

resistance such as chromium dowel and tie bars meeting ASTM A1035; or stainless steel dowel and tie bars meeting ASTM A955.

501-2.8 Water. Water used in mixing or curing shall be potable. If water is taken from other sources considered non-potable, it shall meet the requirements of ASTM C1602.

501-2.9 Material for curing concrete. Curing materials shall conform to one of the following specifications:

- a. Liquid membrane-forming compounds for curing concrete shall conform to the requirements of ASTM C309, Type 2, Class A, or Class B.
- b. White polyethylene film for curing concrete shall conform to the requirements of ASTM C171.
- c. White burlap-polyethylene sheeting for curing concrete shall conform to the requirements of ASTM C171.
- d. Waterproof paper for curing concrete shall conform to the requirements of ASTM C171.

501-2.10 Admixtures. Admixtures shall conform to the following specifications:

a. Air-entraining admixtures. Air-entraining admixtures shall meet the requirements of ASTM C260 and shall consistently entrain the air content in the specified ranges under field conditions. The air-entraining agent and any water reducer admixture shall be compatible.

b. Water-reducing admixtures. Water-reducing admixture shall meet the requirements of ASTM C494, Type A, B, or D.

c. Other admixtures. The use of set retarding and set-accelerating admixtures shall be approved by the RPR prior to developing the concrete mix. Retarding admixtures shall meet the requirements of ASTM C494, Type A, B, or D and set-accelerating admixtures shall meet the requirements of ASTM C494, Type C. Calcium chloride and admixtures containing calcium chloride shall not be used.

d. Lithium Nitrate. The lithium admixture shall be a nominal 30% aqueous solution of Lithium Nitrate, with a density of 10 pounds/gallon (1.2 kg/L), and shall have the approximate chemical form as shown below:

Lithium Admixture

Constituent	Limit (Percent by Mass)
LiNO ₃ (Lithium Nitrate)	30 ±0.5
SO ₄ (Sulfate Ion)	0.1 (max)
Cl (Chloride Ion)	0.2 (max)
Na (Sodium Ion)	0.1 (max)
K (Potassium Ion)	0.1 (max)

The lithium nitrate admixture dispensing and mixing operations shall be verified and certified by the lithium manufacturer's representative.

501-2.11 Epoxy-resin. All epoxy-resin materials shall be two-component materials conforming to the requirements of ASTM C881, Class as appropriate for each application temperature to be encountered, except that in addition, the materials shall meet the following requirements:

- a. Material for use for embedding dowels and anchor bolts shall be Type IV, Grade 3.
- b. Material for use as patching materials for complete filling of spalls and other voids and for use in preparing epoxy resin mortar shall be Type III, Grade as approved.
- c. Material for use for injecting cracks shall be Type IV, Grade 1.
- d. Material for bonding freshly mixed Portland cement concrete or mortar or freshly mixed epoxy resin concrete or mortar to hardened concrete shall be Type V, Grade as approved.

501-2.12 Bond Breaker. [Choke stone shall be an ASTM C33 Number 89 stone.]
 [Fabric shall meet the requirements of AASHTO M 288 Class I fabric with elongation not less than 50% at the specified strengths, with a weight not less than 14.5 oz/sy. A certificate of compliance (COC) shall be provided by the fabric manufacturer that the material may be used as a bond breaker.] [Liquid membrane forming compound shall be in accordance with paragraph 501-2.7.] [Not required.]

The Engineer must select the bond breaker when concrete pavement will be placed directly above the lean concrete base. Coordinate with paragraph 501-.

CONCRETE MIX

501-3.1. General. No concrete shall be placed until an acceptable concrete mix has been submitted to the RPR for review and the RPR has taken appropriate action. The RPR's review shall not relieve the Contractor of the responsibility to select and proportion the materials to comply with this section.

501-3.2 Concrete Mix Laboratory. The laboratory used to develop the concrete mix shall be accredited in accordance with ASTM C1077. The laboratory accreditation must be current and listed on the accrediting authority's website. All test methods required for developing the concrete mix must be included in the lab accreditation. A copy of the laboratory's current accreditation and accredited test methods shall be submitted to the RPR prior to start of construction.

501-3.3 Concrete Mix Proportions. Develop the mix using the procedures contained in Portland Cement Association (PCA) publication, "Design and Control of Concrete Mixtures." Concrete shall be proportioned to achieve a 28-day flexural strength that meets or exceeds the acceptance criteria contained in paragraph 501-6.6 for a flexural strength of [] psi per ASTM C78.

The Engineer shall specify a minimum contractual acceptance flexural strength for airport pavements sufficient to assure that the pavement achieves the design flexural strength prior to being placed in service. Note the design strength used in FAARFIELD structural analysis is approximately 5% higher than the construction acceptance strength e.g. if structural design strength is 650 psi (4482 kPa), then the construction acceptance strength would be approximately 620 psi (4275 kPa).

If local materials utilized consistently produce above the design strength limit with the minimum amount of cementitious material, the Engineer may allow a reduction in the minimum amount of cementitious material with approval of the FAA.

Due to variations in materials, operations, and testing, the average strength of concrete furnished by a supplier should be higher than the specified strength to ensure a good statistical chance of meeting the acceptance criteria throughout the duration of the job. The strength necessary to meet specification requirements depends on the producer's standard deviation of flexural test results and the accuracy that the value can be estimated from historic data for the same or similar materials.

For pavements designed to accommodate aircraft gross weights of 60,000 pounds (27215 kg) or less, this section may be modified to indicate that concrete shall be designed to achieve a 28-day compressive strength that meets or exceeds the acceptance criteria for a compressive strength of 4,400 psi (30337 kPa) per ASTM C39.

The use of materials that meet state highway specifications for airfield pavement construction materials is permitted at non-primary airports serving aircraft that do not exceed 60,000 pounds gross weight.

The use of State highway specifications for materials requires a Modification of Standards in accordance with FAA Order 5300.1. The project specification must include a copy of all referenced state specifications.

The minimum cementitious material shall be adequate to ensure a workable, durable mix. The minimum cementitious material (cement plus fly ash, or slag cement) shall be [] pounds per cubic yard ([] kg per cubic meter). The ratio of water to cementitious material, including free surface moisture on the aggregates but not including moisture absorbed by the aggregates shall be between 0.38 – 0.45 by weight.

A minimum total cementitious material content of 470 pounds per cubic yard (280 kg per cubic meter) should be specified. A higher minimum may be necessary to meet the specified strength when other cementitious materials are substituted or to meet durability requirements for severe freeze/thaw, deicer, or sulfate exposure.

The minimum total cementitious requirement should not be less than 517 pounds per cubic yard (310 kg per cubic meter) where severe freeze-thaw, deicer, or sulfate exposure is expected. The Engineer shall specify a maximum water/cementitious ratio of 0.45 unless a lower water/cementitious ratio is necessary for severe freeze/thaw, deicer, sulfate exposure, or other local conditions. A water/cementitious ratio of less than 0.38 shall be subject to approval by the Engineer and the FAA.

Flexural strength test specimens shall be prepared in accordance with ASTM C192 and tested in accordance with ASTM C78. At the start of the project, the Contractor shall determine an allowable slump as determined by ASTM C143 not to exceed 2 inches (50 mm) for slip-form placement. For fixed-form placement, the slump shall not exceed 3 inches (75 mm). For hand placement, the slump shall not exceed 4 inches (100 mm).

When the flexural design strength in paragraph 501-3.3 is to be accepted on the basis of compressive strength, the following procedure establishes the correlation between compressive and flexural strength for the concrete mix. Each concrete mix will require a separate correlation.

Cylinders/Beams

- a. Fabricate all beams and cylinders for each mixture from the same batch or blend of batches. Fabricate and cure all beams and cylinders in accordance with ASTM C192, using 6 × 6-inch (150 × 150 mm) steel beam forms and 6 × 12-inch (150 × 300 mm) single-use cylinder forms.
- b. Cure test beams from each mixture for 3, 7, 14, [28] and [90]-day flexural tests; three (3) beams to be tested per age.
- c. Cure test cylinders from each mixture for 3, 7, 14, [28] and [90]-day compressive strength tests; three (3) cylinders to be tested per age.
- d. Test beams in accordance with ASTM C78, cylinders in accordance with ASTM C39.
- e. Using the average strength for each age, plot all results on separate graphs for each w/c versus:
 - 3-day flexural strength
 - 7-day flexural strength
 - 14-day flexural strength
 - [28-day flexural strength]
 - [90-day flexural strength]
 - 3-day compressive strength
 - 7-day compressive strength
 - 14-day compressive strength
 - [28-day compressive strength]
 - [90-day compressive strength]
- f. From the above expected strengths for the selected mixture determine the following Correlation Ratios:
 - (1) Ratio of the 14-day compressive strength of the selected mixture to the [28] [90]-day flexural strength of the mixture (for acceptance).
 - (2) Ratio of the 7-day compressive strength of the selected mixture to the [28] [90]-day flexural strength of the mixture (for Contractor QC control).

g. If there is a change in materials, additional mixture design studies shall be made using the new materials and new Correlation Ratios shall be determined.

h. No concrete pavement shall be placed until the Engineer has approved the Contractor's mixture proportions. The approved water-cementitious materials ratio shall not exceed the maximum value specified.

The results of the concrete mix shall include a statement giving the maximum nominal coarse aggregate size and the weights and volumes of each ingredient proportioned on a one cubic yard (meter) basis. Aggregate quantities shall be based on the mass in a saturated surface dry condition.

If a change in source(s) is made, or admixtures added or deleted from the mix, a new concrete mix must be submitted to the RPR for approval.

The RPR may request samples at any time for testing, prior to and during production, to verify the quality of the materials and to ensure conformance with the applicable specifications.

501-3.4 Concrete Mix submittal. The concrete mix shall be submitted to the RPR at least [30] days prior to the start of operations. The submitted concrete mix shall not be more than 180 days old and must use the materials to be used for production for the project. Production shall not begin until the concrete mix is approved in writing by the RPR.

Each of the submitted concrete mixes (i.e, slip form, side form machine finish and side form hand finish) shall be stamped or sealed by the responsible professional Engineer of the laboratory and shall include the following items and quantities as a minimum:

- Certified material test reports for aggregate in accordance with paragraph 501-2.1. Certified reports must include all tests required; reporting each test, test method, test result, and requirement specified (criteria).
- Combined aggregate gradations and analysis; and including plots of the fine aggregate fineness modulus.
- Reactivity Test Results.
- Coarse aggregate quality test results, including deleterious materials.
- Fine aggregate quality test results, including deleterious materials.
- Mill certificates for cement and supplemental cementitious materials.
- Certified test results for all admixtures, including Lithium Nitrate if applicable.
- Specified flexural strength, slump, and air content.
- Recommended proportions/volumes for proposed mixture and trial water-cementitious materials ratio, including actual slump and air content.
- Flexural and compressive strength summaries and plots, including all individual beam and cylinder breaks.
- Correlation ratios for acceptance testing and Contractor QC testing, when applicable.
- Historical record of test results documenting production standard deviation, when applicable.

501-3.5 Cementitious materials.

a. Fly ash. When fly ash is used as a partial replacement for cement, the replacement rate shall be determined from laboratory trial mixes, and shall be between 20 and 30% by weight of the total cementitious material. If fly ash is used in conjunction with slag cement the maximum replacement rate shall not exceed 10% by weight of total cementitious material.

b. Slag cement (ground granulated blast furnace (GGBF)). Slag cement may be used. The slag cement, or slag cement plus fly ash if both are used, may constitute between 25 to 55% of the total cementitious material by weight.

c. Raw or calcined natural pozzolan. Natural pozzolan may be used in the concrete mix. When pozzolan is used as a partial replacement for cement, the replacement rate shall be determined from laboratory trial mixes, and shall be between 20 and 30% by weight of the total cementitious material. If pozzolan is used in conjunction with slag cement the maximum replacement rate shall not exceed 10% by weight of total cementitious material.

[d. Ultrafine fly ash (UFFA) and ultrafine pozzolan (UFP). UFFA and UFP may be used in the concrete mix with the RPR's approval. When UFFA and UFP is used as a partial replacement for cement, the replacement rate shall be determined from laboratory trial mixes, and shall be between 7% and 16% by weight of the total cementitious material.]

501-3.6 Admixtures.

a. Air-entraining admixtures. Air-entraining admixture are to be added in such a manner that will ensure uniform distribution of the agent throughout the batch. The air content of freshly mixed air-entrained concrete shall be based upon trial mixes with the materials to be used in the work adjusted to produce concrete of the required plasticity and workability. The percentage of air in the mix shall be []. Air content shall be determined by testing in accordance with ASTM C231 for gravel and stone coarse aggregate and ASTM C173 for slag and other highly porous coarse aggregate.

The Engineer must specify the appropriate air content for the exposure level for the project location at the maximum aggregate size specified in paragraph 501-2.1(c).

Recommended Air Content (Percent)

Exposure Level	Maximum Size Aggregate inch (mm)				
	2 inch (50 mm)	1-1/2 inch (37.5 mm)	1 inch (25.0 mm)	3/4 inch (19.0 mm)	1/2 inch (12.5 mm)
Mild	2.0%	2.5%	3.0%	3.5%	4.0%
Moderate	4.0%	4.5%	4.5%	5.0%	5.5%
Severe	5.0%	5.5%	6.0%	6.0%	7.0%

1. Mild exposure - When desired for other than durability, such as to improve workability. Used where pavement will not be exposed to freezing or to deicing agents.
2. Moderate exposure - Service in a climate where freezing is expected but where the concrete will not be continually exposed to moisture or free water for long periods prior to freezing and will not be exposed to deicing agents or other aggressive chemicals.
3. Severe exposure - Concrete which is exposed to deicing chemicals or other aggressive agents or where the concrete may become highly saturated by continual contact with moisture or free water prior to freezing.

b. Water-reducing admixtures. Water-reducing admixtures shall be added to the mix in the manner recommended by the manufacturer and in the amount necessary to comply with the specification requirements. Tests shall be conducted with the materials to be used in the work, in accordance with ASTM C494.

c. Other admixtures. Set controlling, and other approved admixtures shall be added to the mix in the manner recommended by the manufacturer and in the amount necessary to comply with the specification requirements. Tests shall be conducted with the materials to be used in the work, in accordance with ASTM C494.

d. Lithium nitrate. Lithium nitrate shall be added to the mix in the manner recommended by the manufacturer and in the amount necessary to comply with the specification requirements in accordance with paragraph 501-2.10d.

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

501-4.1 Control Strip. The control strip(s) shall be to the next planned joint after the initial 250 feet (75 m) of each type of pavement construction (slip-form pilot lane, slip-form fill-in lane, or fixed form). The Contractor shall demonstrate, in the presence of the RPR, that the materials, concrete mix, equipment, construction processes, and quality control processes meet the requirements of the specifications. The concrete mixture shall be extruded from the paver meeting the edge slump tolerance and with little or no finishing. Pilot, fill-in, and fixed-form control strips will be accepted separately. Minor adjustments to the mix design may be required to place an acceptable control strip. The production mix will be the adjusted mix design used to place the acceptable control strip. Upon acceptance of the control strip by the RPR, the Contractor must use the same equipment, materials, and construction methods for the remainder of concrete paving. Any adjustments to processes or materials must be approved in advance by the RPR. Acceptable control strips will meet edge slump tolerance and surface acceptable with little or no finishing, air content within action limits, strength equal or greater than requirements of P501-3.3. The control strip will be considered one lot for payment (no sublots required for control strip). Payment will only be made for an acceptable control strip in accordance with paragraph 501-8.1 using a lot pay factor equal to 100.

501-4.2 Equipment. The Contractor is responsible for the proper operation and maintenance of all equipment necessary for handling materials and performing all parts of the work to meet this specification.

a. Plant and equipment. The plant and mixing equipment shall conform to the requirements of ASTM C94 and/or ASTM C685. Each truck mixer shall have attached in a prominent place a manufacturer's nameplate showing the capacity of the drum in terms of volume of mixed concrete and the speed of rotation of the mixing drum or blades. The truck mixers shall be examined daily for changes in condition due to accumulation of hard concrete or mortar or wear of blades. The pickup and throwover blades shall be replaced when they have worn down 3/4 inch (19 mm) or more. The Contractor shall have a copy of the manufacturer's design on hand showing dimensions and arrangement of blades in reference to original height and depth.

Equipment for transferring and spreading concrete from the transporting equipment to the paving lane in front of the finishing equipment shall be provided. The equipment shall be specially manufactured, self-propelled transfer equipment which will accept the concrete outside the paving lane and will spread it evenly across the paving lane in front of the paver and strike off the surface evenly to a depth which permits the paver to operate efficiently.

b. Finishing equipment.

(1) Slip-form. The standard method of constructing concrete pavements shall be with an approved slip-form paving equipment designed and operated to spread, consolidate, screed, and finish the

freshly placed concrete in one complete pass of the machine so that the end result is a dense and homogeneous pavement which is achieved with a minimum of hand finishing. The paver-finisher shall be a heavy duty, self-propelled machine designed specifically for paving and finishing high quality concrete pavements.

(2) Fixed-form. On projects requiring less than [10,000 cubic yards (7650 cubic meters)] of concrete pavement or irregular areas at locations inaccessible to slip-form paving equipment, concrete pavement may be placed with equipment specifically designed for placement and finishing using stationary side forms. Methods and equipment shall be reviewed and accepted by the RPR. Hand screeding and float finishing may only be used on small irregular areas as allowed by the RPR.

The Engineer may reduce the quantity of concrete when fixed forms are allowed.

c. Vibrators. Vibrator shall be the internal type. The rate of vibration of each vibrating unit shall be sufficient to consolidate the pavement without segregation or voids. The number, spacing, and frequency shall be as necessary to provide a dense and homogeneous pavement and meet the recommendations of American Concrete Institute (ACI) 309R, Guide for Consolidation of Concrete. Adequate power to operate all vibrators shall be available on the paver. The vibrators shall be automatically controlled so that they shall be stopped as forward motion ceases. The Contractor shall provide an electronic or mechanical means to monitor vibrator status. The checks on vibrator status shall occur a minimum of two times per day or when requested by the RPR.

Hand held vibrators may only be used in irregular areas and shall meet the recommendations of ACI 309R, Guide for Consolidation of Concrete.

d. Concrete saws. The Contractor shall provide sawing equipment adequate in number of units and power to complete the sawing to the required dimensions. The Contractor shall provide at least one standby saw in good working order and a supply of saw blades at the site of the work at all times during sawing operations.

e. Fixed forms. Straight side fixed forms shall be made of steel and shall be furnished in sections not less than 10 feet (3 m) in length. Forms shall be provided with adequate devices for secure settings so that when in place they will withstand, without visible spring or settlement, the impact and vibration of the consolidating and finishing equipment. Forms with battered top surfaces and bent, twisted or broken forms shall not be used. Built-up forms shall not be used, except as approved by the RPR. The top face of the form shall not vary from a true plane more than 1/8 inch (3 mm) in 10 feet (3 m), and the upstanding leg shall not vary more than 1/4 inch (6 mm). The forms shall contain provisions for locking the ends of abutting sections together tightly for secure setting. Wood forms may be used under special conditions, when approved by the RPR. The forms shall extend the full depth of the pavement section.

501-4.3 Form setting. Forms shall be set to line and grade as shown on the plans, sufficiently in advance of the concrete placement, to ensure continuous paving operation. Forms shall be set to withstand, without visible spring or settlement, the impact and vibration of the consolidating and finishing equipment. Forms shall be cleaned and oiled prior to the concrete placement.

501-4.4 Base surface preparation prior to placement. Any damage to the prepared base, subbase, and subgrade shall be corrected full depth by the Contractor prior to concrete placement. The underlying surface shall be entirely free of frost when concrete is placed. The prepared grade shall be moistened with water, without saturating, immediately ahead of concrete placement to prevent rapid loss of moisture

from concrete. [Bond breaker shall be applied in accordance with 501-2.12.]

The Engineer should ensure the plans show that the appropriate prepared base, subbase, and subgrade extend a width sufficient to support the paving machine track without any noticeable displacement of the paver. Typical widths up to 3 feet (1 m) are required to support the paver track.

The Engineer will determine if a bond breaker is required and insert the appropriate P-specification for the project.

501-4.5 Handling, measuring, and batching material. Aggregate stockpiles shall be constructed and managed in such a manner that prevents segregation and intermixing of deleterious materials. Aggregates from different sources shall be stockpiled, weighed and batched separately at the concrete batch plant. Aggregates that have become segregated or mixed with earth or foreign material shall not be used. All aggregates produced or handled by hydraulic methods, and washed aggregates, shall be stockpiled or binned for draining at least 12 hours before being batched. Store and maintain all aggregates at a uniform moisture content prior to use. A continuous supply of materials shall be provided to the work to ensure continuous placement.

501-4.6 Mixing concrete. The concrete may be mixed at the work site, in a central mix plant or in truck mixers. The mixer shall be of an approved type and capacity. Mixing time shall be measured from the time all materials are placed into the drum until the drum is emptied into the truck. All concrete shall be mixed and delivered to the site in accordance with the requirements of ASTM C94 or ASTM C685.

Mixed concrete from the central mixing plant shall be transported in truck mixers, truck agitators, or non-agitating trucks. The elapsed time from the addition of cementitious material to the mix until the concrete is discharged from the truck should not exceed [30] minutes when the concrete is hauled in non-agitating trucks, nor 90 minutes when the concrete is hauled in truck mixers or truck agitators. In no case shall the temperature of the concrete when placed exceed 90°F (32°C). Retempering concrete by adding water or by other means will not be permitted. With transit mixers additional water may be added to the batch materials and additional mixing performed to increase the slump to meet the specified requirements provided the addition of water is performed within 45 minutes after the initial mixing operations and provided the water/cementitious ratio specified is not exceeded.

Depending on the location of the batch plant, this time can be adjusted. Batch plant location must be provided to ensure that the time limit is reasonable to allow for delivery and placement of concrete within the allotted time.

501-4.7 Weather Limitations on mixing and placing. No concrete shall be mixed, placed, or finished when the natural light is insufficient, unless an adequate and approved artificial lighting system is operated.

a. Cold weather. Unless authorized in writing by the RPR, mixing and concreting operations shall be discontinued when a descending air temperature in the shade and away from artificial heat reaches 40°F (4°C) and shall not be resumed until an ascending air temperature in the shade and away from artificial heat reaches 35°F (2°C).

The aggregate shall be free of ice, snow, and frozen lumps before entering the mixer. The temperature of the mixed concrete shall not be less than 50°F (10°C) at the time of placement. Concrete shall not be placed on frozen material nor shall frozen aggregates be used in the concrete.

When concreting is authorized during cold weather, water and/or the aggregates may be heated to not more than 150°F (66°C). The apparatus used shall heat the mass uniformly and shall be arranged to preclude the possible occurrence of overheated areas which might be detrimental to the materials.

Curing during cold weather shall be in accordance with paragraph 501-4.13d.

Information regarding cold weather concreting practices may be found in ACI 306R, Cold Weather Concreting.

b. Hot weather. During periods of hot weather when the maximum daily air temperature exceeds 85°F (30°C), the following precautions shall be taken.

The forms and/or the underlying surface shall be sprinkled with water immediately before placing the concrete. The concrete shall be placed at the coolest temperature practicable, and in no case shall the temperature of the concrete when placed exceed 90°F (32°C). The aggregates and/or mixing water shall be cooled as necessary to maintain the concrete temperature at or not more than the specified maximum.

The concrete placement shall be protected from exceeding an evaporation rate of 0.2 psf (0.98 kg/m² per hour) per hour. When conditions are such that problems with plastic cracking can be expected, and particularly if any plastic cracking begins to occur, the Contractor shall immediately take such additional measures as necessary to protect the concrete surface. If the Contractor's measures are not effective in preventing plastic cracking, paving operations shall be immediately stopped.

Curing during hot weather shall be in accordance with paragraph 501-4.13e.

Information regarding hot weather concreting practices may be found in ACI 305R, Hot Weather Concreting.

c. Temperature management program. Prior to the start of paving operation for each day of paving, the Contractor shall provide the RPR with a Temperature Management Program for the concrete to be placed to assure that uncontrolled cracking is avoided. (Federal Highway Administration HIPERPAV 3 is one example of a temperature management program.) As a minimum, the program shall address the following items:

(1) Anticipated tensile strains in the fresh concrete as related to heating and cooling of the concrete material.

(2) Anticipated weather conditions such as ambient temperatures, wind velocity, and relative humidity; and anticipated evaporation rate using Figure 19-9, PCA, Design and Control of Concrete Mixtures.

(3) Anticipated timing of initial sawing of joint.

(4) Anticipated number and type of saws to be used.

Federal Highway Administration HIPERPAV 3 is one example of a temperature management program. The software is available at <http://www.hiperpav.com/>

d. **Rain.** The Contractor shall have available materials for the protection of the concrete during inclement weather. Such protective materials shall consist of rolled polyethylene sheeting at least 4 mils (0.1 mm) thick of sufficient length and width to cover the plastic concrete slab and any edges. The sheeting may be mounted on either the paver or a separate movable bridge from which it can be unrolled without dragging over the plastic concrete surface. When rain appears imminent, all paving operations shall stop and all available personnel shall begin covering the surface of the unhardened concrete with the protective covering.

501-4.8 Concrete Placement. At any point in concrete conveyance, the free vertical drop of the concrete from one point to another or to the underlying surface shall not exceed 3 feet (1 m). The finished concrete product must be dense and homogeneous, without segregation and conforming to the standards in this specification. Backhoes and grading equipment shall not be used to distribute the concrete in front of the paver. Front end loaders will not be used. All concrete shall be consolidated without voids or segregation, including under and around all load-transfer devices, joint assembly units, and other features embedded in the pavement. Hauling equipment or other mechanical equipment can be permitted on adjoining previously constructed pavement when the concrete strength reaches [a flexural strength of 550 psi (3.8 MPa)][a compressive strength of 3,100 psi (21.4 MPa)], based on the average of four field cured specimens per 2,000 cubic yards (1,530 cubic meters) of concrete placed. The Contractor must determine that the above minimum strengths are adequate to protect the pavement from overloads due to the construction equipment proposed for the project.

The Engineer shall choose flexural or compressive strength based on concrete mix requirement. The strength needed for construction traffic is dependent upon the loads it will be exposed to. The strength needed for a thin pavement at a small airport may be more than is needed for a thick pavement at a large airport. Coordinate the strength in 501-4.8, 501-4.17 and 501-4.18. Engineer must determine strength required to accommodate construction loads (e.g. hauling, placing, etc.) without damaging pavement, for each project. Strength needed can be adjusted during construction if contractor provides detailed engineering calculations supporting actual construction loads.

The Contractor shall have available materials for the protection of the concrete during cold, hot and/or inclement weather in accordance with paragraph 501-4.7.

a. **Slip-form construction.** The concrete shall be distributed uniformly into final position by a self-propelled slip-form paver without delay. The alignment and elevation of the paver shall be regulated from outside reference lines established for this purpose. The paver shall vibrate the concrete for the full width and depth of the strip of pavement being placed and the vibration shall be adequate to provide a consistency of concrete that will stand normal to the surface with sharp well-defined edges. The sliding forms shall be rigidly held together laterally to prevent spreading of the forms. The plastic concrete shall be effectively consolidated by internal vibration with transverse vibrating units for the full width of the

pavement and/or a series of equally placed longitudinal vibrating units. The space from the outer edge of the pavement to longitudinal unit shall not exceed 9 inches (23 cm) for slipform and at the end of the dowels for the fill-in lanes. The spacing of internal units shall be uniform and shall not exceed 18 inches (0.5 m).

The term internal vibration means vibrating units located within the specified thickness of pavement section.

The rate of vibration of each vibrating unit shall be sufficient to consolidate the pavement without, segregation, voids, or vibrator trails and the amplitude of vibration shall be sufficient to be perceptible on the surface of the concrete along the entire length of the vibrating unit and for a distance of at least one foot (30 cm). The frequency of vibration or amplitude should be adjusted proportionately with the rate of travel to result in a uniform density and air content. The paving machine shall be equipped with a tachometer or other suitable device for measuring and indicating the actual frequency of vibrations.

The concrete shall be held at a uniform consistency. The slip-form paver shall be operated with as nearly a continuous forward movement as possible and all operations of mixing, delivering, and spreading concrete shall be coordinated to provide uniform progress with stopping and starting of the paver held to a minimum. If for any reason, it is necessary to stop the forward movement of the paver, the vibratory and tamping elements shall also be stopped immediately. No tractive force shall be applied to the machine, except that which is controlled from the machine.

When concrete is being placed adjacent to an existing pavement, that part of the equipment which is supported on the existing pavement shall be equipped with protective pads on crawler tracks or rubber-tired wheels on which the bearing surface is offset to run a sufficient distance from the edge of the pavement to avoid breaking the pavement edge.

Not more than 15% of the total free edge of each 500-foot (150 m) segment of pavement, or fraction thereof, shall have an edge slump exceeding 1/4 inch (6 mm), and none of the free edge of the pavement shall have an edge slump exceeding 3/8 inch (9 mm). (The total free edge of 500 feet (150 m) of pavement will be considered the cumulative total linear measurement of pavement edge originally constructed as nonadjacent to any existing pavement; that is, 500 feet (150 m) of paving lane originally constructed as a separate lane will have 1,000 feet (300 m) of free edge, 500 feet (150 m) of fill-in lane will have no free edge, etc.). The area affected by the downward movement of the concrete along the pavement edge shall be limited to not more than 18 inches (0.5 m) from the edge.

When excessive edge slump cannot be corrected before the concrete has hardened, the area with excessive edge slump will be removed the full width of the slip form lane and replaced at the expense of the Contractor as directed by the RPR.

b. Fixed-form construction. Forms shall be drilled in advance of being placed to line and grade to accommodate tie bars / dowel bars where these are specified.

Immediately in advance of placing concrete and after all subbase operations are completed, side forms shall be trued and maintained to the required line and grade for a distance sufficient to prevent delay in placing.

Side forms shall remain in place at least 12 hours after the concrete has been placed, and in all cases until the edge of the pavement no longer requires the protection of the forms. Curing compound shall be applied to the concrete immediately after the forms have been removed.

Side forms shall be thoroughly cleaned and coated with a release agent each time they are used and before concrete is placed against them.

Concrete shall be spread, screed, shaped and consolidated by one or more self-propelled machines. These machines shall uniformly distribute and consolidate concrete without segregation so that the completed pavement will conform to the required cross-section with a minimum of handwork.

The number and capacity of machines furnished shall be adequate to perform the work required at a rate equal to that of concrete delivery. The equipment must be specifically designed for placement and finishing using stationary side forms. Methods and equipment shall be reviewed and accepted by the RPR.

Concrete for the full paving width shall be effectively consolidated by internal vibrators. The rate of vibration of each vibrating unit shall be sufficient to consolidate the pavement without segregation, voids, or leaving vibrator trails.

Power to vibrators shall be connected so that vibration ceases when forward or backward motion of the machine is stopped.

c. Consolidation. Concrete shall be consolidated with the specified type of lane-spanning, gang-mounted, mechanical, immersion type vibrating equipment mounted in front of the paver, supplemented, in rare instances as specified, by hand-operated vibrators. The vibrators shall be inserted into the concrete to a depth that will provide the best full-depth consolidation but not closer to the underlying material than 2 inches (50 mm). Vibrators shall not be used to transport or spread the concrete. For each paving train, at least one additional vibrator spud, or sufficient parts for rapid replacement and repair of vibrators shall be maintained at the paving site at all times. Any evidence of inadequate consolidation (honeycomb along the edges, large air pockets, or any other evidence) or over-consolidation (vibrator trails, segregation, or any other evidence) shall require the immediate stopping of the paving operation and adjustment of the equipment or procedures as approved by the RPR.

If a lack of consolidation of the hardened concrete is suspected by the RPR, referee testing may be required. Referee testing of hardened concrete will be performed by the RPR by cutting cores from the finished pavement after a minimum of 24 hours curing. The RPR shall visually examine the cores for evidence of lack of consolidation. Density determinations will be made by the RPR based on the water content of the core as taken. ASTM C642 shall be used for the determination of core density in the saturated-surface dry condition. When required, referee cores will be taken at the minimum rate of one for each 500 cubic yards (382 m³) of pavement, or fraction. The Contractor shall be responsible for all referee testing cost if they fail to meet the required density.

The average density of the cores shall be at least 97% of the original concrete mix density, with no cores having a density of less than 96% of the original concrete mix density. Failure to meet the referee tests will be considered evidence that the minimum requirements for vibration are inadequate for the job conditions. Additional vibrating units or other means of increasing the effect of vibration shall be employed so that the density of the hardened concrete conforms to the above requirements.

501-4.9 Strike-off of concrete and placement of reinforcement. Following the placing of the concrete, it shall be struck off to conform to the cross-section shown on the plans and to an elevation that when the concrete is properly consolidated and finished, the surface of the pavement shall be at the elevation shown on the plans. When reinforced concrete pavement is placed in two layers, the bottom layer shall be struck off to such length and depth that the sheet of reinforcing steel fabric or bar mat may be laid full length on the concrete in its final position without further manipulation. The reinforcement shall then be placed directly upon the concrete, after which the top layer of the concrete shall be placed, struck off, and screed. If any portion of the bottom layer of concrete has been placed more than 30 minutes without being covered with the top layer or if initial set has taken place, it shall be removed and replaced with freshly mixed concrete at the Contractor's expense. When reinforced concrete is placed in one layer, the reinforcement may be positioned in advance of concrete placement or it may be placed in plastic concrete by mechanical or vibratory means after spreading.

Reinforcing steel, at the time concrete is placed, shall be free of mud, oil, or other organic matter that may adversely affect or reduce bond. Reinforcing steel with rust, mill scale or a combination of both will be

considered satisfactory, provided the minimum dimensions, weight, and tensile properties of a hand wire-brushed test specimen are not less than the applicable ASTM specification requirements.

501-4.10 Joints. Joints shall be constructed as shown on the plans and in accordance with these requirements. All joints shall be constructed with their faces perpendicular to the surface of the pavement and finished or edged as shown on the plans. Joints shall not vary more than 1/2-inch (12 mm) from their designated position and shall be true to line with not more than 1/4-inch (6 mm) variation in 10 feet (3 m). The surface across the joints shall be tested with a 12-foot (3 m) straightedge as the joints are finished and any irregularities in excess of 1/4 inch (6 mm) shall be corrected before the concrete has hardened. All joints shall be so prepared, finished, or cut to provide a groove of uniform width and depth as shown on the plans.

a. Construction. Longitudinal construction joints shall be slip-formed or formed against side forms as shown in the plans.

Transverse construction joints shall be installed at the end of each day's placing operations and at any other points within a paving lane when concrete placement is interrupted for more than 30 minutes or it appears that the concrete will obtain its initial set before fresh concrete arrives. The installation of the joint shall be located at a planned contraction or expansion joint. If placing of the concrete is stopped, the Contractor shall remove the excess concrete back to the previous planned joint.

b. Contraction. Contraction joints shall be installed at the locations and spacing as shown on the plans. Contraction joints shall be installed to the dimensions required by forming a groove or cleft in the top of the slab while the concrete is still plastic or by sawing a groove into the concrete surface after the concrete has hardened. When the groove is formed in plastic concrete the sides of the grooves shall be finished even and smooth with an edging tool. If an insert material is used, the installation and edge finish shall be according to the manufacturer's instructions. The groove shall be finished or cut clean so that spalling will be avoided at intersections with other joints. Grooving or sawing shall produce a slot at least 1/8 inch (3 mm) wide and to the depth shown on the plans.

c. Isolation (expansion). Isolation joints shall be installed as shown on the plans. The premolded filler of the thickness as shown on the plans, shall extend for the full depth and width of the slab at the joint. The filler shall be fastened uniformly along the hardened joint face with no buckling or debris between the filler and the concrete interface, including a temporary filler for the sealant reservoir at the top of the slab. The edges of the joint shall be finished and tooled while the concrete is still plastic

An isolation joint is primarily used to separate structures with different foundations and pavements with different joint patterns. It does not provide for expansion by the material compressing, but rather allowing the joint to slip. There should rarely be an occasion to dowel an isolation joint since it defeats the purpose of the joint and does not permit isolation and slippage. A thickened-edge is the preferred load transfer method for isolation joints.

d. Dowels and Tie Bars for Joints

(1) Tie bars. Tie bars shall consist of deformed bars installed in joints as shown on the plans. Tie bars shall be placed at right angles to the centerline of the concrete slab and shall be spaced at intervals shown on the plans. They shall be held in position parallel to the pavement surface and in the middle of the slab depth and within the tolerances in paragraph 501-4.10(f.). When tie bars extend into an unpaved lane, they may be bent against the form at longitudinal construction joints, unless threaded bolt or other

assembled tie bars are specified. Tie bars shall not be painted, greased, or enclosed in sleeves. When slip-form operations call for tie bars, two-piece hook bolts can be installed.

(2) Dowel bars. Dowel bars shall be placed across joints in the proper horizontal and vertical alignment as shown on the plans. The dowels shall be coated with a bond-breaker or other lubricant recommended by the manufacturer and approved by the RPR. Dowels bars at longitudinal construction joints shall be bonded in drilled holes.

(3) Placing dowels and tie bars. Horizontal spacing of dowels shall be within a tolerance of $\pm 3/4$ inch (19 mm). The vertical location on the face of the slab shall be within a tolerance of $\pm 1/2$ inch (12 mm). The method used to install dowels shall ensure that the horizontal and vertical alignment will not be greater than 1/4 inch per feet (6 mm per 0.3 m), except for those across the crown or other grade change joints. Dowels across crowns and other joints at grade changes shall be measured to a level surface. Horizontal alignment shall be checked perpendicular to the joint edge. The portion of each dowel intended to move within the concrete or expansion cap shall be wiped clean and coated with a thin, even film of lubricating oil or light grease before the concrete is placed. Dowels shall be installed as specified in the following subparagraphs.

Dowels and tie bars shall not be placed closer than 0.6 times the dowel bar or tie bar length to the planned joint line. If the last regularly spaced longitudinal dowel and/or tie bar is closer than that dimension, it shall be moved away from the joint to a location 0.6 times the dowel bar and/or tie bar length, but not closer than 6 inches (150 mm) to its nearest neighbor.

(a) Contraction joints. Dowels and tie bars in longitudinal and transverse contraction joints within the paving lane shall be held securely in place by means of rigid metal frames or basket assemblies of an approved type. The basket assemblies shall be held securely in the proper location by means of suitable pins or anchors. Do not cut or crimp the dowel basket tie wires.

At the Contractor's option, dowels and tie bars in contraction joints may be installed by insertion into the plastic concrete using approved equipment and procedures per the paver manufacturer's design. Approval of installation methods will be based on the results of the control strip showing that the dowels and tie bars are installed within specified tolerances as verified by cores or non-destructive rebar location devices approved by the RPR.

Non-destructive rebar location devices include the MIT scanner, Pachometer, R-Meter, etc.

(b) Construction joints. Install dowels and tie bars by the cast-in- place or the drill-and-dowel method. Installation by removing and replacing in preformed holes will not be permitted. Dowels and tie bars shall be prepared and placed across joints where indicated, correctly aligned, and securely held in the proper horizontal and vertical position during placing and finishing operations, by means of devices fastened to the forms.

(c) Joints in hardened concrete. Install dowels in hardened concrete by bonding the dowels into holes drilled into the concrete. The concrete shall have cured for seven (7) days or reached a minimum [compressive strength of 3100 psi ((21.4 MPa))] [flexural

strength of 450 psi (3.1 MPa)] before drilling begins. Holes 1/8 inch (3 mm) greater in diameter than the dowels shall be drilled into the hardened concrete using rotary-core drills. Rotary-percussion drills may be used, provided that excessive spalling does not occur. Spalling beyond the limits of the grout retention ring will require modification of the equipment and operation. Depth of dowel hole shall be within a tolerance of $\pm 1/2$ inch (12 mm) of the dimension shown on the drawings. On completion of the drilling operation, the dowel hole shall be blown out with oil-free, compressed air. Dowels shall be bonded in the drilled holes using epoxy resin. Epoxy resin shall be injected at the back of the hole before installing the dowel and extruded to the collar during insertion of the dowel so as to completely fill the void around the dowel. Application by buttering the dowel will not be permitted. The dowels shall be held in alignment at the collar of the hole by means of a suitable metal or plastic grout retention ring fitted around the dowel.

e. Sawing of joints. Sawing shall commence, without regard to day or night, as soon as the concrete has hardened sufficiently to permit cutting without chipping, spalling, or tearing and before uncontrolled shrinkage cracking of the pavement occurs and shall continue without interruption until all joints have been sawn. All slurry and debris produced in the sawing of joints shall be removed by vacuuming and washing. Curing compound or system shall be reapplied in the initial saw-cut and maintained for the remaining cure period.

Joints shall be cut in locations as shown on the plans. The initial joint cut shall be a minimum 1/8 inch (3 mm) wide and to the depth shown on the plans. Prior to placement of joint sealant or seals, the top of the joint shall be widened by sawing as shown on the plans.

501-4.11 Finishing. Finishing operations shall be a continuing part of placing operations starting immediately behind the strike-off of the paver. Initial finishing shall be provided by the transverse screed or extrusion plate. The sequence of operations shall be transverse finishing, longitudinal machine floating if used, straightedge finishing, edging of joints, and then texturing. Finishing shall be by the machine method. The hand method shall be used only on isolated areas of odd slab widths or shapes and in the event of a breakdown of the mechanical finishing equipment. Supplemental hand finishing for machine finished pavement shall be kept to an absolute minimum. Any machine finishing operation which requires appreciable hand finishing, other than a moderate amount of straightedge finishing, shall be immediately stopped and proper adjustments made or the equipment replaced. Equipment, mixture, and/or procedures which produce more than 1/4 inch (6 mm) of mortar-rich surface shall be immediately modified as necessary to eliminate this condition or operations shall cease. Compensation shall be made for surging behind the screeds or extrusion plate and settlement during hardening and care shall be taken to ensure that paving and finishing machines are properly adjusted so that the finished surface of the concrete (not just the cutting edges of the screeds) will be at the required line and grade. Finishing equipment and tools shall be maintained clean and in an approved condition. At no time shall water be added to the surface of the slab with the finishing equipment or tools, or in any other way. Fog (mist) sprays or other surface applied finishing aids specified to prevent plastic shrinkage cracking, approved by the RPR, may be used in accordance with the manufacturers requirements.

a. Machine finishing with slipform pavers. The slipform paver shall be operated so that only a very minimum of additional finishing work is required to produce pavement surfaces and edges meeting the specified tolerances. Any equipment or procedure that fails to meet these specified requirements shall immediately be replaced or modified as necessary. A self-propelled non-rotating pipe float may be used while the concrete is still plastic, to remove minor irregularities and score marks. Only one pass of the pipe float shall be allowed. Equipment, mixture, and/or procedures which produce more than 1/4 inch (6 mm) of mortar-rich surface shall be immediately modified as necessary to eliminate this condition or operations shall cease. Remove excessive slurry from the surface with a cutting straightedge and wipe off the edge. Any slurry which does run down the vertical edges shall be immediately removed by hand, using stiff brushes or scrapers. No slurry, concrete or concrete mortar shall be used to build up along the

edges of the pavement to compensate for excessive edge slump, either while the concrete is plastic or after it hardens.

b. Machine finishing with fixed forms. The machine shall be designed to straddle the forms and shall be operated to screed and consolidate the concrete. Machines that cause displacement of the forms shall be replaced. The machine shall make only one pass over each area of pavement. If the equipment and procedures do not produce a surface of uniform texture, true to grade, in one pass, the operation shall be immediately stopped and the equipment, mixture, and procedures adjusted as necessary.

c. Other types of finishing equipment. Clary screeds, other rotating tube floats, or bridge deck finishers are not allowed on mainline paving, but may be allowed on irregular or odd-shaped slabs, and near buildings or trench drains, subject to the RPR's approval.

Bridge deck finishers shall have a minimum operating weight of 7500 pounds (3400 kg) and shall have a transversely operating carriage containing a knock-down auger and a minimum of two immersion vibrators. Vibrating screeds or pans shall be used only for isolated slabs where hand finishing is permitted as specified, and only where specifically approved.

d. Hand finishing. Hand finishing methods will not be permitted, except under the following conditions: (1) in the event of breakdown of the mechanical equipment, hand methods may be used to finish the concrete already deposited on the grade and (2) in areas of narrow widths or of irregular dimensions where operation of the mechanical equipment is impractical.

e. Straightedge testing and surface correction. After the pavement has been struck off and while the concrete is still plastic, it shall be tested for trueness with a 12-foot (3.7-m) finishing straightedge swung from handles capable of spanning at least one-half the width of the slab. The straightedge shall be held in contact with the surface in successive positions parallel to the centerline and the whole area gone over from one side of the slab to the other, as necessary. Advancing shall be in successive stages of not more than one-half the length of the straightedge. Any excess water and laitance in excess of 1/8 inch (3 mm) thick shall be removed from the surface of the pavement and wasted. Any depressions shall be immediately filled with freshly mixed concrete, struck off, consolidated, and refinished. High areas shall be cut down and refinished. Special attention shall be given to assure that the surface across joints meets the smoothness requirements. Straightedge testing and surface corrections shall continue until the entire surface is found to be free from observable departures from the straightedge and until the slab conforms to the required grade and cross-section. The use of long-handled wood floats shall be confined to a minimum; they may be used only in emergencies and in areas not accessible to finishing equipment.

501-4.12 Surface texture. The surface of the pavement shall be finished as designated below for all newly constructed concrete pavements. It is important that the texturing equipment not tear or unduly roughen the pavement surface during the operation. The texture shall be uniform in appearance and approximately 1/16 inch (2 mm) in depth. Any imperfections resulting from the texturing operation shall be corrected to the satisfaction of the RPR.

a. Brush or broom finish. [Shall be applied when the water sheen has practically disappeared. The equipment shall operate transversely across the pavement surface.] [Not used.]

b. Burlap drag finish. [Burlap, at least 15 ounces per square yard (555 grams per square meter), will typically produce acceptable texture. To obtain a textured surface, the transverse threads of the burlap shall be removed approximately one foot (30 cm) from the trailing edge. A heavy buildup of grout on the burlap threads produces the desired wide sweeping longitudinal striations on the pavement surface.] [Not used.]

c. Artificial turf finish. [Shall be applied by dragging the surface of the pavement in the direction of concrete placement with an approved full-width drag made with artificial turf. The leading transverse edge of the artificial turf drag will be securely fastened to a lightweight pole on a traveling bridge. At least 2 feet (60 cm) of the artificial turf shall be in contact with the concrete surface during dragging operations. Approval of the artificial turf will be done only after it has been demonstrated by the Contractor to provide a satisfactory texture. One type that has provided satisfactory texture consists of 7,200 approximately 0.85-inch-long polyethylene turf blades per square foot.] [Not used.]

The Engineer shall specify the type(s) of finishes to be used on project.

501-4.13 Curing. Immediately after finishing operations are completed and bleed water is gone from the surface, all exposed surfaces of the newly placed concrete shall be cured for a 7-day cure period in accordance with one of the methods below. Failure to provide sufficient cover material of whatever kind the Contractor may elect to use, or lack of water to adequately take care of both curing and other requirements, shall be cause for immediate suspension of concreting operations. The concrete shall not be left exposed for more than 1/2 hour during the curing period.

When a two-saw-cut method is used to construct the contraction joint, the curing compound shall be applied to the saw-cut immediately after the initial cut has been made. The sealant reservoir shall not be sawed until after the curing period has been completed. When the one cut method is used to construct the contraction joint, the joint shall be cured with wet rope, wet rags, or wet blankets. The rags, ropes, or blankets shall be kept moist for the duration of the curing period.

The Engineer shall delete cure types that may not be feasible in operating areas subject to aircraft jet blast.

The use of supplementary cementitious materials (for example, fly ash, slag cement) or set-retarding admixtures may delay the occurrence of bleed water.

a. Impervious membrane method. Curing with liquid membrane compounds should not occur until bleed and surface moisture has evaporated. All exposed surfaces of the pavement shall be sprayed uniformly with white pigmented curing compound immediately after the finishing of the surface and before the set of the concrete has taken place. The curing compound shall not be applied during rainfall. Curing compound shall be applied by mechanical sprayers under pressure at the rate of one gallon (4 liters) to not more than 150 square feet (14 sq m). The spraying equipment shall be of the fully atomizing type equipped with a tank agitator. At the time of use, the compound shall be in a thoroughly mixed condition with the pigment uniformly dispersed throughout the vehicle. During application, the compound shall be stirred continuously by mechanical means. Hand spraying of odd widths or shapes and concrete surfaces exposed by the removal of forms will be permitted. When hand spraying is approved by the RPR, a double application rate shall be used to ensure coverage. Should the film become damaged from any cause, including sawing operations, within the required curing period, the damaged portions shall be repaired immediately with additional compound or other approved means. Upon removal of side

forms, the sides of the exposed slabs shall be protected immediately to provide a curing treatment equal to that provided for the surface.

b. White burlap-polyethylene sheets. The surface of the pavement shall be entirely covered with the sheeting. The sheeting used shall be such length (or width) that it will extend at least twice the thickness of the pavement beyond the edges of the slab. The sheeting shall be placed so that the entire surface and both edges of the slab are completely covered. The sheeting shall be placed and weighted to remain in contact with the surface covered, and the covering shall be maintained fully saturated and in position for seven (7) days after the concrete has been placed.

c. Water method. The entire area shall be covered with burlap or other water absorbing material. The material shall be of sufficient thickness to retain water for adequate curing without excessive runoff. The material shall be kept wet at all times and maintained for seven (7) days. When the forms are stripped, the vertical walls shall also be kept moist. It shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to prevent ponding of the curing water on the subbase.

d. Concrete protection for cold weather. Maintain the concrete at a temperature of at least 50°F (10°C) for a period of 72 hours after placing and at a temperature above freezing for the remainder of the 7-day curing period. The Contractor shall be responsible for the quality and strength of the concrete placed during cold weather; and any concrete damaged shall be removed and replaced at the Contractor's expense.

e. Concrete protection for hot weather. Concrete should be continuous moisture cured for the entire curing period and shall commence as soon as the surfaces are finished and continue for at least 24 hours. However, if moisture curing is not practical beyond 24 hours, the concrete surface shall be protected from drying with application of a liquid membrane-forming curing compound while the surfaces are still damp. Other curing methods may be approved by the RPR.

501-4.14 Removing forms. Unless otherwise specified, forms shall not be removed from freshly placed concrete until it has hardened sufficiently to permit removal without chipping, spalling, or tearing. After the forms have been removed, the sides of the slab shall be cured in accordance with paragraph 501-4.13.

If honeycombed areas are evident when the forms are removed, materials, placement, and consolidation methods must be reviewed and appropriate adjustments made to assure adequate consolidation at the edges of future concrete placements. Honeycombed areas that extend into the slab less than approximately 1 inch (25 mm), shall be repaired with an approved grout, as directed by the RPR. Honeycombed areas that extend into the slab greater than a depth of 1 inch (25 mm) shall be considered as defective work and shall be removed and replaced in accordance with paragraph 501-4.19.

501-4.15 Saw-cut grooving. If shown on the plans, grooved surfaces shall be provided in accordance with the requirements of Item P-621.

501-4.16 Sealing joints. The joints in the pavement shall be sealed in accordance with Item [P-604] [P-605].

The Engineer shall include the applicable specifications.

501-4.17 Protection of pavement. The Contractor shall protect the pavement and its appurtenances against both public traffic and traffic caused by the Contractor's employees and agents until accepted by the RPR. This shall include watchmen to direct traffic and the erection and maintenance of warning signs, lights, pavement bridges, crossovers, and protection of unsealed joints from intrusion of foreign material,

etc. Any damage to the pavement occurring prior to final acceptance shall be repaired or the pavement replaced at the Contractor's expense.

Aggregates, rubble, or other similar construction materials shall not be placed on airfield pavements. Traffic shall be excluded from the new pavement by erecting and maintaining barricades and signs until the concrete is at least seven (7) days old, or for a longer period if directed by the RPR.

In paving intermediate lanes between newly paved pilot lanes, operation of the hauling and paving equipment will be permitted on the new pavement after the pavement has been cured for seven (7) days, the joints are protected, the concrete has attained a minimum field cured flexural strength of [450 psi (3100 kPa)], and the slab edge is protected.

All new and existing pavement carrying construction traffic or equipment shall be kept clean and spillage of concrete and other materials shall be cleaned up immediately.

Damaged pavements shall be removed and replaced at the Contractor's expense. Slabs shall be removed to the full depth, width, and length of the slab.

501-4.18 Opening to construction traffic. The pavement shall not be opened to traffic until test specimens molded and cured in accordance with ASTM C31 have attained a flexural strength of [450 pounds per square inch (3100 kPa)] when tested in accordance with ASTM C78. If such tests are not conducted, the pavement shall not be opened to traffic until 14 days after the concrete was placed. Prior to opening the pavement to construction traffic, all joints shall either be sealed or protected from damage to the joint edge and intrusion of foreign materials into the joint. As a minimum, backer rod or tape may be used to protect the joints from foreign matter intrusion.

When the design strength in paragraph 501-3.3 is based on compressive strength, a strength of 3,100 psi (21400 kPa) shall be specified. Testing shall be in accordance with ASTM C39. See note with paragraph 501-4.8 for guidance on editing 501-4.17 and 501-4.18.

501-4.19 Repair, removal, or replacement of slabs. New pavement slabs that are broken or contain cracks or are otherwise defective or unacceptable as defined by acceptance criteria in paragraph 501-6.6 shall be removed and replaced or repaired, as directed by the RPR, at the Contractor's expense. Spalls along joints shall be repaired as specified. Removal of partial slabs is not permitted. Removal and replacement shall be full depth, shall be full width of the slab, and the limit of removal shall be normal to the paving lane and to each original transverse joint. The RPR will determine whether cracks extend full depth of the pavement and may require cores to be drilled on the crack to determine depth of cracking. Such cores shall be have a diameter of 2 inches (50 mm) to 4 inches (100 mm), shall be drilled by the Contractor and shall be filled by the Contractor with a well consolidated concrete mixture bonded to the walls of the hole with a bonding agent, using approved procedures. Drilling of cores and refilling holes shall be at no expense to the Owner. Repair of cracks as described in this section shall not be allowed if in the opinion of the RPR the overall condition of the pavement indicates that such repair is unlikely to achieve an acceptable and durable finished pavement. No repair of cracks shall be allowed in any panel that demonstrates segregated aggregate with an absence of coarse aggregate in the upper 1/8 inch (3 mm) of the pavement surface.

a. Shrinkage cracks. Shrinkage cracks which do not exceed one-third of the pavement depth shall be cleaned and either high molecular weight methacrylate (HMWM) applied; or epoxy resin (Type IV, Grade 1) pressure injected using procedures recommended by the manufacturer and approved by the RPR. Sandblasting of the surface may be required following the application of HMWM to restore skid

resistance. Care shall be taken to ensure that the crack is not widened during epoxy resin injection. All epoxy resin injection shall take place in the presence of the RPR. Shrinkage cracks which exceed one-third the pavement depth shall be treated as full depth cracks in accordance with paragraphs 501-4.19b and 501-19c.

b. Slabs with cracks through interior areas. Interior area is defined as that area more than 6 inches (150 mm) from either adjacent original transverse joint. The full slab shall be removed and replaced at no cost to the Owner, when there are any full depth cracks, or cracks greater than one-third the pavement depth, that extend into the interior area.

c. Cracks close to and parallel to joints. All full-depth cracks within 6 inches (150 mm) either side of the joint and essentially parallel to the original joints, shall be treated as follows.

(1) Full depth cracks and original joint not cracked. The full-depth crack shall be treated as the new joint and the original joint filled with an epoxy resin.

i. Full-depth crack. The joint sealant reservoir for the crack shall be formed by sawing to a depth of 3/4 inches (19 mm), $\pm 1/16$ inch (2 mm), and to a width of 5/8 inch (16 mm), $\pm 1/8$ inch (3 mm). The crack shall be sawed with equipment specially designed to follow random cracks. Any equipment or procedure which causes raveling or spalling along the crack shall be modified or replaced to prevent raveling or spalling. The joint shall be sealed with sealant in accordance with P-605 or as directed by the RPR.

ii. Original joint. If the original joint sealant reservoir has been sawed out, the reservoir and as much of the lower saw cut as possible shall be filled with epoxy resin, Type IV, Grade 2, thoroughly tooled into the void using approved procedures.

If only the original narrow saw cut has been made, it shall be cleaned and pressure injected with epoxy resin, Type IV, Grade 1, using approved procedures.

Where a parallel crack goes part way across paving lane and then intersects and follows the original joint which is cracked only for the remained of the width, it shall be treated as specified above for a parallel crack, and the cracked original joint shall be prepared and sealed as originally designed.

(2) Full depth cracks and original joint cracked. If there is any place in the lane width where a parallel crack and a cracked portion of the original joint overlap, the entire slab containing the crack shall be removed and replaced.

d. Removal and replacement of full slabs. Make a full depth cut perpendicular to the slab surface along all edges of the slab with a concrete saw cutting any dowels or tie-bars. Remove damaged slab protecting adjacent pavement from damage. Damage to adjacent slabs may result in removal of additional slabs as directed by the RPR at the Contractor's expense.

The underlying material shall be repaired, re-compacted and shaped to grade.

Dowels of the size and spacing specified for other joints in similar pavement on the project shall be installed along all four (4) edges of the new slab in accordance with paragraph 501-4.10d.

Placement of concrete shall be as specified for original construction. The joints around the new slab shall be prepared and sealed as specified for original construction.

e. Spalls along joints.

(1) Spalls less than one inch wide and less than the depth of the joint sealant reservoir, shall be filled with joint sealant material.

(2) Spalls larger than one inch and/or deeper than the joint reservoir, but less than 1/2 the slab depth, and less than 25% of the length of the adjacent joint shall be repaired as follows:

i. Make a vertical saw cut at least one inch (25 mm) outside the spalled area and to a depth of at least 2 inches (50 mm). Saw cuts shall be straight lines forming rectangular areas surrounding the spalled area.

ii. Remove unsound concrete and at least 1/2 inch (12 mm) of visually sound concrete between the saw cut and the joint or crack with a light chipping hammer.

iii. Clean cavity with high-pressure water jets supplemented with compressed air as needed to remove all loose material.

iv. Apply a prime coat of epoxy resin, Type III, Grade I, to the dry, cleaned surface of all sides and bottom of the cavity, except any joint face.

v. Fill the cavity with low slump concrete or mortar or with epoxy resin concrete or mortar.

vi. An insert or other bond-breaking medium shall be used to prevent bond at all joint faces.

vii. A reservoir for the joint sealant shall be sawed to the dimensions required for other joints, or as required to be routed for cracks. The reservoir shall be thoroughly cleaned and sealed with the sealer specified for the joints.

(3) Spalls deeper than 1/2 of the slab depth or spalls longer than 25% of the adjacent joint require replacement of the entire slab.

f. Diamond grinding of Concrete surfaces. Diamond grinding shall be completed prior to pavement grooving. Diamond grinding of the hardened concrete should not be performed until the concrete is at least 14 days old and has achieved full minimum strength. Equipment that causes ravels, aggregate fractures, spalls or disturbance to the joints will not be permitted. The depth of diamond grinding shall not exceed 1/2 inch (13 mm) and all areas in which diamond grinding has been performed will be subject to the final pavement thickness tolerances specified.

Diamond grinding shall be performed with a machine specifically designed for diamond grinding capable of cutting a path at least 3 feet (0.9 m) wide. The saw blades shall be 1/8-inch (3-mm) wide with sufficient number of flush cut blades that create grooves between 0.090 and 0.130 inches (2 and 3.5 mm) wide; and peaks and ridges approximately 1/32 inch (1 mm) higher than the bottom of the grinding cut. The Contractor shall determine the number and type of blades based on the hardness of the aggregate. Contractor shall demonstrate to the RPR that the grinding equipment will produce satisfactory results prior to making corrections to surfaces.

Grinding will be tapered in all directions to provide smooth transitions to areas not requiring grinding. The slurry resulting from the grinding operation shall be continuously removed and the pavement left in a clean condition. All grinding shall be at the expense of the Contractor.

CONTRACTOR QUALITY CONTROL (CQC)

All federally funded projects over \$500K dollars where paving is the major work item must have a CQCP. It is strongly encouraged that a Contractor Quality Control Program (CQCP) be developed for all projects.

For projects that do not include a formal CQCP, this section can be edited to remove reference to a CQCP. However, QC testing is still required regardless of project size.

501-5.1 Quality control program. [The Contractor shall develop a Quality Control Program in accordance with Item C-100. No partial payment will be made for materials that are subject to specific quality control requirements without an approved quality control program.]

501-5.2 Contractor Quality Control (CQC). [The Contractor shall provide or contract for testing facilities in accordance with Item C-100. The RPR shall be permitted unrestricted access to inspect the Contractor's QC facilities and witness QC activities. The RPR will advise the Contractor in writing of any noted deficiencies concerning the QC facility, equipment, supplies, or testing personnel and procedures. When the deficiencies are serious enough to be adversely affecting the test results, the incorporation of the materials into the work shall be suspended immediately and will not be permitted to resume until the deficiencies are satisfactorily corrected.]

501-5.3 Contractor QC testing. The Contractor shall perform all QC tests necessary to control the production and construction processes applicable to this specification [and as set forth in the CQCP. The testing program shall include, but not necessarily be limited to, tests for aggregate gradation, aggregate moisture content, slump, and air content. A QC Testing Plan shall be developed and approved by the RPR as part of the CQCP.

The RPR may at any time, notwithstanding previous plant acceptance, reject and require the Contractor to dispose of any batch of concrete mixture which is rendered unfit for use due to contamination, segregation, or improper slump. Such rejection may be based on only visual inspection. In the event of such rejection, the Contractor may take a representative sample of the rejected material in the presence of the RPR, and if it can be demonstrated in the laboratory, in the presence of the RPR, that such material was erroneously rejected, payment will be made for the material at the contract unit price].

a. Fine aggregate.

(1) Gradation. A sieve analysis shall be made at least twice daily in accordance with ASTM C136 from randomly sampled material taken from the discharge gate of storage bins or from the conveyor belt.

(2) Moisture content. If an electric moisture meter is used, at least two direct measurements of moisture content shall be made per week to check the calibration. If direct measurements are made in lieu of using an electric meter, two tests shall be made per day. Tests shall be made in accordance with ASTM C70 or ASTM C566.

(3) Deleterious substances. Fine aggregate as delivered to the mixer shall be tested for deleterious substances in fine aggregate for concrete as specified in paragraph 501-2.1b, prior to production of the control strip, and a minimum of every 30-days during production or more frequently as necessary to control deleterious substances.

b. Coarse Aggregate.

(1) Gradation. A sieve analysis shall be made at least twice daily for each size of aggregate. Tests shall be made in accordance with ASTM C136 from randomly sampled material taken from the discharge gate of storage bins or from the conveyor belt.

(2) Moisture content. If an electric moisture meter is used, at least two direct measurements of moisture content shall be made per week to check the calibration. If direct measurements are made in lieu

of using an electric meter, two tests shall be made per day. Tests shall be made in accordance with ASTM C566.

(3) Deleterious substances. Coarse aggregate as delivered to the mixer shall be tested for deleterious substances in coarse aggregate for concrete as specified in paragraph 501-2.1c, prior to production of the control strip, and a minimum of every 30-days during production or more frequently as necessary to control deleterious substances.

c. Slump. One test shall be made for each subplot. Slump tests shall be performed in accordance with ASTM C143 from material randomly sampled from material discharged from trucks at the paving site. Material samples shall be taken in accordance with ASTM C172.

d. Air content. One test shall be made for each subplot. Air content tests shall be performed in accordance with ASTM C231 for gravel and stone coarse aggregate and ASTM C173 for slag or other porous coarse aggregate, from material randomly sampled from trucks at the paving site. Material samples shall be taken in accordance with ASTM C172.

e. Unit weight and Yield. One test shall be made for each subplot. Unit weight and yield tests shall be in accordance with ASTM C138. The samples shall be taken in accordance with ASTM C172 and at the same time as the air content tests.

f. Temperatures. Temperatures shall be checked at least four times per lot at the job site in accordance with ASTM C1064.

g. Smoothness for Contractor Quality Control.

Note change in deviations on final surface course that require grinding, limited to deviations > 1/4 inch that trap water, intent here is to focus on areas that may cause issues with the safe operation of aircraft and to minimize grinding if it will not improve safety

The Contractor shall perform smoothness testing in transverse and longitudinal directions daily to verify that the construction processes are producing pavement with variances less than 1/4 inch in 12 feet, identifying areas that may pond water which could lead to hydroplaning of aircraft. If the smoothness criteria is not met, appropriate changes and corrections to the construction process shall be made by the Contractor before construction continues

The Contractor may use a 12-foot (3.7 m) “straightedge, a rolling inclinometer meeting the requirements of ASTM E2133 or rolling external reference device that can simulate a 12-foot (3.7m) straightedge approved by the RPR. Straight-edge testing shall start with one-half the length of the straightedge at the edge of pavement section being tested and then moved ahead one-half the length of the straightedge for each successive measurement. Testing shall be continuous across all joints. The surface irregularity shall be determined by placing the freestanding (unleveled) straightedge on the pavement surface and allowing it to rest upon the two highest spots covered by its length, and measuring the maximum gap between the straightedge and the pavement surface in the area between the two high points. If the rolling inclinometer or external reference device is used, the data may be evaluated using either the FAA profile program, ProFAA, or FHWA profile program ProVal, using the 12-foot straightedge simulation function.

Smoothness readings shall not be made across grade changes or cross slope transitions. The transition between new and existing pavement shall be evaluated separately for conformance with the plans.

Include detail for transition between new and existing pavement including smoothness and grade limitations.

(1) Transverse measurements. Transverse measurements shall be taken for each day's production placed. Transverse measurements shall be taken perpendicular to the pavement centerline each 50 feet (15 m) or more often as determined by the RPR. The joint between lanes shall be tested separately to facilitate smoothness between lanes.

(2) Longitudinal measurements. Longitudinal measurements shall be taken for each day's production placed. Longitudinal tests shall be parallel to the centerline of paving; at the center of paving lanes when widths of paving lanes are less than 20 feet (6 m); and at the third points of paving lanes when widths of paving lanes are 20 ft (6 m) or greater. When placement abuts previously placed material the first measurement shall start with one half the length of the straight edge on the previously placed material.

Deviations on the final surface course in either the transverse or longitudinal direction that will trap water greater than 1/4 inch (6 mm) shall be corrected with diamond grinding per paragraph 501-4.19f or by removing and replacing the surface course to full depth. Grinding shall be tapered in all directions to provide smooth transitions to areas not requiring grinding. All areas in which diamond grinding has been performed shall be subject to the final pavement thickness tolerances specified in paragraph 501-6.6.

Control charts shall be kept to show area of each day's placement and the percentage of corrective grinding required. Corrections to production and placement shall be initiated when corrective grinding is required. If the Contractor's machines and/or methods produce significant areas that need corrective actions in excess of 10 percent of a day's production, production shall be stopped until corrective measures are implemented by the Contractor.

h. Grade. Grade will be evaluated prior to and after placement of the concrete surface.

Measurements will be taken at appropriate gradelines (as a minimum at center and edges of paving lane) and longitudinal spacing as shown on cross-sections and plans. The final surface of the pavement will not vary from the gradeline elevations and cross-sections shown on the plans by more than 1/2 inch (12 mm) vertically [and 0.1 feet (30 mm) laterally]. The documentation will be provided by the Contractor to the RPR [within 48 hours] [by the end of the following working day].

Areas with humps or depression that that exceed grade or smoothness and that retain water on the surface must be ground off provided the course thickness after grinding is not more than 1/2 inch (12 mm) less than the thickness specified on the plans. If these areas cannot be corrected with grinding then the slabs that are retaining water must be removed and replaced in accordance with paragraph 501-4.19d. Grinding shall be in accordance with paragraph 501-4.19f. All corrections will be at the Contractors expense.

501-5.4 Control charts. The Contractor shall maintain linear control charts for fine and coarse aggregate gradation, slump, and air content. The Contractor shall also maintain a control chart plotting the coarseness factor/workability factor from the combined gradations in accordance with paragraph 501-2.1d.

Control charts shall be posted in a location satisfactory to the RPR and shall be kept up to date at all times. As a minimum, the control charts shall identify the project number, the contract item number, the test number, each test parameter, the Action and suspension Limits, or Specification limits, applicable to each test parameter, and the Contractor's test results. The Contractor shall use the control charts as part of a process control system for identifying potential problems and assignable causes before they occur. If the

Contractor's projected data during production indicates a potential problem and the Contractor is not taking satisfactory corrective action, the RPR may halt production or acceptance of the material.

a. Fine and coarse aggregate gradation. The Contractor shall record the running average of the last five gradation tests for each control sieve on linear control charts. Superimposed on the control charts shall be the action and suspension limits. Gradation tests shall be performed by the Contractor per ASTM C136. The Contractor shall take at least [two] samples per lot to check the final gradation. Sampling shall be per ASTM D75 from the flowing aggregate stream or conveyor belt.

b. Slump and air content. The Contractor shall maintain linear control charts both for individual measurements and range (that is, difference between highest and lowest measurements) for slump and air content in accordance with the following Action and Suspension Limits.

c. Combined gradation. The Contractor shall maintain a control chart plotting the coarseness factor and workability factor on a chart in accordance with paragraph 501-2.1d.

Control Chart Limits¹

Control Parameter	Individual Measurements	
	Action Limit	Suspension Limit
Gradation ²	* ³	* ³
Coarseness Factor (CF)	±3.5	±5
Workability Factor (WF)	±2	±3
Slump	+0.5 to -1 inch (+13 to -25 mm)	+1 to -1.5 inch (+25 to -38 mm)
Air Content	±1.5%	±2.0%

¹ Control charts shall developed and maintained for each control parameter indicated.

² Control charts shall be developed and maintained for each sieve size.

³ Action and suspension limits shall be determined by the Contractor.

501-5.5 Corrective action at Suspension Limit. [The CQCP shall indicate that appropriate action shall be taken when the process is believed to be out of control. The CQCP shall detail what action will be taken to bring the process into control and shall contain sets of rules to gauge when a process is out of control. As a minimum, a process shall be deemed out of control and corrective action taken if any one of the following conditions exists.

a. Fine and coarse aggregate gradation. When two consecutive averages of five tests are outside of the suspension limits, immediate steps, including a halt to production, shall be taken to correct the grading.

b. Coarseness and Workability factor. When the CF or WF reaches the applicable suspension limits, the Contractor, immediate steps, including a halt to production, shall be taken to correct the CF and WF.

c. Fine and coarse aggregate moisture content. Whenever the moisture content of the fine or coarse aggregate changes by more than 0.5%, the

scale settings for the aggregate batcher and water batcher shall be adjusted.

d. Slump. The Contractor shall halt production and make appropriate adjustments whenever:

(1) one point falls outside the Suspension Limit line for individual measurements

OR

(2) two points in a row fall outside the Action Limit line for individual measurements.

d. Air content. The Contractor shall halt production and adjust the amount of air-entraining admixture whenever:

(1) one point falls outside the Suspension Limit line for individual measurements

OR

(2) two points in a row fall outside the Action Limit line for individual measurements.]

MATERIAL ACCEPTANCE

501-6.1 Quality Assurance (QA) Acceptance sampling and testing. All acceptance sampling and testing necessary to determine conformance with the requirements specified in this section, with the exception of coring for thickness determination, will be performed by the RPR. The Contractor shall provide adequate facilities for the initial curing of beams. The Contractor shall bear the cost of providing initial curing facilities and coring and filling operations, per paragraph 501-6.5b(1).

The samples will be transported while in the molds. The curing, except for the initial cure period, will be accomplished using the immersion in saturated lime water method. During the 24 hours after molding, the temperature immediately adjacent to the specimens must be maintained in the range of 60° to 80°F (16° to 27°C), and loss of moisture from the specimens must be prevented. The specimens may be stored in tightly constructed wooden boxes, damp sand pits, temporary buildings at construction sites, under wet burlap in favorable weather, or in heavyweight closed plastic bags, or using other suitable methods, provided the temperature and moisture loss requirements are met.

501-6.2 Quality Assurance (QA) testing laboratory. Quality assurance testing organizations performing these acceptance tests will be accredited in accordance with ASTM C1077. The quality assurance laboratory accreditation must be current and listed on the accrediting authority's website. All test methods required for acceptance sampling and testing must be listed on the lab accreditation. A copy of the laboratory's current accreditation and accredited test methods will be submitted to the RPR prior to start of construction.

501-6.3 Lot size. Concrete will be accepted for strength and thickness on a lot basis. A lot will consist of a day's production not to exceed 2,000 cubic yards (1530 cubic meters) [[] square yards ([] square meters)]. Each lot will be divided into approximately equal sublots with individual sublots between 400 to 600 cubic yards. Where three sublots are produced, they will constitute a lot. Where one or two sublots are produced, they will be incorporated into the previous or next lot. Where more than one plant is simultaneously producing concrete for the job, the lot sizes will apply separately for each plant.

501-6.4 Partial lots. When operational conditions cause a lot to be terminated before the specified number of tests have been made for the lot or for overages or minor placements to be considered as partial lots, the following procedure will be used to adjust the lot size and the number of tests for the lot.

Where three sublots have been produced, they will constitute a lot. Where one or two sublots have been produced, they will be incorporated into the next lot or the previous lot and the total number of sublots will be used in the acceptance criteria calculation, that is, $n=5$ or $n=6$.

The Engineer will specify the lot size for a project based on the total quantity and the expected production rate. The lot size should not exceed 2,000 cubic yards (1,530 cubic meters). For projects where basis of payment is square yards (square meters), the Engineer will convert the lot size to an equivalent area that contains 2,000 cubic yards (1,530 cubic meters) or less.

501-6.5 Acceptance Sampling and Testing.

a. Strength.

(1) Sampling. One sample will be taken for each subplot from the concrete delivered to the job site. Sampling locations will be determined by the RPR in accordance with random sampling procedures contained in ASTM D3665. The concrete will be sampled in accordance with ASTM C172.

(2) Test Specimens. The RPR will be responsible for the casting, initial curing, transportation, and curing of specimens in accordance with ASTM C31. Two (2) specimens will be made from each sample and slump, air content, unit weight, and temperature tests will be conducted for each set of strength specimens. Within 24 to 48 hours, the samples will be transported from the field to the laboratory while in the molds. Samples will be cured in saturated lime water.

The strength of each specimen will be determined in accordance with [ASTM C39] [ASTM C78]. The strength for each subplot will be computed by averaging the results of the two test specimens representing that subplot.

(3) Acceptance. Acceptance of pavement for strength will be determined by the RPR in accordance with paragraph 501-6.6b(1). All individual strength tests within a lot will be checked for outliers in accordance with ASTM E178, at a significance level of 5%. Outliers will be discarded and the remaining test values will be used to determine acceptance in accordance with paragraph 501-6.5b.

The Engineer must make the appropriate selections in paragraph 501-3.3 based on whether the strength is based on flexural or compressive strength.

b. Pavement thickness.

(1) Sampling. One core will be taken by the Contractor for each subplot in the presence of the RPR. Sampling locations will be determined by the RPR in accordance with random sampling procedures contained in ASTM D3665. Areas, such as thickened edges, with planned variable thickness, will be excluded from sample locations.

Cores shall be a minimum 4 inch (100 mm) in diameter neatly cut with a core drill. The Contractor will furnish all tools, labor, and materials for cutting samples and filling the cored hole. Core

holes will be filled by the Contractor with a non-shrink grout approved by the RPR within one day after sampling.

(2) Testing. The thickness of the cores will be determined by the RPR by the average caliper measurement in accordance with ASTM C174. Each core shall be photographed and the photograph included with the test report.

(3) Acceptance. Acceptance of pavement for thickness will be determined by the RPR in accordance with paragraph 501-6.6.

501-6.6 Acceptance criteria.

a. General. Acceptance will be based on the following characteristics of the completed pavement discussed in paragraph 501-6.5b:

- (1) Strength
- (2) Thickness
- (3) Grade
- (4) Profilograph smoothness [Not used.]
- (5) Adjustments for repairs

Add bracketed text when profilograph smoothness not used.

Profilograph smoothness and acceptance adjustment paragraphs only apply when the overall project is a new and/or reconstructed runway(s) and/or taxiway(s) greater than 500 feet (152 m) in length. Any changes to the profilograph smoothness acceptance limits requires a modification to standards in accordance with FAA Order 5300.1, Modifications to Agency Airport Design, Construction, and Equipment Standards.

Acceptance for strength, thickness, and grade, will be based on the criteria contained in accordance with paragraph 501-6.6b(1), 501-6.6b(2), and 501-6.6b(3), respectively. [Acceptance for profilograph smoothness will be based on the criteria contained in paragraph 501-6.6b(4).]

[Production quality must achieve 90 PWL or higher to receive full payment.

When the design strength in paragraph 501-3.3 is based on compressive strength, substitute compressive strength for flexural strength.

Strength and thickness will be evaluated for acceptance on a lot basis using the method of estimating PWL. Production quality must achieve 90 PWL or higher to receive full pavement. The PWL will be determined in accordance with procedures specified in Item C-110.

The lower specification tolerance limit (L) for strength and thickness will be:

Lower Specification Tolerance Limit (L)

Strength	0.93 × strength specified in paragraph 501-3.3
Thickness	Lot Plan Thickness in inches, - 0.50 in

]

The lower specification tolerance limits above are based on applying statistical analysis to FAA design assumptions, and there is no need to compensate for the above factor in the design process.

b. Acceptance criteria.

[**(1) Strength.** If the PWL of the lot equals or exceeds 90%, the lot will be acceptable. Acceptance and payment for the lot will be determined in accordance with paragraph 501-8.1.

(2) Thickness. If the PWL of the lot equals or exceeds 90%, the lot will be acceptable. Acceptance and payment for the lot will be determined in accordance with paragraph 501-8.1.]

For small maintenance and repair projects:

Where the project has multiple small placements or the total project size is less than 2000 cubic yards (1530 cubic meters), the use of percent within limits (PWL) is not appropriate and acceptable material will be paid for by the cubic yard (square yard).

Replace the above bracketed PWL requirements with the following:

- (1) Strength.** The strength for each subplot shall be computed by averaging the results of that subplot. When subplot strength equals or exceeds the strength as specified in paragraph 501-3.3, the lot will be acceptable. Acceptance and payment for the lot will be determined in accordance with paragraph 501-8.1.
- (2) Thickness.** If subplot thickness is not be less than ½ inch (12 mm) from plan thickness, the lot will be acceptable. Acceptance and payment for the lot will be determined in accordance with paragraph 501-8.1.

(3) Grade. The final finished surface of the pavement of the completed project will not vary from the gradeline elevations and cross-sections shown on the plans by more than 1/2 inch (12 mm) vertically [or 0.1 feet (30 mm) laterally]. The documentation, stamped and signed by a licensed surveyor shall be in accordance with paragraph 501-5.3h. Payment for sublots that do not meet grade for over 25% of the subplot shall reduced by 5% and not be more than 95%.

(4) Profilograph roughness for QA Acceptance. [The final profilograph shall be the full length of the project to facilitate testing of roughness

between lots. The [Contractor, in the presence of the RPR shall][RPR will] perform a profilograph roughness test on the completed project with a profilograph meeting the requirements of ASTM E1274 or a Class I inertial profiler meeting ASTM E950. Data and results shall be provided within[48 hrs]of profilograph roughness tests.

The pavement shall have an average profile index less than 15 inches per mile per 1/10 mile. The equipment shall utilize electronic recording and automatic computerized reduction of data to indicate "must grind" bumps and the Profile Index for the pavement using a 0.2-inch (5 mm) blanking band. The bump template must span one inch (25 mm) with an offset of 0.4 inches (10 mm). The profilograph must be calibrated prior to use and operated by a factory or State DOT approved, trained operator. Profilograms shall be recorded on a longitudinal scale of one inch (25 mm) equals 25 feet (7.5 m) and a vertical scale of one inch (25 mm) equals one inch (25 mm). Profilograph shall be performed one foot right and left of project centerline and 15 feet (4.5 m) right and left of project centerline. Any areas that indicate "must grind" shall be corrected with diamond grinding per paragraph 501-4.19f or by removing and replacing full depth of surface course. as directed by the RPR. Where corrections are necessary, a second profilograph run shall be performed to verify that the corrections produced an average profile index of 15 inches per mile per 1/10 mile or less.][Not used.]

Edit as required for project.

Profilograph roughness and acceptance paragraphs only apply when the overall project is a new and/or reconstructed runway(s) and/or taxiway(s) greater than 500 feet (152 m) in length.

Profilograph roughness is not applicable to aprons and should be used with caution on projects to rehabilitate runways and/or taxiways unless the project includes provisions to correct existing deficiencies.

Any changes to the profilograph roughness acceptance limits requires a modification to standards in accordance with FAA Order 5300.1, Modifications to Agency Airport Design, Construction, and Equipment Standards.

The Engineer must select who will provide the specified equipment and the timeframe for receiving the test data. The Airport should retain a copy of the profilograph roughness test and reports for inclusion in the Airport's Pavement Maintenance Management Program (PMP).

(5) Adjustments for repair. Sublots with spall repairs, crack repairs, or partial panel replacement, will be limited to no more than 95% payment.

(6) Adjustment for grinding. For sublots with grinding over 25% of a sublot, payment will be reduced 5%.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

501-7.1 Concrete pavement shall be measured by the number of [cubic yards (cubic meters)] [square yards (square meters)] of [plain] [reinforced] pavement as specified in-place, completed and accepted.

BASIS OF PAYMENT

501-8.1 Payment. Payment for concrete pavement meeting all acceptance criteria as specified in paragraph 501-6.6. Acceptance Criteria shall be based on results of strength [, smoothness,] and thickness tests. Payment for acceptable lots of concrete pavement shall be adjusted in accordance with paragraph 501-8.1a for strength and thickness; 501-8.1b for repairs; 501-8.1c for grinding; and 501-8.1d for smoothness, subject to the limitation that:

The total project payment for concrete pavement shall not exceed [___] percent of the product of the contract unit price and the total number of [cubic yards (cubic meters)] [square yards (square meters)] of concrete pavement used in the accepted work (See Note 1 under the Price Adjustment Schedule table below).

Payment shall be full compensation for all labor, materials, tools, equipment, and incidentals required to complete the work as specified herein and on the drawings.

The Engineer shall specify a value ranging from 100% to 106%. When the total project payment for Item P-501 pavement exceeds the contract unit price, any Airport Improvement Program (AIP) or Passenger Facility Charge (PFC) funds used to pay the excess may require an amendment to the AIP grant or PFC application for the project.

a. Basis of adjusted payment. The pay factor for each individual lot shall be calculated in accordance with the Price Adjustment Schedule table below. A pay factor shall be calculated for both strength and thickness. The lot pay factor shall be the higher of the two values when calculations for both strength and thickness are 100% or higher. The lot pay factor shall be the product of the two values when only one of the calculations for either strength or thickness is 100% or higher. The lot pay factor shall be the lower of the two values when calculations for both strength and thickness are less than 100%.

Price Adjustment Schedule¹

Percentage of Materials Within Specification Limits (PWL)	Lot Pay Factor (Percent of Contract Unit Price)
96 – 100	106
90 – 95	PWL + 10
75 – 90	0.5 PWL + 55
55 – 74	1.4 PWL – 12
Below 55	Reject ²

¹ Although it is theoretically possible to achieve a pay factor of 106% for each lot, actual payment in excess of 100% shall be subject to the total project payment limitation specified in paragraph 501-8.1.

² The lot shall be removed and replaced unless, after receipt of FAA concurrence, the Owner and Contractor agree in writing that the lot will remain; the lot paid at 50% of the contract unit price; and the total project payment limitation reduced by the amount withheld for that lot.

For each lot accepted, the adjusted contract unit price shall be the product of the lot pay factor for the lot and the contract unit price. Payment shall be subject to the total project payment limitation specified in paragraph 501-8.1. Payment in excess of 100% for accepted lots of concrete pavement shall be used to offset payment for accepted lots of concrete pavement that achieve a lot pay factor less than 100%; except for rejected lots which remain in place and/or sublots with adjustments for repairs.

b. Adjusted payment for repairs. The PWL lot pay factor shall be reduced by 5% and be no higher than 95% for sublots which contain repairs in accordance with paragraph 501-4.19 on more than 20% of the slabs within the subplot. Payment factors greater than 100 percent for the strength and thickness cannot be used to offset adjustments for repairs.

c. Adjusted payment for grinding. The PWL lot pay factor shall be reduced by 5% and be no higher than 95% for sublots with grinding over 25% of a subplot.

d. Profilograph Roughness. [The Contractor will receive full payment when the profilograph average profile index is in accordance with paragraph 501-6.6b(4). When the final average profile index for the entire length of pavement does not exceed 15 inches per mile per 1/10 mile, payment will be made at the contract unit price for the completed pavement.]

[Not used.]

Edit as required for project.

e. Payment. Payment shall be made under:

Item P-501-8.1 Concrete Pavement. [per cubic yard (cubic meter)] [per square yard (square meter)]

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM International (ASTM)

ASTM A184	Standard Specification for Welded Deformed Steel Bar Mats for Concrete Reinforcement
ASTM A615	Standard Specification for Deformed and Plain Carbon-Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement
ASTM A704	Standard Specification for Welded Steel Plain Bar or Rod Mats for Concrete Reinforcement
ASTM A706	Standard Specification for Low-Alloy Steel Deformed and Plain Bars for Concrete Reinforcement
ASTM A775	Standard Specification for Epoxy-Coated Steel Reinforcing Bars
ASTM A884	Standard Specification for Epoxy-Coated Steel Wire and Welded Wire Reinforcement
ASTM A934	Standard Specification for Epoxy-Coated Prefabricated Steel Reinforcing Bars
ASTM A996	Standard Specification for Rail-Steel and Axle-Steel Deformed Bars for Concrete Reinforcement
ASTM A1035	Standard Specification for Deformed and Plain, Low-Carbon, Chromium, Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement
ASTM A1064	Standard Specification for Carbon-Steel Wire and Welded Wire Reinforcement, Plain and Deformed, for Concrete
ASTM A1078	Standard Specification for Epoxy-Coated Steel Dowels for Concrete Pavement
ASTM C29	Standard Test Method for Bulk Density (“Unit Weight”) and Voids in Aggregate
ASTM C31	Standard Practice for Making and Curing Concrete Test Specimens in the Field
ASTM C33	Standard Specification for Concrete Aggregates
ASTM C39	Standard Test Method for Compressive Strength of Cylindrical Concrete Specimens
ASTM C70	Standard Test Method for Surface Moisture in Fine Aggregate
ASTM C78	Standard Test Method for Flexural Strength of Concrete (Using Simple Beam with Third-Point Loading)
ASTM C88	Standard Test Method for Soundness of Aggregates by Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate
ASTM C94	Standard Specification for Ready-Mixed Concrete
ASTM C114	Standard Test Methods for Chemical Analysis of Hydraulic Cement

ASTM C117	Standard Test Method for Materials Finer than 75- μ m (No. 200) Sieve in Mineral Aggregates by Washing
ASTM C123	Standard Test Method for Lightweight Particles in Aggregate
ASTM C136	Standard Test Method for Sieve Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates
ASTM C131	Standard Test Method for Resistance to Degradation of Small-Size Coarse Aggregate by Abrasion and Impact in the Los Angeles Machine
ASTM C136	Standard Test Method for Sieve or Screen Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates
ASTM C138	Standard Test Method for Density (Unit Weight), Yield, and Air Content (Gravimetric) of Concrete
ASTM C142	Standard Test Method for Clay Lumps and Friable Particles in Aggregates
ASTM C143	Standard Test Method for Slump of Hydraulic-Cement Concrete
ASTM C150	Standard Specification for Portland Cement
ASTM C171	Standard Specification for Sheet Materials for Curing Concrete
ASTM C172	Standard Practice for Sampling Freshly Mixed Concrete
ASTM C173	Standard Test Method for Air Content of Freshly Mixed Concrete by the Volumetric Method
ASTM C174	Standard Test Method for Measuring Thickness of Concrete Elements Using Drilled Concrete Cores
ASTM C227	Standard Test Method for Potential Alkali Reactivity of Cement-Aggregate Combinations (Mortar-Bar Method)
ASTM C231	Standard Test Method for Air Content of Freshly Mixed Concrete by the Pressure Method
ASTM C260	Standard Specification for Air-Entraining Admixtures for Concrete
ASTM C295	Standard Guide for Petrographic Examination of Aggregates for Concrete
ASTM C309	Standard Specification for Liquid Membrane-Forming Compounds for Curing Concrete
ASTM C311	Standard Test Methods for Sampling and Testing Fly Ash or Natural Pozzolans for Use in Portland Cement Concrete
ASTM C494	Standard Specification for Chemical Admixtures for Concrete
ASTM C566	Standard Test Method for Total Evaporable Moisture Content of Aggregates by Drying
ASTM C595	Standard Specification for Blended Hydraulic Cements
ASTM C618	Standard Specification for Coal Fly Ash and Raw or Calcined Natural Pozzolan for Use in Concrete
ASTM C642	Standard Test Method for Density, Absorption, and Voids in Hardened Concrete

ASTM C666	Standard Test Method for Resistance of Concrete to Rapid Freezing and Thawing
ASTM C685	Standard Specification for Concrete Made by Volumetric Batching and Continuous Mixing
ASTM C881	Standard Specification for Epoxy-Resin-Base Bonding Systems for Concrete
ASTM C989	Standard Specification for Slag Cement for Use in Concrete and Mortars
ASTM C1017	Standard Specification for Chemical Admixtures for Use in Producing Flowing Concrete
ASTM C1064	Test Method for Temperature of Freshly Mixed Hydraulic-Cement Concrete
ASTM C1077	Standard Practice for Agencies Testing Concrete and Concrete Aggregates for Use in Construction and Criteria for Testing Agency Evaluation
ASTM C1157	Standard Performance Specification for Hydraulic Cement
ASTM C1260	Standard Test Method for Potential Alkali Reactivity of Aggregates (Mortar-Bar Method)
ASTM C1365	Standard Test Method for Determination of the Proportion of Phases in Portland Cement and Portland-Cement Clinker Using X-Ray Powder Diffraction Analysis
ASTM C1567	Standard Test Method for Determining the Potential Alkali-Silica Reactivity of Combinations of Cementitious Materials and Aggregate (Accelerated Mortar-Bar Method)
ASTM C1602	Standard Specification for Mixing Water Used in the Production of Hydraulic Cement Concrete
ASTM D75	Standard Practice for Sampling Aggregates
ASTM D1751	Standard Specification for Preformed Expansion Joint Filler for Concrete Paving and Structural Construction (Nonextruding and Resilient Bituminous Types)
ASTM D1752	Standard Specification for Preformed Sponge Rubber and Cork and Recycled PVC Expansion Joint Fillers for Concrete Paving and Structural Construction
ASTM D2419	Standard Test Method for Sand Equivalent Value of Soils and Fine Aggregate
ASTM D3665	Standard Practice for Random Sampling of Construction Materials
ASTM D4791	Standard Test Method for Flat Particles, Elongated Particles, or Flat and Elongated Particles in Coarse Aggregate
ASTM E178	Standard Practice for Dealing with Outlying Observations
ASTM E1274	Standard Test Method for Measuring Pavement Roughness Using a Profilograph

ASTM E2133	Standard Test Method for Using a Rolling Inclinator to Measure Longitudinal and Transverse Profiles of a Traveled Surface
American Concrete Institute (ACI)	
ACI 305R	Guide to Hot Weather Concreting
ACI 306R	Guide to Cold Weather Concreting
ACI 309R	Guide for Consolidation of Concrete
Advisory Circulars (AC)	
AC 150/5320-6	Airport Pavement Design and Evaluation
Federal Highway Administration (FHWA)	
HIPERPAV 3, version 3.2	
Portland Concrete Association (PCA)	
PCA	Design and Control of Concrete Mixtures, 16 th Edition
U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (USACE) Concrete Research Division (CRD)	
CRD C662	Determining the Potential Alkali-Silica Reactivity of Combinations of Cementitious Materials, Lithium Nitrate Admixture and Aggregate (Accelerated Mortar-Bar Method)
United States Air Force Engineering Technical Letter (ETL)	
ETL 97-5	Proportioning Concrete Mixtures with Graded Aggregates for Rigid Airfield Pavements

END ITEM P-501

Part 8– Surface Treatments

Item P-608 Emulsified Asphalt Seal Coat

DESCRIPTION

This specification covers the requirements for emulsified asphalt surface treatments (not coal tars products) for taxiways and runways with the application of a suitable aggregate to maintain adequate surface friction; airfield secondary and tertiary pavements including taxiways, shoulders, overruns, roads, parking areas, and other general applications with or without aggregate applied.

P-608 may be applied to:

- **Pavements in fair or better condition as defined in ASTM D5340 or advisory circular (AC) 150/5320-17, Airfield Pavement Surface Evaluation and Rating (PASER) Manuals.**
- **Low to moderate weathered surfaces as defined by ASTM D5340.**
- **New asphalt pavement.**

For projects with very limited closure times due to the need to re-open for aircraft operations, ensure application windows allow sufficient time for proper curing before opening to traffic.

For night time and short window applications P-608R may be an alternative.

Ensure compatibility for projects when applying the seal coat over an existing surface treatment.

The Engineer must verify the selected materials comply with federal, state, and local authority requirements.

608-1.1 This item shall consist of the application of a emulsified asphalt surface treatment composed of an emulsion of natural and refined asphalt materials, water and a polymer additive, for taxiways and runways with the application of a suitable aggregate to maintain adequate surface friction; and airfield secondary and tertiary pavements including low-speed taxiways, shoulders, overruns, roads, parking areas, and other general applications with or without aggregate applied as designated on the plans. The terms seal coat, asphalt sealer, and asphalt material are interchangeable throughout this specification. The term emulsified asphalt means an emulsion of natural and refined asphalt materials.

Engineer must indicate locations on plans with and/or without aggregate.

Aggregate is required on runways and high-speed taxiways; recommended on all taxiways; and not recommended on shoulders.

The performance of a seal coat/sealer binder product is contingent on the pavement condition at the time of application. The pavement condition survey provides a

measure of the pavement condition by analyzing the type, amount, and severity of the distresses, and by determining the pavement condition index (PCI) in accordance with AC 150/5380-7, Airport Pavement Management Program (PMP), and ASTM D5340. A typical asphalt pavement candidate is one with a structural condition index (SCI) deduct value of less than 10 and a PCI greater than 60.

MATERIALS

608-2.1 Aggregate. The aggregate material shall be a dry, clean, dust and dirt free, sound, durable, angular shaped manufactured specialty sand, such as that used as an abrasive, with a Mohs hardness of 6 to 8. The Contractor shall submit the specialty sand manufacturer's technical data and a manufacturer's Certificate of Analysis (COA) indicating that the specialty sand meets the requirements of the specification to the RPR prior to start of construction. The sand must be approved for use by the RPR and shall meet the following gradation limits when tested in accordance with ASTM C136 and ASTM C117:

Aggregate Material Gradation Requirements¹

Sieve Designation (square openings)	Individual Percentage Retained by Weight
No. 10 (2.00 mm)	0
No. 14 (1.41 mm)	0-4
No. 16 (1.18 mm)	0-8
No. 20 (850 µm)	0-35
No. 30 (600 µm)	20-50
No. 40 (425 µm)	10-45
No. 50 (300 µm)	0-20
No. 70 (212 µm)	0-5
No. 100 (150 µm)	0-2
No. 200 (75 µm)	0-2

¹ Locally available sand or abrasive material that is slightly outside of the gradation requirements may be approved by the RPR with concurrence by the seal coat manufacturer for the use of locally available sand or abrasive material. The RPR and manufacturer's field representative should verify acceptance during application of Control strips indicated under paragraph 608-3.2.

The Contractor shall provide a certification showing particle size analysis and properties of the material delivered for use on the project. The Contractor's certification may be subject to verification by testing the material delivered for use on the project.

The gradations in the table represent the limits in determining aggregate suitability for use in the emulsified asphalt surface treatment. The sand gradation used, within the limits designated in the table, shall provide sufficient friction levels to meet or exceed the Maintenance Planning Friction Level in Table 3-2, "Friction Level Classification for Runway Pavement Surfaces" of AC 150/5320-12, Measurement, Construction, and Maintenance of Skid Resistant Airport Pavement Surfaces.

608-2.2 Asphalt Emulsion. The asphalt emulsion shall meet the properties in the following table:

Concentrated Asphalt Emulsion Properties

Properties	Specification	Limits
Viscosity, Saybolt Furol at 77°F (25°C)	ASTM D7496	20 – 100 seconds
Residue by Distillation or Evaporation	ASTM D6997 or ASTM D6934	57% minimum
Sieve Test	ASTM D6933	0.1% maximum
24-hour Stability	ASTM D6930	1% maximum
5-day Settlement Test	ASTM D6930	5.0% maximum
Particle Charge ¹	ASTM D7402	Positive 6.5 maximum pH

¹ pH may be used in lieu of the particle charge test which is sometimes inconclusive in slow setting, asphalt emulsions.

The asphalt material base residue shall contain not less than 20% gilsonite, or uintaite and shall not contain any tall oil pitch or coal tar material and shall contain no less than one percent (1%) polymer.

Tests on Residue from Distillation or Evaporation

Properties	Specification	Limits
Viscosity at 275°F (135°C)	ASTM D4402	1750 cts maximum
Solubility in 1, 1, 1 trichloroethylene	ASTM D2042	97.5% minimum
Penetration	ASTM D5	50 dmm maximum
Asphaltenes	ASTM D2007	15% minimum
Saturates	ASTM D2007	15% maximum
Polar Compounds	ASTM D2007	25% minimum
Aromatics	ASTM D2007	15% minimum

The asphalt emulsion, when diluted in the volumetric proportion of [one part concentrated asphalt material to one part hot water] [two parts concentrated asphalt material to one part hot water] shall have the following properties:

The Engineer should select the dilution rate(s) for the various treatment area(s) and note the dilution rate per area(s) on the plans in accordance with paragraph 608-3.1.

Curing time will be impacted by temperature and humidity. Curing time, under recommended application conditions is generally 4 -24 hours. Curing times may be extended with high humidity conditions.

One-to-One Dilution Emulsion Properties

Properties	Specification	Limits
In Ready-to-Apply Form, one part concentrate to one part water, by volume		
Viscosity, Saybolt Furol at 77°F (25°C)	ASTM D7496	5 – 50 seconds
Residue by Distillation or Evaporation	ASTM D6997 or ASTM D6934	28.5% minimum
Pumping Stability ¹		Pass

¹ Pumping stability is tested by pumping one pint (475 ml) of seal coat diluted one (1) part concentrate to one (1) part water, at 77°F (25°C), through a 1/4-inch (6 mm) gear pump operating 1750 rpm for 10 minutes with no significant separation or coagulation.

Two-to-One Dilution Emulsion Properties

Properties	Specification	Limits
In Ready-to-Apply Form, two parts concentrate to one part water, by volume		
Viscosity, Saybolt Furol at 77°F (25°C)	ASTM D7496	5 – 50 seconds
Residue by Distillation or Evaporation	ASTM D6997 or ASTM D6934	38% minimum
Pumping Stability ¹		Pass

¹ Pumping stability is tested by pumping one pint (475 ml) of seal coat diluted one (1) part concentrate to one (1) part water, at 77°F (25°C), through a 1/4-inch (6 mm) gear pump operating 1750 rpm for 10 minutes with no significant separation or coagulation.

The Contractor shall provide a copy of the manufacturer's Certificate of Analysis (COA) for the emulsified asphalt delivered to the project. If the asphalt emulsion is diluted at other than the manufacturer's facility, the Contractor shall provide a supplemental COA from an independent laboratory verifying the asphalt emulsion properties.

The COA shall be provided to and approved by the RPR before the emulsified asphalt is applied. The furnishing of the vendor's certified test report for the asphalt material shall not be interpreted as a basis for final acceptance. The manufacturer's COA may be subject to verification by testing the material delivered for use on the project.

The asphalt material storage and handling temperature shall be between 50°F - 160°F (10°C - 70°C) and the material shall be protected from freezing, or whenever outside temperature drops below 40°F (4°C) for prolonged time periods.

Contractor shall provide a list of airport pavement projects, exposed to similar climate conditions, where this product has been successfully applied within at least 5 years of the project.

608-2.3 Water. Water used in mixing or curing shall be from potable water sources. Other sources shall be tested in accordance with ASTM C1602 prior to use. Water used in making and diluting the emulsion shall be potable, with a maximum hardness of 90ppm calcium and 15ppm magnesium; deleterious iron, sulfates, and phosphates maximum 7ppm, and less than 1ppm of organic byproducts. Water shall be a minimum of 140°F (60°C) prior to adding to emulsion.

608-2.4 Polymer. The polymer shall meet the properties in the following table:

Polymer Properties

Properties	Limits
Solids Content	47% to 65%, Percent by Weight
Weight	8.0 to 9.0 pounds/gallon (1.07 to 1.17 kg/L)
pH	3.0 to 8.0
Particle Charge	Nonionic/Cationic
Mechanical Stability	Excellent
Film Forming Temperature, °C	+5°C, minimum
Tg, °C	22°C, maximum

The manufacturer shall provide a copy of the Certificate of Analysis (COA) for the polymer used in the seal coat; and the Contractor shall include the COA with the emulsified asphalt COA when submitting to the RPR.

608-2.5 Seal Coat with Aggregate. The Contractor shall submit friction test data from no less than one of the airport projects identified under 608-2.2. The test data must be from the same project and include technical details on application rates, aggregate rates, and point of contact at the airport to confirm use and success of sealer with aggregate.

Friction test data in accordance with AC 150/5320-12, at 40 or 60 mph (65 or 95 km/h) wet, must include as a minimum; the friction value prior to sealant application; two values, between 24 and 96 hours after application, with a minimum of 24 hours between tests; and one value between 180 days and 360 days after the application. The results of the tests between 24 and 96 hours shall indicate friction is increasing at a rate to obtain similar friction value of the pavement surface prior to application, and the long-term test shall indicate no apparent adverse effect with time relative to friction values and existing pavement surface.

Seal coat material submittal without required friction performance will not be approved. Friction tests performed on this project cannot be used as a substitute of this requirement.

COMPOSITION AND APPLICATION RATE

608-3.1 Application Rate. The approximate amounts of materials per square yard (square meter) for the asphalt surface treatment shall be as provided in the table for the treatment area(s) at the specified dilution rate(s) as noted on the plans. The actual application rates will vary within the range specified to suit field conditions and will be recommended by the manufacturer's representative and approved by the RPR from the test area/sections evaluation.

Application Rate

Dilution Rate	Quantity of Emulsion gal/yd ² (l/m ²)	Quantity of Aggregate lb/yd ² (kg/m ²)
[1 : 1]	0.10-0.17 (0.45-0.77)	0.20-0.50 (0.11-0.27)]
[2 : 1]	0.08-0.17 (0.36-0.77)	0.20-0.50 (0.11-0.27)]

The quantities of material shown in the table above cover an average range of conditions. The quantity of sand, the dilution rate of the emulsified asphalt and its rate of spread should take into consideration local conditions and experience. The Engineer should select the dilution rate(s) reflecting the local condition of the pavement such as surface texture, porosity, and age of the asphalt pavement to be sealed.

A dilution rate of one (1) part emulsified asphalt to one (1) part water is recommended for most applications. A dilution rate of two (2) parts emulsified asphalt to one (1) part water is recommended for grooved, rough or course surfaces, or where the pavement is highly oxidized or badly cracked.

608-3.2 Control areas and control strips. Prior to full application, the control strip must be accepted by the RPR. The surface preparation, personnel, equipment, and method of operation used on the test area(s) and control strip(s) shall be the same as used on the remainder of the work.

A qualified manufacturer's representative shall be present in the field to assist the Contractor in applying control areas and/or control strips to determine the appropriate application rate of both emulsion and aggregate to be approved by the RPR.

A test area(s) and control strip(s) shall be applied for each differing asphalt pavement surface identified in the project. The test area(s) and control strip(s) shall be used to determine the material application rate(s) of both emulsion and sand prior to full production.

a. For taxiway, taxilane and apron surfaces. Prior to full application, the Contractor shall place test areas at varying application rates as recommended by the Contractor's manufacturer's representative to determine appropriate application rate(s). The test areas will be located on representative section(s) of the pavement to receive the asphalt surface treatment designated by the RPR.

b. For runway and high-speed exit taxiway surfaces. Prior to full application, the Contractor shall place a series of control strips a minimum of 300 feet (90 m) long by 12 feet (3.6 m) wide, or width of anticipated application, whichever is greater, at varying application rates as recommended by the manufacturer's representative and acceptable to the RPR to determine appropriate application rate(s). The control strips should be separated by a minimum of 200 feet between control strips. The area to be tested will be located on a representative section of the pavement to receive the asphalt surface treatment designated by the RPR. The control strips should be placed under similar field conditions as anticipated for the actual application. The skid resistance of the existing pavement shall be determined for each control strip with a continuous friction measuring equipment (CFME). The skid resistance of existing pavement can be immediately adjacent to the control strip or at the same location as the control strip if testing prior to application. The Contractor may begin testing the skid resistance of runway and high-speed exit taxiway control strips after application of the asphalt surface treatment has fully cured, generally 8 to 36 hours after application of the control strips depending on site and environmental conditions. Aircraft shall not be permitted on the runway or high speed exit taxiway control strips until such time as the Contractor validates that its surface friction meets the maintenance planning friction levels in AC 150/5320-12, Table 3-2 when tested at speeds of 40 and 60 mph (65 and 95 km/h) wet with approved CFME.

If the control strip should prove to be unsatisfactory, necessary adjustments to the application rate, placement operations, and equipment shall be made. Additional control strips shall be placed and additional skid resistance tests performed and evaluated. Full production shall not begin without the

RPR's approval of an appropriate application rate(s). Acceptable control strips shall be paid for in accordance with paragraph 608-8.1.

For projects calling for application of the asphalt surface treatment on runway and high-speed exit taxiway, the Engineer shall document skid resistance in accordance with AC 150/5320-12, Measurement, Construction, and Maintenance of Skid-Resistant Airport Pavement Surfaces, prior to full application.

The test areas/sections afford the Contractor and the Engineer an opportunity to determine the quality of the mixture in place as well as the performance of the equipment.

Climate/weather conditions may significantly affect cure time, i.e., the time necessary to achieve acceptable friction results.

If operational conditions preclude placement of a control strip on the pavement to be seal coated, it may be applied on a pavement with similar surface texture.

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

608-4.1 Worker safety. The Contractor shall obtain a Safety Data Sheet (SDS) for both the asphalt emulsion product and sand and require workmen to follow the manufacturer's recommended safety precautions.

608-4.2 Weather limitations. The asphalt emulsion shall be applied only when the existing pavement surface is dry and when the weather is not foggy, rainy, or when the wind velocity will prevent the uniform application of the material. No material shall be applied in strong winds that interfere with the uniform application of the material(s), or when dust or sand is blowing or when rain is anticipated within eight (8) hours of application completion. The atmospheric temperature and the pavement surface temperature shall both be at, or above 60°F (16°C) and rising. Seal coat shall not be applied when pavement temperatures are expected to exceed 130°F within the subsequent 72 hours if traffic will be opened on pavement within those 72 hours. During application, account for wind drift. Cover existing buildings, structures, runway edge lights, taxiway edge lights, informational signs, retro-reflective marking and in-pavement duct markers as necessary to protect against overspray before applying the emulsion. Should emulsion get on any light or marker fixture, promptly clean the fixture. If cleaning is not satisfactory to the RPR, the Contractor shall replace any light, sign or marker with equivalent equipment at no cost to the Owner.

608-4.3 Equipment and tools. The Contractor shall furnish all equipment, tools, and machinery necessary for the performance of the work.

a. Pressure distributor. The emulsion shall be applied with a manufacturer-approved computer rate-controlled asphalt distributor. The equipment shall be in good working order and contain no contaminants or diluents in the tank. Spray bar tips must be clean, free of burrs, and of a size to maintain an even distribution of the emulsion. Any type of tip or pressure source is suitable that will maintain predetermined flow rates and constant pressure during the application process with application speeds under eight (8) miles per hour (13 km per hour) or seven hundred (700) feet per minute (213 m per minute). The equipment will be tested under pressure for leaks and to ensure proper set-up before use. The Contractor will provide verification of truck set-up (via a test-shot area), including but not limited to, nozzle tip size appropriate for application per nozzle manufacturer, spray-bar height and pressure and pump speed appropriate for the viscosity and temperature of sealer material, evidence of triple-overlap

spray pattern, lack of leaks, and any other factors relevant to ensure the truck is in good working order before use.

The distributor truck shall be equipped with a 12-foot (3.7-m), minimum, spray bar with individual nozzle control. The distributor truck shall be capable of specific application rates in the range of 0.05 to 0.25 gallons per square yard (0.15 to 0.80 liters per square meter). These rates shall be computer-controlled rather than mechanical. The distributor truck shall have an easily accessible thermometer that constantly monitors the temperature of the emulsion, and have an operable mechanical tank gauge that can be used to cross-check the computer accuracy.

The distributor truck shall effectively heat and mix the material to the required temperature prior to application in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

The distributor shall be equipped with a hand sprayer to spray the emulsion in areas not accessible to the distributor truck.

b. Aggregate spreader. The asphalt distributor truck will be equipped with an aggregate spreader mounted to the distributor truck that can apply sand to the emulsion in a single pass operation without driving through wet emulsion. The aggregate spreader shall be equipped with a variable control system capable of uniformly distributing the sand at the specified rate at varying application widths and speeds. The aggregate spreader must be adjusted to produce an even and accurate application of specified aggregate. Prior to any seal coat application, the aggregate spreader will be calibrated onsite to ensure acceptable uniformity of spread. The RPR will observe the calibration and verify the results. The aggregate spreader will be re-calibrated each time the aggregate rate is changed either during the application of test strips or production. The Contractor may consult the seal coat manufacturer representative for procedure and guidance. The sander shall have a minimum hopper capacity of 3,000 pounds (1361 kg) of sand. Push-type hand sanders will be allowed for use around lights, signs and other obstructions, if necessary.

c. Power broom/blower. A power broom and/or blower shall be provided for removing loose material from the surface to be treated.

d. Equipment calibration. Asphalt distributors must be calibrated within the same construction season in accordance with ASTM D2995. The Contractor must furnish a current calibration certification for the asphalt distributor truck from any State or other agency as approved by the RPR.

608-4.4 Preparation of asphalt pavement surfaces. Clean pavement surface immediately prior to placing the seal coat so that it is free of dust, dirt, grease, vegetation, oil or any type of objectionable surface film. Remove oil or grease from the asphalt pavement by scrubbing with a detergent, washing thoroughly with clean water, and then treat these areas with a spot primer. Any additional surface preparation, such as crack repair, shall be in accordance with Item P-101, paragraph 101-3.6.

[a. New asphalt pavement surfaces. Allow new asphalt pavement surfaces to cure so that there is no concentration of oils on the surface.

Perform a water-break-free test to confirm that the surface oils have degraded and dissipated. (Cast approximately one gallon (4 liters) of clean water out over the surface. The water should sheet out and wet the surface uniformly without crawling or showing oil rings.) If signs of crawling or oil rings are apparent on the pavement surface, additional time must be allowed for additional curing and retesting of the pavement surface prior to treatment.]

608-4.5 Emulsion mixing. The application emulsion shall be obtained by blending asphalt material concentrate, water and polymer, if specified. Always add heated water to the asphalt material concentrate, never add asphalt material concentrate to heated water. Mix one part heated water to [one part] [two parts] asphalt material concentrate, by volume.

Add 1% polymer, by volume, to the emulsion mix. If the polymer is added to the emulsion mix at the plant, submit weight scale tickets to the RPR. As an option, the polymer may be added to the emulsion mix at the job site provided the polymer is added slowly while the asphalt distributor truck circulating pump is running. The mix must be agitated for a minimum of 15 minutes or until the polymer is mixed to the satisfaction of the RPR.

608-4.6 Application of asphalt emulsion. The asphalt emulsion shall be applied using a pressure distributor upon the properly prepared, clean and dry surface at the application rate recommended by the manufacturer's representative and approved by the RPR from the test area/sections evaluation for each designated treatment area. The asphalt emulsion should be applied at a temperature between 130°F (54°C) and 160°F (70°C) or in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendation.

Pavement with excessive surface grade may need to be treated in two applications to achieve the specified application rate, consult with the manufacturer and coordinate any modification to specification with local FAA.

If low spots and depressions greater than 1/2 inch (12 mm) in depth in the pavement surface cause ponding or puddling of the applied materials, the pavement surface shall be lightly broomed with a broom or brush type squeegee until the pavement surface is free of any pools of excess material.

During all applications, the surfaces of adjacent structures shall be protected to prevent their being spattered or marred.

608-4.7 Application of aggregate material. Immediately following the application of the asphalt emulsion, friction sand at the rate recommended by the manufacturer's representative and approved by the RPR from the test area/sections evaluation for each designated application area, shall be spread uniformly over the asphalt emulsion in a single-pass operation simultaneous with the sealer application. The aggregate shall be spread to the same width of application as the asphalt material and shall not be applied in such thickness as to cause blanketing.

Sprinkling of additional aggregate material, and spraying additional asphalt material over areas that show up having insufficient cover or bitumen, shall be done by hand whenever necessary. In areas where hand work is necessitated, the sand shall be applied before the sealant begins to break.

Minimize aggregate from being broadcast and accumulating on the untreated pavement adjacent to an application pass. Prior to the next application pass, the Contractor shall clean areas of excess or loose aggregate and remove from project site.

QUALITY CONTROL (QC)

608-5.1 Manufacturer's representation. The manufacturer's representative knowledgeable of the material, procedures, and equipment described in the specification is responsible to assist the Contractor and RPR in determining the appropriate application rates of the emulsion and aggregate, as well as recommendations for proper preparation and start-up of seal coat application. Documentation of the manufacturer representative's experience and knowledge for applying the seal coat product shall be furnished to the RPR a minimum of 10 work days prior to placement of the control strips. The cost of the manufacturer's representative shall be included in the Contractor's bid price.

608-5.2 Contractor qualifications. The Contractor shall provide documentation to the RPR that the seal coat Contractor is qualified to apply the seal coat, including personnel, and equipment, and has made at least three (3) applications similar to this project in the past two (2) years.

MATERIAL ACCEPTANCE

608-6.1 Application rate. The rate of application of the asphalt emulsion shall be verified at least twice per day.

608-6.2 Friction tests. Friction tests in accordance with AC 150/5320-12, Measurement, Construction, and Maintenance of Skid-Resistant Airport Pavement Surfaces, shall be performed on all runway and high-speed taxiways that received a seal coat. Each test includes performing friction tests at 40 mph and 60 mph (65 or 95 km/h) both wet, 15 feet (4.5 m) to each side of runway centerline with approved continuous friction measuring equipment (CFME). The Contractor shall coordinate testing with the RPR and provide the RPR a written report of friction test results. The RPR shall be present for testing.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

608-7.1 Asphalt surface treatment. The quantity of asphalt surface treatment shall be measured by the square yards [square meters] of material applied in accordance with the plans and specifications and accepted by the RPR.

The Contractor must furnish the RPR with the certified weigh bills when materials are received for the asphalt material used under this contract. The Contractor must not remove material from the tank car or storage tank until initial amounts and temperature measurements have been verified.

BASIS OF PAYMENT

608-8.1 Payment shall be made at the contract unit price per square yard [square meter] for the asphalt surface treatment applied and accepted by the RPR, and the contract unit price per lump sum for runway friction testing. This price shall be full compensation for all surface preparation, furnishing all materials, delivery and application of these materials, for all labor, equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete the item, [including the friction testing and all work required to meet AC 150/5320-12,] and any costs associated with furnishing a qualified manufacturer's representative to assist with control strips.

[**608-8.2** Payment shall be made at the contract unit price per lump sum for friction testing and all work required to meet AC 150/5320-12.]

Payment will be made under:

Edit brackets for project. Add additional Pay Items as necessary for multiple treatment areas and dilution rates shown on the plans per paragraph 608-3.1.

Item P-608-8.1 Asphalt Surface Treatment – per square yard [square meter]

[Item P-608-8.2 Runway and High Speed Exit Taxiway Friction
Testing – per lump sum]

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM International (ASTM)

ASTM C117	Standard Test Method for Materials Finer than 75- μ m (No. 200) Sieve in Mineral Aggregates by Washing
ASTM C136	Standard Test Method for Sieve Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates
ASTM C1602	Standard Specification for Mixing Water Used in the Production of Hydraulic Cement Concrete
ASTM D5	Standard Test Method for Penetration of Asphalt Materials
ASTM D244	Standard Test Methods and Practices for Emulsified Asphalts
ASTM D2007	Standard Test Method for Characteristic Groups in Rubber Extender and Processing Oils and Other Petroleum-Derived Oils by the Clay-Gel Absorption Chromatographic Method
ASTM D2042	Standard Test Method for Solubility of Asphalt Materials in Trichloroethylene
ASTM D2995	Standard Practice for Estimating Application Rate of Bituminous Distributors
ASTM D4402	Standard Test Method for Viscosity Determination of Asphalt at Elevated Temperatures Using a Rotational Viscometer
ASTM D5340	Standard Test Method for Airport Pavement Condition Index Surveys

Advisory Circulars (AC)

AC 150/5320-12	Measurement, Construction, and Maintenance of Skid-Resistant Airport Pavement Surfaces
AC 150/5320-17	Airfield Pavement Surface Evaluation and Rating (PASER) Manuals
AC 150/5380-6	Guidelines and Procedures for Maintenance of Airport Pavements

END OF ITEM P-608

Page Intentionally Blank

Item P-608-R Rapid Cure Seal Coat

DESCRIPTION

Prior to the use of Item P-608-R, the Engineer must check with federal, state, and local authorities on the use of products that contain volatile organic compounds (VOC). Asphalt Seal Coat products assist in pavement preservation through reducing the rate of pavement oxidation.

This specification covers the requirements for a rapid cure gilsonite-asphalt surface treatment. P-608-R is designed for use as an alternative to Item P-608 type treatment on pavements which could otherwise accept a standard Item P-608 but which must be accomplished under more restrictive site conditions such as night-time work, short operational windows, etc., requiring a rapid cure.

P-608-R is for taxiways and runways with the application of a suitable aggregate to maintain adequate surface friction; airfield secondary and tertiary pavements including aprons, shoulders, overruns, roads, parking areas, and other general applications with or without aggregate applied.

P-608-R may be applied to:

- Pavements in fair or better condition as defined in ASTM D5340 or advisory circular (AC) 150/5320-17, Airfield Pavement Surface Evaluation and Rating (PASER) Manuals.
- Low to moderate weathered surfaces as defined by ASTM D5340.
- New asphalt pavement.

The material properties in Item P-608-R include approximately twice the amount of gilsonite asphalt as Item P-608 which provides a seal coat that is initially harder and more durable. The typical curing time, under recommended application conditions, is one to two (2) to three (3) hours.

The Engineer must verify the selected materials comply with federal, state, and local authority requirements.

608-R-1.1 This item shall consist of the application of an asphalt surface treatment composed of natural and refined asphalt materials, additives, and light oils, for taxiways and runways with the application of a suitable aggregate to maintain adequate surface friction; and airfield secondary and tertiary pavements including aprons, shoulders, overruns, roads, parking areas, and other general applications with or without aggregate applied as designated on the plans.

Engineer must indicate locations on plans with and/or without aggregate. Aggregate is required on runways and high-speed taxiways; recommended on all taxiways; and not recommended on shoulders.

The performance of a seal coat product is contingent on the pavement condition at the time of application. The pavement condition survey provides a measure of the pavement condition by analyzing the type, amount, and severity of the distresses, and by determining the pavement condition index (PCI) in accordance with AC 150/5380-7, Airport Pavement Management Program (PMP), and ASTM D5340. A typical asphalt pavement candidate is one with a structural condition index (SCI) deduct value of less than 10 and a PCI equal to or greater than 60.

The terms seal coat, asphalt sealer, and asphalt material are interchangeable throughout this specification. The term asphalt means natural and refined asphalt materials in this specification.

MATERIALS

608-R-2.1 Aggregate. The fine-aggregate material shall be a dry, clean, sound, durable, angular shaped, with highly textured surfaces, manufactured specialty abrasive aggregate. It shall have 100% fractured faces, SiO₂ content of 55% minimum, CaO of 3% max, with a sand equivalent greater than 85 and a Mohs hardness of 7 or greater. Additional characteristics as outlined in the following table(s). The Contractor shall submit specialty aggregate manufacturer's technical data and the specialty aggregate manufacturer's certification indicating that the specialty aggregate meets the requirements of the specification to the RPR prior to start of construction. The aggregate must be approved for use by the RPR and shall meet the following gradation limits when tested in accordance with ASTM C136:

Aggregate Material Gradation Requirements

Sieve Designation	Percentage by Weight Passing Sieves
No. 8	100
No. 14	98-100
No. 16	85-100
No. 30	15-45
No. 50	0-8
No. 70	0-2

Aggregate Characteristics

Test	Standard	Range
Micro-Deval	ASTM D7428	15% max
Magnesium Sulfate Soundness	ASTM C88	2% max
Aggregate Angularity	ASTM C1252 – Test Method A	45% min
Moisture Content (%)	ASTM C566	2% max
Bulk Dry Specific Gravity	ASTM C128	2.6 – 3.0
Absorption (%)	ASTM D2216	3% max
Mohs Hardness	Mohs Scale	7 min

The Contractor shall provide a certification of analysis (COA) showing analysis and properties of the material delivered for use on the project. The Contractor's certification may be subject to verification by testing the material delivered for use on the project.

The gradations in the table represent the limits in determining aggregate suitability for use in the RapidCure asphalt surface treatment. The aggregate gradation used, within the limits designated in the table, should provide sufficient friction levels to meet or exceed the maintenance planning Friction Level in Table 3-2, "Friction Level Classification for Runway Pavement Surfaces" of AC 150/5320-12, Measurement, Construction, and Maintenance of Skid Resistant Airport Pavement Surfaces.

608-R-2.2 Asphalt material. The asphalt material base residue shall contain not less than 40% gilsonite, or uintaite, and shall not contain any tall oil pitch or coal tar material. The material shall be compatible with asphalt pavement, and have a 5-year minimum proven aviation performance record at airports with similar climatic conditions. The solvent-based rapid cure material shall meet the following properties:

Properties for Asphalt Sealing Material

Properties	Specification	Limits
Kinematic Viscosity at 140°F (60°C)	ASTM D4402	10-30 cSt
Percent Residue by Distillation	ASTM D402	30-45%

Tests on Residue from Distillation

Properties	Specification	Limits
Penetration at 77°F (25°C)	ASTM D5	2-12 dmm
Softening Point	ASTM D36	180-200
Solubility in 1,1,1 Trichloroethylene	ASTM D2042	99% min.
HCl Precipitation Value		18-25

The Contractor shall provide a copy of the manufacturer's Certificate of Analysis (COA) for the asphalt sealer delivered to the project. If the asphalt sealer is diluted at other than the manufacturer's facility, the Contractor shall provide a supplemental COA from an independent laboratory verifying the asphalt sealer properties. The COA shall be provided to and approved by the RPR before the asphalt material is applied. The furnishing of the vendor's certified test report for the asphalt material shall not be interpreted as a basis for final acceptance. The manufacturer's COA may be subject to verification by testing the material delivered for use on the project.

The asphalt sealing material must be applied in an undiluted form. The material may be stored at ambient temperature for long periods of time if necessary. Storage will follow industry standard recommendations due to the flammability of the material; avoid sparks and open flames to come into contact with the material or any gasses that might be escaping the storage vessel.

Contractor shall provide a list of airport pavement projects, exposed to similar climate conditions, where this product has been successfully applied within at least 5 years of the project.

608-R-2.3 Seal Coat with Aggregate. The Contractor shall submit friction test data from at least two (2) airport projects identified under 608-R-2.2. The test data must be from the same project and include technical details on application rates, aggregate rates, and point of contact at the airport to confirm use and success of sealer with aggregate.

Friction test data in accordance with AC 150/5320-12, at 40 or 60 mph (65 or 95 km/h) wet, must include as a minimum; the friction value prior to sealant application; two values, between 24 and 96 hours after application, with a minimum of 24 hours between tests; and one value between 180 days and 360 days after the application. The results of the tests between 24 and 96 hours shall indicate friction is increasing at a rate to obtain similar friction value of the pavement surface prior to application, and the long-term test shall indicate no apparent adverse effect with time relative to friction values and existing pavement surface.

Seal coat material submittal without required friction performance will not be approved. Friction tests performed on this project cannot be used as a substitute of this requirement.

COMPOSITION AND APPLICATION RATE

608-R-3.1 Application Rate. The approximate amounts of materials per square yard (square meter) for the asphalt surface treatment shall be as provided in the table for the treatment area(s) at the specified rate(s) as noted on the plans. The actual application rates will vary within the range specified to suit field conditions and will be recommended by the manufacturer's representative for control strip evaluations, and approved by the RPR from the test area/sections evaluation.

Application Rate

Dilution Rate	Quantity of Sealer gal/yd² (l/m²)	Quantity of Aggregate lb/yd² (kg/m²)
N/A	0.08-0.15 (0.36-0.68)	0.40-0.50 (0.11-0.22)

The quantities of material shown in the table above cover an average range of conditions. The quantity of aggregate, and the rate of rapid cure seal coat material spread should take into consideration local conditions and experience. The

Engineer should select the rate(s) reflecting the local condition of the pavement such as surface texture, porosity, and age of the asphalt pavement to be sealed.

A higher rate is recommended for grooved, rough or course surfaces, or where the pavement is highly oxidized or badly cracked.

608-R-3.2 Control areas and control strips. A qualified manufacturer's representative shall be present in the field to assist the Contractor in applying control areas and/or control strips to determine the appropriate application rate of both sealer and aggregate to be evaluated and approved by the RPR.

If the Engineer has experience and is knowledgeable with the material, procedures, and equipment described in the specification, for control areas described in paragraph 608-R-3.2a, the varying application rates recommended by the manufacturer's representative can be provided from a site visit where the representative observed pavement condition within one month prior to application.

A test area and/or section shall be applied for each differing asphalt pavement surface identified in the project. The control area(s) and/or control strip(s) shall be used to determine the material application rate(s) of both sealer and aggregate prior to full production. The same equipment and method of operation shall be utilized on the control area(s) and/or control strip(s) as will be utilized on the remainder of the work.

a. For taxiway, taxilane and apron surfaces. Prior to full application, the Contractor shall place test areas at varying application rates as recommended by the Contractor's manufacturer's representative to determine appropriate application rate(s). The test areas will be located on representative section(s) of the pavement to receive the asphalt surface treatment designated by the RPR.

b. For runway and high-speed exit taxiway surfaces. Prior to full application, the Contractor shall place a series of control strips a minimum of 300 feet (90 m) long by 12 feet (3.6 m) wide, or width of anticipated application, whichever is greater, at varying application rates as recommended by the manufacturer's representative and acceptable to the RPR to determine appropriate application rate(s). The control strips should be separated by a minimum of 200 feet between control strips. The area to be tested will be located on a representative section of the pavement to receive the asphalt surface treatment designated by the RPR. The control strips should be placed under similar field conditions as anticipated for the actual application. Before beginning the control strip(s), the skid resistance of the existing pavement shall be determined for each control strip with a continuous friction measuring equipment (CFME). The skid resistance of existing pavement can be immediately adjacent to the control strip or at the same location as the control strip if testing prior to application.

The Contractor may begin testing the skid resistance of runway and high-speed exit taxiway control strips after application of the asphalt surface treatment has fully cured, generally 2 to 4 hours after application of the control strips depending on site conditions. Aircraft shall not be permitted on the runway or high-speed exit taxiway control strips until such time as the Contractor validates that its surface friction meets the maintenance planning friction levels in AC 150/5320-12, Table 3-2 when tested at speeds of 40 and 60 mph (65 and 95 km/h) wet with approved CFME.

c. Control strip. If the control strip should prove to be unsatisfactory, necessary adjustments to the application rate, placement operations, and equipment shall be made. Additional control strips shall be

placed and additional skid resistance tests performed and evaluated. Full production shall not begin without the RPR's approval of an appropriate application rate(s). Acceptable control strips shall be paid for in accordance with paragraph 608-R-8.1.

For projects calling for application of the asphalt surface treatment on runway and high-speed exit taxiway, the Engineer shall document skid resistance in accordance with AC 150/5320-12, Measurement, Construction, and Maintenance of Skid-Resistant Airport Pavement Surfaces, prior to full application.

The test areas/sections afford the Contractor and the Engineer an opportunity to determine the quality of the mixture in place as well as the performance of the equipment.

If operational conditions preclude placement of a control strip on the pavement to be seal coated, it may be applied on a pavement with similar surface texture.

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

608-R-4.1 Worker safety. The Contractor shall obtain a Safety Data Sheet (SDS) for both the asphalt sealer product and aggregate and require workmen to follow the manufacturer's recommended safety precautions. All additional industry standard safety precautions regarding the storage and applications of solvent based asphalts should be understood and followed by the Contractor.

608-R-4.2 Weather limitations. The asphalt sealer shall be applied only when the existing pavement surface is dry and when the weather is not foggy, rainy, or when the wind velocity will prevent the uniform application of the material. No material shall be applied when dust or aggregate is blowing or when rain is anticipated within four (4) hours of application completion. The atmospheric temperature and the pavement surface temperature shall both be at, or above 55°F (14°C) and rising. The sealer will shall not be applied when pavement temperatures are expected to exceed 160F within the subsequent 72 hours if traffic will be opened on pavement within those 72 hours. During application, account for wind drift. Cover existing buildings, structures, runway edge lights, taxiway edge lights, informational signs, retro-reflective marking and in-pavement duct markers as necessary to protect against overspray before applying the sealer. Should sealer get on any light or marker fixture, promptly clean the fixture. If cleaning is not satisfactory to the RPR, the Contractor shall replace any light, sign or marker with equivalent equipment at no cost to the Owner.

608-R-4.3 Equipment and tools. The Contractor shall furnish all equipment, tools, and machinery necessary for the performance of the work.

a. Pressure distributor. The sealer shall be applied with a manufacturer-approved computer rate-controlled asphalt distributor. The equipment shall be in good working order and contain no contaminants or diluents in the tank. Spray bar tips must be clean, free of burrs, and of a size to maintain an even distribution of the sealer. Any type of tip or pressure source is suitable that will maintain predetermined flow rates and constant pressure during the application process with application speeds under eight (8) miles per hour (13 km per hour) or seven (700) feet per minute (213 m per minute). The Contractor will provide verification of truck set-up (via a test-shot area), including but not limited to, nozzle tip size appropriate for application per nozzle manufacturer, spray-bar height and pressure and pump speed appropriate for the viscosity and temperature of sealer material, evidence of triple-overlap spray pattern, lack of leaks, and any other factors relevant to ensure the truck is in good working order before use. The distributor truck shall be equipped with a 12-foot (3.7-m), minimum, spray bar with individual nozzle

control. The distributor truck shall be capable of specific application rates in the range of 0.05 to 0.25 gallons per square yard (0.15 to 0.80 liters per square meter). These rates shall be computer-controlled rather than mechanical. The distributor truck shall have an easily accessible thermometer that constantly monitors the temperature of the sealer, and have an operable mechanical tank gauge that can be used to cross-check the computer accuracy.

The distributor truck shall effectively mix the material prior to application.

The distributor shall be equipped with a hand sprayer to spray the sealer in areas not accessible to the distributor truck.

b. Aggregate spreader. The asphalt distributor truck will be equipped with an aggregate spreader mounted to the distributor truck that can apply aggregate to the sealer in a single pass operation without driving through wet sealer. The aggregate spreader shall be equipped with a variable control system capable of uniformly distributing the aggregate at the specified rate at varying application widths and speeds. The aggregate spreader must be adjusted to produce an even and accurate application of specified aggregate. Prior to any seal coat application, the aggregate spreader will be calibrated onsite to ensure acceptable uniformity of spread. The RPR will observe the calibration and verify the results. The aggregate spreader will be re-calibrated each time the aggregate rate is changed either during the application of test strips or production. The Contractor may consult the seal coat manufacturer representative for procedure and guidance. The aggregate spreader shall have a minimum hopper capacity of 3,000 pounds (1361 kg) of aggregate. Push-type hand spreaders will be allowed for use around lights, signs and other obstructions, if necessary.

c. Power broom/blower. A power broom and/or blower shall be provided for removing loose material from the surface to be treated.

d. Equipment calibration. Asphalt distributors must be calibrated within the same construction season in accordance with ASTM D2995. The Contractor must furnish a current calibration certification for the asphalt distributor truck from any State or other agency as approved by the RPR.

608-R-4.4 Preparation of asphalt pavement surfaces. Clean pavement surface immediately prior to placing the seal coat so that it is free of dust, dirt, grease, vegetation, oil or any type of objectionable surface film. Remove oil or grease from the asphalt pavement by scrubbing with a detergent, washing thoroughly with clean water, and treating these areas with the oil spot primer. Any additional surface preparation, such as crack repair, shall be in accordance with Item P-101, paragraph 101-3.6.

[a. New asphalt pavement surfaces. Allow new asphalt pavement surfaces to cure so that there is no concentration of oils on the surface. A period of at least 30 days at 70°F (21°C) daytime temperatures should elapse between the placement of a hot mixed asphalt concrete surface course and the application of the surface treatment.

Perform a water-break-free test to confirm that the surface oils have degraded and dissipated. (Cast approximately one gallon (4 liters) of clean water out over the surface. The water should sheet out and wet the surface uniformly without crawling or showing oil rings.) If signs of crawling or oil rings are apparent on the pavement surface, additional time must be allowed for additional curing and retesting of the pavement surface prior to treatment.]

608-R-4.5 Application of asphalt sealer. The asphalt sealer shall be applied using a pressure distributor upon the properly prepared, clean and dry surface at the application rate recommended by the manufacturer's representative and approved by the RPR from the test area/sections evaluation for each designated treatment area. Recommended material temperature for application is 70°F to 90°F, but depending on the application equipment used, good material dispersion and pavement coverage may be achieved at lower material temperatures. The material should not be heated above 100°F.

Pavement surfaces which have excessive runoff of seal coat due to excessive amount of material being applied or excessive surface grade shall be treated in two or more applications, if feasible, to the specified application rate at no additional cost to the Owner. Each additional application shall be performed after the prior application of material has penetrated into the pavement.

If low spots and depressions greater than 1/2 inch (12 mm) in depth in the pavement surface cause ponding or puddling of the applied materials, the pavement surface shall be lightly broomed with a broom or brush type squeegee. Brooming shall continue until the pavement surface is free of any pools of excess material. Ponding and/or puddling shall not cause excessive pavement tackiness and/or additional distress.

During all applications, the surfaces of adjacent structures shall be protected to prevent their being splattered or marred. Asphalt materials shall not be discharged into borrow pits or gutters or on the airport area.

Caution. *Heating asphalt binders of any kind always constitutes some degree of hazard. The most hazardous of these are cutback asphalts because of the highly volatile solvents used. Care must be taken not to allow any spark or open flame to come in contact with the cutback asphalt or the gases from cutback asphalt due to the low flash point. It is the Contractor's responsibility to understand and adhere to these standards in regards to staying within the recommended application temperatures of this material and at all times during production.*

608-R-4.6 Application of aggregate material. Immediately following the application of the asphalt sealer, aggregate at the rate recommended by the manufacturer's representative and approved by the RPR from the test area/sections evaluation for each designated application area, shall be spread uniformly over the asphalt sealer in a single-pass operation simultaneous with the sealer application. The sealer material and aggregate shall be applied simultaneously in a single pass operation, so as to not drive through the applied fresh sealer. The aggregate shall be spread to the same width of application as the asphalt material and shall not be applied in such thickness as to cause blanketing.

Sprinkling of additional aggregate material, and spraying additional asphalt material over areas that show up having insufficient cover or bitumen, shall be done by hand whenever necessary. In areas where hand work is necessitated, the aggregate shall be applied before the sealant begins to break.

Minimize aggregate from being broadcast and accumulating on the untreated pavement adjacent to an application pass. Prior to the next application pass, the Contractor shall clean areas of excess or loose aggregate and remove from project site.

QUALITY CONTROL (QC)

608-R-5.1 Manufacturer's representation. The manufacturer's representative knowledgeable of the material, procedures, and equipment described in the specification is responsible to assist the Contractor and RPR in determining the appropriate application rates of the emulsion and aggregate, as well as recommendations for proper preparation and start-up of seal coat application. Documentation of the manufacturer representative's experience and knowledge for applying the seal coat product shall be furnished to the RPR a minimum of 10 work days prior to placement of the control strips. The cost of the manufacturer's representative shall be included in the Contractor's bid price.

608-R-5.2 Contractor qualifications. The Contractor shall provide the RPR with the seal coat Contractor's qualifications for applicators, personnel and equipment. The Contractor shall also provide documentation that the seal coat Contractor is qualified to apply the seal coat and has made at least three (3) applications similar to this project in the past two (2) years.

MATERIAL ACCEPTANCE

608-R-6.1 Application rate. The rate of application of the asphalt emulsion shall be verified at least twice per day.

608-R-6.2 Friction tests. Friction tests in accordance with AC 150/5320-12, Measurement, Construction, and Maintenance of Skid-Resistant Airport Pavement Surfaces, shall be accomplished on all runway and high-speed taxiways that have received a seal coat. Each test includes performing friction tests at 40 mph and 60 mph (65 or 95 km/h) both wet, 15 feet (4.5 m) to each side of runway centerline. The Contractor shall coordinate testing with the RPR and provide the RPR a written report of friction test results. The RPR shall be present for testing.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

608-R-7.1 Asphalt surface treatment. The quantity of asphalt surface treatment shall be measured by the square yards [square meters] of material applied in accordance with the plans and specifications and accepted by the RPR.

The Contractor must furnish the RPR with the certified weigh bills when materials are received for the asphalt material used under this contract. The Contractor must not remove material from the tank car or storage tank until initial amounts and temperature measurements have been verified.

BASIS OF PAYMENT

608-R-8.1 Payment shall be made at the contract unit price per square yard [square meter] for the asphalt surface treatment applied and accepted by the RPR, and the contract unit price per lump sum for runway friction testing. This price shall be full compensation for all surface preparation, furnishing all materials, delivery and application of these materials, for all labor, equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete the item, [including the friction testing and all work required to meet AC 150/5320-12,] and any costs associated with furnishing a qualified manufacturer's representative to assist with control strips.

[**608-R-8.2** Payment shall be made at the contract unit price per lump sum for friction testing and all work required to meet AC 150/5320-12.]

Payment will be made under:

Edit brackets for project. Add additional Pay Items as necessary for multiple treatment areas shown on the plans per paragraph 608-R-3.1.

Item P-608-R-8.1 Asphalt Surface Treatment – per square yard [square meter]

[Item P-608-R-8.2 Runway and High Speed Exit Taxiway Friction Testing – per lump sum]

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM International (ASTM)

ASTM C88	Standard Test Method for Soundness of Aggregates by Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate
ASTM C117	Standard Test Method for Materials Finer than 75- μ m (No. 200) Sieve in Mineral Aggregates by Washing
ASTM C128	Standard Test Method for Relative Density (Specific Gravity) and Absorption of Fine Aggregate
ASTM C136	Standard Test Method for Sieve Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates
ASTM C566	Standard Test Method for Total Evaporable Moisture Content of Aggregate by Drying
ASTM C1252	Standard Test Methods for Uncompacted Void Content of Fine Aggregate
ASTM D5	Standard Test Method for Penetration of Asphalt Materials
ASTM D36	Standard Test Method for Softening Point of Bitumen (Ring-and-Ball Apparatus)
ASTM D402	Standard Test Method for Distillation of Cutback Asphalt
ASTM D2042	Standard Test Method for Solubility of Asphalt Materials in Trichloroethylene
ASTM D2216	Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Determination of Water (Moisture) Content of Soil and Rock by Mass
ASTM D2995	Standard Practice for Estimating Application Rate of Bituminous Distributors
ASTM D4402	Standard Test Method for Viscosity Determination of Asphalt at Elevated Temperatures Using a Rotational Viscometer
ASTM D5340	Standard Test Method for Airport Pavement Condition Index Surveys
ASTM D6433	Standard Practice for Roads and Parking Lots Pavement Condition Index Surveys
ASTM D6997	Standard Test Method for Distillation of Emulsified Asphalt
ASTM D7428	Standard Test Method for Resistance of Fine Aggregate to Degradation by Abrasion in the Micro-Deval Apparatus

Advisory Circulars (AC)

AC 150/5320-12	Measurement, Construction, and Maintenance of Skid-Resistant Airport Pavement Surfaces
AC 150/5320-17	Airfield Pavement Surface Evaluation and Rating (PASER) Manuals
AC 150/5380-6	Guidelines and Procedures for Maintenance of Airport Pavements
AC 150/5380-7	Airport Pavement Management Program (PMP)

END OF ITEM P-608-R

Item P-609 Chip Seal Coat

DESCRIPTION

This method of treatment may leave excessive amounts of loose aggregate on the surface of the pavement and therefore is only recommended for use on pavements other than airfield pavements.

A chip seal coat may be used on airfield tertiary pavements including overruns, roads, and other general applications which are not subject to routine turbo-prop and jet engine aircraft.

When considered for areas where aircraft may operate, a chip seal coat for use on general aviation airports serving airplanes 30,000 lbs (13,600 kg) or less; use at other locations will require the submission of a modification to standards in accordance with FAA Order 5300.1, Modifications to Agency Airport Design, Construction, and Equipment Standards.

A chip seal followed by application of a slurry seal (Item P-626) may be an option where small aircraft may operate. (A chip seal followed by a slurry seal is sometimes referred to as a cape seal.)

The Engineer must verify the selected materials comply with federal, state, and local authority requirements.

609-1.1 This item shall consist of a chip seal coat (single surface treatment and multiple surface treatment) as a wearing course composed of [a single application] [multiple applications] of asphalt material and aggregate cover placed on the prepared primed base or properly cured wearing surface, in accordance with these specifications, and shall conform to the dimensions and typical cross-section shown on the plans or as directed by the Resident Project Representative (RPR).

609-1.2 Quantities of materials per square yard (square meter). The approximate amounts of materials per square yard (square meter) for the chip seal shall be as provided in the table below for the treatment specified on the plans or in the special provision. The exact amounts to be used shall be determined by the RPR.

Quantities of Materials

Application No.	Quantity of Aggregate lb/square yard (kg/sq m)	Quantity of Asphalt gal/square yard (l/sq m)	Type of Asphalt ¹
1	40-50 (21.7-27.1)	0.35-0.45 (1.58-2.03)	Asphalt cement
		0.40-0.50 (1.81-2.26)	Emulsified asphalt
2	20-25 (10.9-13.6)	0.15-0.25 (0.68-1.13)	Asphalt cement
		0.20-0.35 (0.90-1.58)	Emulsified asphalt
3	15-20 (8.1-10.9)	0.15-0.20 (0.68-0.90)	Emulsified asphalt

¹ See paragraph 609-2.2 for grades of asphalt and spraying temperatures.

The quantities of asphalt shown in the table cover the average range of conditions that include primed granular bases and old pavement surfaces. The quantities and types of materials should take into consideration local conditions and experience.

The lower application rates shown in the table should be used for aggregate having gradations on the fine side of the specified limits. The higher application rates should be used for aggregate having gradations on the coarse side of the specified limits.

The asphalt content selected should reflect the condition of the pavement. If the pavement is highly oxidized, badly cracked, or coarse more asphalt should be used.

MATERIALS

609-2.1 Aggregate materials. Coarse aggregate shall consist of sound, tough, durable particles, free from films of matter that would prevent thorough coating and bonding with the asphalt material and free from organic matter and other deleterious substances.

The crushed aggregate for the applications shall meet the requirements for gradation given in the table below when tested in accordance with ASTM C136.

Aggregate Material Requirements

Material Test	Requirement	Standard
Resistance to Degradation	Loss: 40% maximum	ASTM C131
Soundness of Aggregates by Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate	Loss after 5 cycles: 12% maximum using Sodium sulfate - or - 18% maximum using magnesium sulfate	ASTM C88
Clay lumps and friable particles	0.3% maximum	ASTM C142
Percentage of Fractured Particles	Minimum 90% by weight of particles with at least two fractured faces ¹	ASTM D5821
Flat, Elongated, or Flat and Elongated Particles	8% maximum, by weight, of flat, elongated, or flat and elongated particles at 3:1	ASTM D4791
Bulk density of slag	Weigh not less than 70 pounds per cubic foot (1.12 Mg/cubic meter)	ASTM C29

¹ The area of each face shall be equal to at least 75% of the smallest mid-sectional area of the piece. When two fractured faces are contiguous, the angle between the planes of fractures shall be at least 30 degrees to count as two fractured faces. Fractured faces shall be achieved by crushing.

Requirements for Gradation of Aggregate¹

Sieve Designation (square openings)	Percentage by Weight Passing Sieves		
	Aggregate No. 1	Aggregate No. 2	Aggregate No. 3
1 inch (25.0 mm)	100		
3/4 inch (19.0 mm)	90-100	100	
1/2 inch (12.5 mm)	20-55	90-100	100
3/8 inch (9.5 mm)	0-15	40-70	85-100
No. 4 (4.75 mm)	0-5	0-15	10-30
No. 8 (2.36 mm)		0-5	0-10
No. 16 (1.18 mm)			0-5

¹ Locally available aggregate used for chip seals with similar gradations may be used provided the maximum aggregate size is the same; and the aggregate meets all other quality requirements in these specifications.

The gradations in the table represent the limits that shall determine suitability of aggregate for use for the specified applications from the sources of supply. The final gradations decided on, within the limits designated in the table, shall be uniformly graded from coarse to fine.

The aggregate shall show no evidence of stripping or swell. The use of anti-strip agents for the control of stripping shall be used if necessary.

609-2.2 Asphalt material. The asphalt material shall conform to the types, grades, controlling specifications, and application temperatures for the asphalt materials as recommended by the manufacturer.

Asphalt Materials Properties

Type(s) and Grade(s)	Specification(s)
*	*

Designate the emulsified asphalt or asphalt binder material(s) to be used per ASTM D3628 or ASTM D6373. Application temperatures for the asphalt materials shall be as recommended by the manufacturer. The maximum temperature for asphalt binder shall be below that at which fogging occurs.

The Contractor shall provide a copy of the manufacturer's Certificate of Analysis (COA) for the asphalt material. If the asphalt emulsion is diluted at other than the manufacturer's facility, the Contractor shall provide a supplemental COA from an independent laboratory verifying the asphalt emulsion properties.

The COA shall be provided to and approved by the RPR before the emulsified asphalt is applied. Furnishing the vendor's certified test report for the asphalt material shall not be interpreted as basis for final acceptance. The manufacturer's COA may be subject to verification by testing the material delivered for use on the project.

609-2.3 Sampling and Testing. Sampling and testing is the responsibility of the Contractor. Sampling and testing shall be performed by an approved commercial testing laboratory, or by the Contractor, subject to approval by the RPR. Sampling shall be in accordance with ASTM D75 for aggregates and ASTM D140 for asphalt material, unless otherwise directed. Perform aggregate gradation tests on each sample in accordance with ASTM C136. Perform all other aggregate tests on the initial source samples and repeat tests when there is a change of source. Perform sieve analyses daily from material samples. The tests shall include an analysis of each gradation of material. Submit copies of test results, within 24 hours after completion of each test.

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

609-3.1 Weather limitations. Asphalt material shall be applied only when the existing surface or base course is dry or contains no excess moisture in an amount that will not permit uniform distribution and adhesion. Chip seal coat shall not be applied when either the atmospheric temperature is below 60°F (16°C) or the pavement surface to be treated is below 70°F (21°C) unless otherwise directed by the RPR. No material shall be applied when rain is imminent or when dust or sand is blowing.

609-3.2 Equipment and tools. The Contractor shall furnish all equipment, tools, and machines necessary for the performance of the work.

a. Asphalt distributors. The distributors shall have pneumatic tires of such width and number that the load produced on the base and surface does not exceed 65.0 pounds per square inch (4.5 kg per sq cm) of tire width. Distributors shall be designed and equipped to distribute asphalt material uniformly at even heat on various widths of surface at readily determined and controlled rates ranging from 0.05 to 1.00 gallons/square yard (0.20 to 4.5 L/square meter), with a pressure range of 25 to 75 psi (172 to 517 kPa). The allowable variation from any specified rate shall not exceed 5%. Distributor equipment shall include a separate power unit for the bitumen pump, full-circulation spray bars, tachometer, pressure gauges, volume-measuring devices, a thermometer for reading the temperature of tank contents, and a hose

attachment suitable for applying asphalt material to areas not accessible with distributor spray bar. The distributor shall be equipped for circulation and agitation of asphalt material during the heating process.

b. Aggregate spreader. The aggregate spreader shall be a self-propelled mechanical spreader or truck-attached mechanical spreader capable of uniformly distributing aggregate at the specified rates.

c. Power Rollers. Power rollers shall be steel-wheeled or pneumatic-tired type, conforming to the following requirements:

(1) Steel-wheeled rollers shall have at least one steel drum and weigh a minimum of 5 tons (4 metric tons). Steel wheels of the rollers shall be equipped with adjustable scrapers.

(2) Pneumatic-tired rollers shall be self-propelled and have wheels mounted on two axles in such manner that the rear tires will not follow in the tracks of the forward group. Tires shall be uniformly inflated to not less than 60 psi (414 kPa) nor more than 80 psi (552 kPa) pressure. The pneumatic-tired rollers shall be equipped with boxes or platforms for ballast loading and shall be loaded so that the tire print width of each wheel is not less than the clear distance between tire prints.

d. Power broom. A power broom and/or blower shall be provided for removing loose material from the surface to be treated.

e. Equipment calibration. Asphalt distributors must be calibrated within the same construction season in accordance with ASTM D2995. The Contractor must furnish a current calibration certification for the asphalt distributor truck from any State or other agency as approved by the RPR.

609-3.3 Preparation of asphalt pavement surfaces. Clean pavement surface immediately prior to placing the seal coat so that it is free of dust, dirt, grease, vegetation, oil or any type of objectionable surface film. Remove oil or grease from the asphalt pavement by scrubbing with a detergent, washing thoroughly with clean water, and then treat these areas with a soil spot primer. Any additional surface preparation, such as crack repair, shall be in accordance with Item P-101, paragraph 101-3.6.

609-3.4 Control strip. [A control strip is not required.] [Preliminary to providing a complete chip seal coat, treat [three] [] lengths of at least 100 feet (30 m) each for the full width of the distributor bar. Use the appropriate typical application rates specified herein for one surface treatment trial. Make other chip seal coat trials using various amounts of materials as may be deemed necessary. A qualified manufacturer's representative shall be present in the field to assist the Contractor to determine the optimum application rate of both asphalt material and aggregate.]

609-3.5 Application of asphalt material. Asphalt material shall be applied on the prepared surface at the rate and temperature specified using a pressure distributor to obtain uniform distribution over all surfaces treated. Unless the distributor is equipped to obtain a satisfactory result at the junction of previous and subsequent applications, building paper shall be spread on the surface for a sufficient distance back from the ends of each application so that flow through the sprays may be started and stopped on the paper in order that all sprays will operate at full force on the surface treated. Immediately after application, remove and destroy the building paper. Areas inaccessible to the distributor shall be properly treated with asphalt material using the hose attachment. Protect adjacent structures to prevent their being spattered or marred. To ensure proper drainage, the strips shall begin along the centerline of the pavement on a crowned section or on the high side of the pavement with a one-way slope.

609-3.6 Application of aggregate material. Immediately after the application of the asphalt material, the aggregates at the rate specified for each designated application shall be spread uniformly over the asphalt material. Trucks spreading aggregate shall be operated backward so that the asphalt material will be covered before the truck wheels pass over it. The aggregate shall be spread in the same width of

application as the asphalt material and shall not be applied in such thickness as to cause blanketing. Spread aggregate evenly by hand on all areas missed by the mechanical spreader. When hand spreading is employed on inaccessible areas, spread aggregate directly from trucks. Additional aggregate shall be spread by hand over areas having insufficient cover, and spreading shall continue during these operations when necessary. Back-spotting or sprinkling of additional aggregate material, and pouring additional asphalt material over areas that show up having insufficient cover or bitumen, shall be done by hand whenever necessary. Additional spreading of aggregate material shall be done by means of a broom drag, a power broom, or other approved equipment as directed by the RPR.

Immediately after spreading each application, the aggregate shall be rolled. The rolling shall be continued until no more aggregate material can be worked into the surface. In the construction of the second and third application, blading with the wire-broom moldboard attachment or broom dragging shall begin as soon as possible after the rolling has started and after the surface has set sufficiently to prevent excessive marking. Further blading and rolling on the strip being placed and on adjacent strips previously placed, shall be done as often as necessary to keep the aggregate material uniformly distributed. These operations shall be continued until the surface is evenly covered and cured to the satisfaction of the RPR.

Multiple applications shall not be applied until the preceding application has set and in no case until at least 24 hours have elapsed. Remove excess aggregate prior to the second application of asphalt material. If the treated surface is excessively moistened by rain, allow the surface to dry for such time as deemed necessary. If dust, dirt, or other foreign matter accumulates on the surface between the applications, the Contractor shall be required to sweep and clean the surface as specified. The asphalt material and the aggregate shall be spread on the clean and properly cured surface and handled as required. Avoid brooming or tracking dirt or any foreign matter on any portion of the pavement surface under construction.

Minimize aggregate from being broadcast and accumulating on the untreated pavement adjacent to an application pass. Prior to the next application pass, the Contractor shall clean areas of excess or loose aggregate and remove from project site.

609-3.7 Correction of defects. Any defects, such as raveling, low centers, lack of uniformity, or other imperfections shall be corrected immediately to the satisfaction of the RPR.

All defective materials resulting from over-heating, improper handling, or application shall be removed by the Contractor and replaced with approved materials per these specifications.

609-3.8 Freight and weigh bills. The Contractor shall submit waybills and delivery tickets during progress of the work. Before the final statement is allowed, file with the RPR certified waybills and certified delivery tickets for all asphalt materials used in the construction of the pavement covered by the contract. Do not remove asphalt material from storage until the initial outage and temperature measurements have been taken. The delivery or storage units will not be released until the final outage has been taken.

609-3.9 Protection. Keep all traffic off surfaces freshly treated with asphalt material. Provide sufficient warning signs and barricades so that traffic will not travel over freshly treated surfaces. Protect the treated areas from traffic for at least 24 hours after final application of asphalt material and aggregate, or for such time as necessary to prevent picking up. Immediately prior to opening to traffic, roll the entire treated area with a self-propelled pneumatic-tired roller.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

609-4.1 The asphalt material shall be measured by the [gallon (liter)] [ton (kg)]. Volume shall be corrected to the volume at 60°F (16°C) in accordance with ASTM D1250 for asphalt and

Table IV-3 of The Asphalt Institute Manual MS-6 for emulsified asphalt. Water added to emulsified asphalt will not be measured for payment.

609-4.2 The chip seal coat application shall be measured by the square yard (m²).

BASIS OF PAYMEN

609-5.1 Payment shall be made at the contract unit price per [gallon] [ton] for asphalt material for surface treatment. These prices shall be full compensation for furnishing all materials and for all preparation, hauling and application of the materials, and for all labor, equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete the item.

609-5.2 Payment shall be made at the contract unit price per square yard (m²) for the chip seal coat application. These prices shall be full compensation for furnishing all materials and for all preparation, hauling and application of the materials, and for all labor, equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete the item.

Payment will be made under:

Item P-609-5.1	Asphalt Material - per [gallon (liter)] [ton (kg)]
Item P-609-5.2	Chip seal coat application - per square yard (square meter)

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM C29	Standard Test Method for Bulk Density ("Unit Weight") and Voids in Aggregate
ASTM C88	Standard Test Method for Soundness of Aggregates by Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate
ASTM C131	Standard Test Method for Resistance to Degradation of Small-Size Coarse Aggregate by Abrasion and Impact in the Los Angeles Machine
ASTM C136	Standard Test Method for Sieve or Screen Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates
ASTM C142	Standard Test Method for Clay Lumps and Friable Particles in Aggregates
ASTM D75	Standard Practice for Sampling Aggregates
ASTM D946	Standard Specification for Penetration-Graded Asphalt Cement for Use in Pavement Construction
ASTM D977	Standard Specification for Emulsified Asphalt
ASTM D1250	Standard Guide for Use of the Petroleum Measurement Tables
ASTM D2397	Standard Specification for Cationic Emulsified Asphalt
ASTM D2995	Standard Practice for Estimating Application Rate and Residual Application Rate of Bituminous Distributors
ASTM D3381	Standard Specification for Viscosity-Graded Asphalt-Cement for Use in Pavement Construction

ASTM D4791	Standard Test Method for Flat Particles, Elongated Particles, or Flat and Elongated Particles in Coarse Aggregate
ASTM D5821	Standard Test Method for Determining the Percentage of Fractured Particles in Coarse Aggregate
Asphalt Institute (AI)	
MS-6 Table IV-3 Asphalt Pocketbook of Useful Information (Temperature-Volume Corrections for Emulsified Asphalts)	
FAA Orders	
5300.1	Modifications to Agency Airport Design, Construction, and Equipment Standards

END OF ITEM P-609

Item P-623 Emulsified Asphalt Spray Seal Coat**DESCRIPTION**

This seal coat is approved for use on all pavements, except runways, serving airplanes 30,000 lbs (13,600 kg) or less; and any pavements on which aircraft do not operate including shoulders, overruns, roads, and parking areas.

The Engineer, with FAA concurrence, may specify this item for airports serving airplanes less than 60,000 lbs (27216 kg) except for runways and acute-angled exit taxiways.

P-623 may be applied to:

- 1) Pavements in fair or better condition as defined in ASTM D5340 or advisory circular (AC) 150/5320-17, Airfield Pavement Surface Evaluation and Rating (PASER) Manuals.**
- 2) Low to moderate weathered surfaces as defined by ASTM D5340.**

The Engineer must verify the selected materials comply with federal, state, and local authority requirements.

623-1.1 This item shall consist of the application of a polymer modified, asphalt emulsion spray seal coat (seal coat) composed of an emulsion of binders prepared from crude petroleum, mineral fillers, water and polymer, applied to an existing, previously prepared asphalt surface. The seal coat shall be applied in accordance with these specifications, and as shown on the plans or as directed by the Resident Project Representative (RPR).

The performance of a seal coat product is contingent on the pavement condition at the time of application. The pavement condition survey provides a measure of the pavement condition by analyzing the type, amount, and severity of the distresses, and by determining the pavement condition index (PCI) in accordance with AC 150/5380-7, Airport Pavement Management Program (PMP), and ASTM D5340. A typical asphalt pavement candidate is one with a structural condition index (SCI) deduct value of less than 10 and a PCI equal to or greater than 60.

623-1.2 Application rate per square yard (square meter). The approximate amounts of seal coat per square yard (square meter) for the spray seal will be applied as provided in the Application Rate Table. The actual application rates will vary within the range specified to suit field conditions and will be recommended by the manufacturer's representative and approved by the RPR from the test area/sections evaluation.

Application Rate

	2-coat application	3-coat application
1st Coat	0.14 - 0.20	0.14 - 0.20
2nd Coat	0.10 - 0.20	0.10 - 0.20
3rd Coat	-	0.08 - 0.15
Total Application	0.30 minimum	0.30 – 0.55

The quantities of material shown in the table above cover an average range of conditions. The Engineer should select the application rate reflecting the local condition of the pavement such as surface texture, porosity, and age of the asphalt pavement to be sealed.

If additional coats are required, application rates are not to exceed 0.20 gal/yd²/coat (0.91 liters/m²/coat).

MATERIALS

623-2.1 Polymer modified asphalt emulsion spray seal (seal coat). A seal coat fortified with fillers created from binders prepared from crude petroleum shall meet the properties in the following table:

Polymer Modified Asphalt Emulsion Spray Seal Properties¹

Property	Characteristics	
	Minimum	Maximum
Density at 77°F (25°C), lb./gal (g/mL)	9 (1.0)	12 (1.5)
Residue by evaporation, %	44	...
Water content, %	...	56
Ash content of residue, %	30	40
Uniformity	Uniform homogeneous consistency.	
Wet film continuity	No separation, coagulation, or settlement that cannot be overcome by moderate agitation.	
Resistance to heat	No blistering, sagging, or slipping.	
Resistance to water	No loss of adhesion and no blistering or tendency to re-emulsify.	
Flash point	No tendency to flash.	
Flexibility	No flaking, cracking, or loss of adhesion to the substrate.	
Polymer modification	Minimum 3% by weight of asphalt binder.	

¹ For water content testing, use ASTM Test Method D95. For flash point testing, use ASTM Test Method D93. For other properties, use AASHTO T 59 and T 111.

The Contractor shall provide a copy of the manufacturer's Certificate of Analysis (COA) for material delivered to the project. If the asphalt emulsion is diluted at other than the manufacturer's facility, the Contractor shall provide a supplemental COA from an independent laboratory verifying the asphalt emulsion properties. The COA shall be provided to and approved by the RPR before material is applied. The furnishing of the vendor's certified test report for the asphalt material shall not be interpreted as a basis for final acceptance. The manufacturer's COA may be subject to verification by testing the material delivered for use on the project.

623-2.2 Polymer modification. The type of polymer used for modification shall be chosen by the manufacturer. The polymer modifier shall be incorporated in the manufacturing process. The Contractor shall submit manufacturer's technical data, the manufacturer's certification indicating that the polymer meets the requirements of the specification, and the manufacturer's approval of its use to the RPR. The amount of polymer will be a minimum 3% of the weight of the asphalt binder in the seal coat surface treatment.

Polymers are added to improve the coating's final properties. These properties can include durability, drying time, color uniformity, and/or length of cure time. Polymers may also be used to modify the wet mixture's viscosity to improve aggregate suspension.

The type of polymer to be used should be specified by the asphalt emulsion seal coat manufacturer and will depend on which final properties are desired.

The Engineer should specify the desired properties.

*****6

23-2.3 Water. Water used in mixing or curing shall be from potable water sources, free of harmful soluble salts, and at least 50°F (10°C). Other sources shall be tested in accordance with ASTM C1602 prior to use.

623-2.4 Friction characteristics. [Not required.] [The Contractor shall submit to the RPR friction tests, from previous airport projects which used the emulsified asphalt spray seal coat in a similar environment, in accordance with AC 150/5320-12, at 40 mph (65 km/h) wet, showing, as a minimum; friction value of pavement surface prior to sealant application; two values, tested between 24 and 96 hours after application, with a minimum of 24 hours between tests; and one value tested at no less than 180 days or greater than 360 days after the application. The results of the two tests between 24 and 96 hours shall indicate friction is increasing at a rate to obtain similar friction value of the pavement surface prior to application, and the long-term test shall indicate no apparent adverse effect with time relative to friction values and existing pavement surface. The Contractor shall submit to the RPR a list of airports which meet the above requirements, as well as technical details on application rates, aggregate rates, and point of contact at these airports to confirm use and success of sealer. Friction tests shall be submitted from no less than one of the airports on the list and each set of tests described above, must be from one project.

Submittals without the required friction performance will not be approved. Friction tests performed on this project cannot be used as a substitute of this requirement.]

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

623-4.1 Worker safety. The Contractor shall obtain a Safety Data Sheet (SDS) for both the asphalt sealer product and aggregate and require workmen to follow the manufacturer's recommended safety precautions. All additional industry standard safety precautions regarding the storage and applications of asphalts should be understood and followed by the Contractor.

623-4.2 Control strip. Prior to full production the Contractor shall construct a control strip, a minimum of 250 square yards. The test area will be designated by the RPR in an area representative of the project. The control strip will determine the application rate to be used as well as to demonstrate the equipment and placement methods to be used. If the control strip should prove to be unsatisfactory, the necessary adjustments to the mix composition, application rate, placement operations and equipment shall be made. Additional control strips shall be placed and evaluated if required. Full production shall not begin without the RPR's approval of an appropriate application rate. Acceptable control strips shall be paid for in accordance with paragraph 623-8.1.

The application rate depends on the surface texture and the particular seal coat surface treatment selected.

If operational conditions preclude placement of a control strip on the pavement to be treated, it may be applied on a pavement with similar surface texture.

The only test required on the seal coat placed in the field is the viscosity test.

623-4.3 Weather limitations. The spray seal shall be applied only when the existing pavement surface is dry and when the weather is not foggy, rainy, or the humidity will not allow proper curing, or when the wind velocity will prevent the uniform application of the material. No material shall be applied when dust or sand is blowing or when rain is anticipated within eight (8) hours of application completion. The atmospheric temperature and the pavement surface temperature shall both be above 50°F (10°C) and rising and is expected to remain above 50°F (10°C) for 24 hours, unless otherwise directed by the RPR. Cover existing buildings, structures, runway edge lights, taxiway edge lights, informational signs, retro-reflective marking and in-pavement duct markers as necessary to protect against overspray before applying the emulsion. Should emulsion get on any light or marker fixture, promptly clean the fixture. If cleaning is not satisfactory to the RPR, the Contractor shall replace any light, sign or marker with equivalent equipment at no cost to the Owner.

623-4.3 Equipment and tools. The Contractor shall furnish all equipment, tools, and machinery necessary for the performance of the work. Equipment used to apply the seal coat shall have continuous agitation or mixing capabilities to maintain homogeneous consistency of the seal coat throughout the application process. Spray equipment shall be capable of mixing and spraying seal coat with aggregate added. Self-propelled squeegee equipment with mixing capability shall have at least two squeegee or brush devices (one behind the other) to ensure adequate distribution and penetration of seal coat surface treatment into pavement surface. Hand squeegees and brushes shall be acceptable in areas where practicality prohibits the use of mechanized equipment. A power broom or blower may be used for removing loose material from the surface to be treated.

623-4.4 Preparation of asphalt pavement surfaces. Clean pavement surface immediately prior to placing the seal coat so that it is free of dust, dirt, grease, vegetation, oil or any type of objectionable surface film. Remove oil or grease by scrubbing with a detergent, then wash thoroughly with clean water. Any additional surface preparation, such as crack repair, shall be in accordance with Item P-101, paragraph 101-3.6.

[**a. New asphalt pavement surfaces.** Allow new asphalt pavement surfaces to cure so that there is no concentration of oils on the surface. A period of at least 30 days at 70°F (21°C) daytime temperatures shall elapse between the placement of a hot mixed asphalt concrete surface course and the application of the seal coat.

Perform a water-break-free test to confirm that the surface oils have degraded and dissipated. (Cast approximately one gallon (4 liters) of clean water out over the surface. The water should sheet out and wet the surface uniformly without crawling or showing oil rings.) If signs of crawling or oil rings are apparent on the pavement surface, additional time must be allowed for additional curing and retesting of the pavement surface prior to treatment.]

If the application is to be on new pavement surfaces, include paragraph 623-4.4a above.

623-4.5 Emulsion mixing.

Contractor must ensure the mixture is homogeneous with no balling or lumping. Continue to agitate the seal coat mixture in the mixing tank at all times prior to and during application so that a consistent mix is available for application. Small additional increments of water may be needed to provide a workable consistency, but in no case is the water content to exceed the specified amount.

623-4.6 Application of seal coat. Application of seal coat generally consists of two application coats of material. The first coat must be dry prior to the application of the second coat or subsequent coats if more than two coats are being applied. During all applications, the surfaces of adjacent structures shall be protected to prevent their being spattered or marred. Should the seal coat get on any light or marker fixture, promptly clean the fixture. If cleaning is not satisfactory to the RPR, the Contractor shall replace any light, sign or marker with equivalent equipment at no cost to the Owner.

Traffic shall not be allowed until the seal coat has thoroughly cured for approximately 24 hours.

If low spots and depressions greater than 1/2 inch (12 mm) in depth in the pavement surface cause ponding or puddling of the applied materials, the pavement surface shall be broomed with a broom drag. Brooming shall continue until the pavement surface is free of any pools of excess material. The RPR shall inspect and approve areas after brooming.

623-4.7 Freight and weigh bills. The Contractor shall submit waybills and delivery tickets during the progress of the work. Before the final estimate is allowed, file with the RPR certified waybills and certified delivery tickets for all seal coat used in the construction of the pavement covered by the contract. Do not remove seal coat from storage until the initial outage and temperature measurements have been taken. The delivery or storage units will not be released until the final outage has been taken.

QUALITY CONTROL (QC)

623-5.1 Contractor qualifications. The Contractor shall furnish a certification demonstrating a minimum of three years of experience in the application of seal coats.

623-5.2 Sampling. A minimum of one sample per day shall be tested as specified in the table in paragraph 623-2.1. A random sample of approximately one-quart of the composite mix from the onsite

storage tank will be obtained daily by the Contractor in the presence of the owner's representative and stored in a proper container. The containers shall be sealed against contamination and retained in storage by the Owner for a period of six months. Samples shall be stored at room temperature and not be subjected to freezing temperatures.

A sample of undiluted asphalt emulsion shall be obtained from each consignment shipped to the job.

MATERIAL ACCEPTANCE

623-6.1 Application rate. The rate of application of the asphalt emulsion shall be verified at least twice per day. The Contractor must furnish the RPR the results daily.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

623-7.1 Asphalt seal coat. The quantity of seal coat shall be measured by the square yards [square meters] of material applied in accordance with the plans and specifications and accepted by the RPR.

BASIS OF PAYMENT

623-8.1 Payment shall be made at the contract unit price per square yard [square meter] for the seal coat applied and accepted by the RPR. This price shall be full compensation for all surface preparation, furnishing all materials, delivery and application of these materials, for all labor, equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete the item control strip.

Payment will be made under:

Item P-623-8.1	Seal Coat – per square yard [square meter]

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM International (ASTM)

ASTM C1602	Standard Specification for Mixing Water Used in the Production of Hydraulic Cement Concrete
ASTM D93	Standard Test Methods for Flash Point by Pensky-Martens Closed Cup Tester
ASTM D95	Standard Test Method for Water in Petroleum Products and Bituminous Materials by Distillation
ASTM D2939	
ASTM D5340	Standard Test Method for Airport Pavement Condition Index Surveys

Advisory Circulars (AC)

AC 150/5380-7	Airport Pavement Management Program (PMP)

Code of Federal Regulations (CFR)

29 CFR 1910.1200	Occupational Safety and Health Standards, Toxic and Hazardous Substances, Hazard Communication

40 CFR – Protection of Environment.

END OF ITEM P-623

Page Intentionally Blank

Item P-626 Emulsified Asphalt Slurry Seal Surface Treatment

DESCRIPTION

This surface treatment is approved for use on all pavements on general aviation airports serving airplanes 30,000 lbs (13,600 kg) or less; all pavements, except runways, on airports serving airplanes 60,000 lbs (27216 kg) or less; any pavements on which aircraft do not operate including shoulders, overruns, roads, and parking areas.

The Engineer must verify the selected materials comply with federal, state, and local authority requirements.

626-1.1 This item shall consist of a mixture of emulsified asphalt, polymer, mineral aggregate, and water properly proportioned, mixed, and spread on an asphalt pavement surface, including airport pavements serving [small] airplanes [12,500 lbs (5670 kg) or less], roads, and other general applications. The application of the surface treatment shall be in accordance with these specifications and shall conform to the dimensions shown on the plans or as directed by the Resident Project Representative (RPR).

MATERIALS

626-2.1 Aggregate. The aggregate shall consist of sound and durable manufactured sand, slag, crusher fines, crushed stone, or a combination. The aggregate shall be clean and free from vegetable matter, dirt, and other deleterious substances. The aggregate shall have a sand equivalent of not less than [45] percent when tested in accordance with ASTM D2419. The aggregate shall show a loss of not more than [35] percent when tested in accordance with ASTM C131. The sodium sulfate soundness loss shall not exceed [12] percent, or the magnesium soundness loss shall not exceed [20] percent after 5 cycles when tested in accordance with ASTM C88. Aggregate shall be 100% crushed.

The sand equivalent should not be less than 45. The percent loss when tested under ASTM C131 should not exceed 35. The sodium sulfate loss should not exceed 12%; the magnesium sulfate loss should not exceed 20%. In certain specific cases, where aggregates complying with these requirements cannot be economically obtained, aggregates with a higher percentage loss (15% using sodium sulfate and 25% using magnesium sulfate has been used) or wear may be specified, provided a satisfactory service record under similar conditions of service and exposure has been demonstrated.

The combined aggregate shall conform to the gradation shown in Table 1 when tested in accordance with ASTM C136 and ASTM C117.

Table 1. Gradation of Aggregates

Sieve Size	Percent by Weight Passing Sieve
	Type *
3/8 inch (9.5 mm)	*
No. 4 (4.75 mm)	*
No. 8 (2.36 mm)	*
No. 16 (1.18 mm)	*
No. 30 (600 µm)	*
No. 50 (300 µm)	*
No. 100 (150 µm)	*
No. 200 (75 µm)	*
Residual asphalt content percent dry weight of aggregate	*

The Engineer shall select the gradation and insert in Table 1 above.

Table 1. Gradation of Aggregates

Sieve Size	Percent by Weight Passing Sieve			
	Type I	Type II	Type III	Type IA
3/8 inch (9.5 mm)	100	100	100	100
No. 4 (4.75 mm)	100	90 - 100	70 - 90	98 - 100
No. 8 (2.36 mm)	90 - 100	65 - 90	45 - 70	85 - 95
No. 16 (1.18 mm)	65 - 90	45 - 70	28 - 50	50 - 75
No. 30 (600 µm)	40 - 65	30 - 50	19 - 34	30 - 50
No. 50 (300 µm)	25 - 42	18 - 30	12 - 25	18 - 35
No. 100 (150 µm)	15 - 30	10 - 21	7 - 18	10 - 21
No. 200 (75 µm)	10 - 20	5 - 15	5 - 15	5 - 10
Residual asphalt content percent dry weight of aggregate	10% - 16%	7.5% - 13.5%	6.5% - 12%	9% - 13.5%

Table 1 – Gradation of Aggregates. Projects that have specified coarser aggregate gradations have reported problems with excessive tire wear. The coarser Type I gradation will provide considerable skid resistance and may be considered for most projects. The finer Type II gradation will provide sufficient friction and will not cause excessive tire wear. Tire wear appears to be related to the amount of material

passing the #4 (4.75 mm) and retained on the #8 (2.36 mm) sieve; with no more than 10-15% retained on the #8 (2.36 mm) sieve to minimize tire wear while maintaining sufficient friction.

The job mix formula (mix design) shall be run using aggregate within the gradation band for the desired type shown in Table 1. Once the mix design has been submitted and approved by the RPR, the aggregate used on the project shall not vary by more than the tolerances shown in Table 2. At no time shall the aggregate used go out of the gradation band in Table 1.

The aggregate will be accepted at the job location or stockpile based on five gradation test samples in accordance with ASTM D75. If the average of the five tests is within the gradation tolerances, then the materials will be accepted. If the tests show the material to be out of tolerance, the Contractor will be given the choice either to remove the material or blend other aggregates with the stockpile material to bring it into specification. Materials used in blending shall meet the quality tests before blending and shall be blended in a manner to produce a consistent gradation. This blending may require a new mix design.

Screening shall be required at the project stockpile site if there are oversize materials in the mix.

Precautions shall be taken to prevent segregation of the aggregate in storing and handling. The stockpile shall be kept in areas that drain readily.

The aggregate gradation band applicable to a project shall be specified by the Engineer from the gradations shown in Table 1. The appropriate gradation shall be shown on the plans. Type I gradation is used for maximum crack penetration and is usually used in low density traffic areas where the primary objective is sealing. Type II and Type III gradations are used to seal and improve skid resistance. Type III gradation is not recommended for runway use by the International Slurry Surfacing Association (ISSA).

a. Aggregate Tolerance. Once the mix design has been accepted, the aggregate gradation used on the project may vary from the aggregate gradation used in the mix design on each sieve by the percentages shown in Table 2. If the project aggregate fails to remain within this tolerance, a new mix design will be required by the RPR at the expense of the Contractor.

Table 2. Aggregate Tolerance

Sieve Size	Tolerance, percent by weight passing sieve
3/8 inch (9.5 mm)	
No. 4 (4.75 mm)	±5%
No. 8 (2.36 mm)	±5%
No. 16 (1.18 mm)	±5%
No. (600 µm)	±5%
No. 50 (300 µm)	±4%
No. 100 (150 µm)	±3%
No. 200 (75 µm)	±2%
Residual Asphalt, percent dry weight of aggregate	±1%

626-2.2 Mineral filler. If mineral filler, in addition to that naturally present in the aggregate, is necessary, it shall meet the requirements of ASTM D242 and shall be used in the amounts required by the mix design. The mineral filler shall be considered as part of the aggregate.

626-2.3 Emulsified asphalt. The emulsified asphalt shall conform to the requirements of ASTM D3628. The cement mixing test is waived for these slurry type emulsions. The type of emulsified asphalt shall be either anionic or cationic, whichever is best suited to the aggregate and job conditions to be encountered.

The Contractor shall provide a copy of the manufacturer's Certificate of Analysis (COA) for the emulsified asphalt delivered to the project. If the asphalt emulsion is diluted at other than the manufacturer's facility, the Contractor shall provide a supplemental COA from an independent laboratory verifying the asphalt emulsion properties.

The COA shall be provided to and approved by the RPR before the emulsified asphalt is applied. The furnishing of the vendor's certified test report for the asphalt material shall not be interpreted as a basis for final acceptance. The manufacturer's COA may be subject to verification by testing the material delivered for use on the project.

626-2.4 Polymer. The Contractor shall submit manufacturer's technical data, the manufacturer's certification indicating that the polymer meets the requirements of the specification, and the asphalt material manufacturer's approval of its use to the RPR.

626-2.5 Water. Water used in mixing or curing shall be from potable water sources. Other sources shall be tested in accordance with ASTM C1602 prior to use.

COMPOSITION AND APPLICATION

626-3.1 Composition. The slurry seal shall consist of a mixture of emulsified asphalt, mineral aggregate, a minimum of 1% polymer, additives as necessary, and water.

626-3.2 Job mix formula. The mix design shall be developed by a laboratory with experience in designing slurry seal mixes and a signed copy shall be submitted in writing by the Contractor to the RPR at least 10 days prior to the start of operations. No slurry seal for payment shall be placed until a mix design has been approved by the RPR.

The laboratory report (mix design) shall indicate the proportions of aggregates, mineral filler (minimum and maximum), water (minimum and maximum), polymer (%), and asphalt emulsion based on the dry aggregate weight. It shall also report the quantitative effects of moisture content on the unit weight of the aggregate (bulking effects). The mix design shall be in effect until modified in writing by the RPR. If the sources of materials change, a new mix design shall be established before the new material is used.

The main items of design in emulsified asphalt slurry seals are aggregate gradation, emulsified asphalt content, and consistency of the mixture. The aggregates, emulsified asphalt, and water should form a creamy-textured slurry that, when spread, will flow ahead of the strike-off squeegee. This will allow the slurry to flow down into the cracks in the pavement and fill them before the strike-off passes over. Technical Bulletin No. 111, Outline Guide Design Procedure for Slurry Seal, and publication A-105 Recommended Performance Guideline for Emulsified Asphalt Slurry Seal published by the ISSA contains information to aid designers of slurry mixes.

The Contractor shall submit to the RPR for approval a complete mix design on the materials proposed for use, prepared and certified by an approved laboratory. Compatibility of the aggregate, emulsion, mineral filler, and other additives shall be verified by the mix design. The mix design shall be made with the same aggregate and grade of emulsified asphalt that the Contractor will provide on the project. At a minimum, the required tests and values needed are as follows:

Slurry Mix Tests

ISSA Technical Bulletin No.	Description	Specification
ISSA TB-100	Wet track abrasion loss one hour soak	50 g/ft ² Max (538 g/m ²)
ISSA TB-115	Determination of Slurry System Compatibility	Pass

626-3.3 Application rate. Unless otherwise specified, the slurry seal shall be applied at the application rates shown in Table 3.

Table 3. Slurry Application Rates

Mix Measurement	*
Pounds of mixture per square yard	*
Kilograms of mixture per square meter	*

The Engineer shall select the application rate for the applicable gradation from the table below and insert in Table 3 above.

Table 3. Slurry Application Rates

Mix Measurement	Type I	Type II	Type III	Type IA
Pounds of mixture per square yard	8 - 12	12 - 20	18 - 30	10 - 16
Kilograms of mixture per square meter	4.3 - 6.5	6.5 - 10.9	9.8 - 16.3	5.4 - 8.6

The rate of application shall not vary more than ± 2 pounds per square yard (± 1.1 km per square meter).

626-3.4 Control strips. Control strips shall be placed prior to the start of the slurry seal work in the presence of the RPR. The test area will be located on the existing pavement and designated by the RPR. Control strips shall be made by each machine after calibration. Separate control strips by a minimum of 200 feet between sections. Samples of the slurry seal may be taken and the mix consistency verified by using ISSA TB-106 Measurement of Slurry Seal Consistency test. In addition, the proportions of the individual materials may be verified by the RPR by using the calibration information provided after machine calibration. If any test does not meet specification requirements, additional tests shall be made at the expense of the Contractor, until an acceptable control strip is placed.

A qualified slurry seal Contractor's representative shall be present in the field to assist the Contractor in applying test areas and/or control strips to determine the optimum application rate of both emulsion and aggregate.

The control strip(s) affords the Contractor and the Engineer an opportunity to determine the quality of the mixture in place as well as the performance of the equipment.

The application rate depends on the surface texture.

If operational conditions preclude placement of a control strip on the pavement to be treated, the control strip may be applied on a pavement with similar surface texture.

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

626-4.1 Weather limitations. The slurry seal shall not be applied if either the pavement or air temperature is below 50°F (10°C) and falling but may be applied when both pavement and air temperature are above 45°F (7°C) and rising. No slurry seal shall be applied when there the finished product will freeze before 24 hours. Do not apply slurry seal during rain or other adverse weather conditions. The mixture shall not be applied when weather conditions prolong opening to traffic beyond a reasonable time.

The Engineer should not specify a lower permissible temperature range than that stated in paragraph 626-4.1, since slurry placed at lower temperatures usually will not cure properly due to poor dehydration and poor asphalt coalescence.

626-4.2 Equipment and tools. The Contractor shall furnish all equipment, tools, and machinery necessary for the performance of this work.

a. Slurry mixing equipment. The machine shall be specifically designed and manufactured to lay slurry seal. The material shall be mixed by a self-propelled slurry seal mixing machine of either truck mounted or continuous run design. Either type machine shall be able to accurately deliver and proportion the aggregate, emulsified asphalt, mineral filler, and water to a revolving mixer and discharge the mixed product on a continuous flow basis. The machine shall have sufficient storage capacity for materials to maintain an adequate supply to the proportioning controls.

If continuous run equipment is used, the machine shall be equipped to allow the operator full control of the forward and reverse speed of the machine during application of the slurry seal, with a self-loading device, with opposite side driver stations, all part of original equipment manufacturer design.

The aggregate shall be pre-wetted immediately prior to mixing with the emulsion. The mixing unit of the mixing chamber shall be capable of thoroughly blending all ingredients. No excessive mixing shall be permitted. The mixing machine shall be equipped with a fines feeder that provides an accurate metering device or method to introduce a predetermined proportion of mineral filler into the mixer at the same time and location that the aggregate is fed into the mixer.

The mixing machine shall be equipped with a water pressure system and fog-type spray bar adequate for complete fogging of the surface with an application of 0.05 to 0.10 gallon per square yard (0.23 to 0.45 liter per square meter) preceding the spreading equipment.

Sufficient machine storage capacity to mix properly and apply a minimum of 5 tons (4500 kg) of the slurry shall be provided. Proportioning devices shall be calibrated prior to placing the slurry seal.

b. Slurry spreading equipment. The mixture shall be spread uniformly by means of a conventional surfacing spreader box attached to the mixer and equipped to agitate and spread the material evenly throughout the box. A front seal shall be provided to ensure no loss of the mixture at the surface contact point. The rear seal shall act as the final strike-off and shall be adjustable. The spreader box and rear strike-off shall be designed and operated to produce a free flow of material of uniform consistency to the rear strike-off. The spreader box shall provide suitable means to side shift the box to compensate for variations in the pavement geometry. A burlap drag or other approved screed may be attached to the rear of the spreader box to provide a uniform mat.

c. Auxiliary equipment. Other tools or equipment such as brushes, hand squeegees, hose equipment, tank trucks, water distributors and flushers, power blowers, barricades, etc., shall be provided as required.

d. Roller. The roller, if required, shall be a self-propelled pneumatic-tired roller capable of exerting a contact pressure during rolling of 50 lb / sq inch (350 Newtons per square meter). It shall be equipped with a water spray system, to be used if the slurry is picking up on the tires during rolling.

e. Tack coat and distributor. Normally a tack coat is not required unless the surface to be covered is extremely dry and raveled or is concrete or brick. If required, the tack coat should consist of one part emulsified asphalt and three parts water. The emulsified asphalt may be the same as that used in the mix. Pressure distributors used for application of the diluted asphalt emulsion tack coat shall be self-propelled, equipped with pneumatic tires, and capable of uniformly applying 0.05 to 0.15 gallon per square yard (0.23 to 0.68 liter per square meter) of the diluted emulsion over the required width of application. Distributors shall be equipped with tachometers, pressure gauges, and volume-measuring devices. The tack coat shall be applied at least two (2) hours before the slurry seal but within the same day.

626-4.3 Equipment calibration. Each slurry mixing unit to be used on the project shall be calibrated in the presence of the RPR prior to construction. Previous calibration documentation covering the exact materials to be used may be accepted by the RPR provided they were made during the calendar year. The documentation shall include an individual calibration of each material at various settings, which can be related to the machine's metering devices. No machine will be allowed to work on the project until the calibration has been completed and/or accepted by the RPR.

626-4.4 Preparation of existing surface. Clean pavement surface immediately prior to placing the seal coat by sweeping, flushing well with water leaving no standing water, or a combination of both, so that it is free of dust, dirt, grease, vegetation, oil or any type of objectionable surface film. Remove oil or grease that has not penetrated the asphalt pavement by scraping or by scrubbing with a detergent, then wash thoroughly with clean water. After cleaning, treat these areas with the oil spot primer. Any additional surface preparation, such as crack repair, shall be in accordance with Item P-101, paragraph 101-3.6.

626-4.5 Application of slurry seal surface treatment. The surface shall be pre-wet ahead of the slurry spreader box by fogging at a rate that dampens the surface with no apparent standing water. The slurry mixture shall be at the desired consistency when exiting the mixer. Total time of mixing shall not exceed two (2) minutes. A sufficient amount of slurry shall be carried in all parts of the spreader box at all times so that complete coverage of all surface voids and cracks is obtained. Care shall be taken not to overload the spreader box which shall be towed at a slow and uniform rate not to exceed 5 miles per hour (8 km per hour). No lumping, balling, or unmixed aggregate shall be permitted. No segregation of the emulsion and fines from the coarse aggregate will be permitted. If the coarse aggregate settles to the bottom of the mix, the slurry shall be removed from the pavement surface. A sufficient amount of slurry shall be fed into the box to keep a full supply across the full width of the spreader box. The mixture shall not be permitted to overflow the sides of the spreader box. No breaking of the emulsion will be allowed in the spreader box. The finished surface shall have no more than four (4) tear or drag marks greater than 1/2-inch (12 mm) wide and 4-inch (100 mm) long in any 12-foot (3.7-m) by 22-foot (25-sq m) section. It shall have no tear or drag marks greater than 1 inch (25 mm) wide and 3-inch (15 mm) long.

The finished surface shall have no transverse ripples of 1/4-inch (6 mm) or more in depth, as measured with a 12-foot (3.7 meter) straightedge laid upon the surface.

Adjacent lanes shall be lapped at the edges a minimum of 2 inch (50 mm) with a maximum of 4 inch (100 mm) to provide complete sealing at the overlap. Construction longitudinal and transverse joints shall be neat and uniform without buildup, uncovered areas, or unsightly appearance. All joints shall have no more than 1/4-inch (6 mm) difference in elevation when measured across with a 12-foot (3.7 meter) straightedge.

Generally, where normal traffic will iron out the slurry and close any hairline cracks of dehydration, it is not necessary to roll a normal thickness, 1/4 inch (6 mm) or less, slurry seal. However, in some instances the somewhat lattice-like structure of the slurry should be densified by pneumatic-tire rolling to improve durability, such as areas subjected to severe braking or acceleration. Rolling of the slurry seal is at the option of the Engineer and, if required, shall be designated in the plans.

If rolling is required by the Engineer, the surface shall be subjected to a minimum of two full coverage passes by the roller. These rolling passes are to be done as soon as the slurry mixture will support the roller without damage. When the surface of the existing pavement is irregular or broken, it shall be repaired or brought to uniform grade and cross-section by patching as directed in the project plans. With the exception of standard debris cleaning, all other repairs, crack sealing, and required removal of materials shall be a line item in the bid and noted in the plans.

The fresh slurry seal application shall be protected by barricades and markers and permitted to dry for four (4) to 24 hours, depending on weather conditions. Any damage to uncured slurry shall be repaired at the expense of the Contractor.

In areas where the spreader box cannot be used, the slurry shall be applied by means of a hand squeegee. Upon completion of the work, the seal coat shall have no holes, bare spots, or cracks through which liquids or foreign matter could penetrate to the underlying pavement. The finished surface shall present a uniform and skid resistant texture satisfactory to the RPR. All wasted and unused material and all debris shall be removed from the site prior to final acceptance.

Upon completion of the project, the Contractor shall sweep the finished surface with a conventional power rotary broom, to remove any potential loose material from the surface. The material removed by sweeping shall be disposed of in a manner satisfactory to the RPR.

The cured slurry shall have a homogeneous appearance, fill all cracks, adhere firmly to the surface and have a skid resistant texture. The slurry seal will not stop shrinkage and other large thermal cracks from reflecting back through the new slurry surface.

626-4.6 Emulsion material (Contractor's responsibility). Samples of the emulsion that the Contractor proposes to use, together with a statement as to its source, shall be submitted, and approval shall be obtained before using such material. The Contractor shall submit to the RPR a manufacturer's certified report for each consignment of the emulsion. The manufacturer's certified report shall not be interpreted as a basis for final acceptance. All such reports shall be subject to verification by testing samples of the emulsion received for use on the project.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

626-5.1 The emulsified asphalt shall be measured by the [gallon (liter)][ton (kg)]. The amount of emulsified asphalt to be paid for will be measured in gallons at 60°F (L at 16°C). Correct volumes measured at temperatures other than 60°F (16°C) in accordance with ASTM D1250 using a coefficient of expansion of 0.00025 per degree F (0.00045 per degree C) for asphalt emulsion. Only the actual quantity of undiluted emulsified asphalt will be measured for payment.

626-5.2 Aggregate shall be measured by the ton (kg) of dry aggregate. Measurement of the materials shall be by approved weigh scales.

[**626-5.3** Emulsified asphalt tack coat shall be measured per [gallon (liter)][ton (kg)].]

BASIS OF PAYMENT

626-6.1 Payment shall be made at the contract unit price per [gallon (liter)][(ton (kg))] for the emulsified asphalt.

626-6.2 Payment shall be made at the contract unit price per ton (kg) for aggregate.

[**626-6.3** Payment shall be made at the contract unit price for emulsified asphalt tack coat per [gallon (liter)][ton (kg)].]

These prices shall be full compensation for furnishing all materials, for preparing, mixing, and applying these materials, and for all labor, equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete the item.

Payment will be made under:

Item P-626-6.1	Emulsified Asphalt for Slurry Coat - per [gallon (liter)][ton (kg)]
Item P-626-6.2	Aggregate - per ton (kg) of dry aggregate.

[Item P-626-6.3 Emulsified Asphalt for Tack Coat - per [gallon
(liter)][ton (kg)]]

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM International (ASTM)

ASTM C88	Standard Test Method for Soundness of Aggregates by Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate
ASTM C117	Standard Test Method for Materials Finer than 75- μ m (No. 200) Sieve in Mineral Aggregates by Washing
ASTM C131	Standard Test Method for Resistance to Degradation of Small-Size Coarse Aggregate by Abrasion and Impact in the Los Angeles Machine
ASTM C136	Standard Test Method for Sieve or Screen Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates
ASTM C1602	Standard Specification for Mixing Water Used in the Production of Hydraulic Cement Concrete
ASTM D75	Standard Practice for Sampling Aggregates
ASTM D242	Standard Specification for Mineral Filler for Bituminous Paving Mixtures
ASTM D977	Standard Specification for Emulsified Asphalt
ASTM D1250	Standard Guide for Use of the Petroleum Measurement Tables
ASTM D2397	Standard Specification for Cationic Emulsified Asphalt
ASTM D2419	Standard Test Method for Sand Equivalent Value of Soils and Fine Aggregate
ASTM D3628	Standard Practice for Selection and Use of Emulsified Asphalts

International Slurry Surfacing Association (ISSA)

ISSA A-105	Recommended Performance Guidelines for Emulsified Asphalt Slurry Seal
ISSA TB-100	Laboratory Test Method for Wet Track Abrasion of Slurry Surfacing Systems
ISSA TB-106	Slurry Seal Consistency Template
ISSA TB-115	Test Method for Determination of Slurry System Compatibility

END OF ITEM P-626

Item P-629 Thermoplastic Coal Tar Emulsion Surface Treatments

DESCRIPTION

This specification for thermoplastic coal tar emulsion includes three options. Any of the options may be used on apron areas that require a fuel resistant coating serving aircraft less than 60,000 lbs (27216 kg).

- 1. Micro-surface: For use on all pavements on airports serving airplanes less than 60,000 lbs (27216 kg); any pavements on which aircraft do not operate including shoulders, overruns, roads, and parking areas. Micro-surface can be used at airports that server aircraft 60,000 lbs (27216 kg) or greater with FAA approval.**
- 2. Sand slurry seal: For use on all pavements on general aviation airports serving airplanes 30,000 lbs (13,600 kg) or less; all pavements, except runways, on airports serving airplanes less than 60,000 lbs (27216 kg); any pavements on which aircraft do not operate including shoulders, overruns, roads, and parking areas.**
- 3. Spray seal coat: For use on all pavements, except runways, on general aviation airports serving airplanes 30,000 lbs (13,600 kg) or less and any pavements on which aircraft do not operate including shoulders, overruns, roads, and parking areas.**

The Engineer, with FAA concurrence, may specify this item for airports serving airplanes less than 60,000 lbs (27216 kg) except for runways and acute-angled exit taxiways.

With growing environmental/safety regulations, more states and local authorities are prohibiting the use of coal tar products. The Engineer must verify the selected materials comply with federal, state, and local authority requirements.

629-1.1 This item shall consist of an application of a thermoplastic coal tar emulsion [Micro-Surface,][Sand Slurry Seal,][Spray Seal Coat,] applied to an existing, previously prepared asphalt surface, including airport pavements serving small airplanes [12,500 lbs (5670 kg) or less], roads, and other general applications. Thermoplastic resin coal tar emulsion products provide a fuel-resistant surface where pavements are subjected to fuel spills. Thermoplastic resin coal tar emulsion products assist in pavement preservation through reducing the rate of pavement oxidation. The application of the surface treatment shall be in accordance with these specifications and shall conform to the dimensions shown on the plans or as directed by the Resident Project Representative (RPR).

MATERIALS

629-2.1 Thermoplastic coal tar emulsion. The emulsion material shall be a thermoplastic coal tar emulsion made up of plastic resin and emulsified coal tar pitch. The thermoplastic coal tar emulsion shall be manufactured as a complete product and tested at the manufacturing plant for material certification. The cured thermoplastic coal tar emulsion sample must pass the fuel-resistance test in accordance with ASTM D5727.

629-2.2 Manufacturer's certifications. The Contractor shall furnish the manufacturer's certification of Analysis (COA) that all thermoplastic coal tar emulsion shipped to the project meets the following testing requirements:

Thermoplastic Coal Tar Emulsion Properties

Property	Standard	Requirement
Water content	ASTM D5727, Section 6.1.6	≤58%
Ash of Residue	ASTM D5727, Section 6.1.9	≤ 15%
Flexibility	ASTM D5727, Section 6.1.14	1 rating
Resistance to Kerosene	ASTM D5727, Section 6.1.12	Pass with no loss of adhesion and no softening of film
Softening Point	ASTM D36	>212°F (100°C)

629-2.3 Manufacturer sampling. A sample of undiluted thermoplastic coal tar emulsion shall be obtained at the production facility from each consignment shipped to the job. Manufacturer shall store the samples in containers that are sealed against contamination and retained for a period of six months. Samples shall be stored at room temperature and not be subjected to freezing temperatures.

629-2.4 Water. Water used in mixing or curing shall be from potable water sources. Other sources shall be tested in accordance with ASTM C1602 prior to use. The temperature of the water added during mixing shall be at least 50°F (10°C).

629-2.5 Handling and storage. All emulsion stored on-site shall be agitated at least once per day for a minimum of 15 minutes. The distributor or applicator, pumps and all tools shall be maintained in satisfactory working condition. Spray bar nozzles, pumps, or other equipment can be cleaned mechanically or with clean water.

629-2.6 Health, safety, and environment. The Contractor must provide a complete Safety Data Sheet (SDS) in accordance with U.S. Department of Labor, Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA), Regulations (Standards – 29 CFR), 1910.1200 which establishes the requirement and minimum information for the SDS for hazardous materials. The SDS, Section II, shall include the Chemical Abstracts Service (CAS) registry numbers for all applicable hazardous ingredients in the coal tar emulsion product. The Contractor must provide the manufacturer's certification that the product complies with the Code of Federal Regulation (CFR) Title 40 – Protection of Environment. The manufacturer's certification shall address compliance for Air Programs, Part 59, National Volatile Organic Compound Emission Standards for Consumer and Commercial Products (for the airport location) and Water Programs, Part 116, Designation of Hazardous Substances.

COMPOSITION AND APPLICATION

[]

The Engineer shall select one of the following options based on whether the project is for (1) Thermoplastic Coal Tar Emulsion [Micro-Surface Type A] [Micro-Surface Type B], (2) Thermoplastic Coal Tar Emulsion Slurry Seal, or (3) Spray Seal Coat [with] [without] Sand Aggregate.

FOR THERMOPLASTIC COAL TAR EMULSION MICRO-SURFACE, INSERT THE FOLLOWING PARAGRAPHS FOR PARAGRAPH 629-3.0 TO 629-3.6:

629-3.0 Thermoplastic coal tar emulsion [Micro-Surface Type A] [Micro-Surface Type B].

Type A Aggregate Thermoplastic Coal Tar Emulsion Micro-Surface generally can be used for:

- Existing pavements that are moderately rough and raveled and require a substantially improved surface profile or wearing surface.
- Pavements that may require improvement of skid-resistance.
- Areas that require wear protection, oxidation protection and chemical/fuel resistance.

Type B Aggregate Thermoplastic Coal Tar Emulsion Micro-Surface generally can be used for:

- Existing pavements that are raveled or smooth and require an improved surface profile or wearing surface.
- Pavements that may require improvement of skid-resistance.
- Areas that require wear protection, oxidation protection and chemical/fuel resistance.

629-3.1 Quantities of materials per square yard. Based on the data in this specification, the Contractor shall submit the proportions of thermoplastic coal tar emulsion and aggregate proposed for use to the RPR for approval prior to the start of operations. A copy of the mix design and test data required by this specification shall be submitted to the RPR for approval along with the above information. No thermoplastic coal tar emulsion micro-surface shall be produced for payment until a job mix formula has been approved in writing by the RPR.

The approximate amounts of materials per square yard (square meter) for the micro-surface treatment shall be as provided in the Application Rate table.

Application Rate

Aggregate Type	Composition ⁱ lbs/gal (kg/l)	Application Rate ⁱⁱ lb/yd ² (kg/m ²)
A	22-24 (2.63-2.87)	8 (4.34)
B	20-22 (2.39-2.63)	6.5 (3.53)

- i. Aggregate (lbs) shall be mixed homogeneously with the thermoplastic coal tar emulsion (gals).
- ii. Minimum application rate of uncured thermoplastic coal tar emulsion micro-surface.

629-3.2 Aggregate. The aggregate shall consist of sound, durable crushed igneous type stone (crushed basalt, granite, trap rock, etc.), be free from films of matter that would prevent thorough coating and bonding with the asphalt material and free from coatings of clay, organic matter, and other deleterious materials. The percentage of wear shall not be greater than 35% when tested in accordance with ASTM C131. The aggregate shall meet the gradation in the table below for Type A and for Type B when tested in accordance with ASTM C136.

The Contractor shall provide a certification showing particle size analysis and properties of the material delivered for use on the project.

Aggregate Material Gradation Requirements

Sieve Designation (square openings)	Percentage by Weight Passing Sieves	
	Type A	Type B
No. 4 (4.75 mm)	100	100
No. 8 (2.36 mm)	75-95	95-100
No. 16 (1.18 mm)	50-75	65-95
No. 30 (600 µm)	30-65	35-65
No. 50 (300 µm)	20-50	20-45
No. 100 (150 µm)	15-25	5-20
No. 200 (75 µm)	5-20	0-20

629-3.3 Application

a. Application of primer coat. After preparation of the pavement and acceptance by the RPR, the primer coat shall be applied to the pavement surface only where micro-surface will be applied. Apply a tack primer coat of thermoplastic coal tar emulsion diluted with 50% water at the rate of 0.10 gallons of mix per square yard (0.45 l/m²).

b. Application of micro-surface. The surface shall be pre-wet by fogging ahead of the spreader box. Water used in pre-wetting the surface shall be applied at such a rate that the entire surface is damp with no apparent flowing water in front of the spreader box. If temperatures are in the colder acceptable range the rate of fogging may be decreased. The mixture shall be of the desired consistency when deposited on the surface, and no additional elements shall be added. A sufficient amount of mixture shall be carried in the spreader box at all times so that even distribution is obtained. No clumped or unmixed aggregate shall be permitted. No segregation of the emulsion and aggregate fines from the coarse aggregate will be permitted.

Upon completion of the work, the thermoplastic coal tar emulsion micro-surface shall have no bare spots or cracks through which liquids or foreign matter could penetrate to the underlying pavement. The finished surface shall present a uniform texture.

In areas where the spreader box cannot be used, the thermoplastic coal tar emulsion micro-surface shall be applied by a means of a hand squeegee.

629-3.4 Equipment and tools.

a. Mobile mixing machine. The mobile mixing machine shall be a truck-mounted mobile mixing plant with a towed-type spreader box. It shall have a water tank and water pump capable of delivering a constant volume of water.

The mobile mixing machine shall have an agitated storage tank for the thermoplastic coal tar emulsion and a non-shearing peristaltic pump with variable rate of flow for the delivery of this material. The mobile mixing machine shall have a hopper for holding aggregate, supplying this material to the mixing chamber by a conveyor belt. The rate of aggregate delivery shall be mechanically dependent upon the speed of the peristaltic pump.

The mobile mixing machine shall be a continuous-flow mixing unit capable of delivering predetermined quantities of thermoplastic coal tar emulsion, aggregate, and if necessary water, to the mixing chamber and discharging the thoroughly mixed material on a continuous basis. The mobile mixing machine shall deliver the materials to the mixing chamber in a constant proportion in a manner not dependent on power plant or vehicle speed. The machine shall be equipped with a water spray bar capable of fogging the pavement surface to aid in the application process.

Attached to the mixing machine shall be a mechanical-type squeegee distributor, equipped with flexible material in contact with the surface to prevent loss of material from the distributor. It shall be maintained to prevent loss of micro-surfacing on varying grades and adjusted to assure uniform spread. The spreader box may have an adjustable width.

b. Prime coat distributor. The prime coat distributor shall be either a truck-mounted 300 to 3,000-gallon (1136 to 11356 liter) tank or a trailer-mounted unit with a 300 to 1000-gallon tank (1136 to 3785 liters) containing suitably driven mixing blades to combine predetermined quantities of thermoplastic emulsion and water into a homogeneous mixture. It shall be equipped with a diaphragm style pump capable of delivering a constant volume of material to a spray wand or spray bar. The device shall have a bottom ball valve capable of delivering material to a squeegee spreader or a drag box.

c. Auxiliary equipment. Other tools or equipment such as power brooms, power blowers, air compressors, hand brooms, hand squeegees, etc., shall be provided as required.

d. Calibration. The Contractor shall furnish all equipment, materials and labor necessary to calibrate the equipment. It shall be calibrated to assure that it will produce and apply a mix that conforms to the job mix formula. Commercial equipment should be provided with a method of calibration by the manufacturer. All calibrations shall be made with the approved job materials prior to applying the Micro-Surface to the pavement. A copy of the calibration test results shall be furnished to the RPR.

629-3.5 Control strip. A qualified manufacturer's representative shall be present in the field to assist the Contractor in applying test areas and/or control strips. Prior to full production, the Contractor shall prepare a control strip of a minimum 16 feet wide by 100 feet long at the specified application rate. Separate control strips by a minimum of 200 feet between sections. The area to be tested will be designated by the RPR and will be located on the existing pavement.

The control strip shall determine the quality of the mixture in place as well as the performance of the equipment. The same equipment and method of operations shall be used on the control strip as will be used on the remainder of the work. If the control strip should prove to be unsatisfactory, the necessary

adjustments to the mix composition, application rate, placement operations and equipment shall be made. Additional control strips shall be placed and evaluated if required.

629-3.6 Friction characteristics. Friction testing is not required for micro-surface installations.

**FOR THERMOPLASTIC COAL TAR EMULSION SAND SLURRY SEAL,
INSERT THE FOLLOWING PARAGRAPHS FOR PARAGRAPH 629-3.0 TO
629-3.6:**

629–3.0 Thermoplastic coal tar emulsion sand slurry seal.

629-3.1 Quantities of materials per square yard. Based on the data in this specification, the Contractor shall submit the proportions of thermoplastic coal tar emulsion and aggregate proposed for use to the RPR for approval prior to the start of operations. A copy of the mix design and test data required by this specification shall be submitted to the RPR for approval along with the above information. No thermoplastic coal tar emulsion sand slurry seal shall be produced for payment until a job mix formula has been approved in writing by the RPR.

Application Rate

Composition ⁱ lbs/gal (kg/l)	Application Rate ⁱⁱ lb/yd² (kg/m²)
17-19 (2.04-2.28)	4 (2.17)

1. Aggregate (lbs) shall be mixed homogeneously with the thermoplastic coal tar emulsion (gals).
2. Minimum application rate of uncured thermoplastic coal tar emulsion sand slurry seal.

629-3.2 Aggregate. The aggregate shall consist of sound, durable crushed igneous type stone (crushed basalt, granite, trap rock, etc.), clean washed masonry sand, or clean washed manufactured silica sand, be free from films of matter that would prevent thorough coating and bonding with the asphalt material and free from coatings of clay, organic matter, and other deleterious materials. Aggregate shall have a minimum Mohs hardness of 6. The aggregate shall meet the gradation in the table below when tested in accordance with ASTM C136.

The Contractor shall provide a certification showing particle size analysis and properties of the material delivered for use on the project.

Aggregate Material Gradation Requirements

Sieve Designation (square openings)	Percentage by Weight Passing Sieves
No. 4 (4.75 mm)	100
No. 8 (2.36 mm)	99.5-100
No. 16 (1.18 mm)	85-100
No. 30 (600 µm)	50-90
No. 50 (300 µm)	15-55
No. 100 (150 µm)	0-20
No. 200 (75 µm)	0-20

629-3.3 Application.

a. Application of prime coat. After preparation of the pavement and acceptance by the RPR, the prime coat shall be applied to the pavement surface only where thermoplastic coal tar emulsion sand slurry seal will be applied. Apply a prime coat of thermoplastic coal tar emulsion diluted with 50% water at the rate of 0.10 gallons of mix per square yard (0.45 l/m²).

b. Application of sand slurry seal. The surface shall be pre-wet by fogging ahead of the spreader box. Water used in pre-wetting the surface shall be applied at such a rate that the entire surface is damp with no apparent flowing water in front of the spreader box. The mixture shall be of the desired consistency when deposited on the surface, and no additional elements shall be added. A sufficient amount of mixture shall be carried in the spreader box at all times so that even distribution is obtained. No clumped or unmixed aggregate shall be permitted. No segregation of the thermoplastic coal tar emulsion and aggregate fines from the coarse aggregate will be permitted.

Upon completion of the work, the thermoplastic coal tar emulsion sand slurry seal shall have no bare spots or cracks through which liquids or foreign matter could penetrate to the underlying pavement. The finished surface shall present a uniform texture.

In areas where the spreader box cannot be used, the thermoplastic coal tar emulsion sand slurry seal shall be applied by a means of a hand squeegee.

629-3.4 Equipment and tools.

a. Mobile mixing machine. The mobile mixing machine shall be a truck-mounted mobile mixing plant with a towed-type spreader box. It shall have a water tank and water pump capable of delivering a constant volume of water.

The mobile mixing machine shall have an agitated storage tank for the thermoplastic coal tar emulsion and a non-shearing peristaltic pump with variable rate of flow for the delivery of this material. The mobile mixing machine shall have a hopper for holding aggregate, supplying this material to the mixing chamber by a conveyor belt. The rate of aggregate delivery shall be mechanically dependent upon the speed of the peristaltic pump.

The mobile mixing machine shall be a continuous-flow mixing unit capable of delivering predetermined quantities of thermoplastic coal tar emulsion, aggregate, and if necessary water, to the mixing chamber and discharging the thoroughly mixed material on a continuous basis. The mobile mixing machine shall deliver the materials to the mixing chamber in a constant proportion in a manner not dependent on power plant or vehicle speed. The machine shall be equipped with a water spray bar capable of fogging the pavement surface to aid in the application process.

Attached to the mixing machine shall be a mechanical-type squeegee distributor, equipped with flexible material in contact with the surface to prevent loss of material from the distributor. It shall be maintained to prevent loss of micro-surfacing on varying grades and adjusted to assure uniform spread. The spreader box may have an adjustable width.

b. Prime coat distributor. The prime coat distributor shall be either a truck-mounted 300 to 3,000-gallon (1136 to 11356 liter) tank or a trailer-mounted unit with a 300 to 1000-gallon tank (1136 to 3785 liters) containing suitably driven mixing blades to combine predetermined quantities of thermoplastic emulsion and water into a homogeneous mixture. It shall be equipped with a diaphragm style pump capable of delivering a constant volume of material to a spray wand or spray bar. The device shall have a bottom ball valve capable of delivering material to a squeegee spreader or a drag box.

c. Auxiliary equipment. Other tools or equipment such as power brooms, power blowers, air compressors, hand brooms, hand squeegees, etc., shall be provided as required.

d. Calibration. The Contractor shall furnish all equipment, materials and labor necessary to calibrate the equipment. It shall be calibrated to assure that it will produce and apply a mix that conforms to the job mix formula. Commercial equipment should be provided with a method of calibration by the manufacturer. All calibrations shall be made with the approved job materials prior to applying the slurry seal to the pavement. A copy of the calibration test results shall be furnished to the RPR.

629-3.5 Control strip. A qualified manufacturer's representative shall be present in the field to assist the Contractor in applying control areas and/or control strips. The area to be tested will be designated by the RPR and will be located on the existing pavement.

The control strip shall determine the quality of the mixture in place as well as the performance of the equipment. The same equipment and method of operations shall be used on the control strip as will be used on the remainder of the work. If the control strip should prove to be unsatisfactory, the necessary adjustments to the mix composition, application rate, placement operations and equipment shall be made. Additional control strips shall be placed and evaluated if required.

629-3.6 Friction characteristics. Friction testing is not required for sand slurry installations.

**FOR THERMOPLASTIC COAL TAR EMULSION SPRAY SEAL COAT [WITH]
[WITHOUT] SAND AGGREGATE, INSERT THE FOLLOWING FOR
PARAGRAPH 629-3.0 TO 629-3.6:**

629-3.0 Thermoplastic coal tar emulsion spray seal coat [with] [without] sand aggregate.

Thermoplastic coal tar emulsion spray seal coat treatments may be used for taxiways and runways with the application of a suitable aggregate to maintain adequate surface friction; airfield secondary and tertiary pavements including shoulders, overruns, roads, parking areas, and other general applications with or without aggregate applied. The thermoplastic coal tar emulsion spray seal coat may be applied to new asphalt pavement and pavements in fair or better condition as defined in ASTM D5340 or advisory circular (AC) 150/5320-17, Airfield Pavement Surface Evaluation and Rating (PASER) Manuals. A thermoplastic coal tar emulsion spray seal coat without aggregate, more commonly called a "fog seal", can

be considered for use on pavements with low to moderate weathered surfaces as defined by ASTM D5340.

629-3.1 Quantities of materials per square yard. Based on the data in this specification, the Contractor shall submit the proportions of thermoplastic coal tar emulsion and aggregate proposed for use to the RPR for approval prior to the start of operations. A copy of the test data required by this specification shall be submitted to the RPR for approval along with the above information. No thermoplastic coal tar emulsion spray seal coat shall be produced for payment until approved in writing by the RPR.

Application Rate without Aggregate

Composition	Application Rate gal/yd² (L/m²)
75% thermoplastic coal tar emulsion and 25% water (±5%)	0.15-0.25 (0.081-0.136)

Application Rate with Aggregate

Application Coat(s)	Composition ⁱ lbs/gal (kg/L)	Application Rate ⁱⁱ Per Coat gal/yd² (L/m²)	Total Application Rate ⁱⁱ gal/yd² (L/m²)
1	6 (0.72)	0.20-0.30 (0.76-1.14)	0.20-0.30 (0.76-1.14)
2	3 (0.36)	0.10-0.15 (0.38-0.57)	0.20-0.30 (0.76-1.14)

- i. Aggregate (lbs) shall be mixed with the undiluted thermoplastic coal tar emulsion (gals).
- ii. Minimum application rate of uncured thermoplastic coal tar emulsion spray seal coat.

629-3.2 Aggregate. The aggregate material shall be a dry, clean, dust and dirt free, sound, durable, angular shaped manufactured specialty sand, such as that used as an abrasive, with a minimum Mohs hardness of 6. The Contractor shall submit manufacturer's technical data and a manufacturer's certification indicating that the specialty sand meets the requirements of the specification to the RPR prior to bid. The sand must be approved for use by the RPR and shall meet the following gradation limits:

Aggregate Material Gradation Requirements

Sieve Designation (square openings)	Percentage by Weight Retained Sieves
No. 20 (850 µm)	0-2
No. 30 (600 µm)	0-12
No. 40 (425 µm)	2-60
No. 50 (300 µm)	5-60
No. 70 (212 µm)	5-60
No. 100 (150 µm)	5-30
No. 140 (106 µm)	0-10
No. 200 (75 µm)	0-2
Finer than No. 200	0-0.3

The Contractor shall provide a certification showing particle size analysis and properties of the material delivered for use on the project.

The gradations in the table represent the limits in determining aggregate suitability for use in the thermoplastic coal tar emulsion spray seal. The sand gradation used, within the limits designated in the table, shall provide sufficient friction levels to meet or exceed the Maintenance Planning Friction Level in Table 3-2, “Friction Level Classification for Runway Pavement Surfaces” of AC 150/5320-12, Measurement, Construction, and Maintenance of Skid Resistant Airport Pavement Surfaces.

629-3.3 Application.

a. Pavement surfaces which have excessive runoff of seal coat due to excessive amount of material being applied or excessive surface grade shall be treated in two or more applications to the specified application rate at no additional cost to the Owner. If multiple coats are specified, each coat shall be allowed to dry and cure initially before applying any subsequent coats. The initial drying shall allow evaporation of water of the applied mixture, resulting in the coating being able to sustain light foot traffic.

If low spots and depressions greater than 1/2 inch (12 mm) in depth in the pavement surface cause ponding or puddling of the applied materials, the pavement surface shall be broomed with a broom drag. Brooming shall continue until the pavement surface is free of any pools of excess material. Ponding and/or puddling shall not cause excessive pavement softening and/or additional distress. The RPR shall inspect and approve areas after brooming.

During all applications, the surfaces of adjacent structures shall be protected to prevent their being spattered or marred. Thermoplastic coal tar emulsion materials shall not be discharged into borrow pits or gutters.

629-3.4 Equipment and tools.

a. **Seal coat distributor.** The seal coat distributor shall be either a truck-mounted 300 to 3,000-gallon (1136 to 11356 liter) tank or a trailer-mounted unit with a 300 to 1000 gallons (1136 to 3785 liters) containing suitably driven mixing blades to combine predetermined quantities of thermoplastic emulsion, aggregate if specified and if necessary, water into a homogeneous mixture. It shall be equipped with a

diaphragm style pump capable of delivering a constant volume of material to a spray wand or spray bar. The device shall have a bottom ball valve capable of delivering material to a squeegee spreader or a drag box.

b. Auxiliary equipment. Other tools or equipment such as power brooms, power blowers, air compressors, hand brooms, hand squeegees, etc., shall be provided as required.

c. Calibration. The Contractor shall furnish all equipment, materials and labor necessary to calibrate the equipment. It shall be calibrated to assure that it will produce and apply a mix that conforms to the job mix formula. Commercial equipment should be provided with a method of calibration by the manufacturer. All calibrations shall be made with the approved job materials prior to applying the seal coat to the pavement. A copy of the calibration test results shall be furnished to the RPR.

629-3.5 Control strip. A qualified manufacturer's representative shall be present in the field to assist the Contractor in applying control areas and/or control strips. The Contractor shall prepare a control strip at the specified application rate. Separate control strips by a minimum of 200 feet between sections. The area to be tested will be designated by the RPR and will be located on the existing pavement.

The control strip shall determine the quality of the mixture in place as well as the performance of the equipment. The same equipment and method of operations shall be used on the control strip as will be used on the remainder of the work. If the control strip should prove to be unsatisfactory, the necessary adjustments to the mix composition, application rate, placement operations and equipment shall be made. Additional control strips shall be placed and evaluated if required.

a. For taxiway, taxilane and apron surfaces. Prior to full application, the Contractor shall place test area as specified by the manufacturer's representative and RPR. The test area will be located on representative section of the pavement to receive the Thermoplastic coal tar emulsion spray seal coat designated by the RPR.

b. For runway and high-speed taxiway surfaces. Prior to full application, the Contractor shall place a control strip a minimum of 300 feet (90 m) long by 12 feet (3.6 m) wide, or width of anticipated application, whichever is greater, as stipulated by the manufacturer's representative and RPR. The area to be tested will be located on a representative section of the pavement to receive the Thermoplastic coal tar emulsion spray seal coat designated by the RPR. Before beginning the control strip, the skid resistance of the existing pavement shall be determined for each control strip with a continuous friction measuring equipment (CFME). The skid resistance test after application shall be at approximately the same location as the test done on the existing pavement. The Contractor may begin testing the skid resistance of runway and taxiway control strips after application of the Thermoplastic coal tar emulsion spray seal has fully cured. Aircraft shall not be permitted on the runway or taxiway control strips for a minimum of 24 hours and until such time as the Contractor validates that its surface friction meets AC 150/5320-12. The results of the friction evaluation meet or exceed the Maintenance Planning levels provided in Table 3-2, "Friction Level Classification for Runway Pavement Surfaces," in AC 150/5320-12, Measurement, Construction, and Maintenance of Skid-resistant Airport Pavement Surfaces, when tested at speeds of 40 and 60 mph (65 and 95 km/h) wet with approved CFME.

If the control strip should prove to be unsatisfactory, necessary adjustments to the application rate, placement operations, and equipment shall be made. Additional control strips shall be placed and additional skid resistance tests performed and evaluated. Full production shall not begin without the RPR's approval of an appropriate application rate. Acceptable control strips shall be paid for in accordance with paragraph 629-8.1.

The control strip affords the Contractor and the Engineer an opportunity to determine the quality of the mixture in place as well as the performance of the equipment.

If operational conditions preclude placement of a control strip on the pavement to be treated, it may be applied on a pavement with similar surface texture.

For projects calling for application of the thermoplastic coal tar emulsion surface treatment on runway and high-speed taxiway, the Engineer shall document skid resistance in accordance with AC 150/5320-12, Measurement, Construction, and Maintenance of Skid-Resistant Airport Pavement Surfaces, prior to full application.

629-3.6 Friction characteristics For projects where thermoplastic coal tar emulsion spray seal coat is applied on runway and taxiway surfaces, the Contractor shall submit to the RPR friction tests, from previous airport projects which used the thermoplastic coal tar emulsion spray seal coat in a similar environment, in accordance with AC 150/5320-12, at 40 or 60 mph (65 or 95 km/h) wet, showing, as a minimum; friction value of pavement surface prior to thermoplastic coal tar emulsion spray seal coat application; two values, tested between 24 and 96 hours after application, with a minimum of 24 hours between tests; and one value tested at no less than 180 days or greater than 360 days after the thermoplastic coal tar emulsion spray seal coat application. The results of the two tests between 24 and 96 hours shall indicate friction is increasing at a rate to obtain similar friction value of the pavement surface prior to application, and the long-term test shall indicate no apparent adverse effect with time relative to friction values and existing pavement surface. The Contractor shall submit to the RPR a list of airports which meet the above requirements, as well as technical details on application rates, aggregate rates, and point of contact at these airports to confirm use and success of thermoplastic coal tar emulsion spray seal coat with aggregate. Friction tests shall be submitted from no less than one of the airports on the list and each set of tests described above, must be from one project.

The thermoplastic coal tar emulsion spray seal coat submittal without the required friction performance will not be approved. Friction tests performed on this project cannot be used as a substitute of this requirement.

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

629-4.1 Worker safety. The Contractor shall obtain a SDS for both the thermoplastic coal tar emulsion product and aggregate and require workmen to follow the manufacturer's recommended safety precautions.

629-4.2 Weather limitations. The material shall not be applied when the humidity or impending weather conditions will not allow proper drying or when the atmospheric or pavement temperature is below 50°F (10°C), unless otherwise directed by the RPR.

During application of thermoplastic coal tar emulsion surface treatment, account for wind drift. Cover existing buildings, structures, runway edge lights, taxiway edge lights, informational signs, retro-reflective marking and in-pavement duct markers as necessary to protect against overspray before applying the emulsion. Should thermoplastic coal tar emulsion surface treatment get on any light or

marker fixture, promptly clean the fixture. If cleaning is not satisfactory to the RPR, the Contractor shall replace any light, sign or marker with equivalent equipment at no cost to the Owner.

629-4.3 Preparation of asphalt pavement surfaces. Clean pavement surface immediately prior to placing the surface treatment so that it is free of dust, dirt, grease, vegetation, oil or any type of objectionable surface film. Remove oil or grease by scrubbing with a detergent, then wash thoroughly with clean water. Any additional surface preparation, such as crack repair, shall be in accordance with P101-3.6.

629-4.4 Application. Application shall be in accordance with paragraph 629-3.3.

629-4.5 Curing. The mixture shall be permitted to dry for a minimum of 24 hours after the application, before opening to traffic or painting, and shall be sufficiently cured to drive over without damage to the installation. Any damage to the uncured mixture caused by the Contractor will be the responsibility of the Contractor to repair.

QUALITY CONTROL (QC)

629-5.1 Field emulsion sampling. All emulsion sampling methods shall be in accordance with ASTM D140. Samples must be taken from the center of an agitated bulk storage tank after a minimum of 15 minutes of continual agitation.

629-5.2 Field composite mix sampling. Composite mix of thermoplastic coal emulsion and aggregate shall be taken directly from the pug mill of the mobile mixing machine for micro-surface and sand slurry installations into a sealed 1-gallon container to be weighed. The minimum weight of composite mix shall be the following:

- a. Type A Micro-Surface Composite Mix – Minimum 14 pounds per gallon
- b. Type B Micro-Surface Composite Mix – Minimum 13.5 pounds per gallon
- c. Sand Slurry Composite Mix – Minimum 13 pounds per gallon

629-5.3 Manufacturer's representation. The manufacturer's representative shall have knowledge of the material, procedures, and equipment described in the specification and shall be responsible for verifying the job mix formula submitted to the RPR and shall oversee the preparation and application of the thermoplastic coal tar emulsion surface treatment. Documentation of the manufacturer representative's experience and knowledge for applying the thermoplastic coal tar emulsion surface treatment shall be furnished to the RPR a minimum of 10 work days prior to placement of the control strips. The cost of the manufacturer's representative shall be included in the bid price.

629-5.4 Contractor qualifications. The Contractor shall provide the RPR Contractor qualifications for applicators, personnel and equipment. The Contractor shall also provide, from the thermoplastic coal tar emulsion Manufacturer, documentation that the Contractor is certified to apply the thermoplastic coal tar emulsion surface treatment. Contractor shall provide documentation for at least three (3) applications similar to this project completed in the past two (2) years.

MATERIAL ACCEPTANCE

629-6.1 Friction tests. [For spray seal versions only. Micro-surface and sand slurry versions do not require friction testing.] Friction Test in accordance with AC 150/5320-12, Measurement, Construction, and Maintenance of Skid-Resistant Airport Pavement Surfaces, shall be accomplished on all runway and taxiways that have received a seal coat. The Contractor shall coordinate testing with the RPR. Each test includes performing friction tests at 40 mph

and 60 mph (65 and 95 km/h) both wet, 15 feet (4.5 m) to each side of runway centerline. Friction test shall be run within 30 days prior to application of the seal coat to runway and/or high-speed taxiways and after application of the seal coat. The RPR shall be present for testing. The Contractor shall provide a written report of friction test results.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

629-7.1 Measurement. The Thermoplastic Coal Tar Emulsion [Micro-Surface Type A] [Micro-Surface Type B] [Sand Slurry Seal] [Spray Seal Coat with Sand Aggregate] [Spray Seal Coat without Sand Aggregate] shall be measured by the square yard (sq m) of the area indicated on the contract drawings or designated by the RPR.

BASIS OF PAYMENT

629-8.1 Payment. Payment shall be made at the contract unit price per square yard (square meter) for the Thermoplastic Coal Tar Emulsion [Micro-Surface Type A] [Micro-Surface Type B] [Sand Slurry Seal] [Spray Seal Coat with Sand Aggregate] [Spray Seal Coat without Sand Aggregate]. This price shall fully compensate the Contractor for furnishing all materials and for all labor, equipment tools and incidentals necessary to complete the thermoplastic coal tar emulsion product installation, including mix design and data sheets stipulated in these specifications.

Payments will be made under:

Item P-629-8.1 Thermoplastic coal tar emulsion [Micro-Surface Type A] [Micro-Surface Type B] [Sand Slurry Seal] [Spray Seal Coat with Sand Aggregate] [Spray Seal Coat without Sand Aggregate] – per square yard [square meter].

[Item P-629-8.2 Runway and High Speed Exit Taxiway Friction Testing – per lump sum] [Not required].

For spray seal versions only. Micro-surface and sand slurry versions do not require friction testing

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM International (ASTM)

ASTM D36	Standard Test Method for Softening Point of Bitumen (Ring-and-Ball Apparatus)
ASTM C131	Standard Test Method for Resistance to Degradation of Small-Size Coarse Aggregate by Abrasion and Impact in the Los Angeles Machine
ASTM C136	Standard Test Method for Sieve or Screen Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates

ASTM C1602	Standard Specification for Mixing Water Used in the Production of Hydraulic Cement Concrete
ASTM D140	Standard Practice for Sampling Bituminous Materials
ASTM D5340	Standard Test Method for Airport Pavement Condition Index Surveys
ASTM D5727	Standard Specification for Emulsified Refined Coal Tar (Mineral Colloid Type)
Advisory Circulars (AC)	
AC 150/5320-12	Measurement, Construction, and Maintenance of Skid-Resistant Airport Pavement Surfaces
AC 150/5320-17	Airfield Pavement Surface Evaluation and Rating (PASER) Manuals
Code of Federal Regulations (CFR)	
29 CFR Part 1910.1200	Hazard Communication
40 CFR	Protection of the Environment

END OF ITEM P-629

Page Intentionally Blank

Item P-630 Refined Coal Tar Emulsion Without Additives, Slurry Seal Surface Treatment

DESCRIPTION

This surface treatment is for apron locations serving airplanes 60,000 lbs (27216 kg) or less that need a fuel resistant surface treatment.

Consult local and state environmental/safety regulations. Many locations prohibit the use of coal tar products. The Engineer must verify the selected materials comply with federal, state, and local authority requirements.

630-1.1 This item shall consist of a mixture of emulsified asphalt, mineral aggregate, and water properly proportioned, mixed, and spread on an asphalt pavement surface, including airport pavements serving [small] airplanes [12,500 lbs (5670 kg) or less,] roads, and other general applications. The purpose of this refined coal tar emulsion product is to provide a fuel-resistant surface where pavements are subjected to fuel spills. The application of the surface treatment shall be in accordance with these specifications and shall conform to the dimensions shown on the plans or as directed by the Resident Project Representative (RPR).

630-1.2 General. This item shall consist of a mixture of refined coal tar emulsion, mineral aggregate, and water properly proportioned, mixed, and applied as a slurry seal on new or existing (aged) asphalt concrete pavement.

MATERIALS

630-2.1 Refined coal tar emulsion. A refined coal tar emulsion prepared from a high temperature refined coal tar conforming to the requirements of ASTM D490 for grade 11-12. The use of oil and water gas tar is not allowed. Base refined coal tar emulsion must conform to all requirements of ASTM D5727.

The Contractor shall provide a copy of the manufacturer's Certificate of Analysis (COA) for the emulsified asphalt delivered to the project. If the asphalt emulsion is diluted at other than the manufacturer's facility, the Contractor shall provide a supplemental COA from an independent laboratory verifying the asphalt emulsion properties.

The COA shall be provided to and approved by the RPR before the emulsified asphalt is applied. The furnishing of the vendor's certified test report for the asphalt material shall not be interpreted as a basis for final acceptance. The manufacturer's COA may be subject to verification by testing the material delivered for use on the project.

a. Health, safety, and environment. The Contractor must provide a complete Safety Data Sheet (SDS) in accordance with U.S. Department of Labor, Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA), Regulations (Standards – 29 CFR), 1910.1200 which establishes the requirement and minimum information for the MSDS for hazardous materials. The MSDS, Section II, shall include the Chemical Abstracts Service (CAS) registry numbers for all applicable hazardous ingredients in the coal tar emulsion product. The Contractor must provide the manufacturer's certification that the product complies with the

Code of Federal Regulation (CFR) Title 40 – Protection of Environment. The manufacturer’s certification shall address compliance for Air Programs, Part 59, National Volatile Organic Compound Emission Standards for Consumer and Commercial Products (for the airport location) and Water Programs, Part 116, Designation of Hazardous Substances.

630-2.2 Aggregate. The aggregate shall be washed dry silica sand or boiler slag free of dust, trash, clay, organic materials or other deleterious substances. The aggregate shall meet the gradation requirements below when tested in accordance with ASTM C136. The refined coal tar emulsion supplier must give written approval of the aggregate used in the mix design.

Gradation of Aggregates*

Sieve Size		Percent Retained	
		Minimum	Maximum
#20 or coarser	850 µm	0	2
#30	600 µm	0	12
#40	425 µm	2	60
#50	300 µm	5	60
#70	212 µm	5	60
#100	150 µm	5	30
#140	106 µm	0	10
#200	75 µm	0	2
Finer than #200		0	0.3

* Table represents the maximum range of aggregate gradations.

630-2.3 Water. Water used in mixing or curing shall be from potable water sources and at least 50°F (10°C). Other sources shall be tested in accordance with ASTM C1602 prior to use. The pH of the water shall conform to the requirements of the coal tar emulsion manufacturer.

630-2.4 Crack sealant. Crack sealant shall be certified for compatibility with the refined coal tar emulsion by the manufacturer of the refined coal tar emulsion, and approved by the RPR.

630-2.5 Oil spot primer. Oil spot primer shall be certified for compatibility with the refined coal tar emulsion by the manufacturer of the refined coal tar emulsion, and approved by the RPR.

630-2.6 Pavement primer. Pavement primer shall be certified for compatibility with the refined coal tar emulsion by the manufacturer of the refined coal tar emulsion, and approved by the RPR.

COMPOSITION AND APPLICATION

630-3.1 Composition. The refined coal tar emulsion seal coat is to consist of a mixture of refined coal tar emulsion, water and aggregate, and be proportioned as shown in the table below titled “Composition of Mixture Per 100 Gallons (379 Liters) of Refined Coal Tar Emulsion.” The composition must have written approval of the coal tar emulsion manufacturer.

630-3.2 Quantities of materials per square yard (square meter). The Contractor shall submit the recommended formulation of water, emulsion, aggregate and application rate proposed for use to a testing laboratory together with sufficient materials to verify the formulation at least [] days prior to the start of operations. The mix design shall be within the range shown in the table below. No seal coat shall be

produced for payment until a mix has been approved by the RPR. The formulation shall pass the fuel resistance test in accordance with ASTM D5727.

The mix formula for each mixture shall be in effect until modified in writing by the RPR.

Improper formulations of coal tar pitch emulsion seal produce coatings that crack prematurely or do not adhere properly to the pavement surface. A minimum of five (5) days is recommended for job mix approval.

Composition of Mixture Per 100 Gallons (379 Liters) of Refined Coal Tar Emulsion

Application	Refined Coal Tar Emulsion Gallons (Liters)	Water Gallons (Liters)	Aggregate lb (km)	Formula Rate of Application of Mix per Square Yard (Square Meter)	
				Minimum Gallons (Liters)	Maximum Gallons (Liters)
Prime Coat (where required) as specified by the coal tar emulsion manufacturer					
1st Seal Coat	100 (379)	25-30 (95-114)	300-500 (136-228)	0.12 (0.54)	0.17 (0.77)
2nd Seal Coat	100 (379)	25-30 (95-114)	300-500 (136-228)	0.12 (0.54)	0.17 (0.77)

The numbers shown in the table represent the maximum recommended range of values. In all cases, the refined coal tar emulsion supplier is to give written approval of specific composition numbers to be used in the mix design.

Some specifications covering this type of coating have allowed sand loadings in excess of 10 pounds per gallon (1.2 kg/L) of refined coal tar emulsion. These coatings have not performed well in the field due to poor fuel resistance and loss of adhesion and are not recommended.

Additional coats may be specified for greater durability.

630-3.3 Application rate. Application rates are not to exceed 0.17 gal/yd²/coat (0.77 liters/m²/coat), and at no time are total coats to exceed 0.51 gal/yd² (2.3 liters/m²).

630-3.4 Control strip. Prior to full production, the Contractor shall prepare a quantity of mixture in the proportions shown in the approved mix design sufficient to place a control strip a minimum of 250 square yard (209 m²) at the rate specified in the job mix formula. The test area shall be designated by the RPR and will be located on a representative section of the pavement to be seal coated. Separate control strips by a minimum of 200 feet between sections. The actual application rate will be determined by the RPR during placement of the control strip and will depend on the condition of the pavement surface.

The control strip shall be used to verify the adequacy of the mix design and to determine the application rate. The same equipment and method of operations shall be used on the control strip as will be used on the remainder of the work.

If the control strip proves to be unsatisfactory, the necessary adjustments to the job mix formula, mix composition, application rate, placement operations, and equipment shall be made. Additional control strips shall be placed and evaluated, if required. Full production shall not begin without the RPR's approval. Acceptable control strips shall be paid for in accordance with paragraph 630-7.1.

A qualified manufacturer's representative shall be present in the field to assist the Contractor in applying control areas and/or control strips to determine the optimum application rate of both emulsion and sand.

The control strip affords the Contractor and the Engineer an opportunity to determine the quality of the mixture in place as well as the performance of the equipment.

The application rate depends on the surface texture.

If operational conditions preclude placement of a control strip on the pavement to be treated, it may be applied on a pavement with similar surface texture.

The only test required on the composite mix placed in the field is the viscosity test. The fuel resistance test may be specified; however, this test takes 96 hours to run.

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

630-4.1 Weather limitations. The seal coat shall not be applied when the surface is wet or when the humidity or impending weather conditions will not allow proper curing. The seal coat shall be applied only when the atmospheric or pavement temperature is 50°F (10°C) and rising and is expected to remain above 50°F (10°C) for 24 hours, unless otherwise directed by the RPR.

630-4.2 Equipment and tools. The Contractor shall furnish all equipment, tools, and machinery necessary for the performance of the work.

a. Distributors. Distributors or spray units used for the spray application of the seal coat shall be self-propelled and capable of uniformly applying 0.12 to 0.55 gallons per square yard (0.54 to 2.5 liters per square meter) of material over the required width of application. Distributors shall be equipped with removable manhole covers, tachometers, pressure gauges, and volume-measuring devices.

The mix tank shall have a mechanically powered, full-sweep, mixer with sufficient power to move and homogeneously mix the entire contents of the tank.

The distributor shall be equipped with a positive placement pump so that a constant pressure can be maintained on the mixture to the spray nozzles.

b. Mixing equipment. The mixing machine shall have a continuous flow mixing unit capable of accurately delivering a predetermined proportion of aggregate, water, and emulsion, and of discharging the thoroughly mixed product on a continuous basis. The mixing unit shall be capable of thoroughly blending all ingredients together and discharging the material to the spreader box without segregation.

c. Spreading equipment. Spreading equipment shall be a mechanical-type squeegee distributor attached to the mixing machine, equipped with flexible material in contact with the surface to prevent loss of slurry from the spreader box. It shall be maintained to prevent loss of slurry on varying grades and

adjusted to assure uniform spread. There shall be a lateral control device and a flexible strike-off capable of being adjusted to lay the slurry at the specified rate of application. The spreader box shall have an adjustable width. The box shall be kept clean; coal tar emulsion and aggregate build-up on the box shall not be permitted.

d. Hand squeegee or brush application. The use of hand spreading application shall be restricted to places not accessible to the mechanized equipment or to accommodate neat trim work at curbs, etc. Material that is applied by hand shall meet the same standards as that applied by machine.

e. Calibration. The Contractor shall furnish all equipment, materials and labor necessary to calibrate the equipment. It shall be calibrated to assure that it will produce and apply a mix that conforms to the job mix formula. Commercial equipment should be provided with a method of calibration by the manufacturer. All calibrations shall be made with the approved job materials prior to applying the seal coat to the pavement. A copy of the calibration test results shall be furnished to the RPR.

630-4.3 Preparation of asphalt pavement surfaces. Clean pavement surface immediately prior to placing the seal coat by sweeping, flushing well with water leaving no standing water, or a combination of both, so that it is free of dust, dirt, grease, vegetation, oil or any type of objectionable surface film. Remove oil or grease that has not penetrated the asphalt pavement by scraping or by scrubbing with a detergent, then wash thoroughly with clean water. After cleaning, treat these areas with the oil spot primer. Any additional surface preparation, such as crack repair, shall be in accordance with Item P-101, paragraph 101-3.6.

630-4.4 Mixing. Blend the coal tar emulsion mixture in the equipment described in paragraph 630-4.2 using the ingredients described in paragraph 630-3.2. The mixing must produce a smooth homogeneous mixture of uniform consistency. (Consult coal tar emulsion supplier for its recommended order of addition of the ingredients.) During the entire mixing and application process, no breaking, segregating or hardening of the emulsion, nor balling or lumping of the sand is to be permitted. Continue to agitate the seal coat mixture in the mixing tank at all times prior to and during application so that a consistent mix is available for application.

Small additional increments of water may be needed to provide a workable consistency, but in no case is the water content to exceed the specified amount.

630-4.5 Application of slurry seal surface treatment. The aggregate filled slurry seal surface treatment shall be applied at a uniform rate determined in paragraphs 630-3.2 and 630-3.3.

In order to provide maximum adhesion, the pavement shall be dampened with a fog spray of water if recommended by the supplier. No standing water shall remain on the surface.

If a prime coat is required, mix and apply the prime coat as specified in paragraph 630-3.2.

Apply the first coat uniformly to obtain the rate determined in paragraph 630-3.4.

Each coat shall be allowed to dry and cure initially before applying any subsequent coats. The initial drying shall allow evaporation of water of the applied mixture, resulting in the coating being able to sustain light foot traffic. The initial curing shall enable the mixture to withstand vehicle traffic without damage to the seal coat.

Apply the second coat in the same manner as outlined for the first coat.

Additional coats shall be applied over the entire surface as directed by the RPR.

The finished surface shall present a uniform texture.

The final coat shall be allowed to dry a minimum of eight hours in dry daylight conditions before opening to traffic, and initially cure enough to support vehicular traffic without damage to the seal coat.

Where marginal weather conditions exist during the eight-hour drying time, additional drying time shall be required. The length of time shall be as specified by the supplier. The surface shall be checked after the additional drying time for trafficability before opening the section to vehicle traffic.

Where striping is required, the striping paint used shall meet the requirements of Item P-620, shall be compatible with the seal coat and as recommended by the coal tar emulsion manufacturer.

QUALITY CONTROL

630-5.1 Contractor's certification. The Contractor shall furnish the manufacturer's certification that each consignment of emulsion shipped to the project meets the requirements of ASTM D5727, except that the water content shall not exceed 50%. The certification shall also indicate the solids and ash content of the emulsion and the date the tests were conducted. The certification shall be delivered to the RPR prior to the beginning of work. The manufacturer's certification for the emulsion shall not be interpreted as a basis for final acceptance. Any certification received shall be subject to verification by testing samples received for project use.

The Contractor shall also furnish a certification demonstrating a minimum of three years' experience in the application of coal tar emulsion seal coats.

630-5.2 Sampling. A minimum of one sample per day shall be tested for the properties in the table above titled "Composition of Mixture Per 100 Gallons (379 Liters) of Refined Coal Tar Emulsion." A random sample of approximately one-quart of the composite mix will be obtained daily by the Contractor and stored in a glass container. The containers shall be sealed against contamination and retained in storage by the Owner for a period of six months. Samples shall be stored at room temperature and not be subjected to freezing temperatures.

A sample of undiluted coal tar emulsion shall be obtained from each consignment shipped to the job.

630-5.3 Records. The Contractor shall maintain an accurate record of each batch of materials used in the formulation of the seal coat and provide the documentation to the RPR daily.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

630-6.1 The refined coal tar emulsion shall be measured by the [gallon (liter)] [ton (kg)]. Only the actual quantity of undiluted refined coal tar emulsion will be measured for payment.

630-6.2 Aggregate shall be measured by the ton (kg) of dry aggregate.

BASIS OF PAYMENT

630-7.1 Payment shall be made at the contract unit price per [gallon (liter)] [ton (kg)] for the refined coal tar emulsion and at the contract price per ton (kg) for aggregate.

630-7.2 Payment shall be made at the contract unit price per ton (kg) for aggregate.

These prices shall be full compensation for furnishing all materials, preparing, mixing, and applying these materials, and for all labor, equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete the item.

Payment will be made under:

Item P-630-7.1	Refined Coal Tar Emulsion for Slurry Coat - per [gallon (liter)] [ton (kg)]

Item P-630-7.2	Aggregate - per ton (kg) of dry aggregate

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM International (ASTM)

ASTM C67	Standard Test Method for Sampling and Testing Brick and Structural Clay Tile
ASTM C136	Standard Test Method for Sieve or Screen Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates
ASTM C1602	Standard Specification for Mixing Water Used in the Production of Hydraulic Cement Concrete
ASTM D490	Standard Specification for Road Tar
ASTM D3699	Standard Specification for Kerosine
ASTM D5727	Standard Specification for Emulsified Refined Coal Tar (Mineral Colloid Type)

Code of Federal Regulations (CFR)

29 CFR Part 1910.1200	Hazard Communication
40 CFR	Protection of the Environment

END OF ITEM P-630

Page Intentionally Blank

Item P-631 Refined Coal Tar Emulsion with Additives, Slurry Seal Surface Treatment**DESCRIPTION**

This surface treatment is for apron locations serving airplanes 60,000 lbs (27216 kg) or less that need a fuel resistant surface treatment.

Consult local and state environmental/safety regulations. Many locations prohibit the use of coal tar products. The Engineer must verify the selected materials comply with federal, state, and local authority requirements.

631-1.1 This item shall consist of a mixture of emulsified asphalt, mineral aggregate, and water properly proportioned, mixed, and spread on an asphalt pavement surface, including airport pavements serving [small] airplanes [12,500 lbs (5670 kg) or less,] roads, and other general applications. The purpose of this refined coal tar emulsion product is to provide a fuel-resistant surface where pavements are subjected to fuel spills. The application of the surface treatment shall be in accordance with these specifications and shall conform to the dimensions shown on the plans or as directed by the Resident Project Representative (RPR).

631-1.2 General. This item shall consist of a mixture of refined coal tar emulsion, mineral aggregate, additives, and water properly proportioned, mixed and applied as a slurry seal on new or existing (aged) asphalt concrete pavement.

MATERIALS

631-2.1 Refined coal tar emulsion. A refined coal tar emulsion prepared from a high temperature refined coal tar conforming to the requirements of ASTM D490 for grade 11-12. The use of oil and water gas tar is not allowed. Base refined coal tar emulsion must conform to all requirements of ASTM D5727.

The Contractor shall provide a copy of the manufacturer's Certificate of Analysis (COA) for the emulsified asphalt delivered to the project. If the asphalt emulsion is diluted at other than the manufacturer's facility, the Contractor shall provide a supplemental COA from an independent laboratory verifying the asphalt emulsion properties.

The COA shall be provided to and approved by the RPR before the emulsified asphalt is applied. The furnishing of the vendor's certified test report for the asphalt material shall not be interpreted as a basis for final acceptance. The manufacturer's COA may be subject to verification by testing the material delivered for use on the project.

a. Health, safety, and environment. The Contractor must provide a complete Safety Data Sheet (SDS) in accordance with U.S. Department of Labor, Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA), Regulations (Standards – 29 CFR, 1910.1200) which establishes the requirement and minimum information for the MSDS for hazardous materials. The MSDS, Section II, shall include the Chemical Abstracts Service (CAS) registry numbers for all applicable hazardous ingredients in the coal tar emulsion product. The Contractor must provide the manufacturer's certification that the product complies with the

Code of Federal Regulation (CFR) Title 40 – Protection of Environment. The manufacturer’s certification shall address compliance for Air Programs, Part 59, National Volatile Organic Compound Emission Standards for Consumer and Commercial Products (for the airport location) and Water Programs, Part 116, Designation of Hazardous Substances.

631-2.2 Aggregate. The aggregate shall be washed dry silica sand or boiler slag free of dust, trash, clay, organic materials or other deleterious substances. The aggregate shall meet the gradation in Table 1, when tested in accordance with ASTM C136.

Table 1. Gradation of Aggregates*

Sieve Size		Percent Retained	
		Minimum	Maximum
#20 or coarser	850 µm	0	2
#30	600 µm	0	12
#40	425 µm	2	60
#50	300 µm	5	60
#70	212 µm	5	60
#100	150 µm	5	30
#140	106 µm	0	10
#200	75 µm	0	2
Finer than #200	<75 µm	0	0.3

* Table 1 represents the maximum range of aggregate gradations. In all cases the refined coal tar emulsion supplier is to give written approval of the aggregate used in the mix design.

631-2.3 Additive. As specified by the coal tar emulsion manufacturer.

Additives are one or more ingredients that can be added to a specific refined coal tar emulsion, water and/or sand mixture to improve the coatings final properties. These properties include durability, fuel resistance, drying time, color uniformity, and/or length of cure time. Additives may also be used to modify the wet mixture’s viscosity to improve aggregate suspension.

The type of additive to be used should be specified by the coal tar emulsion manufacturer and will depend on which final properties are desired.

The Engineer should specify the desired properties.

631-2.4 Water. Water used in mixing or curing shall be from potable water sources and at least 50°F (10°C). Other sources shall be tested in accordance with ASTM C1602 prior to use.

631-2.5 Crack sealant. Crack sealant shall be certified for compatibility with the refined coal tar emulsion by the manufacturer of the refined coal tar emulsion, and approved by the RPR.

631-2.6 Oil spot primer. Oil spot primer shall be certified for compatibility with the refined coal tar emulsion by the manufacturer of the refined coal tar emulsion, and approved by the RPR.

631-2.7 Pavement primer. Pavement primer shall be certified for compatibility with the refined coal tar emulsion by the manufacturer of the refined coal tar emulsion, and approved by the RPR.

COMPOSITION AND APPLICATION

631-3.1 Composition. The refined coal tar emulsion seal coat is to consist of a mixture of refined coal tar emulsion, water, additive and aggregate, and be proportioned as shown in Table 2. The composition must have written approval of the coal tar emulsion manufacturer.

631-3.2 Quantities of materials per square yard (square meter). The Contractor shall submit the recommended formulation of water, emulsion, aggregate and application rate proposed for use to a testing laboratory together with sufficient materials to verify the formulation at least [] days prior to the start of operations. The mix design shall be within the range shown in the below table. No seal coat shall be produced for payment until a mix has been approved by the RPR. The formulation shall pass the fuel resistance test in accordance with ASTM D5727.

The mix for each mixture shall be in effect until modified in writing by the RPR.

Improper formulations of coal tar pitch emulsion seal produce coatings that crack prematurely or do not adhere properly to the pavement surface. A minimum of five (5) days is recommended for job mix approval.

Table 2. Composition of Mixture Per 100 Gallons (379 Liters) of Refined Coal Tar Emulsion

Application	Refined Coal Tar Emulsion Gallons (Liters)	Water Gallons (Liters)	Additive Gallons (Liters)	Aggregate Pounds (Liters)	Formula Rate of Application of Mix per Square Yard (Liters)	
					Minimum Gallons (Liters)	Maximum Gallons (Liters)
Prime Coat (where required) as specified by the coal tar emulsion manufacturer						
1st Seal Coat	100 (379)	25-70 (95-265)	2-6 (7.6-22.7)	300-700 (136-318)	0.12 (0.54)	0.20 (0.91)
2nd Seal Coat	100 (379)	25-70 (95-265)	2-6 (7.6-22.7)	300-700 (136-318)	0.12 (0.54)	0.20 (0.91)

The numbers shown in the table represent the maximum recommended range of values. In all cases, the refined coal tar emulsion supplier is to give written approval of specific composition numbers to be used in the mix design.

Some specifications covering this type of coating have allowed sand loadings in excess of 10 pounds per gallon of refined coal tar emulsion. These coatings have not performed well in the field due to poor fuel resistance and loss of adhesion and are not recommended.

631-3.3 Application rate. Application rates are not to exceed 0.20 gal/yd²/coat (0.91 liters/m²/coat), and at no time are total coats to exceed 0.51 gal/yd² (2.3 liters/m²).

631-3.4 Control strip. Prior to full production, the Contractor shall prepare a quantity of mixture in the proportions shown in the approved mix design. The amount of mixture shall be sufficient to place a control strip a minimum of 250 square yard (209 m²) at the rate specified in the job mix formula. Separate test sections by a minimum of 200 feet between sections. The test area will be designated by the RPR on a representative section of the pavement to be seal coated. The actual application rate will be determined by the RPR during placement of the control strip and will depend on the condition of the pavement surface.

The control strip shall be used to verify the adequacy of the mix design and to determine the application rate. The same equipment and method of operations shall be used on the control strip that will be used on the remainder of the work.

If the control strip should prove to be unsatisfactory, the necessary adjustments to the job mix formula, mix composition, application rate, placement operations, and equipment shall be made. Additional control strips shall be placed and evaluated, if required. Full production shall not begin without the RPR's approval. Acceptable control strips shall be paid for in accordance with paragraph 631-7.1.

A qualified manufacturer's representative shall be present in the field to assist the Contractor in applying control areas and/or control strips to determine the optimum application rate of both emulsion and sand.

The control strip(s) affords the Contractor and the Engineer an opportunity to determine the quality of the mixture in place as well as the performance of the equipment.

The application rate depends on the surface texture.

If operational conditions preclude placement of a control strip on the pavement to be treated, it may be applied on a pavement with similar surface texture.

The only test required on the composite mix placed in the field is the viscosity test.

The fuel resistance test may be specified; however, this test takes 96 hours to run.

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

631-4.1 Weather limitations. The seal coat shall not be applied when the surface is wet or when the humidity or impending weather conditions will not allow proper curing. The seal coat shall be applied only when the atmospheric or pavement temperature is 50°F (10°C) and rising and is expected to remain above 50°F (10°C) for 24 hours, unless otherwise directed by the RPR.

631-4.2 Equipment and tools. The Contractor shall furnish all equipment, tools, and machinery necessary for the performance of the work.

a. Distributors. Distributors or spray units used for the spray application of the seal coat shall be self-propelled and capable of uniformly applying 0.12 to 0.55 gallons per square yard (0.54 to 2.5 liters per square meter) of material over the required width of application. Distributors shall be equipped with removable manhole covers, tachometers, pressure gauges, and volume-measuring devices.

The mix tank shall have a mechanically powered, full-sweep, mixer with sufficient power to move and homogeneously mix the entire contents of the tank.

The distributor shall be equipped with a positive placement pump so that a constant pressure can be maintained on the mixture to the spray nozzles.

b. Mixing equipment. The mixing machine shall have a continuous flow mixing unit capable of accurately delivering a predetermined proportion of aggregate, water, and emulsion, and of discharging the thoroughly mixed product on a continuous basis. The mixing unit shall be capable of thoroughly blending all ingredients together and discharging the material to the spreader box without segregation.

c. Spreading equipment. Spreading equipment shall be a mechanical-type squeegee distributor attached to the mixing machine, equipped with flexible material in contact with the surface to prevent loss of slurry from the spreader box. It shall be maintained to prevent loss of slurry on varying grades and adjusted to assure uniform spread. There shall be a lateral control device and a flexible strike-off capable of being adjusted to lay the slurry at the specified rate of application. The spreader box shall have an adjustable width. The box shall be kept clean; coal tar emulsion and aggregate build-up on the box shall not be permitted.

d. Hand squeegee or brush application. The use of hand spreading application shall be restricted to places not accessible to the mechanized equipment or to accommodate neat trim work at curbs, etc. Material that is applied by hand shall meet the same standards as that applied by machine.

e. Calibration. The Contractor shall furnish all equipment, materials and labor necessary to calibrate the equipment. It shall be calibrated to assure that it will produce and apply a mix that conforms to the job mix formula. Commercial equipment should be provided with a method of calibration by the manufacturer. All calibrations shall be made with the approved job materials prior to applying the seal coat to the pavement. A copy of the calibration test results shall be furnished to the RPR.

631-4.3 Preparation of asphalt pavement surfaces. Clean pavement surface immediately prior to placing the seal coat by sweeping, flushing well with water leaving no standing water, or a combination of both, so that it is free of dust, dirt, grease, vegetation, oil or any type of objectionable surface film. Remove oil or grease that has not penetrated the asphalt pavement by scraping or by scrubbing with a detergent, then wash thoroughly with clean water. After cleaning, treat these areas with the oil spot primer. Any additional surface preparation, such as crack repair, shall be in accordance with Item P-101, paragraph 101-3.6.

631-4.4 Mixing. Blend the coal tar emulsion mixture in the equipment described in paragraph 631-4.2 using the ingredients described in Table 2. The mixing must produce a smooth homogeneous mixture of uniform consistency. (Consult coal tar emulsion supplier for its recommended order of addition of the ingredients.) During the entire mixing and application process, no breaking, segregating or hardening of the emulsion, nor balling or lumping of the sand is to be permitted. Continue to agitate the seal coating mixture in the mixing tank at all times prior to and during application so that a consistent mix is available for application.

Small additional increments of water may be needed to provide a workable consistency, but in no case is the water content to exceed the specified amount.

631-4.5 Application of slurry seal surface treatment. The aggregate filled slurry seal surface treatment shall be applied at a uniform rate determined in paragraph 631-3.4.

In order to provide maximum adhesion, the pavement shall be dampened with a fog spray of water if recommended by the supplier. No standing water shall remain on the surface.

If a prime coat is required, mix and apply the prime coat as specified in paragraph 631-3.2.

Apply the first coat uniformly to obtain the rate determined in paragraph 631-3.4.

Each coat shall be allowed to dry and cure initially before applying any subsequent coats. The initial drying shall allow evaporation of water of the applied mixture, resulting in the coating being able to

sustain light foot traffic. The initial curing shall enable the mixture to withstand vehicle traffic without damage to the seal coat.

Apply the second coat in the same manner as outlined for the first coat.

Additional coats shall be applied over the entire surface as directed by the RPR.

The finished surface shall present a uniform texture.

The final coat shall be allowed to dry a minimum of eight hours in dry daylight conditions before opening to traffic, and initially cure enough to support vehicular traffic without damage to the seal coat.

Where marginal weather conditions exist during the eight-hour drying time, additional drying time shall be required. The length of time shall be as specified by the supplier. The surface shall be checked after the additional drying time for trafficability before opening the section to vehicle traffic.

Where striping is required, the striping paint used shall meet the requirements of Item P-620, shall be compatible with the seal coat and as recommended by the coal tar emulsion manufacturer.

QUALITY CONTROL (QC)

631-5.1 Contractor's certification. The Contractor shall furnish the manufacturer's certification that each consignment of emulsion shipped to the project meets the requirements of ASTM D5727, except that the water content shall not exceed 50%. The certification shall also indicate the solids and ash content of the emulsion and the date the tests were conducted. The certification shall be delivered to the RPR prior to the beginning of work. The manufacturer's certification for the emulsion shall not be interpreted as a basis for final acceptance. Any certification received shall be subject to verification by testing samples received for project use.

The Contractor shall also furnish a certification demonstrating a minimum of three years of experience in the application of coal tar emulsion seal coats.

631-5.2 Sampling. A minimum of one sample per day shall be tested for the properties of Table 2. A random sample of approximately one-quart of the composite mix will be obtained daily by the Contractor and stored in a glass container. The containers shall be sealed against contamination and retained in storage by the Owner for a period of six months. Samples shall be stored at room temperature and not be subjected to freezing temperatures.

A sample of undiluted coal tar emulsion shall be obtained from each consignment shipped to the job.

631-5.3 Records. The Contractor shall maintain an accurate record of each batch of materials used in the formulation of the seal coat and provide the documentation to the RPR daily.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

631-6.1 The refined coal tar emulsion with additives shall be measured by the [gallon (liter)] [ton (kg)]. Only the actual quantity of undiluted refined coal tar emulsion with additives will be measured for payment.

631-6.2 Aggregate shall be measured by the ton (kg) of dry aggregate.

BASIS OF PAYMENT

631-7.1 Payment shall be made at the contract unit price per [gallon (liter)] [ton (kg)] for the refined coal tar emulsion with additives and at the contract price per ton (kg) for aggregate.

631-7.2 Payment shall be made at the contract unit price per ton (kg) for dry aggregate.

These prices shall be full compensation for furnishing all materials, preparing, mixing, and applying these materials, and for all labor, equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete the item.

Payment will be made under:

Item P-631-7.1	Refined Coal Tar Emulsion with Additives for Slurry Coat - per [gallon (liter)][ton (kg)]
Item P-631-7.2	Aggregate - per ton (kg) of dry aggregate.

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM International (ASTM)

ASTM C67	Standard Test Method for Sampling and Testing Brick and Structural Clay Tile
ASTM C136	Standard Test Method for Sieve or Screen Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates
ASTM C1602	Standard Specification for Mixing Water Used in the Production of Hydraulic Cement Concrete
ASTM D490	Standard Specification for Road Tar
ASTM D3699	Standard Specification for Kerosine
ASTM D5727	Standard Specification for Emulsified Refined Coal Tar (Mineral Colloid Type)

Code of Federal Regulations (CFR)

29 CFR Part 1910.1200	Hazard Communication
40 CFR	Protection of the Environment

END OF ITEM P-631

Page Intentionally Blank

Item P-632 Asphalt Pavement Rejuvenation

DESCRIPTION

Asphalt pavement rejuvenation is for use on any pavements on which aircraft do not operate including shoulders, overruns, roads, and parking areas. It may be used on airport pavements, except runways and acute-angled exit taxiways, at airports serving airplanes less than 60,000 lbs (27216 kg).

Asphalt Pavement Rejuvenation, commonly called a “fog seal,” can be considered for use on pavements with low to moderate weathered surfaces as defined by ASTM D5340.

Prior to the use of P-632, the Engineer must check with federal, state, and local authorities on the use of products that contain volatile organic compounds (VOC) and/or coal tar. The Engineer must verify the selected materials comply with authority requirements.

The Engineer must verify the selected materials comply with federal, state, and local authority requirements.

632-1.1 This item shall consist of a rejuvenator properly proportioned, mixed, and spread on an asphalt pavement surface, including airport pavements serving small airplanes 12,500 lbs (5670 kg) or less, roads, and other general applications. The application of the rejuvenator shall be in accordance with these specifications and shall conform to the dimensions shown on the plans or as directed by the Resident Project Representative (RPR).

The term “rejuvenation product” will carry the same connotation as the term “rejuvenator” or “rejuvenator/sealer.” The term “rejuvenation product” will be used throughout this specification for the purpose of recognizing rejuvenation performance for each class of rejuvenation products.

632-1.2 Asphalt pavement rejuvenation. This item governs the application of an asphalt pavement rejuvenation product applied to a previously placed asphalt surface in accordance with these specifications, as shown on the plans, or as directed by the RPR. The purpose of this product is rejuvenation of the upper 3/8 inch (9 mm) of oxidized or otherwise aged asphalt binder without causing an unacceptable reduction in the friction characteristics (skid resistance) of the pavement section. Additionally, the rejuvenation product should not introduce unacceptable pavement distresses such as raveling, high temperature deformation (rutting), and loss of strength. The rejuvenation product should not contribute to accelerated deterioration of the pavement.

Project Selection. The performance of a rejuvenation product is contingent on the pavement condition at the time of application. The pavement condition survey provides a measure of the pavement condition by analyzing the type, amount, and severity of the distresses, and by determining the pavement condition index (PCI) in

accordance with ASTM D5340. A typical asphalt pavement candidate for rejuvenation is one without structural, load associated distresses (or has provisions to correct these distresses) and with low to moderate environmental, temperature associated distresses. The recommended corrected PCI should be equal to or greater than 70 to qualify as a candidate for asphalt rejuvenation.

MATERIALS

632-2.1 Rejuvenation product.

a. The rejuvenation product must be capable of achieving the minimum changes in the asphalt binder properties shown in Tables 1 or 2 after proper application and field exposure.

b. The binder extracted per ASTM D2172, Method A and recovered per ASTM D1856 or D5404 from samples of the upper 3/8 inch (9 mm) of the surface of the treated pavement must exhibit the percent decrease in absolute viscosity or complex viscosity and corresponding phase angle increase listed in Tables 1 or 2, when compared to the values from adjacent untreated samples from the same pavement in the prescribed timeframe.

c. The submittal must include, from previous projects, independent laboratory test results accredited by an American Association of State Highway Transportation Officials (AASHTO) Materials Reference Laboratory (AMRL). The test results should verify the ability of the proposed rejuvenation product to achieve the minimum changes in asphalt binder properties shown in Table 1 or 2.

Table 1. Asphalt Pavement Three (3) Years or Less in Age

Item	Property of Recovered Binder ²	Requirement	Test Method
1	Absolute Viscosity _{60°C} , P	≥ 25% Decrease ²	ASTM D2171
2a	Complex Modulus _{60°C} , G*		AASHTO T315
2b	Viscosity _{60°C} , $\eta = G^* / \omega$ Pa·s		
2c	Phase Angle _{60°C} , δ , °	Report	

Table 2. Asphalt Pavement More than Three (3) Years in Age

Item	Property of Recovered Binder ²	Requirement	Test Method
1	Absolute Viscosity _{60°C} , P	≥ 40% Decrease ²	ASTM D2171
2a	Complex Modulus _{60°C} , G*, kPa		AASHTO T315
2b	Viscosity _{60°C} , $\eta^* = G^* / \omega$ Pa·s		
2c	Phase Angle _{60°C} , δ , °	Report	

² Procedures: Sample collection for application and acceptance as noted in this specification. Sample weights and measure by ASTM D3549; Extraction by: ASTM D2172, Method A using toluene (conditioning to remove moisture will not be accomplished); Recovery by: ASTM D1856 (Abson) or ASTM D5404 (Roto-Vap); and binder extraction, recovery and testing within 48 hours of obtaining pavement cores or equivalent surface area samples.

d. The Contractor shall provide a copy of the manufacturer's Certificate of Analysis (COA) for the emulsified asphalt delivered to the project. If the asphalt emulsion is diluted at other than the manufacturer's facility, the Contractor shall provide a supplemental COA from an independent laboratory verifying the asphalt emulsion properties.

The COA shall be provided to and approved by the RPR before the emulsified asphalt is applied. The furnishing of the vendor's certified test report for the asphalt material shall not be interpreted as a basis for final acceptance. The manufacturer's COA may be subject to verification by testing the material delivered for use on the project.

632-2.2 Rejuvenation documentation/certification.

a. Performance. The submittal must include documentation of previous use and test data conclusively demonstrating that the rejuvenation product has been used successfully for a period of two or more years by other user agencies; and that the asphalt rejuvenation product has been proven to perform in a manner equivalent to this specification, as demonstrated through field testing by/independent testing laboratory as to the required change in the recovered asphalt binder properties. Testing data must be submitted indicating such product performance from at least two projects representative of two different asphalt mix designs, each being tested for a minimum of two years to ensure reasonable longevity of the treatment, as well as product consistency. The performance documentation must be presented from a geographically similar climatic region of the United States as that for this project, for example, wet-warm, wet-cool, dry-warm, and dry-cool, and contain data specified in paragraph 632-2.1.c.

b. Friction characteristics. [Not required.] [The Contractor shall submit to the RPR friction tests, from previous airport projects which used the rejuvenation product in a similar environment, in accordance with AC 150/5320-12, at 40 mph (65 km/h) wet, showing, as a minimum; friction value of pavement surface prior to sealant application; two values, tested between 24 and 96 hours after application, with a minimum of 24 hours between tests; and one value tested at no less than 180 days or greater than 360 days after the application. The results of the two tests between 24 and 96 hours shall indicate friction is increasing at a rate to obtain similar friction value of the pavement surface prior to application, and the long-term test shall indicate no apparent adverse effect with time relative to friction values and existing pavement surface. The Contractor shall submit to the RPR a list of airports which meet the above requirements, as well as technical details on application rates, aggregate rates, and point of contact at these airports to confirm use and success of sealer. Friction tests shall be submitted from no less than one of the airports on the list and each set of tests described above, must be from one project.

Submittals without the required friction performance will not be approved. Friction tests performed on this project cannot be used as a substitute of this requirement.]

c. Health, safety, and environment. The Contractor must provide a complete Safety Data Sheet (SDS) in accordance with U.S. Department of Labor, Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA), Regulations (Standards – 29 CFR), 1910.1200 which establishes the requirement and minimum information for the SDS for hazardous materials. The SDS, Section II, shall include the Chemical Abstracts Service (CAS) registry numbers for all applicable hazardous ingredients in the rejuvenation product. The Contractor must provide the manufacturer's certification that the rejuvenation product complies with the Code of Federal Regulation (CFR) Title 40 – Protection of Environment. The manufacturer's certification shall address compliance for Air Programs, Part 59, National Volatile

Organic Compound Emission Standards for Consumer and Commercial Products (for the airport location) and Water Programs, Part 116, Designation of Hazardous Substances.

APPLICATION RATE

632-3.1 Control areas and control strips. A qualified manufacturer's representative shall be present in the field to assist the Contractor in applying control areas and/or control strips to determine the appropriate application rate of the rejuvenation to be approved by the RPR.

If the Engineer has experience and is knowledgeable with the material, procedures, and equipment described in the specification for test areas described in paragraph 632-3.1, the varying application rates recommended by the qualified manufacturer's representative can be provided from a site visit where the representative observed pavement condition within one month prior to application.

The Contractor must place a series of test areas/sections at application rates as judged necessary by the manufacturer to establish the appropriate project application rates for the specific product. As a minimum, a test area/section is required for each different asphalt mix design identified in the project. Separate control strips by a minimum of 200 feet between sections. The same equipment and method of operation shall be utilized on the control area(s) and/or control strip(s) as will be utilized on the remainder of the work.

The Contractor must select test areas/sections to obtain pavement cores or saw cut "slabs" (equivalent surface area samples) in accordance with paragraph 632-6.3. The pavement cores or equivalent surface area samples must be taken after application of the rejuvenation control strips is fully cured. The pavement cores shall be tested in accordance with Table 1 or 2, Item 1 and Item 2a, paragraph 632-2.1 for the purpose of determining a recommendation for the rejuvenation product application rates. The Contractor is responsible for all sampling and testing associated with the control strips.

For runway and taxiway surfaces, the Contractor shall place control strips to determine skid resistance. The skid resistance of the existing pavement shall be determined for each test areas/section with a continuous friction measuring equipment (CFME). Test areas shall be a minimum of 300 feet (90 m) long by 12 feet (3.6 m) wide, or width of anticipated application, whichever is greater. The area to be tested will be located on a representative section of the pavement to receive the surface treatment designated by the RPR. The test areas/sections should be placed under similar field conditions as anticipated for the actual application. The skid resistance test after application shall be at approximately the same location as the test done on the existing pavement. The Contractor may begin testing the skid resistance of control strips after application of the asphalt surface treatment has fully cured. Aircraft shall not be permitted on the runway or taxiway control strips until such time as the Contractor validates that its surface friction meets the minimum friction levels in AC 150/5320-12, Table 3-2 when tested at speeds of 40 and 60 mph (65 and 95 km/h) wet with approved CFME.

Full production shall not begin without the RPR's approval of an appropriate application rate(s). Acceptable test areas/sections shall be paid for in accordance with paragraph 632-8.1. Any pavement test areas/sections damaged by the surface treatment shall be removed and replaced as directed by the RPR at the Contractor's expense.

For projects calling for application of the surface treatment on runway and taxiway, the Engineer shall document skid resistance in accordance with AC 150/5320-12, Measurement, Construction, and Maintenance of Skid-Resistant Airport Pavement Surfaces, prior to full application.

The test areas/sections afford the Contractor and the Engineer an opportunity to determine the quality of the mixture in place as well as the performance of the equipment.

Climate/weather conditions may significantly affect cure time, i.e., the time necessary to achieve acceptable friction results.

If operational conditions preclude placement of a control strip on the pavement to be seal coated, it may be applied on a pavement with similar surface texture.

632-3.2 Approval. The Contractor and the RPR shall examine the control strips 24 hours after treatment to determine if the entire rejuvenation product has penetrated into the surface. Application rates that have not allowed full penetration into the pavement surface after 24 hours must not be permitted to be used for full production. The application rates for full production must be determined by the Contractor and approved by the RPR based on the Contractor's recommendation and observation of control strips and control strip data from paragraph 632-3.1.

CONSTRUCTION

632-4.1 Worker safety. The rejuvenation product must be handled with caution. The Contractor must obtain a SDS for the rejuvenation product and require workmen to follow the manufacturer's recommended safety precautions.

632-4.2 Weather limitations. The rejuvenation product must be applied only when the existing surface is dry and the weather forecast is in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations for application and curing. The rejuvenation product must not be applied during inclement weather or when rain or freezing temperatures are anticipated within 24 hours before or after application. If weather conditions interfere with application and/or curing, the RPR may at his discretion suspend the job or require remedial action as deemed necessary.

During application, account for wind drift. Cover existing buildings, structures, runway edge lights, taxiway edge lights, informational signs, retro-reflective marking and in-pavement duct markers as necessary to protect against overspray before applying the rejuvenation product. Should the rejuvenation product get on any light or marker fixture, promptly clean the fixture. If cleaning is not satisfactory to the RPR, the Contractor shall replace any light, sign or marker with equivalent equipment at no cost to the Owner.

632-4.3 Equipment. The Contractor must furnish all equipment and hardware necessary for the performance of the work. The rejuvenation product should be delivered in dedicated tankers and/or containers with agitating equipment and filters, per manufacturer's recommendations. The distributor must be designed and equipped in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations, but include as a minimum, the following characteristics:

a. Adequate heating capability for rapid heating of the rejuvenator to the proper application temperature.

- b. A positive displacement pump capable of pumping low viscosity material and providing a pre-selected constant pressure to deliver the specified rates of application.
- c. A full circulation spray bar and applicator that maintain proper nozzles, which provide the specified rate of application.
- d. A hooded spray bar and applicator that maintain proper nozzle height.
- e. A positive shut-off for the spray bar and a hand spray (with hose) equipped with a positive shut-off at the spray gun.
- f. A thermometer installed in the distributor tank to measure the temperature of the rejuvenation product at the time of the application.
- g. A speedometer calibrated to a minimum of tenths of miles per hour.
- h. A chart listing the capacity of the tank (in gallons (liters)) for each one inch (25 mm) of depth. A chart showing speed/pressure application rates must also be included.

632-4.4 Preparation of asphalt pavement surfaces. Clean pavement surface immediately prior to placing the seal coat so that it is free of dust, dirt, grease, vegetation, oil or any type of objectionable surface film. Remove oil or grease from the asphalt pavement by scrubbing with a detergent, washing thoroughly with clean water, and treating these areas with the oil spot primer. Any additional surface preparation, such as crack repair, shall be in accordance with P101-3.6.

632-4.5 Application of rejuvenation product.

a. Following preparation and subsequent inspection of the surface and consideration for skid resistance, the rejuvenation product shall be uniformly applied over the surface to be treated at the approved rate with an allowable variation from the approved rate of application of $\pm 5\%$, in accordance with ASTM D2995.

b. Materials shall be applied at the temperature recommended by the manufacturer.

To obtain uniform application of the material on the surface treated at the junction of previous and subsequent applications, heavy paper or cardboard, equivalent technique, must be spread on the surface at a sufficient distance back from the ends of each application so that the material may be started and stopped on the paper. Immediately after application, the building paper must be removed and properly disposed.

Areas missed by the distributor must be properly treated with the hand spray.

Following application of the rejuvenation product, the surface should not be disturbed for a period of at least 24 hours.

c. Other rejuvenation product application procedures include:

(1) Calibration test. Contractor must furnish all equipment, materials, and labor necessary to calibrate the asphalt distributor or other application equipment. Calibration must be made with approved job material and prior to applying the rejuvenation product to the prepared surface. Calibration of the asphalt distributor and the specialized asphalt spray applicator must be in accordance with ASTM D2995.

(2) Excess rejuvenation product removal. Manufactured sand, as approved by the RPR, must be provided by the Contractor at no additional costs and must be spread in sufficient quantity to

effectively blot up any excess rejuvenation product remaining on the treated pavement surface after 24 hours at no additional costs.

(3) Ponding and puddling of rejuvenation product. If low spots and depressions in the pavement surface cause ponding or puddling of the rejuvenation product, the pavement surface must be broomed with a broom drag. Brooming should continue until the pavement surface is free of any pools of excess material. Ponding and/or puddling must not cause excess pavement softening and/or additional distress. The RPR must inspect and approve areas after “brooming.”

(4) Excess runoff of rejuvenation product. The application rate should be reduced, and the RPR notified, if the surface grade of the pavement surface causes excessive runoff of the rejuvenation product. Additional rejuvenation product, if necessary, may be subsequently applied after the first application of material has penetrated into the pavement to achieve the required properties of the treated binder

(5) Insufficient rejuvenation product. When it is determined by the RPR that the actual application rate of the rejuvenation product is more than 5% below the approved application rate, subsequent applications of materials must be made to bring the actual application rate up to the approved rate; additional rejuvenation product must penetrate into the pavement surface within 24 hours after application. Multiple applications may be required at the discretion of the RPR, requiring additional pavement sampling and rejuvenation testing to assure compliance with Table 1 or 2 of paragraph 632-2.1.

632-4.6 Cure time remedial option – application of sand.

a. The Contractor must apply sand to the surface of the treated asphalt pavement if the rejuvenation product does not meet the cure time requirement and/or the frictional characteristics (skid resistance) have been reduced to an unacceptable level. An unacceptable level of frictional characteristics (skid resistance) is defined in paragraph 632-6.6.

b. The manufactured sand must be dry, hard, durable, free from clay, salt and foreign matter and well graded (100% passing #8 (2.36 mm) sieve and less than 10% passing #200 (75 μ m) sieve). The sand must be uniformly applied at a rate of 3.0 lb/yd² $\pm$ 0.5 lb/yd², rolled (as recommended by the Contractor and accepted by the RPR) into the treated surface and any surplus removed with a power broom, or as directed by the RPR. The Contractor is responsible for all materials, equipment, and costs associated with the application of sand.

c. All manufactured sand or approved substitute used during the treatment must be removed from the airport as soon as practical after treatment of a pavement and prior to opening any airfield runway, taxiway, etc. This should be accomplished by a combination of hand and mechanical sweeping. All turnouts must be cleaned of any sand to the satisfaction of the RPR. The Contractor is responsible for all materials, equipment, and costs associated with the application, removal and disposal of the sand.

d. If, after sand is swept and in the opinion of the RPR, a hazardous condition exists on the pavement, the Contractor must apply additional sand and sweep same immediately following reapplication. No additional compensation will be allowed for reapplication and removal of sand.

QUALITY CONTROL (QC)

632-5.1 Manufacturer representation. The Contractor must have a manufacturer’s authorized representative on the job site at the beginning of the work and during all rejuvenation product application. The manufacturer’s representative must have knowledge of the material, procedures, and equipment described in the specification and will be responsible for determining the application rates and must oversee the preparation and application of the rejuvenation product. Documentation of the manufacturer representative’s experience and knowledge for applying the rejuvenation product must be furnished to the RPR a minimum of 10 work days prior to placement of the control strips. The cost of the manufacturer’s representative will be included in the bid price.

The requirement for the Contractor to require a manufacturer's authorized representative on the job site at the beginning of the work and during all rejuvenation product application may be deleted, at the discretion of the Engineer. Past experience has demonstrated that improper application rates have resulted through subcontract agreements, and this decision must be predicated on the Engineer's ability to control selection and placement of the application rate under the Contract provisions.

632-5.2 QC plan. The Contractor must submit a QC plan to the RPR a minimum of 10 days prior to applying control strips in accordance with paragraph 632-3.1. The QC plan must address all items that affect the quality of the rejuvenation application including, but not limited to:

- a. Qualifications of personnel.
- b. Schedule for the project.
- c. Procedure to monitor the weather/temperature limitations.
- d. Inspection requirements including rejuvenation product, control strips, storage of rejuvenation product, preparation of the pavement surface, and equipment calibration.
- e. Provisions for obtaining, packaging and shipping acceptance samples and repair of the pavement.
- f. Provisions for sample testing, testing laboratory name, location, accreditation, contact person, all contact information, testing requested, and report on information.

632-5.3 Warranty. The Contractor must provide a manufacturer's/applicator warranty that the treated pavement will retain the lower binder properties of Table 1 or 2, for a period of two (2) years from the date of treatment. For compliance with the warranty, the Owner may obtain cores and perform tests in accordance with REJUVENATION ACCEPTANCE. The Contractor must further warrant that from the date the rejuvenation product was applied, the material will not flake, peel, chip, spall, nor otherwise contribute to or accelerate the aging of the pavement. The Contractor must reapply the rejuvenation product, as necessary, or provide remedial actions at no cost to the Owner, and/or refund all payments at the Owner's discretion. The RPR must designate and record an area of no less than 10 square yard (8.36 m²) of untreated and 10 square yards (8.36 m²) of treated pavement as the control strips for warranty testing. In the event a pay reduction, or no payment, is enforced, the warranty is rescinded.

REJUVENATION ACCEPTANCE

632-6.1 Product sampling. The RPR will take samples of the rejuvenation product proposed for use upon delivery of each shipment in accordance with ASTM D140 and store in accordance with the SDS, Section VII for a period of at least six months after payment in accordance with paragraph 632-8.1. Testing, as necessary, will be accomplished by the RPR to verify information provided by the SDS information.

632-6.2 Freight and weigh bills. The Contractor must furnish the RPR receipted bills when railroad shipments are made, and certified weigh bills when materials are received in any other manner, of the rejuvenation product used in the construction covered by the contract. The Contractor shall not remove rejuvenation product from the tank car or storage tank until the initial outage and temperature measurements have been taken by the RPR, nor shall the car or tank be released until the final outage has been taken by the RPR.

632-6.3 Field sampling procedures. Sampling of the pavement sections to be treated must be performed before and after the pavement has been treated with the rejuvenation product. The Contractor will be responsible for obtaining all pavement core samples or equivalent surface area samples as approved by the RPR for testing. At the discretion and approval of the RPR, the before samples collected and tested for application may suffice for before samples for acceptance.

a. At each sampling location, three (3) cores or equivalent surface area samples of the untreated pavement must be taken before the rejuvenation product is placed and three (3) cores or equivalent surface area samples of the treated pavement after application of the rejuvenation product must be taken. The before and after cores must be taken in the same general area, at a minimum within the same paving lane and within one foot (30 cm) of each other. All pavement cores taken by the Contractor must be six (6) in diameter. The Contractor must repair any sample holes resulting from the removal of asphalt concrete pavement cores or equivalent surface area samples (with suitable materials and methods as approved by the RPR) at no cost to the Owner.

b. The treated pavement cores or equivalent surface area samples must be taken 30-45 days after application of the rejuvenation product.

c. Both untreated and treated pavement cores or equivalent surface area samples must be performed for each 20,000 square yards (16723 m²) or fractional part of pavement section per pavement plan or as required by the RPR. Material acceptance in accordance with paragraph 632-2.1, Table 1 or Table 2, will be based on the test results for each 20,000 square yards (16723 m²) or fractional part of treated pavement section per pavement plan or as required by the RPR. Locations for untreated samples should be determined by the RPR on a random basis in accordance with the procedures contained in ASTM D3665 provided requirements of paragraph 632-6.3a can be satisfied for both untreated and treated samples.

It is recognized, the rate of recovered viscosity reduction in addition to product type and application rate is influenced by the climatic conditions and time of exposure prior to sampling and testing. All means to standardize these parameters should be taken. Time factor and weather conditions for all should be noted and recorded.

d. Pavement core samples or equivalent surface areas samples must be placed in labeled sealable plastic bags immediately after taking, cleaning and removing sampling water (blotting). The sealed samples must then be placed in labeled plastic core canisters. For equivalent surface area samples, an equivalent processing for the sample is required as approved by the RPR. The specimens must be shipped to the designated laboratory within 24 hours of collection.

632-6.4 Rejuvenation quality assurance testing responsibility. Quality assurance testing organizations performing these acceptance tests shall be accredited in accordance with ASTM D3666. The quality assurance laboratory accreditation must be current and listed on the accrediting authority's website.

632-6.5 Rejuvenation quality assurance testing. All acceptance testing necessary to determine conformance with this specification must be submitted to the RPR verifying that the rejuvenation product achieves the minimum decrease in the asphalt binder properties as measured from binder in the top 3/8 ±1/32 inch (9 mm ±1 mm) of the samples.

a. Extract the asphalt binder from the top 3/8 ±1/32 inch (9 mm ±1 mm) of the cores/slabs precisely cut from the field specimens. Binder extraction must be by ASTM D2172, Method A (centrifuge) with toluene, and recovered according to ASTM D1856 (Abson Method) or ASTM D5404 (Roto-Vap Method).

(1) Viscosity of the asphalt material must be measured in accordance with ASTM D2171. The percent decrease in the binder properties must be computed as follows:

$$100 (\text{absolute viscosity, } P, \text{ of untreated sample}) - (\text{absolute viscosity, } P, \text{ of treated sample}) / (\text{absolute viscosity, } P, \text{ of untreated samples})$$

(2) The complex modulus, G^* , kPa, must be measured in accordance with AASHTO T315 C, at 140°F (60°C) 10 rad/sec or other recorded frequency. The percent decrease in the binder properties must be computed as follows:

$$100 (\text{complex modulus, } G^*, \text{ kPa of untreated sample}) - (\text{complex modulus, } G^*, \text{ kPa, of treated sample}) / (\text{complex modulus, } G^*, \text{ kPa, of untreated samples})$$

(3) The complex viscosity, η^* , at 140°F (60°C) must be calculated and reported from the complex modulus, G^* and angular frequency, ω (radians/sec).

b. Test results for absolute viscosity, complex modulus (and viscosity), and phase angle must be reported. The maximum percent reduction calculated for absolute viscosity or complex modulus must be considered in BASIS OF PAYMENT.

c. In the event of binders recovered from aged pavements and/or pavements using polymer modified binders (before treatment) exhibiting absolute viscosities $\geq 200,000$ P (data becomes suspect, viscosity exceeds test capabilities) the viscosity reduction compliance requirement should be determined based on the complex modulus, G^* , kPa.

632-6.6 Skid resistance. Special attention must be afforded to skid resistance based on the use of the pavement surfaces. The skid resistance of surfaces must be inspected by the Contractor and RPR a minimum of forty-eight (48) hours after application of the rejuvenation product. In the event either the Contractor or the RPR has concern on the skid resistance of these surfaces, the Contractor must exercise paragraph 632-4.6, Cure Time Remedial Option – Application of Sand, to the satisfaction of the RPR.

Friction tests in accordance with AC 150/5320-12, Measurement, Construction, and Maintenance of Skid-Resistant Airport Pavement Surfaces, shall be accomplished on all runways and taxiways that have received a rejuvenator application. Each test includes performing friction tests at 40 mph and 60 mph (65 or 95 km/h) both wet, 15 feet (4.5 m) to each side of runway centerline with approved continuous friction measuring equipment (CFME). A control friction test shall be run within 30 days prior to application of the rejuvenator to runway and another friction test shall be run after application of the rejuvenator to the entire project. The Contractor shall schedule testing with the RPR and the RPR shall be present for testing. The Contractor shall provide the RPR a written report of friction test results.

Prior to opening the pavement to aircraft operations, the pavement friction evaluation must be equal or greater than the minimum levels provided in Table 3-2, “Friction Level Classification for Runway Pavement Surfaces,” in AC 150/5320-12, Measurement, Construction, and Maintenance of Skid-resistant Airport Pavement Surfaces, when tested at speeds of 40 and 60 mph (65 and 95 km/h) with approved continuous friction measuring equipment (CFME).

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

632-7.1. Asphalt rejuvenation. The quantity of rejuvenation product to be paid for will be the number of square yards (sq m) performed in accordance with the plans and specifications and accepted by the RPR. The Contractor must furnish the RPR with the certified weigh bills when materials are received for the rejuvenation product used under this contract. The Contractor must not remove material from the tank car or storage tank until initial amounts and temperature measurements have been verified.

632-7.2 Friction Tests. [Not required.] [Friction testing will be lump sum.]

BASIS OF PAYMENT

632-8.1 Payment for rejuvenation product. Payment for accepted rejuvenation product will be made at the contract unit price per square yard (square meter) for asphalt rejuvenation adjusted according to paragraph 632-8.1.a.

a. Basis of adjusted payment. The payment for accepted rejuvenation product must be calculated in accordance with Table 3.

Table 3. Rejuvenation Pay Reduction

Binder Rejuvenation at Acceptance % Reduction in Absolute Viscosity or Complex Modulus		% Payment
Pavement More Than 3 Years in Age	Pavement Less Than 3 Years in Age	
≥ 40	≥ 25	100
30.0 - 39.9	20.0 - 24.9	75
Less than 30.0	Less than 20.0	No payment

a. Final payment. Final payment will not be made until rejuvenation success has been confirmed by acceptance testing. Final payment will be full compensation for furnishing all materials and for all labor, equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete the item.

632-8.2 Friction Tests. [Not required.]

[Friction testing will be paid per lump sum.

Payment will be made under:

- Item P-632-8.1 Asphalt Rejuvenation - per square yard (square meter)
- Item P-632-8.2 Friction Tests - Per lump sum]

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM International (ASTM)

- ASTM D140 Standard Practice for Sampling Bituminous Materials
- ASTM D1856 Standard Test Method for Recovery of Asphalt from Solution by Abson Method
- ASTM D2171 Standard Test Method for Viscosity of Asphalts by Vacuum Capillary Viscometer
- ASTM D2172 Standard Test Methods for Quantitative Extraction of Bitumen from Bituminous Paving Mixtures
- ASTM D2995 Standard Practice for Estimating Application Rate of Bituminous Distributors

ASTM D3549	Standard Test Method for Thickness or Height of Compacted Bituminous Paving Mixture Specimens
ASTM D3665	Standard Practice for Random Sampling of Construction Materials
ASTM D3666	Standard Specification for Minimum Requirements for Agencies Testing and Inspecting Road and Paving Materials
ASTM D5340	Standard Test Method for Airport Pavement Condition Index Surveys
ASTM D5404	Standard Practice for Recovery of Asphalt from Solution Using the Rotary Evaporator
American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO)	
AASHTO T315	Standard Method of Test for Determining the Rheological Properties of Asphalt Binder Using a Dynamic Shear Rheometer (DSR)
Advisory Circulars (ACs)	
AC 150/5320-12	Measurement, Construction, and Maintenance of Skid-Resistant Airport Pavement Surfaces
Code of Federal Regulations (CFR)	
29 CFR Part 1910.1200	Hazard Communication
40 CFR	Protection of the Environment

END OF ITEM P-632

Part 9– Miscellaneous

Item P-602 Emulsified Asphalt Prime Coat

Item P-602 can be used to provide a protective layer to prevent the surface of the aggregate base course from raveling under construction traffic and provides a waterproof layer, preventing it from absorbing or losing excess moisture before paving. Item P-602 also helps bond the top layer of the granular base to the first layer of asphalt pavement.

DESCRIPTION

602-1.1 This item shall consist of an application of emulsified asphalt material on the prepared base course in accordance with these specifications and in reasonably close conformity to the lines shown on the plans.

MATERIALS

602-2.1 Emulsified Asphalt material. The emulsified asphalt material shall be as specified in ASTM D3628 for use as a prime coat appropriate to local conditions. The Contractor shall provide a copy of the manufacturer's Certificate of Analysis (COA) for the emulsified asphalt material. The COA shall be provided to and approved by the Resident Project Representative (RPR) before the emulsified asphalt material is applied. The furnishing of the COA for the emulsified asphalt material shall not be interpreted as a basis for final acceptance. The manufacturer's COA may be subject to verification by testing the material delivered for use on the project.

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

602-3.1 Weather limitations. The emulsified asphalt prime coat shall be applied only when the existing surface is dry; the atmospheric temperature is 50°F (10°C) or above, and the temperature has not been below 35°F (2°C) for the 12 hours prior to application; and when the weather is not foggy or rainy. The temperature requirements may be waived when directed by the RPR.

602-3.2 Equipment. The equipment shall include a self-powered pressure asphalt material distributor and equipment for heating asphalt material.

Provide a distributor with pneumatic tires of such size and number that the load produced on the base surface does not exceed 65.0 psi (4.5 kg/sq cm) of tire width to prevent rutting, shoving or otherwise damaging the base, surface or other layers in the pavement structure. Design and equip the distributor to spray the asphalt material in a uniform coverage at the specified temperature, at readily determined and controlled rates from 0.05 to 1.0 gallons per square yard (0.23 to 4.5 L/square meter), with a pressure range of 25 to 75 psi (172.4 to 517.1 kPa) and with an allowable variation from the specified rate of not more than ±5%, and at variable widths. Include with the distributor equipment a separate power unit for the bitumen pump, full-circulation spray bars, tachometer, pressure gauges, volume-measuring devices,

adequate heaters for heating of materials to the proper application temperature, a thermometer for reading the temperature of tank contents, and a hand hose attachment suitable for applying asphalt material manually to areas inaccessible to the distributor. Equip the distributor to circulate and agitate the asphalt material during the heating process. If the distributor is not equipped with an operable quick shutoff valve, the prime operations shall be started and stopped on building paper.

A power broom and power blower suitable for cleaning the surfaces to which the asphalt coat is to be applied shall be provided.

Asphalt distributors must be calibrated annually in accordance with ASTM D2995. The Contractor must furnish a current calibration certification for the asphalt distributor truck from any State or other agency as approved by the RPR.

602-3.3 Application of emulsified asphalt material. Immediately before applying the prime coat, the full width of the surface to be primed shall be swept with a power broom to remove all loose dirt and other objectionable material.

The asphalt emulsion material shall be uniformly applied with an asphalt distributor at the rate of 0.15 to 0.30 gallons per square yard (0.68 to 1.36 liters per square meter) depending on the base course surface texture. The type of asphalt material and application rate shall be approved by the RPR prior to application.

Following application of the emulsified asphalt material and prior to application of the succeeding layer of pavement, allow the asphalt coat to cure and to obtain evaporation of any volatiles or moisture. Maintain the coated surface until the succeeding layer of pavement is placed, by protecting the surface against damage and by repairing and recoating deficient areas. Allow the prime coat to cure without being disturbed for a period of at least 48 hours or longer, as may be necessary to attain penetration into the treated course. Furnish and spread sand to effectively blot up and cure excess asphalt material. The Contractor shall remove blotting sand prior to asphalt concrete lay down operations at no additional expense to the Owner. Keep traffic off surfaces freshly treated with asphalt material. Provide sufficient warning signs and barricades so that traffic will not travel over freshly treated surfaces.

602-3.4 Trial application rates. The Contractor shall apply a minimum of three lengths of at least 100 feet (30 m) for the full width of the distributor bar to evaluate the amount of emulsified asphalt material that can be satisfactorily applied with the equipment. Apply three different application rates of emulsified asphalt materials within the application range specified in paragraph 602-3.3. Other trial applications can be made using various amounts of material as directed by the RPR. The trial application is to demonstrate the equipment can uniformly apply the emulsified asphalt material within the rates specified and determine the application rate for the project.

602-3.5 Freight and waybills. The Contractor shall submit waybills and delivery tickets during the progress of the work. Before the final estimate is allowed, file with the RPR certified waybills and certified delivery tickets for all emulsified asphalt materials used in the construction of the pavement covered by the contract. Do not remove emulsified asphalt material from storage until the initial outage and temperature measurements have been taken. The delivery or storage units will not be released until the final outage has been taken.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

602-4.1 The emulsified asphalt material for prime coat shall be measured by the [gallon (liter)] [ton (kg)]. Volume shall be corrected to the volume at 60°F (16°C) in accordance with ASTM D4311. The emulsified asphalt material paid for will be the measured quantities used in the accepted work, provided that the measured quantities are not 10% over the specified application rate. Any amount of emulsified asphalt material more than 10% over the specified application rate for each

application will be deducted from the measured quantities, except for irregular areas where hand spraying of the emulsified asphalt material is necessary. Water added to emulsified asphalt will not be measured for payment.

BASIS OF PAYMENT

602-5.1 Payment shall be made at the contract unit price per [gallon (liter)] [ton (kg)] for emulsified asphalt prime coat. This price shall be full compensation for furnishing all materials and for all preparation, delivering, and applying the materials, and for all labor, equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete this item.

Payment will be made under:

Item P-602-5.1	Emulsified Asphalt Prime Coat - per [gallon (liter)] [ton (kg)]

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM International (ASTM)

ASTM D2995	Standard Practice for Estimating Application Rate and Residual Application Rate of Bituminous Distributors
ASTM D3628	Standard Practice for Selection and Use of Emulsified Asphalts

END OF ITEM P-602

Page Intentionally Blank

Item P-603 Emulsified Asphalt Tack Coat

Item P-603 is used to promote bonding between the underlying surface and the new asphalt layer.

DESCRIPTION

603-1.1 This item shall consist of preparing and treating an asphalt or concrete surface with asphalt material in accordance with these specifications and in reasonably close conformity to the lines shown on the plans.

MATERIALS

603-2.1 Asphalt materials. The asphalt material shall be an emulsified asphalt as specified in ASTM D3628 as an asphalt application for tack coat appropriate to local conditions. The emulsified asphalt shall not be diluted. The Contractor shall provide a copy of the manufacturer's Certificate of Analysis (COA) for the asphalt material to the Resident Project Representative (RPR) before the asphalt material is applied for review and acceptance. The furnishing of COA for the asphalt material shall not be interpreted as a basis for final acceptance. The manufacturer's COA may be subject to verification by testing the material delivered for use on the project.

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

603-3.1 Weather limitations. The tack coat shall be applied only when the existing surface is dry and the atmospheric temperature is 50°F (10°C) or above; the temperature has not been below 35°F (2°C) for the 12 hours prior to application; and when the weather is not foggy or rainy. The temperature requirements may be waived when directed by the RPR.

603-3.2 Equipment. The Contractor shall provide equipment for heating and applying the emulsified asphalt material. The emulsion shall be applied with a manufacturer-approved computer rate-controlled asphalt distributor. The equipment shall be in good working order and contain no contaminants or diluents in the tank. Spray bar tips must be clean, free of burrs, and of a size to maintain an even distribution of the emulsion. Any type of tip or pressure source is suitable that will maintain predetermined flow rates and constant pressure during the application process with application speeds under eight (8) miles per hour (13 km per hour) or seven (700) feet per minute (213 m per minute).

The equipment will be tested under pressure for leaks and to ensure proper set-up before use to verify truck set-up (via a test-shot area), including but not limited to, nozzle tip size appropriate for application, spray-bar height and pressure and pump speed, evidence of triple-overlap spray pattern, lack of leaks, and any other factors relevant to ensure the truck is in good working order before use.

The distributor truck shall be equipped with a minimum 12-foot (3.7-m) spreader spray bar with individual nozzle control with computer-controlled application rates. The distributor truck shall have an easily accessible thermometer that constantly monitors the temperature of the emulsion, and have an

operable mechanical tank gauge that can be used to cross-check the computer accuracy. If the distributor is not equipped with an operable quick shutoff valve, the prime operations shall be started and stopped on building paper.

The distributor truck shall be equipped to effectively heat and mix the material to the required temperature prior to application as required. Heating and mixing shall be done in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. Do not overheat or over mix the material.

The distributor shall be equipped with a hand sprayer.

Asphalt distributors must be calibrated annually in accordance with ASTM D2995. The Contractor must furnish a current calibration certification for the asphalt distributor truck from any State or other agency as approved by the RPR.

A power broom and/or power blower suitable for cleaning the surfaces to which the asphalt tack coat is to be applied shall be provided.

603-3.3 Application of emulsified asphalt material. The emulsified asphalt shall not be diluted. Immediately before applying the emulsified asphalt tack coat, the full width of surface to be treated shall be swept with a power broom and/or power blower to remove all loose dirt and other objectionable material.

The emulsified asphalt material shall be uniformly applied with an asphalt distributor at the rates appropriate for the conditions and surface specified in the table below. The type of asphalt material and application rate shall be approved by the RPR prior to application.

Emulsified Asphalt

Surface Type	Residual Rate, gal/SY (L/square meter)	Emulsion Application Bar Rate, gal/SY (L/square meter)
New asphalt	0.02-0.05 (0.09-0.23)	0.03-0.07 (0.13-0.32)
Existing asphalt	0.04-0.07 (0.18-0.32)	0.06-0.11 (0.27-0.50)
Milled Surface	0.04-0.08 (0.18-0.36)	.06-0.12 (0.27-0.54)
Concrete	0.03-0.05 (0.13-0.23)	0.05-0.08 (0.23-0.36)

After application of the tack coat, the surface shall be allowed to cure without being disturbed for the period of time necessary to permit drying and setting of the tack coat. This period shall be determined by the RPR. The Contractor shall protect the tack coat and maintain the surface until the next course has been placed. When the tack coat has been disturbed by the Contractor, tack coat shall be reapplied at the Contractor's expense.

603-3.4 Freight and waybills The Contractor shall submit waybills and delivery tickets, during progress of the work. Before the final statement is allowed, file with the RPR certified waybills and certified delivery tickets for all emulsified asphalt materials used in the construction of the pavement covered by the contract. Do not remove emulsified asphalt material from storage until the initial outage and temperature measurements have been taken. The delivery or storage units will not be released until the final outage has been taken.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

603-4.1 The emulsified asphalt material for tack coat shall be measured by the [gallon (liter)] [ton (kg)]. Volume shall be corrected to the volume at 60°F (16°C) in accordance with ASTM D1250. The emulsified asphalt material paid for will be the measured quantities used in the accepted

work, provided that the measured quantities are not 10% over the specified application rate. Any amount of emulsified asphalt material more than 10% over the specified application rate for each application will be deducted from the measured quantities, except for irregular areas where hand spraying of the emulsified asphalt material is necessary. Water added to emulsified asphalt will not be measured for payment.

BASIS OF PAYMENT

603.5-1 Payment shall be made at the contract unit price per [gallon (liter)][ton (kg)] of emulsified asphalt material. This price shall be full compensation for furnishing all materials, for all preparation, delivery, and application of these materials, and for all labor, equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete the item.

Payment will be made under:

Item P-603-5.1	Emulsified Asphalt Tack Coat - per [gallon (liter)][ton (kg)]

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM International (ASTM)

ASTM D1250	Standard Guide for Use of the Petroleum Measurement Tables
ASTM D2995	Standard Practice for Estimating Application Rate and Residual Application Rate of Bituminous Distributors
ASTM D3628	Standard Practice for Selection and Use of Emulsified Asphalts

END ITEM P-603

Page Intentionally Blank

Item P-604 Compression Joint Seals for Concrete Pavements

DESCRIPTION

The following is an optional specification that can be used for long performance joint seals in concrete pavements.

Temperatures of the pavement and the atmosphere are not as critical for the installation of compression joint seals as for other sealants. Lower temperatures maybe acceptable and sealing proceed satisfactorily at temperatures lower than 35°F (2°C). Manufacturers should be contacted for recommendations and instructions under expected project installation conditions.

These specifications may be edited as necessary to tailor specification for joint re-seal projects.

604-1.1 This item shall consist of preformed polychloroprene compression seals used for sealing joints of rigid pavements.

MATERIALS

604-2.1 Compression seals. Compression joint seal materials shall be a vulcanized elastomeric compound using polychloroprene as the only base polymer. The material and the manufactured seal shall conform to [ASTM D2628] [ASTM D2628 and Corps of Engineers Concrete Research Division (CRD) C548 where jet fuel and/or heat blast resistance is required].

The joint seal shall be a labyrinth type seal. The uncompressed depth of the face of the compression seal (that is to be bonded to the joint wall) shall be greater than the uncompressed width of the seal, except that for seals one inch (25 mm) or greater in width, the depth need be only one inch (25 mm) or greater. The actual width of the uncompressed seal shall be as recommended by the joint seal manufacturer for the type and width of joints as shown on the plans. The tolerance on the seal shall be +1/8 inch or -1/16 inch (+3 mm or -2 mm), below the top of the pavement surface or bottom of groove for grooved pavement.

The Contractor shall provide a copy of the manufacturer's Certificate of Analysis (COA) for the joint seal material delivered to the project. The COA shall be provided to and approved by the RPR before the material is installed. The furnishing of the vendor's certified test report shall not be interpreted as a basis for final acceptance. The manufacturer's COA may be subject to verification by testing the material delivered for use on the project.

Materials delivered to the job site shall be inspected for defects, unloaded, and stored with a minimum of handling to avoid damage. Storage facilities shall be provided at the job site to protect materials from weather and maintain materials at temperatures recommended by the manufacturer.

Representative sample of joint seal material will be sampled and retained by the RPR for possible testing.

Show joint seal details for all joint types on the plans.

604-2.2 Lubricant/adhesive. Lubricant/adhesive used for the compression elastomeric joint seal shall be a one-component compound conforming to ASTM D2835.

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

604-3.1 Equipment. Machines, tools, and equipment used in the performance of the work required by this section shall be approved by the RPR before the work starts and shall be maintained by the Contractor in satisfactory condition at all times.

a. Joint cleaning equipment.

(1) Concrete saw. A self-propelled power saw with water-cooled diamond saw blades shall be provided for cutting joints to the depths and widths specified and for removing filler, existing old joint seal or other material embedded in the joints or adhered to the joint faces.

(2) Waterblasting equipment. Waterblasting equipment shall include a trailer-mounted water tank, pumps, high-pressure hose, a wand with safety release cutoff controls, nozzle, and auxiliary water resupply equipment. The water tank and auxiliary water resupply equipment shall be of sufficient capacity to permit continuous operations. The pumps, hoses, wand, and nozzle shall be of sufficient capacity to permit the cleaning of both walls of the joint and the pavement surface for a width of at least 1/2 inch (12 mm) on either side of the joint. The pump shall be capable of supplying a pressure of at least 3,000 psi (20.7 MPa). A pressure gauge mounted at the pump shall show at all times the pressure in pounds per square inch (psi) (kPa) at which the equipment is operating.

(3) Sandblasting equipment. [Sandblasting is not allowed.]

[Sandblasting equipment shall include an air compressor, hose, and a long-wearing venturi-type nozzle of proper size, shape, and opening. The maximum nozzle opening should not exceed 1/4 inch (6 mm). The air compressor shall be portable and shall be capable of furnishing not less than 150 cubic feet (4200 liters) per minute and maintaining a line pressure of not less than 90 psi (620 kPa) at the nozzle while in use. The compressor shall be equipped with traps that will maintain the compressed air free of oil and water. The nozzle shall have an adjustable guide that will hold the nozzle aligned with the joint about one inch (25 mm) above the pavement surface and will direct the blast to clean the joint walls. The height, angle of inclination, and the size of the nozzle shall be adjusted as necessary to ensure satisfactory results.]

Sandblasting may be shown as an option to waterblasting for new pavement installations.

b. Sealing equipment. Equipment used to install the compression seal shall place the compression seal to the prescribed depths within the specified tolerances without cutting, nicking, twisting, or otherwise damaging the seal. The equipment shall not stretch or compress the seal more than 2.0%

longitudinally during installation. The machine shall be an automatic self-propelled joint seal application equipment and shall be engine powered. The machine shall include a reservoir for the lubricant/adhesive, a device for conveying the lubricant/adhesive in the proper quantities to the sides the preformed seal or the sidewalls of the joint, a reel capable of holding one full spool of compression seal, and a power-driven apparatus for feeding the joint seal through a compression device and inserting the seal into the joint. The equipment shall also include a guide to maintain the proper course along the joint being sealed. The machine shall at all times be operated by an experienced operator.

Hand operated joint seal application equipment may be used for localized areas and for projects less than 500 square yards (450 square meters). The equipment shall be a two-axle, four-wheel machine that includes means for compressing and inserting the compression seal into the joint and a reel capable of holding one full spool of compression seal material.

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

604-4.1 Environmental conditions. The ambient temperature and the pavement temperature within the joint wall shall be at least 35°F (2°C) and rising at the time of installation of the materials. Sealant application will not be permitted if moisture or any foreign material is observed in the joint.

604-4.2 Trial joint seal and lubricant/adhesive installation. Prior to the cleaning and sealing of the joints for the entire project, a control strip at least 200 feet (69 meters) long shall be prepared at a location designated by the RPR using the specified materials and the approved equipment, to demonstrate the materials and construction processes for joint preparation and sealing of all types of joints included in the project. No other joints shall be sealed until the test installation has been approved by the RPR.

If materials or installation do not meet requirements, the materials shall be removed, and the joints shall be cleaned and a new trial joint seal installation shall be performed at the Contractor's expense. The RPR approved trial section will be incorporated into the permanent work.

604-4.3 Preparation of joints. Immediately before installation of the compression joint seal, the joints shall be thoroughly cleaned to remove all laitance, filler, existing sealer, foreign material and protrusions of hardened concrete from the sides and upper edges of the joint space to be sealed. Cleaning shall extend along pavement surfaces at least 1/2 inch (12 mm) on either side of the joint. After final cleaning and immediately prior to sealing, the joints shall be blown out with compressed air and left free of debris and water. Any irregularity in the joint face that would prevent uniform contact between the joint seal and the joint face shall be corrected prior to the installation of the joint seal.

a. Sawing. Joints shall be sawed to clean and to open them to the full specified width and depth. Immediately following the sawing operation, the joint faces and opening shall be thoroughly cleaned using a water jet to remove all saw cuttings or debris remaining on the faces or in the joint opening. Compression seal shall be installed within three (3) calendar days of the time the joint cavity is sawed. Depth of the joint cavity shall be in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Submit printed copies of manufacturers' instructions [60 days] prior to use on the project. The saw cut for the joint seal cavity shall at all locations be centered over the joint line. The nominal width of the sawed joint seal cavity shall be as follows; the actual width shall be within a tolerance of $\pm 1/16$ inch (2 mm):

(1) If a nominal 13/16 inch (21 mm) wide compression seal is furnished, the nominal width of the saw cut shall be [] inches ([] mm) when the pavement temperature at the time of sawing is between [] and []°F ([] and []°C). If the pavement temperature at the time of sawing is above this range, the nominal width of the saw cut shall be decreased 1/16 inch (2 mm). If the pavement temperature at the time of sawing is below this range, the nominal width of the saw cut shall be increased 1/16 inch (2 mm).

(2) If a nominal one inch (25 mm) wide compression seal is furnished, the nominal width of the saw cut shall be [] inches ([] mm) when the pavement temperature at the time of sawing is between [] and []°F ([] and []°C). If the pavement temperature at the time of sawing is above this range, the nominal width of the saw cut shall be decreased 1/16 inch (2 mm). If the pavement temperature at the time of sawing is below this range, the nominal width of the saw cut shall be increased 1/16 inch (2 mm).

(3) The pavement temperature shall be measured and recorded in the presence of the RPR. Measurement shall be made each day before commencing sawing and at any other time during the day when the temperature appears to be moving out of the allowable sawing range.

In paragraph 604-3.1a, the requirements are based on giving the Contractor the option of using either nominal 13/16 inch (21 mm) or one inch (25 mm) wide compression seal. The designer will select the required values from columns (3) and (4) of the following table, based on the geographical area and the nominal sealant width to be used for this project. The Engineer should ensure joint installation follows the manufacturer's recommendations.

For Insertion in Blanks

Area	(1) Expected Pavement Temperature Range in Service (Degrees F)	(2) Nominal Uncompressed Sealant Width (Inches)	(3) Nominal Saw Cut (Inches)	(4) Allowable Pavement Temperature Range for Sawing (Degrees F)
Southwest Desert Area	+10 to +160	13/16	8/16	+50 to +115
		1	9/16	+55 to +180
Southern U.S.	0 to +135	13/16	8/16	+30 to +110
		1	9/16	+30 to +170
Other Contiguous U.S. States	-30 to +135	13/16	8/16	+25 to +80
		1	9/16	+25 to +140
Alaska and Similar Areas	-70 to +110	13/16*	7/16	+50* to +105
		1	8/16	+60 to +160

* Note in the project specifications that this seal shall not be installed in a saw cut less than 7/16 in and thus cannot be used in this area if sawing must be done at temperatures less than +50°F (10°C).

The above table is based on the following:

- Tolerance from nominal specified width of uncompressed seal plus 1/8 inch (3 mm) and minus 1/16 inch (2 mm).
- Tolerance from nominal saw cut width $\pm 1/16$ inch (2 mm).
- Compression seal must be compressed at least 20% of its uncompressed width at all times.
- Compression seal must never be compressed more than 60% of its uncompressed width at any time (narrowest opening in hot weather must be at least 40% of uncompressed seal width).

Before the compression seal is used for resealing joints in existing pavements, it is common practice to resaw the joints, which will give a wider cavity. Width of sawing should be held to the same tolerance as specified for new pavements. For unusual conditions and for resealing joints in existing pavements where the prepared joint is

extra wide, the designer will have to compute values to insert in the blanks using the computations for slab (or joint) movement based on the formula $dL = 12 \times C \times L \times (\alpha \times dT + \epsilon)$ where dL = Joint opening caused by the temperature change and drying shrinkage of Portland cement concrete; C = adjustment factor due to slab or base friction restraint; L = Joint spacing; α = thermal coefficient of contraction for concrete; ϵ = drying shrinkage coefficient of concrete; and dT = temperature range. Refer to Unified Facilities Criteria (UFC) 3-250-08FA for the steps required to compute the working range of joints and sealants.

b. Waterblast cleaning. The concrete joint faces and pavement surfaces extending at least 1/2 inch (12 mm) from the joint edges shall be waterblasted clean. A multiple pass technique shall be used until the surfaces are free of dust, dirt, curing compound, or any residue that might prevent ready insertion or uniform contact of the seal and bonding of the lubricant/adhesive to the concrete. After final cleaning and immediately prior to sealing, the joints shall be blown out with compressed air and left completely free of debris and water.

c. Sandblast cleaning. [Sandblast cleaning is not allowed.] [The concrete joint faces and pavement surfaces extending at least 1/2 inch (12 mm) from the joint edges shall be sandblasted clean. A multiple pass technique shall be used until the surfaces are free of dust, dirt, curing compound, or any residue that might prevent ready insertion or uniform contact of the seal and bonding of the lubricant/adhesive to the concrete. After final cleaning and immediately prior to sealing, the joints shall be blown out with compressed air and left completely free of debris and water.]

Sandblasting should be shown as an option to waterblasting for new pavement installations.

Sandblasting of joints may not be permitted under certain conditions. Blowing sand and dust may either violate atmospheric pollution statutes, or may drift into areas where it would be objectionable. When sandblasting is prohibited, cleaning the joints with waterblasting equipment may be used.

d. Rate of progress. Cleaning of the joint faces shall be limited to the linear footage of joint that can be sealed during the same workday.

604-4.4 Installation of the compression seal.

a. Time of installation. Joints shall be sealed within [3] calendar days of sawing the joint seal cavity and the final cleaning of the joint walls, or a temporary seal shall be installed to prevent infiltration of foreign material. If rain interrupts the sealing operations, the joints shall be washed, cleaned with air and be dry before proceeding with installing of the lubricant/adhesive and compression seal.

b. Installation Sequence. Longitudinal joints shall be sealed first, then seal the transverse joints. Transverse joint seals will be continuous from edge to edge of the pavement. Intersections shall be made monolithic by use of joint seal adhesive and care in fitting the intersection parts together. Seals which do not reach an intersection shall be removed and replaced with new seal as directed by the RPR at the Contractor's Expense. Seal extender pieces shall not be used at intersections.

c. Sealing joints. The sides of the joint seal or the sides of the joint shall be covered with a coating of lubricant/adhesive and the seal installed as specified. Butt joints and seal intersections shall be coated with liberal applications of lubricant/adhesive. Lubricant/adhesive spilled on the pavement shall be removed immediately to prevent setting on the pavement.

The joint seal shall be placed at a uniform depth within the tolerances specified. The compression joint seal shall be placed to a depth of 3/16 inch (5 mm), $\pm 1/8$ inch (3 mm), below the pavement surface or below the depth of the groove unless otherwise directed by the RPR.

The seal shall be installed in the longest practicable lengths in longitudinal joints and shall be cut at the joint intersections to provide continuous installation of the seal in the transverse joints. The joint seal shall be installed in an upright position, free from twisting, distortion, and cuts. If stretch of installed joint seal exceeds 1%, adjustments shall be made to the installation equipment and procedure. Stretch of installed joint seals exceeding 2% stretch shall be removed and replaced.

After installation of the longitudinal joint seals, it shall set for a minimum of one (1) hour prior to cutting the seal at the joint intersections. For all transverse joints, the minimum length of the preformed joint seal shall be the pavement width from edge to edge.

604-4.5 Clean-up. Upon completion of the project, all unused materials shall be removed from the site, all lubricant/adhesive on the pavement surface shall be removed, and the pavement shall be left in clean condition.

604-4.6 Quality Control and Quality Assurance.

a. Quality Control The application equipment shall be inspected to assure uniform application of lubricant/adhesive to the sides of the compression joint seal or the walls of the joint. Equipment causing cutting, twisting, nicking, excessive stretching or compressing of the compression seal, or improper application of the lubricant/adhesive, shall not be used until causes of the deficiencies are determined and corrected by the Contractor.

The seal shall be inspected by the Contractor a minimum of once per 400 feet (120 m) of seal for compliance to the shrinkage or compression requirements. Measurements shall be made at the same interval to determine conformance with depth and width installation requirements.

b. Quality Assurance. Cleaned joints shall be approved by the RPR prior to installation of the lubricant/adhesive and compression joint seal.

Conformance to stretching and compression limitations shall be determined by the RPR using the following procedures:

(1) Mark the top surface of the compression seal at one foot (30 cm) intervals in a manner clear and durable to enable length determinations of the seal.

(2) After installation, the distance between the marks on the seal shall be measured by the Contractor.

(3) If the stretching or compression exceeds the specified limit, the seal shall be removed and replaced with new joint seal at the Contractor's Expense. The seal shall be removed up to the last correct measurement.

604-4.7 Acceptance. The joint sealing system (compression seal and lubricant/adhesive) shall be inspected by the RPR for proper rate of cure and bonding to the concrete, cuts, twists, nicks, and other deficiencies. Seals exhibiting any defects prior to final acceptance of the project, shall be removed from the joint, wasted, and replaced with new material in a satisfactory manner, at the Contractor's expense, as determined by the RPR.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

604-5.1 Measurement. The quantity of compression joint seals installed and accepted, will be determined by the linear feet (meter).

BASIS OF PAYMENT

604-6.1 Payment. Payment will be made at the contract unit bid prices per linear foot (meter) for the compression joint seals. The unit bid prices shall include the cost of all labor, materials, the use of all equipment, and tools required to complete the work.

Item 604-6.1 Compression Joint Seals for Concrete Pavements –per linear feet (meter)

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM International (ASTM)

ASTM D2628	Standard Specification for Preformed Polychloroprene Elastomeric Joint Seals for Concrete Pavements
ASTM D2835	Standard Specification for Lubricant for Installation of Preformed Compression Seals in Concrete Pavements

Corps of Engineers

CRD C548	Standard Specification for Jet-Fuel and Heat Resistant Preformed Polychloroprene Elastomeric Joint Seals for Rigid Pavements

Unified Facilities Criteria (UFC)

UFC 3-250-08FA	Standard Practice for Sealing Joints and Cracks in Rigid and Flexible Pavements

END ITEM P-604

Page Intentionally Blank

Item P-605 Joint Sealants for Pavements

These specifications may be edited as necessary to tailor specification for joint re-seal projects.

See Item P-101 for preparation of joints and cracks in existing pavement.

DESCRIPTION

605-1.1 This item shall consist of providing and installing a resilient and adhesive joint sealing material capable of effectively sealing joints in pavement; joints between different types of pavements; and cracks in existing pavement.

MATERIALS

605-2.1 Joint sealants. Joint sealant materials shall meet the requirements of [___].

Each lot or batch of sealant shall be delivered to the jobsite in the manufacturer's original sealed container. Each container shall be marked with the manufacturer's name, batch or lot number, the safe heating temperature, and shall be accompanied by the manufacturer's certification stating that the sealant meets the requirements of this specification.

The Engineer may specify one or more of the following (Note ASTM D7116 limited to use on PCC Aprons only where fueling occurs):

ASTM D5893 Standard Specifications for Cold Applied, Single Component, Chemically Curing Silicone Joint Sealant for Portland Cement Concrete Pavements.

ASTM D6690 Standard Specification for Joint and Crack Sealants, Hot Applied, for Concrete and Asphalt Pavements

ASTM D7116 Standard Specification for Joint Sealants, Hot Applied, Jet Fuel Resistant Types for Portland Cement Concrete Pavements

(PCC Aprons where fueling occurs may use either ASTM D7116 or ASTM D5893)

605-2.2 Backer rod. The material furnished shall be a compressible, non-shrinking, non-staining, non-absorbing material that is non-reactive with the joint sealant in accordance with ASTM D5249. The backer-rod material shall be $25\% \pm 5\%$ larger in diameter than the nominal width of the joint.

605-2.3 Bond breaking tapes. Provide a bond breaking tape or separating material that is a flexible, non-shrinkable, non-absorbing, non-staining, and non-reacting adhesive-backed tape. The material shall have

a melting point at least 5°F (3°C) greater than the pouring temperature of the sealant being used when tested in accordance with ASTM D789. The bond breaker tape shall be approximately 1/8 inch (3 mm) wider than the nominal width of the joint and shall not bond to the joint sealant.

The use of a bond breaking separation tape or backup material in the joint may prevent an adverse reaction between incompatible materials, maintain the desired configuration (shape factor of the material), and act as a bond breaker to prevent excessive stresses from being placed on the sealant during pavement movement. Therefore, the separating or backup material should be carefully selected and installed to form an effective and durable support for the sealant. Separating or blocking media should be placed to a depth below the pavement approximately equal to the width of the joint. This is to achieve a shape factor (ratio of the depth of the sealant to the width of the joint) of 1. ASTM D5893 sealants sometimes require a shape factor of 0.5 instead of 1. This is equivalent to a width-to-depth ratio of 2:1 and will require the standard joint detail to be modified. If a ASTM D5893 sealant is to be used, the placement depth of the bond breaking separating tape or backup material should be adjusted accordingly. Drawings should be included in the contract drawings to indicate application details.

For installation of light cans, backup materials shall not be used between Items P-605 and P-606. Can installation shall be per advisory circular (AC) 150/5340-30.

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

605-3.1 Time of application. Joints shall be sealed as soon after completion of the curing period as feasible and before the pavement is opened to traffic, including construction equipment. The pavement temperature shall be 50°F (10°C) and rising at the time of application of the poured joint sealing material. Do not apply sealant if moisture is observed in the joint.

When used with Item P-606, such as light can installation, Item P-605 shall not be applied until the P-606 has fully cured.

If the pavement must be opened to traffic prior to placement of the sealant, this paragraph should be modified to require the Contractor to temporarily fill the joint with a jute or nylon rope immediately after the joint is sawed. The rope should be slightly larger than the joint and should be forced into the joint so that the top of the rope is 1/8 inch (3 mm) below the pavement surface. The rope shall be removed immediately prior to cleaning.

605-3.2 Equipment. Machines, tools, and equipment used in the performance of the work required by this section shall be approved before the work is started and maintained in satisfactory condition at all times. Submit a list of proposed equipment to be used in performance of construction work including descriptive data, [] days prior to use on the project.

[a. Tractor-mounted routing tool. Provide a routing tool, used for removing old sealant from the joints, of such shape and dimensions and

so mounted on the tractor that it will not damage the sides of the joints. The tool shall be designed so that it can be adjusted to remove the old material to varying depths as required. The use of V-shaped tools or rotary impact routing devices will not be permitted. Hand-operated spindle routing devices may be used to clean and enlarge random cracks.

b. Concrete saw. Provide a self-propelled power saw, with water-cooled diamond or abrasive saw blades, for cutting joints to the depths and widths specified.

c. Sandblasting equipment. [Sandblasting is not allowed.] [The Contractor must demonstrate sandblasting equipment including the air compressor, hose, guide and nozzle size, under job conditions, before approval in accordance with paragraph 605-3.3. The Contractor shall demonstrate, in the presence of the Resident Project Representative (RPR), that the method cleans the joint and does not damage the joint.]

]

Sandblasting of joints may not be permitted under certain conditions. Blowing sand and dust may either violate atmospheric pollution statutes, or may drift into areas where it would be objectionable. When sandblasting is prohibited, cleaning the joints with a waterblaster or wire brushes may be substituted. Wire brushes usually do not clean as well as the sandblaster or waterblaster and should only be used for small areas. When wire brushes are used, attention should be given to ensure worn brushes are not used and that the joints are being adequately cleaned.

[**d. Waterblasting equipment.** The Contractor must demonstrate waterblasting equipment including the pumps, hose, guide and nozzle size, under job conditions, before approval in accordance with paragraph 605-3.3. The Contractor shall demonstrate, in the presence of the RPR, that the method cleans the joint and does not damage the joint.

Waterblasting equipment varies considerably with respect to design of wand, nozzle, water pressure, and water volume, depending upon the manufacturer. Consequently, the effectiveness of a particular set of equipment cannot be predicted.

e. Hand tools. Hand tools may be used, when approved, for removing defective sealant from a crack and repairing or cleaning the crack faces. Hand tools should be carefully evaluated for potential spalling effects prior to approval for use.

f. Hot-poured sealing equipment. The unit applicators used for heating and installing ASTM D6690 joint sealant materials shall be mobile and shall be equipped with a double-boiler, agitator-type kettle with an oil medium in the outer space for heat transfer; a direct-connected pressure-type extruding device with a nozzle shaped for inserting in the joint to be filled; positive temperature devices for controlling the temperature of the transfer oil and sealant; and a recording type thermometer for indicating the temperature of the sealant. The applicator unit shall be designed so that the sealant will circulate through the delivery hose and return to the inner kettle when not in use.

g. Cold-applied, single-component sealing equipment. The equipment for installing ASTM D5893 single component joint sealants shall consist of an extrusion pump, air compressor, following plate, hoses, and nozzle for transferring the sealant from the storage container into the joint opening. The dimension of the nozzle shall be such that the tip of the nozzle will extend into the joint to allow sealing from the bottom of the joint to the top. Maintain the initially approved equipment in good working condition, serviced in accordance with the supplier's instructions, and unaltered in any way without obtaining prior approval. Small hand-held air-powered equipment (i.e., caulking guns) may be used for small applications.]

Delete the paragraphs that do not apply to the project.

605-3.3 Preparation of joints. Pavement joints for application of material in this specification must be dry, clean of all scale, dirt, dust, curing compound, and other foreign matter. The Contractor shall demonstrate, in the presence of the RPR, that the method cleans the joint and does not damage the joint.

a. Sawing. All joints shall be sawed in accordance with specifications and plan details. Immediately after sawing the joint, the resulting slurry shall be completely removed from joint and adjacent area by flushing with a jet of water, and by use of other tools as necessary.

b. Sealing. Immediately before sealing, the joints shall be thoroughly cleaned of all remaining laitance, curing compound, filler, protrusions of hardened concrete, old sealant and other foreign material from the sides and upper edges of the joint space to be sealed. Cleaning shall be accomplished by [sandblasting] [tractor-mounted routing equipment] [concrete saw] [waterblaster] as specified in paragraph 605-3.2. The newly exposed concrete joint faces and the pavement surface extending a minimum of 1/2 inch (12 mm) from the joint edge shall be sandblasted clean. Sandblasting shall be accomplished in a minimum of two passes. One pass per joint face with the nozzle held at an angle directly toward the joint face and not more than 3 inches (75 mm) from it. After final cleaning and immediately prior to sealing, blow out the joints with compressed air and leave them completely free of debris and water. The joint faces shall be surface dry when the seal is applied.

c. Backer Rod. When the joint opening is of a greater depth than indicated for the sealant depth, plug or seal off the lower portion of the joint opening using a backer rod in accordance with paragraph 605-2.2 to prevent the entrance of the sealant below the specified depth. Take care to ensure that the backer rod is placed at the specified depth and is not stretched or twisted during installation.

d. Bond-breaking tape. Where inserts or filler materials contain bitumen, or the depth of the joint opening does not allow for the use of a backup material, insert a bond-separating tape breaker in accordance with paragraph 605-2.3 to prevent incompatibility with the filler materials and three-sided adhesion of the sealant. Securely bond the tape to the bottom of the joint opening so it will not float up into the new sealant.

605-3.4 Installation of sealants. Joints shall be inspected for proper width, depth, alignment, and preparation, and shall be approved by the RPR before sealing is allowed. Sealants shall be installed in accordance with the following requirements:

Immediately preceding, but not more than 50 feet (15 m) ahead of the joint sealing operations, perform a final cleaning with compressed air. Fill the joints from the bottom up to [1/8] [1/4] inch ([3] [6] mm) ±1/16 inch (2 mm) below the top of pavement surface; or bottom of groove for grooved pavement. Remove and discard excess or spilled sealant from the pavement by approved methods. Install the sealant in such a manner as to prevent the formation of voids and entrapped air. In no case shall gravity methods or pouring pots be used to install the sealant material. Traffic shall not be permitted over newly sealed pavement until authorized by the RPR. When a primer is recommended by the manufacturer, apply it evenly to the joint faces in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Check the joints frequently to ensure that the newly installed sealant is cured to a tack-free condition within the time specified.

The use of a backer rod or bond breaking tapes in the bottom of the joint to be filled is recommended to control the depth of the sealant, to achieve the desired shape factor, and to support the sealant against indentation and sag. Backer rod and bond breaking tapes should be compatible with the sealant should be compressible without extruding the sealant, and should recover to maintain contact with the joint faces when the joint is open.

605-3.5 Inspection. The Contractor shall inspect the joint sealant for proper rate of cure and set, bonding to the joint walls, cohesive separation within the sealant, reversion to liquid, entrapped air and voids. Sealants exhibiting any of these deficiencies at any time prior to the final acceptance of the project shall be removed from the joint, wasted, and replaced as specified at no additional cost to the airport.

605-3.6 Clean-up. Upon completion of the project, remove all unused materials from the site and leave the pavement in a clean condition.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

605-4.1 Joint sealing material shall be measured by the [gallon (liter)] [pound (kg)] [linear foot (meter)] of sealant in place, completed, and accepted.

BASIS OF PAYMENT

605-5.1 Payment for joint sealing material shall be made at the contract unit price per [gallon (liter)] [pound (kg)] [linear foot (meter)]. The price shall be full compensation for furnishing all materials, for all preparation, delivering, and placing of these materials, and for all labor, equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete the item.

Payment will be made under:

Item P-605-5.1 Joint Sealing Filler, [per gallon (liter)][per pound
(kg)][per linear foot (meter)]

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM International (ASTM)

ASTM D789	Standard Test Method for Determination of Relative Viscosity of Polyamide (PA)
ASTM D5249	Standard Specification for Backer Material for Use with Cold- and Hot-Applied Joint Sealants in Portland-Cement Concrete and Asphalt Joints
[ASTM D5893	Standard Specification for Cold Applied, Single Component, Chemically Curing Silicone Joint Sealant for Portland Cement Concrete Pavements]
[ASTM D6690	Standard Specification for Joint and Crack Sealants, Hot Applied, for Concrete and Asphalt]
[ASTM D7116	Standard Specification for Joint Sealants, Hot Applied, Jet Fuel Resistant Types for Portland Cement Concrete Pavements]

The Engineer shall specify one or more of the ASTMs above to agree with sealant type selected in paragraph 605-2.1.

Advisory Circulars (AC)

AC 150/5340-30 Design and Installation Details for Airport Visual Aids

END ITEM P-605

Item P-606 Adhesive Compounds, Two-Component for Sealing Wire and Lights in Pavement**DESCRIPTION**

606-1.1 This specification covers two types of material; a liquid suitable for sealing electrical wire in saw cuts in pavement and for sealing light fixtures or bases in pavement, and a paste suitable for embedding light fixtures in the pavement. Both types of material are two-component filled formulas with the characteristics specified in paragraph 606-2.4. Materials supplied for use with asphalt and/or concrete pavements must be formulated so they are compatible with the asphalt and/or concrete.

If the material is to be used on asphalt and/or concrete pavements and it is not formulated for this use, cracking and separation of the material from sawed wireway kerfs and around light fixtures may occur.

MATERIALS

606-2.1 Curing. When pre-warmed to 77°F (25°C), mixed, and placed in accordance with manufacturer's directions, the materials shall cure at temperatures of 45°F (7°C) or above without the application of external heat.

606-2.2 Storage. The adhesive components shall not be stored at temperatures over 86°F (30°C), unless otherwise specified by the manufacturer.

606-2.3 Caution. Installation and use shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's recommended procedures. Avoid prolonged or repeated contact with skin. In case of contact, wash with soap and flush with water. If taken internally, call doctor. Keep away from heat or flame. Avoid vapor. Use in well-ventilated areas. Keep in cool place. Keep away from children.

606-2.4 Characteristics. When mixed and cured in accordance with the manufacturer's directions, the materials shall have the following properties shown in Table 1.

Table 1. Property Requirements

Physical or Electrical Property	Minimum	Maximum	ASTM Method
Tensile			
Portland cement concrete	1,000 psi (70 kg/sq cm)		D 638
Asphalt concrete	500 psi (35 kg/sq cm)		
Elongation			
Portland cement concrete		See note ¹	D 638
Asphalt concrete	50%		D 638
Coef. of cub. exp. cu. cm/cu. cm/°C	0.00090	0.00120	D 1168
Coef. of lin. exp. cm/cm/°C	0.000030	0.000040	D 1168
Dielectric strength, short time test	350 volts/mil.		D 149
Arc resistance	125 sec		
Pull-off			
Adhesion to steel	1,000 psi (70 kg/sq cm)		
Adhesion to Portland cement concrete	200 psi (14 kg/sq cm)		
Adhesion to asphalt concrete	No test available.		
Adhesion to aluminum	250 psi		

¹ 20% or more (without filler) for formulations to be supplied for areas subject to freezing.

SAMPLING, INSPECTION, AND TEST PROCEDURES

606-3.1 Tensile properties. Tests for tensile strength and elongation shall be conducted in accordance with ASTM D638.

606-3.2 Expansion. Tests for coefficients of linear and cubical expansion shall be conducted in accordance with, Method B, except that mercury shall be used instead of glycerine. The test specimen shall be mixed in the proportions specified by the manufacturer, and cured in a glass tub approximately 2 inch (50 mm) long by 3/8 inch (9 mm) in diameter. The interior of the tube shall be precoated with a silicone mold release agent. The hardened sample shall be removed from the tube and aged at room temperature for one (1) week before conducting the test. The test temperature range shall be from 35°F (2°C) to 140°F (60°C).

606-3.3 Test for dielectric strength. Test for dielectric strength shall be conducted in accordance with ASTM D149 for sealing compounds to be furnished for sealing electrical wires in pavement.

606-3.4 Test for arc resistance. Test for arc resistance shall be conducted for sealing compounds to be furnished for sealing electrical wires in pavement.

606-3.5 Test for adhesion to steel. The ends of two smooth, clean, steel specimens of convenient size (1 inch by 1 inch by 6 inch) (25 mm by 25 mm by 150 mm) would be satisfactory when bonded together

with adhesive mixture and allowed to cure at room temperature for a period of time to meet formulation requirements and then tested to failure on a Riehle (or similar) tensile tester. The thickness of adhesive to be tested shall be 1/4 inch (6 mm).

606-3.6 Adhesion to Portland cement concrete

a. Concrete test block preparation. The aggregate grading shall be as shown in Table 2.

The coarse aggregate shall consist of crushed rock having a minimum of 75% of the particles with at least one fractured face and having a water absorption of not more than 1.5%. The fine aggregate shall consist of crushed sand manufactured from the same parent rock as the coarse aggregate. The concrete shall have a water-cement ratio of 5.5 gallons (21 liters) of water per bag of cement, a cement factor of 6, ± 0.5 , bags of cement per cubic yard (0.76 cubic meter) of concrete, and a slump of 2-1/2 inch (60 mm), $\pm 1/2$ inch (60 mm ± 12 mm). The ratio of fine aggregate to total aggregate shall be approximately 40% by solid volume. The air content shall be 5.0%, $\pm 0.5\%$, and it shall be obtained by the addition to the batch of an air-entraining admixture such as Vinsol® resin. The mold shall be of metal and shall be provided with a metal base plate.

Means shall be provided for securing the base plate to the mold. The assembled mold and base plate shall be watertight and shall be oiled with mineral oil before use. The inside measurement of the mold shall be such that several one inch (25 mm) by 2-inch (75 mm) by 3-inch (25 mm by 50 mm by 75 mm) test blocks can be cut from the specimen with a concrete saw having a diamond blade. The concrete shall be prepared and cured in accordance with ASTM C192.

Table 2. Aggregate for Bond Test Blocks

Type	Sieve Size	Percent Passing
Coarse Aggregate	3/4 inch (19.0 mm)	97 to 100
	1/2 inch (12.5 mm)	63 to 69
	3/8 inch (9.5 mm)	30 to 36
	No. 4 (4.75 mm)	0 to 3
Fine Aggregate	No. 4 (4.75 mm)	100
	No. 8 (2.36 mm)	82 to 88
	No. 16 (1.18 mm)	60 to 70
	No. 30 (600 μ m)	40 to 50
	No. 50 (300 μ m)	16 to 26
	No. 100 (150 μ m)	5 to 9

b. Bond test. Prior to use, oven-dry the test blocks to constant weight at a temperature of 220°F to 230°F (104°C to 110°C), cool to room temperature, 73.4°F $\pm 3^\circ$ F (23°C $\pm 1.6^\circ$ C), in a desiccator, and clean the surface of the blocks of film or powder by vigorous brushing with a stiff-bristled fiber brush. Two test blocks shall be bonded together on the one inch by 3 inch (25 mm by 75 mm) sawed face with the adhesive mixture and allowed to cure at room temperature for a period of time to meet formulation requirements and then tested to failure in a Riehle (or similar) tensile tester. The thickness of the adhesive to be tested shall be 1/4 inch (6 mm).

606-3.7 Compatibility with asphalt mix. Test for compatibility with asphalt in accordance with ASTM D5329.

606-3.8 Adhesive compounds - Contractor's responsibility. The Contractor shall furnish the vendor's certified test reports for each batch of material delivered to the project. The report shall certify that the

material meets specification requirements and is suitable for use with [concrete] [asphalt concrete] pavements. The report shall be provided to and accepted by the Resident Project Representative (RPR) before use of the material. In addition, the Contractor shall obtain a statement from the supplier or manufacturer that guarantees the material for one year. The supplier or manufacturer shall furnish evidence that the material has performed satisfactorily on other projects.

606-3.9 Application. Adhesive shall be applied on a dry, clean surface, free of grease, dust, and other loose particles. The method of mixing and application shall be in strict accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. When used with Item P-605, such as light can installation, Item P-605 shall not be applied until the Item P-606 has fully cured.

Installation methods such as surface preparation, mixing ratios, and pot life are as important to satisfactory performance as the properties of the material itself. Therefore, the Engineer may wish to require a manufacturer's representative to be present during the initial installation of the material to ensure the installation procedures are in accordance with the manufacturer's directions.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

606-4.1 The adhesive compound shall be measured by the [pound (kg)] [gallon (l)] of adhesive as specified, in place, complete and accepted. When required in the installation of an in-runway lighting system or portion thereof, no measurement will be made for direct payment of adhesive, as the cost of furnishing and installing shall be considered as a subsidiary obligation in the completion of the installation.

BASIS OF PAYMENT

606-5.1 Payment shall be made, where applicable, at the contract unit price per [pound (kg)] [gallon (l)] for the adhesive. This price shall be full compensation for furnishing all materials, and for all preparation, delivering, and application of these materials, and for all labor, equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete the item.

Item P-606-5.1 Adhesive Compound - per [pound (kg)] [gallon (l)]

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM International (ASTM)

ASTM C192	Standard Practice for Making and Curing Concrete Test Specimens in the Laboratory
ASTM D149	Standard Test Method for Dielectric Breakdown Voltage and Dielectric Strength of Solid Electrical Insulating Materials at Commercial Power Frequencies
ASTM D638	Standard Test Method for Tensile Properties of Plastics

ASTM D5329

Standard Test Methods for Sealants and Fillers, Hot-applied, for Joints and Cracks in Asphaltic and Portland Cement Concrete Pavements

END OF ITEM P-606

Page Intentionally Blank

Item P-610 Concrete for Miscellaneous Structures

Item P-610 shall be used for airfield signage bases, NAVAID foundations, drainage structures, and other miscellaneous airfield concrete other than airfield pavements.

Item P-501 shall be used for any pavements on grade including individual slab replacements.

For small projects less than 20 cubic yards (15 m³), concrete meeting state department of transportation specifications for structures may be used.

DESCRIPTION

610-1.1 This item shall consist of concrete and reinforcement, as shown on the plans, prepared and constructed in accordance with these specifications. This specification shall be used for all concrete other than airfield pavement which are cast-in-place.

MATERIALS

610-2.1 General. Only approved materials, conforming to the requirements of these specifications, shall be used in the work. Materials may be subject to inspection and tests at any time during their preparation or use. The source of all materials shall be approved by the Resident Project Representative (RPR) before delivery or use in the work. Representative preliminary samples of the materials shall be submitted by the Contractor, when required, for examination and test. Materials shall be stored and handled to ensure preservation of their quality and fitness for use and shall be located to facilitate prompt inspection. All equipment for handling and transporting materials and concrete must be clean before any material or concrete is placed in them.

The use of pit-run aggregates shall not be permitted unless the pit-run aggregate has been screened and washed, and all fine and coarse aggregates stored separately and kept clean. The mixing of different aggregates from different sources in one storage stockpile or alternating batches of different aggregates shall not be permitted.

a. Reactivity. Fine aggregate and coarse aggregates to be used in all concrete shall have been tested separately within six months of the project in accordance with ASTM C1260. Test results shall be submitted to the RPR. The aggregate shall be considered innocuous if the expansion of test specimens, tested in accordance with ASTM C1260, does not exceed 0.08% at 14 days (16 days from casting). If the expansion either or both test specimen is greater than 0.08% at 14 days, but less than 0.20%, a minimum of 25% of Type F fly ash, or between 40% and 55% of slag cement shall be used in the concrete mix.

If the expansion is greater than 0.20%, the aggregates shall not be used, and test results for other aggregates must be submitted for evaluation; or aggregates that meet P-501 reactivity test requirements may be utilized.

610-2.2 Coarse aggregate. The coarse aggregate for concrete shall meet the requirements of ASTM C33 and the requirements of Table 4, Class Designation 5S; and the grading requirements shown below, as required for the project.

Coarse Aggregate Grading Requirements

Maximum Aggregate Size	ASTM C33, Table 3 Grading Requirements (Size No.)
1 1/2 inch (37.5 mm)	467 or 4 and 67
1 inch (25 mm)	57
3/4 inch (19 mm)	67
1/2 inch (12.5 mm)	7

610-2.2.1 Coarse Aggregate susceptibility to durability (D) cracking. [Not used.]

[Coarse aggregate may only be accepted from sources that have a 20-year service history for the same gradation to be supplied with no history of D-Cracking. Aggregates that do not have a 20-year record of service free from major repairs (less than 5% of slabs replaced) in similar conditions without D-cracking shall not be used unless the material currently being produced has a durability factor greater than or equal to 95 per ASTM C666. The Contractor shall submit a current certification and test results to verify the aggregate acceptability. Test results will only be accepted from a State Department of Transportation (DOT) materials laboratory or an accredited laboratory. Certification and test results which are not dated or which are over one (1) year old or which are for different gradations will not be accepted.

Crushed granite, calcite cemented sandstone, quartzite, basalt, diabase, rhyolite or trap rock are considered to meet the D-cracking test requirements but must meet all other quality tests specified in Item P-501.]

In areas that have no history of D-cracking, paragraph 610-2.2.1 not used.

If project is in an area of known D-cracking problems, select the second option above.

610-2.3 Fine aggregate. The fine aggregate for concrete shall meet all fine aggregate requirements of ASTM C33.

610-2.4 Cement. Cement shall conform to the requirements of [___] Type [___].

The Engineer shall specify all cement types appropriate for the project

ASTM C150 - Type I, IA, II, IIA, III, IIIA; V

ASTM C595 - Type IP, IP-A, IS, IS-A, IL.

ASTM C1157 – Types GU, HS, MH.

Other cements may be specified with concurrence of the FAA.

The chemical requirements for all cement types specified should meet suitable criteria for deleterious activity. Low alkali cements (less than 0.6% equivalent alkalis).

Total Alkalies (Na₂O and K₂O) of the cement secured for the production of concrete shall be independently verified in accordance with ASTM C114 or ASTM C1365.

610-2.5 Cementitious materials.

a. Fly ash. Fly ash shall meet the requirements of ASTM C618, with the exception of loss of ignition, where the maximum shall be less than 6%. Fly ash shall have a Calcium Oxide (CaO) content of less than [15%] and a total available alkali content less than 3% per ASTM C311. Fly ash produced in furnace operations using liming materials or soda ash (sodium carbonate) as an additive shall not be acceptable. The Contractor shall furnish the previous three most recent, consecutive ASTM C618 reports for each source of fly ash proposed in the concrete mix, and shall furnish each additional report as they become available during the project. The reports can be used for acceptance or the material may be tested independently by the RPR.

b. Slag cement (ground granulated blast furnace (GGBF)). Slag cement shall conform to ASTM C989, Grade 100 or Grade 120. Slag cement shall be used only at a rate between 25% and 55% of the total cementitious material by mass.

610-2.6 Water. Water used in mixing or curing shall be from potable water sources. Other sources shall be tested in accordance with ASTM C1602 prior to use.

610-2.7 Admixtures. The Contractor shall submit certificates indicating that the material to be furnished meets all of the requirements indicated below. In addition, the RPR may require the Contractor to submit complete test data from an approved laboratory showing that the material to be furnished meets all of the requirements of the cited specifications. Subsequent tests may be made of samples taken by the RPR from the supply of the material being furnished or proposed for use on the work to determine whether the admixture is uniform in quality with that approved.

a. Air-entraining admixtures. Air-entraining admixtures shall meet the requirements of ASTM C260 and shall consistently entrain the air content in the specified ranges under field conditions. The air-entrainment agent and any water reducer admixture shall be compatible.

b. Water-reducing admixtures. Water-reducing admixture shall meet the requirements of ASTM C494, Type A, B, or D. ASTM C494, Type F and G high range water reducing admixtures and ASTM C1017 flowable admixtures shall not be used.

c. Other chemical admixtures. The use of set retarding, and set-accelerating admixtures shall be approved by the RPR. Retarding shall meet the requirements of ASTM C494, Type A, B, or D and set-accelerating shall meet the requirements of ASTM C494, Type C. Calcium chloride and admixtures containing calcium chloride shall not be used.

610-2.8 Premolded joint material. Premolded joint material for expansion joints shall meet the requirements of ASTM [____].

The Engineer shall designate either ASTM D1751 or ASTM D1752.

610-2.9 Joint filler. The filler for joints shall meet the requirements of Item P-605, unless otherwise specified.

610-2.10 Steel reinforcement. Reinforcing shall consist of [____] conforming to the requirements of [____].

The Engineer shall designate one of the following:

Steel Reinforcement

Reinforcing Steel	ASTM A615, ASTM A706, ASTM A775, ASTM A934
Welded Steel Wire Fabric	ASTM A1064, ASTM A884
Welded Deformed Steel Fabric	ASTM A1064
Bar Mats	ASTM A184 or ASTM A704

Delete this section when not applicable to the project.

610-2.11 Materials for curing concrete. Curing materials shall conform to [____].

The Engineer shall select one or more of the following:

Materials for Curing

Waterproof paper	ASTM C171
Clear or white Polyethylene Sheeting	ASTM C171
White-pigmented Liquid Membrane-Forming Compound, Type 2, Class B	ASTM C309

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

610-3.1 General. The Contractor shall furnish all labor, materials, and services necessary for, and incidental to, the completion of all work as shown on the drawings and specified here. All machinery and equipment used by the Contractor on the work, shall be of sufficient size to meet the requirements of the work. All work shall be subject to the inspection and approval of the RPR.

610-3.2 Concrete Mixture. The concrete shall develop a compressive strength of [4000] psi [28 MPa] in 28 days as determined by test cylinders made in accordance with ASTM C31 and tested in accordance with ASTM C39. The concrete shall contain not less than 470 pounds of cementitious material per cubic yard (280 kg per cubic meter). The water cementitious ratio shall not exceed 0.45 by weight. The air content of the concrete shall be 5% +/- 1.2% as determined by ASTM C231 and shall have a slump of not more than 4 inches (100 mm) as determined by ASTM C143.

The Engineer shall designate the compressive strength. The minimum allowable strength is 4,000 psi (28 MPa); or higher as needed for the applications on the project. Air content may be adjusted higher in locations with severe freeze/thaw conditions.

610-3.3 Mixing. Concrete may be mixed at the construction site, at a central point, or wholly or in part in truck mixers. The concrete shall be mixed and delivered in accordance with the requirements of ASTM C94 or ASTM C685.

The concrete shall be mixed only in quantities required for immediate use. Concrete shall not be mixed while the air temperature is below 40°F (4°C) without the RPRs approval. If approval is granted for mixing under such conditions, aggregates or water, or both, shall be heated and the concrete shall be placed at a temperature not less than 50°F (10°C) nor more than 100°F (38°C). The Contractor shall be held responsible for any defective work, resulting from freezing or injury in any manner during placing and curing, and shall replace such work at his expense.

Retempering of concrete by adding water or any other material is not permitted.

The rate of delivery of concrete to the job shall be sufficient to allow uninterrupted placement of the concrete.

610-3.4 Forms. Concrete shall not be placed until all the forms and reinforcements have been inspected and approved by the RPR. Forms shall be of suitable material and shall be of the type, size, shape, quality, and strength to build the structure as shown on the plans. The forms shall be true to line and grade and shall be mortar-tight and sufficiently rigid to prevent displacement and sagging between supports. The surfaces of forms shall be smooth and free from irregularities, dents, sags, and holes. The Contractor shall be responsible for their adequacy.

The internal form ties shall be arranged so no metal will show in the concrete surface or discolor the surface when exposed to weathering when the forms are removed. All forms shall be wetted with water or with a non-staining mineral oil, which shall be applied immediately before the concrete is placed. Forms shall be constructed so they can be removed without injuring the concrete or concrete surface.

610-3.5 Placing reinforcement. All reinforcement shall be accurately placed, as shown on the plans, and shall be firmly held in position during concrete placement. Bars shall be fastened together at intersections. The reinforcement shall be supported by approved metal chairs. Shop drawings, lists, and bending details shall be supplied by the Contractor when required.

610-3.6 Embedded items. Before placing concrete, all embedded items shall be firmly and securely fastened in place as indicated. All embedded items shall be clean and free from coating, rust, scale, oil, or any foreign matter. The concrete shall be spaded and consolidated around and against embedded items. The embedding of wood shall not be allowed.

610-3.7 Concrete Consistency. The Contractor shall monitor the consistency of the concrete delivered to the project site; collect each batch ticket; check temperature; and perform slump tests on each truck at the project site in accordance with ASTM C143.

610-3.8 Placing concrete. All concrete shall be placed during daylight hours, unless otherwise approved. The concrete shall not be placed until the depth and condition of foundations, the adequacy of forms and falsework, and the placing of the steel reinforcing have been approved by the RPR. Concrete shall be placed as soon as practical after mixing, but in no case later than one (1) hour after water has been added to the mix. The method and manner of placing shall avoid segregation and displacement of the reinforcement. Troughs, pipes, and chutes shall be used as an aid in placing concrete when necessary. The concrete shall not be dropped from a height of more than 5 feet (1.5 m). Concrete shall be deposited as nearly as practical in its final position to avoid segregation due to rehandling or flowing. Do not subject concrete to procedures which cause segregation. Concrete shall be placed on clean, damp surfaces, free from running water, or on a properly consolidated soil foundation.

610-3.9 Vibration. Vibration shall follow the guidelines in American Concrete Institute (ACI) Committee 309R, Guide for Consolidation of Concrete.

610-3.10 Joints. Joints shall be constructed as indicated on the plans.

610-3.11 Finishing. All exposed concrete surfaces shall be true, smooth, and free from open or rough areas, depressions, or projections. All concrete horizontal plane surfaces shall be brought flush to the proper elevation with the finished top surface struck-off with a straightedge and floated.

610-3.12 Curing and protection. All concrete shall be properly cured in accordance with the recommendations in American Concrete Institute (ACI) 308R, Guide to External Curing of Concrete. The concrete shall be protected from damage until project acceptance.

610-3.13 Cold weather placing. When concrete is placed at temperatures below 40°F (4°C), follow the cold weather concreting recommendations found in ACI 306R, Cold Weather Concreting.

610-3.14 Hot weather placing. When concrete is placed in hot weather greater than 85°F (30 °C), follow the hot weather concreting recommendations found in ACI 305R, Hot Weather Concreting.

QUALITY ASSURANCE (QA)

610-4.1 Quality Assurance sampling and testing. Concrete for each day's placement will be accepted on the basis of the compressive strength specified in paragraph 610-3.2. The RPR will sample the concrete in accordance with ASTM C172; test the slump in accordance with ASTM C143; [test air content in accordance with ASTM C231;] make and cure compressive strength specimens in accordance with ASTM C31; and test in accordance with ASTM C39. The QA testing agency will meet the requirements of ASTM C1077.

The Contractor shall provide adequate facilities for the initial curing of cylinders.

610-4.2 Defective work. Any defective work that cannot be satisfactorily repaired as determined by the RPR, shall be removed and replaced at the Contractor's expense. Defective work includes, but is not limited to, uneven dimensions, honeycombing and other voids on the surface or edges of the concrete.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

610-5.1 Concrete shall be [measured by the number of cubic yards (cubic meters) based on batch tickets of material] [measured by the number of square yards (square meters) based on the dimensions shown on the

plans] [lump sum] [considered incidental and no separate measurement shall be made.] of concrete complete in place and accepted.

BASIS OF PAYMENT

610-6.1 Payment shall be made at the contract price [by the number of cubic yards (cubic meters) based on batch tickets of material] [by the number of square yards (square meters)] [lump sum] [concrete shall be considered incidental and no separate payment shall be made.] This price shall be full compensation for furnishing all materials including reinforcement and embedded items and for all preparation, delivery, installation, and curing of these materials, and for all labor, equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete the item.

Payment will be made under:

Item P-610-6.1	Concrete, [per cubic yards (cubic meters)] [per square yards (square meters)] [lump sum] [incidental to other work items]

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM International (ASTM)

ASTM A184	Standard Specification for Welded Deformed Steel Bar Mats for Concrete Reinforcement
ASTM A615	Standard Specification for Deformed and Plain Carbon-Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement
ASTM A704	Standard Specification for Welded Steel Plain Bar or Rod Mats for Concrete Reinforcement
ASTM A706	Standard Specification for Low-Alloy Steel Deformed and Plain Bars for Concrete Reinforcement
ASTM A775	Standard Specification for Epoxy-Coated Steel Reinforcing Bars
ASTM A884	Standard Specification for Epoxy-Coated Steel Wire and Welded Wire Reinforcement
ASTM A934	Standard Specification for Epoxy-Coated Prefabricated Steel Reinforcing Bars
ASTM A1064	Standard Specification for Carbon-Steel Wire and Welded Wire Reinforcement, Plain and Deformed, for Concrete
ASTM C31	Standard Practice for Making and Curing Concrete Test Specimens in the Field
ASTM C33	Standard Specification for Concrete Aggregates
ASTM C39	Standard Test Method for Compressive Strength of Cylindrical Concrete Specimens

ASTM C94	Standard Specification for Ready-Mixed Concrete
ASTM C136	Standard Test Method for Sieve or Screen Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates
ASTM C114	Standard Test Methods for Chemical Analysis of Hydraulic Cement
ASTM C136	Standard Test Method for Sieve Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates
ASTM C143	Standard Test Method for Slump of Hydraulic-Cement Concrete
ASTM C150	Standard Specification for Portland Cement
ASTM C171	Standard Specification for Sheet Materials for Curing Concrete
ASTM C172	Standard Practice for Sampling Freshly Mixed Concrete
ASTM C231	Standard Test Method for Air Content of Freshly Mixed Concrete by the Pressure Method
ASTM C260	Standard Specification for Air-Entraining Admixtures for Concrete
ASTM C309	Standard Specification for Liquid Membrane-Forming Compounds for Curing Concrete
ASTM C311	Standard Test Methods for Sampling and Testing Fly Ash or Natural Pozzolans for Use in Portland-Cement Concrete
ASTM C494	Standard Specification for Chemical Admixtures for Concrete
ASTM C618	Standard Specification for Coal Fly Ash and Raw or Calcined Natural Pozzolan for Use in Concrete
ASTM C666	Standard Test Method for Resistance of Concrete to Rapid Freezing and Thawing
ASTM C685	Standard Specification for Concrete Made by Volumetric Batching and Continuous Mixing
ASTM C989	Standard Specification for Slag Cement for Use in Concrete and Mortars
ASTM C1017	Standard Specification for Chemical Admixtures for Use in Producing Flowing Concrete
ASTM C1077	Standard Practice for Agencies Testing Concrete and Concrete Aggregates for Use in Construction and Criteria for Testing Agency Evaluation
ASTM C1157	Standard Performance Specification for Hydraulic Cement
ASTM C1260	Standard Test Method for Potential Alkali Reactivity of Aggregates (Mortar-Bar Method)
ASTM C1365	Standard Test Method for Determination of the Proportion of Phases in Portland Cement and Portland-Cement Clinker Using X-Ray Powder Diffraction Analysis
ASTM C1602	Standard Specification for Mixing Water Used in the Production of Hydraulic Cement Concrete
ASTM D1751	Standard Specification for Preformed Expansion Joint Filler for Concrete Paving and Structural Construction (Nonextruding and Resilient Asphalt Types)

ASTM D1752	Standard Specification for Preformed Sponge Rubber Cork and Recycled PVC Expansion Joint Fillers for Concrete Paving and Structural Construction

American Concrete Institute (ACI)

ACI 305R	Hot Weather Concreting
ACI 306R	Cold Weather Concreting
ACI 308R	Guide to External Curing of Concrete
ACI 309R	Guide for Consolidation of Concrete

END OF ITEM P-610

Page Intentionally Blank

Item P-620 Runway and Taxiway Marking

DESCRIPTION

620-1.1 This item shall consist of the preparation and painting of numbers, markings, and stripes on the surface of runways, taxiways, and aprons, in accordance with these specifications and at the locations shown on the plans, or as directed by the Resident Project Representative (RPR). The terms “paint” and “marking material” as well as “painting” and “application of markings” are interchangeable throughout this specification.

MATERIALS

620-2.1 Materials acceptance. The Contractor shall furnish manufacturer’s certified test reports, for materials shipped to the project. The certified test reports shall include a statement that the materials meet the specification requirements. This certification along with a copy of the paint manufacturer’s surface preparation; marking materials, including adhesion, flow promoting and/or floatation additive; and application requirements must be submitted and approved by the Resident Project Representative (RPR) prior to the initial application of markings. The reports can be used for material acceptance or the RPR may perform verification testing. The reports shall not be interpreted as a basis for payment. The Contractor shall notify the RPR upon arrival of a shipment of materials to the site. All material shall arrive in sealed containers that are easily quantifiable for inspection by the RPR.

620-2.2 Marking materials.

Table 1. Marking Materials

Paint ¹				Glass Beads ²	
Type	Color	Fed Std. 595 Number	Application Rate Maximum	Type	Application Rate Minimum
*	*	*	*	*	*
*	*	*	*	*	*

¹ See paragraph 620-2.2a

² See paragraph 620-2.2b

Make the appropriate selections for paint type, color, Fed Std 595 number, application rates, and glass bead type and application rates and inserted into Table 1. Asterisks denote insert points.

a. Paint. Paint shall be [waterborne] [epoxy] [methacrylate] [solvent-base] [and] [preformed thermoplastic] in accordance with the requirements of this paragraph. Paint colors shall comply with Federal Standard No. 595. []

The Engineer must specify paint type (s), colors and glass beads to be used for the project and populate that information above in Table 1. When more than one paint type is specified, the plans should clearly indicate paint type, paint color and bead type required for each marking.

Select type of paint.

Types: Waterborne, Epoxy, Methacrylate, solvent-base, or preformed Thermoplastic

For waterborne or solvent based paints, specify Type I, II, or III:

- Type I intended for locations where slower tracking is not a problem.
- Type II intended for locations where faster curing is desirable.
- Type III intended for locations that require a thicker, more durable coating.

1. Select paint color(s) from the following Table:

Paint Color	Fed Std. No 595 Color Number
White	37925
Red	31136
Yellow	33538 or 33655
Black	37038
Pink	1 part 31136 to 2 parts 37925
Green	34108

Waterborne or solvent base black paint should be used to outline a border at least 6 inches (150 mm) wide around markings on all light-colored pavements. Preformed thermoplastic markings shall have a non-reflectorized black border integral to the marking.

Select appropriate application rates for type of paint and bead selected:**Application Rates for Paint and Glass Beads for Table 1**

Paint		Glass Beads		
Type	Application Rate Maximum	Type I, Gradation A¹ Minimum	Type III Minimum	Type IV¹ Minimum
Waterborne Type I or II	115 ft ² /gal (2.8 m ² /l)	7 lb/gal (0.85 kg/l)	10 lb/gal (1.2 kg/l)	--
Waterborne Type III	90 ft ² /gal (2.2 m ² /l)	7 lb/gal (0.85 kg/l)	8 lb/gal (1.0 kg/l)	
Waterborne Type III	55 ft ² /gal (1.4 m ² /l)		6 lb/gal (.8 kg/l)	5 lb/gal (.7 kg/l)
Solvent Base	115 ft ² /gal (2.8 m ² /l)	7 lb/gal (0.85 kg/l)	10 lb/gal (1.2 kg/l)	--
Solvent Base	55 ft ² /gal (2.2 m ² /l)	--	--	5 lb/gal (.7 kg/l)
Epoxy	90 ft ² /gal (2.2 m ² /l)	15 lb/gal (1.8 kg/l)	20 lb/gal (2.4 kg/l)	16 lb/gal (1.9 kg/l)
Methacrylate	45 ft ² /gal (1.1 m ² /l)	15 lb/gal (1.8 kg/l)	20 lb/gal (2.4 kg/l)	16 lb/gal (1.9 kg/l)
Methacrylate Splatter-Profile	24ft ² /gal. (0.6 m ² /l)	8 lb/gal. (0.1 kg/l)	10 lb/gal. (1.2 kg/l)	10 lb/gal (1.2 kg/l)
Temporary Marking Waterborne Type I or II	230 ft ² /gal (5.6 m ² /l)	No beads	No beads	No beads

¹Glass bead application rate for Red and Pink paint shall be reduced by 2 lb/gal (0.24 kg/l) for Type I and Type IV beads.

The Engineer shall specify the time period in paragraph 620-3.5 in order to allow adequate curing of the pavement surface. The Engineer should contact the paint manufacturer to determine the wait period. A 24- to 30-day waiting period is recommended for all types of paint used for pavement marking. The final application should occur after the waiting period has passed. The final marking application must be at a rate equal to 100% of the full application rate with glass beads.

Markings may be required before paving operations are complete. The Engineer may wish to specify waterborne or solvent-based materials for temporary markings at 30% to 50% of the specified application rates. Glass beads will not adhere well at the low application rates for temporary markings.

CAUTION: Prior to reopening pavements at Part 139 airports verify that all markings comply with Part 139 requirements. Temporary markings not in compliance with AC 150/5340-1 will require a NOTAM regarding any non-standard marking be issued. For example, temporary markings without beads.

When painting Porous Friction Course, the paint should be applied to the pavement in two coats from opposite directions. The first coat should be applied at a rate equal to 50% of the full application rate with no glass beads. The second coat should be applied from the opposite direction at a rate equal to 100% of the full application rate with glass beads.

Preformed thermoplastic pavement markings shall yield at least 225 mcd/m²/lux on white markings at installation and at least 100 mcd/m²/lux on yellow markings at installation.

Retroreflectivity shall be measured by a portable retroreflectometer according to ASTM E1710 and the practices in ASTM D7585 shall be followed for taking retroreflectivity readings with a portable retroreflectometer and computing measurement averages. A vehicle-mounted retroreflectometer may also be used.

[**Waterborne.** Paint shall meet the requirements of Federal Specification TT-P-1952F, [Type I] [Type II] [Type III]. The non-volatile portion of the vehicle for all paint types shall be composed of a 100% acrylic polymer as determined by infrared spectral analysis. [The acrylic resin used for Type III shall be 100% cross linking acrylic as evidenced by infrared peaks at wavelengths 1568, 1624, and 1672 cm⁻¹ with intensities equal to those produced by an acrylic resin known to be 100% cross linking.]

[**Epoxy.** Paint shall be a two component, minimum 99% solids type system conforming to the following:

(1) **Pigments.** Component A. Percent by weight.

(a) **White:**

- Titanium Dioxide, ASTM D476, type II shall be 18% minimum (16.5% minimum at 100% purity).

(b) **Yellow and Colors:**

- Titanium Dioxide, ASTM D476, type II shall be 14 to 17%.
- Epoxy resin shall be 75 to 79%.
- Organic yellow, other colors, and tinting as required to meet color standard.

(2) **Epoxy content.** Component A. The weight per epoxy equivalent, when tested in accordance with ASTM D1652 shall be the manufacturer's target ± 50 .

(3) **Amine number.** Component B. When tested in accordance with ASTM D2074 shall be the manufacturer's target ± 50 .

(4) **Prohibited materials.** The manufacturer shall certify that the product does not contain mercury, lead, hexavalent chromium,

halogenated solvents, nor any carcinogen as defined in 29 CFR 1910.1200 in amounts exceeding permissible limits as specified in relevant federal regulations.

(5) Daylight directional reflectance.

(a) White: The daylight directional reflectance of the white paint shall not be less than 75% (relative to magnesium oxide), when tested in accordance with ASTM E2302.

(b) Yellow: The daylight directional reflectance of the yellow paint shall not be less than 55% (relative to magnesium oxide), when tested in accordance with ASTM E2302. The x and y values shall be consistent with the federal Hegman yellow color standard chart for traffic yellow standard 33538, or shall be consistent with the tolerance listed below:

x	.462	x	.470	x	.479	x	.501
y	.438	y	.455	y	.428	y	.452

(6) Accelerated weathering.

(a) Sample preparation. Apply the paint at a wet film thickness of 0.013-inch (0.33 mm) to four 3 × 6-inch (8 × 15 cm) aluminum panels prepared as described in ASTM E2302. Air dry the sample 48 hours under standard conditions.

(b) Testing conditions. Test in accordance with ASTM G154 using both Ultra Violet (UV-B) Light and condensate exposure, 72 hours total, alternating four (4) hour UV exposure at 140°F (60°C), and four (4) hours condensate exposure at 104°F (40°C).

(c) Evaluation. Remove the samples and condition for 24 hours under standard conditions. Determine the directional reflectance and color match using the procedures in paragraph 5 above. Evaluate for conformance with the color requirements.

(7) Volatile organic content. Determine the volatile organic content in accordance with 40 CFR Part 60 Appendix A, Method 24.

(8) Dry opacity. Use ASTM E2302. The wet film thickness shall be 0.015 inch (0.38 mm). The minimum opacity for white and colors shall be 0.92.

(9) Abrasion resistance. Subject the panels prepared in paragraph 620-2.2b(6) to the abrasion test in accordance with ASTM D968, Method A, except that the inside diameter of the metal guide tube shall be from 0.747 to 0.750 inch (18.97 to 19.05 mm). Five liters (17.5 lb (7.94 kg)) of unused sand shall be used for each test panel. The test shall be run on two test panels Both baked and weathered paint films shall require not less than 150 liters (525 lbs (239 kg)) of sand for the removal of the paint films.

(10) Hardness, shore. Hardness shall be at least 80 when tested in accordance with ASTM D2240.]

[**Methacrylate.** Paint shall be a two component, minimum 99% solids-type system conforming to the following:

(1) Pigments. Component A. Percent by weight.

(a) White:

- Titanium Dioxide, ASTM D476, type II shall be 10% minimum.
- Methacrylate resin shall be 18% minimum.

(b) Yellow and Colors:

- Titanium Dioxide, ASTM D476, type II shall be 1% minimum.
Organic yellow, other colors, and tinting as required to meet color standard.
- Methacrylate resin shall be 18% minimum.

(2) Prohibited materials. The manufacturer shall certify that the product does not contain mercury, lead, hexavalent chromium, halogenated solvents, nor any carcinogen as defined in 29 CFR 1910.1200 in amounts exceeding permissible limits as specified in relevant federal regulations.

(3) Daylight directional reflectance:

(a) White: The daylight directional reflectance of the white paint shall not be less than 80% (relative to magnesium oxide), when tested in accordance with ASTM E2302.

(b) Yellow: The daylight directional reflectance of the yellow paint shall not be less than 55% (relative to magnesium oxide), when tested in accordance with ASTM E2302. The x and y values shall be consistent with the federal Hegman yellow color standard chart for traffic yellow standard 33538, or shall be consistent with the tolerance listed below:

x	.462	x	.470	x	.479	x	.501
y	.438	y	.455	y	.428	y	.452

(4) Accelerated weathering.

(a) Sample preparation. Apply the paint at a wet film thickness of 0.013-inch (0.33 mm) to four 3 × 6-inch (8 × 15 cm) aluminum panels prepared as described in ASTM E2302. Air dry the sample 48 hours under standard conditions.

(b) Testing conditions. Test in accordance with ASTM G154 using both Ultra Violet (UV-B) Light and condensate exposure, 72 hours total, alternating four (4) hour UV exposure at 140°F (60°C), and four (4) hours condensate exposure at 104°F (40°C).

(c) Evaluation. Remove the samples and condition for 24 hours under standard conditions. Determine the directional reflectance and color match using the procedures in paragraph 3 above. Evaluate for conformance with the color requirements.

(5) Volatile organic content. Determine the volatile organic content in accordance with 40 CFR Part 60 Appendix A, Method 24.

(6) Dry opacity. Use ASTM E2302. The wet film thickness shall be 0.015 inch (0.38 mm). The minimum opacity for white and colors shall be 0.92.

(7) Abrasion resistance. Subject the panels prepared in paragraph 620-2.2c(4) to the abrasion test in accordance with ASTM D968, Method A, except that the inside diameter of the metal guide tube shall be from 0.747 to 0.750 inch (18.97 to 19.05 mm). Five liters (17.5 lb (7.94 kg)) of unused sand shall be used for each test panel. The test shall be run on two test panels Both baked and weathered paint films shall require not less than 150 liters (525 lbs (239 kg) of sand for the removal of the paint films.

(8) Hardness, shore. Hardness shall be at least 60 when tested in accordance with ASTM D2240.

(9) Additional requirements for methacrylate splatter profiled pavement marking. Pavement markings of this type shall comply with all above requirements for methacrylate paint, except as noted below:

(a) The thickness of the marking will be irregular ranging from 0.000 to 0.250 inches (0.00 to 6.4 mm), applied in a splatter pattern which comprises a minimum of 80% of the visible line (when traveling at 5 mph the line appears to be solid.).

(b) The hardness shall be 48 Shore D minimum.]

[**Solvent-Base.** Paint shall meet the requirements of Commercial Item Description [A-A-2886B Type I, Type II, and Type III].]

[**Preformed Thermoplastic Airport Pavement Markings.** Markings must be composed of ester modified resins in conjunction with aggregates, pigments, and binders that have been factory produced as a finished product. The material must be impervious to degradation by aviation fuels, motor fuels, and lubricants.

(1) The markings must be able to be applied in temperatures as low as 35°F without any special storage, preheating, or treatment of the material before application.

(a) The markings must be supplied with an integral, non-reflectorized black border.

(2) Graded glass beads.

(a) The material must contain a minimum of 30% intermixed graded glass beads by weight. The intermixed beads shall conform to Federal Specification TT-B-1325D, Type I, gradation A and Federal Specification TT-B-1325D, Type IV.

(b) The material must have factory applied coated surface beads in addition to the intermixed beads at a rate of one (1) lb (0.45 kg) (±10%) per 10 square feet (1 sq m). These factory-applied coated surface beads shall have a minimum of 90% true spheres, minimum refractive index of 1.50, and meet the following gradation.

Preformed Thermoplastic Bead Gradation

Size Gradation		Retained, %	Passing, %
U.S. Mesh	µm		
12	1700	0 - 2	98 - 100
14	1400	0 - 3.5	96.5 - 100
16	1180	2 - 25	75 - 98
18	1000	28 - 63	37 - 72
20	850	63 - 72	28 - 37
30	600	67 - 77	23 - 33
50	300	89 - 95	5 - 11
80	200	97 - 100	0 - 3

(3) Heating indicators. The material manufacturer shall provide a method to indicate that the material has achieved satisfactory adhesion and proper bead embedment during application and that the installation procedures have been followed.

(4) Pigments. Percent by weight.

(a) White:

- Titanium Dioxide, ASTM D476, type II shall be 10% minimum.

(b) Yellow and Colors:

- Titanium Dioxide, ASTM D476, type II shall be 1% minimum.
- Organic yellow, other colors, and tinting as required to meet color standard.

(5) Prohibited materials. The manufacturer shall certify that the product does not contain mercury, lead, hexavalent chromium, halogenated solvents, nor any carcinogen as defined in 29 CFR 1910.1200 in amounts exceeding permissible limits as specified in relevant federal regulations.

(6) Daylight directional reflectance.

(a) White: The daylight directional reflectance of the white paint shall not be less than 75% (relative to magnesium oxide), when tested in accordance with ASTM E2302.

(b) Yellow: The daylight directional reflectance of the yellow paint shall not be less than 45% (relative to magnesium oxide), when tested in accordance with ASTM E2302. The x and y values shall be consistent with the federal Hegman yellow color standard chart for traffic yellow standard 33538, or shall be consistent with the tolerance listed below:

x	.462	x	.470	x	.479	x	.501
y	.438	y	.455	y	.428	y	.452

(7) **Skid resistance.** The surface, with properly applied and embedded surface beads, must provide a minimum resistance value of 45 BPN when tested according to ASTM E303.

(8) **Thickness.** The material must be supplied at a nominal thickness of 65 mil (1.7 mm).

(9) **Environmental resistance.** The material must be resistant to deterioration due to exposure to sunlight, water, salt, or adverse weather conditions and impervious to aviation fuels, gasoline, and oil.

(10) **Retroreflectivity.** The material, when applied in accordance with manufacturer's guidelines, must demonstrate a uniform level of nighttime retroreflection when tested in accordance to ASTM E1710.

(11) **Packaging.** Packaging shall protect the material from environmental conditions until installation.

(12) Preformed thermoplastic airport pavement marking requirements.

(a) The markings must be a resilient thermoplastic product with uniformly distributed glass beads throughout the entire cross-sectional area. The markings must be resistant to the detrimental effects of aviation fuels, motor fuels and lubricants, hydraulic fluids, deicers, anti-icers, protective coatings, etc. Lines, legends, and symbols must be capable of being affixed to asphalt and/or Portland cement concrete pavements by the use of a large radiant heater. Colors shall be available as required.

(b) The markings must be capable of conforming to pavement contours, breaks, and faults through the action of airport traffic at normal pavement temperatures. The markings must be capable of fully conforming to grooved pavements, including pavement grooving per advisory circular (AC) 150/5320-12, current version. The markings shall have resealing characteristics, such that it is capable of fusing with itself and previously applied thermoplastics when heated with a heat source per manufacturer's recommendation.

(c) Multicolored markings must consist of interconnected individual pieces of preformed thermoplastic pavement marking material, which through a variety of colors and patterns, make up the desired design. The individual pieces in each large marking segment (typically more than 20 feet (6 m) long) must be factory assembled with a compatible material and interconnected so that in the field it is not necessary to assemble the individual pieces within a marking segment. Obtaining multicolored effect by overlaying materials of different colors is not acceptable due to resulting inconsistent marking thickness and inconsistent application temperature in the marking/substrate interface.

(d) The marking material must set up rapidly, permitting the access route to be re-opened to traffic after application.

(e) The marking material shall have an integral color throughout the thickness of the marking material.]

]

Thermoplastic airport markings will be subject to an Engineering life-cycle cost analysis prior to inclusion in specifications.

b. Reflective media. Glass beads for white and yellow paint shall meet the requirements for Federal Specification TT-B-1325D [Type I, Gradation A][Type III][Type IV, Gradation A].

Glass beads for red and pink paint shall meet the requirements for [Type I, Gradation A][Type IV, Gradation A].

Glass beads shall be treated with all compatible coupling agents recommended by the manufacturers of the paint and reflective media to ensure adhesion and embedment.

Glass beads shall not be used in black and green paint.

Type III glass beads shall not be used in red and pink paint.

The Engineer should insert all that will be used in the project. When more than one bead type is specified, the plans should indicate the bead type for each marking.

Federal Specification TT-B-1325D, Type I, gradation A shall be used when remarking on a frequent basis (at least every six months), and typically yield 300 mcd/m²/lux on white markings at installation and 175 mcd/m²/lux on yellow markings at installation.

Federal Specification TT-B-1325D, Type III. Initial readings typically yield 600 mcd/m²/lux on white markings and 300 mcd/m²/lux on yellow markings at installation and once in service, the reflectance values are approximately the same as Type I beads.

Federal Specification TT-B-1325D, Type IV, gradation A shall be used with TT-P-1952F, Type III paint. The glass beads are larger than either Type I or Type III, thus requiring more of the coating material to properly anchor. The Engineer should consult with the paint and bead manufacturer on the use of adhesion, flow promoting, and/or flotation additives.

Preformed thermoplastic pavement markings should yield at least 225 mcd/m²/lux on white markings at installation and at least 100 mcd/m²/lux on yellow markings at installation.

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

620-3.1 Weather limitations. Painting shall only be performed when the surface is dry, and the ambient temperature and the pavement surface temperature meet the manufacturer's recommendations in accordance with paragraph 620-2.1. Painting operations shall be discontinued when the ambient or surface temperatures does not meet the manufacturer's recommendations. Markings shall not be applied when the wind speed exceeds 10 mph unless windscreens are used to shroud the material guns. Markings

shall not be applied when weather conditions are forecasts to not be within the manufacturers' recommendations for application and dry time.

620-3.2 Equipment. Equipment shall include the apparatus necessary to properly clean the existing surface, a mechanical marking machine, a bead dispensing machine, and such auxiliary hand-painting equipment as may be necessary to satisfactorily complete the job.

The mechanical marker shall be an atomizing spray-type or airless type marking machine with automatic glass bead dispensers suitable for application of traffic paint. It shall produce an even and uniform film thickness and appearance of both paint and glass beads at the required coverage and shall apply markings of uniform cross-sections and clear-cut edges without running or spattering and without over spray. The marking equipment for both paint and beads shall be calibrated daily.

620-3.3 Preparation of surfaces. Immediately before application of the paint, the surface shall be dry and free from dirt, grease, oil, laitance, or other contaminants that would reduce the bond between the paint and the pavement. Use of any chemicals or impact abrasives during surface preparation shall be approved in advance by the RPR. After the cleaning operations, sweeping, blowing, or rinsing with pressurized water shall be performed to ensure the surface is clean and free of grit or other debris left from the cleaning process.

a. Preparation of new pavement surfaces. The area to be painted shall be cleaned by broom, blower, water blasting, or by other methods approved by the RPR to remove all contaminants, including PCC curing compounds, minimizing damage to the pavement surface.

b. Preparation of pavement to remove existing markings. Existing pavement markings shall be removed by rotary grinding, water blasting, or by other methods approved by the RPR minimizing damage to the pavement surface. The removal area may need to be larger than the area of the markings to eliminate ghost markings. After removal of markings on asphalt pavements, apply a fog seal or seal coat to 'block out' the removal area to eliminate 'ghost' markings.

c. Preparation of pavement markings prior to remarking. Prior to remarking existing markings, loose existing markings must be removed minimizing damage to the pavement surface, with a method approved by the RPR. After removal, the surface shall be cleaned of all residue or debris.

Prior to the application of markings, the Contractor shall certify in writing that the surface is dry and free from dirt, grease, oil, laitance, or other foreign material that would prevent the bond of the paint to the pavement or existing markings. This certification along with a copy of the paint manufactures application and surface preparation requirements must be submitted to the RPR prior to the initial application of markings.

Loose markings should always be removed prior to remarking, whether or not existing markings need to be removed is up to the Engineer and the Airport Operator. The type of removal method used depends upon whether you need to remove loose markings or all existing markings.

620-3.4 Layout of markings. The proposed markings shall be laid out in advance of the paint application. The locations of markings to receive glass beads shall be shown on the plans. [The locations of markings to receive silica sand shall be shown on the plans.]

Glass beads improve conspicuity and the friction characteristics of markings. At a minimum, the Engineer shall indicate the locations to receive glass beads per AC 150/5340-1, Standards for Airport Markings.

620-3.5 Application. A period of [] days shall elapse between placement of surface course or seal coat and application of the permanent paint markings. Paint shall be applied at the locations and to the dimensions and spacing shown on the plans. Paint shall not be applied until the layout and condition of the surface has been approved by the RPR.

Select timeframe between placement of surface course or seal coat and application of the paint based on type of surface course or seal coat in the project and environment at the project location. The typical timeframe is 30-days for volatiles and moisture vapor to dissipate.

The edges of the markings shall not vary from a straight line more than 1/2 inch (12 mm) in 50 feet (15 m), and marking dimensions and spacing shall be within the following tolerances:

Marking Dimensions and Spacing Tolerance

Dimension and Spacing	Tolerance
36 inch (910 mm) or less	±1/2 inch (12 mm)
greater than 36 inch to 6 feet (910 mm to 1.85 m)	±1 inch (25 mm)
greater than 6 feet to 60 feet (1.85 m to 18.3 m)	±2 inch (50 mm)
greater than 60 feet (18.3 m)	±3 inch (76 mm)

The paint shall be mixed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and applied to the pavement with a marking machine at the rate shown in Table 1. The addition of thinner will not be permitted.

Glass beads shall be distributed upon the marked areas at the locations shown on the plans to receive glass beads immediately after application of the paint. A dispenser shall be furnished that is properly designed for attachment to the marking machine and suitable for dispensing glass beads. Glass beads shall be applied at the rate shown in Table 1. Glass beads shall not be applied to black paint or green paint. Glass beads shall adhere to the cured paint or all marking operations shall cease until corrections are made. Different bead types shall not be mixed. Regular monitoring of glass bead embedment and distribution should be performed.

620-3.6 Application--preformed thermoplastic airport pavement markings.

[Preformed thermoplastic pavement markings not used.]

[To ensure minimum single-pass application time and optimum bond in the marking/substrate interface, the materials must be applied using a variable speed self-propelled mobile heater with an effective heating width of no less than 16 feet (5 m) and a free span between supporting wheels of no less than 18 feet (5.5 m). The heater must emit thermal

radiation to the marking material in such a manner that the difference in temperature of 2 inches (50 mm) wide linear segments in the direction of heater travel must be within 5% of the overall average temperature of the heated thermoplastic material as it exits the heater. The material must be able to be applied at ambient and pavement temperatures down to 35°F (2°C) without any preheating of the pavement to a specific temperature. The material must be able to be applied without the use of a thermometer. The pavement shall be clean, dry, and free of debris. A non-volatile organic content (non-VOC) sealer with a maximum applied viscosity of 250 centiPoise must be applied to the pavement shortly before the markings are applied. The supplier must enclose application instructions with each box/package.]

The Engineer will make the appropriate selection for thermoplastic markings.

620-3.7 Control strip. Prior to the full application of airfield markings, the Contractor shall prepare a control strip in the presence of the RPR. The Contractor shall demonstrate the surface preparation method and all striping equipment to be used on the project. The marking equipment must achieve the prescribed application rate of paint and population of glass beads (per Table 1) that are properly embedded and evenly distributed across the full width of the marking. Prior to acceptance of the control strip, markings must be evaluated during darkness to ensure a uniform appearance.

620-3.8 Retro-reflectance. [Reflectance shall be measured with a portable retro-reflectometer meeting ASTM E1710 (or equivalent). A total of 6 reading shall be taken over a 6 square foot area with 3 readings taken from each direction. The average shall be equal to or above the minimum levels of all readings which are within 30% of each other.

Minimum Retro-Reflectance Values

Material	Retro-reflectance mcd/m ² /lux		
	White	Yellow	Red
Initial Type I	300	175	35
Initial Type III	600	300	35
Initial Thermoplastic	225	100	35
All materials, remark when less than ¹	100	75	10

¹ 'Prior to remarking determine if removal of contaminants on markings will restore retro-reflectance][not used]

Include tests of retro-reflectance at Part 139 airports, recommend testing at least 2 times per day. Enter Not Used at all other locations.

620-3.9 Protection and cleanup. After application of the markings, all markings shall be protected from damage until dry. All surfaces shall be protected from excess moisture and/or rain and from disfiguration by spatter, splashes, spillage, or drippings. The Contractor shall remove from the work area all debris, waste, loose reflective media, and by-products generated by the surface preparation and application operations to the satisfaction of the RPR. The Contractor shall dispose of these wastes in strict compliance with all applicable state, local, and federal environmental statutes and regulations.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

620-4.1a The quantity of surface preparation shall be measured by [the number of square feet (square meters) for each type of surface preparation specified in paragraph 620-3.3] [lump sum].

620-4.1b The quantity of markings shall be paid for shall be measured [by the number of square feet (square meters) of painting] [by lump sum].

620-4.1c The quantity of reflective media shall be paid for by [the number of pounds (km)] [lump sum] of reflective media.

620-4.1d [The quantity of temporary markings to be paid for shall be [the number of square feet (square meters) of painting] [lump sum price] performed in accordance with the specifications and accepted by the RPR. Temporary marking includes surface preparation, application and complete removal of the temporary marking.] [Temporary markings not required.]

[**620-4.1e** The quantity of preformed markings to be paid for shall be [the number of square feet (square meters) of preformed markings] [lump sum]].

Separate pay items for surface preparation, marking, and reflective media is recommended, however on small jobs, lump sum pay items is acceptable.

BASIS OF PAYMENT

620-5.1 This price shall be full compensation for furnishing all materials and for all labor, equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete the item complete in place and accepted by the RPR in accordance with these specifications.

620-5.1a Payment for surface preparation shall be made at the contract price for [the number of square feet (square meters) for each type of surface preparation specified in paragraph 620-3.3] [lump sum].

620-5.2b Payment for markings shall be made at the contract price for [the number of square feet (square meters) of painting and the number of pounds (km) of reflective media] [by the number of square feet (square meters) of painting] [by lump sum].

620-5.3c Payment for reflective media shall be made at the contract unit price for [the number of pounds (km) of reflective media][lump sum].

620-5.4d Payment for temporary markings shall be made at the contract price for [the number of square feet (square meters) of painting][lump sum price]. This price shall be full compensation for furnishing all materials and for all labor, equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete the item. [Temporary markings are not required.]

[**620-5.5e** Payment for preformed markings shall be made at the contract price for [the number of square feet (square meters) of preformed markings][lump sum price].]

Payment will be made under:

Item P-620-5.1a	Surface Preparation [per square foot (square meter)][lump sum]
Item P-620-5.2b	Marking [per square foot (square meter)][lump sum]
Item P-620-5.3c	Reflective Media [per pound (km)][lump sum]
Item P-620-5.4d	Temporary runway and taxiway marking [per square foot][per square meter][lump sum].
[Item 620-5.5e	Preformed markings per [the number of square feet (square meters) of preformed markings][lump sum price].]

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM International (ASTM)

ASTM D476	Standard Classification for Dry Pigmentary Titanium Dioxide Products
ASTM D968	Standard Test Methods for Abrasion Resistance of Organic Coatings by Falling Abrasive
ASTM D1652	Standard Test Method for Epoxy Content of Epoxy Resins
ASTM D2074	Standard Test Method for Total, Primary, Secondary, and Tertiary Amine Values of Fatty Amines by Alternative Indicator Method
ASTM D2240	Standard Test Method for Rubber Property - Durometer Hardness
ASTM D7585	Standard Practice for Evaluating Retroreflective Pavement Markings Using Portable Hand-Operated Instruments
ASTM E303	Standard Test Method for Measuring Surface Frictional Properties Using the British Pendulum Tester
ASTM E1710	Standard Test Method for Measurement of Retroreflective Pavement Marking Materials with CEN-Prescribed Geometry Using a Portable Retroreflectometer

ASTM E2302 Standard Test Method for Measurement of the Luminance Coefficient Under Diffuse Illumination of Pavement Marking Materials Using a Portable Reflectometer

ASTM G154 Standard Practice for Operating Fluorescent Ultraviolet (UV) Lamp Apparatus for Exposure of Nonmetallic Materials

Code of Federal Regulations (CFR)

40 CFR Part 60, Appendix A-7, Method 24
Determination of volatile matter content, water content, density, volume solids, and weight solids of surface coatings

29 CFR Part 1910.1200 Hazard Communication

Federal Specifications (FED SPEC)

FED SPEC TT-B-1325D Beads (Glass Spheres) Retro-Reflective

FED SPEC TT-P-1952F Paint, Traffic and Airfield Marking, Waterborne

FED STD 595 Colors used in Government Procurement

Commercial Item Description

A-A-2886B Paint, Traffic, Solvent Based

Advisory Circulars (AC)

AC 150/5340-1 Standards for Airport Markings

AC 150/5320-12 Measurement, Construction, and Maintenance of Skid Resistant Airport Pavement Surfaces

END OF ITEM P-620

Item P-621 Saw-Cut Grooves

Saw-cut grooves are recommended for primary and secondary runways at commercial service airports and for a non-commercial service airport if the runway serves turbojet aircraft and the runway length is 5000 feet or more. Coordinate with the local FAA Airports Office for eligibility.

DESCRIPTION

621-1.1 This item consists of constructing saw-cut grooves to minimize hydroplaning during wet weather, providing a skid resistant surface in accordance with these specifications and at the locations shown on the plans, or as directed by the Resident Project Representative (RPR).

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

621-2.1 Procedures. The Contractor shall submit to the RPR the grooving sequence and method of placing guide lines to control grooving operation. Transverse grooves saw-cut in the pavement must form a 1/4 inch (+1/16 inch, -0 inch) wide by 1/4 inch ($\pm 1/16$ inch) deep by 1-1/2 inch (-1/8 inch, +0 inch) [6 mm (+2 mm, -0 mm) wide by 6 mm (± 2 mm) deep by 38 mm (-3 mm, +0 mm)] center-to-center configuration. The grooves must be continuous for the entire runway length. They must be saw-cut transversely (perpendicular to centerline) in the runway and high-speed taxiway pavement to not less than [10 feet (3 m)] from the runway pavement edge to allow adequate space for equipment operation.

The saw-cut grooves must meet the following tolerances. The tolerances apply to each day's production and to each piece of grooving equipment used for production. The Contractor is responsible for all controls and process adjustments necessary to meet these tolerances. The Contractor shall routinely spot check for compliance each time the equipment aligns for a grooving pass.

a. Alignment tolerance. The grooves shall not vary more than $\pm 1\text{-}1/2$ inch (38 mm) in alignment for 75 feet (23 m) along the runway length, allowing for realignment every 500 feet (150 m) along the runway length.

b. Groove tolerance.

(1) Depth. The standard depth is 1/4 inch (6 mm). At least 90% of the grooves must be at least 3/16 inch (5 mm), at least 60% of the grooves must be at least 1/4 inch (6 mm), and not more than 10% of the grooves may exceed 5/16 inch (8 mm).

(2) Width. The standard width is 1/4 inch (6 mm). At least 90% of the grooves must be at least 3/16 inch (5 mm), at least 60% of the grooves must be at least 1/4 inch (6 mm), and not more than 10% of the grooves may exceed 5/16 inch (8 mm).

(3) Center-to-center spacing. The standard spacing is 1-1/2 inch (38 mm). Minimum spacing 1-3/8 inch (34 mm). Maximum spacing 1-1/2 inch (38 mm).

Saw-cut grooves must not be closer than 3 inches (8 cm) or more than 9 inches (23 cm) from transverse joints in concrete pavements. Grooves must not be closer than 6 inches (150 mm) and no more than 18 inches (0.5 m) from in-pavement light fixtures. Grooves may be continued through longitudinal construction joints. Where neoprene compression seals have been installed and the compression seals are recessed sufficiently to prevent damage from the grooving operation, grooves may be continued through the longitudinal joints. Where neoprene compression seals have been installed and the compression seals are not recessed sufficiently to prevent damage from the grooving operation, grooves must not be closer than 3 inches (8 cm) or more than 5 inches (125 mm) from the longitudinal joints. Where lighting cables are installed, grooving through longitudinal or diagonal saw kerfs shall not be allowed.

The 10-foot (3 m) distance from the pavement edge allows adequate space for equipment operation. Grooving to within one or two feet (0.3 to 0.6 m) from the pavement edge may be possible when adequate paved shoulder area is available.

Coordinate grooving limits with the airport Owner and military service when an arresting gear is located on the runway.

The Engineer may require a written report from the Contractor indicating how many times production was adjusted including blade replacement.

Surface variability may require more testing than the minimum of three per day per grooving machine.

621-2.2 Environmental requirements. Grooving operations will not be permitted when freezing conditions prevent the immediate removal of debris and/or drainage of water from the grooved area. Discharge and disposal of waste slurry shall be the Contractor's responsibility.

621-2.3 Control strip. Groove a control strip in an area of the pavement outside of the trafficked area, as approved by the RPR. The area shall be [] feet ([] m) long by two lanes wide. Demonstrate the setup and alignment process, the grooving operation, and the waste slurry disposal.

621-2.4 Existing pavements. Bumps, depressed areas, bad or faulted joints, and badly cracked and/or spalled areas in the pavement shall not be grooved until such areas are adequately repaired or replaced.

621-2.5 New pavements. New asphalt and Portland cement concrete pavements shall be allowed to cure for a minimum of 30 days before grooving, to allow the material to become stable enough to prevent closing of the grooves under normal use. If it can be demonstrated that grooves are stable, and can be installed with no spalling, tearing or raveling of the groove edge, grooving may occur sooner than 30 days with approval of the RPR. All grade corrections must be completed prior to grooving. Spalling along or tearing or raveling of the groove edges shall not be allowed.

If it can be demonstrated that grooves are stable with no spalling along or tearing or raveling of the groove edges, then grooving sooner than 30 days can be specified.

621-2.6 Grooving machine. Provide a grooving machine that is power driven, self-propelled, specifically designed and manufactured for pavement grooving, and has a self-contained and integrated continuous slurry vacuum system as the primary method for removing waste slurry. The grooving

machine shall be equipped with diamond-saw cutting blades, and capable of making at least 18 inches (0.5 m) in width of multiple parallel grooves in one pass of the machine. Thickness of the cutting blades shall be capable of making the required width and depth of grooves in one pass of the machine. The cutting head shall not contain a mixture of new and worn blades or blades of unequal wear or diameter. Match the blade type and configuration with the hardness of the existing airfield pavement. The wheels on the grooving machine shall be of a design that will not scar or spall the pavement. Provide the machine with devices to control depth of groove and alignment.

621-2.7 Water supply. Water for the grooving operation shall be provided by the Contractor.

621-2.8 Clean-up. During and after installation of saw-cut grooves, the Contractor must remove from the pavement all debris, waste, and by-products generated by the operations to the satisfaction of the RPR. Cleanup of waste material must be continuous during the grooving operation. Flush debris produced by the machine to the edge of the grooved area or pick it up as it forms. The dust coating remaining shall be picked up or flushed to the edge of the area if the resultant accumulation is not detrimental to the vegetation or storm drainage system. Accomplish all flushing operations in a manner to prevent erosion on the shoulders or damage to vegetation. Waste material must be disposed of in an approved manner. Waste material must not be allowed to enter the airport storm sewer system. The Contractor must dispose of these wastes in strict compliance with all applicable state, local, and federal environmental statutes and regulations

621-2.9 Repair of damaged pavement. Grooving must be stopped and damaged pavement repaired at the Contractor's expense when directed by the RPR.

[**621-2.10 Production rate.** The Contractor must furnish sufficient equipment to groove [square yards] of pavement [per hour] [per day].]

The Engineer may wish to specify a production rate depending on schedule. Delete paragraph if not used.

ACCEPTANCE

621-3.1 Acceptance testing. Grooves will be accepted based on results of zone testing. All acceptance testing necessary to determine conformance with the groove tolerances specified will be performed by the RPR.

Instruments for measuring groove width and depth must have a range of at least 0.5 inch (12 mm) and a resolution of at least 0.005 inch (0.13 mm). Gauge blocks or gauges machined to standard grooves width, depth, and spacing may be used.

Instruments for measuring center-to-center spacing must have a range of at least 3 inches (8 cm) and a resolution of at least 0.02 inch (0.5 mm).

The RPR will measure grooves in five zones across the pavement width. Measurements will be made at least three times during each day's production. Measurements in all zones will be made for each cutting head on each piece of grooving equipment used for each day's production.

The five zones are as follows:

- Zone 1 Centerline to 5 feet (1.5 m) left or right of the centerline.
- Zone 2 5 feet (1.5 m) to 25 feet (7.5 m) left of the centerline.
- Zone 3 5 feet (1.5 m) 25 feet (7.5 m) right of the centerline.
- Zone 4 25 feet (7.5 m) to edge of grooving left of the centerline.
- Zone 5 25 feet (7.5 m) to edge of grooving right of the centerline.

At a random location within each zone, five consecutive grooves sawed by each cutting head on each piece of grooving equipment will be measured for width, depth, and spacing. The five consecutive measurements must be located about the middle blade of each cutting head ± 4 inches (100 mm). Measurements will be made along a line perpendicular to the grooves.

- Width or depth measurements less than 0.170 inch (4 mm) shall be considered less than 3/16 inch (5 mm).
- Width or depth measurements more than 0.330 inch (8 mm) shall be considered more than 5/16 inch (8 mm).
- Width or depth measurements more than 0.235 inch (6 mm) shall be considered more than 1/4 inch (6 mm).

Production must be adjusted when more than one groove on a cutting head fails to meet the standard depth, width, or spacing in more than one zone.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

621-4.1 The quantity of grooving to be paid for shall be the number of square yards (square meters) of grooving performed in accordance with the specifications and accepted by the RPR per paragraph 621-3.1.

BASIS OF PAYMENT

621-5.1 Payment for saw-cut grooving. Payment for saw-cut grooving will be made at the contract unit price per square yard (square meter) for saw-cut grooving. This price shall be full compensation for furnishing all materials, and for all preparation, delivering, and application of these materials, and for all labor, equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete the item.

Payment will be made under:

- Item P-621-5.1 Grooving, unit price per square yard (square meter)

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

Advisory Circulars (AC)

- AC 150/5320-12 Measurement, Construction, and Maintenance of Skid Resistant Airport Pavement Surfaces

END OF ITEM P-621

Part 10 – Fencing

Item F-160 Wire Fence with Wood Posts (Class A and B Fences)

DESCRIPTION

This specification may be edited as necessary to match the approved wildlife hazard assessment and /or security plan. Security fencing is intended to slow the access of pedestrians and vehicles onto an airport as outlined in a 1542 Security Plan. See AIP Handbook FAA Order 5300.38 for guidance on eligibility of federal funds for fencing.

Prior to specifying fencing material on a federally funded project the type and nature of fencing will depend upon what purpose the fence is intended for. Perimeter fencing is typically used to designate the boundary of property, typically this is woven wire or barb wire type fencing. Wildlife fencing is to impede the entry of wildlife onto an airport is as outlined in a Wildlife Hazard Assessment Plan.

All steel and manufactured goods provided for this item must meet the Buy American provisions contained in this contract.

160-1.1 This item covers the requirements for furnishing materials and constructing new wire fences and gates with wood posts in accordance with the details included herein and as shown on the plans. The class of fence to be erected shall be either Class A, woven wire fencing topped by two strands of barbed wire, or Class B, four strands of barbed wire, as indicated on the plans.

MATERIALS

160-2.1 Wire.

a. Woven wire (zinc-coated). The woven wire fence shall be 7-bar, 26-inch (66 cm) field fence with top and bottom wires No. 10 gauge, and filler and stay wires No. 12-1/2 gauge. Stay wires shall be spaced 6 inches (150 mm) apart. All wires shall be smooth galvanized steel wire, conforming to ASTM A116. All wires shall be twice-dipped and shall be spaced as shown on the plans.

b. Barbed wire (zinc-coated). Zinc-coated barbed wire shall be 2-strand twisted No. 12-1/2 gauge galvanized steel wire with 4-point barbs of No. 14 gauge galvanized steel wire. All wire shall conform to ASTM A121, Type A. The barbs shall be spaced approximately 5 inches (125 mm) apart.

c. Barbed wire (copper-covered). Copper-covered steel barbed wire shall conform to ASTM A121, Type A.

d. Barbed wire (aluminum-coated). Aluminum-coated steel-barbed wire shall be 2-strand twisted No. 12-1/2 gauge. The 4-point barbs of No. 14 gauge aluminum-coated steel wire shall be spaced approximately 5 inches (125 mm) apart. The steel wire shall have a tensile strength of between 60,000 and 80,000 pounds per square inch (413 400 and 551 200 kPa), and the aluminum coating shall have a

minimum weight of 0.30 ounces per square foot (0.07 kg/m²) of wire surface on the No. 12-1/2 gauge line wires and 0.25 ounces per square foot (0.06 kg/m²) of wire surface on the No. 14 gauge barbs.

e. Bracing wire (zinc-coated). Wire used for cable for bracing shall be No. 9 smooth galvanized soft wire.

160-2.2 Gates and hardware. Gates shall be constructed of galvanized steel tubing conforming to Federal Specification RR-F-191 and shall be the size shown on the plans. Heavily galvanized hinges and latches for wood posts shall be furnished with each gate. A bolt or lag screw hinge shall be used, and either a wing or butterfly latch shall be furnished.

160-2.3 Posts.

- a. Species.** All posts shall be one of the following species of wood, unless otherwise noted on the plans.

Wood Species

Group I	Group II
Cedar	Douglas-fir
Chestnut	Gum, Red
Cypress, Southern	Larch, Western
Locust, Black	Pine, Southern Yellow
Osage-orange	Pine, Lodgepole
Redwood	Tamarack
Yew, Pacific	Ash
Honey locust	Maple, Sugar
Oak, White	Oak, Red
Mulberry	Spruce
Live Oak	

Posts of Group I may be used untreated, provided at least 75% of the wood is heartwood. Posts of less than 75% heartwood of Group I shall be given a preservative treatment for the part of the post that will have contact with the ground line in accordance with the method specified under paragraph 160-2.3e butt treatment below. Posts of Group II shall be given a preservative treatment in accordance with the method specified under paragraph 160-2.3e full length treatment below.

b. Quality. Posts shall be peeled, sound, straight-grained, and free from decay, cracks, and splits. Shakes shall not be in excess of 1/4-inch (6 mm) wide and 3 feet (1 m) long. Checks (lengthwise separations of the wood in a generally radial direction) are permitted, provided they are not harmful.

c. Dimensions. All posts shall be the length shown on the plans. Posts shall have the minimum top diameters shown on the plans or as specified. Sawn and split posts are acceptable instead of round posts if the required diameter round posts could be turned from the sawn or split posts.

d. Manufacture. Outer bark shall be completely removed from all posts including depressions. Inner bark shall be removed from all post surfaces to be treated, except inner bark may remain in depressions. The amount of wood shaved off in the removal of inner bark shall be held to a minimum.

e. Treatment. Posts shall be conditioned by air seasoning, steaming, or heating in oil in a manner that prevents injurious checking, splitting, or warping before treating. All timber shall be thoroughly seasoned and dry (22% maximum moisture content) before applying preservative treatment. The treatment, care

and preservative shall be with waterborne preservatives in accordance with American Wood Preservers Association (AWPA) Standard U1, Use Category 4 (UC4).

160-2.4 Braces. Cleats, gate stops, and braces shall be of the size shown on the plans. They shall be of the same species and quality specified for the posts or approved by the RPR, and they shall be free from knots larger than one-third the width of the piece. Gate stops shall be made of posts of suitable length. Braces may be made of posts of suitable length or of sawed lumber. All cleats, gate stops, and any braces in contact with the ground and for a distance of at least 6 inches (150 mm) above the ground shall be treated by the hot and cold bath process, specified herein for posts. The wire used in cable for bracing shall conform to paragraph 160-2.1e.

160-2.5 Staples. The staples shall be No. 9 galvanized steel wire, one inch (25 mm) long for hardwood posts and 1-1/2 inch (38 mm) long for use in softwood posts.

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

160-3.1 General. The fence shall be constructed in accordance with the details on the plans and as specified here using new materials. All work shall be performed in a workmanlike manner, satisfactory to the RPR. [The RPR shall establish and mark the property line or fence line for the work.] [The Contractor shall layout the fence line based on the plans.] The Contractor shall span the opening below the fence with barbed wire at all locations where it is not practical to conform the fence to the general contour of the ground surface because of natural or manmade features such as drainage ditches. The new fence shall be permanently tied to the terminals of existing fences whenever required by the RPR. The finished fence shall be plumb, taut, true to line and ground contour, and complete in every detail. When directed by the RPR, the Contractor shall stake down the woven wire fence at several points between posts.

The Contractor shall arrange the work so construction of the new fence immediately follows the removal of existing fences. The length of unfenced section at any time shall not exceed 300 feet (90 m). The work shall progress in this manner, and at the close of the working day, the newly constructed fence shall be tied to the unremoved existing fence.

Select whether the RPR or Contractor will lay out the fence and/or property lines.

160-3.2 Clearing fence line. The site of the fence shall be sufficiently clear of obstructions, and surface irregularities. The fence line shall be graded so that the fence will conform to the general contour of the ground. The fence line shall be cleared on each side of the centerline of the fence. This clearing shall consist of the removal of all stumps, brush, rocks, trees, or other obstructions that will interfere with proper construction of the fence. Stumps within the cleared area of the fence line shall be grubbed or excavated. The bottom of the fence shall be placed a uniform distance above ground as specified in the plans. When shown on the plans or as directed by the RPR, the existing fences which interfere with the new fence location shall be removed by the Contractor as part of the construction work, unless removal is listed as a separate item in the bid schedule. All holes remaining after post and stump removal shall be refilled with suitable soil, gravel, or other material and shall be compacted with tampers.

The work shall include the handling and disposal of all material cleared, of excess excavation and the removal of spoiled material regardless of the type, character, composition, or condition of such material encountered.

160-3.3 Setting posts. Posts shall be set with large ends down, plumb, and in a straight line on the side on which the wire is to be fastened. Posts shall be set full depth and shall not be cut off to eliminate rock or other excavation. Where rock is encountered, it shall be removed, to provide full-depth and full-size holes. The bottom of all posts shall be cut off square. The diameter of the holes shall be at least 6 inches (150 mm) larger than the diameter of the posts. When cleats are used on posts, the holes shall be dug large enough to accommodate the cleat. After posts are placed and lined, the holes shall be backfilled with suitable material that shall be properly compacted by the use of tampers. The posts adjacent to end, corner, anchor, and gate posts shall be set and braced with braces and wire, as shown on the plans. No extra compensation shall be made for rock excavation.

160-3.4 Anchoring. Corner, end, gate, and adjacent intermediate posts shall be anchored, by gaining and spiking cleats to the sides of the posts, as indicated on the plans. No cleats will be required on other intermediate posts or on anchor posts.

160-3.5 Bracing. End, corner, anchor, and gate posts shall be braced by using a post of sufficient length or a piece of sawed lumber of the proper size, together with a wire cable. The wooden brace shall be gained and securely spiked into the end, corner, anchor, or gate posts and into the next intermediate posts about 6 inches (150 mm) from the top of the respective posts. A cable made of a double strand of galvanized soft wire shall be looped around the end, corner, anchor, or gate post near the ground and around the next intermediate post about 12 inches (300 mm) from the top. After the cable has been stapled in this position, it shall be twisted until tight. The staples used to hold the cable shall be not less than 1-1/2 inch (38 mm) long. The tool used for twisting the cable shall be left in place to permit later adjustment of bracing if found necessary. Anchor posts shall be set at approximately 500 feet (150 m) intervals and braced to the adjacent posts. Posts shall be braced before the wire fencing is placed.

160-3.6 Installing wire. The wires shall be placed on the side of the posts away from the airport or as directed. The wire fence shall be placed on the posts at the height indicated on the plans. Longitudinal wires shall be installed parallel and drawn uniformly taut. The vertical stay wires of the woven wire fencing shall be straight and vertical. At end and gate posts the woven wire and barbed wire shall be wrapped once around the post; each longitudinal wire shall be stapled at least three times and the ends of these wires shall be tied with a snug, tight twist. Each longitudinal wire shall be stapled to each intermediate post with one steel wire staple; at the corner and anchor posts, two or more staples shall be used. The top strand of barbed wire of all fences shall be stapled with two staples in each post. All staples shall be set diagonally with the grain of the wood and driven up tight. After the fence has been erected, the tops of the wood posts shall be sawed off with a 1-to-3 pitch. The bottom wire of the wire fencing shall clear the ground by not more than 4 inches (100 mm) or less than one inch (25 mm) at any place.

160-3.7 Splicing wire. Wire splices in longitudinal wires will be permitted if made with an approved galvanized bolt-clamp splice or a wire splice made as follows: The end of the wires shall be carried 3 inches (75 mm) past the splice tool and wrapped around the other wire away from the tool for at least six turns in opposite directions. After the tool is removed, the space occupied by it shall be closed by pulling the ends together. The unused ends of the wires shall be cut close to make a neat, workmanlike job. Woven wire shall be spliced only at posts.

160-3.8 Installing gates. The gates shall be hung on gate fittings, as shown on the plans. Fittings on the gate posts shall be clamped, screwed, or bolted to prevent slipping. Gates shall be so erected as to swing in the direction indicated and shall be provided with gate stops, as specified or as shown on the plans. Gates shall be erected at locations shown on the plans.

160-3.9 Existing fence connections. Wherever the new fence joins an existing fence, either at a corner or at the intersection of straight fence lines, a corner or anchor post shall be set at the junction and braced and anchored the same as herein described for corner posts.

If the connection is made at other than the corner of the new fence, the last span of the old fence shall contain a brace span.

160-3.10 Cleaning up. The Contractor shall remove from the vicinity of the completed work all tools, buildings, equipment, etc., used during construction. All disturbed areas shall be seeded per T-901.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

160-4.1 Fences, Class A (Wood Posts) or Class B (Wood Posts), shall be measured in place from outside to outside of end posts or corner posts and shall be the length of fence actually constructed, except for the space occupied by the gates.

160-4.2 Vehicle gates and pedestrian gates shall be measured in units for each gate installed and accepted.

BASIS OF PAYMENT

160-5.1 Payment will be made at the contract unit price per linear foot (meter) for Class A or Class B wire fence. This price shall be full compensation for furnishing all materials and for preparation, erection, and installation of these materials, and for all labor, equipment, tools and incidentals necessary to complete the item.

160-5.2 Payment will be made at the contract unit price per each for vehicle or for pedestrian gates. This price shall be full compensation for furnishing all materials and for all preparation, erection, and installation of these materials and for all labor, equipment, tools, and necessary incidentals to complete the item.

Payment will be made under:

Item F-160-5.1a	Fence, Class A - per linear foot (meter)
Item F-160-5.1b	Fence, Class B - per linear foot (meter)
Item F-160-5.2a	Vehicle Gates - per each
Item F-160-5.2b	Pedestrian Gates - per each

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM International (ASTM)

ASTM A116	Standard Specification for Metallic-Coated, Steel Woven Wire Fence Fabric

ASTM A121	Standard Specification for Metallic-Coated Carbon Steel Barbed Wire

American Wood Preservers Association (AWPA)

AWPA U1	Use Category System: User Specification for Treated Wood

FAA Standards (FAA STD)

FAA-STD-019	Lightning and Surge Protection, Grounding, Bonding and Shielding Requirements for Facilities and Electronic Equipment

Federal Specification (FED SPEC)

FED SPEC RR-F-191/Gen Fencing, Wire and Post Metal (and Gates, Chain-link, Fence
Fabric, and Accessories) (General Specification)

END OF ITEM F-160

Item F-161 Wire Fence with Steel Posts (Class C and D Fence)

This specification may be edited as necessary to match the approved wildlife hazard assessment and /or security plan. Security fencing is intended to slow the access of pedestrians and vehicles onto an airport as outlined in a 1542 Security Plan. See AIP Handbook FAA Order 5300.38 for guidance on eligibility of federal funds for fencing.

Prior to specifying fencing material on a federally funded project the type and nature of fencing will depend upon what purpose the fence is intended for. Perimeter fencing is typically used to designate the boundary of property, typically this is woven wire or barb wire type fencing. Wildlife fencing is to impede the entry of wildlife onto an airport is as outlined in a Wildlife Hazard Assessment Plan.

All steel and manufactured goods provided for this item must meet the Buy American provisions contained in this contract.

DESCRIPTION

161-1.1 This item covers the requirements for furnishing materials and constructing new wire fences and gates with steel posts in accordance with the details included herein and as shown on the plans. The class of fence to be erected shall be either Class C, woven wire fencing surmounted by two strands of barbed wire, or Class D, four strands of barbed wire, as indicated on the plans.

MATERIALS

161-2.1 Wire.

a. Woven wire (zinc-coated). The woven wire fencing shall be 7-bar, 26-inch (66 cm) field fence with top and bottom wires No. 10 gauge, and filler and stay wires No. 12-1/2 gauge. Stay wires shall be spaced 6 inches (150 mm) apart. All wire shall be smooth galvanized steel wire conforming to ASTM A116. All wires shall be twice-dipped and spaced as shown on the plans.

b. Barbed wire (zinc-coated). Zinc-coated barbed wire shall be 2-strand twisted No. 12-1/2 gauge galvanized steel wire with 4-point barbs of No. 14 gauge galvanized steel wire. All wire shall conform to ASTM A121, Type A. The barbs shall be spaced approximately 5 inches (125 mm) apart.

c. Barbed wire (copper-covered). Copper-covered steel barbed wire shall conform to ASTM A121, Type A.

d. Barbed wire (aluminum-coated). Aluminum-coated steel barbed wire shall be 2-strand twisted No. 12-1/2 gauge. The 4-point barbs of No. 14 gauge aluminum-coated steel wire shall be spaced approximately 5 inches (125 mm) apart. The steel wire shall have a tensile strength of between 60,000 and 80,000 pounds per square inch (413 400 and 551 200 kPa) and the aluminum coating shall have a

minimum weight of 0.30 ounces per square foot (0.07 kg/m²) of wire surface on the No. 12-1/2 gauge line wire and 0.25 ounces per square foot (0.06 kg/m²) of wire surface on the No. 14 gauge barbs.

e. Bracing wire (zinc-coated). Wire used for cable bracing shall be No. 9 smooth galvanized soft wire.

f. []

Other materials may be added when required by wildlife and security plan.

161-2.2 Fence posts, gates, rails, braces, and accessories. These items, when specified, shall conform to the requirements of Federal Specification RR-F-191 and shall be zinc-coated.

161-2.3 Concrete. Concrete shall be of a commercial grade with a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi (2670 kPa).

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

161-3.1 General. The fence shall be constructed in accordance with the details on the plans and as specified here using new materials. All work shall be performed in a workmanlike manner satisfactory to the RPR. [The RPR shall establish and mark the property line or fence line for the work.] [The Contractor shall layout the fence line based on the plans.] The Contractor shall span the opening below the fence with barbed wire at all locations where it is not practical to conform the fence to the general contour of the ground surface because of natural or manmade features such as drainage ditches. The new fence shall be permanently tied to the terminals of existing fences whenever required by the RPR. The finished fence shall be plumb, taut, true to line and ground contour, and complete in every detail. When directed, the Contractor shall stake down the woven wire fence at several points between posts.

The Contractor shall arrange the work so that construction of the new fence will immediately follow the removal of existing fences. The length of unfenced section at any time shall not exceed 300 feet (90 m). The work shall progress in this manner and at the close of the working day the newly constructed fence shall be tied to the existing fence.

Select whether the RPR or Contractor will lay out the fence and/or property lines.

161-3.2 Clearing fence line. The site of the fence shall be sufficiently cleared of obstructions, and surface irregularities. The fence line shall be graded so that the fence will conform to the general contour of the ground. The fence line shall be cleared on each side of the centerline of the fence. This clearing shall consist of the removal of all stumps, brush, rocks, trees, or other obstructions that will interfere with proper construction of the fence. Stumps within the cleared area of the fence shall be grubbed or excavated. The bottom of the fence shall be placed a uniform distance above ground, as specified in the plans. When shown on the plans or as directed by the RPR, the existing fences which interfere with the new fence location shall be removed by the Contractor as a part of the construction work unless such removal is listed as a separate item in the bid schedule. All holes remaining after post and stump removal shall be refilled with suitable soil, gravel, or other suitable material and compacted with tampers.

The work shall include the handling and disposal of all material cleared, excavated or removed, regardless of the type, character, composition, or condition of such material encountered.

161-3.3 Installing posts. All posts shall be spaced as shown on the plans. Corner, brace, anchor, end, and gate posts shall be set in concrete as shown on the plans. The top of the concrete shall be slightly above the ground surface, trowel finished, and sloped to drain. Post holes of full depth and size for the concrete shall be provided. All line posts may be either driven or set in dug holes to a depth of 3 feet (1 m). All post setting shall be done carefully and to true alignment. Dirt removed for placing posts, anchor bars, flanges, etc., shall be replaced, tamped, and leveled. When posts are driven, care shall be exercised to prevent marring or buckling of the posts. Damaged posts shall be replaced at the Contractor's expense. No extra compensation will be made for rock excavation.

161-3.4 Bracing. All corner, anchor, end, and gate posts shall be braced as shown on the plans. Anchor posts shall be set at approximately 500 feet (150 meters) intervals and braced to the adjacent posts.

161-3.5 Installing wire. All barbed wire and woven wire shall be placed on the side of the post away from the airport, or as directed by the RPR, at the height indicated on the plans. The woven wire shall be carefully stretched and hung without sag and with true alignment. Care shall be taken not to stretch the wire so tightly that it will break in cold weather or pull up corner and brace posts. All horizontal wires shall be fastened securely to each post by fasteners or clips designed for use with the posts furnished. The woven wire shall be wrapped around end, corner, and gate posts, and the ends of all horizontal wires shall be tied with snug, tight twists. The wire shall be secured to prevent slipping up and down the post. Barbed wire strands shall be stretched and each strand secured to each post to prevent slipping out of line or becoming loose. At end, corner, and gate posts the barbed wire shall be securely wrapped and anchored once about the post from outside and secured against slipping by tying the ends with snug, tight twists. However, on spans of less than 100 feet (30 m) both ends of the span need not be wrapped around the posts. The bottom wire of the woven wire fencing shall clear the ground by not more than 4 inches (100 mm) or less than one inch (25 mm) at any place.

161-3.6 Splicing wire. Splices in barbed and woven wire will be permitted if made with an approved galvanized bolt-clamp splice or a wire splice made as follows: The ends of each wire shall be carried 3 inches (75 mm) past the splice tool and wrapped around the other wire for at least six turns in opposite directions. After the tool is removed, the space occupied by it shall be closed by pulling the ends together. The unused ends of the wire shall be cut close to make a neat, workmanlike job.

161-3.7 Installing gates. The gates shall be hung on gate fittings as shown on the plans. They shall be attached in such a manner that the gate cannot be lifted off the hinges. Gates shall be erected to swing in the direction indicated and shall be provided with gate stops, as specified or as shown on the plans. Gates shall be erected at locations shown on the plans.

161-3.8 Existing fence connections. Wherever the new fence joins an existing fence, either at a corner or at the intersection of straight fence lines, a corner or anchor post shall be set at the junction and braced and anchored the same as herein described for corner posts.

If the connection is made at other than the corner of the new fence, the last span of the old fence shall contain a brace span.

161-3.9 Electrical grounds. Electrical grounds shall be constructed [where a power line passes over the fence] [at 500 feet (150 m) intervals]. [The ground shall be installed directly below the point of crossing.] The ground shall be accomplished with a copper clad rod 8 feet (2.4 m) long and a minimum of 5/8 inches (16 mm) in diameter driven vertically until the top is 6 inches (150 mm) below the ground surface. A No. 6 solid copper conductor shall be clamped to the rod and to the fence in such a manner that each element of the fence is grounded. Installation of ground rods shall not constitute a pay item and shall be considered incidental to fence construction. The Contractor shall comply with FAA-STD-019, Lightning and Surge

Protection, Grounding, Bonding and Shielding Requirements for Facilities and Electronic Equipment, paragraph 4.2.3.8, Lightning Protection for Fences and Gates, when fencing is adjacent to FAA facilities.

**The Engineer shall indicate the location of all electrical grounds on the plans.
Grounding may not be necessary with the use of composite posts.**

161-3.10 Cleaning up. The Contractor shall remove from the vicinity of the completed work all tools, buildings, equipment, etc., used during construction. All disturbed areas shall be seeded per Item T-901.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

161-4.1 Fences, Class C (Steel Posts), or Class D (Steel Posts), shall be measured in place from outside to outside of end posts or corner posts and shall be the length of fence actually constructed, except for the space occupied by the gates.

161-4.2 Vehicle gates and pedestrian gates shall be measured in units for each gate installed and accepted.

BASIS OF PAYMENT

161-5.1 Payment shall be made at the contract unit price per linear foot (meter) for Class C or Class D wire fence. This price shall be full compensation for furnishing all materials and for all preparation, erection, and installation of these materials, and for all labor, equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete the item.

161-5.2 Payment will be made at the contract unit price per each for vehicle or for pedestrian gates. This price shall be full compensation for furnishing all materials and for all preparation, erection, and installation of these materials, and for all labor, equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete the item.

Payment will be made under:

Item F-161-5.1a	Fence, Class C - per linear foot (m)
Item F-161-5.1b	Fence, Class D - per linear foot (m)
Item F-161-5.2a	Vehicle Gates - per each
Item F-161-5.2b	Pedestrian Gates - per each

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM International (ASTM)

ASTM A116	Standard Specification for Metallic-Coated, Steel Woven Wire Fence Fabric
ASTM A121	Standard Specification for Metallic-Coated Carbon Steel Barbed Wire

FAA Standard

FAA-STD-019 Lightning and Surge Protection, Grounding, Bonding and Shielding
Requirements for Facilities and Electronic Equipment

Federal Specification (FED SPEC)

FED SPEC RR-F-191/Gen Fencing, Wire, and Post Metal (and Gates, Chain-link Fence
Fabric, and Accessories) (General Specification)

FAA Orders

5300.38 AIP Handbook

END OF ITEM F-161

Page Intentionally Blank

Item F-162 Chain-Link Fence

This specification may be edited as necessary to match the approved wildlife hazard assessment and /or security plan. Security fencing is intended to slow the access of pedestrians and vehicles onto an airport as outlined in a 1542 Security Plan. See AIP Handbook FAA Order 5300.38 for guidance on eligibility of federal funds for fencing.

Prior to specifying fencing material on a federally funded project the type and nature of fencing will depend upon what purpose the fence is intended for. Perimeter fencing is typically used to designate the boundary of property, typically this is woven wire or barb wire type fencing. Wildlife fencing is to impede the entry of wildlife onto an airport is as outlined in a Wildlife Hazard Assessment Plan.

All steel and manufactured goods provided for this item must meet the Buy American provisions contained in this contract.

DESCRIPTION

162-1.1 This item shall consist of furnishing and erecting a chain-link fence in accordance with these specifications, the details shown on the plans, and in conformity with the lines and grades shown on the plans or established by the RPR.

MATERIALS

162-2.1 Fabric. [The fabric shall be woven with a 9-gauge [galvanized steel wire] [polyvinyl chloride (PVC)-coated steel] [aluminum alloy] [zinc-5% aluminum mischmetal] wire in a 2-inch (50 mm) mesh and shall meet the requirements of [___].] [The fabric shall be woven from a [___] gauge aluminum-coated steel wire in a 2-inch (50 mm) mesh and shall conform to the requirements of ASTM A491.]

Galvanized steel fabric shall conform to the requirements of ASTM A392, Class 2.

Polyvinyl chloride-coated steel shall conform to the requirements of ASTM F668, Class 2b.

Aluminum alloy fabric shall conform to the requirements of ASTM F1183.

Zinc-5% aluminum mischmetal alloy coated steel shall conform to the requirements of ASTM F1345, Class 2.

The Engineer shall specify 9 or 10-gauge aluminum-coated wire.

Metallic-coated fabric shall have a clear acrylic coating applied to the selvage area after weaving.

162-2.2 Barbed wire. Barbed wire shall be 2-strand 12-1/2 gauge [zinc-coated] [aluminum-coated] wire with 4-point barbs and shall conform to the requirements of [___].

Zinc-coated barbed wire shall conform to the requirements of ASTM A121, Class 3, Chain Link Fence Grade.

Aluminum-coated barbed wire shall conform to the requirements of ASTM A121, Class II.

162-2.3 Posts, rails, and braces. Line posts, rails, and braces shall conform to the requirements of ASTM F1043 or ASTM F1083 as follows:

- Galvanized tubular steel pipe shall conform to the requirements of Group IA, (Schedule 40) coatings conforming to Type A, or Group IC (High Strength Pipe), External coating Type B, and internal coating Type B or D.
- Roll Formed Steel Shapes (C-Sections) shall conform to the requirements of Group IIA, and be galvanized in accordance with the requirements of ASTM F1043, Type A.
- Hot-Rolled Shapes (H Beams) shall meet the requirements of Group III, and be galvanized in accordance with the requirements of ASTM F1043, Type A.
- Aluminum Pipe shall conform to the requirements of Group IB.
- Aluminum Shapes shall conform to the requirements of Group IIB.
- Vinyl or polyester coated steel shall conform to the requirements of ASTM F1043, Paragraph 7.3, Optional Supplemental Color Coating.
- Composite posts shall conform to the strength requirements of ASTM F1043 or ASTM F1083. The strength loss of composite posts shall not exceed 10% when subjected to 3,600 hours of exposure to light and water in accordance with ASTM G152, ASTM G153, ASTM G154, and ASTM G155.
- Posts, rails, and braces furnished for use in conjunction with aluminum alloy fabric shall be aluminum alloy or composite.

Posts, rails, and braces, with the exception of galvanized steel conforming to ASTM F1043 or ASTM F1083, Group 1A, Type A, or aluminum alloy, shall demonstrate the ability to withstand testing in salt spray in accordance with ASTM B117 as follows:

- External: 1,000 hours with a maximum of 5% red rust.
- Internal: 650 hours with a maximum of 5% red rust.

The dimensions of the posts, rails, and braces shall be in accordance with Tables I through VI of Federal Specification RR-F-191/3.

The Engineer shall select the appropriate requirements above and delete any not applicable to the project.

162-2.4 Gates. Gate frames shall consist of [galvanized steel pipe][polymer-coated steel pipe][aluminum alloy pipe][composite posts] and shall conform to the specifications for the same material under paragraph 162-2.3. The fabric shall be of the same type material as used in the fence.

162-2.5 Wire ties and tension wires. Wire ties for use in conjunction with a given type of fabric shall be of the same material and coating weight identified with the fabric type. Tension wire shall be 7-gauge marcelled steel wire with the same coating as the fabric type and shall conform to ASTM A824.

All material shall conform to Federal Specification RR-F-191/4.

162-2.6 Miscellaneous fittings and hardware. Miscellaneous steel fittings and hardware for use with [zinc-coated][aluminum-coated][zinc-5% aluminum-mischmetal alloy-coated] steel fabric shall be of commercial grade steel or better quality, wrought or cast as appropriate to the article, and sufficient in strength to provide a balanced design when used in conjunction with fabric posts, and wires of the quality specified herein. [All steel fittings and hardware shall be protected with a zinc coating applied in conformance with ASTM A153.][Miscellaneous aluminum fittings for use with aluminum alloy fabric shall be wrought or cast aluminum alloy.] Barbed wire support arms shall withstand a load of 250 pounds (113 kg) applied vertically to the outermost end of the arm.

162-2.7 Concrete. Concrete shall have a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi (2670 kPa).

162-2.8 Marking. Each roll of fabric shall carry a tag showing the kind of base metal (steel, aluminum, or aluminum alloy number), kind of coating, the gauge of the wire, the length of fencing in the roll, and the name of the manufacturer. Posts, wire, and other fittings shall be identified as to manufacturer, kind of base metal (steel, aluminum, or aluminum alloy number), and kind of coating.

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

162-3.1 General. The fence shall be constructed in accordance with the details on the plans and as specified here using new materials. All work shall be performed in a workmanlike manner satisfactory to the RPR. [The RPR shall establish and mark the property line or fence line for the work.][The Contractor shall layout the fence line based on the plans.] The Contractor shall span the opening below the fence with barbed wire at all locations where it is not practical to conform the fence to the general contour of the ground surface because of natural or manmade features such as drainage ditches. The new fence shall be permanently tied to the terminals of existing fences as shown on the plans. The Contractor shall stake down the woven wire fence at several points between posts as shown on the plans.

The Contractor shall arrange the work so that construction of the new fence will immediately follow the removal of existing fences. The length of unfenced section at any time shall not exceed 300 feet (90 m). The work shall progress in this manner and at the close of the working day the newly constructed fence shall be tied to the existing fence.

Select whether the RPR or Contractor will lay out the fence and/or property lines.

162-3.2 Clearing fence line. Clearing shall consist of the removal of all stumps, brush, rocks, trees, or other obstructions that will interfere with proper construction of the fence. Stumps within the cleared area of the fence shall be grubbed or excavated. The bottom of the fence shall be placed a uniform distance above ground, as specified in the plans. When shown on the plans or as directed by the RPR, the existing fences which interfere with the new fence location shall be removed by the Contractor as a part of the construction work unless such removal is listed as a separate item in the bid schedule. All holes remaining after post and stump removal shall be refilled with suitable soil, gravel, or other suitable material and compacted with tampers.

The cost of removing and disposing of the material shall not constitute a pay item and shall be considered incidental to fence construction.

162-3.3 Installing posts. All posts shall be set in concrete at the required dimension and depth and at the spacing shown on the plans.

Posts should be spaced not more than 10 feet (3 m) apart and should be set a minimum of 36 inches (90 cm) in concrete footings. If the frost depth is greater than 36 inches (90 cm), the posts should be set accordingly. The posts holes shall be in proper alignment so that there is a minimum of 3 inches (75 mm) of concrete on all sides of the posts.

The concrete shall be thoroughly compacted around the posts by tamping or vibrating and shall have a smooth finish slightly higher than the ground and sloped to drain away from the posts. All posts shall be set plumb and to the required grade and alignment. No materials shall be installed on the posts, nor shall the posts be disturbed in any manner within seven (7) days after the individual post footing is completed.

Should rock be encountered at a depth less than the planned footing depth, a hole 2 inches (50 mm) larger than the greatest dimension of the posts shall be drilled to a depth of 12 inches (300 mm). After the posts are set, the remainder of the drilled hole shall be filled with grout, composed of one part Portland cement and two parts mortar sand. Any remaining space above the rock shall be filled with concrete in the manner described above.

In lieu of drilling, the rock may be excavated to the required footing depth. No extra compensation shall be made for rock excavation.

162-3.4 Installing top rails. The top rail shall be continuous and shall pass through the post tops. The coupling used to join the top rail lengths shall allow for expansion.

162-3.5 Installing braces. Horizontal brace rails, with diagonal truss rods and turnbuckles, shall be installed at all terminal posts.

162-3.6 Installing fabric. The wire fabric shall be firmly attached to the posts and braced as shown on the plans. All wire shall be stretched taut and shall be installed to the required elevations. The fence shall generally follow the contour of the ground, with the bottom of the fence fabric no less than one inch (25 mm) or more than 4 inches (100 mm) from the ground surface. Grading shall be performed where necessary to provide a neat appearance.

At locations of small natural swales or drainage ditches and where it is not practical to have the fence conform to the general contour of the ground surface, longer posts may be used and multiple strands of barbed wire stretched to span the opening below the fence. The vertical clearance between strands of barbed wire shall be 6 inches (150 mm) or less.

Openings below the fence may also be spanned with barbed wire fastened to stakes.

The Engineer shall specify if tension wire is to be installed.

162-3.7 Electrical grounds. Electrical grounds shall be constructed [where a power line passes over the fence] [at 500 feet (150 m) intervals]. [The ground shall be installed directly below the point of crossing.] The ground shall be accomplished with a copper clad rod 8 feet (2.4 m) long and a minimum of 5/8 inches (16 mm) in diameter driven vertically until the top is 6 inches (150 mm) below the ground surface. A No. 6 solid copper conductor shall be clamped to the rod and to the fence in such a manner that each element of the fence is grounded. Installation of ground rods shall not constitute a pay item and shall be considered incidental to fence construction. The Contractor shall comply with FAA-STD-019, Lightning and Surge Protection, Grounding, Bonding and Shielding Requirements for Facilities and Electronic Equipment, paragraph 4.2.3.8, Lightning Protection for Fences and Gates, when fencing is adjacent to FAA facilities.

The Engineer shall indicate the location of all electrical grounds on the plans.

Grounding may not be necessary with the use of composite posts.

162-3.8 Cleaning up. The Contractor shall remove from the vicinity of the completed work all tools, buildings, equipment, etc., used during construction. All disturbed areas shall be seeded per T-901.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

162-4.1 Chain-link fence will be measured for payment by the linear foot (meter). Measurement will be along the top of the fence from center to center of end posts, excluding the length occupied by gate openings.

162-4.2 Gates will be measured as complete units.

BASIS OF PAYMENT

162-5.1 Payment for chain-link fence will be made at the contract unit price per linear foot (meter).

162-5.2 Payment for vehicle or pedestrian gates will be made at the contract unit price for each gate.

The price shall be full compensation for furnishing all materials, and for all preparation, erection, and installation of these materials, and for all labor equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete the item.

Payment will be made under:

Item F-162-5.1 Chain-Link Fence - per linear foot (meter)

Item F-162-5.2a	Vehicle Gates - per each
Item F-162-5.2b	Pedestrian Gates - per each

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM International (ASTM)

ASTM A121	Standard Specification for Metallic-Coated Carbon Steel Barbed Wire
ASTM A153	Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware
ASTM A392	Standard Specification for Zinc-Coated Steel Chain-Link Fence Fabric
ASTM A491	Standard Specification for Aluminum-Coated Steel Chain-Link Fence Fabric
ASTM A824	Standard Specification for Metallic-Coated Steel Marcellled Tension Wire for Use with Chain Link Fence
ASTM B117	Standard Practice for Operating Salt Spray (Fog) Apparatus
ASTM F668	Standard Specification for Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC), Polyolefin and other Organic Polymer Coated Steel Chain-Link Fence Fabric
ASTM F1043	Standard Specification for Strength and Protective Coatings on Steel Industrial Fence Framework
ASTM F1083	Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Hot-Dipped Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Welded, for Fence Structures
ASTM F1183	Standard Specification for Aluminum Alloy Chain Link Fence Fabric
ASTM F1345	Standard Specification for Zinc 5% Aluminum-Mischmetal Alloy Coated Steel Chain-Link Fence Fabric
ASTM G152	Standard Practice for Operating Open Flame Carbon Arc Light Apparatus for Exposure of Nonmetallic Materials
ASTM G153	Standard Practice for Operating Enclosed Carbon Arc Light Apparatus for Exposure of Nonmetallic Materials
ASTM G154	Standard Practice for Operating Fluorescent Ultraviolet (UV) Lamp Apparatus for Exposure of Nonmetallic Materials
ASTM G155	Standard Practice for Operating Xenon Arc Light Apparatus for Exposure of Nonmetallic Materials

Federal Specifications (FED SPEC)

FED SPEC RR-F-191/3 Fencing, Wire and Post, Metal (Chain-Link Fence Posts, Top Rails and Braces)
FED SPEC RR-F-191/4 Fencing, Wire and Post, Metal (Chain-Link Fence Accessories)

FAA Standard

FAA-STD-019

Lightning and Surge Protection, Grounding, Bonding and Shielding
Requirements for Facilities and Electronic Equipment

FAA Orders

5300.38

AIP Handbook

END OF ITEM F-162

Page Intentionally Blank

Item F-163 Wildlife Deterrent Fence Skirt

This specification may be edited as necessary to match the approved wildlife hazard assessment plan.

Prior to specifying fencing material on a federally funded project the type and nature of fencing will depend upon what purpose the fence is intended for. Wildlife fencing is to impede the entry of wildlife onto an airport is as outlined in a Wildlife Hazard Assessment Plan. See AIP Handbook FAA Order 5300.38 for guidance on eligibility of federal funds for fencing. Typical fence skirt details are available on the Airports website: www.faa.gov/airports/engineering/.

All steel and manufactured goods provided for this item must meet the Buy American provisions contained in this contract.

DESCRIPTION

163-1.1 This item shall consist of furnishing and installing chain-link fence fabric underground along an existing chain link fence or wildlife fabric fence, constructing concrete pads at existing fence gates in accordance with these specifications and the details shown on the drawings and in conformity with the lines and grades shown on the plans or established by the RPR.

MATERIALS

163-2.1 Chain link fence fabric. The fabric shall be woven with a 9-gauge galvanized steel wire in a 2-inch (50 mm) mesh and shall meet the requirements of ASTM A392, Class II. The fabric shall be 5 feet (1.5 m) wide.

163-2.2 Barbed wire. Barbed wire shall be 2-strand 12-1/2 gauge zinc-coated wire with 4-point barbs and shall conform to the requirements of ASTM A121, Class 3.

163-2.3 Wire ties and tension wires. Wire fabric ties, wire ties, and tension wire for a given type of fabric shall be the same material as the fabric type. The tension wire shall be 7-gauge coiled spring wire coated similarly to the respective wire fabric being used.

Wire fabric ties shall be hog rings of galvanized steel wire not less than 9-gauge.

All material shall conform to Federal Specification RR-F-191/4.

163-2.4 Miscellaneous fittings and hardware. Miscellaneous steel fittings and hardware for use with zinc-coated steel fabric shall be of commercial grade steel or better quality, wrought or cast as appropriate to the fitting or hardware, and sufficient in strength to provide a balanced design when used with fabric, posts, and wires of the specified quality. All steel fittings and hardware shall be protected with a zinc coating applied in conformance with ASTM A153.

163-2.5 Concrete pads at gates. Concrete shall be of a commercial grade with a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3,000 psi (2670 kPa).

163-2.6 Marking. Each roll of fabric shall carry a tag showing the kind of base metal, kind of coating, the gauge of the wire, the length of fencing in the roll, and the name of the manufacturer. Posts, wire, and other fittings shall be identified as to manufacturer, kind of base metal, and kind of coating.

163-2.7 Weed control material. A commercially available weed control material shall be applied at the manufacturer's recommended rate.

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

163-3.1 General. The fence shall be constructed in accordance with the details on the plans and as specified here using new materials. All work shall be performed in a workmanlike manner satisfactory to the RPR. [The RPR shall establish and mark the property line or fence line for the work.] [The Contractor shall layout the fence line based on the plans.] The work shall progress in this manner and at the close of the working day the newly constructed fence shall be tied to the existing fence.

Select whether the RPR or Contractor will lay out the fence and/or property lines.

163-3.2 Clearing fence line. All brush, stumps, logs, and other debris which would interfere with the construction of the fence shall be removed on either side of the fence centerline before starting fencing operations. The material removed and disposed of shall not constitute a pay item and shall be considered incidental to fence construction.

163-3.3 Installing fabric. Excavate ground to the depth required for proper installation of the fabric. Obtain RPR's approval of depth of excavation before placing the wire fabric. Place the fabric and lap splice it to existing fence fabric and tie with wire ties at 2-foot (0.6-m) spacing. Cut wire fabric around fence post footing to allow proper placement. Backfill with native soil to original grade and compact. Gate concrete pads shall be installed at each gate or as shown on the plans.

163-3.4 Weed control application. Weed control material shall be applied over an area 5 feet (1.5 m) wide, measured from the fence centerline, and over the wildlife fence. Apply weed control material as recommended by the manufacturer's instructions and in compliance with state and local regulations.

163-3.5 Electrical grounds. Electrical grounds shall be constructed [where a power line passes over the fence] [at 500 feet (150 m) intervals]. [The ground shall be installed directly below the point of crossing]. The ground shall be accomplished with a copper clad rod 8 feet (2.4 m) long and a minimum of 5/8 inches (16 mm) in diameter driven vertically until the top is 6 inches (150 mm) below the ground surface. A No. 6 solid copper conductor shall be clamped to the rod and to the fence in such a manner that each element of the fence is grounded. Installation of ground rods shall not constitute a pay item and shall be considered incidental to fence construction. The Contractor shall comply with FAA-STD-019, Lightning and Surge Protection, Grounding, Bonding and Shielding Requirements for Facilities and Electronic Equipment, paragraph 4.2.3.8, Lightning Protection for Fences and Gates, when fencing is adjacent to FAA facilities.

**The Engineer shall indicate the location of all electrical grounds on the plans.
Grounding may not be necessary with the use of composite posts.**

163-3.6 Cleaning up. The Contractor shall remove from the vicinity of the completed work all tools, buildings, equipment, etc., used during construction. All disturbed areas shall be seeded per Item T-901.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

163-4.1 Chain link fence fabric. Chain-link fence fabric shall be measured for payment by the linear foot to the nearest foot. Measurement shall be along the fence from center to center of end or corner posts, excluding the length occupied by gate openings.

163-4.2 Concrete pads at gates. Concrete pads at gates shall be measured by the unit.

163-4.3 Borrow fill material. Borrow material for fill will be furnished by the Contractor. This shall be measured by the cubic yard in place.

163-4.4 Weed control application. Shall be measured by the linear foot.

BASIS OF PAYMENT

163-5.1 Chain link fence fabric. Payment for chain-link fence fabric shall be made at the contract unit price per linear foot. This price shall be full compensation for furnishing materials, all labor (including preparation, excavation, backfill, fill, and installation), equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete this item. Utility locates shall be included in this pay item.

163-5.2 Concrete pads at gates. Payment for concrete pads at gates shall be made at the contract unit price for each pad. This price shall be full compensation for furnishing materials, all labor (including preparation, excavation, backfill, placement of concrete, reinforcing steel, and forms), equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete this item.

163-5.3 Borrow fill material. Payment for the loading, transporting, and placing of borrow material shall be made at the contract unit price per cubic yard. This price shall be full compensation for furnishing all labor (including placement, compaction, and grading), equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete this item.

163-5.4 Weed control application. Payment for weed control application shall be made at the contract unit price per linear foot. This price shall be full compensation for furnishing materials, all labor, equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete this item.

Payment will be made under:

Item F-163-5.1	Chain link Fence Fabric per linear foot
Item F-163-5.2	Concrete Pads at Gates, each
Item F-163-5.3	Borrow Fill Material per cubic yard (m ³)
Item F-163-4.4	Weed control application

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM International (ASTM)

ASTM A121	Standard Specification for Metallic-Coated Carbon Steel Barbed Wire

ASTM A153	Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware
ASTM A392	Standard Specification for Zinc-Coated Steel Chain-Link Fence Fabric
Federal Specifications (FED SPEC)	
FED SPEC RR-F-191/4 Fencing, Wire and Post, Metal (Chain-Link Fence Accessories)	
FAA Standard	
FAA-STD-019	Lightning and Surge Protection, Grounding, Bonding and Shielding Requirements for Facilities and Electronic Equipment
FAA Orders	
5300/38	AIP Handbook

END OF ITEM F-163

Item F-164 Wildlife Exclusion Fence

This specification may be edited as necessary to match the approved wildlife hazard assessment plan. See AIP Handbook FAA Order 5300.38 for guidance on eligibility of federal funds for fencing.

Prior to specifying fencing material on a federally funded project the type and nature of fencing will depend upon what purpose the fence is intended for. Wildlife fencing is to impede the entry of wildlife onto an airport outlined in a Wildlife Hazard Assessment Plan. Typical fence sections are available on the Airports website: www.faa.gov/airports/engineering/

DESCRIPTION

164-1.1 This item covers the requirements for furnishing materials and constructing new wire wildlife exclusion fences and gates with wood posts; furnishing and installing chain-link fence fabric underground along the wire fence line; and constructing concrete pads at fence gates in accordance with the details included here and as shown on the plans. The fence to be erected shall be [woven wire] [chain-link] fencing topped by three strands of barbed wire, as indicated on the plans and in the bid proposal.

MATERIALS

164-2.0 Wire.

a. Woven wire (zinc-coated). [The woven wire fence shall be 23-bar, 120-inch (3 m) field fence with top and bottom wires No. 12-1/2 gauge, and filler and stay wires No. 12-1/2 gauge. Stay wires shall be spaced 6 inches (150 mm) apart. All wires shall be smooth galvanized steel wire, conforming to ASTM A116. All wires shall be twice-dipped and shall be spaced as shown on the plans.] [Woven wire is not required.]

b. Chain-Link fence Fabric. [[The fabric shall be woven with a 9-gauge [galvanized steel wire] [polyvinyl chloride (PVC)-coated steel] [aluminum alloy] [zinc-5% aluminum mischmetal wire in a 2-inch (50 mm) mesh and shall meet the requirements of [___].]]

[The fabric shall be woven from a [___] gauge aluminum-coated steel wire in a 2-inch (50-mm) mesh and shall conform to the requirements of ASTM A491.] [Chain-link fence fabric is not required.]

Galvanized steel fabric shall conform to the requirements of ASTM A392, Class 2.

Polyvinyl chloride-coated steel shall conform to the requirements of ASTM F668, Class 2b.

Aluminum alloy fabric shall conform to the requirements of ASTM F1183.

Zinc-5% aluminum mischmetal alloy coated steel shall conform to the requirements of ASTM F1345, Class 2.

The Engineer shall specify 9 or 10-gauge aluminum-coated steel wire.

Metallic-coated fabric shall have a clear acrylic coating applied to the selvage area after weaving.

c. Chain link skirt fabric. [The fabric shall be woven with a 9-gauge galvanized steel wire in a 2-inch (50-mm) mesh and shall meet the requirements of ASTM A392, Class II. The fabric shall be 5 feet (1.5 m) wide.] [Not required.]

The Engineer shall determine locations for installation of fence skirt fabric based on the wildlife Hazard Assessment Plan.

d. Barbed wire (zinc-coated). Zinc-coated barbed wire shall be 2-strand twisted No. 12-1/2 gauge galvanized steel wire with 4-point barbs of No. 14 gauge galvanized steel wire. All wire shall conform to ASTM A121, Type A. The barbs shall be spaced approximately 5 inches (125 mm) apart.

e. Wire ties and tension wires. Wire fabric ties, wire ties, and tension wire for a given type of fabric shall be the same material as the fabric type. The tension wire shall be 7-gauge coiled spring wire coated similarly to the respective wire fabric being used. The fabric shall be attached to the tension wire as shown on the plans, but not greater than every four feet. Wire fabric ties shall be hog rings of galvanized steel wire not less than 9-gauge. All material shall conform to Federal Specification RR-F-191/4.

f. Bracing wire (zinc-coated). Wire used for cable for bracing shall be No. 9 smooth galvanized soft wire.

164-2.1 Gates and hardware. Gates shall be constructed of galvanized steel tubing conforming to Federal Specification RR-F-191 and shall be the size shown on the plans. Heavily galvanized hinges and latches for wood posts shall be furnished with each gate. A bolt or lag screw hinge shall be used, and either a wing or butterfly latch shall be furnished. The fabric shall be the same as required for the fence, F-164-2.0.

164-2.2 Miscellaneous fittings and hardware. Miscellaneous steel fittings and hardware for use with zinc-coated steel fabric shall be of commercial grade steel or better quality, wrought or cast as appropriate to the fitting or hardware, and sufficient in strength to provide a balanced design when used with fabric, posts, and wires of the specified quality. All steel fittings and hardware shall be protected with a zinc coating applied in conformance with ASTM A153.

[164-2.3 Wood posts .

- a. Species.** All posts shall be one of the following species of wood, unless otherwise noted in the proposal.

Wood Species

Group I	Group II
Cedar	Douglas-fir
Chestnut	Gum, Red
Cypress, Southern	Larch, Western
Locust, Black	Pine, Southern Yellow
Osage-orange	Pine, Lodgepole
Redwood	Tamarack
Yew, Pacific	Ash
Honey locust	Maple, Sugar
Oak, White	Oak, Red
Mulberry	Spruce
Live Oak	

Posts of Group I may be used untreated, provided at least 75% of the wood is heartwood. Posts of less than 75% heartwood of Group I shall be given a preservative treatment for the part of the post that will have contact with the ground line in accordance with the method specified under paragraph 164-2.3e butt treatment below. Posts of Group II shall be given a preservative treatment in accordance with the method specified under paragraph 164-2.3e full length treatment below.

b. Quality. Posts shall be peeled, sound, straight-grained, free from decay, cracks, and splits. Shakes shall not be in excess of 1/4-inch (6 mm) wide and 3 feet (1 m) long. Checks (lengthwise separations of the wood in a generally radial direction) are permitted, provided they are not harmful.

c. Dimensions. All posts shall be the length shown on the plans. Posts shall have the minimum top diameters shown on the plans or as specified. Sawn and split posts are acceptable instead of round posts if the required diameter round posts could be turned from the sawn/split posts.

d. Manufacture. Outer bark shall be completely removed from all posts including depressions. Inner bark shall be removed from all post surfaces to be treated, except inner bark may remain in depressions. The amount of wood shaved off in the removal of inner bark shall be held to a minimum.

e. Treatment. Posts shall be conditioned by air seasoning, steaming, or heating in oil in a manner that prevents injurious checking, splitting, or warping before treating. All timber shall be thoroughly seasoned and dry (22% maximum moisture content) before applying preservative treatment. The treatment, care and preservative shall be

with waterborne preservatives in accordance with American Wood Preservers Association (AWPA) Standard U1, Use Category 4 (UC4).]

164-2.4 Braces. Cleats, gate stops, and braces shall be of the size shown on the plans. They shall be of the same species and quality specified for the posts or approved by the RPR, and they shall be free from knots larger than one-third the width of the piece. Gate stops shall be made of posts of suitable length. Braces may be made of posts of suitable length or of sawed lumber. All cleats, gate stops, and any braces in contact with the ground and for a distance of at least 6 inches (150 mm) above the ground shall be treated by the hot and cold bath process, specified herein for posts. The wire used in cable for bracing shall conform to paragraph 164-2.0f.

[**164-2.5 Steel posts, rails, and braces.** Line posts, rails, and braces shall conform to the requirements of ASTM F1043 or ASTM F1083 as follows:

Galvanized tubular steel pipe shall conform to the requirements of Group IA, (Schedule 40) coatings conforming to Type A, or Group IC (High Strength Pipe), External coating Type B, and internal coating Type B or D.

Roll Formed Steel Shapes (C-Sections) shall conform to the requirements of Group IIA, and be galvanized in accordance with the requirements of ASTM F1043, Type A.

Hot-Rolled Shapes (H Beams) shall meet the requirements of Group III, and be galvanized in accordance with the requirements of ASTM F1043, Type A.

Aluminum Pipe shall conform to the requirements of Group IB.

Aluminum Shapes shall conform to the requirements of Group IIB.

Vinyl or polyester coated steel shall conform to the requirements of ASTM F1043, Paragraph 7.3, Optional Supplemental Color Coating.

Composite posts shall conform to the strength requirements of ASTM F1043 or ASTM F1083. The strength loss of composite posts shall not exceed 10% when subjected to 3,600 hours of exposure to light and water in accordance with ASTM G152, ASTM G153, ASTM G154, and ASTM G155.

Posts, rails, and braces furnished for use in conjunction with aluminum alloy fabric shall be aluminum alloy or composite.

Posts, rails, and braces, with the exception of galvanized steel conforming to ASTM F1043 or ASTM F1083, Group 1A, Type A, or aluminum alloy, shall demonstrate the ability to withstand testing in salt spray in accordance with ASTM B117 as follows:

- External: 1,000 hours with a maximum of 5% red rust.
- Internal: 650 hours with a maximum of 5% red rust.

The dimensions of the posts, rails, and braces shall be in accordance with Tables I through VI of Federal Specification RR-F-191/3.]

The Engineer must select the appropriate fence materials based on the wildlife hazard assessment for the airport.

164-2.6 Staples. The staples shall be No. 9 galvanized steel wire, one inch (25 mm) long for hardwood posts and 1-1/2 inch (38 mm) long for use in softwood posts.

164-2.7 Concrete pads at gates. Concrete shall be of a commercial grade with a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi (2670 kPa).

164-2.8 Weed control material. A commercially available weed control material shall be applied at the manufacturer's recommended rate.

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

164-3.1 General. The fence shall be constructed in accordance with the details on the plans using new materials. All work shall be performed in a workmanlike manner, satisfactory to the RPR. [The RPR shall establish and mark the property line or fence line for the work.] [The Contractor shall layout the fence line based on the plans.] The Contractor shall span the opening below the fence with barbed wire at all locations where it is not practical to conform the fence to the general contour of the ground surface because of natural or manmade features such as drainage ditches. The new fence shall be permanently tied to the terminals of existing fences whenever required by the RPR. The finished fence shall be plumb, taut, true to line and ground contour, and complete in every detail. When shown on the plans or directed by the RPR, the Contractor shall stake down the woven wire fence at several points between posts. The Contractor shall arrange the work so construction of the new fence immediately follows the removal of existing fences. The length of unfenced section at any time shall not exceed 300 feet (90 m). The work shall progress in this manner, and at the close of the working day, the newly constructed fence shall be tied to the unremoved existing fence.

164-3.2 Clearing fence line. The site of the fence shall be sufficiently clear of obstructions, and surface irregularities. The fence line shall be graded so that the fence will conform to the general contour of the ground. The fence line shall be cleared on each side of the centerline of the fence. This clearing shall consist of the removal of all stumps, brush, rocks, trees, or other obstructions that will interfere with proper construction of the fence. Stumps within the cleared area of the fence line shall be grubbed or excavated. The bottom of the fence shall be placed a uniform distance above ground as specified in the plans. When shown on the plans or as directed by the RPR, the existing fences which interfere with the new fence location shall be removed by the Contractor as part of the construction work, unless removal is listed as a separate item in the bid schedule. All holes remaining after post and stump removal shall be refilled with suitable soil, gravel, or other suitable material and shall be compacted with tampers.

The work shall include the handling and disposal of all material cleared, of excess excavation and the removal of spoiled material regardless of the type, character, composition, or condition of such material encountered.

164-3.3 Setting posts. [Wood posts shall be set with large ends down, plumb, and in a straight line on the side on which the wire is to be fastened. Posts shall be set full depth and shall not be cut off to eliminate rock or other excavation. Where rock is encountered, it shall be removed, to provide full-depth and full-size holes. The bottom of all posts shall be cut off square. The diameter of the holes

shall be at least 6 inches (150 mm) larger than the diameter of the posts. When cleats are used on posts, the holes shall be dug large enough to accommodate the cleat.] [Steel posts shall be spaced as shown on the plans. Corner, brace, anchor, end, and gate posts shall be set in concrete bases as shown on the plans. The top of the base concrete shall be slightly above the ground surface, trowel finished, and sloped to drain. Post holes of full depth and size for the concrete bases for posts shall be provided. All line posts may be either driven or set in dug holes to a penetration depth of 3 feet (90 cm). All post setting shall be done carefully and to true alignment. Dirt removed for placing posts, anchor bars, flanges, etc., shall be replaced, tamped, and leveled. When posts are driven, care shall be exercised to prevent marring or buckling of the posts. Damaged posts shall be replaced at the Contractor's expense.] After posts are placed and lined, the holes shall be backfilled [with suitable material that shall be properly compacted by the use of tampers] [with concrete]. The posts adjacent to end, corner, anchor, and gate posts shall be set and braced with braces and wire, as shown on the plans. No extra compensation shall be made for rock excavation.

164-3.4 Anchoring and bracing. Corner, end, gate, and adjacent intermediate posts shall be anchored and brace as shown on the plans. Anchor posts shall be set at approximately 500 feet (150 m) intervals and braced to the adjacent posts. Posts shall be braced before the wire fencing is placed.

164-3.5 Installing wire. The wire shall be placed on the side of the posts away from the airport or as shown on the plans. The wire fence shall be placed on the posts at the height indicated on the plans. Longitudinal wires shall be installed parallel and drawn uniformly taut. The vertical stay wires of the woven wire fencing shall be straight and vertical. At end and gate posts the woven wire and barbed wire shall be wrapped once around the post; each longitudinal wire shall be stapled at least three times and the ends of these wires shall be tied with a snug, tight twist. Each longitudinal wire shall be stapled to each intermediate post with one steel wire staple; at the corner and anchor posts, two or more staples shall be used. The top strands of barbed wire of all fences shall be stapled with two staples in each post. All staples shall be set diagonally with the grain of the wood and driven up tight. After the fence has been erected, the tops of the wood posts shall be sawed off with a 1-to-3 pitch. The bottom wire of the wire fencing shall clear the ground by not more than 2 inches (50 mm) or less than one inch (25 mm) at any place.

164-3.6 Splicing wire. Wire splices in longitudinal wires will be permitted if made with an approved galvanized bolt-clamp splice or a wire splice made as follows: the end of the wires shall be carried 3 inches (75 mm) past the splice tool and wrapped around the other wire away from the tool for at least six turns in opposite directions. After the tool is removed, the space occupied by it shall be closed by pulling the ends together. The unused ends of the wires shall be cut close to make a neat, workmanlike job. Woven wire shall be spliced only at posts.

164-3.7 Installing chain-link skirt fabric. [Excavate trench to the depth required for proper installation of the chain-link fabric. Obtain RPR's approval of depth of excavation before placing the wire fabric. Place the fabric and lap splice it to existing fence fabric and tie with wire ties at 2-foot (0.6-m) spacing. Cut wire fabric around fence post footing to allow proper placement. Backfill with native soil to original grade.] [Chain-link skirt fabric is not required.]

Review the approved Wildlife Hazard Assessment Plan for locations where Chain-link skirt fabric is recommended.

164-3.8 Installing gates. Gates shall be hung on gate fittings, as shown on the plans. Fittings on the gate posts shall be clamped, screwed, or bolted to prevent slipping. Gates shall be erected to swing in the direction indicated and shall be provided with gate stops, as specified or as shown on the plans. Gates shall be erected at locations shown on the plans. Gate concrete pads shall be installed at each gate or as shown on the plans.

164-3.9 Existing fence connections. Wherever the new fence joins an existing fence, either at a corner or at the intersection of straight fence lines, a corner or anchor post shall be set at the junction and braced and anchored the same as described for corner posts. If the connection is made at other than the corner of the new fence, the last span of the old fence shall contain a brace span.

164-3.10 Electrical grounds. Electrical grounds shall be constructed [where a power line passes over the fence] [at 500 feet (150 m) intervals]. [The ground shall be installed directly below the point of crossing.] The ground shall be accomplished with a copper clad rod 8 feet (2.4 m) long and a minimum of 5/8 inches (16 mm) in diameter driven vertically until the top is 6 inches (150 mm) below the ground surface. A No. 6 solid copper conductor shall be clamped to the rod and to the fence in such a manner that each element of the fence is grounded. Installation of ground rods shall not constitute a pay item and shall be considered incidental to fence construction. The Contractor shall comply with FAA-STD-019, Lightning and Surge Protection, Grounding, Bonding and Shielding Requirements for Facilities and Electronic Equipment, paragraph 4.2.3.8, Lightning Protection for Fences and Gates when fencing is adjacent to FAA facilities.

**The Engineer shall indicate the location of all electrical grounds on the plans.
Grounding may not be necessary with the use of composite posts.**

164-3.11 Weed control application. Weed control material shall be applied over an area 5 feet (1.5 m) wide, measured from the fence centerline, and over the chain link wildlife fence. Apply weed control material as recommended by the manufacturer's instructions and in compliance with state and local regulations.

164-3.12 Cleaning up. The Contractor shall remove from the vicinity of the completed work all tools, buildings, equipment, etc., used during construction. All disturbed areas shall be seeded per Item T-901.

Standard Detail Examples and the example drawings are available at the following website: www.faa.gov/airports/engineering/

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

164-4.1 Fence. Fence shall be measured in place from outside to outside of end posts or corner posts and shall be the length of fence actually constructed, except for the space occupied by the gates.

164-4.2 Chain link fence skirt fabric. [Chain-link fence fabric shall be measured for payment by the linear foot (m) to the nearest foot (meter). Measurement shall be along the fence from center to center of end or corner posts, excluding the length occupied by gate openings.][Not required.]

164-4.3 Vehicle gates and pedestrian gates. Vehicle gates and pedestrian gates shall be measured in units for each gate installed and accepted.

164-4.4 Concrete gate pad. [Concrete gate pads shall be measured by the unit.][Not required.]

164-4.5 Weed control application. Shall be measured by the linear foot.

BASIS OF PAYMENT

164-5.1 Fence. Payment will be made at the contract unit price per linear foot (meter) for wire [chain-link] fence. This price shall be full compensation for furnishing all materials and for preparation, erection, and installation of these materials, and for all labor, equipment, tools and incidentals necessary to complete the item.

164-5.2 Chain link fence skirt fabric. [Payment for chain-link fence skirt fabric shall be made at the contract unit price per linear foot. This price shall be full compensation for furnishing materials, all labor (including preparation, excavation, backfill, fill, and installation), equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete this item. Utility locates shall be included in this pay item.][Not required.]

164-5.3 Vehicle gates and pedestrian gates. Payment will be made at the contract unit price per each for driveway or for walkway gates. This price shall be full compensation for furnishing all materials and for all preparation, erection, and installation of these materials and for all labor, equipment, tools, and necessary incidentals to complete the item.

164-5.4 Concrete gate pad. [Payment for concrete pads at gates shall be made at the contract unit price for each pad. This price shall be full compensation for furnishing materials, all labor (including preparation, excavation, backfill, placement of concrete, reinforcing steel, and forms), equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete this item.][Not required.]

164-5.5 Weed control application. Payment for weed control application shall be made at the contract unit price per linear foot. This price shall be full compensation for furnishing materials, all labor, equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete this item.

Payment will be made under:

Item F-164-5.1	Fence per linear foot (m)
Item F-164-5.2	Chain link Fence Skirt Fabric per linear feet (m)
Item F-164-5.3a	Vehicle gate, each
Item F-164-5.3b	Pedestrian gate, each
Item F-164-5.4	Concrete Gate Pad, each

Item F-164-5.5 Weed Control, per linear foot

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM International (ASTM)

ASTM A116	Standard Specification for Metallic-Coated, Steel Woven Wire Fence Fabric
ASTM A121	Standard Specification for Metallic-Coated Carbon Steel Barbed Wire
ASTM A153	Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware
ASTM A392	Standard Specification for Zinc-Coated Steel Chain-Link Fence Fabric
ASTM A491	Standard Specification for Aluminum-Coated Steel Chain-Link Fence Fabric
ASTM F668	Standard Specification for Polyvinyl Chloride(PVC), Polyolefin and other Organic Polymer Coated Steel Chain-Link Fence Fabric
ASTM F1043	Standard Specification for Strength and Protective Coatings on Steel Industrial Fence Framework
ASTM F1083	Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Hot-Dipped Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Welded, for Fence Structures
ASTM F1183	Standard Specification for Aluminum Alloy Chain Link Fence Fabric
ASTM F1345	Standard Specification for Zinc 5% Aluminum-Mischmetal Alloy Coated Steel Chain-Link Fence Fabric
ASTM G152	Standard Practice for Operating Open Flame Carbon Arc Light Apparatus for Exposure of Nonmetallic Materials
ASTM G153	Standard Practice for Operating Enclosed Carbon Arc Light Apparatus for Exposure of Nonmetallic Materials
ASTM G154	Standard Practice for Operating Fluorescent Ultraviolet (UV) Lamp Apparatus for Exposure of Nonmetallic Materials
ASTM G155	Standard Practice for Operating Xenon Arc Light Apparatus for Exposure of Nonmetallic Materials

American Wood Preservers Association (AWPA)

AWPA U1	Use Category System: User Specification for Treated Wood

Federal Specifications (FED SPEC)

FED SPEC RR-F-191/Gen	Fencing, Wire, and Post Metal (and Gates, Chain-link Fence Fabric, and Accessories) (General Specification)
FED SPEC RR-F-191/4	Fencing, Wire and Post, Metal (Chain-Link Fence Accessories)

FAA Standard

FAA-STD-019

Lightning and Surge Protection, Grounding, Bonding and Shielding
Requirements for Facilities and Electronic Equipment

FAA Order

5300.38

AIP Handbook

END OF ITEM F-164

Part 11 – Drainage

Item D-701 Pipe for Storm Drains and Culverts

Pipes and/or structures located within Runway or Taxiway Safety areas must be designed to accommodate the single wheel load of the largest aircraft that can utilize the airport, the largest maintenance equipment load, or the earth load, whichever is greater. Underground piping and components used in drainage systems for terminal and aircraft fueling ramp drainage shall be noncombustible and inert to fuel in accordance with National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) 415.

Typically, drainage pipes are designed for highway loadings, however, a modified design will be necessary when aircraft loadings are greater than AASHTO HS20 live loads.

It is acceptable to specify storm drains and drainage structures meeting state DOT specifications for materials. Bedding, embedment and overfull are critical to long-term performance of the piping system. Include all referenced state specifications in the project specification.

DESCRIPTION

701-1.1 This item shall consist of the construction of pipe culverts and storm drains in accordance with these specifications and in reasonably close conformity with the lines and grades shown on the plans.

MATERIALS

701-2.1 Materials shall meet the requirements shown on the plans and specified below. Underground piping and components used in drainage systems for terminal and aircraft fueling ramp drainage shall be noncombustible and inert to fuel in accordance with National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) 415.

The Engineer should indicate the required class, schedule, standard dimension ratio (SDR), gauge, and/or strength of pipe desired.

The Engineer shall select the pipe used for the project and delete inappropriate requirements from paragraph 701-2.2 and from the list of material requirements.

The Engineer shall include industry standard references (for example, ASTM and/or AASHTO) for installation if necessary.

701-2.2 Pipe. The pipe shall be of the type called for on the plans or in the proposal and shall be in accordance with the following appropriate requirements:

[American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO) M167	
Standard Specification for Corrugated Steel Structural Plate, Zinc-Coated, for Field-Bolted Pipe, Pipe-Arches, and Arches	
AASHTO M190	Standard Specification for Bituminous-Coated Corrugated Metal Culvert Pipe and Pipe Arches
AASHTO M196	Standard Specification for Corrugated Aluminum Pipe for Sewers and Drains
AASHTO M219	Standard Specification for Corrugated Aluminum Alloy Structural Plate for Field-Bolted Pipe, Pipe-Arches, and Arches
AASHTO M243	Standard Specification for Field-Applied Coating of Corrugated Metal Structural Plate for Pipe, Pipe-Arches, and Arches
AASHTO M252	Standard Specification for Corrugated Polyethylene Drainage Pipe
AASHTO M294	Standard Specification for Corrugated Polyethylene Pipe, 300- to 1500-mm (12- to 60-in.) Diameter
AASHTO M304	Standard Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Profile Wall Drain Pipe and Fittings Based on Controlled Inside Diameter
AASHTO MP20	Standard Specification for Steel Reinforced Polyethylene (PE) Ribbed Pipe, 300- to 900-mm (12- to 36-in.) Diameter
AASHTO R73	Standard Practice for Evaluation of Precast Concrete Drainage Productions
ASTM A760	Standard Specification for Corrugated Steel Pipe, Metallic-Coated for Sewers and Drains
ASTM A761	Standard Specification for Corrugated Structural Steel Plate, Zinc-Coated, for Field-Bolted Pipe, Pipe-Arches, and Arches
ASTM A762	Standard Specification for Corrugated Steel Pipe, Polymer Precoated for Sewers and Drains
ASTM A849	Standard Specification for Post Applied Coatings, Pavings, and Linings for Corrugated Steel Sewer and Drainage Pipe
ASTM B745	Standard Specification for Corrugated Aluminum Pipe for Sewers and Drains
ASTM C14	Standard Specification for Nonreinforced Concrete Sewer, Storm Drain, and Culvert Pipe
ASTM C76	Standard Specification for Reinforced Concrete Culvert, Storm Drain, and Sewer Pipe

ASTM C506	Standard Specification for Reinforced Concrete Arch Culvert, Storm Drain, and Sewer Pipe
ASTM C507	Standard Specification for Reinforced Concrete Elliptical Culvert, Storm Drain, and Sewer Pipe
ASTM C655	Standard Specification for Reinforced Concrete D-Load Culvert, Storm Drain, and Sewer Pipe
ASTM C1433	Standard Specification for Precast Reinforced Concrete Monolithic Box Sections for Culverts, Storm Drains, and Sewers
ASTM C1479	Standard Practice for Installation of Precast Concrete Sewer, Storm Drain, and Culvert Pipe Using Standard Installations
ASTM C1577	Standard Specification for Precast Reinforced Concrete Monolithic Box Sections for Culverts, Storm Drains, and Sewers Designed According to AASHTO LRFD
ASTM C1786	Standard Specification for Segmental Precast Reinforced Concrete Box Sections for Culverts, Storm Drains, and Sewers Designed According to AASHTO LRFD
ASTM C1840	Standard Practice for Inspection and Acceptance of Installed Reinforced Concrete Culvert, Storm Drain, and Storm Sewer Pipe
ASTM D3262	Standard Specification for "Fiberglass" (Glass-Fiber-Reinforced Thermosetting-Resin) Sewer Pipe
ASTM D4161	Standard Specification for "Fiberglass" (Glass-Fiber-Reinforced Thermosetting-Resin) Pipe Joints Using Flexible Elastomeric Seals
ASTM F667	Standard Specification for 3 through 24 in Corrugated Polyethylene Pipe and Fittings
ASTM F714	Standard Specification for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe (DR-PR) Based on Outside Diameter
ASTM F794	Standard Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Profile Gravity Sewer Pipe and Fittings Based on Controlled Inside Diameter
ASTM F894	Standard Specification for Polyethylene (PE) Large Diameter Profile Wall Sewer and Drain Pipe
ASTM F949	Standard Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Corrugated Sewer Pipe with a Smooth Interior and Fittings
ASTM F2435	Standard Specification for Steel Reinforced Polyethylene (PE) Corrugated Pipe

ASTM F2562	Specification for Steel Reinforced Thermoplastic Ribbed Pipe and Fittings for Non-Pressure Drainage and Sewerage
ASTM F2736	Standard Specification for 6 to 30 in. (152 to 762 mm) Polypropylene (PP) Corrugated Single Wall Pipe and Double Wall Pipe
ASTM F2764	Standard Specification for 30 to 60 in. (750 to 1500 mm) Polypropylene (PP) Triple Wall Pipe and Fittings for Non-Pressure Sanitary Sewer Applications
ASTM F2881	Standard Specification for 12 to 60 in. (300 to 1500 mm) Polypropylene (PP) Dual Wall Pipe and Fittings for Non-Pressure Storm Sewer Applications
ASTM D3034	Standard Specification for Type PSM Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Sewer Pipe and Fittings]

701-2.3 Concrete. [Concrete for pipe cradles shall have a minimum compressive strength of 2000 psi (13.8 MPa) at 28 days and conform to the requirements of ASTM C94.] [Not used.]

701-2.4 Rubber gaskets. [Rubber gaskets for rigid pipe shall conform to the requirements of ASTM C443. Rubber gaskets for PVC pipe, polyethylene, and polypropylene pipe shall conform to the requirements of ASTM F477. Rubber gaskets for zinc-coated steel pipe and precoated galvanized pipe shall conform to the requirements of ASTM D1056, for the "RE" closed cell grades. Rubber gaskets for steel reinforced thermoplastic ribbed pipe shall conform to the requirements of ASTM F477.] [Not used.]

701-2.5 Joint mortar. [Pipe joint mortar shall consist of one part Portland cement and two parts sand. The Portland cement shall conform to the requirements of ASTM C150, Type I. The sand shall conform to the requirements of ASTM C144.] [Not used.]

701-2.6 Joint fillers. [Poured filler for joints shall conform to the requirements of ASTM D6690.] [Not used.]

701-2.7 Plastic gaskets. [Plastic gaskets shall conform to the requirements of ASTM C990.] [Not used.]

701-2.8. Controlled low-strength material (CLSM). [Controlled low-strength material shall conform to the requirements of Item P-153. When CLSM is used, all joints shall have gaskets.] [Not used.]

The locations where CLSM is permitted shall be shown on the plans. This paragraph must agree with paragraph 701-3.5.

701-2.9 Precast box culverts. Manufactured in accordance with and conforming to ASTM C1433.

701-2.10 Precast concrete pipe. Precast concrete structures shall be furnished by a plant meeting National Precast Concrete Association Plant Certification Program or American Concrete Pipe Association QCast Plant Certification program.

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

701-3.1 Excavation. The width of the pipe trench shall be sufficient to permit satisfactory jointing of the pipe and thorough tamping of the bedding material under and around the pipe, but it shall not be less than the external diameter of the pipe plus 12 inches (300 mm) on each side. The trench walls shall be approximately vertical.

The Contractor shall comply with all current federal, state and local rules and regulations governing the safety of men and materials during the excavation, installation and backfilling operations. Specifically, the Contractor shall observe that all requirements of the Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) relating to excavations, trenching and shoring are strictly adhered to. The width of the trench shall be sufficient to permit satisfactorily jointing of the pipe and thorough compaction of the bedding material under the pipe and backfill material around the pipe, but it shall not be greater than the widths shown on the plans trench detail.

Where rock, hardpan, or other unyielding material is encountered, the Contractor shall remove it from below the foundation grade for a depth of at least 8 inch (200 mm) or 1/2 inch (12 mm) for each foot of fill over the top of the pipe (whichever is greater) but for no more than three-quarters of the nominal diameter of the pipe. The excavation below grade should be filled with granular material to form a uniform foundation.

Where a firm foundation is not encountered at the grade established, due to soft, spongy, or other unstable soil, the unstable soil shall be removed and replaced with approved granular material for the full trench width. The RPR shall determine the depth of removal necessary. The granular material shall be compacted to provide adequate support for the pipe.

The excavation for pipes placed in embankment fill shall not be made until the embankment has been completed to a height above the top of the pipe as shown on the plans.

701-3.2 Bedding. The bedding surface for the pipe shall provide a foundation of uniform density to support the pipe throughout its entire length.

a. Rigid pipe. The pipe bedding shall be constructed uniformly for the full length of the pipe barrel, as required on the plans. The maximum aggregate size shall be 1 in when the bedding thickness is less than 6 inches, and 1-1/2 in when the bedding thickness is greater than 6 inches. Bedding shall be loosely placed uncompacted material under the middle third of the pipe prior to placement of the pipe.

b. Flexible pipe. For flexible pipe, the bed shall be roughly shaped to fit the pipe, and a bedding blanket of sand or fine granular material shall be provided as follows:

Flexible Pipe Bedding

Pipe Corrugation Depth		Minimum Bedding Depth	
inch	mm	inch	mm
1/2	12	1	25
1	25	2	50
2	50	3	75
2-1/2	60	3-1/2	90

c. Other pipe materials. For PVC, polyethylene, polypropylene, or fiberglass pipe, the bedding material shall consist of coarse sands and gravels with a maximum particle size of 3/4 inches (19 mm). For pipes installed under paved areas, no more than 12% of the material shall pass the No. 200 (0.075 mm) sieve. For all other areas, no more than 50% of the material shall pass the No. 200 (0.075 mm) sieve. The bedding shall have a thickness of at least 6 inches (150 mm) below the bottom of the pipe and extend up around the pipe for a depth of not less than 50% of the pipe's vertical outside diameter.

701-3.3 Laying pipe. The pipe laying shall begin at the lowest point of the trench and proceed upgrade. The lower segment of the pipe shall be in contact with the bedding throughout its full length. Bell or groove ends of rigid pipes and outside circumferential laps of flexible pipes shall be placed facing upgrade.

Paved or partially lined pipe shall be placed so that the longitudinal center line of the paved segment coincides with the flow line.

Elliptical and elliptically reinforced concrete pipes shall be placed with the manufacturer's reference lines designating the top of the pipe within five degrees of a vertical plane through the longitudinal axis of the pipe.

701-3.4 Joining pipe. Joints shall be made with (1) cement mortar, (2) cement grout, (3) rubber gaskets, (4) plastic gaskets, (5) coupling bands [or (6) []].

Mortar joints shall be made with an excess of mortar to form a continuous bead around the outside of the pipe and shall be finished smooth on the inside. Molds or runners shall be used for grouted joints to retain the poured grout. Rubber ring gaskets shall be installed to form a flexible watertight seal.

a. Concrete pipe. Concrete pipe may be either bell and spigot or tongue and groove. Pipe sections at joints shall be fully seated and the inner surfaces flush and even. [Concrete pipe joints shall be sealed with rubber gaskets meeting ASTM C443 when leak resistant joints are required.] [Concrete pipe joints shall be sealed with butyl mastic meeting ASTM C990 or mortar when soil tight joints are required. Joints shall be thoroughly wetted before applying mortar or grout.]

b. Metal pipe. Metal pipe shall be firmly joined by form-fitting bands conforming to the requirements of ASTM A760 for steel pipe and AASHTO M196 for aluminum pipe.

c. PVC, Polyethylene, or Polypropylene pipe. Joints for PVC, Polyethylene, or Polypropylene pipe shall conform to the requirements of ASTM D3212 when leak resistant joints are required. Joints for PVC and Polyethylene pipe shall conform to the requirements of AASHTO M304 when soil tight joints are required. Fittings for polyethylene pipe shall conform to the requirements of AASHTO M252 or ASTM M294. Fittings for polypropylene pipe shall conform to ASTM F2881, ASTM F2736, or ASTM F2764.

d. Fiberglass pipe. Joints and fittings shall be as detailed on the plans and in accordance with the manufacturers recommendations. [Joints shall meet the requirements of ASTM D4161 for flexible elastomeric seals.] [Enter manufacturers joint installation requirements.]

701-3.5 Embedment and Overfill. Pipes shall be inspected before any fill material is placed; any pipes found to be out of alignment, unduly settled, or damaged shall be removed and re-laid or replaced at the Contractor's expense.

701-3.5-1 Embedment Material Requirements

a. Concrete Pipe. Embedment material and compaction requirements shall be in accordance with the applicable Type of Standard Installation (Types 1, 2, 3, or 4) per ASTM C1479. If a concrete cradle or CLSM embedment material is used, it shall conform to the plan details.

b. Plastic and fiberglass Pipe. Embedment material shall meet the requirements of ASTM D3282, A-1, A-2-4, A-2-5, or A-3. Embedment material shall be free of organic material, stones larger than 1.5 inches in the greatest dimension, or frozen lumps. Embedment material shall extend to 12 inches above the top of the pipe.

c. Metal Pipe. Embedment material shall be granular as specified in the contract document and specifications, and shall be free of organic material, rock fragments larger than 1.5 inches in the greatest dimension and frozen lumps. As a minimum, backfill materials shall meet the requirements of ASTM D3282, A-1, A-2, or A-3. Embedment material shall extend to 12 inches above the top of the pipe.

701-3.5-2 Placement of Embedment Material

The embedment material shall be compacted in layers not exceeding 6 inches (150 mm) on each side of the pipe and shall be brought up one foot (30 cm) above the top of the pipe or to natural ground level, whichever is greater. Thoroughly compact the embedment material under the haunches of the pipe without displacing the pipe. Material shall be brought up evenly on each side of the pipe for the full length of the pipe.

When the top of the pipe is above the top of the trench, the embedment material shall be compacted in layers not exceeding 6 inches (150 mm) and shall be brought up evenly on each side of the pipe to one foot (30 cm) above the top of the pipe. All embedment material shall be compacted to a density required under Item P-152.

Concrete cradles and flowable fills, such as controlled low strength material (CLSM) or controlled density fill (CDF), may be used for embedment provided adequate flotation resistance can be achieved by restraints, weighing, or placement technique.

It shall be the Contractor's responsibility to protect installed pipes and culverts from damage due to construction equipment operations. The Contractor shall be responsible for installation of any extra strutting or backfill required to protect pipes from the construction equipment.

701-3.6 Overfill

Pipes shall be inspected before any overfill is in place. Any pipes found to be out of alignment, unduly settled, or damaged shall be removed and relaid or replaced at the Contractor's expense. Evaluation of any damage to RCP shall be evaluated based on AASHTO R73.

Overfill material shall be placed and compacted in layers as required to achieve compaction to at least 95 percent standard proctor per [ASTM D698] [ASTM D1557]. The soil shall contain no debris, organic matter, frozen material, or stones with a diameter greater than one half the thickness of the compacted layers being placed.

701-3.7 Inspection Requirements

An initial post installation inspection shall be performed by the RPR no sooner than 30 days after completion of installation and final backfill. Clean or flush all lines prior to inspection.

[Use a camera with lighting suitable to allow a clear picture of the entire periphery of the pipe interior. Center the camera in the pipe both vertically and horizontally and be able to pan and tilt to a 90 degree angle with the axis of the pipe rotating 360 degrees. Use equipment to move the camera through the pipe that will not obstruct the camera's view or interfere with proper documentation of the pipe's condition. The video image shall be clear, focused, and relatively free from roll, static, or other image distortion qualities that would prevent the reviewer from evaluating the condition of the pipe.]

[For pipe sizes larger than 48 inches, a walk-through visual inspection shall be performed.]

Incorporate specific inspection requirements for the various types of pipes beneath the general inspection requirements.

[Reinforced concrete pipe shall be inspected, evaluated, and reported on in accordance with ASTM C1840, "Standard Practice for Inspection and Acceptance of Installed Reinforced Concrete Culvert, Storm Drain, and Storm Sewer Pipe." Any issues reported shall include still photo and video documentation. The zoom ratio shall be provided for all still or video images that document any issues of concern by the inspection firm.]

[Flexible pipes shall be inspected for rips, tears, joint separations, soil migration, cracks, localized buckling, settlement, alignment, and deflection.] [Determine whether the allowable deflection has been exceeded by use of a laser profiler for internal pipe diameters of 48 inches or less, or direct measurement for internal pipe diameters greater than 48 inches. Laser profile equipment shall utilize low barrel distortion video equipment. Deflection of installed pipe shall not exceed the limits provided in the table below, as a percentage of the average inside diameter of the pipe.

Maximum Allowable Pipe Deflection

Type of Pipe	Maximum Allowable Deflection (%)
Corrugated Metal Pipe	5
Concrete Lined CMP	3
Thermoplastic Pipe	5
Fiberglass	5

If deflection readings in excess of the allowable deflection are obtained, remove the pipe with excessive deflection and replace with new pipe. Isolated areas may exceed allowable by 2.5% with

concurrence of RPR. Repair or replace any pipe with cracks exhibiting displacement across the crack, bulges, creases, tears, spalls, or delaminations. The report for flexible pipe shall include as a minimum, the deflection results and final post installation inspection report. The inspection report shall include: a copy of all video taken, pipe location identification, equipment used for inspection, inspector name, deviation from design line and grade, and inspector's notes.]

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

701-4.1 The length of pipe shall be measured in linear feet (m) of pipe in place, completed, and accepted. It shall be measured along the centerline of the pipe from end or inside face of structure to the end or inside face of structure, whichever is applicable. The [identify each class, types and size of pipe] shall be measured separately. All fittings shall be included in the footage as typical pipe sections in the pipe being measured.

701-4.2. [Precast box culverts shall be measured by individual unit and size.] [Not used.]

701-4.3 [The volume of concrete for pipe cradles shall be the number of cubic yards (cubic meters) of concrete that is completed in place and accepted.] [Not used.]

701-4.4 [The volume of rock, hardpan, or other unyielding material shall be the number of cubic yards (cubic meters) excavated. No payment shall be made for the cushion material placed for the bed of the pipe.] [Not used.]

BASIS OF PAYMENT

701-5.0 These prices shall fully compensate the Contractor for furnishing all materials and for all preparation, excavation, and installation of these materials; and for all labor, equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete the item.

701-5.1 Payment will be made at the contract unit price per linear foot (meter) for [identify each class and size of pipe].

701-5.2 Payment will be made at the contract unit price per unit for [identify each class and size of precast box culvert.]. [Not used.]

701-5.3 [Payment will be made at the contract unit price per cubic yard (cubic meter) of concrete for pipe cradles.] [Not used.]

701-5.4 [Payment will be made at the contract unit price per cubic yard (cubic meter) for rock, hardpan, or other unyielding material excavation.] [Not used.]

Payment will be made under:

Item 701-5.1 [] inch [] per linear foot (meter)

Item 701-5.2 [Precast box culvert per unit.] [Not used.]

- Item 701-5.3 [Concrete for pipe cradles - per cubic yard
(cubic meter)][Not used.]
- Item 701-5.4 [Rock, hardpan, or other unyielding material
excavation - per cubic yard (cubic meter)]
[Not used.]

The Engineer shall indicate the size and type of storm drains and culverts as shown on the plans.

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO)

AASHTO M167	Standard Specification for Corrugated Steel Structural Plate, Zinc-Coated, for Field-Bolted Pipe, Pipe-Arches, and Arches
AASHTO M190	Standard Specification for Bituminous-Coated Corrugated Metal Culvert Pipe and Pipe Arches
AASHTO M196	Standard Specification for Corrugated Aluminum Pipe for Sewers and Drains
AASHTO M219	Standard Specification for Corrugated Aluminum Alloy Structural Plate for Field-Bolted Pipe, Pipe-Arches, and Arches
AASHTO M243	Standard Specification for Field Applied Coating of Corrugated Metal Structural Plate for Pipe, Pipe-Arches, and Arches
AASHTO M252	Standard Specification for Corrugated Polyethylene Drainage Pipe
AASHTO M294	Standard Specification for Corrugated Polyethylene Pipe, 300- to 1500-mm (12- to 60-in.) Diameter
AASHTO M304	Standard Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Profile Wall Drain Pipe and Fittings Based on Controlled Inside Diameter
AASHTO MP20	Standard Specification for Steel Reinforced Polyethylene (PE) Ribbed Pipe, 300- to 900-mm (12- to 36-in.) Diameter

ASTM International (ASTM)

ASTM A760	Standard Specification for Corrugated Steel Pipe, Metallic Coated for Sewers and Drains
ASTM A761	Standard Specification for Corrugated Steel Structural Plate, Zinc Coated, for Field-Bolted Pipe, Pipe-Arches, and Arches
ASTM A762	Standard Specification for Corrugated Steel Pipe, Polymer Precoated for Sewers and Drains
ASTM A849	Standard Specification for Post-Applied Coatings, Pavings, and Linings for Corrugated Steel Sewer and Drainage Pipe

ASTM B745	Standard Specification for Corrugated Aluminum Pipe for Sewers and Drains
ASTM C14	Standard Specification for Nonreinforced Concrete Sewer, Storm Drain, and Culvert Pipe
ASTM C76	Standard Specification for Reinforced Concrete Culvert, Storm Drain, and Sewer Pipe
ASTM C94	Standard Specification for Ready Mixed Concrete
ASTM C144	Standard Specification for Aggregate for Masonry Mortar
ASTM C150	Standard Specification for Portland Cement
ASTM C443	Standard Specification for Joints for Concrete Pipe and Manholes, Using Rubber Gaskets
ASTM C506	Standard Specification for Reinforced Concrete Arch Culvert, Storm Drain, and Sewer Pipe
ASTM C507	Standard Specification for Reinforced Concrete Elliptical Culvert, Storm Drain and Sewer Pipe
ASTM C655	Standard Specification for Reinforced Concrete D-Load Culvert, Storm Drain and Sewer Pipe
ASTM C990	Standard Specification for Joints for Concrete Pipe, Manholes, and Precast Box Sections Using Preformed Flexible Joint Sealants
ASTM C1433	Standard Specification for Precast Reinforced Concrete Monolithic Box Sections for Culverts, Storm Drains, and Sewers
ASTM D1056	Standard Specification for Flexible Cellular Materials Sponge or Expanded Rubber
ASTM D3034	Standard Specification for Type PSM Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Sewer Pipe and Fittings
ASTM D3212	Standard Specification for Joints for Drain and Sewer Plastic Pipes Using Flexible Elastomeric Seals
ASTM D3262	Standard Specification for "Fiberglass" (Glass-Fiber Reinforced Thermosetting Resin) Sewer Pipe
ASTM D3282	Standard Practice for Classification of Soils and Soil-Aggregate Mixtures for Highway Construction Purposes
ASTM D4161	Standard Specification for "Fiberglass" (Glass-Fiber Reinforced Thermosetting Resin) Pipe Joints Using Flexible Elastomeric Seals
ASTM D6690	Standard Specification for Joint and Crack Sealants, Hot Applied, for Concrete and Asphalt Pavements
ASTM F477	Standard Specification for Elastomeric Seals (Gaskets) for Joining Plastic Pipe
ASTM F667	Standard Specification for 3 through 24 in. Corrugated Polyethylene Pipe and Fittings
ASTM F714	Standard Specification for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe (DR PR) Based on Outside Diameter

ASTM F794	Standard Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Profile Gravity Sewer Pipe & Fittings Based on Controlled Inside Diameter
ASTM F894	Standard Specification for Polyethylene (PE) Large Diameter Profile Wall Sewer and Drain Pipe
ASTM F949	Standard Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Corrugated Sewer Pipe with a Smooth Interior and Fittings
ASTM F2435	Standard Specification for Steel Reinforced Polyethylene (PE) Corrugated Pipe
ASTM F2562	Specification for Steel Reinforced Thermoplastic Ribbed Pipe and Fittings for Non-Pressure Drainage and Sewerage
ASTM F2736	Standard Specification for 6 to 30 in. (152 to 762 mm) Polypropylene (PP) Corrugated Single Wall Pipe and Double Wall Pipe
ASTM F2764	Standard Specification for 30 to 60 in. (750 to 1500 mm) Polypropylene (PP) Triple Wall Pipe and Fittings for Non-Pressure Sanitary Sewer Applications
ASTM F2881	Standard Specification for 12 to 60 in. (300 to 1500 mm) Polypropylene (PP) Dual Wall Pipe and Fittings for Non-Pressure Storm Sewer Applications
National Fire Protection Association (NFPA)	
NFPA 415	Standard on Airport Terminal Buildings, Fueling Ramp Drainage, and Loading Walkways

END ITEM D-701

Item D-702 Slotted Drains

Pipes and/or structures located within Runway or Taxiway Safety areas must be designed to accommodate the single wheel load of the largest aircraft that can utilize the airport, the largest maintenance equipment load, or the earth load, whichever is greater. Underground piping and components used in drainage systems for terminal and aircraft fueling ramp drainage shall be noncombustible and inert to fuel in accordance with National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) 415.

Typically, drainage pipes are designed for highway loadings, however, a modified design will be necessary when aircraft loadings are greater than AASHTO HS20 live loads.

It is acceptable to specify storm drains and drainage structures meeting state DOT specifications for materials. Include all referenced state specifications in the project specification.

DESCRIPTION

702-1.1 This item shall consist of the construction of steel slotted drains or cast iron slotted vane drains in accordance with these specifications and in reasonably close conformity with the lines and grades shown on the plans. Typical details shall be shown on the plans.

MATERIALS

702-2.1 General. All slotted drains shall meet the requirements shown on the plans and specified below. All slotted drains shall meet specified hydraulic design requirements and shall support the loadings specified.

702-2.2 Pipe.

a. Steel slotted drain. [Pipe shall be metallic coated (galvanized or aluminized type 2) corrugated steel type I meeting the requirements of ASTM A760. Pipe diameter and gauge shall be as shown on the plans. The corrugated steel pipe shall have a minimum of two rerolled annular ends.] [Not used.]

b. Cast iron slotted vane drain. [Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) pipe shall meet the requirements of ASTM D3034. Pipe diameter shall be as shown on the plans. The pipe shall have an open slot to accept the cast iron slotted vane drain castings.] [Not used.]

702-2.3 Grates and castings.

a. Steel Slotted Drain. [Grates shall be manufactured from ASTM A36 Grade 36 steel. Spacers and bearing bars (sides) shall be 3/16-inch (5 mm)

material. The spacers shall be welded to each bearing bar with four 1-1/4 inch long by 3/16 inch wide (32 mm long by 5 mm wide) fillet welds on each side of the bearing bar at spacings not exceeding 6 inches (150 mm). The grates shall be 6 inches (150 mm) high or as shown on the plans and shall have a maximum 1-3/4 inch (45 mm) opening in the top.

Grates shall be galvanized in accordance with ASTM A123 except with a 2 ounce / square foot (0.61 kg/sq m) galvanized coating.

The grates shall be fillet welded to the corrugated steel pipe with a minimum weld one inch (25 mm) long on each side of the grate at every other corrugation. Weld areas and the heat affected zones where the slot is welded to the corrugated pipe shall be thoroughly cleaned and painted with a zinc-rich paint in accordance with repair of damaged coatings in ASTM A760.

Each 20-foot (6.1-m) length of drain delivered to the job site shall be within the following tolerances: vertical bow $\pm 3/8$ inch (9 mm), horizontal bow $\pm 5/8$ inch (16 mm), twist $\pm 1/2$ inch (12 mm).]

[Not used.]

b. Cast iron slotted vane drain. [Castings shall meet the requirements of ASTM A48, Class 35B gray iron. Castings shall be furnished with no coatings.

Castings shall be designed to fit on open slots in 15 inch (38 cm) PVC pipe. Casting sections shall not exceed 3 feet (1 m) in length. Casting sections shall have a built-in vane configuration with bar spacings not exceeding 6 inches (150 mm). The opening at the surface shall not exceed 3-3/4 inch (95 mm), and the vane shall be constructed on a radius so that the opening shall be less than 1-1/2 inch (38 mm) at a depth of 1-1/2 inch (38 mm) as measured vertically from the surface. Casting sections shall integrally lock into the concrete by use of top and bottoms flanges and shear tabs. Castings shall accept bolts for bolting sections together and shall accept wire for fitting to pipe.]

[Not used.]

Standard details can be found in American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO) AGC-ARTBA publication "A Guide to Standardized Highway Drainage Products." All products used shall meet the most demanding aircraft loading and tire pressure requirements, as well as maintenance equipment loadings.

702-2.4 Concrete. Concrete shall have a minimum compressive strength of 3,000 psi (20.7 MPa) at 28-days when tested in accordance with ASTM C39. Concrete used shall conform to the requirements of Item P-610.

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

702-3.1 Excavation. The width of the trench shall be sufficient to permit satisfactory installation and jointing of the slotted drain and placing of a concrete backfill material under and around the drain, but shall not be less than the external pipe diameter plus 6 inches (150 mm) on each side. The depth of the trench shall be a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) below the invert for steel slotted drain and 6 inches (150 mm) below the invert for a cast iron slotted vane drain.

702-3.2 Installation. Slotted drains shall be laid in sections joined firmly together as shown on the plans. The top of all drains shall be held firmly in place to the proper grade, to preclude movement during the backfilling operation.

702-3.3 Joining. [Slotted steel drain joints shall be firmly joined by modified hugger type bands, or as indicated, to secure the pipe and prevent infiltration of the backfill. When the slotted steel drain is banded together, the adjacent grates shall have a maximum 3-inch (75 mm) gap.] [Cast iron drain castings shall be bolted together.]

702-3.4 Backfilling. Slotted drains shall be inspected before any backfill is placed. Damaged drains shall be aligned or replaced at the expense of the Contractor.

The trench holding the slotted drain assembly shall be backfilled with concrete that will easily flow under and around the drain and the trench wall. The opening in the top of grates and castings shall be covered to prevent unwanted material from entering the drain during the backfilling and subsequent surfacing operations.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

702-4.1 The length of [indicated each type of slotted drain] slotted drain shall be measured in linear feet (meters) of slotted drain in place, completed, and approved. It shall be measured along the centerline of the drain from end or inside face of structure to the end or inside face of structure, whichever is applicable. The [the classes, types, and sizes] shall be measured separately. All fittings shall be included in the footage as typical pipe sections being measured.

BASIS OF PAYMENT

702-5.1 Payment shall be made at the contract unit price per linear foot (meter) for each [identify each kind of slotted drain type and size] designated. These prices shall be full compensation for all materials, all preparation, excavation, backfill, and installation of the slotted drain; and all labor, equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete the item.

Payment will be made under:

Item 702-5.1 [] inch ([] mm) diameter [gauge] pipe per linear foot (meter)

The Engineer shall include a pay item for each size and gauge pipe specified for each drain type.

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM International (ASTM)

ASTM A36	Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel
ASTM A48	Standard Specification for Gray Iron Castings
ASTM A123	Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products
ASTM A760	Standard Specification for Corrugated Steel Pipe, Metallic-Coated for Sewers and Drains
ASTM C39	Standard Test Method for Compressive Strength of Cylindrical Concrete Specimens
ASTM D3034	Standard Specification for Type PSM Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Sewer Pipe and Fittings

American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO)

AASHTO-AGC-ARTBA Task Force 13 Report A Guide to Standardized Highway Drainage Products

END OF ITEM D-702

Item D-705 Pipe Underdrains for Airports

Pipes and/or structures located within Runway or Taxiway Safety areas must be designed to accommodate the single wheel load of the largest aircraft that can utilize the airport, the largest maintenance equipment load, or the earth load, whichever is greater.

Typically, drainage pipes are designed for highway loadings, however, a modified design will be necessary when aircraft loadings are greater than AASHTO HS20 live loads.

It is acceptable to specify storm drains and drainage structures meeting state DOT specifications for materials. Bedding, embedment and overfull are critical to long-term performance of the piping system. Include all referenced state specifications in the project specification.

DESCRIPTION

705-1.1 This item shall consist of the construction of pipe drains in accordance with these specifications and in reasonably close conformity with the lines and grades shown on the plans.

MATERIALS

705-2.1 General. Materials shall meet the requirements shown on the plans and specified below.

The Engineer should indicate the required class, schedule, standard dimension ratio (SDR), gauge, and/or strength of pipe desired.

705-2.2 Pipe. The pipe shall be of the type called for on the plans or in the proposal and shall be in accordance with the following appropriate requirements.

American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO) M196	Standard Specification for Corrugated Aluminum Pipe for Sewers and Drains
AASHTO M252	Standard Specification for Corrugated Polyethylene Drainage Pipe
AASHTO M294	Standard Specification for Corrugated Polyethylene Pipe, 300- to 1500-mm (12- to 60-in.) Diameter
AASHTO M304	Standard Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Profile Wall Drain Pipe and Fittings Based on Controlled Inside Diameter

AASHTO MP20	Standard Specification for Steel Reinforced Polyethylene (PE) Ribbed Pipe, 300- to 900-mm (12- to 36-in.) Diameter
ASTM A760	Standard Specification for Corrugated Steel Pipe, Metallic-Coated for Sewers and Drains
ASTM A762	Standard Specification for Corrugated Steel Pipe, Polymer Precoated for Sewers and Drains
ASTM C444	Standard Specification for Perforated Concrete Pipe
ASTM C654	Standard Specification for Porous Concrete Pipe
ASTM D3262	Standard Specification for "Fiberglass" (Glass-Fiber Reinforced Thermosetting Resin) Sewer Pipe
ASTM D4161	Standard Specification for "Fiberglass" (Glass-Fiber Reinforced Thermosetting Resin) Pipe Joints Using Flexible Elastomeric Seals
ASTM F758	Standard Specification for Smooth-Wall Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Underdrain Systems for Highway, Airport, and Similar Drainage
ASTM F794	Standard Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Profile Gravity Sewer Pipe & Fittings Based on Controlled Inside Diameter
ASTM F949	Standard Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Corrugated Sewer Pipe with a Smooth Interior and Fittings
ASTM F2562	Specification for Steel Reinforced Thermoplastic Ribbed Pipe and Fittings for Non-Pressure Drainage and Sewerage

The Engineer shall select the pipe used for the project and delete inappropriate requirements from paragraph 705-2.2 and from the list of material requirements.

705-2.3 Joint mortar. Pipe joint mortar shall consist of one part by volume of Portland cement and two parts sand. The Portland cement shall conform to the requirements of ASTM C150, Type I. The sand shall conform to the requirements of ASTM C144.

705-2.4 Elastomeric seals. Elastomeric seals shall conform to the requirements of ASTM F477.

705-2.5 Porous backfill. Porous backfill shall be free of clay, humus, or other objectionable matter, and shall conform to the gradation in Table 1 when tested in accordance with ASTM C136.

Table 1. Gradation of Porous Backfill

Sieve Designation (square openings)	Percentage by Weight Passing Sieves
	Porous Material No. *
1-1/2 inch (37.5 mm)	*
1 inch (25.0 mm)	*
3/8 inch (9.5 mm)	*
No. 4 (4.75 mm)	*
No. 8 (2.36 mm)	*
No. 16 (1.18 mm)	*
No. 50 (300 µm)	*
No. 100 (150 µm)	*

The Engineer shall select the gradation from the table below and insert in Table 1 above.

Table 1. Gradation of Porous Backfill

Sieve Designation (square openings)	Percentage by Weight Passing Sieves	
	Porous Material No. 1	Porous Material No. 2
1-1/2 inch (37.5 mm)		100
1 inch (25.0 mm)		90 - 100
3/8 inch (9.5 mm)	100	25 - 60
No. 4 (4.75 mm)	95 – 100	5 - 40
No. 8 (2.36 mm)		0 - 20
No. 16 (1.18 mm)	45 – 80	
No. 50 (300 µm)	10 – 30	
No. 100 (150 µm)	0 – 10	

When two courses of porous backfill are specified in the plans, the finer of the materials shall conform to particle size tabulated herein for porous material No. 1. The coarser granular material shall meet the gradation given in the tabulation for porous material No. 2.

705-2.6 Granular material. Granular material used for backfilling shall conform to the requirements of ASTM D2321 for Class IA, IB, or II materials.

705-2.7 Filter fabric. The filter fabric shall conform to the requirements of AASHTO M288 Class 2 or equivalent.

Table 2. Fabric Properties

Fabric Property	Test Method	Test Requirement
Grab Tensile Strength, lbs	ASTM D4632	125 min
Grab Tensile Elongation %	ASTM D4632	50 min
Burst Strength, psi	ASTM D3785	125 min
Trapezoid Tear Strength, lbs	ASTM D4533	55 min
Puncture Strength, lbs	ASTM D4833	40 min
Abrasion, lbs	ASTM D4886	15 max loss
Equivalent Opening Size	ASTM D4751	70-100
Permittivity sec⁻¹	ASTM D4491	0.80
Accelerated Weathering (UV Stability) (Strength Retained - %)	ASTM D4355 *(500 hrs exposure)	70

The Engineer shall specify Class 2 unless sufficient survivability information is available for a reduction in minimum property requirements. Permittivity and Apparent Opening Size requirements shall be based on knowledge of in situ soil.

705-2.8 Controlled low-strength material (CLSM). [CLSM is not used.] [Controlled low-strength material shall conform to the requirements of Item P-153. All joints shall have elastomeric seals.]

The locations where CLSM is permitted shall be shown on the plans.

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

705-3.1 Equipment. All equipment required for the construction of pipe underdrains shall be on the project, in good working condition, and approved by the RPR before construction is permitted to start.

705-3.2 Excavation. The width of the pipe trench shall be sufficient to permit satisfactory jointing of the pipe and thorough tamping of the bedding material under and around the pipe, but shall not be less than the external diameter of the pipe plus 6 inches (150 mm) on each side of the pipe. The trench walls shall be approximately vertical.

Where rock, hardpan, or other unyielding material is encountered, it shall be removed below the foundation grade for a depth of at least 4 inches (100 mm). The excavation below grade shall be backfilled with selected fine compressible material, such as silty clay or loam, and lightly compacted in layers not over 6 inches (150 mm) in uncompacted depth to form a uniform but yielding foundation.

Where a firm foundation is not encountered at the grade established, due to soft, spongy, or other unstable soil, the unstable soil shall be removed and replaced with approved granular material for the full trench

width. The RPR shall determine the depth of removal necessary. The granular material shall be compacted to provide adequate support for the pipe.

Excavated material not required or acceptable for backfill shall be disposed of by the Contractor as directed by the RPR. The excavation shall not be carried below the required depth; if this occurs, the trench shall be backfilled at the Contractor's expense with material approved by the RPR and compacted to the density of the surrounding material.

The pipe bedding shall be constructed uniformly over the full length of the pipe barrel, as required on the plans. The maximum aggregate size shall be 1 inch when the bedding thickness is less than 6 inches, and 1-1/2 inch when the bedding thickness is greater than 6 inches. Bedding shall be loosely placed, uncompacted material under the middle third of the pipe prior to placement of the pipe.

The Contractor shall do trench bracing, sheathing, or shoring necessary to perform and protect the excavation as required for safety and conformance to federal, state and local laws. Unless otherwise provided, the bracing, sheathing, or shoring shall be removed by the Contractor after the backfill has reached at least 12 inches (300 mm) over the top of the pipe. The sheathing or shoring shall be pulled as the granular backfill is placed and compacted to avoid any unfilled spaces between the trench wall and the backfill material. The cost of bracing, sheathing, or shoring, and the removal of same, shall be included in the unit price bid per foot (meter) for the pipe.

705-3.3 Laying and installing pipe.

a. Concrete pipe. The laying of the pipe in the finished trench shall be started at the lowest point and proceed upgrade. When bell and spigot pipe is used, the bells shall be laid upgrade. If tongue and groove pipe is used, the groove end shall be laid upgrade. Holes in perforated pipe shall be placed down, unless otherwise shown on the plans. The pipe shall be firmly and accurately set to line and grade so that the invert will be smooth and uniform. Pipe shall not be laid on frozen ground.

Pipe which is not true in alignment, or which shows any settlement after laying, shall be taken up and re-laid by the Contractor at no additional expense. Making adjustments in grade by exerting force on the barrel of the pipe with excavating equipment, by lifting and dropping the pipe, or by lifting the pipe and packing bedding material under it shall be prohibited. If the installed pipe section is not to grade, the pipe section shall be completely removed, the grade corrected, and the pipe rejoined."

b. Metal pipe. The metal pipe shall be laid with the separate sections joined firmly together with bands, with outside laps of circumferential joints pointing upgrade, and with longitudinal laps on the sides. Any metal in the pipe or bands that is not protected thoroughly by galvanizing shall be coated with a suitable asphaltum paint.

During installation, the asphalt-protected pipe shall be handled without damaging the asphalt coating. Any breaks in the bitumen or treatment of the pipe shall be refilled with the type and kind of bitumen used in coating the pipe originally.

c. PVC, fiberglass, or polyethylene pipe. PVC or polyethylene pipe shall be installed in accordance with the requirements of ASTM D2321. Perforations shall meet the requirements of AASHTO M252 or AASHTO M294 Class 2, unless otherwise indicated on the plans. The pipe shall be laid accurately to line and grade. Fiberglass per ASTM D3839 Standard Guide for Underground Installation of "Fiberglass" (Glass-Fiber Reinforced Thermosetting-Resin) Pipe.

d. All types of pipe. The upgrade end of pipelines, not terminating in a structure, shall be plugged or capped as approved by the RPR.

Unless otherwise shown on the plans, a 4-inch (100 mm) bed of granular backfill material shall be spread in the bottom of the trench throughout the entire length under all perforated pipe underdrains.

Pipe outlets for the underdrains shall be constructed when required or shown on the plans. The pipe shall be laid with tight-fitting joints. Porous backfill is not required around or over pipe outlets for underdrains. All connections to other drainage pipes or structures shall be made as required and in a satisfactory manner. If connections are not made to other pipes or structures, the outlets shall be protected and constructed as shown on the plans.

e. Filter fabric. The filter fabric shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations, or in accordance with the AASHTO M288 Appendix, unless otherwise shown on the plans.

705-3.4 Mortar. The mortar shall be of the desired consistency for caulking and filling the joints of the pipe and for making connections to other pipes or to structures. Mortar that is not used within 45 minutes after water has been added shall be discarded. Retempering of mortar shall not be permitted.

705-3.5 Joints in concrete pipe. When open or partly open joints are required or specified, they shall be constructed as indicated on the plans. The pipe shall be laid with the ends fitted together as designed. If bell and spigot pipe is used, mortar shall be placed along the inside bottom quarter of the bell to center the following section of pipe.

The open or partly open joints shall be surrounded with granular material meeting requirements of porous backfill No. 2 in Table 1 or as indicated on the plans. This backfill shall be placed so its thickness will be not less than 3 inches (75 mm) nor more than 6 inches (150 mm), unless otherwise shown on the plans.

When the original material excavated from the trench is impervious, commercial concrete sand or granular material meeting requirements of porous backfill No. 1 shall surround porous backfill No. 2 (Table 1), as shown on the plans or as directed by the RPR.

When the original material excavated from the trench is pervious and suitable, it may be used as backfill in lieu of porous backfill No. 1, when indicated on the plans or as directed by the RPR.

705-3.6 Embedment and Backfill

a. Earth. All trenches and excavations shall be backfilled soon after the pipes are installed, unless additional protection of the pipe is directed. The embedment material shall be select material from excavation or borrow and shall be approved by the RPR. The select material shall be placed on each side of the pipe out to a distance of the nominal pipe diameter and one foot (30 cm) over the top of the pipe and shall be readily compacted. It shall not contain stones 3 inches (75 mm) or larger in size, frozen lumps, chunks of highly plastic clay, or any other material that is objectionable to the RPR. The material shall be moistened or dried, as required to aid compaction. Placement of the embedment material shall not cause displacement of the pipe. Thorough compaction under the haunches and along the sides to the top of the pipe shall be obtained.

The embedment material shall be placed in loose layers not exceeding 6 inches (150 mm) in depth under and around the pipe. Backfill material over the pipe shall be placed in lifts not exceeding 8 inches (200 mm). Successive layers shall be added and thoroughly compacted by hand and pneumatic tampers, approved by the RPR, until the trench is completely filled and brought to the planned elevation. Embedment and backfilling shall be done to avoid damaging top or side of the pipe.

In embankments and other unpaved areas, the backfill shall be compacted per Item P-152 to the density required for embankments in unpaved areas. Under paved areas, the subgrade and any backfill shall be compacted per Item P-152 to the density required for embankments for paved areas.

b. Granular backfill. When granular backfill is required, placement in the trench and about the pipe shall be as shown on the plans. The granular backfill shall not contain an excessive amount of foreign matter, nor shall soil from the sides of the trench or from the soil excavated from the trench be allowed to filter into the granular backfill. When required by the RPR, a template shall be used to properly place and separate the two sizes of backfill. The backfill shall be placed in loose layers not exceeding 6 inches (150

mm) in depth. The granular backfill shall be compacted by hand and pneumatic tampers to the requirements as given for embankment. Backfilling shall be done to avoid damaging top or side pressure on the pipe. The granular backfill shall extend to the elevation of the trench or as shown on the plans.

When perforated pipe is specified, granular backfill material shall be placed along the full length of the pipe. The position of the granular material shall be as shown on the plans. If the original material excavated from the trench is pervious and suitable, it shall be used in lieu of porous backfill No. 1.

If porous backfill is placed in paved or adjacent to paved areas before grading or subgrade operations is completed, the backfill material shall be placed immediately after laying the pipe. The depth of the granular backfill shall be not less than 12 inches (300 mm), measured from the top of the underdrain. During subsequent construction operations, a minimum depth of 12 inches (300 mm) of backfill shall be maintained over the underdrains. When the underdrains are to be completed, any unsuitable material shall be removed exposing the porous backfill. Porous backfill containing objectionable material shall be removed and replaced with suitable material. The cost of removing and replacing any unsuitable material shall be at the Contractor's expense.

If a granular subbase blanket course is used which extends several feet beyond the edge of paving to the outside edge of the underdrain trench, the granular backfill material over the underdrains shall be placed in the trench up to an elevation of 2 inches (50 mm) above the bottom surface of the granular subbase blanket course. Immediately prior to the placing of the granular subbase blanket course, the Contractor shall blade this excess trench backfill from the top of the trench onto the adjacent subgrade where it can be incorporated into the granular subbase blanket course. Any unsuitable material that remains over the underdrain trench shall be removed and replaced. The subbase material shall be placed to provide clean contact between the subbase material and the underdrain granular backfill material for the full width of the underdrain trench.

c. Controlled low-strength material (CLSM). [CLSM is not used.] [Controlled low-strength material shall conform to the requirements of Item P-153.]

705-3.7 Flexible Pipe Ring Deflection. [Not used.] [The flexible pipe shall be inspected by the Contractor during and after installation to ensure that the internal diameter of the pipe barrel has not been reduced by more than 5 percent. For guidance on properly sizing mandrels, refer to ASTM D3034 and ASTM F679 appendices.]

705-3.8 Connections. When the plans call for connections to existing or proposed pipe or structures, these connections shall be watertight and made to obtain a smooth uniform flow line throughout the drainage system.

705-3.9 Cleaning and restoration of site. After the backfill is completed, the Contractor shall dispose of all surplus material, soil, and rubbish from the site. Surplus soil may be deposited in embankments, shoulders, or as directed by the RPR. Except for paved areas of the airport, the Contractor shall restore all disturbed areas to their original condition.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

705-4.1 The length of pipe shall be the number of linear feet (meters) of pipe underdrains in place, completed, and approved; measured along the centerline of the pipe from end or inside face of structure to the end or inside face of structure, whichever is applicable. The several classes, types, and sizes shall be measured separately. All fittings shall be included in the footage as typical pipe sections in the pipeline being measured.

705-4.2 [The quantity of porous backfill shall be the number of cubic yards (cubic meters) of porous backfill No. 1 and No. 2, complete in place and accepted, and shall be determined from the dimensions given on the plans by typical trench sections indicating the placement of porous backfill or dimensions directed by the RPR.] [Not used.]

705-4.3 [The quantity of filter fabric shall be the number of square yards (square meters) of filter fabric in place, completed, and approved; and shall be determined from the dimensions given on the plans by typical trench sections indicating the placement of filter fabric or dimensions directed by the RPR.] [Not used.]

705-4.4. [The quantity of pipe underdrains shall be made at the contract unit price per linear foot (meter) complete, including porous backfill and filter fabric.] [Not used.]

BASIS OF PAYMENT

705-5.1 Payment will be made at the contract unit price per linear foot (meter) for pipe underdrains of the type, class, and size designated.

705-5.2 Porous backfill.

[**a.** Porous backfill No. 1 shall be made at the contract unit price [per cubic yard (cubic meter)] [per ton (metric ton)].]

[**b.** Porous Backfill No. 2 shall be made at the contract unit price [per cubic yard (cubic meter)] [per ton (metric ton)].]

705-5.3. Filter fabric. Filter fabric shall be made at the contract unit price per square yard (square meter) for filter fabric.

[**705-5.4 Pipe underdrains, Complete.** Pipe underdrains, complete (including porous backfill and filter fabric) shall be made at the contract unit price [per linear foot (meter) complete (including porous backfill and filter fabric.)]]

These prices shall be full compensation for furnishing all materials and for all preparation, excavation, and installation of these materials, and for all labor, equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete the item.

Payment will be made under:

Item D-705-5.1 [] inch pipe (mm pipe) [] per linear foot (meter)

[Item D-705-5.2a Porous Backfill No. 1-[per cubic yard (cubic meter)] [per ton (metric ton)]]

[Item D-705-5.2b Porous Backfill No. 2-[per cubic yard (cubic meter)] [per ton (metric ton)]]

Item D-705-5.3 Filter Fabric - per square yard (square meter)

[Item D-705-5.4 [] inch pipe (mm pipe) [] per linear foot (meter) complete, including porous backfill and filter fabric]

The Engineer shall specify the size and type of pipe, filter fabric, and backfill material for each pipe size and type specified in the plans.

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM International (ASTM)

ASTM A760	Standard Specification for Corrugated Steel Pipe, Metallic Coated for Sewers and Drains
ASTM A762	Standard Specification for Corrugated Steel Pipe, Polymer Precoated for Sewers and Drains
ASTM C136	Standard Test Method for Sieve or Screen Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates
ASTM C144	Standard Specification for Aggregate for Masonry Mortar
ASTM C150	Standard Specification for Portland Cement
ASTM C444	Standard Specification for Perforated Concrete Pipe
ASTM C654	Standard Specification for Porous Concrete Pipe
ASTM D2321	Standard Practice for Underground Installation of Thermoplastic Pipe for Sewers and Other Gravity-Flow Applications
ASTM D3262	Standard Specification for "Fiberglass" (Glass-Fiber Reinforced Thermosetting Resin) Sewer Pipe
ASTM D4161	Standard Specification for "Fiberglass" (Glass-Fiber Reinforced Thermosetting Resin) Pipe Joints Using Flexible Elastomeric Seals
ASTM F477	Standard Specification for Elastomeric Seals (Gaskets) for Joining Plastic Pipe
ASTM F758	Standard Specification for Smooth Wall Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Underdrain Systems for Highway, Airport, and Similar Drainage
ASTM F794	Standard Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Profile Gravity Sewer Pipe & Fittings Based on Controlled Inside Diameter
ASTM F949	Standard Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Corrugated Sewer Pipe with a Smooth Interior and Fittings
ASTM F2562	Specification for Steel Reinforced Thermoplastic Ribbed Pipe and Fittings for Non-Pressure Drainage and Sewerage

American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO)

AASHTO M190	Standard Specification for Bituminous - Coated Corrugated Metal Culvert Pipe and Pipe Arches

AASHTO M196	Standard Specification for Corrugated Aluminum Pipe for Sewers and Drains
AASHTO M252	Standard Specification for Corrugated Polyethylene Drainage Pipe
AASHTO M288	Standard Specification for Geotextile Specification for Highway Applications
AASHTO M294	Standard Specification for Corrugated Polyethylene Pipe, 300- to 1500-mm (12- to 60-in.) Diameter
AASHTO M304	Standard Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Profile Wall Drain Pipe and Fittings Based on Controlled Inside Diameter
AASHTO MP20	Standard Specification for Steel-Reinforced Polyethylene (PE) Ribbed Pipe, 300- to 900-mm (12- to 36-in.) diameter
AASHTO	Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges

END OF ITEM D-705

Item D-751 Manholes, Catch Basins, Inlets and Inspection Holes

Structures within Runway or Taxiway Safety areas must be designed to accommodate the single wheel load of the largest aircraft that can utilize the airport, the largest maintenance equipment load, or the earth load, whichever is greater. Underground piping and components used in drainage systems for terminal and aircraft fueling ramp drainage shall be noncombustible and inert to fuel in accordance with National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) 415.

Typically, structures are designed for highway loadings, however, a modified design will be necessary when aircraft loadings are greater than AASHTO HS20 live loads.

It is acceptable to specify structures meeting state DOT specifications for materials. Bedding, embedment and overfull are critical to long-term performance of the piping system. Include all referenced state specifications in the project specification.

DESCRIPTION

751-1.1 This item shall consist of construction of manholes, catch basins, inlets, and inspection holes, in accordance with these specifications, at the specified locations and conforming to the lines, grades, and dimensions shown on the plans or required by the RPR.

MATERIALS

751-2.1 Brick. The brick shall conform to the requirements of ASTM C32, Grade MS.

751-2.2 Mortar. Mortar shall consist of one part Portland cement and two parts sand. The cement shall conform to the requirements of ASTM C150, Type I. The sand shall conform to the requirements of ASTM C144.

751-2.3 Concrete. Plain and reinforced concrete used in structures, connections of pipes with structures, and the support of structures or frames shall conform to the requirements of Item P-610.

751-2.4 Precast concrete pipe manhole rings. Precast concrete pipe manhole rings shall conform to the requirements of ASTM C478. Unless otherwise specified, the risers and offset cone sections shall have an inside diameter of not less than 36 inches (90 cm) nor more than 48 inches (120 cm). There shall be a gasket between individual sections and sections cemented together with mortar on the inside of the manhole. Gaskets shall conform to the requirements of ASTM C443.

751-2.5 Corrugated metal. Corrugated metal shall conform to the requirements of American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO) M36.

751-2.6 Frames, covers, and grates. The castings shall conform to one of the following requirements:

- a. ASTM A48, Class 35B: Gray iron castings
- b. ASTM A47: Malleable iron castings

- c. ASTM A27: Steel castings
- d. ASTM A283, Grade D: Structural steel for grates and frames
- e. ASTM A536, Grade 65-45-12: Ductile iron castings
- f. ASTM A897: Austempered ductile iron castings

All castings or structural steel units shall conform to the dimensions shown on the plans and shall be designed to support the loadings, aircraft gear configuration and/or direct loading, specified.

Each frame and cover or grate unit shall be provided with fastening members to prevent it from being dislodged by traffic but which will allow easy removal for access to the structure.

All castings shall be thoroughly cleaned. After fabrication, structural steel units shall be galvanized to meet the requirements of ASTM A123.

751-2.7 Steps. The steps or ladder bars shall be gray or malleable cast iron or galvanized steel. The steps shall be the size, length, and shape shown on the plans and those steps that are not galvanized shall be given a coat of asphalt paint, when directed.

751-2.8 Precast inlet structures. Manufactured in accordance with and conforming to ASTM C913.

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

751-3.1 Unclassified excavation.

a. The Contractor shall excavate for structures and footings to the lines and grades or elevations, shown on the plans, or as staked by the RPR. The excavation shall be of sufficient size to permit the placing of the full width and length of the structure or structure footings shown. The elevations of the bottoms of footings, as shown on the plans, shall be considered as approximately only; and the RPR may direct, in writing, changes in dimensions or elevations of footings necessary for a satisfactory foundation.

b. Boulders, logs, or any other objectionable material encountered in excavation shall be removed. All rock or other hard foundation material shall be cleaned of all loose material and cut to a firm surface either level, stepped, or serrated, as directed by the RPR. All seams or crevices shall be cleaned out and grouted. All loose and disintegrated rock and thin strata shall be removed. Where concrete will rest on a surface other than rock, the bottom of the excavation shall not be disturbed and excavation to final grade shall not be made until immediately before the concrete or reinforcing is placed.

c. The Contractor shall do all bracing, sheathing, or shoring necessary to implement and protect the excavation and the structure as required for safety or conformance to governing laws. The cost of bracing, sheathing, or shoring shall be included in the unit price bid for the structure.

d. All bracing, sheathing, or shoring involved in the construction of this item shall be removed by the Contractor after the completion of the structure. Removal shall not disturb or damage finished masonry. The cost of removal shall be included in the unit price bid for the structure.

e. After excavation is completed for each structure, the Contractor shall notify the RPR. No concrete or reinforcing steel shall be placed until the RPR has approved the depth of the excavation and the character of the foundation material.

751-3.2 Brick structures.

a. **Foundations.** A prepared foundation shall be placed for all brick structures after the foundation excavation is completed and accepted. Unless otherwise specified, the base shall consist of reinforced concrete mixed, prepared, and placed in accordance with the requirements of Item P-610.

b. Laying brick. All brick shall be clean and thoroughly wet before laying so that they will not absorb any appreciable amount of additional water at the time they are laid. All brick shall be laid in freshly made mortar. Mortar not used within 45 minutes after water has been added shall be discarded. Retempering of mortar shall not be permitted. An ample layer of mortar shall be spread on the beds and a shallow furrow shall be made in it that can be readily closed by the laying of the brick. All bed and head joints shall be filled solid with mortar. End joints of stretchers and side or cross joints of headers shall be fully buttered with mortar and a shoved joint made to squeeze out mortar at the top of the joint. Any bricks that may be loosened after the mortar has taken its set, shall be removed, cleaned, and re-laid with fresh mortar. No broken or chipped brick shall be used in the face, and no spalls or bats shall be used except where necessary to shape around irregular openings or edges; in which case, full bricks shall be placed at ends or corners where possible, and the bats shall be used in the interior of the course. In making closures, no piece of brick shorter than the width of a whole brick shall be used; and wherever practicable, whole brick shall be used and laid as headers.

c. Joints. All joints shall be filled with mortar at every course. Exterior faces shall be laid up in advance of backing. Exterior faces shall be plastered or parged with a coat of mortar not less than 3/8 inch (9 mm) thick before the backing is laid up. Prior to parging, all joints on the back of face courses shall be cut flush. Unless otherwise noted, joints shall be not less than 1/4 inch (6 mm) nor more than 1/2 inch (12 mm) wide and the selected joint width shall be maintained uniform throughout the work.

d. Pointing. Face joints shall be neatly struck, using the weather-struck joint. All joints shall be finished properly as the laying of the brick progresses. When nails or line pins are used, the holes shall be immediately plugged with mortar and pointed when the nail or pin is removed.

e. Cleaning. Upon completion of the work all exterior surfaces shall be thoroughly cleaned by scrubbing and washing with water. If necessary to produce satisfactory results, cleaning shall be done with a 5% solution of muriatic acid which shall then be rinsed off with liberal quantities of water.

f. Curing and cold weather protection. The brick masonry shall be protected and kept moist for at least 48 hours after laying the brick. Brick masonry work or pointing shall not be done when there is frost on the brick or when the air temperature is below 50°F (10°C) unless the Contractor has, on the project ready to use, suitable covering and artificial heating devices necessary to keep the atmosphere surrounding the masonry at a temperature of not less than 60°F (16°C) for the duration of the curing period.

751-3.3 Concrete structures. Concrete structures which are to be cast-in-place within the project boundaries shall be built on prepared foundations, conforming to the dimensions and shape indicated on the plans. The construction shall conform to the requirements specified in Item P-610. Any reinforcement required shall be placed as indicated on the plans and shall be approved by the RPR before the concrete is placed.

All invert channels shall be constructed and shaped accurately to be smooth, uniform, and cause minimum resistance to flowing water. The interior bottom shall be sloped to the outlet.

751-3.4 Precast concrete structures. Precast concrete structures shall be furnished by a plant meeting National Precast Concrete Association Plant Certification Program or another RPR approved third party certification program.

Precast concrete structures shall conform to ASTM C478. Precast concrete structures shall be constructed on prepared or previously placed slab foundations conforming to the dimensions and locations shown on the plans. All precast concrete sections necessary to build a completed structure shall be furnished. The different sections shall fit together readily. Joints between precast concrete risers and tops shall be full-bedded in cement mortar and shall: (1) be smoothed to a uniform surface on both interior and exterior of the structure or (2) utilize a rubber gasket per ASTM C443. The top of the upper precast concrete section shall be suitably formed and dimensioned to receive the metal frame and cover or grate, or other cap, as

required. Provision shall be made for any connections for lateral pipe, including drops and leads that may be installed in the structure. The flow lines shall be smooth, uniform, and cause minimum resistance to flow. The metal or metal encapsulated steps that are embedded or built into the side walls shall be aligned and placed in accordance to ASTM C478. When a metal ladder replaces the steps, it shall be securely fastened into position.

751-3.5 Corrugated metal structures. Corrugated metal structures shall be prefabricated. All standard or special fittings shall be furnished to provide pipe connections or branches with the correct dimensions and of sufficient length to accommodate connecting bands. The fittings shall be welded in place to the metal structures. The top of the metal structure shall be designed so that either a concrete slab or metal collar may be attached to allow the fastening of a standard metal frame and grate or cover. Steps or ladders shall be furnished as shown on the plans. Corrugated metal structures shall be constructed on prepared foundations, conforming to the dimensions and locations as shown on the plans. When indicated, the structures shall be placed on a reinforced concrete base.

751-3.6 Inlet and outlet pipes. Inlet and outlet pipes shall extend through the walls of the structures a sufficient distance beyond the outside surface to allow for connections. They shall be cut off flush with the wall on the inside surface of the structure, unless otherwise directed. For concrete or brick structures, mortar shall be placed around these pipes to form a tight, neat connection.

751-3.7 Placement and treatment of castings, frames, and fittings. All castings, frames, and fittings shall be placed in the positions indicated on the plans or as directed by the RPR, and shall be set true to line and elevation. If frames or fittings are to be set in concrete or cement mortar, all anchors or bolts shall be in place before the concrete or mortar is placed. The unit shall not be disturbed until the mortar or concrete has set.

When frames or fittings are placed on previously constructed masonry, the bearing surface of the masonry shall be brought true to line and grade and shall present an even bearing surface so the entire face or back of the unit will come in contact with the masonry. The unit shall be set in mortar beds and anchored to the masonry as indicated on the plans or as directed by the RPR. All units shall set firm and secure.

After the frames or fittings have been set in final position, the concrete or mortar shall be allowed to harden for seven (7) days before the grates or covers are placed and fastened down.

751-3.8 Installation of steps. The steps shall be installed as indicated on the plans or as directed by the RPR. When the steps are to be set in concrete, they shall be placed and secured in position before the concrete is placed. When the steps are installed in brick masonry, they shall be placed as the masonry is being built. The steps shall not be disturbed or used until the concrete or mortar has hardened for at least seven (7) days. After seven (7) days, the steps shall be cleaned and painted, unless they have been galvanized.

When steps are required with precast concrete structures they shall meet the requirements of ASTM C478. The steps shall be cast into the side of the sections at the time the sections are manufactured or set in place after the structure is erected by drilling holes in the concrete and cementing the steps in place.

When steps are required with corrugated metal structures, they shall be welded into aligned position at a vertical spacing of 12 inches (300 mm).

Instead of steps, prefabricated ladders may be installed. For brick or concrete structures, the ladder shall be held in place by grouting the supports in drilled holes. For metal structures, the ladder shall be secured by welding the top support to the structure and grouting the bottom support into drilled holes in the foundation or as directed by the RPR.

751-3.9 Backfilling.

a. After a structure has been completed, the area around it shall be backfilled with approved material, in horizontal layers not to exceed 8 inches (200 mm) in loose depth, and compacted to the density

required in Item P-152. Each layer shall be deposited evenly around the structure to approximately the same elevation. The top of the fill shall meet the elevation shown on the plans or as directed by the RPR.

b. Backfill shall not be placed against any structure until approved by the RPR. For concrete structures, approval shall not be given until the concrete has been in place seven (7) days, or until tests establish that the concrete has attained sufficient strength to withstand any pressure created by the backfill and placing methods.

c. Backfill shall not be measured for direct payment. Performance of this work shall be considered an obligation of the Contractor covered under the contract unit price for the structure involved.

When structures are located within the runway safety area, POFA, RPZ, etc., the elevation of the structures shall be set to meet the grading requirements of these areas. Structures shall not exceed 3 inches (75 mm) above the elevation the surrounding areas.

751-3.10 Cleaning and restoration of site. After the backfill is completed, the Contractor shall dispose of all surplus material, dirt, and rubbish from the site. Surplus dirt may be deposited in embankments, shoulders, or as approved by the RPR. The Contractor shall restore all disturbed areas to their original condition. The Contractor shall remove all tools and equipment, leaving the entire site free, clear, and in good condition.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

751-4.1 Manholes, catch basins, inlets, and inspection holes shall be measured by the unit.

BASIS OF PAYMENT

751-5.1 The accepted quantities of manholes, catch basins, inlets, and inspection holes will be paid for at the contract unit price per each in place when completed. This price shall be full compensation for furnishing all materials and for all preparation, excavation, backfilling and placing of the materials; furnishing and installation of such specials and connections to pipes and other structures as may be required to complete the item as shown on the plans; and for all labor equipment, tools and incidentals necessary to complete the structure.

Payment will be made under:

Item D-751-5.1	Manholes - per each
Item D-751-5.2	Catch Basins - per each
Item D-751-5.3	Inlets - per each
Item D-751-5.4	Inspection Holes - per each

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM International (ASTM)

ASTM A27	Standard Specification for Steel Castings, Carbon, for General Application
ASTM A47	Standard Specification for Ferritic Malleable Iron Castings
ASTM A48	Standard Specification for Gray Iron Castings
ASTM A123	Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products
ASTM A283	Standard Specification for Low and Intermediate Tensile Strength Carbon Steel Plates
ASTM A536	Standard Specification for Ductile Iron Castings
ASTM A897	Standard Specification for Austempered Ductile Iron Castings
ASTM C32	Standard Specification for Sewer and Manhole Brick (Made from Clay or Shale)
ASTM C144	Standard Specification for Aggregate for Masonry Mortar
ASTM C150	Standard Specification for Portland Cement
ASTM C443	Standard Specification for Joints for Concrete Pipe and Manholes, Using Rubber Gaskets.
ASTM C478	Standard Specification for Precast Reinforced Concrete Manhole Sections
ASTM C913	Standard Specification for Precast Concrete Water and Wastewater Structures.

American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO)

AASHTO M36	Standard Specification for Corrugated Steel Pipe, Metallic-Coated, for Sewers and Drains

END OF ITEM D-751

Item D-752 Concrete Culverts, Headwalls, and Miscellaneous Drainage Structures

DESCRIPTION

752-1.1 This item shall consist of [plain] [reinforced] concrete culverts, headwalls, and miscellaneous drainage structures constructed in accordance with these specifications, at the specified locations and conforming to the lines, grades, and dimensions shown on the plans or required by the RPR.

MATERIALS

752-2.1 Concrete. [Plain] [Reinforced] concrete shall meet the requirements of Item P-610.

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

752-3.1 Unclassified excavation.

a. Trenches and foundation pits for structures or structure footings shall be excavated to the lines and grades and elevations shown on the plans. The excavation shall be of sufficient size to permit the placing of the full width and length of the structure or structure footings shown. The elevations of the bottoms of footings, as shown on the plans, shall be considered as approximate only; and the RPR may approve, in writing, changes in dimensions or elevations of footings necessary to secure a satisfactory foundation.

b. Boulders, logs, or any other objectionable material encountered in excavation shall be removed. All rock or other hard foundation material shall be cleaned of all loose material and cut to a firm surface either level, stepped, or serrated, as directed by the RPR. All seams or crevices shall be cleaned out and grouted. All loose and disintegrated rock and thin strata shall be removed. When concrete will rest on a surface other than rock, the bottom of the excavation shall not be disturbed and excavation to final grade shall not be made until immediately before the concrete or reinforcing steel is placed.

c. The Contractor shall do all bracing, sheathing, or shoring necessary to perform and protect the excavation and the structure as required for safety or conformance to governing laws. The cost of bracing, sheathing, or shoring shall be included in the unit price bid for excavation.

d. All bracing, sheathing, or shoring shall be removed by the Contractor after the completion of the structure. Removal shall not disturb or damage the finished concrete. The cost of removal shall be included in the unit price bid for excavation.

e. After each excavation is completed, the Contractor shall notify the RPR. No concrete or reinforcing steel shall be placed until the RPR has approved the depth of the excavation and the character of the foundation material.

752-3.2 Backfilling.

a. After a structure has been completed, backfilling with approved material shall be accomplished by applying the fill in horizontal layers not to exceed 8 inches (200 mm) in loose depth, and compacted. The field density of the compacted material shall be at least 90% of the maximum density for cohesive soils and 95% of the maximum density for noncohesive soils. The maximum density shall be determined in accordance with ASTM D698. The field density shall be determined in accordance with ASTM D1556.

b. No backfilling shall be placed against any structure until approved by the RPR. For concrete, approval shall not be given until the concrete has been in place seven (7) days, or until tests establish that the concrete has attained sufficient strength to withstand any pressure created by the backfill or the placement methods.

c. Fill placed around concrete culverts shall be deposited on each side at the same time and to approximately the same elevation. All slopes bounding or within the areas to be backfilled shall be stepped or serrated to prevent wedge action against the structure.

d. Backfill will not be measured for direct payment. Performance of this work shall be considered as a subsidiary obligation of the Contractor, covered under the contract unit price for “unclassified excavation for structures.”

752-3.3 Weep holes. Weep holes shall be constructed as shown on the plans.

752-3.4 Cleaning and restoration of site. After the backfill is completed, the Contractor shall dispose of all surplus material, dirt, and rubbish from the site. Surplus dirt may be deposited in embankment, shoulders, or as approved by the RPR. The Contractor shall restore all disturbed areas to their original condition. The Contractor shall remove all tools and equipment, leaving the entire site free, clear, and in good condition.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

752-4.1 The quantity of unclassified excavation for structures shall be the number of cubic yards (cubic meters), measured in original position, of material excavated in accordance with the plans, or as approved by the RPR; but in no case shall any yardage be included in the measurement for payment which is outside of a volume bounded by vertical planes 18 inches (0.5 m) outside of and parallel to the neat lines of the footings.

752-4.2 Concrete shall be measured by the number of cubic yards (cubic meters) of concrete, complete in place and accepted. In computing the yardage of concrete for payment, the dimensions used shall be those shown on the plans or approved by the RPR. No measurements or other allowances shall be made for forms, false work, cofferdams, pumping, bracing, expansion joints, or finishing of the concrete. No deductions in yardage shall be made for the volumes of reinforcing steel or embedded items.

752-4.3 The quantity of reinforcing steel shall be the calculated theoretical number of pounds (km) placed as shown on the plans, complete in place and accepted. The unit weight used for deformed bars shall be the weight of plain square or round bars, as the case may be, of equal nominal size.

BASIS OF PAYMENT

752-5.1 Payment will be made at the contract unit price per cubic yard (cubic meter) for unclassified excavation for structures.

752-5.2 Payment will be made at the contract unit price per cubic yard (cubic meter) for concrete for the structures.

752-5.3 Payment will be made at the contract unit price per pound (km) for reinforcing steel.

These prices shall be full compensation for furnishing all materials and for all preparation, excavation, and placing the materials, and for all labor, equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete the structure.

Payment will be made under:

Item D-752-5.1 Unclassified Excavation for Structures - per cubic yard (cubic meter)

Item D-752-5.2	Structural Concrete - per cubic yard (cubic meter)
Item D-752-5.3	Reinforcing Steel - per pound (km)

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM International (ASTM)

ASTM D698	Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Standard Effort (12,400 ft-lb/ft ³ (600 kN-m/m ³))
ASTM D1556	Standard Test Method for Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place by the Sand-Cone Method

END OF ITEM D-752

Page Intentionally Blank

Item D-754 Concrete Gutters, Ditches, and Flumes

DESCRIPTION

754-1.1 This item shall consist of Portland cement concrete gutters, ditches, and flumes constructed in accordance with these specifications at the specified locations in accordance with the dimensions, lines, and grades as shown on the plans.

MATERIALS

754-2.1 Concrete. Plain and reinforced concrete shall meet the requirements of Item P-610.

754-2.2 Joints. Joint filler materials and premolded joint material shall conform to Item P-605.

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

754-3.1 Preparing subgrade. Excavation shall be made to the required width and depth, and the subgrade upon which the item is to be built shall be compacted to a firm uniform grade. All soft and unsuitable material shall be removed and replaced with suitable approved material. When required, a layer of approved granular material, compacted to the thickness indicated on the plans, shall be placed to form a subbase. The underlying course shall be checked and accepted by the RPR before placing and spreading operations are started.

754-3.2 Placing. The forms and the mixing, placing, finishing, and curing of concrete shall conform to the requirements of Item P-610 and the following requirements.

The concrete shall be tamped until it is consolidated and mortar covers the top surface. The surface of the concrete shall be floated smooth and the edges rounded to the radii shown on the plans. Before the concrete is given the final finishing, the surface shall be tested with a 12-foot (3.7-m) straightedge, and any irregularities of more than 1/4 inch (6 mm) in 12-foot (3.7-m) shall be eliminated.

The concrete shall be placed with dummy-grooved joints not to exceed 25 feet (7.5 m) apart and no section shall be less than 4 feet (1.2 m) long.

Expansion joints of the type called for in the plans shall be constructed to replace dummy groove joints at a spacing of approximately 100 feet (30 m). When the gutter is placed next to concrete pavement, expansion joints in the gutter shall be located opposite expansion joints in the pavement. When a gutter abuts a pavement or other structure, an expansion joint shall be placed between the gutter and the other structure.

Forms shall not be removed within 24 hours after the concrete has been placed. Minor defects shall be repaired with mortar containing one (1) part cement and two (2) parts fine aggregate.

Depositing, compacting, and finishing the item shall be conducted to build a satisfactory structure. If any section of concrete is found to be porous, or is otherwise defective, it shall be removed and replaced by the Contractor without additional compensation.

754-3.3 Backfilling. After the concrete has set sufficiently, the spaces adjacent to the structure shall be refilled to the required elevation with material specified on the plans and compacted by mechanical

equipment to at least 90% of the maximum density as determined by ASTM D698. The in-place density shall be determined in accordance with ASTM D1556.

754-3.4 Cleaning and restoration of site. After the backfill is completed, the Contractor shall dispose of all surplus material, dirt, and rubbish from the site. Surplus dirt may be deposited in embankments, shoulders, or as ordered by the RPR. The Contractor shall restore all disturbed areas to their original condition. The Contractor shall remove all tools and equipment, leaving the entire site free, clear and in good condition.

Performance of the work described in this section shall be considered as a subsidiary obligation of the Contractor, covered under the contract unit price for the structure.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

754-4.1 Concrete shall be measured by the cubic yard (cubic meter) in accordance with the dimensions shown on the plans or ordered by the RPR. No deductions shall be made for the volume occupied by reinforcing steel, anchors, conduits, weep holes, or piling.

754-4.2 Reinforcing steel shall be measured by the pound (kg), based on the theoretical number of pounds (kg) complete in place as shown on the plans or placed as ordered by the RPR.

BASIS OF PAYMENT

754-5.1 The accepted quantities of structural concrete will be paid for at the contract unit price per cubic yard (cubic meter) complete in place.

754-5.2 The accepted quantities of reinforcing steel will be paid for at the contract price per pound (kg) complete in place. No allowance shall be made for clips, wire, or other material used for fastening reinforcement in place.

Payment will be made under:

Item D-754-5.1	Structural Concrete - per cubic yard (cubic meter)
Item D-754-5.2	Reinforcing Steel - per pound (kg)

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM International (ASTM)

ASTM D698	Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Standard Effort (12,400 ft-lb/ft ³ (600 kN-m/m ³))
ASTM D1556	Standard Test Method for Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place by the Sand-Cone Method

END OF ITEM D-754

Part 12 – Turfing

Item T-901 Seeding

Wildlife Hazard Attractants and Mitigation: Through the appropriate selection of turf materials for the project(s), the Engineer must address the elimination and/or mitigation of materials that could attract hazardous wildlife on and/or around an airport. The Engineer should refer to the following documents and sites for guidance on wildlife hazards at Airports for all projects:

(1) Advisory circular (AC) 150/5200-33, Hazardous Wildlife Attractants on or Near Airports, contains guidance on certain land uses that have the potential to attract hazardous wildlife on or near airports. The AC is available at:
http://www.faa.gov/airports/resources/advisory_circulars/.

(2) Wildlife Hazard Management at Airports, A Manual for Airport Personnel, is available at:
https://www.faa.gov/airports/airport_safety/wildlife/resources/media/2005_FAA_Manual_complete.pdf.

(3) Additional information on wildlife issues can be found on the FAA Guidance on Wildlife website at:
https://www.faa.gov/airports/airport_safety/wildlife/management

Engineer may specify that seeding be constructed in accordance with state specifications. All referenced state specifications must be included in project specifications.

The United States Department of Agriculture (USDA) / Animal and Plant Health Inspection Service (APHIS) / Wildlife Service staff should be consulted to ensure seed recommended is not a hazardous wildlife attractant.

DESCRIPTION

901-1.1 This item shall consist of soil preparation, seeding [___] the areas shown on the plans or as directed by the RPR in accordance with these specifications.

The Engineer shall specify fertilizing or liming or both as needed for a specific project.

MATERIALS

901-2.1 Seed. The species and application rates of grass, legume, and cover-crop seed furnished shall be those stipulated herein. Seed shall conform to the requirements of Federal Specification JJJ-S-181, Federal Specification, Seeds, Agricultural.

Seed shall be furnished separately or in mixtures in standard containers labeled in conformance with the Agricultural Marketing Service (AMS) Seed Act and applicable state seed laws with the seed name, lot number, net weight, percentages of purity and of germination and hard seed, and percentage of maximum weed seed content clearly marked for each kind of seed. The Contractor shall furnish the RPR duplicate signed copies of a statement by the vendor certifying that each lot of seed has been tested by a recognized laboratory for seed testing within six (6) months of date of delivery. This statement shall include: name and address of laboratory, date of test, lot number for each kind of seed, and the results of tests as to name, percentages of purity and of germination, and percentage of weed content for each kind of seed furnished, and, in case of a mixture, the proportions of each kind of seed. Wet, moldy, or otherwise damaged seed will be rejected.

Seeds shall be applied as follows:

Seed Properties and Rate of Application

Seed	Minimum Seed Purity (Percent)	Minimum Germination (Percent)	Rate of Application lb/acre (or lb/1,000 S.F.)
*	*	*	*
*	*	*	*

Seeding shall be performed during the period between [] and [] inclusive, unless otherwise approved by the RPR.

The USDA-APHIS-Wildlife Service staff should be consulted to ensure seed recommended is not a hazardous wildlife attractant.

Seeding dates, species and seeding rates must be specified that are compatible with local climate and soil conditions. Due consideration must be given to longevity of plants, resistance to traffic and erosion, and attraction of birds or large animals. More than one seeding season may be specified, if appropriate. Local offices of the USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service (NRCS) and/or the State University Agricultural Cooperative Extension Office (County Agent or equivalent) should be consulted for assistance and recommendations. These agencies should also be consulted for liming and fertilizer recommendations.

901-2.2 Lime. [Lime shall be ground limestone containing not less than 85% of total carbonates, and shall be ground to such fineness that 90% will pass through a No. 20 (850 µm) mesh sieve and 50% will pass through a No. 100 (150 µm) mesh sieve. Coarser material will be acceptable, providing the rates of application are increased to provide not less than the minimum quantities and depth specified in the special provisions on the basis of the two sieve requirements above. Dolomitic lime or a high magnesium lime shall contain at least 10% of magnesium oxide. Lime shall be applied at the rate of []. All

liming materials shall conform to the requirements of ASTM C602.]
[Not required.]

The Engineer shall specify the application rate in pounds per acre.

901-2.3 Fertilizer. [Fertilizer shall be standard commercial fertilizers supplied separately or in mixtures containing the percentages of total nitrogen, available phosphoric acid, and water-soluble potash. They shall be applied at the rate and to the depth specified, and shall meet the requirements of applicable state laws. They shall be furnished in standard containers with name, weight, and guaranteed analysis of contents clearly marked thereon. No cyanamide compounds or hydrated lime shall be permitted in mixed fertilizers.

The fertilizers may be supplied in one of the following forms:

- a. A dry, free-flowing fertilizer suitable for application by a common fertilizer spreader;
- b. A finely-ground fertilizer soluble in water, suitable for application by power sprayers; or
- c. A granular or pellet form suitable for application by blower equipment.

Fertilizers shall be [] commercial fertilizer and shall be spread at the rate of [].]

[Not required.]

The Engineer shall specify the analysis and the application rate in pounds per acre.

Check with the local Agricultural Cooperative Extension Office for recommended fertilizer mixture for local conditions.

Paragraphs 901-2.2 and 901-2.3 shall be deleted if not applicable.

901-2.4 Soil for repairs. The soil for fill and topsoiling of areas to be repaired shall be at least of equal quality to that which exists in areas adjacent to the area to be repaired. The soil shall be relatively free from large stones, roots, stumps, or other materials that will interfere with subsequent sowing of seed, compacting, and establishing turf, and shall be approved by the RPR before being placed.

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

901-3.1 Advance preparation and cleanup. After grading of areas has been completed and before applying fertilizer and ground limestone, areas to be seeded shall be raked or otherwise cleared of stones larger than 2 inches (50 mm) in any diameter, sticks, stumps, and other debris that might interfere with sowing of seed, growth of grasses, or subsequent maintenance of grass-covered areas. If any damage by erosion or other causes has occurred after the completion of grading and before beginning the application

of fertilizer and ground limestone, the Contractor shall repair such damage include filling gullies, smoothing irregularities, and repairing other incidental damage.

An area to be seeded shall be considered a satisfactory seedbed without additional treatment if it has recently been thoroughly loosened and worked to a depth of not less than 5 inches (125 mm) as a result of grading operations and, if immediately prior to seeding, the top 3 inches (75 mm) of soil is loose, friable, reasonably free from large clods, rocks, large roots, or other undesirable matter, and if shaped to the required grade.

When the area to be seeded is sparsely sodded, weedy, barren and unworked, or packed and hard, any grass and weeds shall first be cut or otherwise satisfactorily disposed of, and the soil then scarified or otherwise loosened to a depth not less than 5 inches (125 mm). Clods shall be broken and the top 3 inches (75 mm) of soil shall be worked into a satisfactory seedbed by discing, or by use of cultipackers, rollers, drags, harrows, or other appropriate means.

901-3.2 Dry application method.

a. Liming. [Lime shall be applied separately and prior to the application of any fertilizer or seed and only on seedbeds that have previously been prepared as described above. The lime shall then be worked into the top 3 inches (75 mm) of soil after which the seedbed shall again be properly graded and dressed to a smooth finish.] [Not required.]

b. Fertilizing. [Following advance preparations and cleanup fertilizer shall be uniformly spread at the rate that will provide not less than the minimum quantity stated in paragraph 901-2.3.]

[Not required.]

Delete paragraphs a. and b. if not applicable.

c. Seeding. Grass seed shall be sown at the rate specified in paragraph 901-2.1 immediately after fertilizing. The fertilizer and seed shall be raked within the depth range stated in the special provisions. Seeds of legumes, either alone or in mixtures, shall be inoculated before mixing or sowing, in accordance with the instructions of the manufacturer of the inoculant. When seeding is required at other than the seasons shown on the plans or in the special provisions, a cover crop shall be sown by the same methods required for grass and legume seeding.

d. Rolling. After the seed has been properly covered, the seedbed shall be immediately compacted by means of an approved lawn roller, weighing 40 to 65 pounds per foot (60 to 97 kg per meter) of width for clay soil (or any soil having a tendency to pack), and weighing 150 to 200 pounds per foot (223 to 298 kg per meter) of width for sandy or light soils.

901-3.3 Wet application method.

a. General. The Contractor may elect to apply seed and fertilizer (and lime, if required) by spraying them on the previously prepared seedbed in the form of an aqueous mixture and by using the methods and equipment described herein. The rates of application shall be as specified in the special provisions.

b. Spraying equipment. The spraying equipment shall have a container or water tank equipped with a liquid level gauge calibrated to read in increments not larger than 50 gallons (190 liters) over the entire range of the tank capacity, mounted so as to be visible to the nozzle operator. The container or tank shall

also be equipped with a mechanical power-driven agitator capable of keeping all the solids in the mixture in complete suspension at all times until used.

The unit shall also be equipped with a pressure pump capable of delivering 100 gallons (380 liters) per minute at a pressure of 100 lb / sq inches (690 kPa). The pump shall be mounted in a line that will recirculate the mixture through the tank whenever it is not being sprayed from the nozzle. All pump passages and pipe lines shall be capable of providing clearance for 5/8 inch (16 mm) solids. The power unit for the pump and agitator shall have controls mounted so as to be accessible to the nozzle operator. There shall be an indicating pressure gauge connected and mounted immediately at the back of the nozzle.

The nozzle pipe shall be mounted on an elevated supporting stand in such a manner that it can be rotated through 360 degrees horizontally and inclined vertically from at least 20 degrees below to at least 60 degrees above the horizontal. There shall be a quick-acting, three-way control valve connecting the recirculating line to the nozzle pipe and mounted so that the nozzle operator can control and regulate the amount of flow of mixture delivered to the nozzle. At least three different types of nozzles shall be supplied so that mixtures may be properly sprayed over distance varying from 20 to 100 feet (6 to 30 m). One shall be a close-range ribbon nozzle, one a medium-range ribbon nozzle, and one a long-range jet nozzle. For case of removal and cleaning, all nozzles shall be connected to the nozzle pipe by means of quick-release couplings.

In order to reach areas inaccessible to the regular equipment, an extension hose at least 50 feet (15 m) in length shall be provided to which the nozzles may be connected.

c. Mixtures. Lime, if required, shall be applied separately, in the quantity specified, prior to the fertilizing and seeding operations. Not more than 220 pounds (100 kg) of lime shall be added to and mixed with each 100 gallons (380 liters) of water. Seed and fertilizer shall be mixed together in the relative proportions specified, but not more than a total of 220 pounds (100 kg) of these combined solids shall be added to and mixed with each 100 gallons (380 liters) of water.

All water used shall be obtained from fresh water sources and shall be free from injurious chemicals and other toxic substances harmful to plant life. The Contractor shall identify to the RPR all sources of water at least two (2) weeks prior to use. The RPR may take samples of the water at the source or from the tank at any time and have a laboratory test the samples for chemical and saline content. The Contractor shall not use any water from any source that is disapproved by the RPR following such tests.

All mixtures shall be constantly agitated from the time they are mixed until they are finally applied to the seedbed. All such mixtures shall be used within two (2) hours from the time they were mixed or they shall be wasted and disposed of at approved locations.

d. Spraying. Lime, if required, shall be sprayed only upon previously prepared seedbeds. After the applied lime mixture has dried, the lime shall be worked into the top 3 inches (75 mm), after which the seedbed shall again be properly graded and dressed to a smooth finish.

Mixtures of seed and fertilizer shall only be sprayed upon previously prepared seedbeds on which the lime, if required, shall already have been worked in. The mixtures shall be applied by means of a high-pressure spray that shall always be directed upward into the air so that the mixtures will fall to the ground like rain in a uniform spray. Nozzles or sprays shall never be directed toward the ground in such a manner as might produce erosion or runoff.

Particular care shall be exercised to ensure that the application is made uniformly and at the prescribed rate and to guard against misses and overlapped areas. Proper predetermined quantities of the mixture in accordance with specifications shall be used to cover specified sections of known area.

Checks on the rate and uniformity of application may be made by observing the degree of wetting of the ground or by distributing test sheets of paper or pans over the area at intervals and observing the quantity of material deposited thereon.

On surfaces that are to be mulched as indicated by the plans or designated by the RPR, seed and fertilizer applied by the spray method need not be raked into the soil or rolled. However, on surfaces on which mulch is not to be used, the raking and rolling operations will be required after the soil has dried.

901-3.4 Maintenance of seeded areas. The Contractor shall protect seeded areas against traffic or other use by warning signs or barricades, as approved by the RPR. Surfaces gullied or otherwise damaged following seeding shall be repaired by regrading and reseeding as directed. The Contractor shall mow, water as directed, and otherwise maintain seeded areas in a satisfactory condition until final inspection and acceptance of the work.

When either the dry or wet application method outlined above is used for work done out of season, it will be required that the Contractor establish a good stand of grass of uniform color and density to the satisfaction of the RPR. A grass stand shall be considered adequate when bare spots are one square foot (0.01 sq m) or less, randomly dispersed, and do not exceed 3% of the area seeded.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

901-4.1 The quantity of seeding to be paid for shall be the number of units [1,000 square feet (sq m)] [acre (sq m)] measured on the ground surface, completed and accepted.

BASIS OF PAYMENT

901-5.1 Payment shall be made at the contract unit price per [1,000 square feet (sq m)] [acre (sq m)] or fraction thereof, which price and payment shall be full compensation for furnishing and placing all material and for all labor, equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete the work prescribed in this item.

Payment will be made under:

Item 901-5.1	Seeding - per [1,000 square feet (sq m)] [acre (sq m)]

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM International (ASTM)

ASTM C602	Standard Specification for Agricultural Liming Materials

Federal Specifications (FED SPEC)

FED SPEC	JJJ-S-181, Federal Specification, Seeds, Agricultural

Advisory Circulars (AC)

AC 150/5200-33	Hazardous Wildlife Attractants on or Near Airports

FAA/United States Department of Agriculture

Wildlife Hazard Management at Airports, A Manual for Airport Personnel

END OF ITEM T-901

Page Intentionally Blank

Item T-903 Sprigging

Wildlife Hazard Attractants and Mitigation: Through the appropriate selection of turf materials for the project(s), the Engineer must address the elimination and/or mitigation of materials that could attract hazardous wildlife on and/or around an airport. The Engineer should refer to the following documents and sites for guidance on wildlife hazards at Airports for all projects:

(1) Advisory circular (AC) 150/5200-33, Hazardous Wildlife Attractants on or Near Airports, contains guidance on certain land uses that have the potential to attract hazardous wildlife on or near airports. The AC is available at:
http://www.faa.gov/airports/resources/advisory_circulars/.

(2) Wildlife Hazard Management at Airports, A Manual for Airport Personnel, is available at:
http://www.faa.gov/airports/airport_safety/wildlife/problem/media/2005_FAA_Manual_complete.pdf.

(3) Additional information on wildlife issues can be found on the FAA Guidance on Wildlife website at: http://www.faa.gov/airports/airport_safety/wildlife/guidance

Engineer may specify that sprigging be constructed in accordance with state specifications. All referenced state specifications must be included in project specifications.

The United States Department of Agriculture (USDA) / Animal and Plant Health Inspection Service (APHIS) / Wildlife Service staff should be consulted to ensure sprigging recommended is not a hazardous wildlife attractant.

DESCRIPTION

903-1.1 This item shall consist of planting sprigs of living grass plants at the locations shown on the plans or as directed by the RPR in accordance with these specifications.

MATERIALS

903-2.1 Sprigs. Sprigs shall be healthy living stems (stolons or rhizomes), of the grass species stated in the special provisions, harvested without adhering soil and obtained from sources where the sod is heavy and thickly matted. The presence of weeds or other material that might be detrimental to the proposed planting will be cause for rejection of sprigs.

903-2.2 Lime. [Lime shall be ground limestone containing not less than 85% of total carbonates, and shall be ground to such fineness that 90% will pass through a No. 20 (850 µm) mesh sieve and 50% will pass through a No. 100 (150 µm) mesh sieve. Coarser material will be acceptable, providing the rates of application are increased to

provide not less than the minimum quantities and depth specified in the special provisions on the basis of the two sieve requirements above. Dolomitic lime or a high magnesium lime shall contain at least 10% of magnesium oxide. Lime shall be applied at the rate of [____]. All liming materials shall conform to the requirements of ASTM C602.]
[Not required.]

The Engineer shall specify the application rate in pounds per acre.

903-2.3 Fertilizer. [Fertilizer shall be standard commercial fertilizers supplied separately or in mixtures containing the percentages of total nitrogen, available phosphoric acid, and water-soluble potash. They shall be applied at the rate and to the depth specified, and shall meet the requirements of applicable state laws. They shall be furnished in standard containers with name, weight, and guaranteed analysis of contents clearly marked thereon. No cyanamide compounds or hydrated lime shall be permitted in mixed fertilizers.

The fertilizers may be supplied in one of the following forms:

- a. A dry, free-flowing fertilizer suitable for application by a common fertilizer spreader;
- b. A finely-ground fertilizer soluble in water, suitable for application by power sprayers; or
- c. A granular or pellet form suitable for application by blower equipment.

Fertilizers shall be [____] commercial fertilizer and shall be spread at the rate of [____].] [Not required.]

The Engineer shall specify the analysis and the application rate in pounds per acre.

Check with the local Agricultural Cooperative Extension Office for recommended fertilizer mixture for local conditions.

The United States Department of Agriculture (USDA) / Animal and Plant Health Inspection Service (APHIS) / Wildlife Service staff should be consulted to ensure sprigging stock recommended is not a hazardous wildlife attractant.

Paragraphs 903-2.2 and 903-2.3 shall be deleted if not applicable.

903-2.4 Water. All water used shall be sufficiently free from oil, acid, alkali, salt, or other harmful materials that would inhibit the growth of grass.

903-2.5 Soil for repairs. The soil for fill and topsoiling of areas to be repaired shall be at least of equal quality to that which exists in areas adjacent to the area to be repaired. The soil shall be relatively free from large stones, roots, stumps, or other materials that will interfere with subsequent sowing of seed, compacting, and establishing turf, and shall be approved by the RPR before being placed.

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

903-3.1 General. Areas to be sprigged and the location of sprigging material, if available on the site, shall be shown on the plans. Areas requiring special ground surface preparation such as tilling, and those in a satisfactory condition to remain undisturbed, shall also be shown on the plans.

Suitable equipment necessary for proper preparation of the ground surface and for the handling and placing of all required materials shall be on hand, in good condition, and shall be approved by the RPR before the various operations are started. The Contractor shall demonstrate to the RPR, before starting the various operations, that the planting and application of required materials will be made at the specified rates.

When weather conditions are such that unsatisfactory results may occur, the work shall be stopped until the desired results can be obtained.

903-3.2 Advance preparation and cleanup. After grading of areas has been completed and before applying fertilizer and limestone, areas to be sprigged shall be raked or otherwise cleared of stones larger than 2 inches (50 mm) in any diameter, sticks, stumps, and other debris which might interfere with sprigging, growth of grasses, or subsequent maintenance of grass-covered areas. If any damage by erosion or other causes has occurred after grading of areas and before beginning the application of fertilizer and ground limestone, the Contractor shall repair such damage including filling gullies, smoothing irregularities, and repairing other incidental damage.

903-3.3 Applying fertilizer and ground limestone. Following advance preparation and cleanup, fertilizer shall be uniformly spread at a rate that will provide not less than the minimum quantity of each fertilizer ingredient as stated in the special provisions. If use of ground limestone is required, it shall then be spread at a rate that will provide not less than the minimum quantity stated in the special provisions. These materials shall be incorporated into the soil to a depth of not less than 2 inches (50 mm) by discing, raking, or other suitable methods. Any stones larger than 2 inches (50 mm) in any diameter, large clods, roots, and other litter brought to the surface by this operation shall be removed.

In steep slopes where fertilizer and ground limestone cannot be incorporated effectively by mechanical equipment, they may be applied with power sprayers, blower equipment, or other approved method, and need not be incorporated into the soil.

903-3.4 Harvesting sprigs. The sprigs obtained from sources off the site shall be from suitable areas as close as practical to the planting site. Regardless of the source, sprigging material that contains grass and weeds taller than 6 inches (150 mm) shall be mowed to a height of 3 inches (75 mm), and the clippings raked and removed before harvesting begins. Harvesting may be performed by any suitable method, including crisscross cultivation, shallow plowing, or other acceptable methods to thoroughly loosen the sprigs from the soil and to bring them to the surface. After loosening the sprigs from the soil, they shall be gathered in small piles or windrows, watered, and kept moist until planted.

Not more than 24 hours shall elapse between harvesting and planting sprigs, except that, when weather or other uncontrollable conditions interrupt the work, a time extension may be granted, provided the sprigs are still moist and viable. Sprigs that have heated in stockpiles, have become frozen, permitted to dry out, or otherwise seriously damaged during harvesting or delivery shall be rejected and shall be disposed of as directed by the RPR.

903-3.5 Planting sprigs. Sprigging shall be done only within the periods stipulated in the special provisions. Sprigging shall not be done during windy weather, or when the ground is dry, excessively wet, frozen, or otherwise untillable. If the soil is not moist when the sprigs are being set, water shall be applied until the soil is moist and in a workable condition. One or more of the following methods shall be used, whichever is shown on the plans or stated in the special provisions:

a. Broadcast sprigging. Sprigs shall be broadcast by hand or by suitable equipment in a uniform layer over the prepared surface with spacing between sprigs not to exceed 6 inches (150 mm). The sprigs shall then be forced into the soil to a depth of 2 to 4 inches (50 to 100 mm) with a straight spade or similar tool, or with a disc harrow or other equipment set to cover the sprigs to the required depth.

b. Row sprigging. Furrows shall be opened along the approximate contour of slopes at the spacing and depth stated in the special provisions. Sprigs shall be placed without delay in a continuous row in the open furrow with successive sprigs touching, and they shall be covered immediately.

c. Spot sprigging. Spot sprigging shall be performed as specified under row sprigging, except that groups of four (4) sprigs or more shall be spaced 18 inches (0.5 m) apart in the rows.

903-3.6 Mulching and compacting. After planting of sprigs has been completed and prior to compacting, the surface shall be cleared of stones larger than 2 inches (50 mm) in any diameter, large clods, roots, and other litter brought to the surface during sprigging.

If mulching of sprigged areas is shown on the plans or stated in the special provisions, the sprigged areas shall be covered with mulch in accordance with the requirements of Item T-908 within 24 hours from the time sprigging has been completed, weather and soil conditions permitting.

If mulching is not shown on the plans nor stated in the special provisions, the sprigged area shall be compacted within 24 hours from the time sprigging has been completed, weather and soil conditions permitting, by cultipackers, rollers, or other satisfactory equipment operated at right angles to the slope. Compaction shall not be done when the soil is in such condition that it is picked up by the equipment.

903-3.7 Establishing turf. A stand of turf shall be when there is 95% ground cover of the established species. The Contractor shall be responsible for the proper care of the sprigged areas during the period when the plants are becoming established and he shall protect the sprigged areas against traffic by warning signs or barricades approved by the RPR. Surfaces gullied or otherwise damaged following sprigging shall be repaired by regrading and resprigging as directed by the RPR. The Contractor shall mow, water as directed, and otherwise maintain sprigged areas in a satisfactory condition until final inspection and acceptance of the work.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

903-4.1 Sprigging shall be measured by the number of units of 1,000 square feet (100 sq m), measured on the ground surface, completed and accepted.

BASIS OF PAYMENT

903-5.1 Payment will be made at the contract unit price per 1,000 square feet (100 sq m) or fraction thereof. This price shall be full compensation for furnishing and placing all material including any required mulching of sprigged areas, and for all labor, equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete the work prescribed in this item.

Payment will be made under:

Item 903-5.1	Sprigging - per 1,000 square feet (100 sq m)

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM International (ASTM)

ASTM C602 Standard Specification for Agricultural Liming Materials

Advisory Circulars (AC)

AC 150/5200-33 Hazardous Wildlife Attractants on or Near Airports

FAA/United States Department of Agriculture

Wildlife Hazard Management at Airports, A Manual for Airport Personnel

END OF ITEM T-903

Page Intentionally Blank

Item T-904 Sodding

Wildlife Hazard Attractants and Mitigation: Through the appropriate selection of turf materials for the project(s), the Engineer must address the elimination and/or mitigation of materials that could attract hazardous wildlife on and/or around an airport. The Engineer should refer to the following documents and sites for guidance on wildlife hazards at Airports for all projects:

(1) Advisory circular (AC) 150/5200-33, Hazardous Wildlife Attractants on or Near Airports, contains guidance on certain land uses that have the potential to attract hazardous wildlife on or near airports. The AC is available at:
http://www.faa.gov/airports/resources/advisory_circulars/.

(2) Wildlife Hazard Management at Airports, A Manual for Airport Personnel, is available at:
http://www.faa.gov/airports/airport_safety/wildlife/problem/media/2005_FAA_Manual_complete.pdf.

(3) Additional information on wildlife issues can be found on the FAA Guidance on Wildlife website at: http://www.faa.gov/airports/airport_safety/wildlife/guidance

It is acceptable to specify that sodding be constructed in accordance with state specifications. All referenced state specifications must be included in project specifications.

The United States Department of Agriculture (USDA) / Animal and Plant Health Inspection Service (APHIS) / Wildlife Service staff should be consulted to ensure sod recommended is not a hazardous wildlife attractant.

DESCRIPTION

904-1.1 This item shall consist of furnishing, hauling, and placing approved live sod on prepared areas in accordance with this specification at the locations shown on the plans or as directed by the RPR.

MATERIALS

904-2.1 Sod. Sod furnished by the Contractor shall have a good cover of living or growing grass. This shall be interpreted to include grass that is seasonally dormant during the cold or dry seasons and capable of renewing growth after the dormant period. All sod shall be obtained from areas where the soil is reasonably fertile and contains a high percentage of loamy topsoil. Sod shall be cut or stripped from living, thickly matted turf relatively free of weeds or other undesirable foreign plants, large stones, roots, or other materials that might be detrimental to the development of the sod or to future maintenance. At least 70% of the plants in the cut sod shall be composed of the species stated in the special provisions, and any vegetation more than 6 inches (150 mm) in height shall be mowed to a height of 3 inches (75 mm) or

less before sod is lifted. Sod, including the soil containing the roots and the plant growth showing above, shall be cut uniformly to a thickness not less than that stated in the special provisions.

The specific species and varieties used should be based on recommendations of the local Agriculture Cooperative Extension Office. Modify sod thickness as required for species specified. State certified is usually more stringently monitored than State approved.

The United States Department of Agriculture (USDA) / Animal and Plant Health Inspection Service (APHIS) / Wildlife Service staff should be consulted to ensure sod stock recommended is not a hazardous wildlife attractant.

904-2.2 Lime. [Lime shall be ground limestone containing not less than 85% of total carbonates, and shall be ground to such fineness that 90% will pass through a No. 20 (850 µm) mesh sieve and 50% will pass through a No. 100 (150 µm) mesh sieve. Coarser material will be acceptable, providing the rates of application are increased to provide not less than the minimum quantities and depth specified in the special provisions on the basis of the two sieve requirements above. Dolomitic lime or a high magnesium lime shall contain at least 10% of magnesium oxide. Lime shall be applied at the rate of []. All liming materials shall conform to the requirements of ASTM C602.]
[Not required.]

The Engineer shall specify the application rate in pounds per acre.

904-2.3 Fertilizer. [Fertilizer shall be standard commercial fertilizers supplied separately or in mixtures containing the percentages of total nitrogen, available phosphoric acid, and water-soluble potash. They shall be applied at the rate and to the depth specified, and shall meet the requirements of applicable state laws. They shall be furnished in standard containers with name, weight, and guaranteed analysis of contents clearly marked thereon. No cyanamide compounds or hydrated lime shall be permitted in mixed fertilizers.

The fertilizers may be supplied in one of the following forms:

- a. A dry, free-flowing fertilizer suitable for application by a common fertilizer spreader;
- b. A finely-ground fertilizer soluble in water, suitable for application by power sprayers; or
- c. A granular or pellet form suitable for application by blower equipment.

Fertilizers shall be [] commercial fertilizer and shall be spread at the rate of [].]

[Not required.]

The Engineer shall specify the analysis and the application rate in pounds per acre.

Check with the local Agricultural Cooperative Extension Office for recommended fertilizer mixture for local conditions.

Paragraphs 904-2.2 and 904-2.3 shall be deleted if not applicable.

904-2.4 Water. The water shall be sufficiently free from oil, acid, alkali, salt, or other harmful materials that would inhibit the growth of grass.

904-2.5 Soil for repairs. The soil for fill and topsoiling of areas to be repaired shall be at least of equal quality to that which exists in areas adjacent to the area to be repaired. The soil shall be relatively free from large stones, roots, stumps, or other materials that will interfere with subsequent sowing of seed, compacting, and establishing turf, and shall be approved by the RPR before being placed.

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

904-3.1 General. Areas to be solid, strip, or spot sodded shall be shown on the plans. Areas requiring special ground surface preparation such as tilling and those areas in a satisfactory condition that are to remain undisturbed shall also be shown on the plans.

Suitable equipment necessary for proper preparation of the ground surface and for the handling and placing of all required materials shall be on hand, in good condition, and shall be approved by the RPR before the various operations are started. The Contractor shall demonstrate to the RPR before starting the various operations that the application of required materials will be made at the specified rates.

904-3.2 Preparing the ground surface. After grading of areas has been completed and before applying fertilizer and limestone, areas to be sodded shall be raked or otherwise cleared of stones larger than 2 inches (50 mm) in any diameter, sticks, stumps, and other debris which might interfere with sodding, growth of grasses, or subsequent maintenance of grass-covered areas. If any damage by erosion or other causes occurs after grading of areas and before beginning the application of fertilizer and ground limestone, the Contractor shall repair such damage. This may include filling gullies, smoothing irregularities, and repairing other incidental damage.

904-3.3 Applying fertilizer and ground limestone. Following ground surface preparation, fertilizer shall be uniformly spread at a rate which will provide not less than the minimum quantity of each fertilizer ingredient, as stated in the special provisions. If use of ground limestone is required, it shall then be spread at a rate that will provide not less than the minimum quantity stated in the special provisions. These materials shall be incorporated into the soil to a depth of not less than 2 inches (50 mm) by discing, raking, or other suitable methods. Any stones larger than 2 inches (50 mm) in any diameter, large clods, roots, and other litter brought to the surface by this operation shall be removed.

904-3.4 Obtaining and delivering sod. After inspection and approval of the source of sod by the RPR, the sod shall be cut with approved sod cutters to such a thickness that after it has been transported and placed on the prepared bed, but before it has been compacted, it shall have a uniform thickness of not less than 2 inches (50 mm). Sod sections or strips shall be cut in uniform widths, not less than 10 inches (250 mm), and in lengths of not less than 18 inches (0.5 m), but of such length as may be readily lifted without breaking, tearing, or loss of soil. Where strips are required, the sod must be rolled without damage with the grass folded inside. The Contractor may be required to mow high grass before cutting sod.

The sod shall be transplanted within 24 hours from the time it is stripped, unless circumstances beyond the Contractor's control make storing necessary. In such cases, sod shall be stacked, kept moist, and protected from exposure to the air and sun and shall be kept from freezing. Sod shall be cut and moved only when the soil moisture conditions are such that favorable results can be expected. Where the soil is too dry, approval to cut sod may be granted only after it has been watered sufficiently to moisten the soil to the depth the sod is to be cut.

904-3.5 Laying sod. Sodding shall be performed only during the seasons when satisfactory results can be expected. Frozen sod shall not be used and sod shall not be placed upon frozen soil. Sod may be transplanted during periods of drought with the approval of the RPR, provided the sod bed is watered to moisten the soil to a depth of at least 4 inches (100 mm) immediately prior to laying the sod.

The sod shall be moist and shall be placed on a moist earth bed. Pitch forks shall not be used to handle sod, and dumping from vehicles shall not be permitted. The sod shall be carefully placed by hand, edge to edge and with staggered joints, in rows at right angles to the slopes, commencing at the base of the area to be sodded and working upward. The sod shall immediately be pressed firmly into contact with the sod bed by tamping or rolling with approved equipment to provide a true and even surface, and ensure knitting without displacement of the sod or deformation of the surfaces of sodded areas. Where the sod may be displaced during sodding operations, the workmen, when replacing it, shall work from ladders or treaded planks to prevent further displacement. Screened soil of good quality shall be used to fill all cracks between sods. The quantity of the fill soil shall not cause smothering of the grass. Where the grades are such that the flow of water will be from paved surfaces across sodded areas, the surface of the soil in the sod after compaction shall be set approximately one inch (25 mm) below the pavement edge. Where the flow will be over the sodded areas and onto the paved surfaces around manholes and inlets, the surface of the soil in the sod after compaction shall be placed flush with pavement edges.

On slopes steeper than one (1) vertical to 2-1/2 horizontal and in v-shaped or flat-bottom ditches or gutters, the sod shall be pegged with wooden pegs not less than 12 inches (300 mm) in length and have a cross-sectional area of not less than 3/4 sq inch (18 sq mm). The pegs shall be driven flush with the surface of the sod.

904-3.6 Watering. Adequate water and watering equipment must be on hand before sodding begins, and sod shall be kept moist until it has become established and its continued growth assured. In all cases, watering shall be done in a manner that will avoid erosion from the application of excessive quantities and will avoid damage to the finished surface.

904-3.7 Establishing turf. The Contractor shall provide general care for the sodded areas as soon as the sod has been laid and shall continue until final inspection and acceptance of the work. All sodded areas shall be protected against traffic or other use by warning signs or barricades approved by the RPR. The Contractor shall mow the sodded areas with approved mowing equipment, depending upon climatic and growth conditions and the needs for mowing specific areas. Weeds or other undesirable vegetation shall be mowed and the clippings raked and removed from the area.

904-3.8 Repairing. When the surface has become gullied or otherwise damaged during the period covered by this contract, the affected areas shall be repaired to re-establish the grade and the condition of the soil, as directed by the RPR, and shall then be sodded as specified in paragraph 904-3.5.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

904-4.1 This item shall be measured on the basis of the area in square yards (square meters) of the surface covered with sod and accepted.

BASIS OF PAYMENT

904-5.1 This item will be paid for on the basis of the contract unit price per square yard (square meter) for sodding, which price shall be full compensation for all labor, equipment, material, staking, and incidentals necessary to satisfactorily complete the items as specified.

Payment will be made under:

Item T-904-5.1 Sodding - per square yard (square meter)

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM International (ASTM)

ASTM C602 Standard Specification for Agricultural Liming Materials

Advisory Circulars (AC)

AC 150/5200-33 Hazardous Wildlife Attractants on or Near Airports

FAA/United States Department of Agriculture

Wildlife Hazard Management at Airports, A Manual for Airport Personnel

END OF ITEM T-904

Page Intentionally Blank

Item T-905 Topsoil

Wildlife Hazard Attractants and Mitigation: Through the appropriate selection of turf materials for the project(s), the Engineer must address the elimination and/or mitigation of materials that could attract hazardous wildlife on and/or around an airport. The Engineer should refer to the following documents and sites for guidance on wildlife hazards at Airports for all projects:

(1) Advisory circular (AC) 150/5200-33, Hazardous Wildlife Attractants on or Near Airports, contains guidance on certain land uses that have the potential to attract hazardous wildlife on or near airports. The AC is available at:
http://www.faa.gov/airports/resources/advisory_circulars/.

(2) Wildlife Hazard Management at Airports, A Manual for Airport Personnel, is available at:
http://www.faa.gov/airports/airport_safety/wildlife/problem/media/2005_FAA_Manual_complete.pdf.

(3) Additional information on wildlife issues can be found on the FAA Guidance on Wildlife website at: http://www.faa.gov/airports/airport_safety/wildlife/guidance

Engineer may specify that topsoil be constructed in accordance with state specifications. All referenced state specifications must be included in project specifications.

DESCRIPTION

905-1.1 This item shall consist of preparing the ground surface for topsoil application, removing topsoil from designated stockpiles or areas to be stripped on the site or from approved sources off the site, and placing and spreading the topsoil on prepared areas in accordance with this specification at the locations shown on the plans or as directed by the RPR.

MATERIALS

905-2.1 Topsoil. Topsoil shall be the surface layer of soil with no admixture of refuse or any material toxic to plant growth, and it shall be reasonably free from subsoil and stumps, roots, brush, stones (2 inches (50 mm) or more in diameter), and clay lumps or similar objects. Brush and other vegetation that will not be incorporated with the soil during handling operations shall be cut and removed. Ordinary sod and herbaceous growth such as grass and weeds are not to be removed, but shall be thoroughly broken up and intermixed with the soil during handling operations. Heavy sod or other cover, which cannot be incorporated into the topsoil by discing or other means, shall be removed. The topsoil or soil mixture, unless otherwise specified or approved, shall have a pH range of approximately 5.5 pH to 7.6 pH, when tested in accordance with the methods of testing of the Association of Official Agricultural Chemists in effect on the date of invitation of bids. The organic content shall be not less than 3% nor more than 20% as determined by the wet-combustion method (chromic acid reduction). There shall be not less than 20%

nor more than 80% of the material passing the 200 mesh (75 µm) sieve as determined by the wash test in accordance with ASTM C117.

Natural topsoil may be amended by the Contractor with approved materials and methods to meet the above specifications.

905-2.2 Inspection and tests. Within 10 days following acceptance of the bid, the RPR shall be notified of the source of topsoil to be furnished by the Contractor. The topsoil shall be inspected to determine if the selected soil meets the requirements specified and to determine the depth to which stripping will be permitted. At this time, the Contractor may be required to take representative soil samples from several locations within the area under consideration and to the proposed stripping depths, for testing purposes as specified in paragraph 905-2.1.

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

905-3.1 General. Areas to be topsoiled shall be shown on the plans. If topsoil is available on the site, the location of the stockpiles or areas to be stripped of topsoil and the stripping depths shall be shown on the plans.

Suitable equipment necessary for proper preparation and treatment of the ground surface, stripping of topsoil, and for the handling and placing of all required materials shall be on hand, in good condition, and approved by the RPR before the various operations are started.

905-3.2 Preparing the ground surface. Immediately prior to dumping and spreading the topsoil on any area, the surface shall be loosened by discs or spike-tooth harrows, or by other means approved by the RPR, to a minimum depth of 2 inches (50 mm) to facilitate bonding of the topsoil to the covered subgrade soil. The surface of the area to be topsoiled shall be cleared of all stones larger than 2 inches (50 mm) in any diameter and all litter or other material which may be detrimental to proper bonding, the rise of capillary moisture, or the proper growth of the desired planting. Limited areas, as shown on the plans, which are too compact to respond to these operations shall receive special scarification.

Grades on the area to be topsoiled, which have been established by others as shown on the plans, shall be maintained in a true and even condition. Where grades have not been established, the areas shall be smooth-graded and the surface left at the prescribed grades in an even and compacted condition to prevent the formation of low places or pockets where water will stand.

905-3.3 Obtaining topsoil. Prior to the stripping of topsoil from designated areas, any vegetation, briars, stumps and large roots, rubbish or stones found on such areas, which may interfere with subsequent operations, shall be removed using methods approved by the RPR. Heavy sod or other cover, which cannot be incorporated into the topsoil by discing or other means shall be removed.

When suitable topsoil is available on the site, the Contractor shall remove this material from the designated areas and to the depth as directed by the RPR. The topsoil shall be spread on areas already tilled and smooth-graded, or stockpiled in areas approved by the RPR. Any topsoil stockpiled by the Contractor shall be rehandled and placed without additional compensation. Any topsoil that has been stockpiled on the site by others, and is required for topsoil purposes, shall be removed and placed by the Contractor. The sites of all stockpiles and areas adjacent thereto which have been disturbed by the Contractor shall be graded if required and put into a condition acceptable for seeding.

When suitable topsoil is secured off the airport site, the Contractor shall locate and obtain the supply, subject to the approval of the RPR. The Contractor shall notify the RPR sufficiently in advance of operations in order that necessary measurements and tests can be made. The Contractor shall remove the topsoil from approved areas and to the depth as directed. The topsoil shall be hauled to the site of the work and placed for spreading, or spread as required. Any topsoil hauled to the site of the work and stockpiled shall be rehandled and placed without additional compensation.

905-3.4 Placing topsoil. The topsoil shall be evenly spread on the prepared areas to a uniform depth of 2 inches (50 mm) after compaction, unless otherwise shown on the plans or stated in the special provisions. Spreading shall not be done when the ground or topsoil is frozen, excessively wet, or otherwise in a condition detrimental to the work. Spreading shall be carried on so that turbing operations can proceed with a minimum of soil preparation or tilling.

After spreading, any large, stiff clods and hard lumps shall be broken with a pulverizer or by other effective means, and all stones or rocks (2 inches (50 mm) or more in diameter), roots, litter, or any foreign matter shall be raked up and disposed of by the Contractor. After spreading is completed, the topsoil shall be satisfactorily compacted by rolling with a cultipacker or by other means approved by the RPR. The compacted topsoil surface shall conform to the required lines, grades, and cross-sections. Any topsoil or other dirt falling upon pavements as a result of hauling or handling of topsoil shall be promptly removed.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

905-4.1 Topsoil obtained on the site shall be measured by the number of cubic yards (cubic meters) of topsoil measured in its original position and stripped or excavated. Topsoil stockpiled by others and removed for topsoil by the Contractor shall be measured by the number of cubic yards (cubic meters) of topsoil measured in the stockpile. Topsoil shall be measured by volume in cubic yards (cubic meters) computed by the method of end areas.

905-4.2 Topsoil obtained off the site shall be measured by the number of cubic yards (cubic meters) of topsoil measured in its original position and stripped or excavated. Topsoil shall be measured by volume in cubic yards (meters) computed by the method of end areas.

BASIS OF PAYMENT

905-5.1 Payment will be made at the contract unit price per cubic yard (cubic meter) for topsoil (obtained on the site). This price shall be full compensation for furnishing all materials and for all preparation, placing, and spreading of the materials, and for all labor, equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete the item.

905-5.2 Payment will be made at the contract unit price per cubic yard (cubic meter) for topsoil (obtained off the site). This price shall be full compensation for furnishing all materials and for all preparation, placing, and spreading of the materials, and for all labor, equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete the item.

Payment will be made under:

Item T-905-5.1	Topsoil (Obtained on Site or Removed from Stockpile - per cubic yard (cubic meter)
Item T-905-5.2	Topsoil (Furnished from Off the Site) - per cubic yard (cubic meter)

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM International (ASTM)

ASTM C117	Materials Finer than 75 μm (No. 200) Sieve in Mineral Aggregates by Washing

Advisory Circulars (AC)

AC 150/5200-33 Hazardous Wildlife Attractants on or Near Airports

FAA/United States Department of Agriculture

Wildlife Hazard Management at Airports, A Manual for Airport Personnel

END OF ITEM T-905

Item T-908 Mulching

Wildlife Hazard Attractants and Mitigation: Through the appropriate selection of turf materials for the project(s), the Engineer must address the elimination and/or mitigation of materials that could attract hazardous wildlife on and/or around an airport. The Engineer should refer to the following documents and sites for guidance on wildlife hazards at Airports for all projects:

(1) Advisory circular (AC) 150/5200-33, Hazardous Wildlife Attractants on or Near Airports, contains guidance on certain land uses that have the potential to attract hazardous wildlife on or near airports. The AC is available at:
http://www.faa.gov/airports/resources/advisory_circulars/.

(2) Wildlife Hazard Management at Airports, A Manual for Airport Personnel, is available at:
http://www.faa.gov/airports/airport_safety/wildlife/problem/media/2005_FAA_Manual_complete.pdf.

(3) Additional information on wildlife issues can be found on the FAA Guidance on Wildlife website at: http://www.faa.gov/airports/airport_safety/wildlife/guidance

It is acceptable to specify that mulching be constructed in accordance with state specifications. All referenced state specifications must be included in project specifications. A modification to standards is not required.

DESCRIPTION

908-1.1 This item shall consist of furnishing, hauling, placing, and securing mulch on surfaces indicated on the plans or designated by the RPR.

MATERIALS

908-2.1 Mulch material. Acceptable mulch shall be the materials listed below or any approved locally available material that is similar to those specified. Mulch shall be free from noxious weeds, mold, and other deleterious materials. Mulch materials, which contain matured seed of species that would volunteer and be detrimental to the proposed overseeding, or to surrounding farm land, will not be acceptable. Straw or other mulch material which is fresh and/or excessively brittle, or which is in such an advanced stage of decomposition as to smother or retard the planted grass, will not be acceptable.

[**a. Hay.** Hay shall be native hay in an air-dry condition and of proper consistency for placing with commercial mulch blowing equipment. Hay shall be sterile, containing no fertile seed.

b. Straw. Straw shall be the stalks from threshed plant residue of oats, wheat, barley, rye, or rice from which grain has been removed. Furnish in air-dry condition and of proper consistency for placing with commercial mulch blowing equipment. Straw shall contain no fertile seed.

c. Hay mulch containing seed. Hay mulch shall be mature hay containing viable seed of native grasses or other desirable species stated in the special provisions or as approved by the RPR. The hay shall be cut and handled so as to preserve the maximum quantity of viable seed. Hay mulch that cannot be hauled and spread immediately after cutting shall be placed in weather-resistant stacks or baled and stored in a dry location until used.

d. Manufactured mulch. Cellulose-fiber or wood-pulp mulch shall be products commercially available for use in spray applications.]

e. Asphalt binder. Asphalt binder material shall conform to the requirements of ASTM D977, Type SS-1 or RS-1.

Check with the local Agriculture Conservation Extension Office to determine choice of mulch most suitable for the project area. Specify only one type of mulch and delete the other mulches.

The United States Department of Agriculture (USDA) / Animal and Plant Health Inspection Service (APHIS) / Wildlife Service staff should be consulted to ensure mulch type selected is not a hazardous wildlife attractant.

908-2.2 Inspection. The RPR shall be notified of sources and quantities of mulch materials available and the Contractor shall furnish him with representative samples of the materials to be used 30 days before delivery to the project. These samples may be used as standards with the approval of the RPR and any materials brought on the site that do not meet these standards shall be rejected.

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

908-3.1 Mulching. Before spreading mulch, all large clods, stumps, stones, brush, roots, and other foreign material shall be removed from the area to be mulched. Mulch shall be applied immediately after seeding. The spreading of the mulch may be by hand methods, blower, or other mechanical methods, provided a uniform covering is obtained.

Mulch material shall be furnished, hauled, and evenly applied on the area shown on the plans or designated by the RPR. Straw or hay shall be spread over the surface to a uniform thickness at the rate of 2 to 3 tons per acre (1800 - 2700 kg per acre) to provide a loose depth of not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 cm) nor more than 3 inches (75 mm). Other organic material shall be spread at the rate directed by the RPR. Mulch may be blown on the slopes and the use of cutters in the equipment for this purpose will be permitted to the extent that at least 95% of the mulch in place on the slope shall be 6 inches (150 mm) or more in length. When mulches applied by the blowing method are cut, the loose depth in place shall be not less than one inch (25 mm) nor more than 2 inches (50 mm).

908-3.2 Securing mulch. The mulch shall be held in place by light disking, a very thin covering of topsoil, pins, stakes, wire mesh, asphalt binder, or other adhesive material approved by the RPR. Where

mulches have been secured by either of the asphalt binder methods, it will not be permissible to walk on the slopes after the binder has been applied. When an application of asphalt binder material is used to secure the mulch, the Contractor must take every precaution to guard against damaging or disfiguring structures or property on or adjacent to the areas worked and will be held responsible for any such damage resulting from the operation.

If the “peg and string” method is used, the mulch shall be secured by the use of stakes or wire pins driven into the ground on 5-foot (1.5-m) centers or less. Binder twine shall be strung between adjacent stakes in straight lines and crisscrossed diagonally over the mulch, after which the stakes shall be firmly driven nearly flush to the ground to draw the twine down tight onto the mulch.

908-3.3 Care and repair.

a. The Contractor shall care for the mulched areas until final acceptance of the project. Care shall consist of providing protection against traffic or other use by placing warning signs, as approved by the RPR, and erecting any barricades that may be shown on the plans before or immediately after mulching has been completed on the designated areas.

b. The Contractor shall be required to repair or replace any mulch that is defective or becomes damaged until the project is finally accepted. When, in the judgment of the RPR, such defects or damages are the result of poor workmanship or failure to meet the requirements of the specifications, the cost of the necessary repairs or replacement shall be borne by the Contractor.

c. If the “asphalt spray” method is used, all mulched surfaces shall be sprayed with asphalt binder material so that the surface has a uniform appearance. The binder shall be uniformly applied to the mulch at the rate of approximately 8 gallons (32 liters) per 1,000 square feet (100 sq m), or as directed by the RPR, with a minimum of 6 gallons (24 liters) and a maximum of 10 gallons (40 liters) per 1,000 square feet (100 sq m) depending on the type of mulch and the effectiveness of the binder securing it. Asphalt binder material may be sprayed on the mulched slope areas from either the top or the bottom of the slope. An approved spray nozzle shall be used. The nozzle shall be operated at a distance of not less than 4 feet (1.2 m) from the surface of the mulch and uniform distribution of the asphalt material shall be required. A pump or an air compressor of adequate capacity shall be used to ensure uniform distribution of the asphalt material.

d. If the “asphalt mix” method is used, the mulch shall be applied by blowing, and the asphalt binder material shall be sprayed into the mulch as it leaves the blower. The binder shall be uniformly applied to the mulch at the rate of approximately 8 gallons (32 liters) per 1,000 square feet (100 sq m) or as directed by the RPR, with a minimum of 6 gallons (24 liters) and a maximum of 10 gallons (40 liters) per 1,000 square feet (100 sq m) depending on the type of mulch and the effectiveness of the binder securing it.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

908-4.1 Mulching shall be measured in square yards (square meters) on the basis of the actual surface area acceptably mulched.

BASIS OF PAYMENT

908-5.1 Payment will be made at the contract unit price per square yard (square meter) for mulching. The price shall be full compensation for furnishing all materials and for placing and anchoring the materials, and for all labor, equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete the item.

Payment will be made under:

Item T-908-5.1	Mulching - per square yard (square meter)

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM International (ASTM)

ASTM D977 Standard Specification for Emulsified Asphalt

Advisory Circulars (AC)

AC 150/5200-33 Hazardous Wildlife Attractants on or Near Airports

FAA/United States Department of Agriculture

Wildlife Hazard Management at Airports, A Manual for Airport Personnel

END OF ITEM T-908

Part 13 – Lighting Installation

Item L-101 Airport Rotating Beacons

DESCRIPTION

101-1.1 This item shall consist of [removal of existing beacon;] furnishing and installing new airport rotating beacons. The work shall include mounting, leveling, wiring, painting, maintaining, and testing of the beacon. In addition, this item also includes all materials and incidentals necessary to place the beacon in a serviceable condition (as a completed unit) to the satisfaction of the RPR. This item shall include a mounting platform if specified in the plans.

When removal of an existing beacon and associated equipment is required as a part of the project, the Engineer will edit specification as necessary to cover removal, disposal, and ownership. Include necessary details and information on the plans specifications.

EQUIPMENT AND MATERIALS

101-2.1 General.

a. Airport lighting equipment and materials covered by advisory circulars (ACs) shall be certified in AC 150/5345-53, Airport Lighting Equipment Certification Program (ALECP) and listed in the ALECP Addendum.

b. All other equipment and materials covered by other referenced specifications shall be subject to acceptance through manufacturer's certification of compliance with the applicable specification when requested by the RPR.

c. Manufacturer's certifications shall not relieve the Contractor of the responsibility to provide materials that are per these specifications. Materials supplied and/or installed that do not comply with these specifications shall be removed (when directed by the RPR) and replaced with materials, that are per these specifications, at the Contractor's cost.

d. All materials and equipment used to construct this item shall be submitted to the RPR for approval prior to ordering the equipment. Submittals consisting of marked catalog sheets or shop drawings shall be provided. Submittal data shall be presented in a clear, precise and thorough manner. Original catalog sheets are preferred. Photocopies are acceptable provided they are as good a quality as the original. Clearly mark each copy to identify the products or models applicable to this project. Indicate all optional equipment and delete any non-pertinent data. Submittals for components or electrical equipment and systems shall identify the equipment to which they apply on each submittal sheet. Markings shall be made bold and clear with arrows or circles (highlighting is not acceptable). The Contractor is solely responsible for delays in the project that accrue directly or indirectly from late submissions or resubmissions of submittals.

e. The data submitted shall be sufficient, in the opinion of the RPR, to determine compliance with the Contract Documents plans and specifications. The Contractor's submittals shall be [neatly bound

in a properly sized 3-ring binder] [in an electronic pdf file format], tabbed by specification section. The RPR reserves the right to reject any and all equipment, materials or procedures that do not meet the system design and the standards and codes, specified in this document.

f. All equipment and materials furnished and installed in this section shall be guaranteed against defects in materials and workmanship for at least [twelve (12) months] from the date of final acceptance by the Owner. The defective materials and/or equipment shall be repaired or replaced, at the Owner's discretion, with no additional cost to the Owner.

The Engineer should specify the form in which submittals are to be received and the number of copies.

The length of time for guarantee of materials and workmanship should be as stated in the contract between the Owner and Contractor and the contract special provisions.

101-2.2 Beacon. The beacon shall be a Type [] Class [] beacon meeting the requirements of AC 150/5345-12, Specification for Airport and Heliport Beacons.

Engineer shall select the Type and Class of beacon required.

101-2.3 Beacon installation. Installation shall be as shown on the plans. Provide two lamp sets as spares.

The Engineer must include installation details on the plans. See AC 150/5340-30, Design and Installation Details for Airport Visual Aids, for airport beacon and AC 150/5390-2, Heliport Design for heliport beacon installation details.

101-2.4 Panel boards and breakers. Panel boards and breakers shall conform to the requirements of Federal Specification W-P-115, Panel, Power Distribution.

101-2.5 Weatherproof cabinets. The weatherproof cabinets shall conform to National Electrical Manufacturers Association Standards (NEMA) and shall be constructed of steel not less than No. 16 United States Standard (USS) gauge.

101-2.6 Electrical wire. For ratings up to 600 volts, moisture and heat resistant thermoplastic wire conforming to Commercial Item Description A-A-59544A Type THWN-2 shall be used. The wires shall be the type, size, number of conductors, and voltage shown in the plans or in the proposal.

101-2.7 Conduit. Rigid steel conduit and fittings shall be per Underwriters Laboratories Standards 6, 514B, and 1242.

101-2.8 Paint.

a. Priming paint for non-galvanized metal surfaces shall be a high solids alkyd primer compatible with the manufacturer's recommendations for the intermediate or topcoat.

b. Priming paint for galvanized metal surfaces shall be a zinc-rich epoxy primer paint per MIL-DTL-24441/19C, Formula 159, Type III. Use MIL-24441 thinner per paint manufacturer's recommendations.

c. Orange paint for the body and the finish coats on metal and wood surfaces shall consist of a ready-mixed non-fading paint meeting the requirements of Master Painter's Institute (MPI) Reference #9 (gloss). The color shall be per Federal Standard 595, International Orange Number 12197.

d. White paint for body and finish coats on metal and wood surfaces shall be ready-mixed paint per the Master Painter's Institute, Reference #9, Exterior Alkyd, Gloss, volatile organic content (VOC) Range E2.

e. Priming paint for wood surfaces shall be mixed on the job by thinning the above-specified orange or white paint with 1/2 pint (0.24 liter (l)) of raw linseed oil to each gallon (liter).

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

Include project specific installation information from AC 150/5345-30 as required.

101-3.1. Placing the beacon. The beacon shall be mounted as shown in the plans.

101-3.2 Hoisting and mounting. The beacon shall be hoisted to the mounting platform by using suitable slings and hoisting tackle. Before fastening the beacon to the mounting platform, the mounting holes shall be checked for correct spacing. Beacon base or mounting legs shall not be strained or forced out of position to fit incorrect spacing of mounting holes. The beacon base shall be raised first, set in position, and bolted in place. The drum shall then be raised and assembled to the base.

101-3.3 Leveling. After the beacon has been mounted, it shall be accurately leveled following the manufacturer's instructions. The leveling shall be checked in the presence of the RPR and shall be to the RPR's satisfaction.

101-3.4 Servicing. Before placing the beacon in operation, the Contractor shall check the manufacturer's manual for proper servicing requirements. Follow the manufacturer's servicing instructions for each size of beacon.

101-3.5 Beam adjustment. After the beacon has been mounted and leveled, the elevation of the beam shall be adjusted. The final beam adjustments shall be made at night so that results can be readily observed. The beams shall be adjusted to the elevation directed by the RPR or as shown in the plans. See AC 150/5340-30 for additional information about airport beacon beam adjustment.

101-3.6 Beacon mounting platform. Where the beacon is to be mounted at a location other than the beacon tower and where a special mounting platform is required, the construction of the mounting platform and any necessary lightning protection equipment shall be per the details shown in the plans.

101-3.7 Wiring. The Contractor shall furnish all necessary labor and materials and shall make complete above ground electrical connections per the wiring diagram furnished with the project plans. The electrical installation shall conform to the requirements of the latest edition of National Fire Protection Association, NFPA-70, National Electrical Code (NEC).

If underground cable for the power feed from the transformer vault to the beacon site and duct for this cable installation is required, the cable, ground rods and duct shall be installed as shown on the plans.

If shown on the plans, the Contractor shall connect the tell-tale relay mechanism in the beacon to energize the tower obstruction light circuit when failure of the beacon service (primary) lamp occurs.

If lightning protection is specified in the plans, it shall be installed per Item L-103, Airport Beacon Towers, paragraph 103-2.3.

101-3.8 Panel and cabinet. If shown on the plans, the Contractor shall furnish and install at the top of the beacon tower or mounting platform a circuit-breaker panel consisting of four 15-ampere breakers mounted in a weather-proof cabinet to provide separate protection for the circuits to the beacon lamps, motor, obstruction lights, and other equipment. The cabinet shall be located on the side of the beacon platform as shown on the plans or as directed by the RPR.

101-3.9 Conduit. All exposed wiring shall be run in not less than 3/4 inch (19 mm) galvanized rigid steel conduit. Outdoor rated, liquid-tight, flexible metal conduit may be used for final connection at the beacon equipment. No conduit shall be installed on top of a beacon platform floor. All conduits shall be installed to provide for drainage. If mounted on a steel beacon tower, the conduit shall be fastened to the tower members with Wraplock® straps (or equivalent), clamps, or approved fasteners, spaced approximately 5 feet (1.5 m) apart. The conduit shall be fastened to wooden structures with galvanized pipe straps and with galvanized wood screws not less than No. 8 or less than 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) long. There shall be at least two fastenings for each 10 feet (3 m) length.

101-3.10 Booster transformer. [The installation shall be as indicated in the plans and described in the specifications.] [Not used.]

Refer to AC 150/5340-30 for requirements. A booster transformer, if required, to compensate for voltage drop to the beacon shall be installed in a suitable weatherproof housing under or on the tower platform or at the base of the tower.

If the booster transformer is required for installation remote from the beacon, edit measurement and payment specifications as required.

101-3.11 Photoelectric control. If shown in the plans or specified in the job specifications, the Contractor shall furnish and install an automatic control switch at the location indicated in the plans. The switch shall be a photoelectric type. It shall be a standard commercially available unit that will energize when the illumination on a vertical surface facing North decreases to 25 to 35 foot-candles (269 to 377 lux). The photoelectric switch should de-energize when the illumination rises to 50 to 60 foot-candles (538 to 646 lux). The photoelectronic switch shall be installed, connected, and adjusted per the manufacturer's instructions.

101-3.12 Obstruction lights. Unless otherwise specified, the Contractor shall install on the top of the beacon tower or mounting platform two L-810 obstruction lights on opposite corners. These lights shall be mounted on conduit extensions to a height of not less than 4 inches (100 mm) above the top of the beacon.

101-3.13 Painting. If construction of a wooden mounting platform is stipulated in the proposal as part of this item, all wooden parts of the platform shall be given one priming coat of white or aviation-orange paint after fabrication but before erection and one body and one finish coat of international-orange paint after erection. Steel mounting platforms shall be given one priming coat of corrosion-inhibiting primer before erection and one body and one finish coat of international-orange paint after erection. All equipment installed under this contract and exposed to the weather shall be given one body and one finish coat of international-orange (per Federal Standard 595, Number 12197) or white paint as required. This shall include the beacon (except glass surfaces), beacon base, breaker cabinet, all conduit, and transformer cases. It shall not include lightning protection system air terminals or obstruction light globes.

Apply the paint uniformly at the proper consistency. The finished paint shall be free from sags, holidays, and smears. Each coat of paint shall be given ample time to dry and harden before the next coat of paint is applied. A minimum of three (3) days shall be allowed for drying on wood surfaces, and a minimum of four (4) days shall be allowed for drying on metal surfaces. Painting shall not be performed in cold, damp, foggy, dusty, or frosty atmospheres, or when the air temperature is below 40°F (4°C), nor started when the weather forecast indicates such conditions for the day.

All surfaces shall be cleaned before painting. The surfaces shall be dry and free from scale, grease, rust, dust, and dirt. All knots in wood surfaces shall be covered with shellac immediately before applying the priming coat of paint. Nail holes and permissible imperfections shall be filled with putty. The ready-mixed paint shall be thinned for the priming and body coats per the manufacturer's recommendations. In the absence of such recommendations, the following shall apply:

a. Body coats (for both wood and steel surfaces) - add 1/2 pint (0.24 liter) of turpentine to each gallon (liter) of ready-mixed paint for body coats.

b. Finish coats (for both wood and steel surfaces) the ready-mixed paint shall be used as it comes from the container for finish coats.

101-3.14 Testing. The beacon installation shall be fully tested as a completed unit prior to acceptance. These tests shall include operation of the lamp-changer and performing insulation resistance and voltage readings. The insulation resistance to ground of the beacon power supply circuit shall be not less than 100 megohms when measured ungrounded. The Contractor must furnish testing equipment. Tests shall be conducted in the presence of the RPR and shall be to the RPR's satisfaction.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

101-4.1 The quantity to be paid for shall be the number of beacons installed as completed units in place, accepted, and ready for operation.

BASIS OF PAYMENT

101-5.1 Payment will be made at the contract unit price for each completed and accepted job. This price shall be full compensation for [removal of existing beacon;] furnishing all materials and for all preparation, assembly, and installation of these materials, and for all labor, equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete this item.

Payment will be made under:

Item L-101-5.1 [List type, style, size] Airport Rotating Beacon, in place - per
unit

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

Advisory Circulars (AC)

AC 150/5345-7	Specification for L-824 Underground Cable for Airport Lighting Circuits
AC 150/5345-12	Specification for Airport and Heliport Beacons
AC 150/5340-30	Design and Installation Details for Airport Visual Aids

AC 150/5345-53 Airport Lighting Equipment Certification Program

AC 150/5390-2 Heliport Design

Commercial Item Description

A-A-59544A Cable and Wire, Electrical (Power, Fixed Installation)

Federal Specification (FED SPEC)

FED SPEC W-P-115 Panel, Power Distribution

Federal Standard (FED STD)

FED STD 595 Colors Used in Government Procurement

Master Painter Institute (MPI)

MPI Reference #9 Alkyd, Exterior, Gloss (MPI Gloss Level 6)

Mil Spec

MIL-DTL-24441C/19C Paint, Epoxy-Polyamide, Zinc Primer, Formula 159, Type III

National Fire Protection Association (NFPA)

NFPA-70 National Electric Code (NEC)

NFPA-780 Standard for the Installation of Lightning Protection Systems

Underwriters Laboratories (UL)

UL Standard 6 Electrical Rigid Metal Conduit – Steel

UL Standard 514B Conduit, Tubing, and Cable Fittings

UL Standard 1242 Electrical Intermediate Metal Conduit - Steel

END OF ITEM L-101

Item L-103 Airport Beacon Towers

DESCRIPTION

103-1.1 This item shall consist of [removal of existing beacon tower;] furnishing and installing an airport beacon tower of the type shown in the plans, per these specifications. This work shall include the clearing of the site, erection of the tower, installation of lightning protection, painting, and all incidentals necessary to place it in operating condition as a completed unit to the satisfaction of the RPR. See advisory circular (AC) 150/5340-30 for additional installation information about airport beacon towers.

When removal of an existing beacon tower and associated equipment is required as a part of the project, the Engineer will edit specification as necessary to cover removal, disposal, and ownership. Include necessary details and information on the plans specifications.

EQUIPMENT AND MATERIALS

103-2.1 General.

a. All equipment and materials covered by referenced specifications shall be subject to acceptance through manufacturer's certification of compliance with the applicable specification when requested by the RPR.

b. Manufacturer's certifications shall not relieve the Contractor of the responsibility to provide materials per these specifications. Materials supplied and/or installed that do not comply with these specifications shall be removed (when directed by the RPR) and replaced with materials, that are per these specifications, at the Contractor's cost.

c. All materials and equipment used to construct this item shall be submitted to the RPR for approval prior to ordering the equipment. Submittals consisting of marked catalog sheets or shop drawings shall be provided. Submittal data shall be presented in a clear, precise and thorough manner. Original catalog sheets are preferred. Photocopies are acceptable provided they are as good a quality as the original. Clearly and boldly mark each copy to identify products or models applicable to this project. Indicate all optional equipment and delete any non-pertinent data. Submittals to components of electrical equipment and systems shall identify the equipment for which they apply on each submittal sheet. Markings shall be made bold and clear with arrows or circles (highlighting is not acceptable). The Contractor is solely responsible for delays in the project that may accrue directly or indirectly from late submissions or resubmissions of submittals.

d. The data submitted shall be sufficient, in the opinion of the RPR, to determine compliance with the plans and specifications. The Contractor's submittals shall be [neatly bound in a properly sized 3-ring binder] [in an electronic pdf file format], tabbed by specification section. The RPR reserves the right to reject any and all equipment, materials or procedures that do not meet the system design and the standards and codes, specified in this document.

e. All equipment and materials furnished and installed under this section shall be guaranteed against defects in materials and workmanship for at least [twelve (12) months] from the date of final acceptance by the Owner. The defective materials and/or equipment shall be repaired or replaced, at the Owner's discretion, with no additional cost to the Owner.

The Engineer should specify the form in which submittals are to be received and number of copies.

The length of time for guarantee of materials and workmanship should be as stated in the contract between the Owner and Contractor and the contract special provisions.

103-2.2 Tower. The beacon tower shall be [___].

Refer to AC 150/5340-30, Design and Installation Details for Airport Visual Aids, Chapter 6.

103-2.3 Lightning protection. Lightning protection shall comply with NFPA-780, Standard for the Installation of Lightning Protection Systems. All materials shall comply with NFPA 780 Class II material requirements regardless of the tower height.

103-2.4 Paint.

a. Priming paint for galvanized steel towers shall be zinc dust-zinc oxide primer paint per MIL-DTL-24441C/19B. Use MIL-24441 thinner per paint manufacturer's recommendations.

b. Priming paint for non-galvanized steel towers shall be a high solids alkyd primer per the Master Painter's Institute (MPI), Reference #9, Exterior Alkyd, Gloss.

c. Orange paint for the body and the finish coats on metal and wood surfaces shall consist of a ready-mixed non-fading paint MPI Reference #9 (gloss). The color shall be per Federal Standards 595, International Orange Number 12197.

d. White paint for a steel tower shall be ready-mixed paint per MPI #8.

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

103-3.1 Clearing and grading. The site on which the beacon tower is to be erected shall be cleared and leveled. All trees and brush shall be removed from the area within a distance of 25 feet (7.5 m) from the tower or as called for in the plans. Stumps shall be removed to a depth of 18 inches (0.5 m) below finished grade and the excavation filled with earth and tamped. If a transformer vault or other structure is included as part of the installation, the area shall be cleared to a distance of 25 feet (7.5 m) from these structures. The ground near the tower shall be leveled to permit the operation of mowing machines. The leveling shall extend at least 2 feet (60 cm) outside the tower legs. All debris removed from the tower site

shall be disposed of by the Contractor to the satisfaction of the RPR and per federal, state, or local regulations.

103-3.2 Excavation and fill. Excavation for the tower footings shall be carried to a minimum of 4 inches (100 mm) below the footing depth. The excess excavation below the footing depth shall then be backfilled with gravel or crushed stone and compacted to the required level. The footing plates shall be installed, and a thickness of not less than 18 inches (0.5 m) of the same gravel or crushed stone shall be placed immediately above the footing plates in layers of not over 6 inches (150 mm). Each layer above the footing plates shall be thoroughly tamped in place. The remainder of the backfill may be of excavated earth placed in layers not to exceed 6 inches (150 mm). Each layer shall be thoroughly compacted by tamping.

Where solid rock is encountered, which prevents the carrying of the foundation legs to the required depth but which is of sufficient strength to use hold-down bolts, the tower anchor posts shall be cut off at the required length and the hold-down bolts shall be installed as indicated in the plans with the approval of the RPR. Each tower leg shall be anchored to the rock by means of two 7/8-inch (22 mm) diameter by 3 feet (1 m) long expansion or split bolts and shall be grouted with neat Portland cement into holes drilled into the natural rock. Except as required for rock foundations, the footing members shall not be cut off or shortened. If excavated material is of such consistency that it will not readily compact when backfilled, the RPR may order the excavation backfilled with concrete or other suitable material.

The concrete footing for tubular beacon towers shall be installed per the manufacturer's recommendations. Portions of the footing in the topsoil layer shall not be included in the footing height.

103-3.3 Erection. Tower erection as shown on the plans and detailed erection drawings furnished by the manufacturer shall be strictly followed during construction. All towers shall be erected in sections from the ground up unless otherwise specified. For final assembly, all bolts and fastenings shall be installed, and the structure shall be plumb, true, square, and level. Nuts shall be taken up to a firm bearing after which the bolts shall, if necessary, be cut to proper length to protrude three full threads. Approved locknuts shall be placed on each bolt over the regular nut. Ladder bolts shall be inserted with the head to the outer face of the tower. Diagonal, leg, and handrail bolts shall be installed with nuts on the outer face of the tower, unless otherwise specified. Bent parts shall be straightened before erection without damage to the protective coating. Surfaces abraded or bared of protective coating shall be painted with the proper priming paint per these specifications.

The Contractor shall install the ladder on the side of the tower adjacent to the driveway or most accessible approach to the tower. Tubular beacon towers shall be erected per the manufacturer's recommendations. The safety cable shall be located on the side of the tower adjacent to the driveway or most accessible approach to the tower.

103-3.4 Lightning protection. The Contractor shall furnish and install a Class II lightning protection system in accordance with NFPA 780. Ground rods and underground cables shall be installed in accordance with the plans.

Down-conductor cables shall be securely fastened to the surface of the tower leg at 5 feet (1.5 m) intervals with suitable bronze fasteners having bronze or noncorrosive metal bolts. Sharp turns or bends in the down conductor will not be permitted.

All connections of cable to cable, cable to air terminals, and cable to ground plates or rods shall be made with solder-less connectors or noncorrosive metal approved by the RPR and shall be of substantial construction.

The down-conductor cable shall be securely attached to ground rods or plates placed at least 2 feet (60 cm) away from the tower foundations. The ground rod shall be driven into the ground so that the top is at

least 6 inches (150 mm) below grade. The down-conductor shall be firmly attached to the ground plate or rod by means of an exothermic weld only. Plates shall be embedded in an area of permanent moisture.

The complete lightning protection installation shall be accomplished to the satisfaction of the RPR. The resistance to ground of any part of the lightning protection system shall not exceed 25 ohms. If a single rod grounding electrode has a resistance to earth of over 25 ohms, then install one supplemental rod not less than 10 feet from the first rod. If desired resistance to ground levels are still not achieved, see FAA-STD-019 for guidance on the application of coke breeze.

103-3.5 Painting. The Contractor shall furnish all materials and labor for painting the beacon tower. The color scheme for the steel tower shall be as shown in the plans.

a. Parts to be painted. Tower parts (except those parts to be exposed to earth) shall not be treated or primed before erection. All tower parts placed below ground level or within 12 inches (300 mm) above ground level shall be given two coats of approved asphalt paint.

Apply the proper consistency of paint uniformly. The finished paint shall be free from sags, holidays, and smears. Division lines between colors shall be sharply defined. Each coat of paint shall be given ample time to dry and harden before the next coat is applied. A minimum of four (4) days shall be allowed for drying on metal surfaces. Painting shall not be done in cold, damp, foggy, or dusty atmospheres, or when air temperature is below 40°F (4°C), nor started when the weather forecast indicates such conditions for the day.

All surfaces shall be cleaned before painting. The surfaces shall be dry and free from scale, grease, rust, dust, and dirt when paint is applied.

The number of coats of paint applied shall be per the following instructions:

b. Steel towers, galvanized. One priming coat of zinc dust-zinc oxide primer after erection and one body and one finish of white or orange paint (as required by the color scheme) shall be applied after erection.

c. Steel towers, not galvanized. One priming coat of corrosion-inhibiting primer and one body and one finish coat of white or orange paint (as required by the color scheme) shall be applied after erection.

The above specified orange and white ready-mixed paints shall be thinned for the body coats per the manufacturer's recommendations. In the absence of such recommendations, the following shall apply:

d. Body coats. Add not more than 1/2 pint (0.24 liters) of turpentine to each gallon (liter) of ready-mixed paint for body coats.

e. Finish coats. The ready-mixed paint shall be used as it comes from the container for finish coats.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

103-4.1 The quantity to be paid for under this item shall be the number of airport beacon towers installed as completed units in place, accepted, and ready for operation.

BASIS OF PAYMENT

103 5.1 Payment will be made at the contract unit price for each completed and accepted job. This price shall be full compensation for of [removal of existing beacon tower;] furnishing all materials and for all preparation, assembly, and installation of these materials, and for all labor, equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete this item.

Payment will be made under:

Item L-103-5.1 [List type here] Beacon Tower and Foundation, in Place per unit

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

Advisory Circulars (AC)

AC 150/5340-30 Installation and Design Details for Airport Visual Aids

Master Painter's Institute (MPI)

MPI Reference #8 Alkyd, Exterior, Flat (MPI Gloss Level 1)

MPI Reference #9 Alkyd, Exterior, Gloss (MPI Gloss Level 6)

Federal Standard (FED STD)

FED STD 595 Colors Used in Government Procurement

Mil Standard

MIL-DTL-24441C/19B Paint, Epoxy-Polyamide, Zinc Primer, Formula 159, Type III

National Fire Protection Association (NFPA)

NFPA-780 Standard for the Installation of Lightning Protection Systems

END OF ITEM L-103

Page Intentionally Blank

Item L-107 Airport Wind Cones

DESCRIPTION

107-1.1 This item shall consist of [removal of existing airport wind cones;] furnishing and installing an airport wind cone per these specifications and per the dimensions, design, and details shown in the plans.

The work shall include the furnishing and installation of a support for mounting the wind cone, the specified interconnecting wire, and a concrete foundation. The item shall also include all cable connections, conduit and conduit fittings, the furnishing and installation of all lamps, ground rod and ground connection, the testing of the installation, and all incidentals necessary to place the wind cone in operation (as a completed unit) to the satisfaction of the RPR.

When removal of an existing airport wind cone and associated equipment is required as a part of the project, the Engineer will edit specification as necessary to cover removal, disposal, and ownership. Include necessary details and information on the plans specifications.

EQUIPMENT AND MATERIALS

107-2.1 General.

a. Airport lighting equipment and materials covered by advisory circulars (ACs) shall be certified in AC 150/5345-53, Airport Lighting Equipment Certification Program (ALECP) and listed in the ALECP Addendum.

b. All other equipment and materials covered by other referenced specifications shall be subject to acceptance through manufacturer's certification of compliance with the applicable specification when requested by the RPR.

c. Manufacturer's certifications shall not relieve the Contractor of the responsibility to provide materials per these specifications. Materials supplied and/or installed that do not comply with these specifications shall be removed (when directed by the RPR) and replaced with materials that comply with these specifications, at the Contractor's cost.

d. All materials and equipment used to construct this item shall be submitted to the RPR for approval prior to ordering the equipment. Submittals consisting of marked catalog sheets or shop drawings shall be provided. Submittal data shall be presented in a clear, precise and thorough manner. Original catalog sheets are preferred. Photocopies are acceptable provided they are as good a quality as the original. Clearly and boldly mark each copy to identify products or models applicable to this project. Indicate all optional equipment and delete any non-pertinent data. Submittals for components of electrical equipment and systems shall identify the equipment to which they apply on each submittal sheet. Markings shall be made bold and clear with arrows or circles (highlighting is not acceptable). Contractor is solely responsible for delays in the project that may accrue directly or indirectly from late submissions or resubmissions of submittals.

e. The data submitted shall be sufficient, in the opinion of the RPR, to determine compliance with the plans and specifications. [The Contractor's submittals shall be neatly bound in a properly sized 3-ring binder, tabbed by specification section.] [in electronic pdf format, tabbed by specification section.] The RPR reserves the right to reject any and all equipment, materials or procedures, that do not meet the system design and the standards and codes, specified in this document.

f. All equipment and materials furnished and installed under this section shall be guaranteed against defects in materials and workmanship for at least [twelve (12) months] from the date of final acceptance by the Owner. The defective materials and/or equipment shall be repaired or replaced, at the Owner's discretion, with no additional cost to the Owner.

The Engineer should specify the form in which submittals are to be received and number of copies.

The length of time for guarantee of materials and workmanship should be as stated in the contract between the Owner and Contractor and the contract special provisions.

See EB-67D for information on LED warranty. EB-67D states "All LED light fixtures with the exception of obstruction lighting (AC 150/5345-43) must be warranted by the manufacturer for a minimum of 4 years after date of installation inclusive of all electronics." Obstruction lighting warranty is set by the individual manufacturer.

107-2.2 Wind cones. The [primary] [supplemental] wind cone assembly shall be Type [___], Style [___], Size [___].

Refer to AC 150/5345-27, Specification for Wind Cone Assemblies.

The illuminated wind cone must present a constant brightness to the pilot. The source of power for the wind cone circuit must be identified. Where a constant voltage is available, the wind cone may be connected directly to the constant voltage circuit. Where the series lighting circuit is used as a power source to the wind cone, a 6.6 amp constant current input power must be specified. The wind cone illumination must remain at a constant intensity regardless of the current step selected for other lighting systems on the circuit. See "Appendix F Application Notes" of AC 150/5340-30 for further concepts for maintaining component lighting intensity independent of current step.

Specify the wind cone and power adapter combination recommended by the manufacturer when the power source for the wind cone circuit will be the series lighting circuit.

107-2.3 Electrical wire and cable. Cable rated up to 5,000 volts in conduit shall conform to AC 150/5345-7, Specification for L-824 Underground Electrical Cable for Airport Lighting Circuits. For ratings up to 600 volts, moisture and heat resistant thermoplastic wire conforming to Commercial Item

Description A-A-59544A Type THWN-2 shall be used. The wires shall be of the type, size, number of conductors, and voltage shown in the plans or in the proposal.

107-2.4 Conduit. Rigid steel conduit and fittings shall conform to the requirements of Underwriters Laboratories Standards 6, 514B, and 1242.

107-2.5 Plastic conduit (for use below grade only). Plastic conduit and fittings shall be per the following:

- UL 514B covers W-C-1094 - Conduit fittings all types, Classes 1 thru 3 and 6 thru 10
- UL 514C covers W-C-1094 - all types, Class 5 junction box and cover in plastic (polyvinyl chloride (PVC))
- UL 651 covers W-C-1094 - Rigid PVC Conduit, types I and II, Class 4
- UL 651A covers W-C-1094 - Rigid PVC Conduit and high-density polyethylene (HDPE) Conduit type III and Class 4

Underwriters Laboratories Standard UL-651 shall be one of the following, as shown in the plans:

- a. Type I—Schedule 40 PVC suitable for underground use either direct-buried or encased in concrete.
- b. Type II—Schedule 40 PVC suitable for either above ground or underground use.

Plastic conduit adhesive shall be a solvent cement manufactured specifically for the purpose of gluing the type of plastic conduit and fitting.

107-2.6 Concrete. [The concrete for foundations shall be proportioned, placed, and cured per Item P-610, Concrete for Miscellaneous Structures.]

If P-610 is not used elsewhere on the project, it is acceptable to replace this paragraph with the following:

Concrete foundations shall be proportioned, placed, and cured per state department of transportation structural concrete with minimum 25% Type F fly ash, and a minimum allowable compressive strength of 4,000 psi (28 MPa).

107-2.7 Paint.

a. Priming paint for non-galvanized metal surfaces shall be a high solids alkyd primer compatible with the manufacturer's recommendations for the intermediate or topcoat.

b. Priming paint for galvanized metal surfaces shall be zinc dust-zinc oxide primer paint conforming to MIL-DTL-24441C/19B. Use MIL-24441 thinner per paint manufacturer's recommendations.

c. Orange paint for the body and the finish coats on metal and wood surfaces shall consist of a ready-mixed non-fading paint per Master Painter's Institute (MPI) Reference #9 (gloss). The color shall be per Federal Standards 595, International Orange, Number 12197.

d. White paint for body and finish coats on metal and wood surfaces shall be ready-mixed paint conforming to the MPI, Reference #9, Exterior Alkyd, Gloss.

e. Priming paint for wood surfaces shall be mixed on the job by thinning the above specified aviation-orange or white paint by adding 1/2 pint (0.24 liter) of raw linseed oil to each gallon (liter).

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

107-3.1 Installation. The [hinged support or hinged pole] shall be installed on a concrete foundation per the plans.

Installation details must be shown on the plans. Refer to “Wind Cone Mounting Structures” in AC 150/5340-30 for additional information on mounting structure types for L-806 (supplemental wind cones) and L-807 (primary wind cones).

107-3.2 Support pole erection. The Contractor shall erect the pole on the foundation following the manufacturer’s requirements and erection details. The pole shall be level and secure.

107-3.3 Electrical connection. The Contractor shall furnish all labor and materials and shall make complete electrical connections per the wiring diagram furnished with the project plans. The electrical installation shall conform to the requirements of the latest edition of National Fire Protection Association, NFPA-70, National Electric Code (NEC).

Underground cable and duct for cable installation shall be installed in accordance with Item L-108, Underground Power Cables for Airports, and Item L-110, Airport Underground Electrical Duct Banks and Conduits in locations as shown on the plans.

107-3.4 Booster transformer. [The installation shall be as indicated in the plans and described in the specifications.] [Not used.]

Refer to AC 150/5340-30 for requirements. A booster transformer, if required, to compensate for voltage drop to the beacon shall be installed in a suitable weatherproof housing under or on the tower platform or at the base of the tower.

If the booster transformer is required for installation remote from the beacon, edit measurement and payment specifications as required.

107-3.5 Ground connection and ground rod. The Contractor shall furnish and install a ground rod, grounding cable, and ground clamps for grounding the “A” frame of the 12-foot (3.7-m) assembly or pipe support of the 8-foot (2.4-m) support near the base. The ground rod shall be of the type, diameter and length specified in Item L-108, Underground Power Cable for Airports. The ground rod shall be driven into the ground adjacent to the concrete foundation (minimum distance from foundation of 2 feet (60 cm)) so that the top is at least 6 inches (150 mm) below grade. The grounding cable shall consist of No. [6] [4] [2] American wire gauge (AWG) minimum stranded copper wire or larger and shall be firmly attached to the ground rod by exothermic welding. If an exothermic weld is not possible, connections to the grounding bus shall be made by using connectors approved for direct burial in soil or concrete per UL 467. The other end of the grounding cable shall be securely attached to a leg of the frame or to the base of the pipe support with non-corrosive metal and shall be of substantial construction. The resistance to ground shall not exceed 25 ohms. If a single rod grounding electrode has a resistance to earth of over 25 ohms, then install one supplemental rod not less than 10 feet from the first rod. If desired resistance to ground levels are still not achieved, see FAA-STD-019 for guidance on the application of coke breeze.

107-3.6 Painting. Three coats of paint shall be applied (one prime, one body, and one finish) to all exposed material installed under this item except the fabric cone, obstruction light globe, and lamp

reflectors. The wind cone assembly, if already painted upon receipt, shall be given one finish coat of paint in lieu of the three coats specified above. The paint shall be per MPI Reference #9 (gloss). The color shall be per Federal Standard 595, International Orange, Number 12197.

107-3.7 Light sources. The Contractor shall furnish and install lamps per the manufacturer's instruction book.

107-3.8 Chain and padlock. The Contractor shall furnish and install a suitable operating chain for lowering and raising the hinged top section. The chain shall be attached to the pole support in a manner to prevent the light fixture assembly from striking the ground in the lowered position.

A padlock shall also be furnished by the Contractor on the 8-foot (2.4-m) wind cone for securing the hinged top section to the fixed lower section. Keys for the padlock shall be delivered to the RPR.

107-3.9 Segmented circle. The segmented circle shall be constructed as shown on the Plans.

Show segmented circle details on the plans. Refer to AC 150/5340-5, Segmented Circle Airport Marker System.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

107-4.1 The quantity to be paid shall be the number of wind cones installed as completed units in place, accepted, and ready for operation.

107-4.2 The quantity of segmented circle airport marker systems to be paid for shall be the number of systems installed as completed units in place, accepted, and ready for operation.

BASIS OF PAYMENT

107-5.1 Payment will be made at the contract unit price for each completed and accepted job. This price shall be full compensation for [removal of existing airport wind cones;] furnishing all materials and for all preparation, assembly, and installation of these materials, and for all labor, equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete this item.

107-5.2 Payment will be made at the contract unit price for each segmented circle airport marker system. This price shall be full compensation for furnishing all materials and for all preparation, assembly, and installation of these materials, and for all labor, equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete this item.

Payment will be made under:

Item L-107-5.1	[List type, style, size] Wind Cone and Foundation, in Place -- per Each
Item L-107-5.2	Segmented Circle Marker System, in Place -- per Each

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

Advisory Circulars (AC)

AC 150/5340-5	Segmented Circle Airport Marker System
AC 150/5340-30	Design and Installation Details for airport Visual Aids
AC 150/5345-7	Specification for L-824 Underground Electrical Cable for Airport Lighting Circuits
AC 150/5345-27	Specification for Wind Cone Assemblies
AC 150/5345-53	Airport Lighting Equipment Certification Program

Commercial Item Description

A-A-59544	Cable and Wire, Electrical (Power, Fixed Installation)

Federal Standard (FED STD)

FED STD 595	Colors Used in Government Procurement

Master Painter's Institute (MPI)

MPI Reference #9	Alkyd, Exterior, Gloss (MPI Gloss Level 6)

Mil Standard

MIL-DTL-24441C/19B	Paint, Epoxy-Polyamide, Zinc Primer, Formula 159, Type III

Underwriters Laboratories (UL)

UL Standard 6	Electrical Rigid Metal Conduit – Steel
UL Standard 514B	Conduit, Tubing, and Cable Fittings
UL Standard 514C	Nonmetallic Outlet Boxes, Flush-Device Boxes, and Covers
UL Standard 651	Schedule 40, 80, Type EB and A Rigid PVC Conduit and Fittings
UL Standard 651A	Type EB and A Rigid PVC Conduit and HDPE Conduit
UL Standard 1242	Electrical Intermediate Metal Conduit - Steel

National Fire Protection Association (NFPA)

NFPA-70	National Electric Code (NEC)

END OF ITEM L-107

Item L-108 Underground Power Cable for Airports

DESCRIPTION

108-1.1 This item shall consist of furnishing and installing power cables that are direct buried and furnishing and/or installing power cables within conduit or duct banks per these specifications at the locations shown on the plans. It includes excavation and backfill of trench for direct-buried cables only. Also included are the installation of counterpoise wires, ground wires, ground rods and connections, cable splicing, cable marking, cable testing, and all incidentals necessary to place the cable in operating condition as a completed unit to the satisfaction of the RPR. This item shall not include the installation of duct banks or conduit, trenching and backfilling for duct banks or conduit, or furnishing or installation of cable for FAA owned/operated facilities.

EQUIPMENT AND MATERIALS

108-2.1 General.

a. Airport lighting equipment and materials covered by advisory circulars (AC) shall be approved under the Airport Lighting Equipment Certification Program per AC 150/5345-53, current version.

b. All other equipment and materials covered by other referenced specifications shall be subject to acceptance through manufacturer's certification of compliance with the applicable specification, when requested by the RPR.

c. Manufacturer's certifications shall not relieve the Contractor of the responsibility to provide materials per these specifications. Materials supplied and/or installed that do not comply with these specifications shall be removed (when directed by the RPR) and replaced with materials that comply with these specifications at the Contractor's cost.

d. All materials and equipment used to construct this item shall be submitted to the RPR for approval prior to ordering the equipment. Submittals consisting of marked catalog sheets or shop drawings shall be provided. Submittal data shall be presented in a clear, precise and thorough manner. Original catalog sheets are preferred. Photocopies are acceptable provided they are as good a quality as the original. Clearly and boldly mark each copy to identify products or models applicable to this project. Indicate all optional equipment and delete any non-pertinent data. Submittals for components of electrical equipment and systems shall identify the equipment to which they apply on each submittal sheet. Markings shall be made bold and clear with arrows or circles (highlighting is not acceptable). The Contractor is solely responsible for delays in the project that may accrue directly or indirectly from late submissions or resubmissions of submittals.

e. The data submitted shall be sufficient, in the opinion of the RPR, to determine compliance with the plans and specifications. [The Contractor's submittals shall be neatly bound in a properly sized 3-ring binder, tabbed by specification section.] [electronically submitted in pdf format.] The RPR reserves the right to reject any and all equipment, materials, or procedures that do not meet the system design and the standards and codes, specified in this document.

f. All equipment and materials furnished and installed under this section shall be guaranteed against defects in materials and workmanship for at least [twelve (12) months] from the date of final

acceptance by the Owner. The defective materials and/or equipment shall be repaired or replaced, at the Owner's discretion, with no additional cost to the Owner. The Contractor shall maintain a minimum insulation resistance in accordance with paragraph 108-3.10e with isolation transformers connected in new circuits and new segments of existing circuits through the end of the contract warranty period when tested in accordance with AC 150/5340-26, *Maintenance Airport Visual Aid Facilities*, paragraph 5.1.3.1, Insulation Resistance Test.

The Engineer should specify the form in which submittals are to be received and number of copies.

The length of time for guarantee of materials and workmanship should be as stated in the contract between the Owner and Contractor and the contract special provisions.

Only Third Party certified manufacturers, listed in AC 150/5345-53, Appendix 3 Addendum (as required) and meeting the BUY AMERICAN preference requirements can provide equipment and materials specified in the Contract Documents. Documentation certifying compliance with the BUY AMERICAN preference rules for Airport Improvement Program (AIP) cited in 49 USC §50101) shall be included with each equipment and material submittal.

108-2.2 Cable. Underground cable for airfield lighting facilities (runway and taxiway lights and signs) shall conform to the requirements of AC 150/5345-7, Specification for L-824 Underground Electrical Cable for Airport Lighting Circuits latest edition. Conductors for use on 6.6 ampere primary airfield lighting series circuits shall be single conductor, seven strand, #8 American wire gauge (AWG), L-824 [Type B, Type C], 5,000 volts, non-shielded, with [ethylene propylene insulation, cross-linked polyethylene insulation]. Conductors for use on 20 ampere primary airfield lighting series circuits shall be single conductor, seven strand, #6 AWG, L-824 [Type B, Type C], 5,000 volts, non-shielded, with [ethylene propylene insulation, cross-linked polyethylene insulation]. L-824 conductors for use on the L-830 secondary of airfield lighting series circuits shall be sized in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. All other conductors shall comply with FAA and National Electric Code (NEC) requirements. Conductor sizes noted above shall not apply to leads furnished by manufacturers on airfield lighting transformers and fixtures.

Wire for electrical circuits up to 600 volts shall comply with Specification L-824 and/or Commercial Item Description A-A-59544A and shall be type THWN-2, 75°C for installation in conduit and RHW-2, 75°C for direct burial installations. Conductors for parallel (voltage) circuits shall be type and size and installed in accordance with NFPA-70, National Electrical Code.

Unless noted otherwise, all 600-volt and less non-airfield lighting conductor sizes are based on a 75°C, THWN-2, 600-volt insulation, copper conductors, not more than three single insulated conductors, in raceway, in free air. The conduit/duct sizes are based on the use of THWN-2, 600-volt insulated conductors. The Contractor shall make the necessary increase in conduit/duct sizes for other types of wire insulation. In no case shall the conduit/duct size be reduced. The minimum power circuit wire size shall be #12 AWG.

Conductor sizes may have been adjusted due to voltage drop or other engineering considerations. Equipment provided by the Contractor shall be capable of accepting the quantity and sizes of conductors shown in the Contract Documents. All conductors, pigtails, cable step-down adapters, cable step-up

adapters, terminal blocks and splicing materials necessary to complete the cable termination/splice shall be considered incidental to the respective pay items provided.

Cable type, size, number of conductors, strand and service voltage shall be as specified in the Contract Document.

108-2.3 Bare copper wire (counterpoise, bare copper wire ground and ground rods). Wire for counterpoise or ground installations for airfield lighting systems shall be No. [6][4][2] AWG bare solid copper wire for counterpoise and/or No. [6][4][2] AWG insulated stranded for grounding bond wire per ASTM B3 and ASTM B8, and shall be [bare copper wire][tinned copper wire per ASTM B33]. For voltage powered circuits, the equipment grounding conductor shall comply with NEC Article 250.

Ground rods shall be [solid stainless steel][copper] or [copper-clad steel][sectional copper-clad steel]. The ground rods shall be of the length and diameter specified on the plans, but in no case be less than [8 feet (2.4 m)][10 feet (2.54 m)] long and [5/8 inch (16 mm)][3/4 inch (19 mm)] in diameter.

The Engineer should evaluate the soils in the vicinity of proposed counterpoise and ground rod installations and determine if soil conditions would adversely affect copper. The Engineer shall specify the type of ground rod and counterpoise wire to be installed in consideration of the soil conditions. If tinned copper counterpoise or ground wire is specified, include requirement for UL listing.

The Engineer should select the counterpoise conductor size based upon sound engineering practice and lightning strike density. NFPA 780 Class I materials (for structures not exceeding 75 feet in height) require the main copper conductor/cable to have a minimum cross-sectional area of 57,400 circular mils. A 2 AWG solid copper conductor is 66,360 circular mils. The 2 AWG solid copper conductor is a few thousand circular mils larger than the required Class I conductor (57,400 circular mils). However, a 2 AWG conductor is the smallest standard size AWG conductor that complies with the NFPA 780 Class I requirements (4 AWG = 41,740 circular mils, 3 AWG = 52,620 circular mils). The minimum counterpoise conductor size shall be 6 AWG solid copper.

See AC 150/5340-30 for additional details about counterpoise and grounding bond wire types and installation.

108-2.4 Cable connections. In-line connections or splices of underground primary cables shall be of the type called for on the plans, and shall be one of the types listed below. No separate payment will be made for cable connections.

a. The cast splice. A cast splice, employing a plastic mold and using epoxy resin equivalent to that manufactured by 3M™ Company, "Scotchcast" Kit No. 82-B, or an approved equivalent, used for potting the splice is acceptable.

b. The field-attached plug-in splice. Field attached plug-in splices shall be installed as shown on the plans. The Contractor shall determine the outside diameter of the cable to be spliced and furnish appropriately sized connector kits and/or adapters. Tape or heat shrink tubing with integral sealant shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's requirements. Primary Connector Kits manufactured by Amerace, "Super Kit", Integro "Complete Kit", or approved equal is acceptable.

Figure 3 of AC 150/5345-26, Specification for L-823 Plug and Receptacle, Cable Connectors, employing connector kits, is acceptable for field attachment to single conductor cable.

c. The factory-molded plug-in splice. Specification for L-823 Connectors, Factory-Molded to Individual Conductors, is acceptable.

d. The taped or heat-shrink splice. Taped splices employing field-applied rubber, or synthetic rubber tape covered with plastic tape is acceptable. The rubber tape should meet the requirements of ASTM D4388 and the plastic tape should comply with Military Specification MIL-I-24391 or Commercial Item Description A-A-55809. Heat shrinkable tubing shall be heavy-wall, self-sealing tubing rated for the voltage of the wire being spliced and suitable for direct-buried installations. The tubing shall be factory coated with a thermoplastic adhesive-sealant that will adhere to the insulation of the wire being spliced forming a moisture- and dirt-proof seal. Additionally, heat shrinkable tubing for multi-conductor cables, shielded cables, and armored cables shall be factory kits that are designed for the application. Heat shrinkable tubing and tubing kits shall be manufactured by Tyco Electronics/ Raychem Corporation, Energy Division, or approved equivalent.

In all the above cases, connections of cable conductors shall be made using crimp connectors using a crimping tool designed to make a complete crimp before the tool can be removed. All L-823/L-824 splices and terminations shall be made per the manufacturer's recommendations and listings.

All connections of counterpoise, grounding conductors and ground rods shall be made by the exothermic process or approved equivalent, except that a light base ground clamp connector shall be used for attachment to the light base. All exothermic connections shall be made per the manufacturer's recommendations and listings.

Include splice details on the plans if required. See AC 150/5340-30 for additional information about methods of attaching a ground to a galvanized light base.

108-2.5 Splicer qualifications. Every airfield lighting cable splicer shall be qualified in making airport cable splices and terminations on cables rated at or above 5,000 volts AC. The Contractor shall submit to the RPR proof of the qualifications of each proposed cable splicer for the airport cable type and voltage level to be worked on. Cable splicing/terminating personnel shall have a minimum of three (3) years continuous experience in terminating/splicing medium voltage cable.

108-2.6 Concrete. [Concrete shall be proportioned, placed, and cured per Item P-610, Concrete for Miscellaneous Structures.]

If P-610 is not used elsewhere on the project, it is acceptable to replace this paragraph with the following:

Concrete shall be proportioned, placed, and cured per state department of transportation structural concrete with minimum 25% Type F fly ash, and a minimum allowable compressive strength of 4,000 psi (28 MPa).

108-2.7 Flowable backfill. Flowable material used to backfill trenches for power cable trenches shall conform to the requirements of Item P-153, Controlled Low Strength Material.

108-2.8 Cable identification tags. Cable identification tags shall be made from a non-corrosive material with the circuit identification stamped or etched onto the tag. The tags shall be of the type as detailed on the plans.

108-2.9 Tape. Electrical tapes shall be Scotch™ Electrical Tapes –Scotch™ 88 (1-1/2 inch (38 mm) wide) and Scotch™ 130C® linerless rubber splicing tape (2-inch (50 mm) wide), as manufactured by the Minnesota Mining and Manufacturing Company (3M™), or an approved equivalent.

108-2.10 Electrical coating. Electrical coating shall be Scotchkote™ as manufactured by 3M™, or an approved equivalent.

108-2.11 Existing circuits. Whenever the scope of work requires connection to an existing circuit, the existing circuit's insulation resistance shall be tested, in the presence of the RPR. The test shall be performed per this item and prior to any activity that will affect the respective circuit. The Contractor shall record the results on forms acceptable to the RPR. When the work affecting the circuit is complete, the circuit's insulation resistance shall be checked again, in the presence of the RPR. The Contractor shall record the results on forms acceptable to the RPR. The second reading shall be equal to or greater than the first reading or the Contractor shall make the necessary repairs to the existing circuit to bring the second reading above the first reading. All repair costs including a complete replacement of the L-823 connectors, L-830 transformers and L-824 cable, if necessary, shall be borne by the Contractor. All test results shall be submitted in the Operation and Maintenance (O&M) Manual. []

Include information as needed for standard and alternative methods, and safety practices for measuring insulation resistance. See AC 150/5340-26C, Maintenance of Airport Visual Aid Facilities, for standard and alternative methods, and safety practices for measuring insulation resistance.

108-2.12 Detectable warning tape. Plastic, detectable, American Public Works Association (APWA) Red (electrical power lines, cables, conduit and lighting cable) with continuous legend tape shall be polyethylene film with a metalized foil core and shall be 3-6 inches (75-150 mm) wide. Detectable tape is incidental to the respective bid item. Detectable warning tape for communication cables shall be orange. Detectable warning tape color code shall comply with the APWA Uniform Color Code.

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

108-3.1 General. The Contractor shall install the specified cable at the approximate locations indicated on the plans. Unless otherwise shown on the plans, all cable required to cross under pavements expected to carry aircraft loads shall be installed in concrete encased duct banks. Cable shall be run without splices, from fixture to fixture.

Cable connections between lights will be permitted only at the light locations for connecting the underground cable to the primary leads of the individual isolation transformers. The Contractor shall be responsible for providing cable in continuous lengths for home runs or other long cable runs without connections unless otherwise authorized in writing by the RPR or shown on the plans.

In addition to connectors being installed at individual isolation transformers, L-823 cable connectors for maintenance and test points shall be installed at locations shown on the plans. Cable circuit identification

markers shall be installed on both sides of the L-823 connectors installed and on both sides of slack loops where a future connector would be installed.

The Engineer should determine and specify on the plans an adequate number of locations for installing L-823 connectors to provide maintenance and test points.

Provide not less than 3 feet (1 m) of cable slack on each side of all connections, isolation transformers, light units, and at points where cable is connected to field equipment. Where provisions must be made for testing or for future above grade connections, provide enough slack to allow the cable to be extended at least one foot (30 cm) vertically above the top of the access structure. This requirement also applies where primary cable passes through empty light bases, junction boxes, and access structures to allow for future connections, or as designated by the RPR.

Primary airfield lighting cables installed shall have cable circuit identification markers attached on both sides of each L-823 connector and on each airport lighting cable entering or leaving cable access points, such as manholes, hand holes, pull boxes, junction boxes, etc. Markers shall be of sufficient length for imprinting the cable circuit identification legend on one line, using letters not less than 1/4 inch (6 mm) in size. The cable circuit identification shall match the circuits noted on the construction plans.

108-3.2 Installation in duct banks or conduits. This item includes the installation of the cable in duct banks or conduit per the following paragraphs. The maximum number and voltage ratings of cables installed in each single duct or conduit, and the current-carrying capacity of each cable shall be per the latest version of the National Electric Code, or the code of the local agency or authority having jurisdiction.

The Contractor shall make no connections or splices of any kind in cables installed in conduits or duct banks.

Unless otherwise designated in the plans, where ducts are in tiers, use the lowest ducts to receive the cable first, with spare ducts left in the upper levels. Check duct routes prior to construction to obtain assurance that the shortest routes are selected and that any potential interference is avoided.

Duct banks or conduits shall be installed as a separate item per Item L-110, Airport Underground Electrical Duct Banks and Conduit. The Contractor shall run a mandrel through duct banks or conduit prior to installation of cable to ensure that the duct bank or conduit is open, continuous and clear of debris. The mandrel size shall be compatible with the conduit size. The Contractor shall swab out all conduits/ducts and clean light bases, manholes, etc., interiors immediately prior to pulling cable. Once cleaned and swabbed, the light bases and all accessible points of entry to the duct/conduit system shall be kept closed except when installing cables. Cleaning of ducts, light bases, manholes, etc., is incidental to the pay item of the item being cleaned. All raceway systems left open, after initial cleaning, for any reason shall be re-cleaned at the Contractor's expense. The Contractor shall verify existing ducts proposed for use in this project as clear and open. The Contractor shall notify the RPR of any blockage in the existing ducts.

The cable shall be installed in a manner that prevents harmful stretching of the conductor, damage to the insulation, or damage to the outer protective covering. The ends of all cables shall be sealed with moisture-seal tape providing moisture-tight mechanical protection with minimum bulk, or alternately, heat shrinkable tubing before pulling into the conduit and it shall be left sealed until connections are made. Where more than one cable is to be installed in a conduit, all cable shall be pulled in the conduit at the same time. The pulling of a cable through duct banks or conduits may be accomplished by hand winch or power winch with the use of cable grips or pulling eyes. Maximum pulling tensions shall not exceed

the cable manufacturer's recommendations. A non-hardening cable-pulling lubricant recommended for the type of cable being installed shall be used where required.

The Contractor shall submit the recommended pulling tension values to the RPR prior to any cable installation. If required by the RPR, pulling tension values for cable pulls shall be monitored by a dynamometer in the presence of the RPR. Cable pull tensions shall be recorded by the Contractor and reviewed by the RPR. Cables exceeding the maximum allowable pulling tension values shall be removed and replaced by the Contractor at the Contractor's expense.

The manufacturer's minimum bend radius or NEC requirements (whichever is more restrictive) shall apply. Cable installation, handling and storage shall be per manufacturer's recommendations. During cold weather, particular attention shall be paid to the manufacturer's minimum installation temperature. Cable shall not be installed when the temperature is at or below the manufacturer's minimum installation temperature. At the Contractor's option, the Contractor may submit a plan, for review by the RPR, for heated storage of the cable and maintenance of an acceptable cable temperature during installation when temperatures are below the manufacturer's minimum cable installation temperature.

Cable shall not be dragged across base can or manhole edges, pavement or earth. When cable must be coiled, lay cable out on a canvas tarp or use other appropriate means to prevent abrasion to the cable jacket.

108-3.3 Installation of direct-buried cable in trenches. Unless otherwise specified, the Contractor shall not use a cable plow for installing the cable. Cable shall be unreeled uniformly in place alongside or in the trench and shall be carefully placed along the bottom of the trench. The cable shall not be unreeled and pulled into the trench from one end. Slack cable sufficient to provide strain relief shall be placed in the trench in a series of S curves. Sharp bends or kinks in the cable shall not be permitted.

Where cables must cross over each other, a minimum of 3 inches (75 mm) vertical displacement shall be provided with the topmost cable depth at or below the minimum required depth below finished grade.

a. Trenching. Where turf is well established and the sod can be removed, it shall be carefully stripped and properly stored. Trenches for cables may be excavated manually or with mechanical trenching equipment. Walls of trenches shall be essentially vertical so that a minimum of surface is disturbed. Graders shall not be used to excavate the trench with their blades. The bottom surface of trenches shall be essentially smooth and free from coarse aggregate. Unless otherwise specified, cable trenches shall be excavated to a minimum depth of 18 inches (0.5 m) below finished grade per NEC Table 300.5, except as follows:

- When off the airport or crossing under a roadway or driveway, the minimum depth shall be 36 inches (91 cm) unless otherwise specified.
- Minimum cable depth when crossing under a railroad track, shall be 42 inches (1 m) unless otherwise specified.

The Contractor shall excavate all cable trenches to a width not less than 6 inches (150 mm). Unless otherwise specified on the plans, all cables in the same location and running in the same general direction shall be installed in the same trench.

When rock is encountered, the rock shall be removed to a depth of at least 3 inches (75 mm) below the required cable depth and it shall be replaced with bedding material of earth or sand containing no mineral aggregate particles that would be retained on a 1/4-inch (6.3 mm) sieve. Flowable backfill material may alternatively be used.

The Engineer shall determine the type of soil or rock to be excavated and, if rock is indicted to be encountered, indicate on the plans.

Duct bank or conduit markers temporarily removed for trench excavations shall be replaced as required.

It is the Contractor's responsibility to locate existing utilities within the work area prior to excavation. Where existing active cables cross proposed installations, the Contractor shall ensure that these cables are adequately protected. Where crossings are unavoidable, no splices will be allowed in the existing cables, except as specified on the plans. Installation of new cable where such crossings must occur shall proceed as follows:

(1) Existing cables shall be located manually. Unearthed cables shall be inspected to assure absolutely no damage has occurred.

(2) Trenching, etc., in cable areas shall then proceed, with approval of the RPR, with care taken to minimize possible damage or disruption of existing cable, including careful backfilling in area of cable.

In the event that any previously identified cable is damaged during the course of construction, the Contractor shall be responsible for the complete repair or replacement.

b. Backfilling. After the cable has been installed, the trench shall be backfilled. The first layer of backfill in the trench shall encompass all cables ; be 3 inches (75 mm) deep, loose measurement; and shall be either earth or sand containing no mineral aggregate particles that would be retained on a 1/4-inch (6.3 mm) sieve. This layer shall not be compacted. The second layer shall be 5 inches (125 mm) deep, loose measurement, and shall contain no particles that would be retained on a one inch (25.0 mm) sieve. The remaining third and subsequent layers of backfill shall not exceed 8 inches (20 cm) of loose measurement and be excavated or imported material and shall not contain stone or aggregate larger than 4 inches (100 mm) maximum diameter.

The second and subsequent layers shall be thoroughly tamped and compacted to at least the density of the adjacent material. If the cable is to be installed in locations or areas where other compaction requirements are specified (under pavements, embankments, etc.) the backfill compaction shall be [to a minimum of 100 percent of ASTM D1557] [backfill with controlled low strength material (CLSM) in accordance with P-153].

CLSM is recommended under pavements.

Trenches shall not contain pools of water during backfilling operations. The trench shall be completely backfilled and tamped level with the adjacent surface, except that when turf is to be established over the trench, the backfilling shall be stopped at an appropriate depth consistent with the type of turfing operation to be accommodated. A proper allowance for settlement shall also be provided. Any excess excavated material shall be removed and disposed of per the plans and specifications.

Underground electrical warning (caution) tape shall be installed in the trench above all direct-buried cable. Contractor shall submit a sample of the proposed warning tape for acceptance by the RPR. If not shown on the plans, the warning tape shall be located 6 inches (150 mm) above the direct-buried cable or the counterpoise wire if present. A 3-6 inch (75 - 150 mm) wide polyethylene film detectable tape, with a metalized foil core, shall be installed above all direct buried cable or counterpoise. The tape shall be of

the color and have a continuous legend as indicated on the plans. The tape shall be installed 8 inches (200 mm) minimum below finished grade.

c. Restoration. Following restoration of all trenching near airport movement surfaces, the Contractor shall visually inspect the area for foreign object debris (FOD) and remove any that is found. Where soil and sod has been removed, it shall be replaced as soon as possible after the backfilling is completed. All areas disturbed by work shall be restored to its original condition. The restoration shall include the [sodding][topsoiling][fertilizing][liming][seeding] [sprigging][mulching] as shown on the plans. The Contractor shall be held responsible for maintaining all disturbed surfaces and replacements until final acceptance. When trenching is through paved areas, restoration shall be equal to existing conditions. If the cable is to be installed in locations or areas where other compaction requirements are specified (under pavements, embankments, etc.) the backfill compaction shall be [to a minimum of 100 percent of ASTM D1557] [backfill with controlled low strength material (CLSM) in accordance with P-153]. Restoration shall be considered incidental to the pay item of which it is a component part.

The Engineer is to specify the correct method of turfing and include in the construction documents the appropriate FAA turfing specification for restoration related to the installation of the power cables.

Under pavements, CLSM is recommended.

Under certain conditions, it may be beneficial to install cables by cable plowing. This type of installation method should only be specified where sandy soils are prevalent and with no rocks or other debris that would nick or cut the cable insulation. The Engineer should specify the equipment to be used so the cables are placed at a minimum depth of 18 inches (0.5 m) below finished grade. The cable should be manually unreel off the spool as the machine travels, such that the earth is not unreeling the spool.

108-3.4 Cable markers for direct-buried cable. The location of direct buried circuits shall be marked by a concrete slab marker, 2 feet (60 cm) square and 4-6 inch (10 - 15 cm) thick, extending approximately one inch (25 mm) above the surface. Each cable run from a line of lights and signs to the equipment vault shall be marked at approximately every 200 feet (61 m) along the cable run, with an additional marker at each change of direction of cable run. All other direct-buried cable shall be marked in the same manner. Cable markers shall be installed directly above the cable. The Contractor shall impress the word "CABLE" and directional arrows on each cable marking slab. The letters shall be approximately 4 inches (100 mm) high and 3 inches (75 mm) wide, with width of stroke 1/2 inch (12 mm) and 1/4 inch (6 mm) deep. Stencils shall be used for cable marker lettering; no hand lettering shall be permitted.

At the location of each underground cable connection/splice, except at lighting units, or isolation transformers, a concrete marker slab shall be installed to mark the location of the connection/splice. The Contractor shall impress the word "SPlice" on each slab. The Contractor also shall impress additional circuit identification symbols on each slab as directed by the RPR. All cable markers and splice markers shall be painted international orange. Paint shall be specifically manufactured for uncured exterior concrete. After placement, all cable or splice markers shall be given one coat of high-visibility aviation orange paint as approved by the RPR. Furnishing and installation of cable markers is incidental to the respective cable pay item.

108-3.5 Splicing. Connections of the type shown on the plans shall be made by experienced personnel regularly engaged in this type of work and shall be made as follows:

a. Cast splices. These shall be made by using crimp connectors for jointing conductors. Molds shall be assembled, and the compound shall be mixed and poured per the manufacturer's instructions and to the satisfaction of the RPR.

b. Field-attached plug-in splices. These shall be assembled per the manufacturer's instructions. These splices shall be made by plugging directly into mating connectors. The joint where the connectors come together shall be finished by one of the following methods: (1) wrapped with at least one layer of rubber or synthetic rubber tape and one layer of plastic tape, one-half lapped, extending at least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) on each side of the joint (2) Covered with heat shrinkable tubing with integral sealant extending at least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) on each side of the joint or (3) On connector kits equipped with water seal flap; roll-over water seal flap to sealing position on mating connector.

c. Factory-molded plug-in splices. These shall be made by plugging directly into mating connectors. The joint where the connectors come together shall be finished by one of the following methods: (1) Wrapped with at least one layer of rubber or synthetic rubber tape and one layer of plastic tape, one-half lapped, extending at least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) on each side of the joint. (2) Covered with heat shrinkable tubing with integral sealant extending at least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) on each side of the joint. or (3) On connector kits so equipped with water seal flap; roll-over water seal flap to sealing position on mating connector.

d. Taped or heat-shrink splices. A taped splice shall be made in the following manner:

Bring the cables to their final position and cut so that the conductors will butt. Remove insulation and jacket allowing for bare conductor of proper length to fit compression sleeve connector with 1/4 inch (6 mm) of bare conductor on each side of the connector. Prior to splicing, the two ends of the cable insulation shall be penciled using a tool designed specifically for this purpose and for cable size and type. Do not use emery paper on splicing operation since it contains metallic particles. The copper conductors shall be thoroughly cleaned. Join the conductors by inserting them equidistant into the compression connection sleeve. Crimp conductors firmly in place with crimping tool that requires a complete crimp before tool can be removed. Test the crimped connection by pulling on the cable. Scrape the insulation to assure that the entire surface over which the tape will be applied (plus 3 inches (75 mm) on each end) is clean. After scraping, wipe the entire area with a clean lint-free cloth. Do not use solvents.

Apply high-voltage rubber tape one-half lapped over bare conductor. This tape should be tensioned as recommended by the manufacturer. Voids in the connector area may be eliminated by highly elongating the tape, stretching it just short of its breaking point. The manufacturer's recommendation for stretching tape during splicing shall be followed. Always attempt to exactly half-lap to produce a uniform buildup. Continue buildup to 1-1/2 times cable diameter over the body of the splice with ends tapered a distance of approximately one inch (25 mm) over the original jacket. Cover rubber tape with two layers of vinyl pressure-sensitive tape one-half lapped. Do not use glyptol or lacquer over vinyl tape as they react as solvents to the tape. No further cable covering or splice boxes are required.

Heat shrinkable tubing shall be installed following manufacturer's instructions. Direct flame heating shall not be permitted unless recommended by the manufacturer. Cable surfaces within the limits of the heat-shrink application shall be clean and free of contaminants prior to application.

e. Assembly. Surfaces of equipment or conductors being terminated or connected shall be prepared in accordance with industry standard practice and manufacturer's recommendations. All surfaces to be connected shall be thoroughly cleaned to remove all dirt, grease, oxides, nonconductive films, or other foreign material. Paints and other nonconductive coatings shall be removed to expose base metal. Clean all surfaces at least 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) beyond all sides of the larger bonded area on all mating surfaces.

Use a joint compound suitable for the materials used in the connection. Repair painted/coated surface to original condition after completing the connection.

108-3.6 Bare counterpoise wire installation for lightning protection and grounding. If shown on the plans or included in the job specifications, bare solid [#6 AWG] copper counterpoise wire shall be installed for lightning protection of the underground cables. The RPR shall select one of two methods of lightning protection for the airfield lighting circuit based upon sound engineering practice and lightning strike density.

a. Equipotential. [The counterpoise size is as shown on the plans. The equipotential method is applicable to all airfield lighting systems; i.e. runway, taxiway, apron – touchdown zone, centerline, edge, threshold and approach lighting systems. The equipotential method is also successfully applied to provide lightning protection for power, signal and communication systems. The light bases, counterpoise, etc – all components - are bonded together and bonded to the vault power system ground loop/electrode.

Counterpoise wire shall be installed in the same trench for the entire length of buried cable, conduits and duct banks that are installed to contain airfield cables. The counterpoise is centered over the cable/conduit/duct to be protected.

The counterpoise conductor shall be installed no less than 8 inches (200 mm) minimum or 12 inches (300 mm) maximum above the raceway or cable to be protected, except as permitted below:

(1) The minimum counterpoise conductor height above the raceway or cable to be protected shall be permitted to be adjusted subject to coordination with the airfield lighting and pavement designs.

(2) The counterpoise conductor height above the protected raceway(s) or cable(s) shall be calculated to ensure that the raceway or cable is within a 45-degree area of protection, (45 degrees on each side of vertical creating a 90 degree angle).

The counterpoise conductor shall be bonded to each metallic light base, mounting stake, and metallic airfield lighting component.

All metallic airfield lighting components in the field circuit on the output side of the constant current regulator (CCR) or other power source shall be bonded to the airfield lighting counterpoise system.

All components rise and fall at the same potential; with no potential difference, no damaging arcing and no damaging current flow.

See AC 150/5340-30, Design and Installation Details for Airport Visual Aids and NFPA 780, Standard for the Installation of Lightning Protection Systems, Chapter 11, for a detailed description of the Equipotential Method of lightning protection.

Reference FAA STD-019E, Lightning and Surge Protection, Grounding Bonding and Shielding Requirements for Facilities and Electronic Equipment, Part 4.1.1.7.][not used]

b. Isolation. [Counterpoise size is as shown on the plans. The isolation method is an alternate method for use only with edge lights installed in turf and stabilized soils and raceways installed parallel to and adjacent to the edge of the pavement. NFPA 780 uses 15 feet to define “adjacent to”.

The counterpoise conductor shall be installed halfway between the pavement edge and the light base, mounting stake, raceway, or cable being protected.

The counterpoise conductor shall be installed 8 inches (203 mm) minimum below grade. The counterpoise is not connected to the light base or mounting stake. An additional grounding electrode is required at each light base or mounting stake. The grounding electrode is bonded to the light base or mounting stake with a 6 AWG solid copper conductor.

See AC 150/5340-30, Design and Installation Details for Airport Visual Aids and NFPA 780, Standard for the Installation of Lightning Protection Systems, Chapter 11, for a detailed description of the Isolation Method of lightning protection.][not used]

The Engineer shall select the method of lightning protection for the airfield lighting circuit. Equipotential is used for areas with high rates of lightning strikes and Isolation in areas where lightning strikes are not common.

c. Common Installation requirements. [When a metallic light base is used, the grounding electrode shall be bonded to the metallic light base or mounting stake with a No. 6 AWG bare, annealed or soft drawn, solid copper conductor.

When a nonmetallic light base is used, the grounding electrode shall be bonded to the metallic light fixture or metallic base plate with a No. 6 AWG bare, annealed or soft drawn, solid copper conductor.]

Grounding electrodes may be rods, ground dissipation plates, radials, or other electrodes listed in the NFPA 70 (NEC) or NFPA 780.

Where raceway is installed by the directional bore, jack and bore, or other drilling method, the counterpoise conductor shall be permitted to be installed concurrently with the directional bore, jack and bore, or other drilling method raceway, external to the raceway or sleeve.

The counterpoise wire shall also be exothermically welded to ground rods installed as shown on the plans but not more than 500 feet (150 m) apart around the entire circuit. The counterpoise system shall be continuous and terminate at the transformer vault or at the power source. It shall be securely attached to the vault or equipment external ground ring or other made electrode-grounding system. The connections shall be made as shown on the plans and in the specifications.

Where an existing airfield lighting system is being extended or modified, the new counterpoise conductors shall be interconnected to existing counterpoise conductors at each intersection of the new and existing airfield lighting counterpoise systems.

d. Parallel Voltage Systems. Provide grounding and bonding in accordance with NFPA 70, National Electrical Code.

108-3.7 Counterpoise installation above multiple conduits and duct banks. Counterpoise wires shall be installed above multiple conduits/duct banks for airfield lighting cables, with the intent being to provide a complete area of protection over the airfield lighting cables. When multiple conduits and/or duct banks for airfield cable are installed in the same trench, the number and location of counterpoise wires above the conduits shall be adequate to provide a complete area of protection measured 45 degrees each side of vertical.

Where duct banks pass under pavement to be constructed in the project, the counterpoise shall be placed above the duct bank. Reference details on the construction plans.

108-3.8 Counterpoise installation at existing duct banks. When airfield lighting cables are indicated on the plans to be routed through existing duct banks, the new counterpoise wiring shall be terminated at ground rods at each end of the existing duct bank where the cables being protected enter and exit the duct bank. The new counterpoise conductor shall be bonded to the existing counterpoise system.

108-3.9 Exothermic bonding. Bonding of counterpoise wire shall be by the exothermic welding process or equivalent method accepted by the RPR. Only personnel experienced in and regularly engaged in this type of work shall make these connections.

Contractor shall demonstrate to the satisfaction of the RPR, the welding kits, materials and procedures to be used for welded connections prior to any installations in the field. The installations shall comply with the manufacturer's recommendations and the following:

- a. All slag shall be removed from welds.
- b. Using an exothermic weld to bond the counterpoise to a lug on a galvanized light base is not recommended unless the base has been specially modified. Consult the manufacturer's installation directions for proper methods of bonding copper wire to the light base. See AC 150/5340-30 for galvanized light base exception.
- c. If called for in the plans, all buried copper and weld material at weld connections shall be thoroughly coated with 6 mm of 3M™ Scotchkote™, or approved equivalent, or coated with coal tar Bitumastic® material to prevent surface exposure to corrosive soil or moisture.

108-3.10 Testing. The Contractor shall furnish all necessary equipment and appliances for testing the airport electrical systems and underground cable circuits before and after installation. The Contractor shall perform all tests in the presence of the RPR. The Contractor shall demonstrate the electrical characteristics to the satisfaction of the RPR. All costs for testing are incidental to the respective item being tested. For phased projects, the tests must be completed by phase. The Contractor must maintain the test results throughout the entire project as well as during the warranty period that meet the following:

- a. Earth resistance testing methods shall be submitted to the RPR for approval. Earth resistance testing results shall be recorded on an approved form and testing shall be performed in the presence of the RPR. All such testing shall be at the sole expense of the Contractor.

- b. Should the counterpoise or ground grid conductors be damaged or suspected of being damaged by construction activities the Contractor shall test the conductors for continuity with a low resistance ohmmeter. The conductors shall be isolated such that no parallel path exists and tested for continuity. The RPR shall approve of the test method selected. All such testing shall be at the sole expense of the Contractor.

After installation, the Contractor shall test and demonstrate to the satisfaction of the RPR the following:

- c. That all affected lighting power and control circuits (existing and new) are continuous and free from short circuits.
- d. That all affected circuits (existing and new) are free from unspecified grounds.
- e. That the insulation resistance to ground of all new non-grounded high voltage series circuits or cable segments is not less than [] megohms. Verify continuity of all series airfield lighting circuits prior to energization.

Engineer shall determine minimum insulation resistance value based upon system design criteria and area experience. Minimum value shall be that recommended in AC 150/5340-26.

- f. That the insulation resistance to ground of all new non-grounded conductors of new multiple circuits or circuit segments is not less than 100 megohms.

- g. That all affected circuits (existing and new) are properly connected per applicable wiring diagrams.
- h. That all affected circuits (existing and new) are operable. Tests shall be conducted that include operating each control not less than 10 times and the continuous operation of each lighting and power circuit for not less than 1/2 hour.
- i. That the impedance to ground of each ground rod does not exceed [] ohms prior to establishing connections to other ground electrodes. The fall-of-potential ground impedance test shall be used, as described by American National Standards Institute/Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers (ANSI/IEEE) Standard 81, to verify this requirement. As an alternate, clamp-on style ground impedance test meters may be used to satisfy the impedance testing requirement. Test equipment and its calibration sheets shall be submitted for review and approval by the RPR prior to performing the testing.

Engineer shall determine maximum earth resistance value (25 ohm is maximum value permitted). The earth resistance value shall be designed and installed to minimize the ground potential rise and to protect people or equipment under normal and fault conditions.

Two copies of tabulated results of all cable tests performed shall be supplied by the Contractor to the RPR. Where connecting new cable to existing cable, insulation resistance tests shall be performed on the new cable prior to connection to the existing circuit.

There are no approved "repair" procedures for items that have failed testing other than complete replacement.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

108-4.1 [Trenching shall be measured by the linear feet (meters) of trench, including the excavation, backfill, and restoration, completed, measured as excavated, and accepted as satisfactory. When specified, separate measurement shall be made for trenches of various specified widths.]

[The cost of all excavation, backfill, dewatering and restoration regardless of the type of material encountered shall be included in the unit price bid for the work.]

The Engineer shall select whether trenching will be measured separately or included in the installation of the cable or counterpoise. Paragraphs 108-4.1 and 108-5.1 shall be modified accordingly.

108-4.2 Cable or counterpoise wire installed in trench, duct bank or conduit shall be measured by the number of linear feet (meters) installed and grounding connectors, and trench marking tape ready for operation, and accepted as satisfactory. Separate measurement shall be made for each cable or counterpoise wire installed in trench, duct bank or conduit. The measurement for this item [shall] [shall not] include additional quantities required for slack.

The Engineer is to decide if the quantity of cable provided in the bid tabulations includes an estimated quantity for slack. If so, this should be clearly identified on the plans and specifications. If not, add the following language at the end of paragraph 108-4.2:

“Cable and counterpoise slack is considered incidental to this item and is included in the Contractor’s unit price. No separate measurement or payment will be made for cable or counterpoise slack.”

108-4.3 [No separate payment will be made for ground rods.][Ground rods shall be measured by each [8-foot] section installed complete.]

BASIS OF PAYMENT

108-5.1 Payment will be made at the contract unit price for trenching, cable and bare counterpoise wire installed in trench (direct-buried), or cable and equipment ground installed in duct bank or conduit, in place by the Contractor and accepted by the RPR. This price shall be full compensation for furnishing all materials and for all preparation and installation of these materials, and for all labor, equipment, tools, and incidentals, including ground rods and ground connectors and trench marking tape, necessary to complete this item.

Payment will be made under:

Item L-108-5.1	Trenching for direct-buried cable, 18-inch minimum depth - per linear foot (meter)
Item L-108-5.2	[No. 8 AWG][No. 6 AWG], [5 kV][600V], L-824, [Type C][Type B] Cable, Installed in Trench, Duct Bank or Conduit - per liner foot (meter)

Engineer to specify appropriate size of cable. If more than one size is required on the project, provide additional item nos.; one for each size and type.

Item L-108-5.3	No. [6][4][2] AWG, Solid, Bare Copper Counterpoise Wire, Installed [in Trench], [Above the Duct Bank or Conduit], Including Connections/Terminations - per linear foot (meter)
Item L-108-5.4	No. [6][4][2] AWG, [Bare][Insulated], Stranded Equipment [bonding][Ground], Installed in Duct Bank or Conduit – per linear foot (meter).

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

Advisory Circulars (AC)

AC 150/5340-26	Maintenance of Airport Visual Aid Facilities
AC 150/5340-30	Design and Installation Details for Airport Visual Aids
AC 150/5345-7	Specification for L-824 Underground Electrical Cable for Airport Lighting Circuits
AC 150/5345-26	Specification for L-823 Plug and Receptacle, Cable Connectors
AC 150/5345-53	Airport Lighting Equipment Certification Program

Commercial Item Description

A-A-59544A	Cable and Wire, Electrical (Power, Fixed Installation)
A-A-55809	Insulation Tape, Electrical, Pressure-Sensitive Adhesive, Plastic

ASTM International (ASTM)

ASTM B3	Standard Specification for Soft or Annealed Copper Wire
ASTM B8	Standard Specification for Concentric-Lay-Stranded Copper Conductors, Hard, Medium-Hard, or Soft
ASTM B33	Standard Specification for Tin-Coated Soft or Annealed Copper Wire for Electrical Purposes
ASTM D4388	Standard Specification for Nonmetallic Semi-Conducting and Electrically Insulating Rubber Tapes

Mil Spec

MIL-PRF-23586F	Performance Specification: Sealing Compound (with Accelerator), Silicone Rubber, Electrical
MIL-I-24391	Insulation Tape, Electrical, Plastic, Pressure Sensitive

National Fire Protection Association (NFPA)

NFPA-70	National Electrical Code (NEC)
NFPA-780	Standard for the Installation of Lightning Protection Systems

American National Standards Institute (ANSI)/Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE)

ANSI/IEEE STD 81	IEEE Guide for Measuring Earth Resistivity, Ground Impedance, and Earth Surface Potentials of a Ground System

Federal Aviation Administration Standard

FAA STD-019E	Lightning and Surge Protection, Grounding Bonding and Shielding Requirements for Facilities and Electronic Equipment

END OF ITEM L-108

Item L-109 Airport Transformer Vault and Vault Equipment

DESCRIPTION

109-1.1 This item shall consist of [removing an existing airport transformer vault and equipment and;] constructing an airport transformer vault or a prefabricated metal housing per these specifications and per the design and dimensions shown in the plans. This work shall also include the installation of conduits in the floor and foundation, painting and lighting of the vault or metal housing, and the furnishing of all incidentals that are necessary to produce a completed unit. Included as a separate part under this item or as a separate item where an existing vault is to be used shall be the furnishing of all vault equipment, wiring, electrical buses, cable, conduit, potheads, and grounding systems. This work shall also include the painting of equipment and conduit; the marking and labeling of equipment and the labeling or tagging of wires; the testing of the installation; and the furnishing of all incidentals necessary to place it in operating condition as a completed unit to the satisfaction of the RPR.

When removal of an existing airport transformer vault and associated equipment is required as a part of the project, the Engineer will edit specification as necessary to cover removal, disposal, and ownership. Include necessary details and information on the plans specifications.

EQUIPMENT AND MATERIALS

109-2.1 General.

a. Airport lighting equipment and materials covered by advisory circulars (AC) shall be certified in AC 150/5345-53, Airport Lighting Equipment Certification Program (ALECP) and listed in the ALECP Addendum.

b. All other equipment and materials covered by other referenced specifications shall be subject to acceptance through manufacturer's certification of compliance with the applicable specification when requested by the RPR.

c. Manufacturer's certifications shall not relieve the Contractor of the responsibility to provide materials per these specifications. Materials supplied and/or installed that do not comply with these specifications shall be removed (when directed by the RPR) and replaced with materials that comply with these specifications at the Contractor's cost.

d. All materials and equipment used to construct this item shall be submitted to the RPR for approval prior to ordering the equipment. Submittals consisting of marked catalog sheets or shop drawings shall be provided. Submittal data shall be presented in a clear, precise and thorough manner. Original catalog sheets are preferred. Photocopies are acceptable provided they are as good a quality as the original. Clearly and boldly mark each copy to identify products or models applicable to this project. Indicate all optional equipment and delete any non-pertinent data. Submittals for components of electrical equipment and systems shall identify the equipment to which they apply on each submittal sheet. Markings shall be made bold and clear with arrows or circles (highlighting is not acceptable). The Contractor is solely

responsible for delays in the project that may accrue directly or indirectly from late submissions or resubmissions of submittals.

e. The data submitted shall be sufficient, in the opinion of the RPR, to determine compliance with the plans and specifications. The Contractor's submittals shall be [neatly bound in a properly sized 3-ring binder, tabbed by specification section.] [provided in electronic pdf format, tabbed by specification section.] The RPR reserves the right to reject any and all equipment, materials or procedures that do not meet the system design and the standards and codes, specified in this document.

f. All equipment and materials furnished and installed under this section shall be guaranteed against defects in materials and workmanship for a period of at least [twelve (12) months] from final acceptance by the Owner. The defective materials and/or equipment shall be repaired or replaced, at the Owner's discretion, with no additional cost to the Owner.

The Engineer should specify the form in which submittals are to be received and number of copies.

The length of time for guarantee of materials and workmanship should be as stated in the contract between the Owner and Contractor and the contract special provisions.

CONSTRUCTION OF VAULT AND PREFABRICATED METAL HOUSING

109-3.1 Electrical vault building. The electrical vault building must comply with NEC Article 110.31, Enclosure for Electrical Installations, Item (A) Electrical Vaults. Construct the building of materials having adequate structural strength for the conditions and installed location, has a minimum fire rating of two or three hours as determined by the authority having jurisdiction (AHJ), and is bullet resistant to minimum UL 752 Level 4.

Include appropriate details on the plans. For additional information see AC 150/5340-30, Design and Installation Details for Airport Visual Aids.

109-3.2 Concrete. [Concrete shall be proportioned, placed, and cured per Item P-610, Concrete for Miscellaneous Structures.]

If P-610 is not used elsewhere on the project, it is acceptable to replace this paragraph with the following:

Concrete shall be proportioned, placed, and cured per state department of transportation structural concrete with minimum 25% Type F fly ash, and a minimum allowable compressive strength of 4,000 psi (28 MPa).

109-3.3 Precast concrete structures. Precast concrete structures shall be furnished by a plant meeting National Precast Concrete Association Plant Certification Program or another RPR approved third party certification program. Precast concrete structures shall conform to ASTM C478.

109-3.4 Reinforcing steel. Reinforcing steel bars shall be intermediate or structural grade deformed-type bars and shall be per ASTM A615.

109-3.5 Brick. Brick shall be per ASTM C62, Grade SW.

109-3.6 Rigid steel conduit. Rigid steel conduit and fittings shall be per Underwriters Laboratories Standards 6 and 514B.

109-3.7 Plastic Conduit and fittings. Plastic Conduit and fittings shall conform to the requirements of UL-651 and UL-654 schedule 40 polyvinyl chloride (PVC) suitable for use above or below ground.

109-3.8 Lighting. Vault or metal-housing light fixtures shall be of a vapor-proof type.

109-3.9 Outlets. Convenience outlets shall be heavy-duty duplex units designed for industrial service.

109-3.10 Switches. Vault or metal-housing light switches shall be single-pole switches.

109-3.11 Paint.

a. Priming paint for non-galvanized metal surfaces shall be a high solids alkyd primer compatible with the manufacturer's recommendations for the intermediate or topcoat.

b. White paint for body and finish coats on metal and wood surfaces shall be ready-mixed paint conforming to the Master Painter's Institute (MPI), Reference #9, Exterior Alkyd, Gloss.

c. Priming paint for wood surfaces shall be mixed on the job by thinning the specified white paint by adding 1/2 pint (0.24 liter) of raw linseed oil to each gallon (liter).

d. Paint for the floor, ceiling, and inside walls shall be per Porter Paint Company 69, 71, and 79 or equivalent. Walls and ceiling shall be light gray and the floor shall be medium gray.

e. The roof coating shall be hot asphalt material per ASTM D2823. Asbestos-free roof coating per ASTM D4479 may be substituted if required by local codes.

109-3.12 Ground bus. Ground bus shall be 1/8 × 3/4 inch (3 × 19 mm) minimum copper bus bar.

109-3.13 Square duct. Duct shall be square similar to that manufactured by the Square D Company (or equivalent), or the Trumbull Electric Manufacturing Company (or equivalent). The entire front of the duct on each section shall consist of hinged or removable cover for ready access to the interior. The cross-section of the duct shall be not less than 4 × 4 inch (100 × 100 mm) except where otherwise shown in the plans.

109-3.14 Ground rods. Ground rods shall be in accordance with Item L-108.

109-3.15 Vault prefabricated metal housing. The prefabricated metal housing shall be a commercially available unit.

109-3.16 FAA-approved equipment. Certain items of airport lighting equipment installed in vaults are covered by individual ACs listed below:

AC 150/5345-3	Specification for L-821, Panels for Remote Control of Airport Lighting
AC 150/5345-5	Circuit Selector Switch
AC 150/5345-7	Specification for L-824 Underground Electrical Cable for Airport Lighting Circuits
AC 150/5345-10	Specification for Constant Current Regulators and Regulator Monitors

AC 150/5345-13	Specification for L-841 Auxiliary Relay Cabinet Assembly for Pilot Control of Airport Lighting Circuits.
AC 150/5345-49	Specification for L-854, Radio Control Equipment
AC 150/5345-56	Specification for L-890 Airport Lighting Control and Monitoring System (ALCMS)

109-3.17 Other electrical equipment. Distribution transformers, oil switches, cutouts, relays, terminal blocks, transfer relays, circuit breakers, and all other regularly used commercial items of electrical equipment not covered by FAA equipment specifications and ACs shall conform to the applicable rulings and standards of the Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers (IEEE) or the National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA). When specified, test reports from a testing laboratory indicating that the equipment meets the specifications shall be supplied. In all cases, equipment shall be new and a first-grade product. This equipment shall be supplied in the quantities required for the specific project and shall incorporate the electrical and mechanical characteristics specified in the proposal and plans. Equipment selected and installed by the Contractor shall maintain the interrupting current rating of the existing systems or specified rating whichever is greater.

109-3.18 Wire. Wire (in conduit) rated up to 5,000 volts shall be per AC 150/5345-7, Specification for L-824 Underground Electrical Cables for Airport Lighting Circuits. For ratings up to 600 volts, moisture and heat resistant thermoplastic wire conforming to Commercial Item Description A-A-59544A Type THWN-2 shall be used. The wires shall be of the type, size, number of conductors, and voltage shown in the plans or in the proposal.

a. Control circuits. Unless otherwise indicated on the plans, wire shall be not less than No. 12 American wire gauge (AWG) and shall be insulated for 600 volts. If telephone control cable is specified, No. 19 AWG telephone cable per ANSI/Insulated Cable Engineers Association (ICEA) S-85-625 specifications shall be used.

b. Power circuits.

- (1) 600 volts maximum – Wire shall be No. 6 AWG or larger and insulated for at least 600 volts.
- (2) 3,000 volts maximum – Wire shall be No. 6 AWG or larger and insulated for at least 3,000 volts.
- (3) Over 3,000 volts-Wire shall be No. 6 AWG or larger and insulated for at least the circuit voltage.

109-3.19 Short circuit / coordination / device evaluation / arc flash analysis. The Contractor shall, based upon the equipment provided, include as a part of the submittal process the electrical system “Short Circuit / Coordination / Device evaluation / Arc Flash Analysis”. The analysis shall be performed by the equipment manufacturer and submitted in a written report. The analysis shall be signed and sealed by a registered professional Engineer from the state in which the project is located. The analysis shall comply with NFPA-70E and IEEE 1584.

The analysis will include: one line diagrams, short circuit analysis, coordination analysis, equipment evaluation, arc flash analysis and arc flash labels containing at a minimum, equipment name, voltage/current rating, available incident energy and flash protection boundary.

The selected firms field service Engineer shall perform data gathering for analysis completion and device settings, perform device setting as recommended by the analysis and will furnish and install the arc flash labels. The components worst case incident energy will be considered the available arc flash energy at that specific point in the system. Submit three written copies and one electronic copy of the report.

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

CONSTRUCTION OF VAULT AND PREFABRICATED METAL HOUSING

109-4.1 General. The Contractor shall construct the transformer vault or prefabricated metal housing at the location indicated in the plans. Vault construction shall be reinforced concrete, concrete masonry, or brick wall as specified. The metal housing shall be prefabricated equipment enclosure to be supplied in the size specified. The mounting pad or floor details, installation methods, and equipment placement are shown in the plans. Precast concrete structures shall be furnished by a plant meeting National Precast Concrete Association Plant Certification Program or another engineer approved third party certification program.

The Contractor shall clear, grade, and seed the area around the vault or metal housing for a minimum distance of 10 feet (3 m) on all sides. The slope shall be not less than 1/2 inch per foot (12 mm per 0.3 m) away from the vault or metal housing in all directions.

The vault shall provide adequate protection against weather elements, including rain, wind-driven dust, snow, ice and excessive heat. The vault shall have sufficient filtered ventilation, to assure that the interior room temperatures and conditions do not exceed the recommended limits of the electrical equipment to be installed in the vault. The Contractor is responsible for contacting the manufacturer of the equipment to be installed to obtain environmental limitations of the equipment to be installed. [Refer to the electrical vault detail plan sheets for construction requirements. The prefabricated building shall include roof, walls and floor in accordance with the details and these specifications.]

The electrical vault shall provide reasonable protection of the equipment that it is intended to house. Because most of the equipment located in the vault is likely housed in NEMA 1 enclosures, the vault itself shall be designed to provide sufficient protection against weather elements.

Assure that the vault that is to be supplied has sufficient environmental controls to provide adequate ventilation to maintain temperatures within operational requirements of the equipment to be installed. In addition, make sure that vault has sufficient seals and/or filters on doors and other openings to assure that wind-driven dust does not affect the operation of equipment.

109-4.2 Foundation and walls.

a. Reinforced concrete construction. The Contractor shall construct the foundation and walls per the details shown in the plans. Unless otherwise specified, internal ties shall be of the mechanical type so that when the forms are removed the ends of the ties shall be at least one inch (25 mm) beneath the concrete surface; the holes shall be plugged and finished to prevent discoloration. Reinforcing steel shall be placed, as shown in the drawings, and secured in position to prevent displacement during the concrete placement.

The external surfaces of the concrete shall be thoroughly worked during the placing operation to force all coarse aggregate from the surface. Thoroughly work the mortar against the forms to produce a smooth finish free from air pockets and honeycomb.

The surface film of all pointed surfaces shall be removed before setting occurs. As soon as the pointing has set sufficiently, the entire surface inside and outside of the vault shall be thoroughly wet with water and rubbed with a No. 16 carborundum stone, or equivalent quality abrasive, bringing the surface to

a paste. All form marks and projections shall be removed. The surface produced shall be smooth and dense without pits or irregularities. The materials which have been ground into a paste during the rubbing process shall be spread or brushed uniformly over the entire surface (except the interior surfaces that are to be painted shall have all paste removed by washing before painting) and permitted to reset. Final exterior finish shall be obtained by rubbing with No. 30 carborundum stone, or an equivalent quality abrasive. The surface shall be rubbed until the entire surface is smooth and uniform in color.

b. Brick and concrete construction. When this type of construction is specified, the foundation shall be concrete conforming to the details shown in the plans. The outer edge of the foundation at the floor level shall be beveled 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) at 45 degrees. Brick walls shall be 8 inches (200 mm) thick, laid in running bond with every sixth course a header course. Brick shall be laid in cement mortar (one part masonry cement and 3 parts sand) with full mortar bed and shoved joints. All joints shall be completely filled with mortar, and facing brick shall be back-parged with mortar as work progresses. All joints shall be 3/8 inch (9 mm) thick, exterior joints tooled concave, and interior joints struck flush. Both interior and exterior brick surfaces shall be cleaned and nail holes, cracks and other defects filled with mortar. When specified, a nonfading mineral pigment mortar coloring shall be added to the mortar. Steel reinforcing bars, 3/8 inch (9 mm) in diameter and 12 inches (300 mm) long, shall be set vertically in the center of the brick wall on not more than 2 feet (60 cm) centers to project 2-1/2 inches (60 mm) into the concrete roof slab. Lintels for supporting the brickwork over doors, windows, and louvers shall consist of two 4 × 3 × 3/8 inch (100 × 75 × 9 mm) steel angles. Lintels shall be painted with one coat of corrosion-inhibiting primer before installation, and all exposed parts shall be painted similar to doors and window sash after installation.

Window sills may be concrete poured in place or precast concrete as indicated in the plans. All exposed surfaces shall have a rubbed finish as specified under reinforced concrete construction. After completion, all interior and exterior faces of walls shall be scrubbed with a solution of muriatic acid and water in the proportions of not less than one part acid to 10 parts of water. All traces of efflorescence, loose mortar, and mortar stain shall be removed, and the walls washed down with clear water.

c. Concrete masonry construction. When this type of construction is specified, the foundation shall be concrete conforming to the details shown in the plans. The concrete masonry units shall be standard sizes and shapes and shall conform to ASTM C90 and shall include the closures, jambs, and other shapes required by the construction as shown in the plans. Standard construction practice shall be followed for this type of work including mortar, joints, reinforcing steel for extensions into roof slab, etc. Plaster for interior walls, if specified, shall be Portland cement plaster.

109-4.3 Roof. The roof shall be reinforced concrete as shown in the plans. Reinforcing steel shall be placed as shown in the drawing and secured in position to prevent displacement during the pouring of the concrete. The concrete shall be poured monolithically and shall be free of honeycombs and voids. The surface shall have a steel-troweled finish and shall be sloped as shown in the drawing. The underside of the roof slab shall be finished in the same manner as specified for walls.

One brush or mop coat of hot asphalt roof coating shall be applied to the top surface of the roof slab. The asphalt material shall be heated to within the range specified by the manufacturer and immediately applied to the roof. The finished coat shall be continuous over the roof surface and free from holidays and blisters. Smears and dribbles of asphalt on the roof edges and building walls shall be removed.

109-4.4 Floor. Construct building foundation in accordance with the details shown in the plans. The floor shall be reinforced concrete as shown in the drawings. When present, all sod, roots, refuse, and other perishable material shall be removed from the area under the floor to a depth of 8 inches (200 mm), unless a greater depth is specified in the invitation for bids. This area shall be backfilled with materials consisting of sand, cinders, gravel, or stone. Fill shall be placed in layers not to exceed 4 inches (100 mm) and shall be thoroughly compacted by tamping or rolling. A layer of building paper shall be placed over the fill prior to placing concrete. The floor surfaces shall have a steel-troweled finish. The floor shall be

level unless a drain is specified, in which case the floor shall be pitched 1/4 inch (6 mm) per foot downward toward the drain. A 1/4-inch (6-mm) asphalt felt expansion joint shall be placed between floor and foundation walls. The floor shall be poured monolithically and shall be free of honeycombs and voids.

109-4.5 Floor drain. If shown in the plans, a floor drain and dry well shall be installed in the center of the floor of the equipment room. The dry well shall be excavated 4 × 4 feet (1.2 × 1.2 m) square and to a depth of 4 feet (1.2 m) below the finished floor elevation and shall be backfilled to the elevation of the underside of the floor with gravel - which shall all pass a 2-inch (50 mm) mesh sieve and shall all be retained on a 1/4-inch (6.3 mm) mesh sieve. The gravel backfill shall be placed in 6 inch (150 mm) maximum layers, and the entire surface of each layer shall be tamped either with a mechanical tamper or with a hand tamper weighing not less than 25 pounds (11 kg) and having a face area of not more than 36 square inches (232 square cm) nor less than 16 square inches (103 square cm). The drain inlet shall be set flush in the concrete floor. The drain shall have a clear opening of not less than 8 inches (200 mm) in diameter.

109-4.6 Conduits in floor and foundation. Conduits shall be installed in the floor and through the foundation walls per the details shown in the plans. All underground conduit shall be painted with an asphalt compound. Conduit shall be installed with a coupling or metal conduit adapter flush with the top of the floor. All incoming conduit shall be closed with a pipe plug to prevent the entrance of foreign material during construction. Space conduit entrances shall be left closed.

109-4.7 Doors. Doors shall be metal-clad fireproof Class A (three (3) hour rated) doors conforming to requirements of the National Electrical Code (NEC) and local electrical codes. Panic bar exit hardware shall be installed per NEC requirements. Refer to the new electrical vault detail plan sheets for construction requirements.

109-4.8 Painting. The floor, ceiling, and inside walls of concrete construction shall first be given a hardening treatment, after which the Contractor shall apply two coats of paint as specified below, except that interior face brick walls need not be painted. The hardening treatment shall consist of applying two coats of either a commercial floor hardener or a solution made by dissolving 2 pounds (0.9 kg) of magnesium fluorosilicate or zinc sulfate crystals in one gallon (liter) of water. Each coat shall be allowed to dry at least 48 hours before the next application. After the second treating coat has dried, the surfaces shall be brushed clean of all crystals and thoroughly washed with clear water. Paint for walls and ceiling shall be a light gray color approved by the RPR. The floor paint shall be a medium gray color approved by the RPR. Before painting, the surfaces shall be dry and clean. The first coat shall be thinned by adding 2/3-quart (0.63 liters) of spar varnish and 1/3-quart (0.31 liters) of turpentine to each gallon (liter) of paint. The second coat shall be applied without thinning. All doors, lintels, and windows shall be cleaned to remove any rust or foreign material and shall be given one body and one finish coat of white paint. Bare metal surfaces shall be given a prime coat of corrosion-inhibiting primer prior to the body and finish coats.

109-4.9 Lights and switches. The Contractor shall furnish and install a minimum of two duplex convenience outlets in the vault room. Where a control room is specified, at least two duplex outlets shall be installed.

INSTALLATION OF EQUIPMENT IN VAULT OR PREFABRICATED METAL HOUSING

109-5.1 General. The Contractor shall furnish, install, and connect all equipment, equipment accessories, conduit, cables, wires, buses, grounds, and support necessary to ensure a complete and operable electrical distribution center for the airport lighting system as specified herein and shown in the plans. When specified, an emergency power supply and transfer switch shall be provided and installed.

The equipment installation and mounting shall comply with the requirements of the National Electrical Code and local code agency having jurisdiction. All electrical work shall comply with the NEC and local code agency having jurisdiction including the separation of under 600V work from 5,000V work.”

109-5.2 Power supply equipment. Transformers, regulators, booster transformers, and other power supply equipment items shall be furnished and installed at the location shown in the plans or as directed by the RPR. The power supply equipment shall be set on steel “H” sections, “I” beams, channels, or concrete blocks to provide a minimum space of 1-1/2 inch (38 mm) between the equipment and the floor. The equipment shall be placed so as not to obstruct the oil-sampling plugs of the oil-filled units; and name-plates shall, so far as possible, not be obscured.

If specified in the plans and specifications, equipment for an alternate power source or an emergency power generator shall be furnished and installed. The alternate power supply installation shall include all equipment, accessories, an automatic changeover switch, and all necessary wiring and connections. The emergency power generator set shall be the size and type specified.

109-5.3 Switchgear and panels. Oil switches, fused cutouts, relays, transfer switches, panels, panel boards, and other similar items shall be furnished and installed at the location shown in the plans or as directed by the RPR. Wall or ceiling mounted items shall be attached to the wall or ceiling with galvanized bolts of not less than 3/8-inch (9 mm) diameter engaging metal expansion shields or anchors in masonry or concrete vaults.

109-5.4 Duct and conduit. The Contractor shall furnish and install square-type exposed metallic ducts with hinged covers for the control circuits in the vault. These shall be mounted along the walls behind all floor-mounted equipment and immediately below all wall-mounted equipment. The hinged covers shall be placed to open from the front side with the hinges at the front bottom.

Wall brackets for square ducts shall be installed at all joints 2 feet (60 cm) or more apart with intermediate brackets as specified. Conduit shall be used between square ducts and equipment or between different items of equipment when the equipment is designed for conduit connection. When the equipment is not designed for conduit connection, conductors shall enter the square-type control duct through insulating bushings in the duct or on the conduit risers.

109-5.5 Wiring and connections. The Contractor shall make all necessary electrical connections in the vault per the wiring diagrams furnished and as directed by the RPR. In wiring to the terminal blocks, the Contractor shall leave sufficient extra length on each control lead to make future changes in connections at the terminal block. This shall be accomplished by running each control lead the longest way around the box to the proper terminal. Leads shall be neatly laced in place.

109-5.6 Marking and labeling. All equipment, control wires, terminal blocks, etc., shall be tagged, marked, or labeled as specified below:

a. Wire identification. The Contractor shall furnish and install self-sticking wire labels or identifying tags on all control wires at the point where they connect to the control equipment or to the terminal blocks. Wire labels, if used, shall be of the self-sticking preprinted type and of the manufacturer’s recommended size for the wire involved. Identification -markings designated in the plans shall be followed. Tags, if used, shall be of fiber not less than 3/4 inch (19 mm) in diameter and not less than 1/32 inch (1 mm) thick. Identification markings designated in the plans shall be stamped on tags by means of small tool dies. Each tag shall be securely tied to the proper wire by a nonmetallic cord.

b. Labels. The Contractor shall stencil identifying labels on the cases of regulators, breakers, and distribution and control relay cases with white oil paint as designated by the RPR. The letters and numerals shall be not less than one inch (25 mm) in height and shall be of proportionate width. The Contractor shall also mark the correct circuit designations per the wiring diagram on the terminal marking strips, which are a part of each terminal block.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

109-6.1 The quantity of vaults to be paid for under this item shall consist of the number of vaults constructed in place and accepted as a complete unit.

109-6.2 The quantity of prefabricated metal housings to be paid for under this item shall consist of the number of housings constructed in place and accepted as a complete unit.

109-6.3 The quantity of equipment to be paid for under this item shall consist of all equipment installed, connected and accepted as a complete unit ready for operation within an existing vault or prefabricated metal housing.

BASIS OF PAYMENT

109-7.1 Payment will be made at the contract unit price for each completed and accepted vault or prefabricated metal housing equipment installation. This price shall be full compensation for furnishing all materials and for all preparation, assembly, and installation of these materials, and for all labor, equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete the item.

Payment will be made under:

Item L-109-7.1	Construction of Airport Transformer Vault in Place - per unit
Item L-109-7.2	Installation of Airport Transformer Vault Equipment in Place - per unit
Item L-109-7.3	Construction of [Prefabricated Metal Housing] [Prefabricated Concrete Building] and Foundation in Place - per unit
Item L-109-7.4	Installation of Equipment with in existing vault or prefabricated metal housing in Place - per unit

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

Advisory Circulars (AC)

AC 150/5340-30	Design and Installation Details for Airport Visual Aids
AC 150/5345-3	Specification for L-821, Panels for Remote Control of Airport Lighting
AC 150/5345-5	Circuit Selector Switch
AC 150/5345-7	Specification for L-824 Underground Electrical Cable for Airport Lighting Circuits
AC 150/5345-10	Specification for Constant Current Regulators and Regulator Monitors
AC 150/5345-13	Specification for L-841 Auxiliary Relay Cabinet Assembly for Pilot Control of Airport Lighting Circuits
AC 150/5345-49	Specification L-854, Radio Control Equipment;
AC 150/5345-53	Airport Lighting Equipment Certification Program

American National Standards Institute / Insulated Cable Engineers Association (ANSI/ICEA)

ANSI/ICEA S-85-625 Standard for Telecommunications Cable Aircore, Polyolefin Insulated, Copper Conductor Technical Requirements

ASTM International (ASTM)

ASTM A615 Standard Specification for Deformed and Plain Carbon-Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement

ASTM C62 Standard Specification for Building Brick (Solid Masonry Units Made from Clay or Shale)

ASTM C90 Standard Specification for Loadbearing Concrete Masonry Units

ASTM D2823 Standard Specification for Asphalt Roof Coatings, Asbestos Containing

ASTM D4479 Standard Specification for Asphalt Roof Coatings – Asbestos-Free

Commercial Item Description (CID)

A-A 59544 Cable and Wire, Electrical (Power, Fixed Installation)
Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers (IEEE)

IEEE 1584 Guide for Performing Arc-Flash Hazard Calculations

Master Painter's Institute (MPI)

MPI Reference #9 Alkyd, Exterior, Gloss (MPI Gloss Level 6)

Underwriters Laboratories (UL)

UL Standard 6 Electrical Rigid Metal Conduit – Steel

UL Standard 514B Conduit, Tubing, and Cable Fittings

UL Standard 514C Nonmetallic Outlet Boxes, Flush-Device Boxes, and Covers

UL Standard 651 Schedule 40, 80, Type EB and A Rigid PVC Conduit and Fittings

UL Standard 651A Type EB and A Rigid PVC Conduit and HDPE Conduit

National Fire Protection Association (NFPA)

NFPA-70 National Electrical Code (NEC)

NFPA-70E Standard for Electrical Safety in the Workplace

NFPA-780 Standard for the Installation of Lightning Protection Systems

END OF ITEM L-109

Item L-110 Airport Underground Electrical Duct Banks and Conduits

DESCRIPTION

110-1.1 This item shall consist of underground electrical conduits and duct banks (single or multiple conduits encased in concrete or buried in sand) installed per this specification at the locations and per the dimensions, designs, and details shown on the plans. This item shall include furnishing and installing of all underground electrical duct banks and individual and multiple underground conduits [and removal of existing duct banks]. It shall also include all turbing trenching, backfilling, removal, and restoration of any paved or turfed areas; concrete encasement, mandrelling, pulling lines, duct markers, plugging of conduits, and the testing of the installation as a completed system ready for installation of cables per the plans and specifications. This item shall also include furnishing and installing conduits and all incidentals for providing positive drainage of the system. Verification of existing ducts is incidental to the pay items provided in this specification.

When removal of existing electrical duct banks and associated equipment is required as a part of the project, the Engineer will edit specification as necessary to cover removal, disposal, and ownership. Include necessary details and information on the plans specifications.

EQUIPMENT AND MATERIALS

110-2.1 General.

a. All equipment and materials covered by referenced specifications shall be subject to acceptance through manufacturer's certification of compliance with the applicable specification when requested by the RPR.

b. Manufacturer's certifications shall not relieve the Contractor of the responsibility to provide materials per these specifications and acceptable to the RPR. Materials supplied and/or installed that do not comply with these specifications shall be removed, when directed by the RPR and replaced with materials, that comply with these specifications, at the Contractor's cost.

c. All materials and equipment used to construct this item shall be submitted to the RPR for approval prior to ordering the equipment. Submittals consisting of marked catalog sheets or shop drawings shall be provided. Submittal data shall be presented in a clear, precise and thorough manner. Original catalog sheets are preferred. Photocopies are acceptable provided they are as good a quality as the original. Clearly and boldly mark each copy to identify products or models applicable to this project. Indicate all optional equipment and delete non-pertinent data. Submittals for components of electrical equipment and systems shall identify the equipment for which they apply on each submittal sheet. Markings shall be made bold and clear with arrows or circles (highlighting is not acceptable). The Contractor is solely responsible for delays in project that accrue directly or indirectly from late submissions or resubmissions of submittals.

d. The data submitted shall be sufficient, in the opinion of the RPR, to determine compliance with the plans and specifications. The Contractor's submittals shall be [neatly bound in a properly sized 3-ring binder, tabbed by specification section.]
[electronically submitted in pdf format, tabbed by specification section.] The RPR reserves the right to reject any and all equipment, materials or procedures that do not meet the system design and the standards and codes specified in this document.

e. All equipment and materials furnished and installed under this section shall be guaranteed against defects in materials and workmanship for a period of at least [twelve (12) months] from final acceptance by the Owner. The defective materials and/or equipment shall be repaired or replaced, at the Owner's discretion, with no additional cost to the Owner.

The Engineer should specify the form in which submittals are to be received and number of copies.

The length of time for guarantee of materials and workmanship should be as stated in the contract between the Owner and Contractor and the contract special provisions.

110-2.2 Steel conduit. Rigid galvanized steel (RGS) conduit and fittings shall be hot dipped galvanized inside and out and conform to the requirements of Underwriters Laboratories Standards 6, 514B, and 1242. All RGS conduits or RGS elbows installed below grade, in concrete, permanently wet locations or other similar environments shall be painted with a 10-mil thick coat of asphaltum sealer or shall have a factory-bonded polyvinyl chloride (PVC) cover. Any exposed galvanizing or steel shall be coated with 10 mils of asphaltum sealer. When using PVC coated RGS conduit, care shall be exercised not to damage the factory PVC coating. Damaged PVC coating shall be repaired per the manufacturer's written instructions. In lieu of PVC coated RGS, corrosion wrap tape shall be permitted to be used where RGS is in contact with direct earth."

110-2.3 Plastic conduit. Plastic conduit and fittings shall conform to the following requirements:

- UL 514B covers W-C-1094-Conduit fittings all types, classes 1 thru 3 and 6 thru 10.
- UL 514C covers W-C-1094- all types, Class 5 junction box and cover in plastic (PVC).
- UL 651 covers W-C-1094-Rigid PVC Conduit, types I and II, Class 4.
- UL 651A covers W-C-1094-Rigid PVC Conduit and high-density polyethylene (HDPE) Conduit type III and Class 4.

Underwriters Laboratories Standards UL-651 and Article 352 of the current National Electrical Code shall be one of the following, as shown on the plans:

a. Type I–Schedule 40 and Schedule 80 PVC suitable for underground use either direct-buried or encased in concrete.

b. Type II–Schedule 40 PVC suitable for either above ground or underground use.

c. Type III – Schedule 80 PVC suitable for either above ground or underground use either direct-buried or encased in concrete.

d. Type III –HDPE pipe, minimum standard dimensional ratio (SDR) 11, suitable for placement with directional boring under pavement.

The type of solvent cement shall be as recommended by the conduit/fitting manufacturer.

110-2.4 Split conduit. Split conduit shall be pre-manufactured for the intended purpose and shall be made of steel or plastic.

110-2.5 Conduit spacers. Conduit spacers shall be prefabricated interlocking units manufactured for the intended purpose. They shall be of double wall construction made of high grade, high density polyethylene complete with interlocking cap and base pads. They shall be designed to accept No. 4 reinforcing bars installed vertically.

110-2.6 Concrete. [Concrete shall be proportioned, placed, and cured per Item P-610, Concrete for Miscellaneous Structures.]

If P-610 is not used elsewhere on the project, it is acceptable to replace this paragraph with the following:

Concrete shall be proportioned, placed, and cured per state department of transportation structural concrete with minimum 25% Type F fly ash, and a minimum allowable compressive strength of 4,000 psi (28 MPa).

110-2.7 Precast concrete structures. Precast concrete structures shall be furnished by a plant meeting National Precast Concrete Association Plant Certification Program or another RPR approved third party certification program. Precast concrete structures shall conform to ASTM C478.

110-2.8 Flowable backfill. Flowable material used to back fill conduit and duct bank trenches shall conform to the requirements of Item P-153, Controlled Low Strength Material.

110-2.9 Detectable warning tape. Plastic, detectable, American Public Works Association (APWA) red (electrical power lines, cables, conduit and lighting cable), orange (telephone/fiber optic cabling) with continuous legend magnetic tape shall be polyethylene film with a metallized foil core and shall be 3-6 inches (75-150 mm) wide. Detectable tape is incidental to the respective bid item.

Specify color and legend.

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

110-3.1 General. The Contractor shall install underground duct banks and conduits at the approximate locations indicated on the plans. The RPR shall indicate specific locations as the work progresses, if required to differ from the plans. Duct banks and conduits shall be of the size, material, and type indicated on the plans or specifications. Where no size is indicated on the plans or in the specifications, conduits shall be not less than 2 inches (50 mm) inside diameter or comply with the National Electrical Code based on cable to be installed, whichever is larger. All duct bank and conduit lines shall be laid so as to grade toward access points and duct or conduit ends for drainage. Unless shown otherwise on the plans, grades shall be at least 3 inches (75 mm) per 100 feet (30 m). On runs where it is not practicable to maintain the grade all one way, the duct bank and conduit lines shall be graded from the center in both directions toward access points or conduit ends, with a drain into the storm drainage system. Pockets or traps where moisture may accumulate shall be avoided. Under pavement, the top of the duct bank shall not be less

than 18 inches (0.5 m) below the subgrade; in other locations, the top of the duct bank or underground conduit shall be not less than 18 inches (0.5 m) below finished grade.

For a closed conduit/duct bank system, the system should be designed to be connected to, and thus drain into, the airfield storm drainage system.

Engineer needs to be careful to define the term “subgrade” as it relates to pavement construction. In areas of pavement construction requiring the placement of embankment, or in areas requiring over-excavation to remove unsuitable material, the desired location of the top of the duct bank needs to be clearly identified in areas susceptible to frost, the top of the duct bank should be placed at or below the level of the frost line.

The Contractor shall mandrel each individual conduit whether the conduit is direct-buried or part of a duct bank. An iron-shod mandrel, not more than 1/4 inch (6 mm) smaller than the bore of the conduit shall be pulled or pushed through each conduit. The mandrel shall have a leather or rubber gasket slightly larger than the conduit hole.

The Contractor shall swab out all conduits/ducts and clean base can, manhole, pull boxes, etc., interiors immediately prior to pulling cable. Once cleaned and swabbed the light bases, manholes, pull boxes, etc., and all accessible points of entry to the duct/conduit system shall be kept closed except when installing cables. Cleaning of ducts, base cans, manholes, etc., is incidental to the pay item of the item being cleaned. All raceway systems left open, after initial cleaning, for any reason shall be recleaned at the Contractor's expense. All accessible points shall be kept closed when not installing cable. The Contractor shall verify existing ducts proposed for use in this project as clear and open. The Contractor shall notify the RPR of any blockage in the existing ducts.

For pulling the permanent wiring, each individual conduit, whether the conduit is direct-buried or part of a duct bank, shall be provided with a 200-pound (90 kg) test polypropylene pull rope. The ends shall be secured and sufficient length shall be left in access points to prevent it from slipping back into the conduit. Where spare conduits are installed, as indicated on the plans, the open ends shall be plugged with removable tapered plugs, designed for this purpose.

All conduits shall be securely fastened in place during construction and shall be plugged to prevent contaminants from entering the conduits. Any conduit section having a defective joint shall not be installed. Ducts shall be supported and spaced apart using approved spacers at intervals not to exceed 5 feet (1.5 m).

Unless otherwise shown on the plans, concrete encased duct banks shall be used when crossing under pavements expected to carry aircraft loads, such as runways, taxiways, taxilanes, ramps and aprons. When under paved shoulders and other paved areas, conduit and duct banks shall be encased using flowable fill for protection.

All conduits within concrete encasement of the duct banks shall terminate with female ends for ease in current and future use. Install factory plugs in all unused ends. Do not cover the ends or plugs with concrete.

Where turf is well established and the sod can be removed, it shall be carefully stripped and properly stored.

Trenches for conduits and duct banks may be excavated manually or with mechanical trenching equipment unless in pavement, in which case they shall be excavated with mechanical trenching

equipment. Walls of trenches shall be essentially vertical so that a minimum of shoulder surface is disturbed. Blades of graders shall not be used to excavate the trench.

When rock is encountered, the rock shall be removed to a depth of at least 3 inches (75 mm) below the required conduit or duct bank depth and it shall be replaced with bedding material of earth or sand containing no mineral aggregate particles that would be retained on a 1/4-inch (6.3 mm) sieve. Flowable backfill may alternatively be used

The Engineer shall determine the type of soil or rock to be excavated and, if rock is indicted to be encountered, indicate on the plans.

Underground electrical warning (Caution) tape shall be installed in the trench above all underground duct banks and conduits in unpaved areas. Contractor shall submit a sample of the proposed warning tape for approval by the RPR. If not shown on the plans, the warning tape shall be located 6 inches above the duct/conduit or the counterpoise wire if present.

Joints in plastic conduit shall be prepared per the manufacturer's recommendations for the particular type of conduit. Plastic conduit shall be prepared by application of a plastic cleaner and brushing a plastic solvent on the outside of the conduit ends and on the inside of the couplings. The conduit fitting shall then be slipped together with a quick one-quarter turn twist to set the joint tightly. Where more than one conduit is placed in a single trench, or in duct banks, joints in the conduit shall be staggered a minimum of 2 feet (60 cm).

Changes in direction of runs exceeding 10 degrees, either vertical or horizontal, shall be accomplished using manufactured sweep bends.

Whether or not specifically indicated on the drawings, where the soil encountered at established duct bank grade is an unsuitable material, as determined by the RPR, the unsuitable material shall be removed per Item P-152 and replaced with suitable material. Additional duct bank supports shall be installed, as approved by the RPR.

All excavation shall be unclassified and shall be considered incidental to Item L-110. Dewatering necessary for duct installation, and erosion per federal, state, and local requirements is incidental to Item L-110.

Unless otherwise specified, excavated materials that are deemed by the RPR to be unsuitable for use in backfill or embankments shall be removed and disposed of offsite.

Any excess excavation shall be filled with suitable material approved by the RPR and compacted per Item P-152.

It is the Contractor's responsibility to locate existing utilities within the work area prior to excavation. Where existing active cables cross proposed installations, the Contractor shall ensure that these cables are adequately protected. Where crossings are unavoidable, no splices will be allowed in the existing cables, except as specified on the plans. Installation of new cable where such crossings must occur shall proceed as follows:

a. Existing cables shall be located manually. Unearthed cables shall be inspected to assure absolutely no damage has occurred

b. Trenching, etc., in cable areas shall then proceed with approval of the RPR, with care taken to minimize possible damage or disruption of existing cable, including careful backfilling in area of cable.

In the event that any previously identified cable is damaged during the course of construction, the Contractor shall be responsible for the complete repair.

110-3.2 Duct banks. Unless otherwise shown in the plans, duct banks shall be installed so that the top of the concrete envelope is not less than 18 inches (0.5 m) below the bottom of the base or stabilized base course layers where installed under runways, taxiways, aprons, or other paved areas, and not less than 18 inches (0.5 m) below finished grade where installed in unpaved areas.

Unless otherwise shown on the plans, duct banks under paved areas shall extend at least 3 feet (1 m) beyond the edges of the pavement or 3 feet (1 m) beyond any under drains that may be installed alongside the paved area. Trenches for duct banks shall be opened the complete length before concrete is placed so that if any obstructions are encountered, provisions can be made to avoid them. Unless otherwise shown on the plans, all duct banks shall be placed on a layer of concrete not less than 3 inches (75 mm) thick prior to its initial set. The Contractor shall space the conduits not less than 3 inches (75 mm) apart (measured from outside wall to outside wall). All such multiple conduits shall be placed using conduit spacers applicable to the type of conduit. As the conduit laying progresses, concrete shall be placed around and on top of the conduits not less than 3 inches (75 mm) thick unless otherwise shown on the plans. All conduits shall terminate with female ends for ease of access in current and future use. Install factory plugs in all unused ends. Do not cover the ends or plugs with concrete.

Conduits forming the duct bank shall be installed using conduit spacers. No. 4 reinforcing bars shall be driven vertically into the soil a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) to anchor the assembly into the earth prior to placing the concrete encasement. For this purpose, the spacers shall be fastened down with locking collars attached to the vertical bars. Spacers shall be installed at 5-foot (1.5-m) intervals. Spacers shall be in the proper sizes and configurations to fit the conduits. Locking collars and spacers shall be submitted to the RPR for review prior to use.

When specified, the Contractor shall reinforce the bottom side and top of encasements with steel reinforcing mesh or fabric or other approved metal reinforcement. When directed, the Contractor shall supply additional supports where the ground is soft and boggy, where ducts cross under roadways, or where shown on the plans. Under such conditions, the complete duct structure shall be supported on reinforced concrete footings, piers, or piles located at approximately 5-foot (1.5-m) intervals.

All pavement surfaces that are to have ducts installed therein shall be neatly saw cut to form a vertical face. All excavation shall be included in the contract with price for the duct.

Install a plastic, detectable, color as noted, 3 to 6 inches (75 to 150 mm) wide tape, 8 inches (200 mm) minimum below grade above all underground conduit or duct lines not installed under pavement. Utilize the 3-inch (75-mm) wide tape only for single conduit runs. Utilize the 6-inch (150-mm) wide tape for multiple conduits and duct banks. For duct banks equal to or greater than 24 inches (600 mm) in width, utilize more than one tape for sufficient coverage and identification of the duct bank as required.

When existing cables are to be placed in split duct, encased in concrete, the cable shall be carefully located and exposed by hand tools. Prior to being placed in duct, the RPR shall be notified so that he may inspect the cable and determine that it is in good condition. Where required, split duct shall be installed as shown on the drawings or as required by the RPR.

110-3.3 Conduits without concrete encasement. Trenches for single-conduit lines shall be not less than 6 inches (150 mm) nor more than 12 inches (300 mm) wide. The trench for 2 or more conduits installed at the same level shall be proportionately wider. Trench bottoms for conduits without concrete encasement shall be made to conform accurately to grade so as to provide uniform support for the conduit along its entire length.

Unless otherwise shown on the plans, a layer of fine earth material, at least 4 inches (100 mm) thick (loose measurement) shall be placed in the bottom of the trench as bedding for the conduit. The bedding

material shall consist of soft dirt, sand or other fine fill, and it shall contain no particles that would be retained on a 1/4-inch (6.3 mm) sieve. The bedding material shall be tamped until firm. Flowable backfill may alternatively be used.

Unless otherwise shown on plans, conduits shall be installed so that the tops of all conduits within the Airport's secured area where trespassing is prohibited are at least 18 inches (0.5 m) below the finished grade. Conduits outside the Airport's secured area shall be installed so that the tops of the conduits are at least 24 inches (60 cm) below the finished grade per National Electric Code (NEC), Table 300.5.

When two or more individual conduits intended to carry conductors of equivalent voltage insulation rating are installed in the same trench without concrete encasement, they shall be spaced not less than 3 inches (75 mm) apart (measured from outside wall to outside wall) in a horizontal direction and not less than 6 inches (150 mm) apart in a vertical direction. Where two or more individual conduits intended to carry conductors of differing voltage insulation rating are installed in the same trench without concrete encasement, they shall be placed not less than 3 inches (75 mm) apart (measured from outside wall to outside wall) in a horizontal direction and not less than 6 inches (150 mm) apart in a vertical direction.

Trenches shall be opened the complete length between normal termination points before conduit is installed so that if any unforeseen obstructions are encountered, proper provisions can be made to avoid them.

Conduits shall be installed using conduit spacers. No. 4 reinforcing bars shall be driven vertically into the soil a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) to anchor the assembly into the earth while backfilling. For this purpose, the spacers shall be fastened down with locking collars attached to the vertical bars. Spacers shall be installed at 5-foot (1.5-m) intervals. Spacers shall be in the proper sizes and configurations to fit the conduits. Locking collars and spacers shall be submitted to the RPR for review prior to use.

110-3.4 Markers. The location of each end and of each change of direction of conduits and duct banks shall be marked by a concrete slab marker 2 feet (60 cm) square and 4 - 6 inches (100 - 150 mm) thick extending approximately one inch (25 mm) above the surface. The markers shall also be located directly above the ends of all conduits or duct banks, except where they terminate in a junction/access structure or building. Each cable or duct run from a line of lights and signs to the equipment vault must be marked at approximately every 200 feet (61 m) along the cable or duct run, with an additional marker at each change of direction of cable or duct run.

The Contractor shall impress the word "DUCT" or "CONDUIT" on each marker slab. Impression of letters shall be done in a manner, approved by the RPR, for a neat, professional appearance. All letters and words must be neatly stenciled. After placement, all markers shall be given one coat of high-visibility orange paint, as approved by the RPR. The Contractor shall also impress on the slab the number and size of conduits beneath the marker along with all other necessary information as determined by the RPR. The letters shall be 4 inches (100 mm) high and 3 inches (75 mm) wide with width of stroke 1/2 inch (12 mm) and 1/4 inch (6 mm) deep or as large as the available space permits. Furnishing and installation of duct markers is incidental to the respective duct pay item.

110-3.5 Backfilling for conduits. For conduits, 8 inches (200 mm) of sand, soft earth, or other fine fill (loose measurement) shall be placed around the conduits ducts and carefully tamped around and over them with hand tampers. The remaining trench shall then be backfilled and compacted per Item P-152 except that material used for back fill shall be select material not larger than 4 inches (100 mm) in diameter.

Flowable backfill may alternatively be used.

Trenches shall not contain pools of water during back filling operations.

The trench shall be completely backfilled and tamped level with the adjacent surface; except that, where sod is to be placed over the trench, the backfilling shall be stopped at a depth equal to the thickness of the sod to be used, with proper allowance for settlement.

Any excess excavated material shall be removed and disposed of per instructions issued by the RPR.

110-3.6 Backfilling for duct banks. After the concrete has cured, the remaining trench shall be backfilled and compacted per Item P-152 "Excavation and Embankment" except that the material used for backfill shall be select material not larger than 4 inches (100 mm) in diameter. In addition to the requirements of Item P-152, where duct banks are installed under pavement, one moisture/density test per lift shall be made for each 250 linear feet (76 m) of duct bank or one work period's construction, whichever is less.

Flowable backfill may alternatively be used.

Trenches shall not contain pools of water during backfilling operations.

The trench shall be completely backfilled and tamped level with the adjacent surface; except that, where sod is to be placed over the trench, the backfilling shall be stopped at a depth equal to the thickness of the sod to be used, with proper allowance for settlement.

Any excess excavated material shall be removed and disposed of per instructions issued by the RPR.

110-3.7 Restoration. Where sod has been removed, it shall be replaced as soon as possible after the backfilling is completed. All areas disturbed by the work shall be restored to its original condition. The restoration shall include [sodding][topsoiling][fertilizing][liming] [seeding][sprigging][mulching] shown on the plans. The Contractor shall be held responsible for maintaining all disturbed surfaces and replacements until final acceptance. All restoration shall be considered incidental to the respective L-110 pay item. Following restoration of all trenching near airport movement surfaces, the Contractor shall thoroughly visually inspect the area for foreign object debris (FOD), and remove any such FOD that is found. This FOD inspection and removal shall be considered incidental to the pay item of which it is a component part.

Engineer to specify the correct method of turfing and include in the construction documents the appropriate FAA turfing specification for restoration related to the installation of such duct banks and conduits.

110-3.8 Ownership of removed cable. [___]

The ownership of any cable to be removed should be specified in this section. If the owner is to retain, specify how the removed cable is to be coiled, banded to pallets, delivered to, etc.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

110-4.1 Underground conduits and duct banks shall be measured by the linear feet (meter) of conduits and duct banks installed, including encasement, locator tape, trenching and backfill with designated

material, and restoration, and for drain lines, the termination at the drainage structure, all measured in place, completed, and accepted. Separate measurement shall be made for the various types and sizes.

BASIS OF PAYMENT

110-5.1 Payment will be made at the contract unit price per linear foot for each type and size of conduit and duct bank completed and accepted, including trench and backfill with the designated material, and, for drain lines, the termination at the drainage structure. This price shall be full compensation for removal and disposal of existing duct banks and conduits as shown on the plans, furnishing all materials and for all preparation, assembly, and installation of these materials, and for all labor, equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete this item per the provisions and intent of the plans and specifications.

The Engineer must show existing duct banks and conduits that require removal and disposal on the plans.

Payment will be made under:

Item L-110-5.1 [Concrete Encased] [Non-Encased] Electrical Duct
Bank, [# and Size] - per linear foot (meter)

Item L-110-5.2 [Concrete Encased] [Non-Encased] Electrical Conduit,
[# and Size] - per linear foot (meter)

Select “Concrete Encased” or “Non-Encased” for the duct bank description. Electrical ducts are defined as electrical conduits suitable for use underground or embedded in concrete (but most of the time, we think of them as being concrete encased conduits). When more than the normal minimum 18 inch (0.5 m) depth is required, then list it in the pay item description. This is allowed since the specification says “unless otherwise shown on the Plans,” so this is a pay item requirement and NOT a modification to standard. You may need minimum 24 inches (600 mm), then minimum 30-inch (762 mm) for secondary services, and minimum 42 inches (1 m) or 48 inches (120 cm) if installing empty conduits for utility primary30” conductors.

Examples are shown below. Duct banks are noted to have additional minimum cover requirements, and the conduits are acceptable at 18-inch (0.5 m) minimum cover so no added text needed (unless you do have a conduit requiring additional minimum cover).

For Duct Banks:

Concrete Encased, Electrical Duct Bank, 4-Way 4-inch (100 mm) C, 24-inch (600 mm) Minimum Cover – per Linear Foot

Non-Encased, Electrical Duct Bank, 4-Way 4-inch (100 mm) C, 24-inch (600 mm) Minimum Cover – per Linear Foot

For Conduits:

Concrete Encased, Electrical Conduit, 1-Way 2-inch (50 mm) C – per Linear Foot

Non-Encased, Electrical Conduit, 1-Way 2-inch (50 mm) C – per Linear Foot

Note: The concrete utilized above would be minimum 3000 psi up to 4000 psi concrete as specified in Item L-110-2.6.

Note: If you have paved shoulders and are using “Flowable Fill” around the one conduit, then have a pay item for it so it is very clear the fill material being allowed.

Flowable Fill Encased, Electrical Conduit, 1-Way 2-inch (50 mm) C – per Linear Foot

Note: All markers are incidental to the cable or duct pay item.

Note: Clearing existing duct is incidental to the cable installation pay item. However, special circumstances may mean that you need to add clearing existing duct pay items for existing ducts, unknown ducts, etc. especially when you are not re-installing a cable. It is very important to always remove old and abandoned cables and not leave them in the duct bank or conduit or handhole/manhole system. Be sure to include notes to this affect in your drawings, that old and abandoned cables are removed.

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

Advisory Circular (AC)

AC 150/5340-30	Design and Installation Details for Airport Visual Aids
AC 150/5345-53	Airport Lighting Equipment Certification Program

ASTM International (ASTM)

ASTM A615	Standard Specification for Deformed and Plain Carbon-Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement

National Fire Protection Association (NFPA)

NFPA-70	National Electrical Code (NEC)

Underwriters Laboratories (UL)

UL Standard 6	Electrical Rigid Metal Conduit - Steel
UL Standard 514B	Conduit, Tubing, and Cable Fittings
UL Standard 514C	Nonmetallic Outlet Boxes, Flush-Device Boxes, and Covers
UL Standard 1242	Electrical Intermediate Metal Conduit Steel
UL Standard 651	Schedule 40, 80, Type EB and A Rigid PVC Conduit and Fittings

UL Standard 651A Type EB and A Rigid PVC Conduit and HDPE Conduit

END OF ITEM L-110

Page Intentionally Blank

Item L-115 Electrical Manholes and Junction Structures

DESCRIPTION

115-1.1 This item shall consist of electrical manholes and junction structures (hand holes, pull boxes, junction cans, etc.) installed per this specification, at the indicated locations and conforming to the lines, grades and dimensions shown on the plans or as required by the RPR. This item shall include the installation of each electrical manhole and/or junction structures with all associated excavation, backfilling, sheeting and bracing, concrete, reinforcing steel, ladders, appurtenances, testing, dewatering and restoration of surfaces to the satisfaction of the RPR [including removal of existing manholes and junction structures as shown on the plans].

When removal of an existing electrical manholes and junction structures is required as a part of the project, the Engineer will edit specification as necessary to cover removal, disposal, and ownership. Include necessary details and information on the plans specifications.

EQUIPMENT AND MATERIALS

115-2.1 General.

a. All equipment and materials covered by referenced specifications shall be subject to acceptance through manufacturer's certification of compliance with the applicable specification when so requested by the RPR.

b. Manufacturer's certifications shall not relieve the Contractor of the responsibility to provide materials per these specifications. Materials supplied and/or installed that do not comply with these specifications shall be removed (when directed by the RPR) and replaced with materials that comply with these specifications at the Contractor's cost.

c. All materials and equipment used to construct this item shall be submitted to the RPR for approval prior to ordering the equipment. Submittals consisting of marked catalog sheets or shop drawings shall be provided. Submittal data shall be presented in a clear, precise and thorough manner. Original catalog sheets are preferred. Photocopies are acceptable provided they are as good a quality as the original. Clearly and boldly mark each copy to identify products or models applicable to this project. Indicate all optional equipment and delete any non-pertinent data. Submittals for components of electrical equipment and systems shall identify the equipment to which they apply on each submittal sheet. Markings shall be made bold and clear with arrows or circles (highlighting is not acceptable). The Contractor is solely responsible for delays in the project that may accrue directly or indirectly from late submissions or resubmissions of submittals.

d. The data submitted shall be sufficient, in the opinion of the RPR, to determine compliance with the plans and specifications. The Contractor's submittals shall be [neatly bound in a properly sized 3-ring binder, tabbed by specification section.]
[electronically submitted in pdf format, tabbed by specification

section.] The RPR reserves the right to reject any and all equipment, materials or procedures that do not meet the system design and the standards and codes, specified in this document.

e. All equipment and materials furnished and installed under this section shall be guaranteed against defects in materials and workmanship for a period of at least [twelve (12) months] from the date of final acceptance by the Owner. The defective materials and/or equipment shall be repaired or replaced, at the Owner's discretion, with no additional cost to the Owner.

The Engineer should specify the form in which submittals are to be received and number of copies.

The length of time for guarantee of materials and workmanship should be as stated in the contract between the Owner and Contractor and the contract special provisions.

115-2.2 Concrete structures. Concrete shall be proportioned, placed, and cured per [Item P-610, Concrete for Miscellaneous Structures]. Cast-in-place concrete structures shall be as shown on the plans.

115-2.3 Precast concrete structures. Precast concrete structures shall be furnished by a plant meeting National Precast Concrete Association Plant Certification Program or another engineer approved third party certification program. Provide precast concrete structures where shown on the plans.

Precast concrete structures shall be an approved standard design of the manufacturer. Precast units shall have mortar or bitumastic sealer placed between all joints to make them watertight. The structure shall be designed to withstand [____] lb aircraft] loads, unless otherwise shown on the plans. Openings or knockouts shall be provided in the structure as detailed on the plans.

Engineer to specify load characteristics for precast concrete structure based on design aircraft. It is the intent of this specification for the design Engineer to design a cast-in-place structure that is detailed on the plans that will be suitable for the design loads and subgrade soil characteristics. If the Contractor proposes to use a substitute structure design, design calculations shall be submitted according to the procedure in the General Provisions.

Threaded inserts and pulling eyes shall be cast in as shown on the plans.

If the Contractor chooses to propose a different structural design, signed and sealed shop drawings, design calculations, and other information requested by the RPR shall be submitted by the Contractor to allow for a full evaluation by the RPR. The RPR shall review per the process defined in the General Provisions.

115-2.4 Junction boxes. Junction boxes shall be L-867 Class 1 (non-load bearing) or L-868 Class 1 (load bearing) airport light bases that are encased in concrete. The light bases shall have a L-894 blank cover, gasket, and stainless steel hardware. All bolts, studs, nuts, lock washers, and other similar fasteners used for the light fixture assemblies must be fabricated from 316L (equivalent to EN 1.4404), 18-8, 410, or 416 stainless steel. If 18-8, 410, or 416 stainless steel is utilized it shall be passivated and be free from any discoloration. Covers shall be 3/8-inch (9-mm) thickness for L-867 and 3/4-inch (19-mm) thickness for L-868. All junction boxes shall be provided with both internal and external ground lugs.

115-2.5 Mortar. The mortar shall be composed of one part of cement and two parts of mortar sand, by volume. The cement shall be per the requirements in ASTM C150, Type I. The sand shall be per the requirements in ASTM C144. Hydrated lime may be added to the mixture of sand and cement in an amount not to exceed 15% of the weight of cement used. The hydrated lime shall meet the requirements of ASTM C206. Water shall be potable, reasonably clean and free of oil, salt, acid, alkali, sugar, vegetable, or other substances injurious to the finished product.

115-2.6 Concrete. [Concrete shall be proportioned, placed, and cured per Item P-610, Concrete for Miscellaneous Structures.]

If P-610 is not used elsewhere on the project, it is acceptable to replace this paragraph with the following:

Concrete shall be proportioned, placed, and cured per state department of transportation structural concrete with minimum 25% Type F fly ash, and a minimum allowable compressive strength of 4,000 psi (28 MPa).

115-2.7 Frames and covers. The frames shall conform to one of the following requirements:

- a. ASTM A48 Gray iron castings
- b. ASTM A47 Malleable iron castings
- c. ASTM A27 Steel castings
- d. ASTM A283, Grade D Structural steel for grates and frames
- e. ASTM A536 Ductile iron castings
- f. ASTM A897 Austempered ductile iron castings

All castings specified shall withstand a maximum tire pressure of [] psi and maximum load of [] lbs.

Engineer to specify load characteristics for castings based on design aircraft.

All castings or structural steel units shall conform to the dimensions shown on the plans and shall be designed to support the loadings specified.

Each frame and cover unit shall be provided with fastening members to prevent it from being dislodged by traffic, but which will allow easy removal for access to the structure.

All castings shall be thoroughly cleaned. After fabrication, structural steel units shall be galvanized to meet the requirements of ASTM A123.

Each cover shall have the word "ELECTRIC" or other approved designation cast on it. Each frame and cover shall be as shown on the plans or approved equivalent. No cable notches are required.

Each manhole shall be provided with a "DANGER -- PERMIT-REQUIRED CONFINED SPACE, DO NOT ENTER" safety warning sign as detailed in the Contract Documents and in accordance with OSHA 1910.146 (c)(2).

115-2.8 Ladders. Ladders, if specified, shall be galvanized steel or as shown on the plans.

115-2.9 Reinforcing steel. All reinforcing steel shall be deformed bars of new billet steel meeting the requirements of ASTM A615, Grade 60.

115-2.10 Bedding/special backfill. Bedding or special backfill shall be as shown on the plans.

115-2.11 Flowable backfill. Flowable material used to backfill shall conform to the requirements of Item P-153, Controlled Low Strength Material.

115-2.12 Cable trays. Cable trays shall be of [galvanized steel] [plastic]
[aluminum]. Cable trays shall be located as shown on the plans.

Engineer to specify cable tray based on type of structure and user preference.

115-2.13 Plastic conduit. Plastic conduit shall comply with Item L-110, Airport Underground Electrical Duct Banks and Conduits.

115-2.14 Conduit terminators. Conduit terminators shall be pre-manufactured for the specific purpose and sized as required or as shown on the plans.

115-2.15 Pulling-in irons. Pulling-in irons shall be manufactured with 7/8-inch (22 mm) diameter hot-dipped galvanized steel or stress-relieved carbon steel roping designed for concrete applications (7 strand, 1/2-inch (12 mm) diameter with an ultimate strength of 270,000 psi (1862 MPa)). Where stress-relieved carbon steel roping is used, a rustproof sleeve shall be installed at the hooking point and all exposed surfaces shall be encapsulated with a polyester coating to prevent corrosion.

115-2.16 Ground rods. Ground rods shall be one piece, [solid stainless steel]
[copper] or [copper clad steel]. The ground rods shall be of the length and diameter specified on the plans, but in no case shall they be less than 8 feet (2.4 m) long nor less than 5/8 inch (16 mm) in diameter.

Engineer should evaluate the soils in the vicinity of proposed counterpoise and ground rod installations and determine if soil conditions would adversely affect copper. Engineer shall specify the type of ground rod and counterpoise wire to be installed in consideration of the soil conditions.

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

115-3.1 Unclassified excavation. It is the Contractor's responsibility to locate existing utilities within the work area prior to excavation. Damage to utility lines, through lack of care in excavating, shall be repaired or replaced to the satisfaction of the RPR without additional expense to the Owner.

The Contractor shall perform excavation for structures and structure footings to the lines and grades or elevations shown on the plans or as staked by the RPR. The excavation shall be of sufficient size to permit the placing of the full width and length of the structure or structure footings shown.

All excavation shall be unclassified and shall be considered incidental to Item L-115. Dewatering necessary for structure installation and erosion per federal, state, and local requirements is incidental to Item L-115.

Boulders, logs and all other objectionable material encountered in excavation shall be removed. All rock and other hard foundation material shall be cleaned of all loose material and cut to a firm surface either level, stepped or serrated, as directed by the RPR. All seams, crevices, disintegrated rock and thin strata shall be removed. When concrete is to rest on a surface other than rock, special care shall be taken not to disturb the bottom of the excavation. Excavation to final grade shall not be made until just before the concrete or reinforcing is to be placed.

The Contractor shall provide all bracing, sheeting and shoring necessary to implement and protect the excavation and the structure as required for safety or conformance to governing laws. The cost of bracing, sheeting and shoring shall be included in the unit price bid for the structure.

Unless otherwise provided, bracing, sheeting and shoring involved in the construction of this item shall be removed by the Contractor after the completion of the structure. Removal shall be effected in a manner that will not disturb or mar finished masonry. The cost of removal shall be included in the unit price bid for the structure.

After each excavation is completed, the Contractor shall notify the RPR. Structures shall be placed after the RPR has approved the depth of the excavation and the suitability of the foundation material.

Prior to installation the Contractor shall provide a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) of sand or a material approved by the RPR as a suitable base to receive the structure. The base material shall be compacted and graded level and at proper elevation to receive the structure in proper relation to the conduit grade or ground cover requirements, as indicated on the plans.

115-3.2 Concrete structures. Concrete structures shall be built on prepared foundations conforming to the dimensions and form indicated on the plans. The concrete and construction methods shall conform to the requirements specified in Item P-610. Any reinforcement required shall be placed as indicated on the plans and shall be approved by the RPR before the concrete is placed.

115-3.3 Precast unit installations. Precast units shall be installed plumb and true. Joints shall be made watertight by use of sealant at each tongue-and-groove joint and at roof of manhole. Excess sealant shall be removed and severe surface projections on exterior of neck shall be removed.

115-3.4 Placement and treatment of castings, frames and fittings. All castings, frames and fittings shall be placed in the positions indicated on the Plans or as directed by the RPR and shall be set true to line and to correct elevation. If frames or fittings are to be set in concrete or cement mortar, all anchors or bolts shall be in place and position before the concrete or mortar is placed. The unit shall not be disturbed until the mortar or concrete has set.

Field connections shall be made with bolts, unless indicated otherwise. Welding will not be permitted unless shown otherwise on the approved shop drawings and written approval is granted by the casting manufacturer. Erection equipment shall be suitable and safe for the workman. Errors in shop fabrication or deformation resulting from handling and transportation that prevent the proper assembly and fitting of parts shall be reported immediately to the RPR and approval of the method of correction shall be obtained. Approved corrections shall be made at Contractor's expense.

Anchor bolts and anchors shall be properly located and built into connection work. Bolts and anchors shall be preset by the use of templates or such other methods as may be required to locate the anchors and anchor bolts accurately.

Pulling-in irons shall be located opposite all conduit entrances into structures to provide a strong, convenient attachment for pulling-in blocks when installing cables. Pulling-in irons shall be set directly into the concrete walls of the structure.

115-3.5 Installation of ladders. Ladders shall be installed such that they may be removed if necessary. Mounting brackets shall be supplied top and bottom and shall be cast in place during fabrication of the structure or drilled and grouted in place after erection of the structure.

115-3.6 Removal of sheeting and bracing. In general, all sheeting and bracing used to support the sides of trenches or other open excavations shall be withdrawn as the trenches or other open excavations are being refilled. That portion of the sheeting extending below the top of a structure shall be withdrawn, unless otherwise directed, before more than 6 inches (150 mm) of material is placed above the top of the structure and before any bracing is removed. Voids left by the sheeting shall be carefully refilled with selected material and rammed tight with tools especially adapted for the purpose or otherwise as may be approved.

The RPR may direct the Contractor to delay the removal of sheeting and bracing if, in his judgment, the installed work has not attained the necessary strength to permit placing of backfill.

115-3.7 Backfilling. After a structure has been completed, the area around it shall be backfilled in horizontal layers not to exceed 6 inches (150 mm) in thickness measured after compaction to the density requirements in Item P-152. Each layer shall be deposited all around the structure to approximately the same elevation. The top of the fill shall meet the elevation shown on the plans or as directed by the RPR.

Backfill shall not be placed against any structure until approval is given by the RPR. In the case of concrete, such approval shall not be given until tests made by the laboratory under supervision of the RPR establish that the concrete has attained sufficient strength to provide a factor of safety against damage or strain in withstanding any pressure created by the backfill or the methods used in placing it.

Where required, the RPR may direct the Contractor to add, at his own expense, sufficient water during compaction to assure a complete consolidation of the backfill. The Contractor shall be responsible for all damage or injury done to conduits, duct banks, structures, property or persons due to improper placing or compacting of backfill.

115-3.8 Connection of duct banks. To relieve stress of joint between concrete-encased duct banks and structure walls, reinforcement rods shall be placed in the structure wall and shall be formed and tied into duct bank reinforcement at the time the duct bank is installed.

115-3.9 Grounding. A ground rod shall be installed in the floor of all concrete structures so that the top of rod extends 6 inches (150 mm) above the floor. The ground rod shall be installed within one foot (30 cm) of a corner of the concrete structure. Ground rods shall be installed prior to casting the bottom slab. Where the soil condition does not permit driving the ground rod into the earth without damage to the ground rod, the Contractor shall drill a 4-inch (100 mm) diameter hole into the earth to receive the ground rod. The hole around the ground rod shall be filled throughout its length, below slab, with Portland cement grout. Ground rods shall be installed in precast bottom slab of structures by drilling a hole through bottom slab and installing the ground rod. Bottom slab penetration shall be sealed watertight with Portland cement grout around the ground rod.

A grounding bus of 4/0 bare stranded copper shall be exothermically bonded to the ground rod and loop the concrete structure walls. The ground bus shall be a minimum of one foot (30 cm) above the floor of the structure and separate from other cables. No. 2 American wire gauge (AWG) bare copper pigtailed shall bond the grounding bus to all cable trays and other metal hardware within the concrete structure. Connections to the grounding bus shall be exothermic. If an exothermic weld is not possible, connections to the grounding bus shall be made by using connectors approved for direct burial in soil or concrete per UL 467. Hardware connections may be mechanical, using a lug designed for that purpose.

115-3.10 Cleanup and repair. After erection of all galvanized items, damaged areas shall be repaired by applying a liquid cold-galvanizing compound per MIL-P-21035. Surfaces shall be prepared and compound applied per the manufacturer's recommendations.

Prior to acceptance, the entire structure shall be cleaned of all dirt and debris.

115-3.11 Restoration. After the backfill is completed, the Contractor shall dispose of all surplus material, dirt and rubbish from the site. The Contractor shall restore all disturbed areas equivalent to or better than their original condition. All sodding, grading and restoration shall be considered incidental to the respective Item L-115 pay item.

The Contractor shall grade around structures as required to provide positive drainage away from the structure.

Areas with special surface treatment, such as roads, sidewalks, or other paved areas shall have backfill compacted to match surrounding areas, and surfaces shall be repaired using materials comparable to original materials.

Following restoration of all trenching near airport movement surfaces, the Contractor shall thoroughly visually inspect the area for foreign object debris (FOD), and remove any such FOD that is found. This FOD inspection and removal shall be considered incidental to the pay item of which it is a component part.

After all work is completed, the Contractor shall remove all tools and other equipment, leaving the entire site free, clear and in good condition.

115-3.12 Inspection. Prior to final approval, the electrical structures shall be thoroughly inspected for conformance with the plans and this specification. Any indication of defects in materials or workmanship shall be further investigated and corrected. The earth resistance to ground of each ground rod shall not exceed 25 ohms. Each ground rod shall be tested using the fall-of-potential ground impedance test per American National Standards Institute / Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers (ANSI/IEEE) Standard 81. This test shall be performed prior to establishing connections to other ground electrodes.

115-3.13 Manhole elevation adjustments. The Contractor shall adjust the tops of existing manholes in areas designated in the Contract Documents to the new elevations shown. The Contractor shall be responsible for determining the exact height adjustment required to raise or lower the top of each manhole to the new elevations. The existing top elevation of each manhole to be adjusted shall be determined in the field and subtracted/added from the proposed top elevation.

The Contractor shall remove/extend the existing top section or ring and cover on the manhole structure or manhole access. The Contractor shall install precast concrete sections or grade rings of the required dimensions to adjust the manhole top to the new proposed elevation or shall cut the existing manhole walls to shorten the existing structure, as required by final grades. The Contractor shall reinstall the manhole top section or ring and cover on top and check the new top elevation.

The Contractor shall construct a concrete slab around the top of adjusted structures located in graded areas that are not to be paved. The concrete slab shall conform to the dimensions shown on the plans.

The Engineer should require the precast sections be designed per paragraph 115-2.3.

115-3.14 Duct extension to existing ducts. Where existing concrete encased ducts are to be extended, the duct extension shall be concrete encased plastic conduit. The fittings to connect the ducts together shall be

standard manufactured connectors designed and approved for the purpose. The duct extensions shall be installed according to the concrete encased duct detail and as shown on the plans.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

115-4.1 Electrical manholes and junction structures shall be measured by each unit completed in place and accepted. The following items shall be included in the price of each unit: All required excavation and dewatering;; sheeting and bracing; all required backfilling with on-site materials; restoration of all surfaces and finished grading and turfing; all required connections; temporary cables and connections; and ground rod testing

115-4.2 Manhole elevation adjustments shall be measured by the completed unit installed, in place, completed, and accepted. Separate measurement shall not be made for the various types and sizes.

BASIS OF PAYMENT

115-5.1 The accepted quantity of electrical manholes and junction structures will be paid for at the Contract unit price per each, complete and in place. This price shall be full compensation for furnishing all materials and for all preparation, excavation, backfilling and placing of the materials, furnishing and installation of appurtenances and connections to duct banks and other structures as may be required to complete the item as shown on the plans and for all labor, equipment, tools and incidentals necessary to complete the structure.

115-5.2 Payment shall be made at the contract unit price for manhole elevation adjustments. This price shall be full compensation for furnishing all materials and for all preparation, assembly, and installation of these materials, and for all labor, equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary, including but not limited to, spacers, concrete, rebar, dewatering, excavating, backfill, topsoil, sodding and pavement restoration, where required, to complete this item as shown in the plans and to the satisfaction of the RPR.

Payment will be made under:

Item L-115-5.1	Electrical Manhole [size and type] - Per Each
Item L-115-5.2	Electrical Junction Structure [size and type] - Per Each
Item L-115-5.3	Existing Electrical Manhole/Junction Structure Elevation Adjustment [size and type] – Per Each
Item L-115-5.4	Electrical Handhole [Size and Type] –Per Each

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

American National Standards Institute / Insulated Cable Engineers Association (ANSI/ICEA)

ANSI/IEEE STD 81	IEEE Guide for Measuring Earth Resistivity, Ground Impedance, and Earth Surface Potentials of a Ground System

Advisory Circular (AC)

AC 150/5345-7	Specification for L-824 Underground Electrical Cable for Airport Lighting Circuits
AC 150/5345-26	Specification for L-823 Plug and Receptacle, Cable Connectors

AC 150/5345-42	Specification for Airport Light Bases, Transformer Housings, Junction Boxes, and Accessories
AC 150/5340-30	Design and Installation Details for Airport Visual Aids
AC 150/5345-53	Airport Lighting Equipment Certification Program
Commercial Item Description (CID)	
A-A 59544	Cable and Wire, Electrical (Power, Fixed Installation)
ASTM International (ASTM)	
ASTM A27	Standard Specification for Steel Castings, Carbon, for General Application
ASTM A47	Standard Specification for Ferritic Malleable Iron Castings
ASTM A48	Standard Specification for Gray Iron Castings
ASTM A123	Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products
ASTM A283	Standard Specification for Low and Intermediate Tensile Strength Carbon Steel Plates
ASTM A536	Standard Specification for Ductile Iron Castings
ASTM A615	Standard Specification for Deformed and Plain Carbon-Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement
ASTM A897	Standard Specification for Austempered Ductile Iron Castings
ASTM C144	Standard Specification for Aggregate for Masonry Mortar
ASTM C150	Standard Specification for Portland Cement
ASTM C206	Standard Specification for Finishing Hydrated Lime
FAA Engineering Brief (EB)	
EB #83	In Pavement Light Fixture Bolts
Mil Spec	
MIL-P-21035	Paint High Zinc Dust Content, Galvanizing Repair
National Fire Protection Association (NFPA)	
NFPA-70	National Electrical Code (NEC)

END OF ITEM L-115

Page Intentionally Blank

Item L-119 Airport Obstruction Lights

DESCRIPTION

119-1.1 This item shall consist of furnishing and installing obstruction lights per these specifications. Included in this item shall be the furnishing and installing of wood poles, steel or iron pipes, or other supports as required in the plans or specifications and in accordance with the requirements in advisory circular (AC) 70/7460-1, Obstruction Marking and Lighting

This item shall also include all wire and cable connections, the furnishing and installing of all necessary conduits and fittings, insulators, pole steps, pole cross arms, and the painting of poles and pipes. In addition, it includes the furnishing and installing of all lamps and, if required, the furnishing and installing of insulating transformers, the servicing and testing of the installation and all incidentals necessary to place the lights in operation as completed units to the satisfaction of the RPR [including the removal of existing obstruction lights as shown on the plans].

When removal of an existing airport obstruction lights and associated equipment is required as a part of the project, the Engineer will edit specification as necessary to cover removal, disposal, and ownership. Include necessary details and information on the plans specifications.

EQUIPMENT AND MATERIALS

119-2.1 General.

a. Airport lighting equipment and materials covered by specifications shall be certified under AC 150/5345-53, Airport Lighting Equipment Certification Program (ALECP) and listed in the ALECP Addendum.

b. All other equipment and materials covered by other referenced specifications shall be subject to acceptance through manufacturer's certification of compliance with the applicable specification when requested by the RPR.

c. Manufacturer's certifications shall not relieve the Contractor of the responsibility to provide materials per these specifications. Materials supplied and/or installed that do not comply with these specifications shall be removed (when directed by the RPR) and replaced with materials that comply with these specifications at the Contractor's cost.

d. All materials and equipment used to construct this item shall be submitted to the RPR for approval prior to ordering the equipment. Submittals consisting of marked catalog sheets or shop drawings shall be provided. Submittal data shall be presented in a clear, precise and thorough manner. Original catalog sheets are preferred. Photocopies are acceptable provided they are as good a quality as the original. Clearly and boldly mark each copy to identify products or models applicable to this project. Indicate all optional equipment and delete any non-pertinent data. Submittals for components of electrical equipment and systems shall identify the equipment to which they apply on each submittal sheet. Markings shall be made bold and clear with arrows or circles (highlighting is not acceptable). Contractor is solely

responsible for delays in the project that accrue directly or indirectly from late submissions or resubmissions of submittals.

e. The data submitted shall be sufficient, in the opinion of the RPR, to determine compliance with the plans and specifications. [The Contractor's submittals shall be [neatly bound in a properly sized 3-ring binder, tabbed by specification section.] [submitted electronically in pdf format, tabbed by specification section.]] The RPR reserves the right to reject any and all equipment, materials or procedures that do not meet the system design and the standards and codes, specified in this document.

f. All equipment and materials furnished and installed under this section shall be guaranteed against defects in materials and workmanship for at least [twelve (12) months] from final acceptance by the Owner. The defective materials and/or equipment shall be repaired or replaced, at the Owner's discretion, with no additional cost to the Owner.

The Engineer should specify the form in which submittals are to be received and number of copies.

The length of time for guarantee of materials and workmanship should be as stated in the contract h the Owner and Contractor and the contract special provisions.

119-2.2 Obstruction lights. The obstruction lighting assembly shall be Type [___] meeting the requirements of AC 150/5345-43, Specification for Obstruction Lighting Equipment.

119-2.3 Isolation transformers. Where required for series circuits, the isolation transformers shall conform to the requirements of AC 150/5345-47, Specification for Series to Series Isolation Transformers for Airport Lighting Systems.

119-2.4 Transformer housing. Transformer housings, if specified, shall be per AC 150/5345-42, Specification for Airport Light Bases, Transformer Housings, Junction Boxes, and Accessories.

119-2.5 Conduit. Steel conduit and fittings shall be per Underwriters Laboratories Standards 6, 514B, and 1242.

119-2.6 Plastic conduit (for use below grade only). Plastic conduit and fittings shall be per:

- UL 514B covers W-C-1094 - Conduit fittings all types, classes 1 through 3 and 6 through 10
- UL 514C covers W-C-1094 - all types, class 5 junction box and cover in plastic (PVC)
- UL 651 covers W-C-1094 - Rigid PVC Conduit, types I and II, class 4
- UL 651A covers W-C-1094 - Rigid PVC Conduit and high-density polyethylene (HDPE) Conduit type III and class 4

and must be one of the following, as shown on the plans:

- a. Type I—Schedule 40 PVC suitable for underground use either direct-buried or encased in concrete.
- b. Type II—Schedule 40 PVC suitable for either above ground or underground use.

119-2.7 Electrical wire and cable. For ratings up to 600 volts, moisture and heat resistant thermoplastic wire conforming to Commercial Item Description A-A-59544A, Type THWN-2, shall be used. The wires shall be of the type, size, number of conductors, and voltage shown in the plans or in the proposal.

Overhead line wire from pole to pole, where specified, shall be per American National Standards Institute/Insulated Cable Engineers Association (ANSI/ICEA) S-70-547-2007.

119-2.8 Miscellaneous. Paint, poles, pole steps, insulators, and all other miscellaneous materials necessary for the completion of this item shall be new and first-grade commercial products. These products shall be as specified in the plans or specifications.

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

119-3.1 Placing the obstruction lights. The Contractor shall furnish and install single-or double-obstruction lights as specified and shown in the plans. The obstruction lights shall be mounted on poles, buildings, or towers at approximately the location shown in the plans. The exact location shall be approved by the RPR in accordance with AC 70/7460-1, Obstruction Marking and Lighting.

119-3.2 Installation on poles. Where obstruction lights are to be mounted on poles, each obstruction light shall be installed with its hub at least as high as the top of the pole. All wiring shall be run in not less than one inch (25 mm) galvanized rigid steel conduit. If specified, pole steps shall be furnished and installed, the lowest step being 5 feet (1.5 m) above ground level. Steps shall be installed alternately on diametrically opposite sides of the pole to give a rise of 18 inches (0.5 m) for each step. Conduit shall be fastened to the pole with galvanized steel pipe straps and shall be secured by galvanized lag screws. Poles shall be painted as shown in the plans and specifications.

When obstruction lights are installed on existing telephone or power poles, a large fiber insulating sleeve of adequate diameter and not less than 4 feet (1.2 m) long, shall be installed to extend 6 inches (150 mm) above the conductors on the upper cross arm. In addition, the sleeve shall be at least 18 inches (0.5 m) below the conductors on the lower cross arm. The details of this installation shall be per the plans.

119-3.3 Installation on beacon tower. Where obstruction lights are installed on a beacon tower, two obstruction lights shall be mounted on top of the beacon tower using one inch (25 mm) conduit. The conduit shall screw directly into the obstruction light fixtures and shall support them at a height of not less than 4 inches (100 mm) above the top of the rotating beacon. If obstruction lights are specified at lower levels, the Contractor shall install not less than one inch (25 mm) galvanized rigid steel conduit with standard conduit fittings for mounting the fixtures. The fixtures shall be mounted in an upright position in all cases. The conduit shall be fastened to the tower members with Wraplock® straps (or equivalent), clamps, or approved fasteners spaced approximately 5 feet (1.5 m) apart. Three coats of international orange paint per Federal Specification 595, Number 12197 shall be applied (one prime, one body, and one finish coat) to all exposed material installed.

119 3.4 Installation on buildings, towers, smokestacks, etc. Where obstruction lights are to be installed on buildings or similar structures, the installation shall be made per the details shown in the plans. The hub of the obstruction light shall be not less than one foot (30 cm) above the highest point of the obstruction except in the case of smokestacks where the uppermost units shall be mounted not less than 5 feet (1.5 m), nor more than 10 feet (3 m) below the top of the stack. Conduit supporting the obstruction light units shall be fastened to wooden structures with galvanized steel pipe straps and shall be secured by 1-1/2 inch (38 mm) No. 10 galvanized wood screws. Conduit shall be fastened to masonry structures by the use of expansion shields, screw anchors, or toggle bolts using No. 10, or larger, galvanized wood or machine screws. Conduit fastened to structural steel shall have the straps held with not less than No. 10 roundhead machine screws in drilled and tapped holes. Fastenings shall be approximately 5 feet (1.5 m) apart. Three coats of paint shall be applied (one prime, one body, and one finish coat) with color per Federal Specification 595, international orange, number 12197 paint to all exposed material installed.

119-3.5 Series isolation transformers. If it is designed for use in a series lighting circuit, the L-810 series obstruction light does not include a film cutout. Therefore, an isolation transformer is required with each series lamp. Double series units of this type require two isolation transformers. The transformer shall

be housed in a light base per paragraph 119-2.4 or buried directly in the earth per the details shown in the plans.

119-3.6 Wiring. The Contractor shall furnish all necessary labor and materials. The Contractor shall make complete electrical connections from the underground cable or other source of power per the wiring diagram furnished with the project plans. If underground cable is required for the power feed and if duct is required under paved areas, the cable and duct shall be installed per and paid for as described in Item L-108, Underground Power Cable for Airports, and Item L-110, Airport Underground Electrical Duct Banks and Conduit.

119-3.7 Lamps. The Contractor shall furnish and install in each unit one or two lamps that are per the manufacturer's requirements. Provide two lamp sets as spares.

119-3.8 Tests. The installation shall be fully tested by continuous operation for not less than 1/2 hour as a completed unit prior to acceptance. These tests shall include the functioning of each control not less than 10 times.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

119-4.1 The quantity of lights to be paid for under this item shall be the number of single- or double-type obstruction lights installed and accepted as completed units, in place, ready for operation.

BASIS OF PAYMENT

119-5.1 Payment will be made at the contract unit price for each completed obstruction light installed, in place by the Contractor, and accepted by the RPR. This price shall be full compensation for furnishing all materials and for all preparation, assembly, and installation of these materials, and for all labor, equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete this item.

Payment will be made under:

Item L-119-5.1	Airport Obstruction Light, in Place - per each

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

Advisory Circulars (AC)

AC 70/7460-1	Obstruction Marking and Lighting
AC 150/5340-30	Design and Installation Details for Airport Visual Aids
AC 150/5345-7	Specification for L-824 Underground Electrical Cable for Airport Lighting Circuits
AC 150/5345-42	Specification for Airport Light Bases, Transformer Housing, Junction Boxes, and Accessories
AC 150/5345-43	Specification for Obstruction Lighting Equipment
AC 150/5345-47	Specification for Series to Series Isolation Transformers for Airport Lighting Systems
AC 150/5345-53	Airport Lighting Equipment Certification Program

American National Standards Institute / Insulated Cable Engineers Association (ANSI/ICEA)

ANSI/ICEA S-70-547 Standards for Weather-Resistant Polyolefin Covered Connectors
Commercial Item Description (CID)

A-A-59544A Cable and Wire, Electrical (Power, Fixed Installation)

Federal Standard (FED STD)

FED STD 595 Colors used in Government Procurement

National Fire Protection Association (NFPA)

NFPA-70 National Electrical Code (NEC)

Underwriters Laboratories (UL)

UL Standard 6 Electrical Rigid Metal Conduit – Steel

UL Standard 514B Conduit, Tubing, and Cable Fittings Nonmetallic Outlet Boxes, Flush-
Device Boxes, and Covers

UL Standard 651 Schedule 40, 80, Type EB and A Rigid PVC Conduit and Fittings

UL Standard 651A Type EB and A Rigid PVC Conduit and HDPE Conduit

UL Standard 1242 Electrical Intermediate Metal Conduit - Steel

END OF ITEM L-119

Page Intentionally Blank

Item L-125 Installation of Airport Lighting Systems

Item L-125 should be used to indicate type of lights, signs, approach lights and other lighting equipment included in project. The plans and specifications should include sufficient information for the Contractor to procure and install any specified equipment.

Additional equipment types may be added with coordination with the FAA. Delete non-applicable equipment types.

Include information in light and sign schedules in the plans.

DESCRIPTION

125-1.1 This item shall consist of airport lighting systems furnished and installed in accordance with this specification, the referenced specifications, and the applicable advisory circulars (ACs). The systems shall be installed at the locations and in accordance with the dimensions, design, and details shown in the plans. This item shall include the furnishing of all equipment, materials, services, and incidentals necessary to place the systems in operation as completed units to the satisfaction of the RPR.

EQUIPMENT AND MATERIALS

125-2.1 General.

a. Airport lighting equipment and materials covered by Federal Aviation Administration (FAA) specifications shall be certified under the Airport Lighting Equipment Certification Program in accordance with AC 150/5345-53, current version. FAA certified airfield lighting shall be compatible with each other to perform in compliance with FAA criteria and the intended operation. If the Contractor provides equipment that does not perform as intended because of incompatibility with the system, the Contractor assumes all costs to correct the system for to operate properly.

b. Manufacturer's certifications shall not relieve the Contractor of their responsibility to provide materials in accordance with these specifications and acceptable to the RPR. Materials supplied and/or installed that do not comply with these specifications shall be removed, when directed by the RPR and replaced with materials, which do comply with these specifications, at the sole cost of the Contractor.

c. All materials and equipment used shall be submitted to the RPR for approval prior to ordering the equipment. Submittals consisting of marked catalog sheets or shop drawings shall be provided. Clearly mark each copy to identify pertinent products or models applicable to this project. Indicate all optional equipment and delete non-pertinent data. Submittals for components of electrical equipment and systems shall identify the equipment for which they apply on each submittal sheet. Markings shall be clearly made with arrows or circles (highlighting is not acceptable). The Contractor shall be responsible for delays in the project accruing directly or indirectly from late submissions or resubmissions of submittals.

d. The data submitted shall be sufficient, in the opinion of the RPR, to determine compliance with the plans and specifications. The Contractor's submittals shall be submitted in [a neatly bound, properly sized 3-ring binder, tabbed by specification section.] [electronic PDF format, tabbed by specification section.] The RPR reserves the right to reject any or all equipment, materials or procedures, which, in the RPR's opinion, does not meet the system design and the standards and codes, specified herein.

The Engineer will select the format required for submission of the data. The engineer should specify the form in which submittals are to be received and number of copies

e. All equipment and materials furnished and installed under this section shall be guaranteed against defects in materials and workmanship for a period of at least [twelve (12) months] from final acceptance by the Owner. The defective materials and/or equipment shall be repaired or replaced, at the Owner's discretion, with no additional cost to the Owner.

All LED light fixtures, with the exception of obstruction lighting (AC 150/5345-43) must be warranted by the manufacturer for a minimum of 4 years after date of installation inclusive of all electronics." Obstruction lighting warranty is set by the individual manufacturer.

EQUIPMENT AND MATERIALS

125-2.2 Conduit/Duct. Conduit shall conform to Specification Item L-110 Airport Underground Electrical Duct Banks and Conduits.

125-2.3 Cable and Counterpoise. Cable and Counterpoise shall conform to Item L-108 Underground Power Cable for Airports.

125-2.4 Tape. Rubber and plastic electrical tapes shall be Scotch Electrical Tape Numbers 23 and 88 respectively, as manufactured by 3M Company or an approved equal.

125-2.5 Cable Connections. Cable Connections shall conform to Item L-108 Installation of Underground Cable for Airports.

125-2.6 Retroreflective Markers. [Retroreflective markers shall be type L-853 and shall conform to the requirements of AC 150/5345-39.] [Not required.]

125-2.7 Runway and Taxiway Lights. Runway and taxiway lights shall conform to the requirements of AC 150/5345-46. Lamps shall be of size and type indicated, or as required by fixture manufacturer for each lighting fixture required under this contract. Filters shall be of colors conforming to the specification for the light concerned or to the standard referenced.

Lights

Type	Class	Mode	Style	Option	Base	Filter	Transformer	Notes
[]	[]	[]	[]	[]	[]	[]	[]	[]

Indicate type of light, base and transformer including class, mode, style and option as appropriate for project. On elevated lights indicate height. Add rows to table as necessary to indicate all light types required for project. In Notes column indicate bulb type if that is an option as well as fixture height for edge lights.

See AC 150/5340-30 for design and spacing requirements of light system.

See AC 150/5345-46 for specific characteristics of each fixture type.

Indicate fixture height of elevated fixtures.

All text enclosed in brackets requires editing by the engineer.

See engineering FAA Engineering Brief No. 67 "Light Sources other than Incandescent and Xenon for Airport Lighting and Obstruction Lighting Fixtures for additional information on LED fixtures.

Installation details should be shown on the plans with fixtures shown in section view. See AC 150/5340-30 for examples of installation details.

125-2.8 Runway and Taxiway Signs. Runway and Taxiway Guidance Signs should conform to the requirements of AC 150/5345-44.

Signs

Type	Size	Style	Class	Mode	Notes
[]	[]	[]	[]	[]	[]

Indicate type, size, style class and mode of signs for project, adding rows as necessary.

See AC 150/5340-18 for guidance on sign legends and locations.

See AC 150/5345-44 for information about sign sizes, styles, class, and mode.

125-2.9 Runway End Identifier Light (REIL). [The REIL fixtures shall meet the requirements of AC 150/5345-51, Type [L-849V][L-849I], Style [A][B][C][D][E][F].]
[Not required.]

125-2.10 Precision Approach Path Indicator (PAPI). [The light units for the PAPI shall meet the requirements of AC 150/5345-28, Type [L-880][L-881], Style [A][B], Class [I][II].] [Not required.]

Plans should indicate details for location and installation of REILs and PAPIs. See AC 150/5340-30 for requirements for locating and installing REIL and PAPI equipment.

125-2.11 Circuit Selector Cabinet. The circuit selector cabinet shall meet the requirements of AC 150/5345-5, Type L-847, [one][two][three][four] circuit control [as indicated], Class [A, indoor][B, outdoor], Rating [1, for 6.6 amperes][2, for 20 amperes].

125-2.12 Light Base and Transformer Housings. Light Base and Transformer Housings should conform to the requirements of AC 150/5345-42. Light bases shall be Type [L-867][L-868], Class [1A][1B][2A][2B], Size [A][B][C] shall be provided as indicated or as required to accommodate the fixture or device installed thereon. Base plates, cover plates, and adapter plates shall be provided to accommodate various sizes of fixtures.

Use Type L-867 bases for applications not subject to aircraft or heavy vehicle loading. Use Type L-868 for applications subjected to aircraft or vehicle loading.

125-2.13 Isolation Transformers. Isolation Transformers shall be Type [L-830][L-831], size as required for each installation. Transformer shall conform to AC 150/5345-47.

INSTALLATION

Include construction and/or installation details on the plans. Include project installation requirement in the specifications from AC 150/5345-30.

125-3.1 Installation. The Contractor shall furnish, install, connect and test all equipment, accessories, conduit, cables, wires, buses, grounds and support items necessary to ensure a complete and operable airport lighting system as specified here and shown in the plans.

The equipment installation and mounting shall comply with the requirements of the National Electrical Code and state and local code agencies having jurisdiction.

The Contractor shall install the specified equipment in accordance with the applicable advisory circulars and the details shown on the plans.

[Insert project specific installation information from AC 150/5340-30 as required.]

125-3.2 Testing. All lights shall be fully tested by continuous operation for not less than 24 hours as a completed system prior to acceptance. The test shall include operating the constant current regulator in each step not less than 10 times at the beginning and end of the 24-hour test. The fixtures shall illuminate properly during each portion of the test.

125-3.3 Shipping and Storage. Equipment shall be shipped in suitable packing material to prevent damage during shipping. Store and maintain equipment and materials in areas protected from weather and physical damage. Any equipment and materials, in the opinion of the RPR, damaged during construction or storage shall be replaced by the Contractor at no additional cost to the owner. Painted or galvanized surfaces that are damaged shall be repaired in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

125-3.4 Elevated and In-pavement Lights. Water, debris, and other foreign substances shall be removed prior to installing fixture base and light.

A jig or holding device shall be used when installing each light fixture to ensure positioning to the proper elevation, alignment, level control, and azimuth control. Light fixtures shall be oriented with the light beams parallel to the runway or taxiway centerline and facing in the required direction. The outermost edge of fixture shall be level with the surrounding pavement. Surplus sealant or flexible embedding material shall be removed. The holding device shall remain in place until sealant has reached its initial set.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

125-4.1 Reflective markers will be measured by the number installed as completed units in place, ready for operation, and accepted by the RPR. Runway and taxiway lights will be measured by the number of each type installed as completed units in place, ready for operation, and accepted by the RPR. Guidance signs will be measured by the number of each type and size installed as completed units, in place, ready for operation, and accepted by the RPR. Runway End Identifier Lights shall be measured by each system installed as a completed unit in place, ready for operation, and accepted by the RPR.

Precision Approach Path Indicator shall be measured by each system installed as a completed unit, in place, ready for operation, and accepted by the RPR. Abbreviated Precision Approach Path Indicator shall be measured by each system installed as a completed unit, in place, ready for operation, and accepted by the RPR.

Delete non-applicable equipment types. Additional equipment types may be added with coordination with the FAA.

BASIS OF PAYMENT

125-5.1 Payment will be made at the Contract unit price for each complete runway or taxiway light, guidance sign, reflective marker, runway end identification light, precision approach path indicator, or abbreviated precision approach path indicator installed by the Contractor and accepted by the RPR. This payment will be full compensation for furnishing all materials and for all preparation, assembly, and installation of these materials, and for all labor, equipment, tools and incidentals necessary to complete this item.

Payment will be made under:

[Item] [Description]-[each]

Add in item, description and measurement for all lights, signs included in project.

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

Advisory Circulars (AC)

AC 150/5340-18	Standards for Airport Sign Systems
AC 150/5340-26	Maintenance of Airport Visual Aid Facilities
AC 150/5340-30	Design and Installation Details for Airport Visual Aids
AC 150/5345-5	Circuit Selector Switch
AC 150/5345-7	Specification for L-824 Underground Electrical Cable for Airport Lighting Circuits
AC 150/5345-26	Specification for L-823 Plug and Receptacle, Cable Connectors
AC 150/5345-28	Precision Approach Path Indicator (PAPI) Systems
AC 150/5345-39	Specification for L-853, Runway and Taxiway Retroreflective Markers
AC 150/5345-42	Specification for Airport Light Bases, Transformer Housings, Junction Boxes, and Accessories
AC 150/5345-44	Specification for Runway and Taxiway Signs
AC 150/5345-46	Specification for Runway and Taxiway Light Fixtures
AC 150/5345-47	Specification for Series to Series Isolation Transformers for Airport Lighting Systems
AC 150/5345-51	Specification for Discharge-Type Flashing Light Equipment
AC 150/5345-53	Airport Lighting Equipment Certification Program

Engineering Brief (EB)

EB No. 67	Light Sources Other than Incandescent and Xenon for Airport and Obstruction Lighting Fixtures

END OF ITEM L-125

Advisory Circular Feedback

If you find an error in this AC, have recommendations for improving it, or have suggestions for new items/subjects to be added, you may let us know by (1) mailing this form to Manager, Airport Engineering Division, Federal Aviation Administration ATTN: AAS-100, 800 Independence Avenue SW, Washington DC 20591 or (2) faxing it to the attention of the Office of Airport Safety and Standards at (202) 267-5383.

Subject: AC 150/5370-10H

Date: _____

Please check all appropriate line items:

- ☐ An error (procedural or typographical) has been noted in paragraph _____ on page _____.
☐ Recommend paragraph _____ on page _____ be changed as follows:

- ☐ In a future change to this AC, please cover the following subject:
(Briefly describe what you want added.)

- ☐ Other comments:

- ☐ I would like to discuss the above. Please contact me at (phone number, email address).



U.S. Department
of Transportation
**Federal Aviation
Administration**

Advisory Circular

Subject: Operational Safety on
Airports During Construction

Date: 12/13/2017

AC No: 150/5370-2G

Initiated By: AAS-100

Change:

1 **Purpose.**

This AC sets forth guidelines for operational safety on airports during construction.

2 **Cancellation.**

This AC cancels AC 150/5370-2F, *Operational Safety on Airports during Construction*, dated September 29, 2011.

3 **Application.**

This AC assists airport operators in complying with Title 14 Code of Federal Regulations (CFR) Part 139, *Certification of Airports*. For those certificated airports, this AC provides one way, but not the only way, of meeting those requirements. The use of this AC is mandatory for those airport construction projects receiving funds under the Airport Improvement Program (AIP). See Grant Assurance No. 34, *Policies, Standards, and Specifications*. While we do not require non-certificated airports without grant agreements or airports using Passenger Facility Charge (PFC) Program funds for construction projects to adhere to these guidelines, we recommend that they do so to help these airports maintain operational safety during construction.

4 **Related Documents.**

ACs and Orders referenced in the text of this AC do not include a revision letter, as they refer to the latest version. Appendix A contains a list of reading material on airport construction, design, and potential safety hazards during construction, as well as instructions for obtaining these documents.

5 **Principal Changes.**

The AC incorporates the following principal changes:

1. Notification about impacts to both airport owned and FAA-owned NAVAIDs was added. See paragraph 2.13.5.3, NAVAIDs.

2. Guidance for the use of orange construction signs was added. See paragraph 2.18.4.2, Temporary Signs.
3. Open trenches or excavations may be permitted in the taxiway safety area while the taxiway is open to aircraft operations, subject to restrictions. See paragraph 2.22.3.4, Excavations.
4. Guidance for temporary shortened runways and displaced thresholds has been enhanced. See Figure 2-1 and Figure 2-2.
5. Figures have been improved and a new Appendix F on the placement of orange construction signs has been added.

Hyperlinks (allowing the reader to access documents located on the internet and to maneuver within this document) are provided throughout this document and are identified with underlined text. When navigating within this document, return to the previously viewed page by pressing the “ALT” and “←” keys simultaneously.

Figures in this document are schematic representations and are not to scale.

6 **Use of Metrics.**

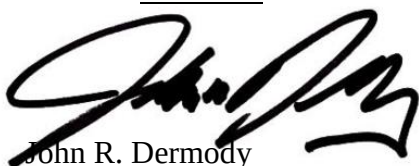
Throughout this AC, U.S. customary units are used followed with “soft” (rounded) conversion to metric units. The U.S. customary units govern.

7 **Where to Find this AC.**

You can view a list of all ACs at http://www.faa.gov/regulations_policies/advisory_circulars/. You can view the Federal Aviation Regulations at http://www.faa.gov/regulations_policies/faa_regulations/.

8 **Feedback on this AC.**

If you have suggestions for improving this AC, you may use the Advisory Circular Feedback form at the end of this AC.



John R. Dermody
Director of Airport Safety and Standards

CONTENTS

Paragraph	Page
Chapter 1. Planning an Airfield Construction Project	1-1
1.1 Overview.....	1-1
1.2 Plan for Safety.....	1-1
1.3 Develop a Construction Safety and Phasing Plan (CSPP).....	1-3
1.4 Who Is Responsible for Safety During Construction?.....	1-4
Chapter 2. Construction Safety and Phasing Plans	2-1
2.1 Overview.....	2-1
2.2 Assume Responsibility.....	2-1
2.3 Submit the CSPP.....	2-1
2.4 Meet CSPP Requirements.....	2-2
2.5 Coordination.	2-6
2.6 Phasing.....	2-7
2.7 Areas and Operations Affected by Construction Activity.	2-7
2.8 Navigation Aid (NAVAID) Protection.....	2-11
2.9 Contractor Access.	2-11
2.10 Wildlife Management.	2-15
2.11 Foreign Object Debris (FOD) Management.	2-16
2.12 Hazardous Materials (HAZMAT) Management.....	2-16
2.13 Notification of Construction Activities.....	2-16
2.14 Inspection Requirements.....	2-18
2.15 Underground Utilities.	2-19
2.16 Penalties.	2-19
2.17 Special Conditions.	2-19
2.18 Runway and Taxiway Visual Aids.	2-19
2.19 Marking and Signs for Access Routes.	2-29
2.20 Hazard Marking, Lighting and Signing.	2-30
2.21 Work Zone Lighting for Nighttime Construction.....	2-32
2.22 Protection of Runway and Taxiway Safety Areas.	2-33
2.23 Other Limitations on Construction.	2-37

Chapter 3. Guidelines for Writing a CSPP	3-1
3.1 General Requirements.....	3-1
3.2 Applicability of Subjects.....	3-1
3.3 Graphical Representations.	3-1
3.4 Reference Documents.	3-2
3.5 Restrictions.	3-2
3.6 Coordination.	3-2
3.7 Phasing.....	3-2
3.8 Areas and Operations Affected by Construction.	3-2
3.9 NAVAID Protection.	3-2
3.10 Contractor Access.	3-3
3.11 Wildlife Management.	3-4
3.12 FOD Management.....	3-4
3.13 HAZMAT Management.....	3-4
3.14 Notification of Construction Activities.....	3-4
3.15 Inspection Requirements.....	3-5
3.16 Underground Utilities.	3-5
3.17 Penalties.	3-5
3.18 Special Conditions.	3-5
3.19 Runway and Taxiway Visual Aids.	3-6
3.20 Marking and Signs for Access Routes.	3-6
3.21 Hazard Marking and Lighting.....	3-6
3.22 Work Zone Lighting for Nighttime Construction.	3-6
3.23 Protection of Runway and Taxiway Safety Areas.	3-7
3.24 Other Limitations on Construction.	3-7
Appendix A. Related Reading Material	A-1
Appendix B. Terms and Acronyms	B-1
Appendix C. Safety and Phasing Plan Checklist.....	C-1
Appendix D. Construction Project Daily Safety Inspection Checklist.....	D-1
Appendix E. Sample Operational Effects Table.....	E-1
Appendix F. Orange Construction Signs	F-1

FIGURES

Number	Page
Figure 2-1. Temporary Partially Closed Runway	2-9
Figure 2-2. Temporary Displaced Threshold.....	2-10
Figure 2-3. Markings for a Temporarily Closed Runway.....	2-21
Figure 2-4. Temporary Taxiway Closure.....	2-22
Figure 2-5. Temporary Outboard White Threshold Bars and Yellow Arrowheads	2-24
Figure 2-6. Lighted X in Daytime.....	2-26
Figure 2-7. Lighted X at Night.....	2-26
Figure 2-8. Interlocking Barricades	2-31
Figure 2-9. Low Profile Barricades	2-32
Figure E-1. Phase I Example	E-1
Figure E-2. Phase II Example	E-2
Figure E-3. Phase III Example.....	E-3
Figure F-1. Approved Sign Legends.....	F-1
Figure F-2. Orange Construction Sign Example 1.....	F-2
Figure F-3. Orange Construction Sign Example 2.....	F-3

TABLES

Number	Page
Table A-1. FAA Publications	A-1
Table A-2. Code of Federal Regulation.....	A-3
Table B-1. Terms and Acronyms.....	B-1
Table C-1. CSPP Checklist.....	C-1
Table D-1. Potentially Hazardous Conditions	D-1
Table E-1. Operational Effects Table	E-4
Table E-2. Runway and Taxiway Edge Protection.....	E-6
Table E-3. Protection Prior to Runway Threshold.....	E-7

Page Intentionally Blank

CHAPTER 1. PLANNING AN AIRFIELD CONSTRUCTION PROJECT

1.1 Overview.

Airports are complex environments, and procedures and conditions associated with construction activities often affect aircraft operations and can jeopardize operational safety. Safety considerations are paramount and may make operational impacts unavoidable. However, careful planning, scheduling, and coordination of construction activities can minimize disruption of normal aircraft operations and avoid situations that compromise the airport's operational safety. The airport operator must understand how construction activities and aircraft operations affect one another to be able to develop an effective plan to complete the project. While the guidance in this AC is primarily used for construction operations, the concepts, methods and procedures described may also enhance the day-to-day airport maintenance operations, such as lighting maintenance and snow removal operations.

1.2 Plan for Safety.

Safety, maintaining aircraft operations, and construction costs are all interrelated. Since safety must not be compromised, the airport operator must strike a balance between maintaining aircraft operations and construction costs. This balance will vary widely depending on the operational needs and resources of the airport and will require early coordination with airport users and the FAA. As the project design progresses, the necessary construction locations, activities, and associated costs will be identified and their impact to airport operations must be assessed. Adjustments are made to the proposed construction activities, often by phasing the project, and/or to airport operations to maintain operational safety. This planning effort will ultimately result in a project Construction Safety and Phasing Plan (CSPP). The development of the CSPP takes place through the following five steps:

1.2.1 Identify Affected Areas.

The airport operator must determine the geographic areas on the airport affected by the construction project. Some, such as a runway extension, will be defined by the project. Others may be variable, such as the location of haul routes and material stockpiles.

1.2.2 Describe Current Operations.

Identify the normal airport operations in each affected area for each phase of the project. This becomes the baseline from which the impact on operations by construction activities can be measured. This should include a narrative of the typical users and aircraft operating within the affected areas. It should also include information related to airport operations: the Aircraft Approach Category (AAC) and Airplane Design Group (ADG) of the airplanes that operate on each runway; the ADG and Taxiway Design Group (TDG)¹ for each affected taxiway; designated approach visibility minimums;

¹ Find Taxiway Design Group information in AC 150/5300-13, Airport Design.

available approach and departure procedures; most demanding aircraft; declared distances; available air traffic control services; airport Surface Movement Guidance and Control System (SMGCS) plan; and others. The applicable seasons, days and times for certain operations should also be identified as applicable.

1.2.3 Allow for Temporary Changes to Operations.

To the extent practical, current airport operations should be maintained during the construction. In consultation with airport users, Aircraft Rescue and Fire Fighting (ARFF) personnel, and FAA Air Traffic Organization (ATO) personnel, the airport operator should identify and prioritize the airport's most important operations. The construction activities should be planned, through project phasing if necessary, to safely accommodate these operations. When the construction activities cannot be adjusted to safely maintain current operations, regardless of their importance, then the operations must be revised accordingly. Allowable changes include temporary revisions to approach procedures, restricting certain aircraft to specific runways and taxiways, suspension of certain operations, decreased weights for some aircraft due to shortened runways, and other changes. An example of a table showing temporary operations versus current operations is shown in Appendix E.

1.2.4 Take Required Measures to Revise Operations.

Once the level and type of aircraft operations to be maintained are identified, the airport operator must determine the measures required to safely conduct the planned operations during the construction. These measures will result in associated costs, which can be broadly interpreted to include not only direct construction costs, but also loss of revenue from impacted operations. Analysis of costs may indicate a need to reevaluate allowable changes to operations. As aircraft operations and allowable changes will vary widely among airports, this AC presents general guidance on those subjects.

1.2.5 Manage Safety Risk.

The FAA is committed to incorporating proactive safety risk management (SRM) tools into its decision-making processes. FAA Order 5200.11, *FAA Airports (ARP) Safety Management System (SMS)*, requires the FAA to conduct a Safety Assessment for certain triggering actions. Certain airport projects may require the airport operator to provide a Project Proposal Summary to help the FAA determine whether a Safety Assessment is required prior to FAA approval of the CSPP. The airport operator must coordinate with the appropriate FAA Airports Regional or District Office early in the development of the CSPP to determine the need for a Safety Risk Assessment. If the FAA requires an assessment, the airport operator must at a minimum:

1. Notify the appropriate FAA Airports Regional or District Office during the project "scope development" phase of any project requiring a CSPP.
2. Provide documents identified by the FAA as necessary to conduct SRM.
3. Participate in the SRM process for airport projects.
4. Provide a representative to participate on the SRM panel.

5. Ensure that all applicable SRM identified risks elements are recorded and mitigated within the CSPP.

1.3 **Develop a Construction Safety and Phasing Plan (CSPP).**

Development of an effective CSPP will require familiarity with many other documents referenced throughout this AC. See Appendix A for a list of related reading material.

1.3.1 List Requirements.

A CSPP must be developed for each on-airfield construction project funded by the Airport Improvement Program (AIP) or located on an airport certificated under Part 139. For on-airfield construction projects at Part 139 airports funded without AIP funds, the preparation of a CSPP represents an acceptable method the certificate holder may use to meet Part 139 requirements during airfield construction activity. As per FAA Order 5200.11, projects that require Safety Assessments do not include construction, rehabilitation, or change of any facility that is entirely outside the air operations area, does not involve any expansion of the facility envelope and does not involve construction equipment, haul routes or placement of material in locations that require access to the air operations area, increase the facility envelope, or impact line-of-sight. Such facilities may include passenger terminals and parking or other structures. However, extraordinary circumstances may trigger the need for a Safety Assessment and a CSPP. The CSPP is subject to subsequent review and approval under the FAA's Safety Risk Management procedures (see paragraph 1.2.5).

1.3.2 Prepare a Safety Plan Compliance Document (SPCD).

The Safety Plan Compliance Document (SPCD) details how the contractor will comply with the CSPP. Also, it will not be possible to determine all safety plan details (for example specific hazard equipment and lighting, contractor's points of contact, construction equipment heights) during the development of the CSPP. The successful contractor must define such details by preparing an SPCD that the airport operator reviews for approval prior to issuance of a notice-to-proceed. The SPCD is a subset of the CSPP, similar to how a shop drawing review is a subset to the technical specifications.

1.3.3 Assume Responsibility for the CSPP.

The airport operator is responsible for establishing and enforcing the CSPP. The airport operator may use the services of an engineering consultant to help develop the CSPP. However, writing the CSPP cannot be delegated to the construction contractor. Only those details the airport operator determines cannot be addressed before contract award are developed by the contractor and submitted for approval as the SPCD. The SPCD does not restate nor propose differences to provisions already addressed in the CSPP.

1.4 **Who Is Responsible for Safety During Construction?**

1.4.1 Establish a Safety Culture.

Everyone has a role in operational safety on airports during construction: the airport operator, the airport's consultants, the construction contractor and subcontractors, airport users, airport tenants, ARFF personnel, Air Traffic personnel, including Technical Operations personnel, FAA Airports Division personnel, and others, such as military personnel at any airport supporting military operations (e.g. national guard or a joint use facility). Close communication and coordination between all affected parties is the key to maintaining safe operations. Such communication and coordination should start at the project scoping meeting and continue through the completion of the project. The airport operator and contractor should conduct onsite safety inspections throughout the project and immediately remedy any deficiencies, whether caused by negligence, oversight, or project scope change.

1.4.2 Assess Airport Operator's Responsibilities.

An airport operator has overall responsibility for all activities on an airport, including construction. This includes the predesign, design, preconstruction, construction, and inspection phases. Additional information on the responsibilities listed below can be found throughout this AC. The airport operator must:

- 1.4.2.1 Develop a CSPP that complies with the safety guidelines of Chapter 2, Construction Safety and Phasing Plans, and Chapter 3, Guidelines for Writing a CSPP. The airport operator may develop the CSPP internally or have a consultant develop the CSPP for approval by the airport operator. For tenant sponsored projects, approve a CSPP developed by the tenant or its consultant.
- 1.4.2.2 Require, review and approve the SPCD by the contractor that indicates how it will comply with the CSPP and provides details that cannot be determined before contract award.
- 1.4.2.3 Convene a preconstruction meeting with the construction contractor, consultant, airport employees and, if appropriate, tenant sponsor and other tenants to review and discuss project safety before beginning construction activity. The appropriate FAA representatives should be invited to attend the meeting. See AC 150/5370-12, Quality Management for Federally Funded Airport Construction Projects. (Note “FAA” refers to the Airports Regional or District Office, the Air Traffic Organization, Flight Standards Service, and other offices that support airport operations, flight regulations, and construction/environmental policies.)
- 1.4.2.4 Ensure contact information is accurate for each representative/point of contact identified in the CSPP and SPCD.
- 1.4.2.5 Hold weekly or, if necessary, daily safety meetings with all affected parties to coordinate activities.
- 1.4.2.6 Notify users, ARFF personnel, and FAA ATO personnel of construction and conditions that may adversely affect the operational safety of the airport via Notices to Airmen (NOTAM) and other methods, as appropriate. Convene a meeting for review and discussion if necessary.
- 1.4.2.7 Ensure construction personnel know applicable airport procedures and changes to those procedures that may affect their work.
- 1.4.2.8 Ensure that all temporary construction signs are located per the scheduled list for each phase of the project.
- 1.4.2.9 Ensure construction contractors and subcontractors undergo training required by the CSPP and SPCD.
- 1.4.2.10 Ensure vehicle and pedestrian operations addressed in the CSPP and SPCD are coordinated with airport tenants, the airport traffic control tower (ATCT), and construction contractors.
- 1.4.2.11 At certificated airports, ensure each CSPP and SPCD is consistent with Part 139.

- 1.4.2.12 Conduct inspections sufficiently frequently to ensure construction contractors and tenants comply with the CSPP and SPCD and that there are no altered construction activities that could create potential safety hazards.
 - 1.4.2.13 Take immediate action to resolve safety deficiencies.
 - 1.4.2.14 At airports subject to 49 CFR Part 1542, *Airport Security*, ensure construction access complies with the security requirements of that regulation.
 - 1.4.2.15 Notify appropriate parties when conditions exist that invoke provisions of the CSPP and SPCD (for example, implementation of low-visibility operations).
 - 1.4.2.16 Ensure prompt submittal of a Notice of Proposed Construction or Alteration (Form 7460-1) for conducting an aeronautical study of potential obstructions such as tall equipment (cranes, concrete pumps, other), stock piles, and haul routes. A separate form may be filed for each potential obstruction, or one form may be filed describing the entire construction area and maximum equipment height. In the latter case, a separate form must be filed for any object beyond or higher than the originally evaluated area/height. The FAA encourages online submittal of forms for expediency at <https://oeaaa.faa.gov/oeaaa/external/portal.jsp>. The appropriate FAA Airports Regional or District Office can provide assistance in determining which objects require an aeronautical study.
 - 1.4.2.17 Ensure prompt transmission of the Airport Sponsor Strategic Event Submission, FAA Form 6000-26, located at https://oeaaa.faa.gov/oeaaa/external/content/AIRPORT_SPONSOR_STRATEGIC_EVENT_SUBMISSION_FORM.pdf, to assure proper coordination for NAS Strategic Interruption per Service Level Agreement with ATO.
 - 1.4.2.18 Promptly notify the FAA Airports Regional or District Office of any proposed changes to the CSPP prior to implementation of the change. Changes to the CSPP require review and approval by the airport operator and the FAA. The FAA Airports Regional or District office will determine if further coordination within the FAA is needed. Coordinate with appropriate local and other federal government agencies, such as Environmental Protection Agency (EPA), Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA), Transportation Security Administration (TSA), and the state environmental agency.
- 1.4.3 Define Construction Contractor's Responsibilities.
- The contractor is responsible for complying with the CSPP and SPCD. The contractor must:

- 1.4.3.1 Submit a Safety Plan Compliance Document (SPCD) to the airport operator describing how it will comply with the requirements of the CSPP and supply any details that could not be determined before contract award. The SPCD must include a certification statement by the contractor, indicating an understanding of the operational safety requirements of the CSPP and the assertion of compliance with the approved CSPP and SPCD unless written approval is granted by the airport operator. Any construction practice proposed by the contractor that does not conform to the CSPP and SPCD may impact the airport's operational safety and will require a revision to the CSPP and SPCD and re-coordination with the airport operator and the FAA in advance.
- 1.4.3.2 Have available at all times copies of the CSPP and SPCD for reference by the airport operator and its representatives, and by subcontractors and contractor employees.
- 1.4.3.3 Ensure that construction personnel are familiar with safety procedures and regulations on the airport. Provide a point of contact who will coordinate an immediate response to correct any construction-related activity that may adversely affect the operational safety of the airport. Many projects will require 24-hour coverage.
- 1.4.3.4 Identify in the SPCD the contractor's on-site employees responsible for monitoring compliance with the CSPP and SPCD during construction. At least one of these employees must be on-site when active construction is taking place.
- 1.4.3.5 Conduct sufficient inspections to ensure construction personnel comply with the CSPP and SPCD and that there are no altered construction activities that could create potential safety hazards.
- 1.4.3.6 Restrict movement of construction vehicles and personnel to permitted construction areas by flagging, barricading, erecting temporary fencing, or providing escorts, as appropriate, and as specified in the CSPP and SPCD.
- 1.4.3.7 Ensure that no contractor employees, employees of subcontractors or suppliers, or other persons enter any part of the air operations area (AOA) from the construction site unless authorized.
- 1.4.3.8 Ensure prompt submittal through the airport operator of Form 7460-1 for the purpose of conducting an aeronautical study of contractor equipment such as tall equipment (cranes, concrete pumps, and other equipment), stock piles, and haul routes when different from cases previously filed by the airport operator. The FAA encourages online submittal of forms for expediency at <https://oeaaa.faa.gov/oeaaa/external/portal.jsp>.

- 1.4.3.9 Ensure that all necessary safety mitigations are understood by all parties involved, and any special requirements of each construction phase will be fulfilled per the approved timeframe.
- 1.4.3.10 Participate in pre-construction meetings to review construction limits, safety mitigations, NOTAMs, and understand all special airport operational needs during each phase of the project.

1.4.4 Define Tenant's Responsibilities.

If planning construction activities on leased property, Airport tenants, such as airline operators, fixed base operators, and FAA ATO/Technical Operations sponsoring construction are strongly encouraged to:

1. Develop, or have a consultant develop, a project specific CSPP and submit it to the airport operator. The airport operator may forgo a complete CSPP submittal and instead incorporate appropriate operational safety principles and measures addressed in the advisory circular within their tenant lease agreements.
2. In coordination with its contractor, develop an SPCD and submit it to the airport operator for approval issued prior to issuance of a Notice to Proceed.
3. Ensure that construction personnel are familiar with safety procedures and regulations on the airport during all phases of the construction.
4. Provide a point of contact of who will coordinate an immediate response to correct any construction-related activity that may adversely affect the operational safety of the airport.
5. Identify in the SPCD the contractor's on-site employees responsible for monitoring compliance with the CSPP and SPCD during construction. At least one of these employees must be on-site when active construction is taking place.
6. Ensure that no tenant or contractor employees, employees of subcontractors or suppliers, or any other persons enter any part of the AOA from the construction site unless authorized.
7. Restrict movement of construction vehicles to construction areas by flagging and barricading, erecting temporary fencing, or providing escorts, as appropriate, as specified in the CSPP and SPCD.
8. Ensure prompt submittal through the airport operator of Form 7460-1 for conducting an aeronautical study of contractor equipment such as tall equipment (cranes, concrete pumps, other), stock piles, and haul routes. The FAA encourages online submittal of forms for expediency at <https://oeaaa.faa.gov/oeaaa/external/portal.jsp>.
9. Participate in pre-construction meetings to review construction limits, safety mitigations, NOTAMs, and understand all special airport operational needs during each phase of the project.

CHAPTER 2. CONSTRUCTION SAFETY AND PHASING PLANS

2.1 Overview.

Aviation safety is the primary consideration at airports, especially during construction. The airport operator's CSPP and the contractor's Safety Plan Compliance Document (SPCD) are the primary tools to ensure safety compliance when coordinating construction activities with airport operations. These documents identify all aspects of the construction project that pose a potential safety hazard to airport operations and outline respective mitigation procedures for each hazard. They must provide information necessary for the Airport Operations department to conduct airfield inspections and expeditiously identify and correct unsafe conditions during construction. All aviation safety provisions included within the project drawings, contract specifications, and other related documents must also be reflected in the CSPP and SPCD.

2.2 Assume Responsibility.

Operational safety on the airport remains the airport operator's responsibility at all times. The airport operator must develop, certify, and submit for FAA approval each CSPP. It is the airport operator's responsibility to apply the requirements of the FAA approved CSPP. The airport operator must revise the CSPP when conditions warrant changes and must submit the revised CSPP to the FAA for approval. The airport operator must also require and approve a SPCD from the project contractor.

2.3 Submit the CSPP.

Construction Safety and Phasing Plans should be developed concurrently with the project design. Milestone versions of the CSPP should be submitted for review and approval as follows. While these milestones are not mandatory, early submission will help to avoid delays. Submittals are preferred in 8.5 × 11 inch or 11 × 17 inch format for compatibility with the FAA's Obstruction Evaluation / Airport Airspace Analysis (OE / AAA) process.

2.3.1 Submit an Outline/Draft.

By the time approximately 25% to 30% of the project design is completed, the principal elements of the CSPP should be established. Airport operators are encouraged to submit an outline or draft, detailing all CSPP provisions developed to date, to the FAA for review at this stage of the project design.

2.3.2 Submit a CSPP.

The CSPP should be formally submitted for FAA approval when the project design is 80 percent to 90 percent complete. Since provisions in the CSPP will influence contract costs, it is important to obtain FAA approval in time to include all such provisions in the procurement contract.

2.3.3 Submit an SPCD.

The contractor should submit the SPCD to the airport operator for approval to be issued prior to the Notice to Proceed.

2.3.4 Submit CSPP Revisions.

All revisions to a previously approved CSPP must be re-submitted to the FAA for review and approval/disapproval action.

2.4 **Meet CSPP Requirements.**

2.4.1 To the extent possible, the CSPP should address the following as outlined in Chapter 3, Guidelines for Writing a CSPP. Details that cannot be determined at this stage are to be included in the SPCD.

1. Coordination.
 - a. Contractor progress meetings.
 - b. Scope or schedule changes.
 - c. FAA ATO coordination.
2. Phasing.
 - a. Phase elements.
 - b. Construction safety drawings.
3. Areas and operations affected by the construction activity.
 - a. Identification of affected areas.
 - b. Mitigation of effects.
4. Protection of navigation aids (NAVAIDs).
5. Contractor access.
 - a. Location of stockpiled construction materials.
 - b. Vehicle and pedestrian operations.
6. Wildlife management.
 - a. Trash.
 - b. Standing water.
 - c. Tall grass and seeds.
 - d. Poorly maintained fencing and gates.
 - e. Disruption of existing wildlife habitat.
7. Foreign Object Debris (FOD) management.
8. Hazardous materials (HAZMAT) management.
9. Notification of construction activities.

- a. Maintenance of a list of responsible representatives/ points of contact.
 - b. NOTAM.
 - c. Emergency notification procedures.
 - d. Coordination with ARFF Personnel.
 - e. Notification to the FAA.
10. Inspection requirements.
- a. Daily (or more frequent) inspections.
 - b. Final inspections.
11. Underground utilities.
12. Penalties.
13. Special conditions.
14. Runway and taxiway visual aids. Marking, lighting, signs, and visual NAVAIDs.
- a. General.
 - b. Markings.
 - c. Lighting and visual NAVAIDs.
 - d. Signs, temporary, including orange construction signs, and permanent signs.
15. Marking and signs for access routes.
16. Hazard marking and lighting.
- a. Purpose.
 - b. Equipment.
17. Work zone lighting for nighttime construction (if applicable).
18. Protection of runway and taxiway safety areas, object free areas, obstacle free zones, and approach/departure surfaces.
- a. Runway Safety Area (RSA).
 - b. Runway Object Free Area (ROFA).
 - c. Taxiway Safety Area (TSA). Provide details for any adjustments to Taxiway Safety Area width to allow continued operation of smaller aircraft. See paragraph 2.22.3.
 - d. Taxiway Object Free Area (TOFA). Provide details for any continued aircraft operations while construction occurs within the TOFA. See paragraph 2.22.4.
 - e. Obstacle Free Zone (OFZ).
 - f. Runway approach/departure surfaces.
19. Other limitations on construction.
- a. Prohibitions.

b. Restrictions.

2.4.2 The Safety Plan Compliance Document (SPCD) should include a general statement by the construction contractor that he/she has read and will abide by the CSPP. In addition, the SPCD must include all supplemental information that could not be included in the CSPP prior to the contract award. The contractor statement should include the name of the contractor, the title of the project CSPP, the approval date of the CSPP, and a reference to any supplemental information (that is, “I, (Name of Contractor), have read the (Title of Project) CSPP, approved on (Date), and will abide by it as written and with the following additions as noted:”). The supplemental information in the SPCD should be written to match the format of the CSPP indicating each subject by corresponding CSPP subject number and title. If no supplemental information is necessary for any specific subject, the statement, “No supplemental information,” should be written after the corresponding subject title. The SPCD should not duplicate information in the CSPP:

1. Coordination. Discuss details of proposed safety meetings with the airport operator and with contractor employees and subcontractors.
2. Phasing. Discuss proposed construction schedule elements, including:
 - a. Duration of each phase.
 - b. Daily start and finish of construction, including “night only” construction.
 - c. Duration of construction activities during:
 - i. Normal runway operations.
 - ii. Closed runway operations.
 - iii. Modified runway “Aircraft Reference Code” usage.
3. Areas and operations affected by the construction activity. These areas and operations should be identified in the CSPP and should not require an entry in the SPCD.
4. Protection of NAVAIDs. Discuss specific methods proposed to protect operating NAVAIDs.
5. Contractor access. Provide the following:
 - a. Details on how the contractor will maintain the integrity of the airport security fence (gate guards, daily log of construction personnel, and other).
 - b. Listing of individuals requiring driver training (for certificated airports and as requested).
 - c. Radio communications.
 - i. Types of radios and backup capabilities.
 - ii. Who will be monitoring radios.
 - iii. Who to contact if the ATCT cannot reach the contractor’s designated person by radio.

- d. Details on how the contractor will escort material delivery vehicles.
- 6. Wildlife management. Discuss the following:
 - a. Methods and procedures to prevent wildlife attraction.
 - b. Wildlife reporting procedures.
- 7. Foreign Object Debris (FOD) management. Discuss equipment and methods for control of FOD, including construction debris and dust.
- 8. Hazardous Materials (HAZMAT) management. Discuss equipment and methods for responding to hazardous spills.
- 9. Notification of construction activities. Provide the following:
 - a. Contractor points of contact.
 - b. Contractor emergency contact.
 - c. Listing of tall or other requested equipment proposed for use on the airport and the timeframe for submitting 7460-1 forms not previously submitted by the airport operator.
 - d. Batch plant details, including 7460-1 submittal.
- 10. Inspection requirements. Discuss daily (or more frequent) inspections and special inspection procedures.
- 11. Underground utilities. Discuss proposed methods of identifying and protecting underground utilities.
- 12. Penalties. Penalties should be identified in the CSPP and should not require an entry in the SPCD.
- 13. Special conditions. Discuss proposed actions for each special condition identified in the CSPP.
- 14. Runway and taxiway visual aids. Including marking, lighting, signs, and visual NAVAIDs. Discuss proposed visual aids including the following:
 - a. Equipment and methods for covering signage and airfield lights.
 - b. Equipment and methods for temporary closure markings (paint, fabric, other).
 - c. Temporary orange construction signs.
 - d. Types of temporary Visual Guidance Slope Indicators (VGSI).
- 15. Marking and signs for access routes. Discuss proposed methods of demarcating access routes for vehicle drivers.
- 16. Hazard marking and lighting. Discuss proposed equipment and methods for identifying excavation areas.
- 17. Work zone lighting for nighttime construction (if applicable). Discuss proposed equipment, locations, aiming, and shielding to prevent interference with air traffic control and aircraft operations.

18. Protection of runway and taxiway safety areas, object free areas, obstacle free zones, and approach/departure surfaces. Discuss proposed methods of identifying, demarcating, and protecting airport surfaces including:
 - a. Equipment and methods for maintaining Taxiway Safety Area standards.
 - b. Equipment and methods to ensure the safe passage of aircraft where Taxiway Safety Area or Taxiway Object Free Area standards cannot be maintained.
 - c. Equipment and methods for separation of construction operations from aircraft operations, including details of barricades.
19. Other limitations on construction should be identified in the CSPP and should not require an entry in the SPCD.

2.5 **Coordination.**

Airport operators, or tenants responsible for design, bidding and conducting construction on their leased properties, should ensure at all project developmental stages, such as predesign, prebid, and preconstruction conferences, they capture the subject of airport operational safety during construction (see AC 150/5370-12, *Quality Management for Federally Funded Airport Construction Projects*). In addition, the following should be coordinated as required:

2.5.1 Progress Meetings.

Operational safety should be a standing agenda item for discussion during progress meetings throughout the project developmental stages.

2.5.2 Scope or Schedule Changes.

Changes in the scope or duration at any of the project stages may require revisions to the CSPP and review and approval by the airport operator and the FAA (see paragraph 1.4.2.17).

2.5.3 FAA ATO Coordination.

Early coordination with FAA ATO is highly recommended during the design phase and is required for scheduling Technical Operations shutdowns prior to construction. Coordination is critical to restarts of NAVAID services and to the establishment of any special procedures for the movement of aircraft. Formal agreements between the airport operator and appropriate FAA offices are recommended. All relocation or adjustments to NAVAIDs, or changes to final grades in critical areas, should be coordinated with FAA ATO and may require an FAA flight inspection prior to restarting the facility. Flight inspections must be coordinated and scheduled well in advance of the intended facility restart. Flight inspections may require a reimbursable agreement between the airport operator and FAA ATO. Reimbursable agreements should be coordinated a minimum of 12 months prior to the start of construction. (See paragraph 2.13.5.3.2 for required FAA notification regarding FAA-owned NAVAIDs.)

2.6 **Phasing.**

Once it has been determined what types and levels of airport operations will be maintained, the most efficient sequence of construction may not be feasible. In this case, the sequence of construction may be phased to gain maximum efficiency while allowing for the required operations. The development of the resulting construction phases should be coordinated with local Air Traffic personnel and airport users. The sequenced construction phases established in the CSPP must be incorporated into the project design and must be reflected in the contract drawings and specifications.

2.6.1 Phase Elements.

For each phase the CSPP should detail:

- Areas closed to aircraft operations.
- Duration of closures.
- Taxi routes and/or areas of reduced TSA and TOFA to reflect reduced ADG use.
- ARFF access routes.
- Construction staging, disposal, and cleanout areas.
- Construction access and haul routes.
- Impacts to NAVAIDs.
- Lighting, marking, and signing changes.
- Available runway length and/or reduced RSA and ROFA to reflect reduced ADG use.
- Declared distances (if applicable).
- Required hazard marking, lighting, and signing.
- Work zone lighting for nighttime construction (if applicable).
- Lead times for required notifications.

2.6.2 Construction Safety Drawings.

Drawings specifically indicating operational safety procedures and methods in affected areas (i.e., construction safety drawings) should be developed for each construction phase. Such drawings should be included in the CSPP as referenced attachments and should also be included in the contract drawing package.

2.7 **Areas and Operations Affected by Construction Activity.**

Runways and taxiways should remain in use by aircraft to the maximum extent possible without compromising safety. Pre-meetings with the FAA ATO will support operational simulations. See Appendix E for an example of a table showing temporary operations versus current operations. The tables in Appendix E can be useful for coordination among all interested parties, including FAA Lines of Business.

2.7.1 Identification of Affected Areas.

Identifying areas and operations affected by the construction helps to determine possible safety problems. The affected areas should be identified in the construction safety drawings for each construction phase. (See paragraph 2.6.2.) Of particular concern are:

2.7.1.1 **Closing, or Partial Closing, of Runways, Taxiways and Aprons, and Displaced Thresholds.**

When a runway is partially closed, a portion of the pavement is unavailable for any aircraft operation, meaning taxiing, landing, or takeoff in either direction on that pavement is prohibited. A displaced threshold, by contrast, is established to ensure obstacle clearance and adequate safety area for landing aircraft. The pavement prior to the displaced threshold is normally available for take-off in the direction of the displacement and for landing and takeoff in the opposite direction. Misunderstanding this difference, may result in issuance of an inaccurate NOTAM, and can lead to a hazardous condition.

2.7.1.1.1 Partially Closed Runways.

The temporarily closed portion of a partially closed runway will generally extend from the threshold to a taxiway that may be used for entering and exiting the runway. If the closed portion extends to a point between taxiways, pilots will have to back-taxi on the runway, which is an undesirable operation. See Figure 2-1 for a desirable configuration.

2.7.1.1.2 Displaced Thresholds.

Since the portion of the runway pavement between the permanent threshold and a standard displaced threshold is available for takeoff and for landing in the opposite direction, the temporary displaced threshold need not be located at an entrance/exit taxiway. See Figure 2-2.

2.7.1.2 Closing of aircraft rescue and fire fighting access routes.

2.7.1.3 Closing of access routes used by airport and airline support vehicles.

2.7.1.4 Interruption of utilities, including water supplies for fire fighting.

2.7.1.5 Approach/departure surfaces affected by heights of objects.

2.7.1.6 Construction areas, storage areas, and access routes near runways, taxiways, aprons, or helipads.

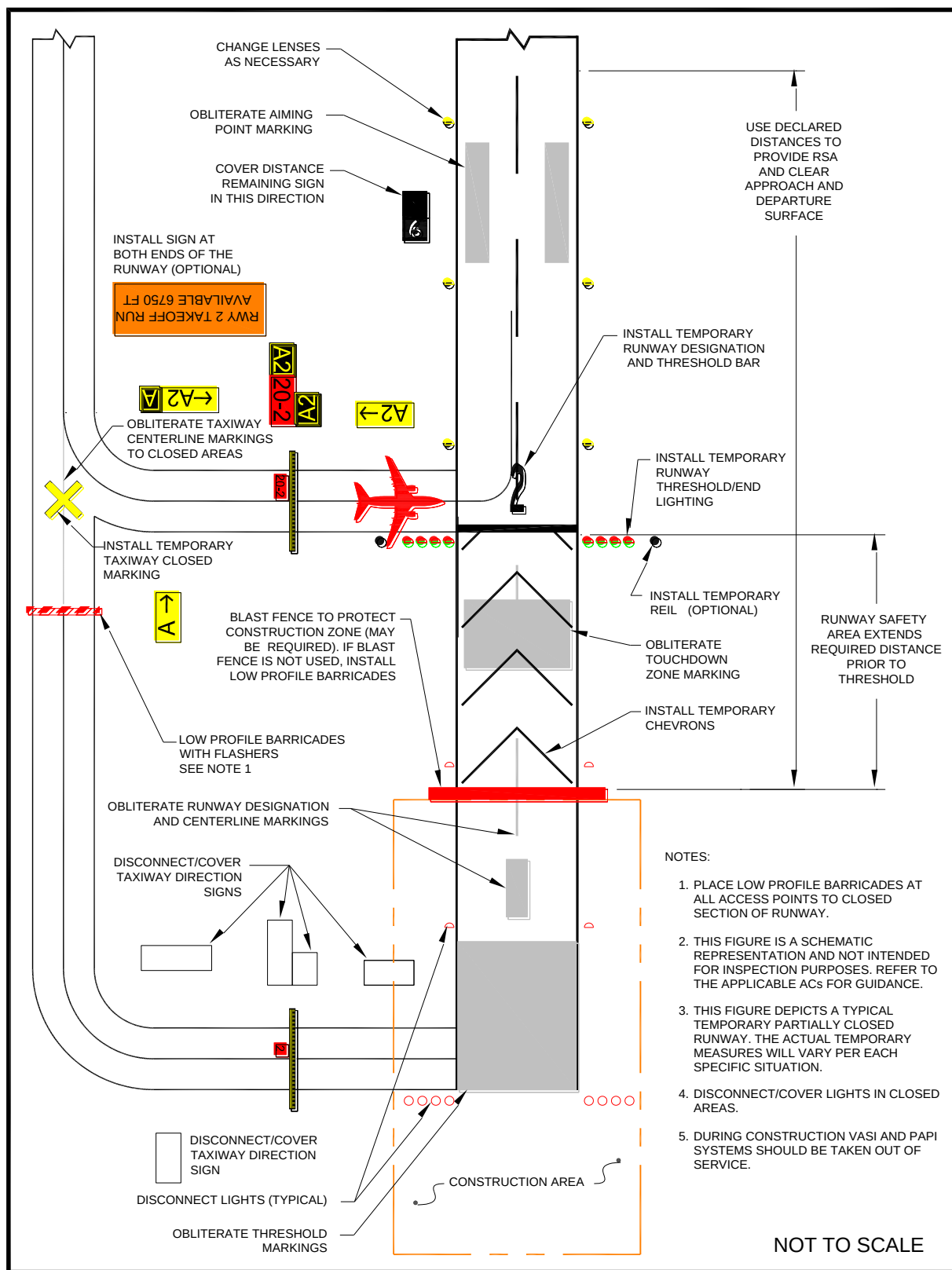
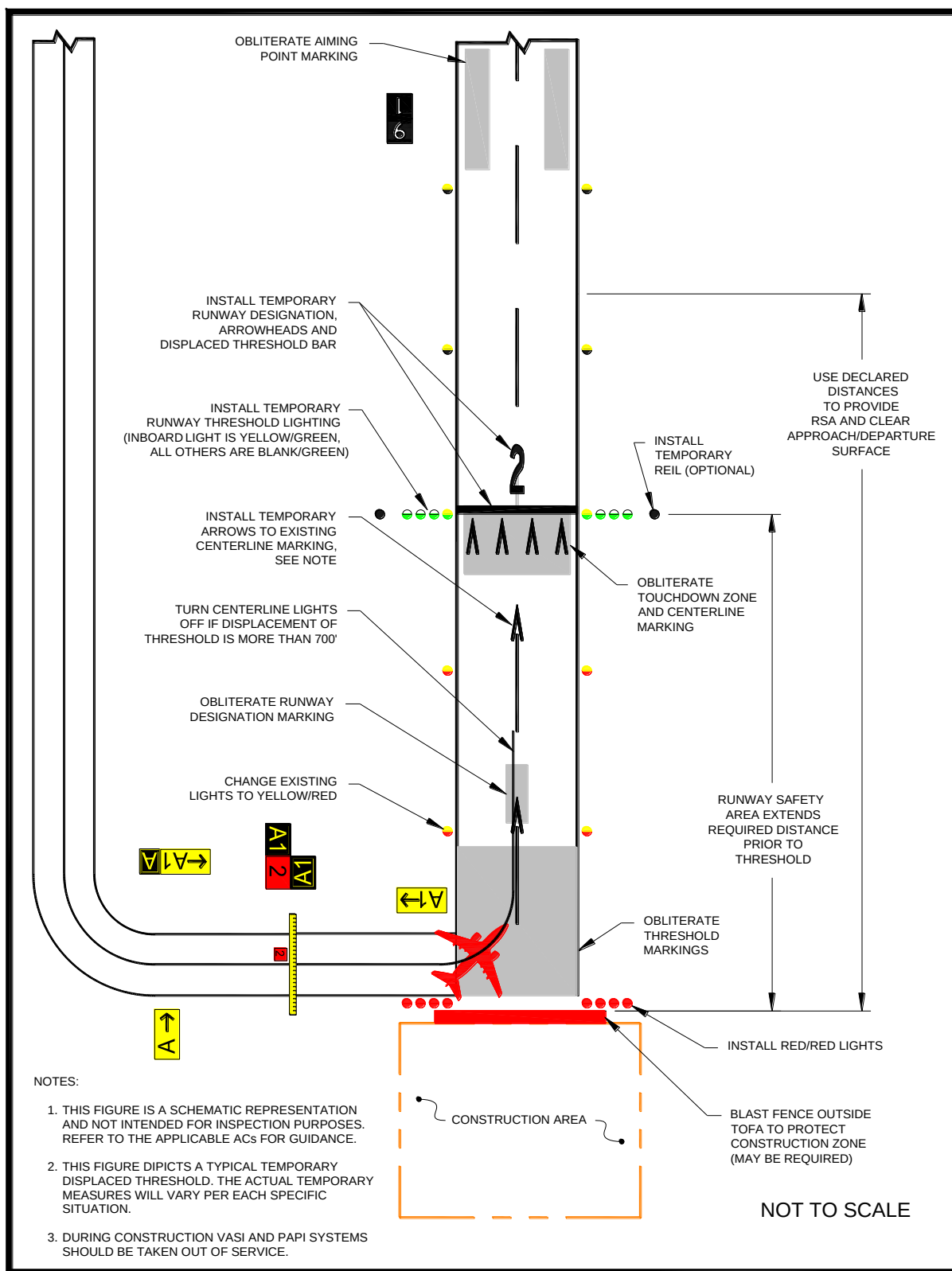
Figure 2-1. Temporary Partially Closed Runway

Figure 2-2. Temporary Displaced Threshold

Note: See paragraph 2.18.2.5.

2.7.2 Mitigation of Effects.

Establishment of specific procedures is necessary to maintain the safety and efficiency of airport operations. The CSPP must address:

- 2.7.2.1 Temporary changes to runway and/or taxi operations.
- 2.7.2.2 Detours for ARFF and other airport vehicles.
- 2.7.2.3 Maintenance of essential utilities.
- 2.7.2.4 Temporary changes to air traffic control procedures. Such changes must be coordinated with the ATO.

2.8 **Navigation Aid (NAVAID) Protection.**

Before commencing construction activity, parking vehicles, or storing construction equipment and materials near a NAVAID, coordinate with the appropriate FAA ATO/Technical Operations office to evaluate the effect of construction activity and the required distance and direction from the NAVAID. (See paragraph 2.13.5.3.) Construction activities, materials/equipment storage, and vehicle parking near electronic NAVAIDs require special consideration since they may interfere with signals essential to air navigation. If any NAVAID may be affected, the CSPP and SPCD must show an understanding of the “critical area” associated with each NAVAID and describe how it will be protected. Where applicable, the operational critical areas of NAVAIDs should be graphically delineated on the project drawings. Pay particular attention to stockpiling material, as well as to movement and parking of equipment that may interfere with line of sight from the ATCT or with electronic emissions. Interference from construction equipment and activities may require NAVAID shutdown or adjustment of instrument approach minimums for low visibility operations. This condition requires that a NOTAM be filed (see paragraph 2.13.2.). Construction activities and materials/equipment storage near a NAVAID must not obstruct access to the equipment and instruments for maintenance. Submittal of a 7460-1 form is required for construction vehicles operating near FAA NAVAIDs. (See paragraph 2.13.5.3.)

2.9 **Contractor Access.**

The CSPP must detail the areas to which the contractor must have access, and explain how contractor personnel will access those areas. Specifically address:

2.9.1 Location of Stockpiled Construction Materials.

Stockpiled materials and equipment storage are not permitted within the RSA and OFZ, and if possible should not be permitted within the Object Free Area (OFA) of an operational runway. Stockpiling material in the OFA requires submittal of a 7460-1 form and justification provided to the appropriate FAA Airports Regional or District Office for approval. The airport operator must ensure that stockpiled materials and equipment adjacent to these areas are prominently marked and lighted during hours of restricted visibility or darkness. (See paragraph 2.18.2.) This includes determining and

verifying that materials are stabilized and stored at an approved location so as not to be a hazard to aircraft operations and to prevent attraction of wildlife and foreign object damage from blowing or tracked material. See paragraphs 2.10 and 2.11.

2.9.2 Vehicle and Pedestrian Operations.

The CSPP should include specific vehicle and pedestrian requirements. Vehicle and pedestrian access routes for airport construction projects must be controlled to prevent inadvertent or unauthorized entry of persons, vehicles, or animals onto the AOA. The airport operator should coordinate requirements for vehicle operations with airport tenants, contractors, and the FAA air traffic manager. In regard to vehicle and pedestrian operations, the CSPP should include the following, with associated training requirements:

2.9.2.1 **Construction Site Parking.**

Designate in advance vehicle parking areas for contractor employees to prevent any unauthorized entry of persons or vehicles onto the AOA. These areas should provide reasonable contractor employee access to the job site.

2.9.2.2 **Construction Equipment Parking.**

Contractor employees must park and service all construction vehicles in an area designated by the airport operator outside the OFZ and never in the safety area of an active runway or taxiway. Unless a complex setup procedure makes movement of specialized equipment infeasible, inactive equipment must not be parked on a closed taxiway or runway. If it is necessary to leave specialized equipment on a closed taxiway or runway at night, the equipment must be well lighted. Employees should also park construction vehicles outside the OFA when not in use by construction personnel (for example, overnight, on weekends, or during other periods when construction is not active). Parking areas must not obstruct the clear line of sight by the ATCT to any taxiways or runways under air traffic control nor obstruct any runway visual aids, signs, or navigation aids. The FAA must also study those areas to determine effects on airport design criteria, surfaces established by 14 CFR Part 77, Safe, Efficient Use, and Preservation of the Navigable Airspace (Part 77), and on NAVAIDs and Instrument Approach Procedures (IAP). See paragraph 2.13.1 for further information.

2.9.2.3 **Access and Haul Roads.**

Determine the construction contractor's access to the construction sites and haul roads. Do not permit the construction contractor to use any access or haul roads other than those approved. Access routes used by contractor vehicles must be clearly marked to prevent inadvertent entry to areas open to airport operations. Pay special attention to ensure that if construction traffic is to share or cross any ARFF routes that ARFF right of way is not impeded at any time, and that construction traffic on haul

roads does not interfere with NAVAIDs or approach surfaces of operational runways. Address whether access gates will be blocked or inoperative or if a rally point will be blocked or inaccessible.

- 2.9.2.4 Marking and lighting of vehicles in accordance with AC 150/5210-5, *Painting, Marking, and Lighting of Vehicles Used on an Airport*.
- 2.9.2.5 Description of proper vehicle operations on various areas under normal, lost communications, and emergency conditions.
- 2.9.2.6 Required escorts.
- 2.9.2.7 **Training Requirements for Vehicle Drivers to Ensure Compliance with the Airport Operator's Vehicle Rules and Regulations.**

Specific training should be provided to vehicle operators, including those providing escorts. See AC 150/5210-20, *Ground Vehicle Operations on Airports*, for information on training and records maintenance requirements.
- 2.9.2.8 **Situational Awareness.**

Vehicle drivers must confirm by personal observation that no aircraft is approaching their position (either in the air or on the ground) when given clearance to cross a runway, taxiway, or any other area open to airport operations. In addition, it is the responsibility of the escort vehicle driver to verify the movement/position of all escorted vehicles at any given time. At non-towered airports, all aircraft movements and flight operations rely on aircraft operators to self-report their positions and intentions. However, there is no requirement for an aircraft to have radio communications. Because aircraft do not always broadcast their positions or intentions, visual checking, radio monitoring, and situational awareness of the surroundings is critical to safety.
- 2.9.2.9 **Two-Way Radio Communication Procedures.**
- 2.9.2.9.1 General.

The airport operator must ensure that tenant and construction contractor personnel engaged in activities involving unescorted operation on aircraft movement areas observe the proper procedures for communications, including using appropriate radio frequencies at airports with and without ATCT. When operating vehicles on or near open runways or taxiways, construction personnel must understand the critical importance of maintaining radio contact, as directed by the airport operator, with:

 1. Airport operations
 2. ATCT

3. Common Traffic Advisory Frequency (CTAF), which may include UNICOM, MULTICOM.
4. Automatic Terminal Information Service (ATIS). This frequency is useful for monitoring conditions on the airport. Local air traffic will broadcast information regarding construction related runway closures and “shortened” runways on the ATIS frequency.

2.9.2.9.2 Areas Requiring Two-Way Radio Communication with the ATCT.

Vehicular traffic crossing active movement areas must be controlled either by two-way radio with the ATCT, escort, flagman, signal light, or other means appropriate for the particular airport.

2.9.2.9.3 Frequencies to be Used.

The airport operator will specify the frequencies to be used by the contractor, which may include the CTAF for monitoring of aircraft operations. Frequencies may also be assigned by the airport operator for other communications, including any radio frequency in compliance with Federal Communications Commission requirements. At airports with an ATCT, the airport operator will specify the frequency assigned by the ATCT to be used between contractor vehicles and the ATCT.

2.9.2.9.4 Proper radio usage, including read back requirements.

2.9.2.9.5 Proper phraseology, including the International Phonetic Alphabet.

2.9.2.9.6 Light Gun Signals.

Even though radio communication is maintained, escort vehicle drivers must also familiarize themselves with ATCT light gun signals in the event of radio failure. See the FAA safety placard “Ground Vehicle Guide to Airport Signs and Markings.” This safety placard may be downloaded through the Runway Safety Program Web site at http://www.faa.gov/airports/runway_safety/publications/ (see “Signs & Markings Vehicle Dashboard Sticker”) or obtained from the FAA Airports Regional Office.

2.9.2.10 **Maintenance of the secured area of the airport, including:**

2.9.2.10.1 Fencing and Gates.

Airport operators and contractors must take care to maintain security during construction when access points are created in the security fencing to permit the passage of construction vehicles or personnel. Temporary gates should be equipped so they can be securely closed and locked to prevent access by animals and unauthorized people. Procedures should be in place to ensure that only authorized persons and vehicles have access to the AOA and to prohibit “piggybacking” behind another person or vehicle. The Department of Transportation (DOT) document DOT/FAA/AR-

00/52, *Recommended Security Guidelines for Airport Planning and Construction*, provides more specific information on fencing. A copy of this document can be obtained from the Airport Consultants Council, Airports Council International, or American Association of Airport Executives.

2.9.2.10.2 Badging Requirements.

Airports subject to 49 CFR Part 1542, *Airport Security*, must meet standards for access control, movement of ground vehicles, and identification of construction contractor and tenant personnel.

2.10 **Wildlife Management.**

The CSPP and SPCD must be in accordance with the airport operator's wildlife hazard management plan, if applicable. See AC 150/5200-33, *Hazardous Wildlife Attractants On or Near Airports*, and CertAlert 98-05, *Grasses Attractive to Hazardous Wildlife*. Construction contractors must carefully control and continuously remove waste or loose materials that might attract wildlife. Contractor personnel must be aware of and avoid construction activities that can create wildlife hazards on airports, such as:

2.10.1 Trash.

Food scraps must be collected from construction personnel activity.

2.10.2 Standing Water.

2.10.3 Tall Grass and Seeds.

Requirements for turf establishment can be at odds with requirements for wildlife control. Grass seed is attractive to birds. Lower quality seed mixtures can contain seeds of plants (such as clover) that attract larger wildlife. Seeding should comply with the guidance in AC 150/5370-10, *Standards for Specifying Construction of Airports*, Item T-901, Seeding. Contact the local office of the United States Department of Agriculture Soil Conservation Service or the State University Agricultural Extension Service (County Agent or equivalent) for assistance and recommendations. These agencies can also provide liming and fertilizer recommendations.

2.10.4 Poorly Maintained Fencing and Gates.

See paragraph 2.9.2.10.1.

2.10.5 Disruption of Existing Wildlife Habitat.

While this will frequently be unavoidable due to the nature of the project, the CSPP should specify under what circumstances (location, wildlife type) contractor personnel should immediately notify the airport operator of wildlife sightings.

2.11 Foreign Object Debris (FOD) Management.

Waste and loose materials, commonly referred to as FOD, are capable of causing damage to aircraft landing gears, propellers, and jet engines. Construction contractors must not leave or place FOD on or near active aircraft movement areas. Materials capable of creating FOD must be continuously removed during the construction project. Fencing (other than security fencing) or covers may be necessary to contain material that can be carried by wind into areas where aircraft operate. See AC 150/5210-24, *Foreign Object Debris (FOD) Management*.

2.12 Hazardous Materials (HAZMAT) Management.

Contractors operating construction vehicles and equipment on the airport must be prepared to expeditiously contain and clean-up spills resulting from fuel or hydraulic fluid leaks. Transport and handling of other hazardous materials on an airport also requires special procedures. See AC 150/5320-15, *Management of Airport Industrial Waste*.

2.13 Notification of Construction Activities.

The CSPP and SPCD must detail procedures for the immediate notification of airport users and the FAA of any conditions adversely affecting the operational safety of the airport. It must address the notification actions described below, as applicable.

2.13.1 List of Responsible Representatives/points of contact for all involved parties, and procedures for contacting each of them, including after hours.

2.13.2 NOTAMs.

Only the airport operator may initiate or cancel NOTAMs on airport conditions, and is the only entity that can close or open a runway. The airport operator must coordinate the issuance, maintenance, and cancellation of NOTAMs about airport conditions resulting from construction activities with tenants and the local air traffic facility (control tower, approach control, or air traffic control center), and must either enter the NOTAM into NOTAM Manager, or provide information on closed or hazardous conditions on airport movement areas to the FAA Flight Service Station (FSS) so it can issue a NOTAM. The airport operator must file and maintain a list of authorized representatives with the FSS. Refer to AC 150/5200-28, *Notices to Airmen (NOTAMs) for Airport Operators*, for a sample NOTAM form. Only the FAA may issue or cancel NOTAMs on shutdown or irregular operation of FAA owned facilities. Any person having reason to believe that a NOTAM is missing, incomplete, or inaccurate must notify the airport operator. See paragraph 2.7.1.1 about issuing NOTAMs for partially closed runways versus runways with displaced thresholds.

2.13.3 Emergency notification procedures for medical, fire fighting, and police response.

2.13.4 Coordination with ARFF.

The CSPP must detail procedures for coordinating through the airport sponsor with ARFF personnel, mutual aid providers, and other emergency services if construction requires:

1. The deactivation and subsequent reactivation of water lines or fire hydrants, or
2. The rerouting, blocking and restoration of emergency access routes, or
3. The use of hazardous materials on the airfield.

2.13.5 Notification to the FAA.

2.13.5.1 **Part 77.**

Any person proposing construction or alteration of objects that affect navigable airspace, as defined in Part 77, must notify the FAA. This includes construction equipment and proposed parking areas for this equipment (i.e., cranes, graders, other equipment) on airports. FAA Form 7460-1, *Notice of Proposed Construction or Alteration*, can be used for this purpose and submitted to the appropriate FAA Airports Regional or District Office. See Appendix A to download the form. Further guidance is available on the FAA web site at oeaaa.faa.gov.

2.13.5.2 **Part 157.**

With some exceptions, Title 14 CFR Part 157, *Notice of Construction, Alteration, Activation, and Deactivation of Airports*, requires that the airport operator notify the FAA in writing whenever a non-Federally funded project involves the construction of a new airport; the construction, realigning, altering, activating, or abandoning of a runway, landing strip, or associated taxiway; or the deactivation or abandoning of an entire airport. Notification involves submitting FAA Form 7480-1, *Notice of Landing Area Proposal*, to the nearest FAA Airports Regional or District Office. See Appendix A to download the form.

2.13.5.3 **NAVAIDs.**

For emergency (short-notice) notification about impacts to both airport owned and FAA owned NAVAIDs, contact: 866-432-2622.

2.13.5.3.1 Airport Owned/FAA Maintained.

If construction operations require a shutdown of 24 hours or greater in duration, or more than 4 hours daily on consecutive days, of a NAVAID owned by the airport but maintained by the FAA, provide a 45-day minimum notice to FAA ATO/Technical Operations prior to facility shutdown, using Strategic Event Coordination (SEC) Form 6000.26 contained within FAA Order 6000.15, *General Maintenance Handbook for National Airspace System (NAS) Facilities*.

2.13.5.3.2 FAA Owned.

1. The airport operator must notify the appropriate FAA ATO Service Area Planning and Requirements (P&R) Group a minimum of 45 days prior to implementing an event that causes impacts to NAVAIDs, using SEC Form 6000.26.
2. Coordinate work for an FAA owned NAVAID shutdown with the local FAA ATO/Technical Operations office, including any necessary reimbursable agreements and flight checks. Detail procedures that address unanticipated utility outages and cable cuts that could impact FAA NAVAIDs. Refer to active Service Level Agreement with ATO for specifics.

2.14 **Inspection Requirements.**

2.14.1 Daily Inspections.

Inspections should be conducted at least daily, but more frequently if necessary to ensure conformance with the CSPP. A sample checklist is provided in Appendix D, Construction Project Daily Safety Inspection Checklist. See also AC 150/5200-18, Airport Safety Self-Inspection. Airport operators holding a Part 139 certificate are required to conduct self-inspections during unusual conditions, such as construction activities, that may affect safe air carrier operations.

2.14.2 Interim Inspections.

Inspections should be conducted of all areas to be (re)opened to aircraft traffic to ensure the proper operation of lights and signs, for correct markings, and absence of FOD. The contractor should conduct an inspection of the work area with airport operations personnel. The contractor should ensure that all construction materials have been secured, all pavement surfaces have been swept clean, all transition ramps have been properly constructed, and that surfaces have been appropriately marked for aircraft to operate safely. Only if all items on the list meet with the airport operator's approval should the air traffic control tower be notified to open the area to aircraft operations. The contractor should be required to retain a suitable workforce and the necessary equipment at the work area for any last minute cleanup that may be requested by the airport operator prior to opening the area.

2.14.3 Final Inspections.

New runways and extended runway closures may require safety inspections at certificated airports prior to allowing air carrier service. Coordinate with the FAA Airport Certification Safety Inspector (ACSI) to determine if a final inspection will be necessary.

2.15 Underground Utilities.

The CSPP and/or SPCD must include procedures for locating and protecting existing underground utilities, cables, wires, pipelines, and other underground facilities in excavation areas. This may involve coordinating with public utilities and FAA ATO/Technical Operations. Note that “One Call” or “Miss Utility” services do not include FAA ATO/Technical Operations.

2.16 Penalties.

The CSPP should detail penalty provisions for noncompliance with airport rules and regulations and the safety plans (for example, if a vehicle is involved in a runway incursion). Such penalties typically include rescission of driving privileges or access to the AOA.

2.17 Special Conditions.

The CSPP must detail any special conditions that affect the operation of the airport and will require the activation of any special procedures (for example, low-visibility operations, snow removal, aircraft in distress, aircraft accident, security breach, Vehicle / Pedestrian Deviation (VPD) and other activities requiring construction suspension/resumption).

2.18 Runway and Taxiway Visual Aids.

This includes marking, lighting, signs, and visual NAVAIDs. The CSPP must ensure that areas where aircraft will be operating are clearly and visibly separated from construction areas, including closed runways. Throughout the duration of the construction project, verify that these areas remain clearly marked and visible at all times and that marking, lighting, signs, and visual NAVAIDs that are to continue to perform their functions during construction remain in place and operational. Visual NAVAIDs that are not serving their intended function during construction must be temporarily disabled, covered, or modified as necessary. The CSPP must address the following, as appropriate:

2.18.1 General.

Airport markings, lighting, signs, and visual NAVAIDs must be clearly visible to pilots, not misleading, confusing, or deceptive. All must be secured in place to prevent movement by prop wash, jet blast, wing vortices, and other wind currents and constructed of materials that will minimize damage to an aircraft in the event of inadvertent contact. Items used to secure such markings must be of a color similar to the marking.

2.18.2 Markings.

During the course of construction projects, temporary pavement markings are often required to allow for aircraft operations during or between work periods. During the design phase of the project, the designer should coordinate with the project manager,

airport operations, airport users, the FAA Airports project manager, and Airport Certification Safety Inspector for Part 139 airports to determine minimum temporary markings. The FAA Airports project manager will, wherever a runway is closed, coordinate with the appropriate FAA Flight Standards Office and disseminate findings to all parties. Where possible, the temporary markings on finish grade pavements should be placed to mirror the dimensions of the final markings. Markings must be in compliance with the standards of AC 150/5340-1, Standards for Airport Markings, except as noted herein. Runways and runway exit taxiways closed to aircraft operations are marked with a yellow X. The preferred visual aid to depict temporary runway closure is the lighted X signal placed on or near the runway designation numbers. (See paragraph 2.18.2.1.2.)

2.18.2.1 Closed Runways and Taxiways.

2.18.2.1.1 Permanently Closed Runways.

For runways, obliterate the threshold marking, runway designation marking, and touchdown zone markings, and place an X at each end and at 1,000-foot (300 m) intervals. For a multiple runway environment, if the lighted X on a designated number will be located in the RSA of an adjacent active runway, locate the lighted X farther down the closed runway to clear the RSA of the active runway. In addition, the closed runway numbers located in the RSA of an active runway must be marked with a flat yellow X.

2.18.2.1.2 Temporarily Closed Runways.

For runways that have been temporarily closed, place an X at each end of the runway directly on or as near as practicable to the runway designation numbers. For a multiple runway environment, if the lighted X on a designated number will be located in the RSA of an adjacent active runway, locate the lighted X farther down the closed runway to clear the RSA of the active runway. In addition, the closed runway numbers located in the RSA of an active runway must be marked with a flat yellow X. See Figure 2-3. See also paragraph 2.18.3.3.

2.18.2.1.3 Partially Closed Runways and Displaced Thresholds.

When threshold markings are needed to identify the temporary beginning of the runway that is available for landing, the markings must comply with AC 150/5340-1. An X is not used on a partially closed runway or a runway with a displaced threshold. See paragraph 2.7.1.1 for the difference between partially closed runways and runways with displaced thresholds. Because of the temporary nature of threshold displacement due to construction, it is not necessary to re-adjust the existing runway centerline markings to meet standard spacing for a runway with a visual approach. Some of the requirements below may be waived in the cases of low-activity airports and/or short duration changes that are measured in days rather than weeks. Consider whether the presence of an airport traffic

control tower allows for the development of special procedures. Contact the appropriate FAA Airports Regional or District Office for assistance.

Figure 2-3. Markings for a Temporarily Closed Runway

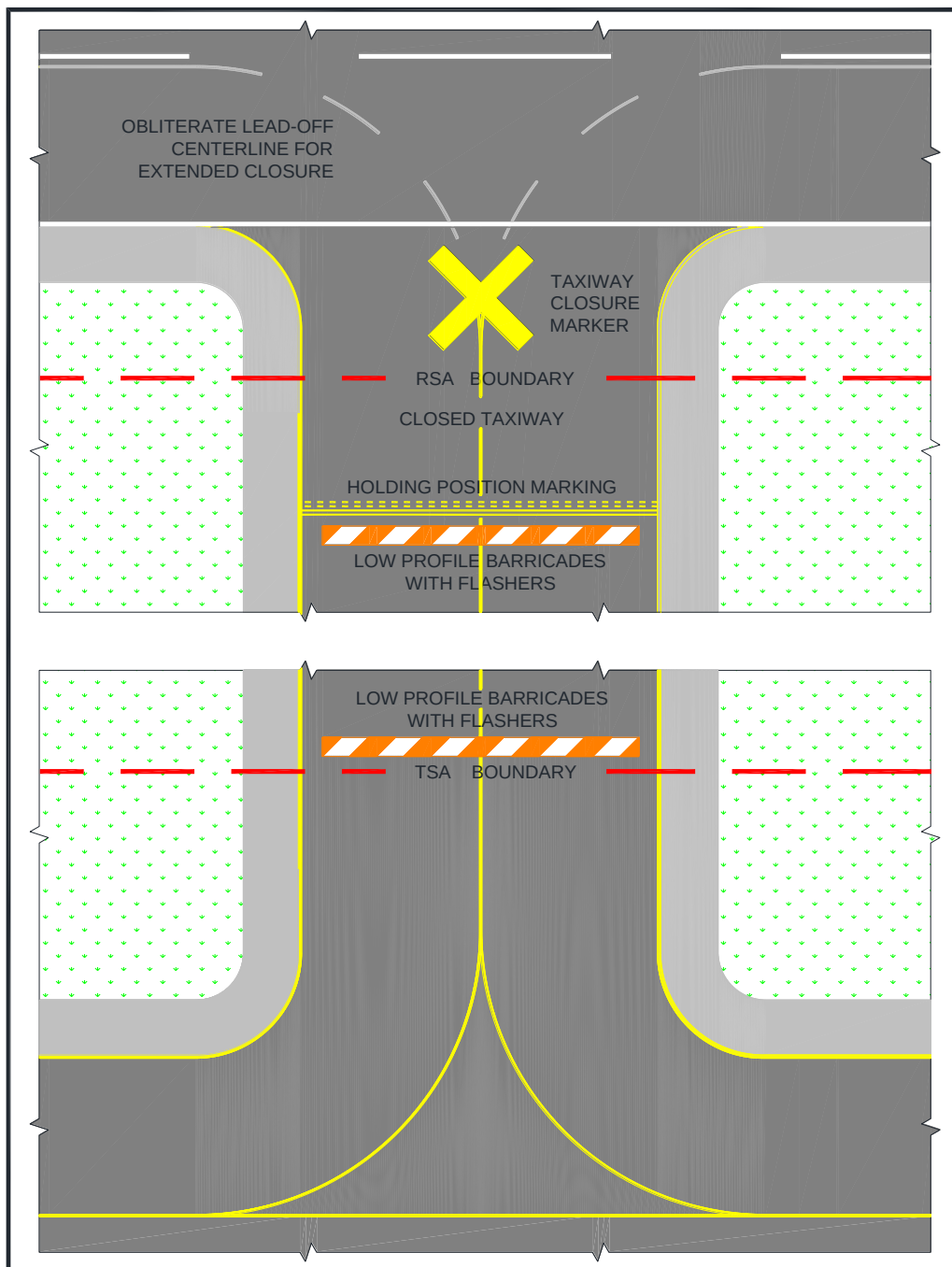


1. **Partially Closed Runways.** Pavement markings for temporary closed portions of the runway consist of a runway threshold bar, runway designation, and yellow chevrons to identify pavement areas that are unsuitable for takeoff or landing (see [AC 150/5340-1](#)). Obliterate or cover markings prior to the moved threshold. Existing touchdown zone markings beyond the moved threshold may remain in place. Obliterate aiming point markings. Issue appropriate NOTAMs regarding any nonstandard markings. See [Figure 2-4](#).
2. **Displaced Thresholds.** Pavement markings for a displaced threshold consist of a runway threshold bar, runway designation, and white arrowheads with and without arrow shafts. These markings are required to identify the portion of the runway before the displaced threshold to provide centerline guidance for pilots during approaches, takeoffs, and landing rollouts from the opposite direction. See [AC 150/5340-1](#). Obliterate markings prior to the displaced threshold. Existing touchdown zone markings beyond the displaced threshold may remain in place. Obliterate aiming point markings. Issue appropriate NOTAMs regarding any nonstandard markings. See [Figure 2-2](#).

2.18.2.1.4 Taxiways.

1. **Permanently Closed Taxiways.** AC 150/5300-13 Airport Design, notes that it is preferable to remove the pavement, but for pavement that is to remain, place an X at the entrance to both ends of the closed section. Obliterate taxiway centerline markings, including runway leadoff lines, leading to the closed taxiway. See Figure 2-4.

Figure 2-4. Temporary Taxiway Closure



2. **Temporarily Closed Taxiways.** Place barricades outside the safety area of intersecting taxiways. For runway/taxiway intersections, place an X at the entrance to the closed taxiway from the runway. If the taxiway will be closed for an extended period, obliterate taxiway centerline markings, including runway leadoff lines and taxiway to taxiway turns, leading to the closed section. Always obliterate runway lead-off lines for high speed exits, regardless of the duration of the closure. If the centerline markings will be reused upon reopening the taxiway, it is preferable to paint over the marking. This will result in less damage to the pavement when the upper layer of paint is ultimately removed. See Figure 2-4.

2.18.2.1.5 Temporarily Closed Airport.

When the airport is closed temporarily, mark all the runways as closed.

- 2.18.2.2 If unable to paint temporary markings on the pavement, construct them from any of the following materials: fabric, colored plastic, painted sheets of plywood, or similar materials. They must be properly configured and appropriately secured to prevent movement by prop wash, jet blast, or other wind currents. Items used to secure such markings must be of a color similar to the marking.

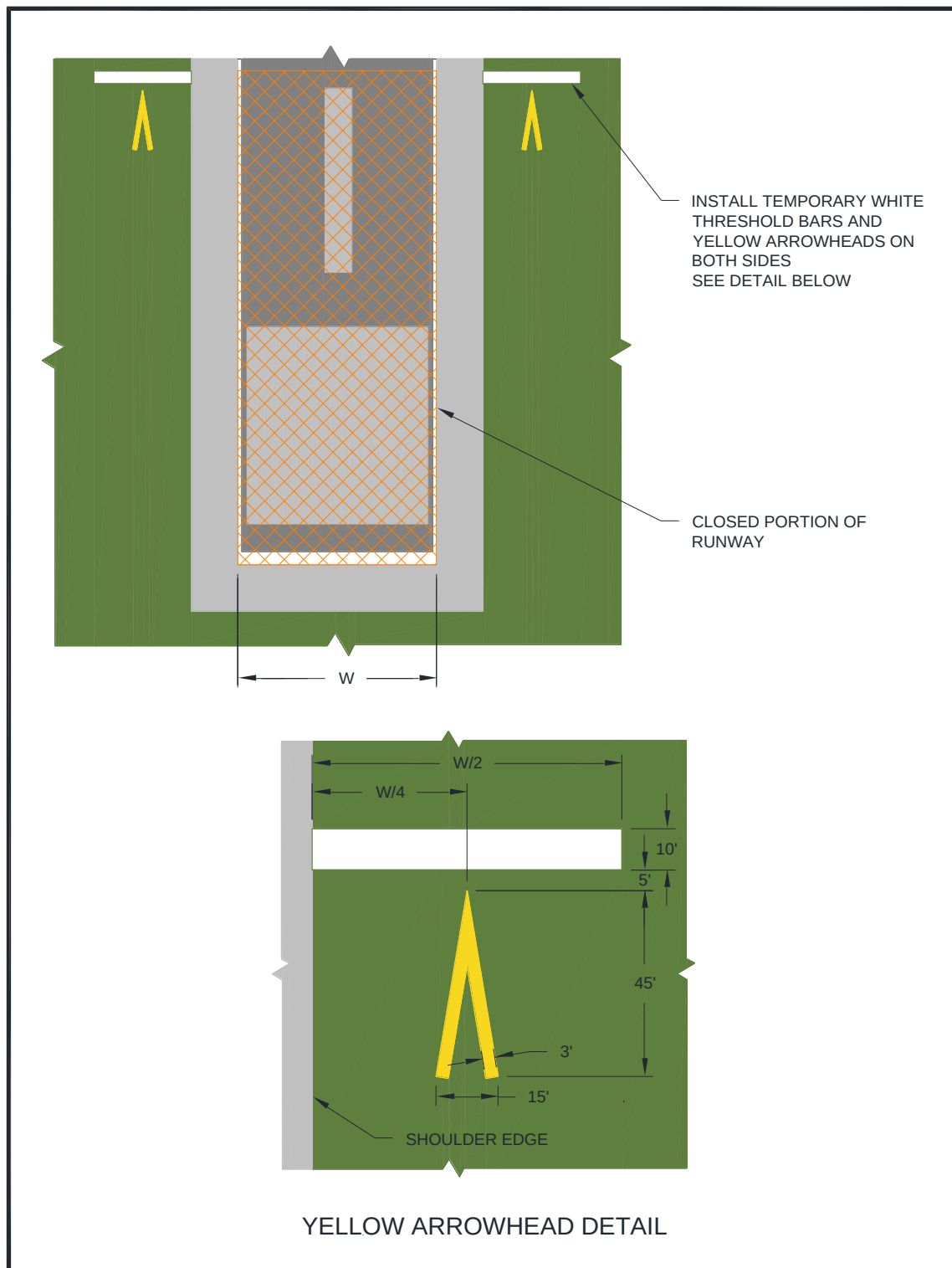
- 2.18.2.3 It may be necessary to remove or cover runway markings, including but not limited to, runway designation markings, threshold markings, centerline markings, edge stripes, touchdown zone markings and aiming point markings, depending on the length of construction and type of activity at the airport. When removing runway markings, apply the same treatment to areas between stripes or numbers, as the cleaned area will appear to pilots as a marking in the shape of the treated area.

- 2.18.2.4 If it is not possible to install threshold bars, chevrons, and arrows on the pavement, “temporary outboard white threshold bars and yellow arrowheads”, see Figure 2-5, may be used. Locate them outside of the runway pavement surface on both sides of the runway. The dimensions must be as shown in Figure 2-5. If the markings are not discernible on grass or snow, apply a black background with appropriate material over the ground to ensure they are clearly visible.

- 2.18.2.5 The application rate of paint to mark a short-term temporary runway and taxiway markings may deviate from the standard (see Item P-620, “Runway and Taxiway Painting,” in AC 150/5370-10), but the dimensions must meet the existing standards. When applying temporary markings at night, it is recommended that the fast curing, Type II paint be used to help offset the higher humidity and cooler temperatures often experienced at night. Diluting the paint will substantially increase cure time and is not recommended. Glass beads are not recommended for temporary markings. Striated markings may also be used for certain temporary markings. AC

150/5340-1, Standards for Airport Markings, has additional guidance on temporary markings.

Figure 2-5. Temporary Outboard White Threshold Bars and Yellow Arrowheads



2.18.3 Lighting and Visual NAVAIDs.

This paragraph refers to standard runway and taxiway lighting systems. See below for hazard lighting. Lighting installation must be in conformance with AC 150/5340-30, *Design and Installation Details for Airport Visual Aids*, and fixture design in conformance with AC 150/5345-50, *Specification for Portable Runway and Taxiway Lights*. When disconnecting runway and taxiway lighting fixtures, disconnect the associated isolation transformers. See AC 150/5340-26, *Maintenance of Airport Visual Aid Facilities*, for disconnect procedures and safety precautions. Alternately, cover the light fixture in such a way as to prevent light leakage. Avoid removing the lamp from energized fixtures because an excessive number of isolation transformers with open secondaries may damage the regulators and/or increase the current above its normal value. Secure, identify, and place any above ground temporary wiring in conduit to prevent electrocution and fire ignition sources. Maintain mandatory hold signs to operate normally in any situation where pilots or vehicle drivers could mistakenly be in that location. At towered airports certificated under Part 139, holding position signs are required to be illuminated on open taxiways crossing to closed or inactive runways. If the holding position sign is installed on the runway circuit for the closed runway, install a jumper to the taxiway circuit to provide power to the holding position sign for nighttime operations. Where it is not possible to maintain power to signs that would normally be operational, install barricades to exclude aircraft. Figure 2-1, Figure 2-2, Figure 2-3, and Figure 2-4 illustrate temporary changes to lighting and visual NAVAIDs.

2.18.3.1 **Permanently Closed Runways and Taxiways.**

For runways and taxiways that have been permanently closed, disconnect the lighting circuits.

2.18.3.2 **Temporarily Closed Runways and New Runways Not Yet Open to Air Traffic.**

If available, use a lighted X, both at night and during the day, placed at each end of the runway on or near the runway designation numbers facing the approach. (Note that the lighted X must be illuminated at all times that it is on a runway.) The use of a lighted X is required if night work requires runway lighting to be on. See AC 150/5345-55, *Specification for L-893, Lighted Visual Aid to Indicate Temporary Runway Closure*. For runways that have been temporarily closed, but for an extended period, and for those with pilot controlled lighting, disconnect the lighting circuits or secure switches to prevent inadvertent activation. For runways that will be opened periodically, coordinate procedures with the FAA air traffic manager or, at airports without an ATCT, the airport operator. Activate stop bars if available. Figure 2-6 shows a lighted X by day. Figure 2-7 shows a lighted X at night.

Figure 2-6. Lighted X in Daytime**Figure 2-7. Lighted X at Night**

2.18.3.3 **Partially Closed Runways and Displaced Thresholds.**

When a runway is partially closed, a portion of the pavement is unavailable for any aircraft operation, meaning taxiing and landing or taking off in either direction. A displaced threshold, by contrast, is put in place to ensure obstacle clearance by landing aircraft. The pavement prior to the displaced threshold is available for takeoff in the direction of the displacement, and for landing and takeoff in the opposite direction. Misunderstanding this difference and issuance of a subsequently inaccurate NOTAM can result in a hazardous situation. For both partially

closed runways and displaced thresholds, approach lighting systems at the affected end must be placed out of service.

2.18.3.3.1 Partially Closed Runways.

Disconnect edge and threshold lights on that part of the runway at and behind the threshold (that is, the portion of the runway that is closed). Alternately, cover the light fixtures in such a way as to prevent light leakage. See Figure 2-1.

2.18.3.3.2 Temporary Displaced Thresholds.

Edge lighting in the area of the displacement emits red light in the direction of approach and yellow light (white for visual runways) in the opposite direction. If the displacement is 700 feet or less, blank out centerline lights in the direction of approach or place the centerline lights out of service. If the displacement is over 700 feet, place the centerline lights out of service. See AC 150/5340-30 for details on lighting displaced thresholds. See Figure 2-2.

2.18.3.3.3 Temporary runway thresholds and runway ends must be lighted if the runway is lighted and it is the intended threshold for night landings or instrument meteorological conditions.

2.18.3.3.4 A temporary threshold on an unlighted runway may be marked by retroreflective, elevated markers in addition to markings noted in paragraph 2.18.2.1.3. Markers seen by aircraft on approach are green. Markers at the rollout end of the runway are red. At certificated airports, temporary elevated threshold markers must be mounted with a frangible fitting (see 14 CFR Part 139.309). At non-certificated airports, the temporary elevated threshold markings may either be mounted with a frangible fitting or be flexible. See AC 150/5345-39, Specification for L-853, Runway and Taxiway Retroreflective Markers.

2.18.3.3.5 Temporary threshold lights and runway end lights and related visual NAVAIDs are installed outboard of the edges of the full-strength pavement only when they cannot be installed on the pavement. They are installed with bases at grade level or as low as possible, but not more than 3 inch (7.6 cm) above ground. (The standard above ground height for airport lighting fixtures is 14 inches (35 cm)). When any portion of a base is above grade, place properly compacted fill around the base to minimize the rate of gradient change so aircraft can, in an emergency, cross at normal landing or takeoff speeds without incurring significant damage. See AC 150/5370-10.

2.18.3.3.6 Maintain threshold and edge lighting color and spacing standards as described in AC 150/5340-30. Battery powered, solar, or portable lights that meet the criteria in AC 150/5345-50 may be used. These systems are intended primarily for visual flight rules (VFR) aircraft operations but may

be used for instrument flight rules (IFR) aircraft operations, upon individual approval from the Flight Standards Division of the applicable FAA Regional Office.

- 2.18.3.3.7 When runway thresholds are temporarily displaced, reconfigure yellow lenses (caution zone), as necessary, and place the centerline lights out of service.
- 2.18.3.3.8 Relocate the Visual Glide Slope Indicator (VGSI), such as Visual Approach Slope Indicator (VASI) and Precision Approach Path Indicator (PAPI); other airport lights, such as Runway End Identifier Lights (REIL); and approach lights to identify the temporary threshold. Another option is to disable the VGSI or any equipment that would give misleading indications to pilots as to the new threshold location. Installation of temporary visual aids may be necessary to provide adequate guidance to pilots on approach to the affected runway. If the FAA owns and operates the VGSI, coordinate its installation or disabling with the local ATO/Technical Operations Office. Relocation of such visual aids will depend on the duration of the project and the benefits gained from the relocation, as this can result in great expense. See FAA JO 6850.2, *Visual Guidance Lighting Systems*, for installation criteria for FAA owned and operated NAVAIDs.
- 2.18.3.3.9 Issue a NOTAM to inform pilots of temporary lighting conditions.
- 2.18.3.4 **Temporarily Closed Taxiways.**
If possible, deactivate the taxiway lighting circuits. When deactivation is not possible (for example other taxiways on the same circuit are to remain open), cover the light fixture in a way as to prevent light leakage.

2.18.4 Signs.

To the extent possible, signs must be in conformance with AC 150/5345-44, *Specification for Runway and Taxiway Signs*, and AC 150/5340-18, *Standard for Airport Sign Systems*.

2.18.4.1 **Existing Signs.**

Runway exit signs are to be covered for closed runway exits. Outbound destination signs are to be covered for closed runways. Any time a sign does not serve its normal function or would provide conflicting information, it must be covered or removed to prevent misdirecting pilots. Note that information signs identifying a crossing taxiway continue to perform their normal function even if the crossing taxiway is closed. For long term construction projects, consider relocating signs, especially runway distance remaining signs.

2.18.4.2 Temporary Signs.

Orange construction signs comprise a message in black on an orange background. Orange construction signs may help pilots be aware of changed conditions. The airport operator may choose to introduce these signs as part of a movement area construction project to increase situational awareness when needed. Locate signs outside the taxiway safety limits and ahead of construction areas so pilots can take timely action. Use temporary signs judiciously, striking a balance between the need for information and the increase in pilot workload. When there is a concern of pilot “information overload,” the applicability of mandatory hold signs must take precedence over orange construction signs recommended during construction. Temporary signs must meet the standards for such signs in Engineering Brief 93, *Guidance for the Assembly and Installation of Temporary Orange Construction Signs*. Many criteria in AC 150/5345-44, *Specification for Runway and Taxiway Signs*, are referenced in the Engineering Brief. Permissible sign legends are:

1. CONSTRUCTION AHEAD,
2. CONSTRUCTION ON RAMP, and
3. RWY XX TAKEOFF RUN AVAILABLE XXX FT.

Phasing, supported by drawings and sign schedule, for the installation of orange construction signs must be included in the CSPP or SPCD.

2.18.4.2.1 Takeoff Run Available (TORA) signs.

Recommended: Where a runway has been shortened for takeoff, install orange TORA signs well before the hold lines, such as on a parallel taxiway prior to a turn to a runway hold position. See EB 93 for sign size and location.

2.18.4.2.2 Sign legends are shown in Figure F-1.

Note: See Figure E-1, Figure E-2, Figure E-3, Figure F-2, and Figure F-3 for examples of orange construction sign locations.

2.19 Marking and Signs for Access Routes.

The CSPP should indicate that pavement markings and signs for construction personnel will conform to AC 150/5340-18 and, to the extent practicable, with the Federal Highway Administration Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices (MUTCD) and/or State highway specifications. Signs adjacent to areas used by aircraft must comply with the frangibility requirements of AC 150/5220-23, *Frangible Connections*, which may require modification to size and height guidance in the MUTCD.

2.20 **Hazard Marking, Lighting and Signing.**

2.20.1 Hazard marking, lighting, and signing prevent pilots from entering areas closed to aircraft, and prevent construction personnel from entering areas open to aircraft. The CSPP must specify prominent, comprehensible warning indicators for any area affected by construction that is normally accessible to aircraft, personnel, or vehicles. Hazard marking and lighting must also be specified to identify open manholes, small areas under repair, stockpiled material, waste areas, and areas subject to jet blast. Also consider less obvious construction-related hazards and include markings to identify FAA, airport, and National Weather Service facilities cables and power lines; instrument landing system (ILS) critical areas; airport surfaces, such as RSA, OFA, and OFZ; and other sensitive areas to make it easier for contractor personnel to avoid these areas.

2.20.2 Equipment.

2.20.2.1 **Barricades.**

Low profile barricades, including traffic cones, (weighted or sturdily attached to the surface) are acceptable methods used to identify and define the limits of construction and hazardous areas on airports. Careful consideration must be given to selecting equipment that poses the least danger to aircraft but is sturdy enough to remain in place when subjected to typical winds, prop wash and jet blast. The spacing of barricades must be such that a breach is physically prevented barring a deliberate act. For example, if barricades are intended to exclude aircraft, gaps between barricades must be smaller than the wingspan of the smallest aircraft to be excluded; if barricades are intended to exclude vehicles, gaps between barricades must be smaller than the width of the excluded vehicles, generally 4 feet (1.2 meters). Provision must be made for ARFF access if necessary. If barricades are intended to exclude pedestrians, they must be continuously linked. Continuous linking may be accomplished through the use of ropes, securely attached to prevent FOD.

2.20.2.2 **Lights.**

Lights must be red, either steady burning or flashing, and must meet the luminance requirements of the State Highway Department. Batteries powering lights will last longer if lights flash. Lights must be mounted on barricades and spaced at no more than 10 feet (3 meters). Lights must be operated between sunset and sunrise and during periods of low visibility whenever the airport is open for operations. They may be operated by photocell, but this may require that the contractor turn them on manually during periods of low visibility during daytime hours.

2.20.2.3 **Supplement Barricades with Signs (for example) As Necessary.**

Examples are “No Entry” and “No Vehicles.” Be aware of the increased effects of wind and jet blast on barricades with attached signs.

2.20.2.4 Air Operations Area – General.

Barricades are not permitted in any active safety area or on the runway side of a runway hold line. Within a runway or taxiway object free area, and on aprons, use orange traffic cones, flashing or steady burning red lights as noted above, highly reflective collapsible barricades marked with diagonal, alternating orange and white stripes; and/or signs to separate all construction/maintenance areas from the movement area. Barricades may be supplemented with alternating orange and white flags at least 20 by 20 inch (50 by 50 cm) square and securely fastened to eliminate FOD. All barricades adjacent to any open runway or taxiway / taxilane safety area, or apron must be as low as possible to the ground, and no more than 18 inches high, exclusive of supplementary lights and flags. Barricades must be of low mass; easily collapsible upon contact with an aircraft or any of its components; and weighted or sturdily attached to the surface to prevent displacement from prop wash, jet blast, wing vortex, and other surface wind currents. If affixed to the surface, they must be frangible at grade level or as low as possible, but not to exceed 3 inch (7.6 cm) above the ground. Figure 2-8 and Figure 2-9 show sample barricades with proper coloring and flags.

Figure 2-8. Interlocking Barricades



Figure 2-9. Low Profile Barricades**2.20.2.5 Air Operations Area – Runway/Taxiway Intersections.**

Use highly reflective barricades with lights to close taxiways leading to closed runways. Evaluate all operating factors when determining how to mark temporary closures that can last from 10 to 15 minutes to a much longer period of time. However, even for closures of relatively short duration, close all taxiway/runway intersections with barricades. The use of traffic cones is appropriate for short duration closures.

2.20.2.6 Air Operations Area – Other.

Beyond runway and taxiway object free areas and aprons, barricades intended for construction vehicles and personnel may be many different shapes and made from various materials, including railroad ties, sawhorses, jersey barriers, or barrels.

2.20.2.7 Maintenance.

The construction specifications must include a provision requiring the contractor to have a person on call 24 hours a day for emergency maintenance of airport hazard lighting and barricades. The contractor must file the contact person's information with the airport operator. Lighting should be checked for proper operation at least once per day, preferably at dusk.

2.21 Work Zone Lighting for Nighttime Construction.

Lighting equipment must adequately illuminate the work area if the construction is to be performed during nighttime hours. Refer to [AC 150/5370-10](#) for minimum illumination levels for nighttime paving projects. Additionally, it is recommended that all support equipment, except haul trucks, be equipped with artificial illumination to safely

illuminate the area immediately surrounding their work areas. The lights should be positioned to provide the most natural color illumination and contrast with a minimum of shadows. The spacing must be determined by trial. Light towers should be positioned and adjusted to aim away from ATCT cabs and active runways to prevent blinding effects. Shielding may be necessary. Light towers should be removed from the construction site when the area is reopened to aircraft operations. Construction lighting units should be identified and generally located on the construction phasing plans in relationship to the ATCT and active runways and taxiways.

2.22 **Protection of Runway and Taxiway Safety Areas.**

Runway and taxiway safety areas, OFZs, OFAs, and approach surfaces are described in AC 150/5300-13. Protection of these areas includes limitations on the location and height of equipment and stockpiled material. An FAA airspace study may be required. Coordinate with the appropriate FAA Airports Regional or District Office if there is any doubt as to requirements or dimensions (see paragraph 2.13.5) as soon as the location and height of materials or equipment are known. The CSPP should include drawings showing all safety areas, object free areas, obstacle free zones and approach departure surfaces affected by construction.

2.22.1 Runway Safety Area (RSA).

A runway safety area is the defined surface surrounding the runway prepared or suitable for reducing the risk of damage to airplanes in the event of an undershoot, overshoot, or excursion from the runway (see AC 150/5300-13). Construction activities within the existing RSA are subject to the following conditions:

- 2.22.1.1 No construction may occur within the existing RSA while the runway is open for aircraft operations. The RSA dimensions may be temporarily adjusted if the runway is restricted to aircraft operations requiring an RSA that is equal to the RSA width and length beyond the runway ends available during construction. (See AC 150/5300-13). The temporary use of declared distances and/or partial runway closures may provide the necessary RSA under certain circumstances. Coordinate with the appropriate FAA Airports Regional or District Office to have declared distances information published, and appropriate NOTAMs issued. See AC 150/5300-13 for guidance on the use of declared distances.
- 2.22.1.2 The airport operator must coordinate the adjustment of RSA dimensions as permitted above with the appropriate FAA Airports Regional or District Office and the local FAA air traffic manager and issue a NOTAM.
- 2.22.1.3 The CSPP and SPCD must provide procedures for ensuring adequate distance for protection from blasting operations, if required by operational considerations.

2.22.1.4 Excavations.

2.22.1.4.1 Open trenches or excavations are not permitted within the RSA while the runway is open. Backfill trenches before the runway is opened. If backfilling excavations before the runway must be opened is impracticable, cover the excavations appropriately. Covering for open trenches must be designed to allow the safe operation of the heaviest aircraft operating on the runway across the trench without damage to the aircraft.

2.22.1.4.2 Construction contractors must prominently mark open trenches and excavations at the construction site with red or orange flags, as approved by the airport operator, and light them with red lights during hours of restricted visibility or darkness.

2.22.1.5 Erosion Control.

Soil erosion must be controlled to maintain RSA standards, that is, the RSA must be cleared and graded and have no potentially hazardous ruts, humps, depressions, or other surface variations, and capable, under dry conditions, of supporting snow removal equipment, aircraft rescue and fire fighting equipment, and the occasional passage of aircraft without causing structural damage to the aircraft.

2.22.2 Runway Object Free Area (ROFA).

Construction, including excavations, may be permitted in the ROFA. However, equipment must be removed from the ROFA when not in use, and material should not be stockpiled in the ROFA if not necessary. Stockpiling material in the OFA requires submittal of a 7460-1 form and justification provided to the appropriate FAA Airports Regional or District Office for approval.

2.22.3 Taxiway Safety Area (TSA).

2.22.3.1 A taxiway safety area is a defined surface alongside the taxiway prepared or suitable for reducing the risk of damage to an airplane unintentionally departing the taxiway. (See AC 150/5300-13.) Since the width of the TSA is equal to the wingspan of the design aircraft, no construction may occur within the TSA while the taxiway is open for aircraft operations. The TSA dimensions may be temporarily adjusted if the taxiway is restricted to aircraft operations requiring a TSA that is equal to the TSA width available during construction. Give special consideration to TSA dimensions at taxiway turns and intersections. (see AC 150/5300-13).

2.22.3.2 The airport operator must coordinate the adjustment of the TSA width as permitted above with the appropriate FAA Airports Regional or District Office and the FAA air traffic manager and issue a NOTAM.

2.22.3.3 The CSPP and SPCD must provide procedures for ensuring adequate distance for protection from blasting operations.

2.22.3.4 **Excavations.**

1. Curves. Open trenches or excavations are not permitted within the TSA while the taxiway is open. Trenches should be backfilled before the taxiway is opened. If backfilling excavations before the taxiway must be opened is impracticable, cover the excavations appropriately. Covering for open trenches must be designed to allow the safe operation of the heaviest aircraft operating on the taxiway across the trench without damage to the aircraft.
2. Straight Sections. Open trenches or excavations are not permitted within the TSA while the taxiway is open for unrestricted aircraft operations. Trenches should be backfilled before the taxiway is opened. If backfilling excavations before the taxiway must be opened is impracticable, cover the excavations to allow the safe passage of ARFF equipment and of the heaviest aircraft operating on the taxiway across the trench without causing damage to the equipment or aircraft. In rare circumstances where the section of taxiway is indispensable for aircraft movement, open trenches or excavations may be permitted in the TSA while the taxiway is open to aircraft operations, subject to the following restrictions:
 - a. Taxiing speed is limited to 10 mph.
 - b. Appropriate NOTAMs are issued.
 - c. Marking and lighting meeting the provisions of paragraphs 2.18 and 2.20 are implemented.
 - d. Low mass, low-profile lighted barricades are installed.
 - e. Appropriate temporary orange construction signs are installed.
3. Construction contractors must prominently mark open trenches and excavations at the construction site with red or orange flags, as approved by the airport operator, and light them with red lights during hours of restricted visibility or darkness.

2.22.3.5 **Erosion control.**

Soil erosion must be controlled to maintain TSA standards, that is, the TSA must be cleared and graded and have no potentially hazardous ruts, humps, depressions, or other surface variations, and capable, under dry conditions, of supporting snow removal equipment, aircraft rescue and firefighting equipment, and the occasional passage of aircraft without causing structural damage to the aircraft.

2.22.4 Taxiway Object Free Area (TOFA).

Unlike the Runway Object Free Area, aircraft wings regularly penetrate the taxiway object free area during normal operations. Thus, the restrictions are more stringent. Except as provided below, no construction may occur within the taxiway object free area while the taxiway is open for aircraft operations.

- 2.22.4.1 The taxiway object free area dimensions may be temporarily adjusted if the taxiway is restricted to aircraft operations requiring a taxiway object free area that is equal to the taxiway object free area width available. Give special consideration to TOFA dimensions at taxiway turns and intersections.
- 2.22.4.2 Offset taxiway centerline and edge pavement markings (do not use glass beads) may be used as a temporary measure to provide the required taxiway object free area. Where offset taxiway pavement markings are provided, centerline lighting, centerline reflectors, or taxiway edge reflectors are required. Existing lighting that does not coincide with the temporary markings must be taken out of service.
- 2.22.4.3 Construction activity, including open excavations, may be accomplished without adjusting the width of the taxiway object free area, subject to the following restrictions:
 - 2.22.4.3.1 Taxiing speed is limited to 10 mph.
 - 2.22.4.3.2 NOTAMs issued advising taxiing pilots of hazard and recommending reduced taxiing speeds on the taxiway.
 - 2.22.4.3.3 Marking and lighting meeting the provisions of paragraphs 2.18 and 2.20 are implemented.
 - 2.22.4.3.4 If desired, appropriate orange construction signs are installed. See paragraph 2.18.4.2 and Appendix F.
 - 2.22.4.3.5 Five-foot clearance is maintained between equipment and materials and any part of an aircraft (includes wingtip overhang). If such clearance can only be maintained if an aircraft does not have full use of the entire taxiway width (with its main landing gear at the edge of the usable pavement), then it will be necessary to move personnel and equipment for the passage of that aircraft.
 - 2.22.4.3.6 Flaggers furnished by the contractor must be used to direct and control construction equipment and personnel to a pre-established setback distance for safe passage of aircraft, and airline and/or airport personnel. Flaggers must also be used to direct taxiing aircraft. Due to liability issues, the airport operator should require airlines to provide flaggers for directing taxiing aircraft.

2.22.5 Obstacle Free Zone (OFZ).

In general, personnel, material, and/or equipment may not penetrate the OFZ while the runway is open for aircraft operations. If a penetration to the OFZ is necessary, it may be possible to continue aircraft operations through operational restrictions. Coordinate with the FAA through the appropriate FAA Airports Regional or District Office.

2.22.6 Runway Approach/Departure Areas and Clearways.

All personnel, materials, and/or equipment must remain clear of the applicable threshold siting surfaces, as defined in AC 150/5300-13. Objects that do not penetrate these surfaces may still be obstructions to air navigation and may affect standard instrument approach procedures. Coordinate with the FAA through the appropriate FAA Airports Regional or District Office.

2.22.6.1 Construction activity in a runway approach/departure area may result in the need to partially close a runway or displace the existing runway threshold. Partial runway closure, displacement of the runway threshold, as well as closure of the complete runway and other portions of the movement area also require coordination through the airport operator with the appropriate FAA air traffic manager (FSS if non-towered) and ATO/Technical Operations (for affected NAVAIDS) and airport users.

2.22.6.2 **Caution About Partial Runway Closures.**

When filing a NOTAM for a partial runway closure, clearly state that the portion of pavement located prior to the threshold is not available for landing and departing traffic. In this case, the threshold has been moved for both landing and takeoff purposes (this is different than a displaced threshold). There may be situations where the portion of closed runway is available for taxiing only. If so, the NOTAM must reflect this condition).

2.22.6.3 **Caution About Displaced Thresholds.**

Implementation of a displaced threshold affects runway length available for aircraft landing over the displacement. Depending on the reason for the displacement (to provide obstruction clearance or RSA), such a displacement may also require an adjustment in the landing distance available and accelerate-stop distance available in the opposite direction. If project scope includes personnel, equipment, excavation, or other work within the existing RSA of any usable runway end, do not implement a displaced threshold unless arrivals and departures toward the construction activity are prohibited. Instead, implement a partial closure.

2.23 **Other Limitations on Construction.**

The CSPP must specify any other limitations on construction, including but not limited to:

2.23.1 Prohibitions.

- 2.23.1.1 No use of tall equipment (cranes, concrete pumps, and so on) unless a 7460-1 determination letter is issued for such equipment.
- 2.23.1.2 No use of open flame welding or torches unless fire safety precautions are provided and the airport operator has approved their use.
- 2.23.1.3 No use of electrical blasting caps on or within 1,000 feet (300 meters) of the airport property. See AC 150/5370-10.

2.23.2 Restrictions.

- 2.23.2.1 Construction suspension required during specific airport operations.
- 2.23.2.2 Areas that cannot be worked on simultaneously.
- 2.23.2.3 Day or night construction restrictions.
- 2.23.2.4 Seasonal construction restrictions.
- 2.23.2.5 Temporary signs not approved by the airport operator.
- 2.23.2.6 Grades changes that could result in unplanned effects on NAVAIDs.

CHAPTER 3. GUIDELINES FOR WRITING A CSPP

3.1 General Requirements.

The CSPP is a standalone document written to correspond with the subjects outlined in paragraph 2.4. The CSPP is organized by numbered sections corresponding to each subject listed in paragraph 2.4, and described in detail in paragraphs 2.5 - 2.23. Each section number and title in the CSPP matches the corresponding subject outlined in paragraph 2.4 (for example, 1. Coordination, 2. Phasing, 3. Areas and Operations Affected by the Construction Activity, and so on). With the exception of the project scope of work outlined in Section 2. Phasing, only subjects specific to operational safety during construction should be addressed.

3.2 Applicability of Subjects.

Each section should, to the extent practical, focus on the specific subject. Where an overlapping requirement spans several sections, the requirement should be explained in detail in the most applicable section. A reference to that section should be included in all other sections where the requirement may apply. For example, the requirement to protect existing underground FAA ILS cables during trenching operations could be considered FAA ATO coordination (Coordination, paragraph 2.5.3), an area and operation affected by the construction activity (Areas and Operations Affected by the Construction Activity, paragraph 2.7.1.4), a protection of a NAVAID (Protection of Navigational Aids (NAVAIDs), paragraph 2.8), or a notification to the FAA of construction activities (Notification of Construction Activities, paragraph 2.13.5.3.2). However, it is more specifically an underground utility requirement (Underground Utilities, paragraph 2.15). The procedure for protecting underground ILS cables during trenching operations should therefore be described in 2.4.2.11: “The contractor must coordinate with the local FAA System Support Center (SSC) to mark existing ILS cable routes along Runway 17-35. The ILS cables will be located by hand digging whenever the trenching operation moves within 10 feet of the cable markings.” All other applicable sections should include a reference to 2.4.2.11: “ILS cables shall be identified and protected as described in 2.4.2.11” or “See 2.4.2.11 for ILS cable identification and protection requirements.” Thus, the CSPP should be considered as a whole, with no need to duplicate responses to related issues.

3.3 Graphical Representations.

Construction safety drawings should be included in the CSPP as attachments. When other graphical representations will aid in supporting written statements, the drawings, diagrams, and/or photographs should also be attached to the CSPP. References should be made in the CSPP to each graphical attachment and may be made in multiple sections.

3.4 **Reference Documents.**

The CSPP must not incorporate a document by reference unless reproduction of the material in that document is prohibited. In that case, either copies of or a source for the referenced document must be provided to the contractor. Where this AC recommends references (e.g. as in paragraph 3.9) the intent is to include a reference to the corresponding section in the CSPP, not to this Advisory Circular.

3.5 **Restrictions.**

The CSPP should not be considered as a project design review document. The CSPP should also avoid mention of permanent (“as-built”) features such as pavements, markings, signs, and lighting, except when such features are intended to aid in maintaining operational safety during the construction.

3.6 **Coordination.**

Include in this section a detailed description of conferences and meetings to be held both before and during the project. Include appropriate information from AC 150/5370-12. Discuss coordination procedures and schedules for each required FAA ATO Technical Operations shutdown and restart and all required flight inspections.

3.7 **Phasing.**

Include in this section a detailed scope of work description for the project as a whole and each phase of work covered by the CSPP. This includes all locations and durations of the work proposed. Attach drawings to graphically support the written scope of work. Detail in this section the sequenced phases of the proposed construction. Include a reference to paragraph 3.8, as appropriate.

3.8 **Areas and Operations Affected by Construction.**

Focus in this section on identifying the areas and operations affected by the construction. Describe corresponding mitigation that is not covered in detail elsewhere in the CSPP. Include references to paragraphs below as appropriate. Attach drawings as necessary to graphically describe affected areas and mechanisms proposed. See Appendix F for sample operational effects tables and figures.

3.9 **NAVAID Protection.**

List in this section all NAVAID facilities that will be affected by the construction. Identify NAVAID facilities that will be placed out of service at any time prior to or during construction activities. Identify individuals responsible for coordinating each shutdown and when each facility will be out of service. Include a reference to paragraph 3.6 for FAA ATO NAVAID shutdown, restart, and flight inspection coordination. Outline in detail procedures to protect each NAVAID facility remaining in service from interference by construction activities. Include a reference to paragraph 3.14 for the

issuance of NOTAMs as required. Include a reference to paragraph 3.16 for the protection of underground cables and piping serving NAVAIDs. If temporary visual aids are proposed to replace or supplement existing facilities, include a reference to paragraph 3.19. Attach drawings to graphically indicate the affected NAVAIDS and the corresponding critical areas.

3.10 **Contractor Access.**

This will necessarily be the most extensive section of the CSPP. Provide sufficient detail so that a contractor not experienced in working on airports will understand the unique restrictions such work will require. Due to this extent, it should be broken down into subsections as described below:

3.10.1 Location of Stockpiled Construction Materials.

Describe in this section specific locations for stockpiling material. Note any height restrictions on stockpiles. Include a reference to paragraph 3.21 for hazard marking and lighting devices used to identify stockpiles. Include a reference to paragraph 3.11 for provisions to prevent stockpile material from becoming wildlife attractants. Include a reference to paragraph 3.12 for provisions to prevent stockpile material from becoming FOD. Attach drawings to graphically indicate the stockpile locations.

3.10.2 Vehicle and Pedestrian Operations.

While there are many items to be addressed in this major subsection of the CSPP, all are concerned with one main issue: keeping people and vehicles from areas of the airport where they don't belong. This includes preventing unauthorized entry to the AOA and preventing the improper movement of pedestrians or vehicles on the airport. In this section, focus on mechanisms to prevent construction vehicles and workers traveling to and from the worksite from unauthorized entry into movement areas. Specify locations of parking for both employee vehicles and construction equipment, and routes for access and haul roads. In most cases, this will best be accomplished by attaching a drawing. Quote from AC 150/5210-5 specific requirements for contractor vehicles rather than referring to the AC as a whole, and include special requirements for identifying HAZMAT vehicles. Quote from, rather than incorporate by reference, AC 150/5210-20 as appropriate to address the airport's rules for ground vehicle operations, including its training program. Discuss the airport's recordkeeping system listing authorized vehicle operators.

3.10.3 Two-Way Radio Communications.

Include a special section to identify all individuals who are required to maintain communications with Air Traffic (AT) at airports with active towers, or monitor CTAF at airports without or with closed ATCT. Include training requirements for all individuals required to communicate with AT. Individuals required to monitor AT frequencies should also be identified. If construction employees are also required to communicate by radio with Airport Operations, this procedure should be described in detail. Usage of vehicle mounted radios and/or portable radios should be addressed. Communication procedures for the event of disabled radio communication (that is, light

signals, telephone numbers, others) must be included. All radio frequencies should be identified (Tower, Ground Control, CTAF, UNICOM, ATIS, and so on).

3.10.4 **Airport Security.**

Address security as it applies to vehicle and pedestrian operations. Discuss TSA requirements, security badging requirements, perimeter fence integrity, gate security, and other needs. Attach drawings to graphically indicate secured and/or Security Identification Display Areas (SIDA), perimeter fencing, and available access points.

3.11 **Wildlife Management.**

Discuss in this section wildlife management procedures. Describe the maintenance of existing wildlife mitigation devices, such as perimeter fences, and procedures to limit wildlife attractants. Include procedures to notify Airport Operations of wildlife encounters. Include a reference to paragraph 3.10 for security (wildlife) fence integrity maintenance as required.

3.12 **FOD Management.**

In this section, discuss methods to control and monitor FOD: worksite housekeeping, ground vehicle tire inspections, runway sweeps, and so on. Include a reference to paragraph 3.15 for inspection requirements as required.

3.13 **HAZMAT Management.**

Describe in this section HAZMAT management procedures: fuel deliveries, spill recovery procedures, Safety Data Sheet (SDS), Material Safety Data Sheet (MSDS) or Product Safety Data Sheet (PSDS) availability, and other considerations. Any specific airport HAZMAT restrictions should also be identified. Include a reference to paragraph 3.10 for HAZMAT vehicle identification requirements. Quote from, rather than incorporate by reference, AC 150/5320-15.

3.14 **Notification of Construction Activities.**

List in this section the names and telephone numbers of points of contact for all parties affected by the construction project. We recommend a single list that includes all telephone numbers required under this section. Include emergency notification procedures for all representatives of all parties potentially impacted by the construction. Identify individual representatives – and at least one alternate – for each party. List both on-duty and off-duty contact information for each individual, including individuals responsible for emergency maintenance of airport construction hazard lighting and barricades. Describe procedures to coordinate immediate response to events that might adversely affect the operational safety of the airport (such as interrupted NAVAID service). Explain requirements for and the procedures for the issuance of Notices to Airmen (NOTAMs), notification to FAA required by 14 CFR Part 77 and Part 157 and in the event of affected NAVAIDs. For NOTAMs, identify an individual, and at least one alternate, responsible for issuing and cancelling each specific type of Notice to

Airmen (NOTAM) required. Detail notification methods for police, fire fighting, and medical emergencies. This may include 911, but should also include direct phone numbers of local police departments and nearby hospitals. Identify the E911 address of the airport and the emergency access route via haul roads to the construction site. Require the contractor to have this information available to all workers. The local Poison Control number should be listed. Procedures regarding notification of Airport Operations and/or the ARFF Department of such emergencies should be identified, as applicable. If airport radio communications are identified as a means of emergency notification, include a reference to paragraph 3.10. Differentiate between emergency and nonemergency notification of ARFF personnel, the latter including activities that affect ARFF water supplies and access roads. Identify the primary ARFF contact person and at least one alternate. If notification is to be made through Airport Operations, then detail this procedure. Include a method of confirmation from the ARFF department.

3.15 Inspection Requirements.

Describe in this section inspection requirements to ensure airfield safety compliance. Include a requirement for routine inspections by the resident engineer (RE) or other airport operator's representative and the construction contractors. If the engineering consultants and/or contractors have a Safety Officer who will conduct such inspections, identify this individual. Describe procedures for special inspections, such as those required to reopen areas for aircraft operations. Part 139 requires daily airfield inspections at certificated airports, but these may need to be more frequent when construction is in progress. Discuss the role of such inspections on areas under construction. Include a requirement to immediately remedy any deficiencies, whether caused by negligence, oversight, or project scope change.

3.16 Underground Utilities.

Explain how existing underground utilities will be located and protected. Identify each utility owner and include contact information for each company/agency in the master list. Address emergency response procedures for damaged or disrupted utilities. Include a reference to paragraph 3.14 for notification of utility owners of accidental utility disruption as required.

3.17 Penalties.

Describe in this section specific penalties imposed for noncompliance with airport rules and regulations, including the CSPP: SIDA violations, VPD, and others.

3.18 Special Conditions.

Identify any special conditions that may trigger specific safety mitigation actions outlined in this CSPP: low visibility operations, snow removal, aircraft in distress, aircraft accident, security breach, VPD, and other activities requiring construction suspension/resumption. Include a reference to paragraph 3.10 for compliance with airport safety and security measures and for radio communications as required. Include

a reference to paragraph 3.14 for emergency notification of all involved parties, including police/security, ARFF, and medical services.

3.19 Runway and Taxiway Visual Aids.

Include marking, lighting, signs, and visual NAVAIDS. Detail temporary runway and taxiway marking, lighting, signs, and visual NAVAIDS required for the construction. Discuss existing marking, lighting, signs, and visual NAVAIDS that are temporarily, altered, obliterated, or shut down. Consider non-federal facilities and address requirements for reimbursable agreements necessary for alteration of FAA facilities and for necessary flight checks. Identify temporary TORA signs or runway distance remaining signs if appropriate. Identify required temporary visual NAVAIDS such as REIL or PAPI. Quote from, rather than incorporate by reference, AC 150/5340-1, Standards for Airport Markings; AC 150/5340-18, Standards for Airport Sign Systems; and AC 150/5340-30, as required. Attach drawings to graphically indicate proposed marking, lighting, signs, and visual NAVAIDS.

3.20 Marking and Signs for Access Routes.

Detail plans for marking and signs for vehicle access routes. To the extent possible, signs should be in conformance with the Federal Highway Administration MUTCD and/or State highway specifications, not hand lettered. Detail any modifications to the guidance in the MUTCD necessary to meet frangibility/height requirements.

3.21 Hazard Marking and Lighting.

Specify all marking and lighting equipment, including when and where each type of device is to be used. Specify maximum gaps between barricades and the maximum spacing of hazard lighting. Identify one individual and at least one alternate responsible for maintenance of hazard marking and lighting equipment in the master telephone list. Include a reference to paragraph 3.14. Attach drawings to graphically indicate the placement of hazard marking and lighting equipment.

3.22 Work Zone Lighting for Nighttime Construction.

If work is to be conducted at night, specify all lighting equipment, including when and where each type of device is to be used. Indicate the direction lights are to be aimed and any directions that aiming of lights is prohibited. Specify any shielding necessary in instances where aiming is not sufficient to prevent interference with air traffic control and aircraft operations. Attach drawings to graphically indicate the placement and aiming of lighting equipment. Where the plan only indicates directions that aiming of lights is prohibited, the placement and positioning of portable lights must be proposed by the Contractor and approved by the airport operator's representative each time lights are relocated or repositioned.

3.23 Protection of Runway and Taxiway Safety Areas.

This section should focus exclusively on procedures for protecting all safety areas, including those altered by the construction: methods of demarcation, limit of access, movement within safety areas, stockpiling and trenching restrictions, and so on. Reference AC 150/5300-13, as required. Include a reference to paragraph 3.10 for procedures regarding vehicle and personnel movement within safety areas. Include a reference to paragraph 3.10 for material stockpile restrictions as required. Detail requirements for trenching, excavations, and backfill. Include a reference to paragraph 3.21 for hazard marking and lighting devices used to identify open excavations as required. If runway and taxiway closures are proposed to protect safety areas, or if temporary displaced thresholds and/or revised declared distances are used to provide the required Runway Safety Area, include a reference to paragraphs 3.14 and 3.19. Detail procedures for protecting the runway OFZ, runway OFA, taxiway OFA and runway approach surfaces including those altered by the construction: methods of demarcation, limit of cranes, storage of equipment, and so on. Quote from, rather than incorporate by reference, AC 150/5300-13, as required. Include a reference to paragraph 3.24 for height (i.e., crane) restrictions as required. One way to address the height of equipment that will move during the project is to establish a three-dimensional “box” within which equipment will be confined that can be studied as a single object. Attach drawings to graphically indicate the safety area, OFZ, and OFA boundaries.

3.24 Other Limitations on Construction.

This section should describe what limitations must be applied to each area of work and when each limitation will be applied: limitations due to airport operations, height (i.e., crane) restrictions, areas which cannot be worked at simultaneously, day/night work restrictions, winter construction, and other limitations. Include a reference to paragraph 3.7 for project phasing requirements based on construction limitations as required.

Page Intentionally Blank

APPENDIX A. RELATED READING MATERIAL

Obtain the latest version of the following free publications from the FAA on its Web site at <http://www.faa.gov/airports/>.

Table A-1. FAA Publications

Number	Title and Description
<u>AC 150/5200-28</u>	<i>Notices to Airmen (NOTAMs) for Airport Operators</i> Guidance for using the NOTAM System in airport reporting.
<u>AC 150/5200-30</u>	<i>Airport Field Condition Assessments and Winter Operations Safety</i> Guidance for airport owners/operators on the development of an acceptable airport snow and ice control program and on appropriate field condition reporting procedures.
<u>AC 150/5200-33</u>	<i>Hazardous Wildlife Attractants On or Near Airports</i> Guidance on locating certain land uses that might attract hazardous wildlife to public-use airports.
<u>AC 150/5210-5</u>	<i>Painting, Marking, and Lighting of Vehicles Used on an Airport</i> Guidance, specifications, and standards for painting, marking, and lighting vehicles operating in the airport air operations areas.
<u>AC 150/5210-20</u>	<i>Ground Vehicle Operations to include Taxiing or Towing an Aircraft on Airports</i> Guidance to airport operators on developing ground vehicle operation training programs.
<u>AC 150/5300-13</u>	<i>Airport Design</i> FAA standards and recommendations for airport design. Establishes approach visibility minimums as an airport design parameter, and contains the Object Free area and the obstacle free-zone criteria.
<u>AC 150/5210-24</u>	<i>Airport Foreign Object Debris (FOD) Management</i> Guidance for developing and managing an airport foreign object debris (FOD) program

Number	Title and Description
<u>AC 150/5320-15</u>	<i>Management of Airport Industrial Waste</i> Basic information on the characteristics, management, and regulations of industrial wastes generated at airports. Guidance for developing a Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP) that applies best management practices to eliminate, prevent, or reduce pollutants in storm water runoff with particular airport industrial activities.
<u>AC 150/5340-1</u>	<i>Standards for Airport Markings</i> FAA standards for the siting and installation of signs on airport runways and taxiways.
<u>AC 150/5340-18</u>	<i>Standards for Airport Sign Systems</i> FAA standards for the siting and installation of signs on airport runways and taxiways.
<u>AC 150/5345-28</u>	<i>Precision Approach Path Indicator (PAPI) Systems</i> FAA standards for PAPI systems, which provide pilots with visual glide slope guidance during approach for landing.
<u>AC 150/5340-30</u>	<i>Design and Installation Details for Airport Visual Aids</i> Guidance and recommendations on the installation of airport visual aids.
<u>AC 150/5345-39</u>	<i>Specification for L-853, Runway and Taxiway Retroreflective Markers</i>
<u>AC 150/5345-44</u>	<i>Specification for Runway and Taxiway Signs</i> FAA specifications for unlighted and lighted signs for taxiways and runways.
<u>AC 150/5345-53</u>	<i>Airport Lighting Equipment Certification Program</i> Details on the Airport Lighting Equipment Certification Program (ALECP).
<u>AC 150/5345-50</u>	<i>Specification for Portable Runway and Taxiway Lights</i> FAA standards for portable runway and taxiway lights and runway end identifier lights for temporary use to permit continued aircraft operations while all or part of a runway lighting system is inoperative.
<u>AC 150/5345-55</u>	<i>Specification for L-893, Lighted Visual Aid to Indicate Temporary Runway Closure</i>

Number	Title and Description
<u>AC 150/5370-10</u>	<i>Standards for Specifying Construction of Airports</i> Standards for construction of airports, including earthwork, drainage, paving, turfing, lighting, and incidental construction.
<u>AC 150/5370-12</u>	<i>Quality Management for Federally Funded Airport Construction Projects</i>
EB 93	<i>Guidance for the Assembly and Installation of Temporary Orange Construction Signs</i>
FAA Order 5200.11	<u>FAA Airports (ARP) Safety Management System (SMS)</u> Basics for implementing SMS within ARP. Includes roles and responsibilities of ARP management and staff as well as other FAA lines of business that contribute to the ARP SMS.
FAA Certalert 98-05	<i>Grasses Attractive to Hazardous Wildlife</i> Guidance on grass management and seed selection.
FAA Form 7460-1	<u>Notice of Proposed Construction or Alteration</u>
FAA Form 7480-1	<u>Notice of Landing Area Proposal</u>
FAA Form 6000.26	National NAS Strategic Interruption Service Level Agreement, Strategic Events Coordination, Airport Sponsor Form

Obtain the latest version of the following free publications from the Electronic Code of Federal Regulations at <http://www.ecfr.gov/>.

Table A-2. Code of Federal Regulation

Number	Title
Title 14 CFR Part 77	Safe, Efficient Use and Preservation of the Navigable Airspace
Title 14 CFR Part 139	Certification of Airports
Title 49 CFR Part 1542	Airport Security

Obtain the latest version of the Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices from the Federal Highway Administration at <http://mutcd.fhwa.dot.gov/>.

Page Intentionally Blank

APPENDIX B. TERMS AND ACRONYMS**Table B-1. Terms and Acronyms**

Term	Definition
Form 7460-1	Notice of Proposed Construction or Alteration. For on-airport projects, the form submitted to the FAA regional or airports division office as formal written notification of any kind of construction or alteration of objects that affect navigable airspace, as defined in 14 CFR Part 77, <i>Safe, Efficient Use, and Preservation of the Navigable Airspace</i> . (See guidance available on the FAA web site at https://oeaaa.faa.gov .) The form may be downloaded at http://www.faa.gov/airports/resources/forms/ , or filed electronically at: https://oeaaa.faa.gov .
Form 7480-1	Notice of Landing Area Proposal. Form submitted to the FAA Airports Regional Division Office or Airports District Office as formal written notification whenever a project without an airport layout plan on file with the FAA involves the construction of a new airport; the construction, realigning, altering, activating, or abandoning of a runway, landing strip, or associated taxiway; or the deactivation or abandoning of an entire airport. The form may be downloaded at http://www.faa.gov/airports/resources/forms/ .
Form 6000-26	Airport Sponsor Strategic Event Submission Form
AC	Advisory Circular
ACSI	Airport Certification Safety Inspector
ADG	Airplane Design Group
AIP	Airport Improvement Program
ALECP	Airport Lighting Equipment Certification Program
ANG	Air National Guard
AOA	Air Operations Area, as defined in 14 CFR Part 107. Means a portion of an airport, specified in the airport security program, in which security measures are carried out. This area includes aircraft movement areas, aircraft parking areas, loading ramps, and safety areas, and any adjacent areas (such as general aviation areas) that are not separated by adequate security systems, measures, or procedures. This area does not include the secured area of the airport terminal building.
ARFF	Aircraft Rescue and Fire Fighting
ARP	FAA Office of Airports
ASDA	Accelerate-Stop Distance Available
AT	Air Traffic
ATCT	Airport Traffic Control Tower
ATIS	Automatic Terminal Information Service
ATO	Air Traffic Organization
Certificated Airport	An airport that has been issued an Airport Operating Certificate by the FAA under

Term	Definition
	the authority of 14 CFR Part 139, <i>Certification of Airports</i> .
CFR	Code of Federal Regulations
Construction	The presence of construction-related personnel, equipment, and materials in any location that could infringe upon the movement of aircraft.
CSPP	Construction Safety and Phasing Plan. The overall plan for safety and phasing of a construction project developed by the airport operator, or developed by the airport operator's consultant and approved by the airport operator. It is included in the invitation for bids and becomes part of the project specifications.
CTAF	Common Traffic Advisory Frequency
Displaced Threshold	A threshold that is located at a point on the runway other than the designated beginning of the runway. The portion of pavement behind a displaced threshold is available for takeoffs in either direction or landing from the opposite direction.
DOT	Department of Transportation
EPA	Environmental Protection Agency
FAA	Federal Aviation Administration
FOD	Foreign Object Debris/Damage
FSS	Flight Service Station
GA	General Aviation
HAZMAT	Hazardous Materials
HMA	Hot Mix Asphalt
IAP	Instrument Approach Procedures
IFR	Instrument Flight Rules
ILS	Instrument Landing System
LDA	Landing Distance Available
LOC	Localizer antenna array
Movement Area	The runways, taxiways, and other areas of an airport that are used for taxiing or hover taxiing, air taxiing, takeoff, and landing of aircraft, exclusive of loading aprons and aircraft parking areas (reference 14 CFR Part 139).
MSDS	Material Safety Data Sheet
MUTCD	Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices
NAVAID	Navigation Aid
NAVAID Critical Area	An area of defined shape and size associated with a NAVAID that must remain clear and graded to avoid interference with the electronic signal.
Non-Movement Area	The area inside the airport security fence exclusive of the Movement Area. It is important to note that the non-movement area includes pavement traversed by aircraft.

Term	Definition
NOTAM	Notices to Airmen
Obstruction	Any object/obstacle exceeding the obstruction standards specified by 14 CFR Part 77, subpart C.
OCC	Operations Control Center
OE / AAA	Obstruction Evaluation / Airport Airspace Analysis
OFA	Object Free Area. An area on the ground centered on the runway, taxiway, or taxi lane centerline provided to enhance safety of aircraft operations by having the area free of objects except for those objects that need to be located in the OFA for air navigation or aircraft ground maneuvering purposes. (See <u>AC 150/5300-13</u> for additional guidance on OFA standards and wingtip clearance criteria.)
OFZ	Obstacle Free Zone. The airspace below 150 ft (45 m) above the established airport elevation and along the runway and extended runway centerline that is required to be clear of all objects, except for frangible visual NAVAIDs that need to be located in the OFZ because of their function, in order to provide clearance protection for aircraft landing or taking off from the runway and for missed approaches. The OFZ is subdivided as follows: Runway OFZ, Inner Approach OFZ, Inner Transitional OFZ, and Precision OFZ. Refer to <u>AC 150/5300-13</u> for guidance on OFZ.
OSHA	Occupational Safety and Health Administration
OTS	Out of Service
P&R	Planning and Requirements Group
NPI	NAS Planning & Integration
PAPI	Precision Approach Path Indicator
PFC	Passenger Facility Charge
PLASI	Pulse Light Approach Slope Indicator
Project Proposal Summary	A clear and concise description of the proposed project or change that is the object of Safety Risk Management.
RA	Reimbursable Agreement
RE	Resident Engineer
REIL	Runway End Identifier Lights
RNAV	Area Navigation
ROFA	Runway Object Free Area
RSA	Runway Safety Area. A defined surface surrounding the runway prepared or suitable for reducing the risk of damage to airplanes in the event of an undershoot, overshoot, or excursion from the runway, in accordance with <u>AC 150/5300-13</u> .
SDS	Safety Data Sheet
SIDA	Security Identification Display Area
SMS	Safety Management System

Term	Definition
SPCD	Safety Plan Compliance Document. Details developed and submitted by a contractor to the airport operator for approval providing details on how the performance of a construction project will comply with the CSPP.
SRM	Safety Risk Management
SSC	System Support Center
Taxiway Safety Area	A defined surface alongside the taxiway prepared or suitable for reducing the risk of damage to an airplane unintentionally departing the taxiway, in accordance with <u>AC 150/5300-13</u> .
TDG	Taxiway Design Group
Temporary	Any condition that is not intended to be permanent.
Temporary Runway End	The beginning of that portion of the runway available for landing and taking off in one direction, and for landing in the other direction. Note the difference from a displaced threshold.
Threshold	The beginning of that portion of the runway available for landing. In some instances, the landing threshold may be displaced.
TODA	Takeoff Distance Available
TOFA	Taxiway Object Free Area
TORA	Takeoff Run Available. The length of the runway less any length of runway unavailable and/or unsuitable for takeoff run computations. See <u>AC 150/5300-13</u> for guidance on declared distances.
TSA	Taxiway Safety Area, or Transportation Security Administration
UNICOM	A radio communications system of a type used at small airports.
VASI	Visual Approach Slope Indicator
VGSI	Visual Glide Slope Indicator. A device that provides a visual glide slope indicator to landing pilots. These systems include precision approach path indicator (PAPI), visual approach slope indicator (VASI), and pulse light approach slope indicator (PLASI).
VFR	Visual Flight Rules
VOR	Very High Frequency Omnidirectional Radio Range
VPD	Vehicle / Pedestrian Deviation

APPENDIX C. SAFETY AND PHASING PLAN CHECKLIST

This appendix is keyed to Chapter 2. In the electronic version of this AC, clicking on the paragraph designation in the Reference column will access the applicable paragraph. There may be instances where the CSPP requires provisions that are not covered by the list in this appendix.

This checklist is intended as an aid, not a required submittal.

Table C-1. CSPP Checklist

Coordination	Reference	Addressed?			Remarks
		Yes	No	NA	
General Considerations					
Requirements for predesign, prebid, and preconstruction conferences to introduce the subject of airport operational safety during construction are specified.	<u>2.5</u>				
Operational safety is a standing agenda item for construction progress meetings.	<u>2.5</u>				
Scheduling of the construction phases is properly addressed.	<u>2.6</u>				
Any formal agreements are established.	<u>2.5.3</u>				
Areas and Operations Affected by Construction Activity					
Drawings showing affected areas are included.	<u>2.7.1</u>				
Closed or partially closed runways, taxiways, and aprons are depicted on drawings.	<u>2.7.1.1</u>				
Access routes used by ARFF vehicles affected by the project are addressed.	<u>2.7.1.2</u>				
Access routes used by airport and airline support vehicles affected by the project are addressed.	<u>2.7.1.3</u>				
Underground utilities, including water supplies for firefighting and drainage.	<u>2.7.1.4</u>				

Coordination	Reference	Addressed?			Remarks
		Yes	No	NA	
Approach/departure surfaces affected by heights of temporary objects are addressed.	<u>2.7.1.5</u>				
Construction areas, storage areas, and access routes near runways, taxiways, aprons, or helipads are properly depicted on drawings.	<u>2.7.1</u>				
Temporary changes to taxi operations are addressed.	<u>2.7.2.1</u>				
Detours for ARFF and other airport vehicles are identified.	<u>2.7.2.2</u>				
Maintenance of essential utilities and underground infrastructure is addressed.	<u>2.7.2.3</u>				
Temporary changes to air traffic control procedures are addressed.	<u>2.7.2.4</u>				
NAVAIDs					
Critical areas for NAVAIDs are depicted on drawings.	<u>2.8</u>				
Effects of construction activity on the performance of NAVAIDS, including unanticipated power outages, are addressed.	<u>2.8</u>				
Protection of NAVAID facilities is addressed.	<u>2.8</u>				
The required distance and direction from each NAVAID to any construction activity is depicted on drawings.	<u>2.8</u>				
Procedures for coordination with FAA ATO/Technical Operations, including identification of points of contact, are included.	<u>2.8, 2.13.1, 2.13.5.3.1, 2.18.1</u>				
Contractor Access					
The CSPP addresses areas to which contractor will have access and how	<u>2.9</u>				

Coordination	Reference	Addressed?			Remarks
		Yes	No	NA	
the areas will be accessed.					
The application of 49 CFR Part 1542 Airport Security, where appropriate, is addressed.	<u>2.9</u>				
The location of stockpiled construction materials is depicted on drawings.	<u>2.9.1</u>				
The requirement for stockpiles in the ROFA to be approved by FAA is included.	<u>2.9.1</u>				
Requirements for proper stockpiling of materials are included.	<u>2.9.1</u>				
Construction site parking is addressed.	<u>2.9.2.1</u>				
Construction equipment parking is addressed.	<u>2.9.2.2</u>				
Access and haul roads are addressed.	<u>2.9.2.3</u>				
A requirement for marking and lighting of vehicles to comply with <u>AC 150/5210-5, Painting, Marking and Lighting of Vehicles Used on an Airport</u> , is included.	<u>2.9.2.4</u>				
Proper vehicle operations, including requirements for escorts, are described.	<u>2.9.2.5, 2.9.2.6</u>				
Training requirements for vehicle drivers are addressed.	<u>2.9.2.7</u>				
Two-way radio communications procedures are described.	<u>2.9.2.9</u>				
Maintenance of the secured area of the airport is addressed.	<u>2.9.2.10</u>				
Wildlife Management					
The airport operator's wildlife management procedures are addressed.	<u>2.10</u>				

Coordination	Reference	Addressed?			Remarks
		Yes	No	NA	
Foreign Object Debris Management					
The airport operator’s FOD management procedures are addressed.	<u>2.11</u>				
Hazardous Materials Management					
The airport operator’s hazardous materials management procedures are addressed.	<u>2.12</u>				
Notification of Construction Activities					
Procedures for the immediate notification of airport user and local FAA of any conditions adversely affecting the operational safety of the airport are detailed.	<u>2.13</u>				
Maintenance of a list by the airport operator of the responsible representatives/points of contact for all involved parties and procedures for contacting them 24 hours a day, seven days a week is specified.	<u>2.13.1</u>				
A list of local ATO/Technical Operations personnel is included.	<u>2.13.1</u>				
A list of ATCT managers on duty is included.	<u>2.13.1</u>				
A list of authorized representatives to the OCC is included.	<u>2.13.2</u>				
Procedures for coordinating, issuing, maintaining and cancelling by the airport operator of NOTAMS about airport conditions resulting from construction are included.	<u>2.8, 2.13.2, 2.18.3.3.9</u>				
Provision of information on closed or hazardous conditions on airport movement areas by the airport operator to the OCC is specified.	<u>2.13.2</u>				
Emergency notification procedures for medical, fire fighting, and police	<u>2.13.3</u>				

Coordination	Reference	Addressed?			Remarks
		Yes	No	NA	
response are addressed.					
Coordination with ARFF personnel for non-emergency issues is addressed.	<u>2.13.4</u>				
Notification to the FAA under 14 CFR parts 77 and 157 is addressed.	<u>2.13.5</u>				
Reimbursable agreements for flight checks and/or design and construction for FAA owned NAVAIDs are addressed.	<u>2.13.5.3.2</u>				
Inspection Requirements					
Daily and interim inspections by both the airport operator and contractor are specified.	<u>2.14.1, 2.14.2</u>				
Final inspections at certificated airports are specified when required.	<u>2.14.3</u>				
Underground Utilities					
Procedures for protecting existing underground facilities in excavation areas are described.	<u>2.15</u>				
Penalties					
Penalty provisions for noncompliance with airport rules and regulations and the safety plans are detailed.	<u>2.16</u>				
Special Conditions					
Any special conditions that affect the operation of the airport or require the activation of any special procedures are addressed.	<u>2.17</u>				
Runway and Taxiway Visual Aids - Marking, Lighting, Signs, and Visual NAVAIDs					
The proper securing of temporary airport markings, lighting, signs, and visual NAVAIDs is addressed.	<u>2.18.1</u>				
Frangibility of airport markings, lighting, signs, and visual NAVAIDs is specified.	<u>2.18.1, 2.18.3, 2.18.4.2, 2.20.2.4</u>				

Coordination	Reference	Addressed?			Remarks
		Yes	No	NA	
The requirement for markings to be in compliance with <u>AC 150/5340-1</u> , <i>Standards for Airport Markings</i> , is specified.	<u>2.18.2</u>				
Detailed specifications for materials and methods for temporary markings are provided.	<u>2.18.2</u>				
The requirement for lighting to conform to <u>AC 150/5340-30</u> , <i>Design and Installation Details for Airport Visual Aids</i> ; <u>AC 150/5345-50</u> , <i>Specification for Portable Runway and Taxiway Lights</i> ; and <u>AC 150/5345-53</u> , <i>Airport Lighting Certification Program</i> , is specified.	<u>2.18.3</u>				
The use of a lighted X is specified where appropriate.	<u>2.18.2.1.2</u> , <u>2.18.3.2</u>				
The requirement for signs to conform to <u>AC 150/5345-44</u> , <i>Specification for Runway and Taxiway Signs</i> ; <u>AC 150/5340-18</u> , <i>Standards for Airport Sign Systems</i> ; and <u>AC 150/5345-53</u> , <i>Airport Lighting Certification Program</i> , is specified.	<u>2.18.4</u>				
Marking and Signs For Access Routes					
The CSPP specifies that pavement markings and signs intended for construction personnel should conform to <u>AC 150/5340-18</u> and, to the extent practicable, with the MUTCD and/or State highway specifications.	<u>2.18.4.2</u>				
Hazard Marking and Lighting					
Prominent, comprehensible warning indicators for any area affected by construction that is normally accessible to aircraft, personnel, or vehicles are specified.	<u>2.20.1</u>				

Coordination	Reference	Addressed?			Remarks
		Yes	No	NA	
Hazard marking and lighting are specified to identify open manholes, small areas under repair, stockpiled material, and waste areas.	<u>2.20.1</u>				
The CSPP considers less obvious construction-related hazards.	<u>2.20.1</u>				
Equipment that poses the least danger to aircraft but is sturdy enough to remain in place when subjected to typical winds, prop wash and jet blast is specified.	<u>2.20.2.1</u>				
The spacing of barricades is specified such that a breach is physically prevented barring a deliberate act.	<u>2.20.2.1</u>				
Red lights meeting the luminance requirements of the State Highway Department are specified.	<u>2.20.2.2</u>				
Barricades, temporary markers, and other objects placed and left in areas adjacent to any open runway, taxiway, taxi lane, or apron are specified to be as low as possible to the ground, and no more than 18 inch high.	<u>2.20.2.3</u>				
Barricades are specified to indicate construction locations in which no part of an aircraft may enter.	<u>2.20.2.3</u>				
Highly reflective barriers with lights are specified to barricade taxiways leading to closed runways.	<u>2.20.2.5</u>				
Markings for temporary closures are specified.	<u>2.20.2.5</u>				
The provision of a contractor's representative on call 24 hours a day for emergency maintenance of airport hazard lighting and barricades is specified.	<u>2.20.2.7</u>				

Coordination	Reference	Addressed?			Remarks
		Yes	No	NA	
Work Zone Lighting for Nighttime Construction					
If work is to be conducted at night, the CSPP identifies construction lighting units and their general locations and aiming in relationship to the ATCT and active runways and taxiways.	<u>2.21</u>				
Protection of Runway and Taxiway Safety Areas					
The CSPP clearly states that no construction may occur within a safety area while the associated runway or taxiway is open for aircraft operations.	<u>2.22.1.1</u> , <u>2.22.3.1</u>				
The CSPP specifies that the airport operator coordinates the adjustment of RSA or TSA dimensions with the ATCT and the appropriate FAA Airports Regional or District Office and issues a local NOTAM.	<u>2.22.1.2</u> , <u>2.22.3.2</u>				
Procedures for ensuring adequate distance for protection from blasting operations, if required by operational considerations, are detailed.	<u>2.22.3.3</u>				
The CSPP specifies that open trenches or excavations are not permitted within a safety area while the associated runway or taxiway is open, subject to approved exceptions.	<u>2.22.1.4</u>				
Appropriate covering of excavations in the RSA or TSA that cannot be backfilled before the associated runway or taxiway is open is detailed.	<u>2.22.1.4</u>				
The CSPP includes provisions for prominent marking of open trenches and excavations at the construction site.	<u>2.22.1.4</u>				
Grading and soil erosion control to maintain RSA/TSA standards are	<u>2.22.3.5</u>				

Coordination	Reference	Addressed?			Remarks
		Yes	No	NA	
addressed.					
The CSPP specifies that equipment is to be removed from the ROFA when not in use.	<u>2.22.2</u>				
The CSPP clearly states that no construction may occur within a taxiway safety area while the taxiway is open for aircraft operations.	<u>2.22.3</u>				
Appropriate details are specified for any construction work to be accomplished in a taxiway object free area.	<u>2.22.4</u>				
Measures to ensure that personnel, material, and/or equipment do not penetrate the OFZ or threshold siting surfaces while the runway is open for aircraft operations are included.	<u>2.22.4.3.6</u>				
Provisions for protection of runway approach/departure areas and clearways are included.	<u>2.22.6</u>				
Other Limitations on Construction					
The CSPP prohibits the use of open flame welding or torches unless adequate fire safety precautions are provided and the airport operator has approved their use.	<u>2.23.1.2</u>				
The CSPP prohibits the use of electrical blasting caps on or within 1,000 ft (300 m) of the airport property.	<u>2.23.1.3</u>				

APPENDIX D. CONSTRUCTION PROJECT DAILY SAFETY INSPECTION CHECKLIST

The situations identified below are potentially hazardous conditions that may occur during airport construction projects. Safety area encroachments, unauthorized and improper ground vehicle operations, and unmarked or uncovered holes and trenches near aircraft operating surfaces pose the most prevalent threats to airport operational safety during airport construction projects. The list below is one tool that the airport operator or contractor may use to aid in identifying and correcting potentially hazardous conditions. It should be customized as appropriate for each project including information such as the date, time and name of the person conducting the inspection.

Table D-1. Potentially Hazardous Conditions

Item	Action Required (Describe)	No Action Required (Check)
Excavation adjacent to runways, taxiways, and aprons improperly backfilled.		
Mounds of earth, construction materials, temporary structures, and other obstacles near any open runway, taxiway, or taxi lane; in the related Object Free area and aircraft approach or departure areas/zones; or obstructing any sign or marking.		
Runway resurfacing projects resulting in lips exceeding 3 inch (7.6 cm) from pavement edges and ends.		
Heavy equipment (stationary or mobile) operating or idle near AOA, in runway approaches and departures areas, or in OFZ.		
Equipment or material near NAVAIDs that may degrade or impair radiated signals and/or the monitoring of navigation and visual aids. Unauthorized or improper vehicle operations in localizer or glide slope critical areas, resulting in electronic interference and/or facility shutdown.		
Tall and especially relatively low visibility units (that is, equipment with slim profiles) — cranes, drills, and similar objects — located in critical areas, such as OFZ and		

Item	Action Required (Describe)	No Action Required (Check)
approach zones.		
Improperly positioned or malfunctioning lights or unlighted airport hazards, such as holes or excavations, on any apron, open taxiway, or open taxi lane or in a related safety, approach, or departure area.		
Obstacles, loose pavement, trash, and other debris on or near AOA. Construction debris (gravel, sand, mud, paving materials) on airport pavements may result in aircraft propeller, turbine engine, or tire damage. Also, loose materials may blow about, potentially causing personal injury or equipment damage.		
Inappropriate or poorly maintained fencing during construction intended to deter human and animal intrusions into the AOA. Fencing and other markings that are inadequate to separate construction areas from open AOA create aviation hazards.		
Improper or inadequate marking or lighting of runways (especially thresholds that have been displaced or runways that have been closed) and taxiways that could cause pilot confusion and provide a potential for a runway incursion. Inadequate or improper methods of marking, barricading, and lighting of temporarily closed portions of AOA create aviation hazards.		
Wildlife attractants — such as trash (food scraps not collected from construction personnel activity), grass seeds, tall grass, or standing water — on or near airports.		
Obliterated or faded temporary markings on active operational areas.		
Misleading or malfunctioning obstruction lights. Unlighted or unmarked obstructions in the approach to any open runway pose aviation hazards.		

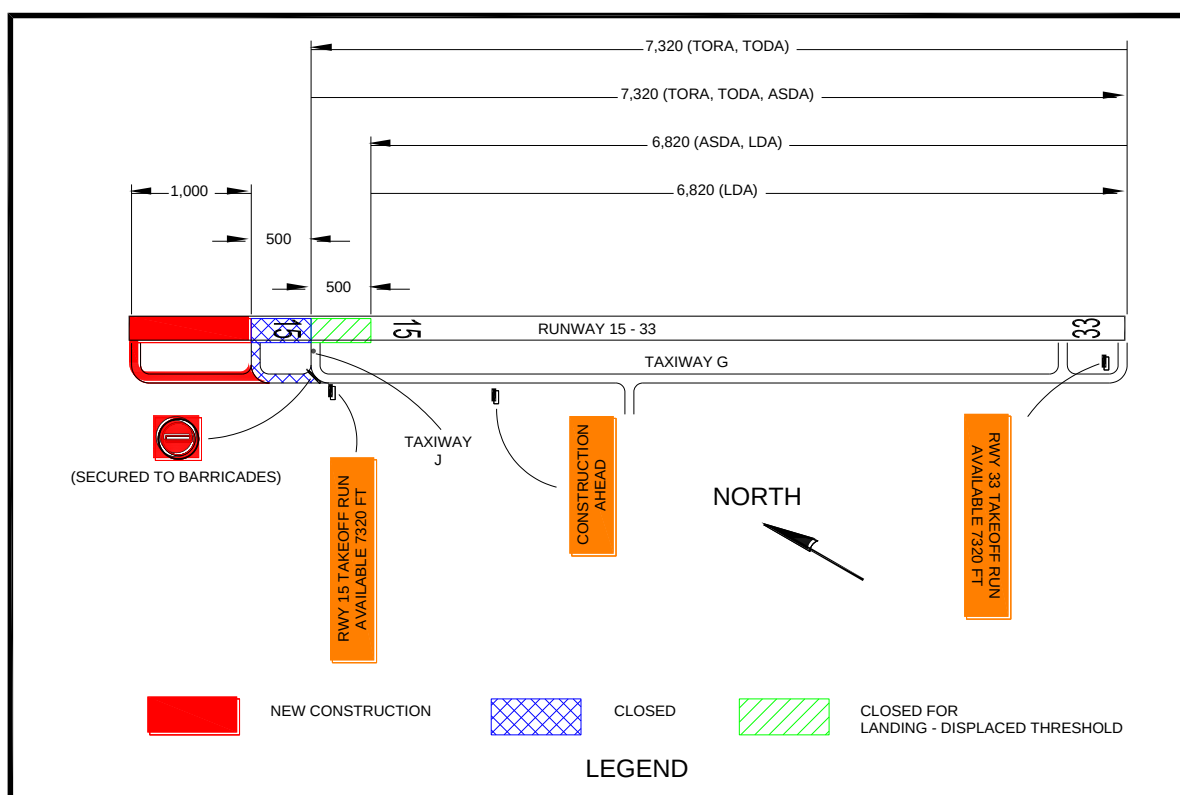
Item	Action Required (Describe)	No Action Required (Check)
Failure to issue, update, or cancel NOTAMs about airport or runway closures or other construction related airport conditions.		
Failure to mark and identify utilities or power cables. Damage to utilities and power cables during construction activity can result in the loss of runway / taxiway lighting; loss of navigation, visual, or approach aids; disruption of weather reporting services; and/or loss of communications.		
Restrictions on ARFF access from fire stations to the runway / taxiway system or airport buildings.		
Lack of radio communications with construction vehicles in airport movement areas.		
Objects, regardless of whether they are marked or flagged, or activities anywhere on or near an airport that could be distracting, confusing, or alarming to pilots during aircraft operations.		
Water, snow, dirt, debris, or other contaminants that temporarily obscure or derogate the visibility of runway/taxiway marking, lighting, and pavement edges. Any condition or factor that obscures or diminishes the visibility of areas under construction.		
Spillage from vehicles (gasoline, diesel fuel, oil) on active pavement areas, such as runways, taxiways, aprons, and airport roadways.		
Failure to maintain drainage system integrity during construction (for example, no temporary drainage provided when working on a drainage system).		

Item	Action Required (Describe)	No Action Required (Check)
Failure to provide for proper electrical lockout and tagging procedures. At larger airports with multiple maintenance shifts/workers, construction contractors should make provisions for coordinating work on circuits.		
Failure to control dust. Consider limiting the amount of area from which the contractor is allowed to strip turf.		
Exposed wiring that creates an electrocution or fire ignition hazard. Identify and secure wiring, and place it in conduit or bury it.		
Site burning, which can cause possible obscuration.		
Construction work taking place outside of designated work areas and out of phase.		

APPENDIX E. SAMPLE OPERATIONAL EFFECTS TABLE**E.1 Project Description.**

Runway 15-33 is currently 7820 feet long, with a 500 foot stopway on the north end. This project will remove the stopway and extend the runway 1000 feet to the north and 500 feet to the south. Finally, the existing portion of the runway will be repaved. The runway 33 glide slope will be relocated. The new runway 33 localizer has already been installed by FAA Technical Operations and only needs to be switched on. Runway 15 is currently served only by a localizer, which will remain in operation as it will be beyond the future RSA. Appropriate NOTAMS will be issued throughout the project.

- E.1.1 During Phase I, the runway 15 threshold will be displaced 1000 feet to keep construction equipment below the approach surface. The start of runway 15 takeoff and the departure end of runway 33 will also be moved 500 feet to protect workers from jet blast. Declared distances for runway 33 will be adjusted to provide the required RSA and applicable departure surface. Excavation near Taxiway G will require its ADG to be reduced from IV to III. See [Figure E-1](#).

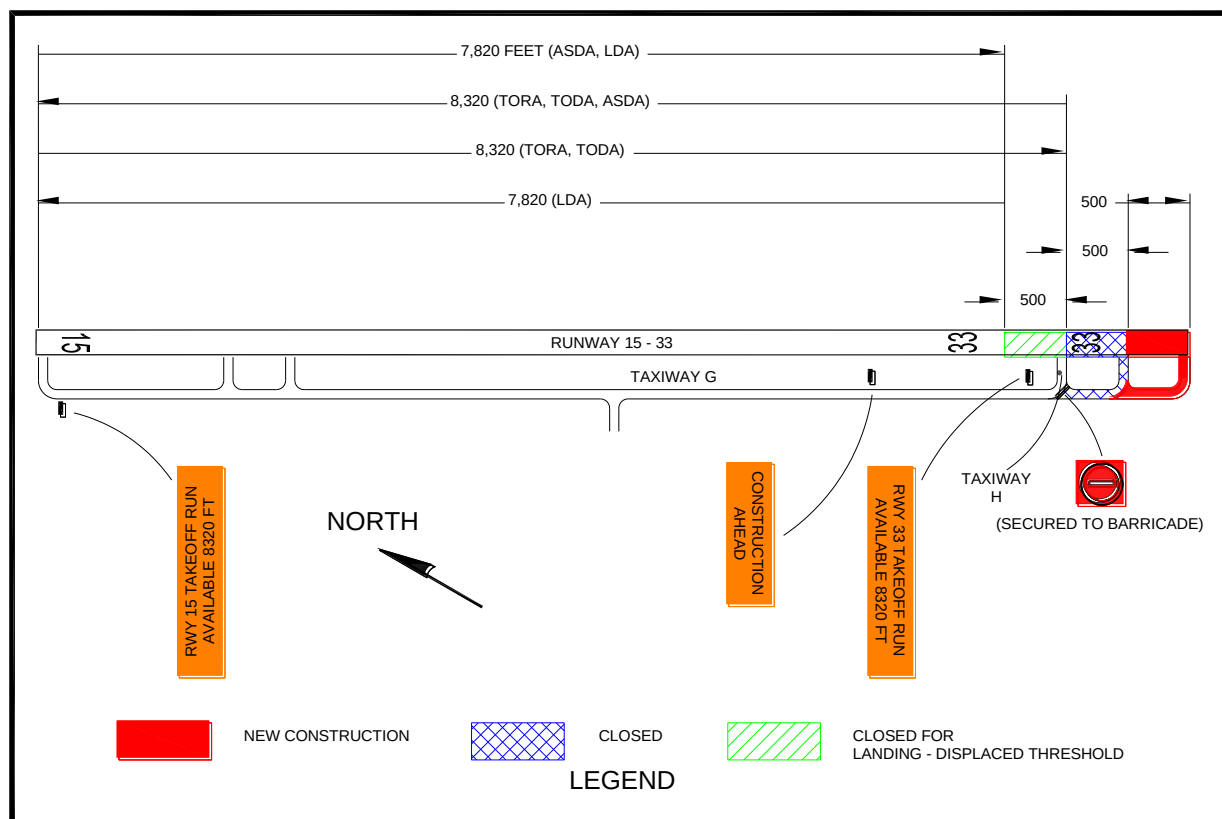
Figure E-1. Phase I Example

Note 1: Where hold signs are installed on both sides of a taxiway, install the TORA sign on the left side of the taxiway before the final turn to the runway intersection.

Note 2: Based on the declared distances for Runway 33 departures, the maximum equipment height in the construction area is 12.5 feet ($500/40 = 12.5$).

- E.2 During Phase II, the runway 33 threshold will be displaced 1000 feet to keep construction equipment below the approach surface. The start of runway 33 takeoff and the departure end of runway 15 will also be moved 500 feet to protect workers from jet blast. Declared distances for runway 15 will be adjusted to provide the required RSA and applicable departure surface. See Figure E-2.

Figure E-2. Phase II Example



Note 1: Where hold signs are installed on both sides of a taxiway, install the TORA sign on the left side of the taxiway before the final turn to the runway intersection.

Note 2: Based on the declared distances for Runway 15 departures, the maximum equipment height in the construction area is 12.5 feet ($500/40 = 12.5$).

- E.3 During Phase III, the existing portion of the runway will be repaved with Hot Mix Asphalt (HMA) and the runway 33 glide slope will be relocated. Construction will be accomplished between the hours of 8:00 pm and 5:00 am, during which the runway will be closed to operations.

Figure E-3. Phase III Example

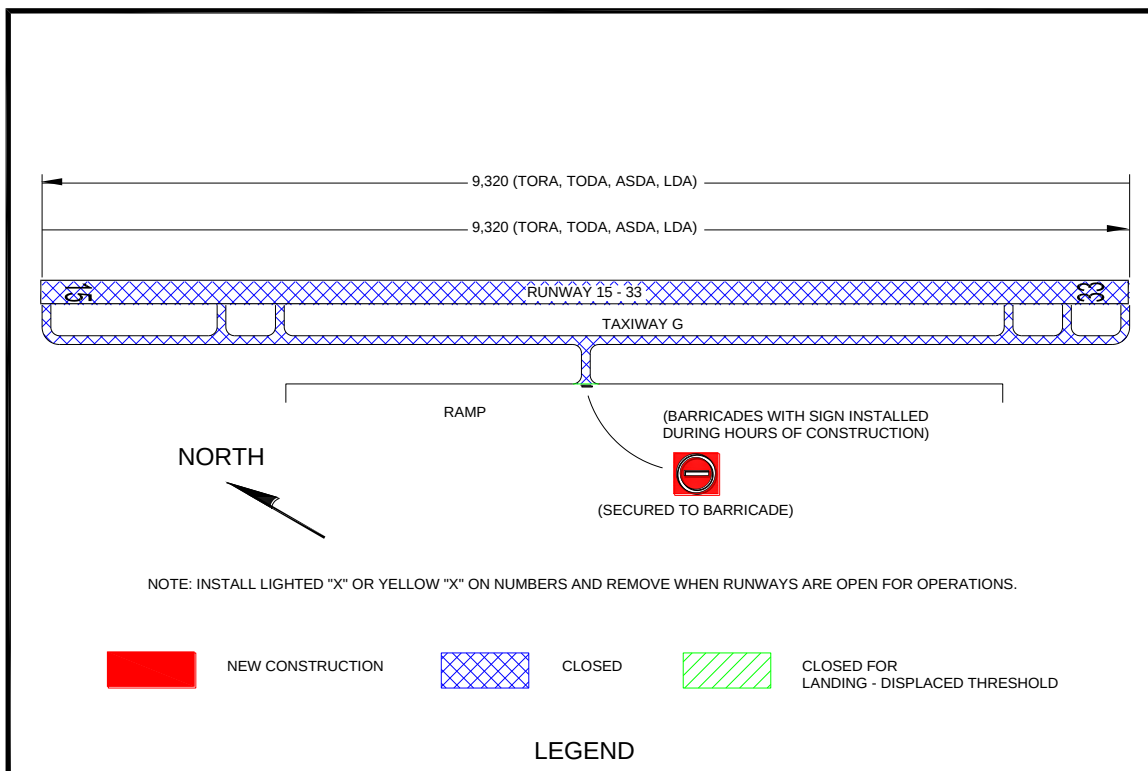


Table E-1. Operational Effects Table

Project	Runway 15-33 Extension and Repaving			
Phase	Normal (Existing)	Phase I: Extend Runway 15 End	Phase II: Extend Runway 33 End	Phase III: Repave Runway
Scope of Work	N/A	Extend Runway 15-33 1,000 ft on north end with Hot Mix Asphaltic Concrete (HMA).	Extend Runway 15-33 500 ft on south end with Hot Mix Asphaltic Concrete (HMA).	Repave existing runway with HMA Relocate Runway 33 Glide Slope
Effects of Construction Operations	N/A	Existing North 500 ft closed	Existing South 500 ft closed	Runway closed between 8:00 pm and 5:00 am Edge lighting out of service
Construction Phase	N/A	Phase I (Anticipated)	Phase II (Anticipated)	Phase III (Anticipated)
Runway 15 Average Aircraft Operations	Carrier: 52 /day GA: 26 /day Military: 11 /day	Carrier: 40 /day GA: 26 /day Military: 0 /day	Carrier: 45 /day GA: 26 /day Military: 5 /day	Carrier: 45 / day GA: 20 / day Military: 0 /day
Runway 33 Average Aircraft Operations	Carrier: 40 /day GA: 18 /day Military: 10 /day	Carrier: 30 /day GA: 18 /day Military: 0 /day	Carrier: 25 /day GA: 18 /day Military: 5 /day	Carrier: 20 /day GA: 5 /day Military: 0 /day
Runway 15-33 Aircraft Category	C-IV	C-IV	C-IV	C-IV
Runway 15 Approach Visibility Minimums	1 mile	1 mile	1 mile	1 mile
Runway 33 Approach Visibility Minimums	$\frac{3}{4}$ mile	$\frac{3}{4}$ mile	$\frac{3}{4}$ mile	1 mile

Note: Proper coordination with Flight Procedures group is necessary to maintain instrument approach procedures during construction.

Project		Runway 15-33 Extension and Repaving			
Phase		Normal (Existing)	Phase I: Extend Runway 15 End	Phase II: Extend Runway 33 End	Phase III: Repave Runway
Runway 15 Declared Distances	TORA	7,820	7,320	8,320	9,320
	TODA	7,820	7,320	8,320	9,320
	ASDA	7,820	7,320	7,820	9,320
	LDA	7,820	6,820	7,820	9,320
Runway 33 Declared Distances	TORA	7,820	7,320	8,320	9,320
	TODA	7,820	7,320	8,320	9,320
	ASDA	8,320	6,820	8,320	9,320
	LDA	7,820	6,820	7,820	9,320
Runway 15 Approach Procedures		LOC only	LOC only	LOC only	LOC only
		RNAV	RNAV	RNAV	RNAV
		VOR	VOR	VOR	VOR
Runway 33 Approach Procedures		ILS	ILS	ILS	LOC only
		RNAV	RNAV	RNAV	RNAV
		VOR	VOR	VOR	VOR
Runway 15 NAVAIDs		LOC	LOC	LOC	LOC
Runway 33 NAVAIDs		ILS, MALSR	ILS, MALSR	ILS, MALSR	LOC, MALSR
Taxiway G ADG		IV	III	IV	IV
Taxiway G TDG		4	4	4	4
ATCT (hours open)		24 hours	24 hours	24 hours	0500 - 2000
ARFF Index		D	D	D	D

Project	Runway 15-33 Extension and Repaving			
Phase	Normal (Existing)	Phase I: Extend Runway 15 End	Phase II: Extend Runway 33 End	Phase III: Repave Runway
Special Conditions	Air National Guard (ANG) military operations	All military aircraft relocated to alternate ANG Base	Some large military aircraft relocated to alternate ANG Base	All military aircraft relocated to alternate ANG Base
Information for NOTAMs		Refer above for applicable declared distances. Taxiway G limited to 118 ft wingspan	Refer above for applicable declared distances.	Refer above for applicable declared distances. Airport closed 2000 – 0500. Runway 15 glide slope OTS.

Note: This table is one example. It may be advantageous to develop a separate table for each project phase and/or to address the operational status of the associated NAVAIDs per construction phase.

Complete the following chart for each phase to determine the area that must be protected along the runway and taxiway edges:

Table E-2. Runway and Taxiway Edge Protection

Runway/Taxiway	Aircraft Approach Category* A, B, C, or D	Airplane Design Group* I, II, III, or IV	Safety Area Width in Feet Divided by 2*

*See AC 150/5300-13 to complete the chart for a specific runway/taxiway.

Complete the following chart for each phase to determine the area that must be protected before the runway threshold:

Table E-3. Protection Prior to Runway Threshold

Runway End Number	Airplane Design Group* I, II, III, or IV	Aircraft Approach Category* A, B, C, or D	Minimum Safety Area Prior to the Threshold*	Minimum Distance to Threshold Based on Required Approach Slope*	
				ft	: 1
				ft	: 1
				ft	: 1
				ft	: 1

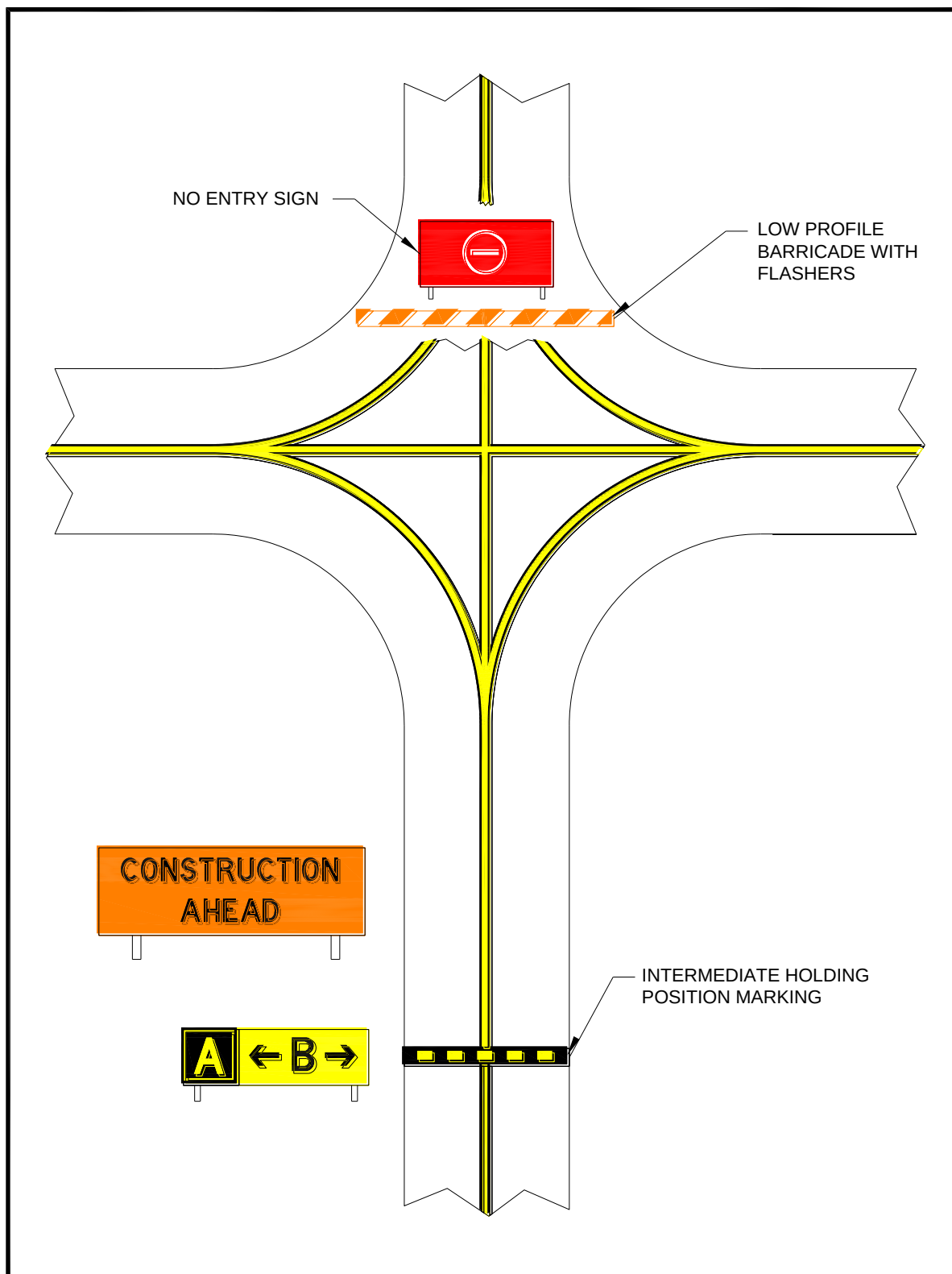
*See AC 150/5300-13 to complete the chart for a specific runway.

Page Intentionally Blank

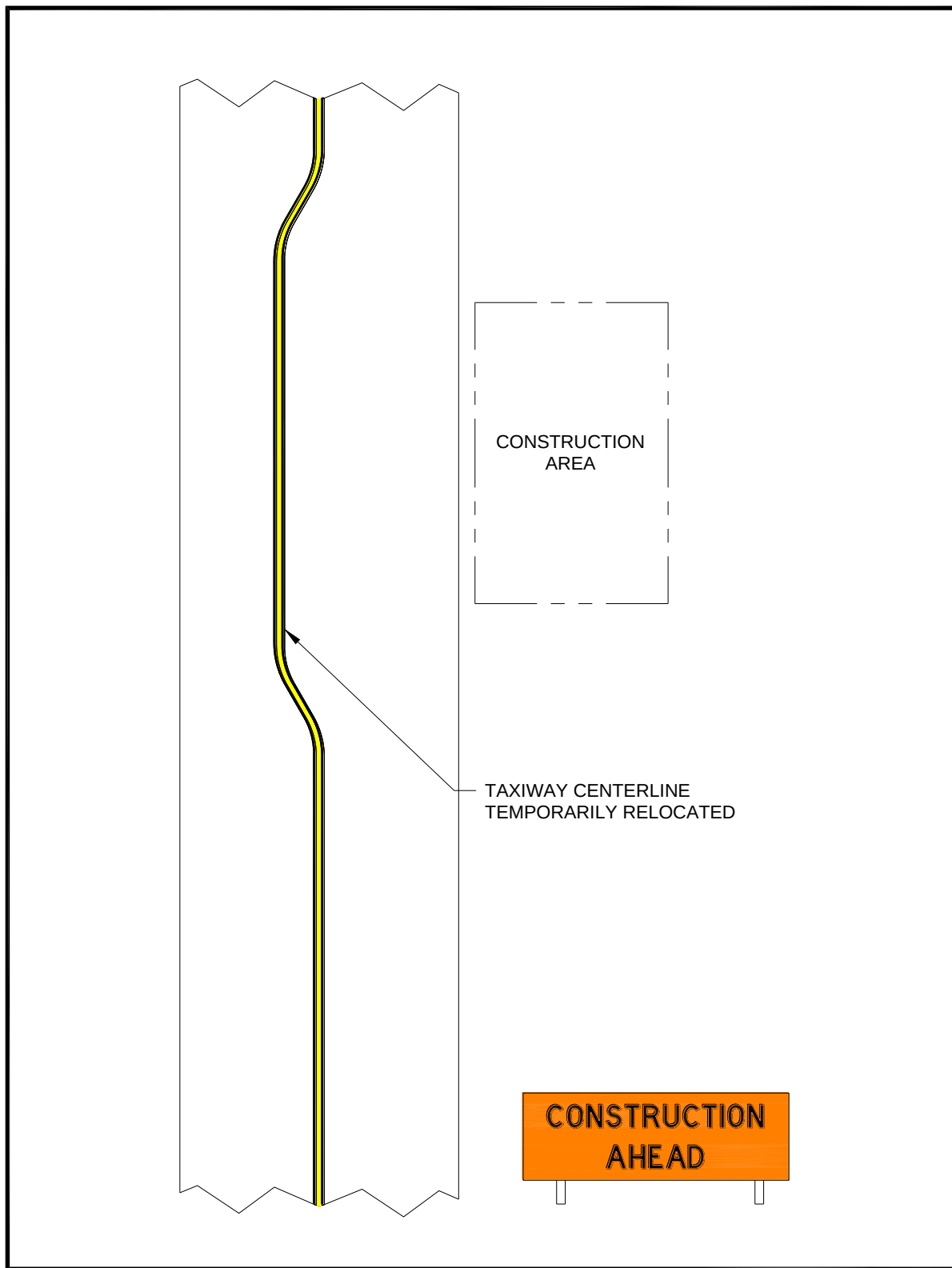
APPENDIX F. ORANGE CONSTRUCTION SIGNS

Figure F-1. Approved Sign Legends



Figure F-2. Orange Construction Sign Example 1

Note: For proper placement of signs, refer to EB 93.

Figure F-3. Orange Construction Sign Example 2

Note: For proper placement of signs, refer to EB 93.

Page Intentionally Blank

Advisory Circular Feedback

If you find an error in this AC, have recommendations for improving it, or have suggestions for new items/subjects to be added, you may let us know by (1) mailing this form to Manager, Airport Engineering Division, Federal Aviation Administration ATTN: AAS-100, 800 Independence Avenue SW, Washington DC 20591 or (2) faxing it to the attention of the Office of Airport Safety and Standards at (202) 267-5383.

Subject: AC 150/5370-2G

Date: _____

Please check all appropriate line items:

- ☐ An error (procedural or typographical) has been noted in paragraph _____ on page _____.
- ☐ Recommend paragraph _____ on page _____ be changed as follows:
- _____
- _____
- _____
- ☐ In a future change to this AC, please cover the following subject:
(Briefly describe what you want added.)
- _____
- _____
- _____
- ☐ Other comments:
- _____
- _____
- _____
- ☐ I would like to discuss the above. Please contact me at (phone number, email address).
- _____

Submitted by: _____

Date: _____

Page Intentionally Blank



U.S. Department
of Transportation
Federal Aviation
Administration

Advisory Circular

Subject: Quality Management for
Federally Funded Airport Construction
Projects

Date: 9/14/2015
Initiated by: AAS-100

AC No.: 150/5370-12B
Change:

1. Purpose.

This advisory circular (AC) provides information on the planning and oversight of construction projects at airports accomplished under the Federal Aviation Administration's (FAA) Airport Improvement Program (AIP).

2. Background.

FAA involvement in an AIP project is generally limited to the oversight necessary to protect the federal interests as specified in 31 USC 6304, *Using Grant Agreements*. The FAA has the responsibility to ensure that airport sponsors design and construct projects accomplished under AIP grants in accordance with all applicable federal standards and requirements. The airport sponsor is responsible for all project engineering, including the preparation of plans and specifications, development of the construction safety and phasing plan (CSPP), construction supervision, inspection, and quality assurance testing for acceptability.

3. Cancellation.

This AC cancels AC 150/5370-12A, *Quality Control of Construction for Airport Grant Projects*, dated September 29, 2007; AC 150/5300-9B, *Predesign, Prebid, and Preconstruction Conferences for Airport Grant Projects*, dated September 30, 2009; and AC 150/5370-6D, *Construction Progress and Inspection Report-Airport Improvement Program (AIP)*, dated September 29, 2008.

4. Application.

The Federal Aviation Administration (FAA) recommends the guidance in this AC. In general, use of this AC is not mandatory. However, use of this AC is mandatory for all projects funded with federal grant monies through the AIP. See Grant Assurances No. 11, *Pavement Preventive Maintenance*, and No. 34, *Policies, Standards, and Specifications*.

FAA Order 5100.38, *Airport Improvement Program Handbook*, provides guidance and sets forth policies and procedures for the administration of the AIP including eligibility and justification requirements.

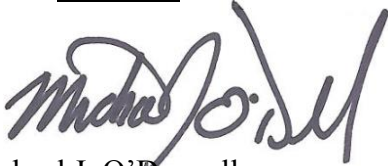
5. Principal Changes.

This AC contains the following changes:

1. Retitled the AC to better reflect its purpose and reformatted to comply with FAA Order 1320.46, *FAA Advisory Circular System*.
2. Incorporated the information in AC 150/5300-9, *Predesign, Prebid, and Preconstruction Conferences for Airport Grant Projects*, into this AC.
3. Incorporated FAA Form 5370-1, *Construction Progress and Inspection Report*, in AC 150/5370-6, *Construction Progress and Inspection Report – Airport Improvement Program (AIP)*, into this AC and added a link to the form.
4. Added minimum requirements for a Construction Management Program (CMP) and added a link to a sample program.

6. Feedback on this AC.

If you have suggestions for improving this AC, you may use the [Advisory Circular Feedback](#) form at the end of this AC.



Michael J. O'Donnell
Director of Airport Safety and Standards

Chapter 1. RESPONSIBILITIES

1.1. Sponsor's Responsibilities.

The sponsor is responsible for all project engineering, including the preparation of plans and specifications, construction supervision, and inspection and testing for acceptability and quality. If the sponsor does not have the staff or the expertise to perform these services, then the sponsor should retain a consulting engineering firm. The relationship of the consultant with the sponsor must be clearly defined by a written agreement before the start of work.

1.1.1 Engineering Services.

A sponsor is required to award each contract, or sub-contract for program management, construction management, planning studies, feasibility studies, architectural services, preliminary engineering, design, engineering, surveying, mapping or related services with respect to the project in accordance with the requirements in AC 150/5100-14, *Architectural, Engineering, and Planning Consultant Services for Airport Grant Projects*. The AC identifies items to be included in a contract for engineering services. The contract must clearly delineate the division of responsibility and authority between the sponsor, the consultant, resident engineer/inspectors, and the quality assurance (QA) testing firm.

1.1.2 Predesign, Prebid, and Preconstruction Conferences.

Successful management of construction projects includes coordination with airport users and affected parties before design, and before and during construction. The sponsor should hold predesign and preconstruction conferences to coordinate critical project issues including construction safety and phasing, quality control (QC) and quality assurance (QA), and design and construction reports.

The predesign conference ensures critical coordination discussions occur which may limit conflict in the field during construction operations. This meeting is an important coordination measure to determine the effect of the project on normal airport operations, especially at commercial service airports. This meeting also serves to establish the limits of AIP participation and limit design of work which may be ineligible for AIP participation. This effort may involve separate meetings to facilitate discussion with specific stakeholders.

The prebid conference allows prospective bidders to ask questions about the project that permit bidders to establish a clear understanding of the requirements and necessary level of effort.

A preconstruction conference is critical to allow the sponsor to thoroughly discuss contract matters, airport safety, construction phasing and sequencing, airport security, construction testing and other relevant project matters.

1.1.3 Construction Safety and Phasing Plans (CSPP).

AC 150/5370-2, *Operational Safety on Airports During Construction*, outlines the requirements for the CSPP. Operational safety on the airport remains the sponsor's

responsibility at all times. The sponsor must develop and submit CSPPs to the FAA in accordance with AC 150/5370-2 for each on-airfield construction project funded by the AIP or located on an airport certificated under Part 139. The FAA Airports Regional or Airports District Office (ADO) must review and approve or disapprove these CSPPs in writing. The sponsor's certification of plans and specifications does not include the approval of the CSPP.

1.1.4 Supervision and Inspection.

The sponsor must provide and maintain competent technical supervision at the construction site throughout the project to ensure the work conforms to the plans, specifications, and schedules approved by the FAA for the project. Refer to AIP grant Assurance No. 17, *Construction Inspection and Approval*. The sponsor must provide adequate construction quality assurance inspection for all stages of work. This includes adequate documentation of the quality assurance results and reporting on the contractor's work progress.

1.1.5 Construction Management Program (CMP).

The sponsor must submit a Construction Management Program (CMP) when the paving costs of a project exceed \$500,000; however, the sponsor may elect to have a CMP for projects less than \$500,000. The pavement construction cost value includes costs of the total pavement (i.e. subgrade, base and subbase courses, and surface course). Minimum requirements for a CMP are given in Appendix A. Refer to Order 5100.38, *Airport Improvement Program Handbook*, for further eligibility guidance on the CMP.

Note: The CMP is a separate document from the contractor's quality control program required by AC 150/5370-10, Section 100.

1.1.6 Construction Progress Reports.

The airport sponsor has primary responsibility for supervision and inspection of construction work under the AIP. FAA Form 5370-1, *Construction Progress and Inspection Report*, or a form that provides equivalent information, must be maintained by the sponsor and submitted to the appropriate FAA Airports Regional or ADO upon request. If any problems, delays, or adverse conditions occur that will affect the project, the FAA may require the sponsor to submit an interim report. Use of this form is not mandatory and the sponsor may prepare and use customized forms. A copy of Form 5370-1 is included in Appendix B. Form 5370-1 is available for download at the FAA Airports website: <http://www.faa.gov/airports/resources/forms/>.

1.1.7 Final Inspection.

The sponsor must conduct a final inspection for construction projects. The ADO has the option to either participate in the final inspection or accept sponsor certification.

1.1.8 Construction Final Report.

The sponsor must submit a final construction report summarizing the quantity and quality of completed construction as required by the grant agreement.

1.1.9 Sponsor Certification.

The sponsor has primary responsibility for compliance with AIP requirements. The FAA relies on sponsor self-certification to ensure compliance with select AIP requirements. The FAA's acceptance of a sponsor certification does not preclude the FAA from reviewing appropriate documentation for validating the certification. The use of sponsor certification is limited. The FAA cannot accept sponsor certification for modifications of FAA standards, construction safety and phasing plans, airport layout plans, environmental studies, and Buy American preferences.

1.2. **Engineer's Responsibilities.**

The basic services normally required for airport development projects include the preliminary design phase, design phase, bidding phase, and construction phase. AC 150/5100-14, *Architectural, Engineering, and Planning Consultant Services for Airport Grant Projects*, identifies activities normally performed during these phases.

1.2.1 Design Phases.

The design phases include all activities required to accomplish a complete project design, including development of plans and specifications. The standards in AC 150/5370-10, *Standards for Specifying Construction of Airports*, relate to materials and methods used in the construction of airports and must be used for projects funded under the AIP. Although these specifications reflect acceptable standards, practices, and techniques in airport construction, they are general in scope. For contract purposes, the various permissible options with regard to local materials, methods, and testing must be defined in the contract documents. The minimum testing frequency for quality assurance (QA) and quality control (QC) must be specified in the project specifications.

1.2.2 Construction Phase.

The construction phase includes all activities required after the award of a construction contract. The basic services of an engineering agreement normally include periodic inspection of the work in progress by the design engineer. Special services of an engineering agreement will address the requirements for inspection and quality assurance testing for each project.

1.3. **FAA Program/Project Manager's Responsibilities.**

The FAA program/project manager has the responsibility to monitor the project to ensure the terms and conditions of the grant agreement are met, to maintain a broad overview of the construction to be reasonably certain the work is accomplished in accordance with the plans and specifications, and to evaluate the adequacy of the sponsor's construction inspection and oversight. FAA project oversight does not relieve the sponsor of responsibility to ensure adequate supervision and inspection during all stages of the work and that the work is in conformance with the plans and specifications. The FAA program/project manager oversight responsibilities are outlined in Order 5100.38, *Airport Improvement Program Handbook*.

The FAA Airports Regional or ADO should ensure that appropriate FAA offices (Air Traffic, Flight Standards, etc.), military installations, and Federal agencies that may have an interest in a project are notified of all project activities, i.e. predesign, prebid, preconstruction, CSPP, etc.

Chapter 2. PREDESIGN, PREBID, AND PRE-CONSTRUCTION CONFERENCES

2.1. Predesign Conference.

2.1.1 Purpose.

A predesign conference, conducted by the sponsor or their authorized agent, is used to discuss items including, but not limited to, critical design parameters, airport safety during construction, phasing of construction operations, and environmental considerations. Possible conflicts between construction activities and the operation of the airport should be resolved at this meeting.

2.1.2 Timing.

The optimum time to hold a predesign conference is early in the preliminary design process. Allow sufficient time to notify all parties that could be affected by the project. A minimum of 10 working days advance notice is recommended.

2.1.3 Participants.

The participants will vary according to the scope of the project, the size of the airport, and the effect the proposed construction will have on airport operations. Typically, the FAA program/project manager and FAA Airport Certification Inspector should participate at all airports certified under Title 14, Code of Federal Regulations (CFR), Part 139, *Certification of Airports*. Other participants including, but not limited to, airline and airport industry representatives; and fixed base operators (FBO) may attend.

2.1.4 Agenda Items.

The sponsor should prepare an agenda of items to be discussed at the predesign conference. Appendix C contains a list of typical items. This list is not all-inclusive, and items may be added or deleted, as necessary.

2.2. Prebid Conference.

2.2.1 Purpose.

The sponsor and their engineer should consider conducting a prebid conference for large projects, projects with unique features, or as required to meet local procurement requirements. The prebid conference should explain contract requirements for construction methods and procedures, construction safety and phasing requirements, and the procurement process including, but not limited to, Disadvantage Business Enterprise (DBE), bonding, subcontracting, and labor. The notice to bidders for the prebid conference will be made in accordance with local procurement requirements.

2.2.2 Timing.

The optimum time to hold a prebid conference is a minimum of 10 working days before the bid opening date.

2.2.3 Participants.

The participants should normally include prospective bidders, subcontractors, and material suppliers. FAA participation is not required.

2.2.4 Agenda Items.

Typical agenda items include unusual features of the project; explanation of the contract requirements and construction methods and procedures; discussion of construction safety and phasing requirements; and review of the federal/state/local procurement process.

2.3. **Preconstruction Conference.**

2.3.1 Purpose.

The preconstruction conference is convened and conducted by the sponsor or their authorized agent. The primary purpose of the conference is to thoroughly discuss critical project issues such as contract requirements, operational safety, construction phasing and sequencing, airport security, quality control, quality acceptance testing, labor requirements, EEO obligations, DBE requirements and other pertinent project matters. The engineer must tailor the agenda for each conference to address the unique and/or complex issues specific to their project.

2.3.2 Timing.

The optimum time to hold a preconstruction conference is as soon as practicable after the contract has been awarded and before issuance of the notice to proceed (NTP). Sufficient time should be allowed to notify all parties. A minimum of 10 working days advance notice is recommended.

2.3.3 Participants.

The participants will vary according to the size and type of airport and the potential effect the proposed construction will have on the operation of the airport. Typically, the preconstruction conference includes, but is not limited to, the sponsor, their engineer, airport management, FAA Region/ADO and local FAA Air Traffic Organization (ATO) representatives, QA/QC testing laboratories, key contractor and subcontractor personnel, airline and industry representatives, FBOs, affected utilities owners, and affected tenants.

2.3.4 Agenda Items.

Appendix D contains typical agenda items. This list is not all inclusive and items may be added or deleted, as necessary.

APPENDIX A. MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS FOR CONSTRUCTION MANAGEMENT PROGRAMS (CMP)

A.1 Construction Management Program (CMP).

A sponsor must submit a construction management program to the FAA Airports Regional or Airports District Office prior to the start of construction for projects with a total pavement construction contract value over \$500,000; however, the sponsor may elect to have a CMP for projects less than \$500,000. The pavement construction contract value is calculated by totaling the costs of the total pavement structure (including subgrade, base and subbase courses, and surface course). When construction of a project requiring a construction management program is complete, the sponsor must submit a summary of the test results and the disposition of any problem test results. The FAA Regional or Airports District Office also has the option to require the sponsor to provide a CMP for pavement projects less than \$500,000. The sponsor must refer to the AIP grant agreement for specific project requirements.

A.2 Prior to the start of construction, the sponsor must furnish to the FAA a construction management program that details the measures and procedures to be used to comply with the quality assurance provisions of the construction contract, including, but not limited to, all quality assurance provisions and tests required by the federal specifications. The program must include as a minimum:

1. The name of the person representing the sponsor who has overall responsibility for contract administration for the project and the authority to take necessary actions to comply with the contract.
2. Names of testing laboratories and consulting engineer firms with quality assurance responsibilities on the project, together with a description of the services to be provided.
3. Procedures for determining that the testing laboratories meet the requirements of the ASTM International standards on laboratory evaluation referenced in the contract specifications (ASTM D3666, ASTM C1077).
4. Qualifications of engineering supervision and construction inspection personnel.
5. A listing of all tests required by the contract specifications, including the type and frequency of tests to be taken, the method of sampling, the applicable test standard, and the acceptance criteria permitted for each type of test.
6. Procedures for ensuring the tests are taken in accordance with the program, they are documented daily, and proper corrective actions, where necessary, are undertaken. At the completion of the project, the sponsor must submit a final test and quality assurance report summarizing the results of all tests performed, highlighting those tests indicating failure or that did not meet the applicable test standard. The report must include the pay reductions applied and the reasons for accepting any out-of-tolerance material. An interim test and quality assurance report must be submitted if requested by the FAA.

A sample CMP and Submittal Register is available on the Airports website:

http://www.faa.gov/regulations_policies/advisory_circulars/index.cfm/go/document.current/documentNumber/150_5370-12.

This page intentionally left blank.

**APPENDIX B. FAA FORM 5370-1, CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS AND INSPECTION
REPORT**Form available at <http://www.faa.gov/airports/resources/forms/>.

 U.S. Department of Transportation Federal Aviation Administration			Construction Progress and Inspection Report Airport Grant Program		OMB CONTROL NUMBER: 2120-0569 EXPIRATION DATE: 4/30/2017	
					Period Ending	
					Project Number	
Airport Name						
Project Description					Contractor's Name	
1. Contract Time	No. Days Charged to Date	Last Working Day Charged (Date)				
2. Brief Weather Summary this Period, including Approximate Rainfall and Periods of Below Freezing Temperature (On earthwork jobs, include soil conditions.)						
3. Rough Estimate of Percent Completion to Date of Construction Period (Include items such as clearing, grading, drainage, base, surface, lighting, etc.)						
4. Work Completed or In Progress this Period						
5a. Summary of Laboratory and Field Testing this Period (Note failing tests and any retests. Summarize out-of-tolerance.)						
5b. Material (Identify material subject to pay reduction.)						
6. Description of Anticipated Work by Contractor for Next Period						
7. Problem Areas/Other Comments (Include revisions to plans and specifications approved or denied, delays, difficulties, etc. and actions taken.)						
SPONSOR'S INSPECTOR OR REPRESENTATIVE						
Date	Typed or Printed Name and Title				Signature	

FAA Form 5370-1 (4/15) SUPERCEDES PREVIOUS EDITION

This page intentionally left blank.

APPENDIX C. SAMPLE AGENDA ITEMS FOR A PREDESIGN CONFERENCE

This list is not all inclusive and may be modified as necessary.

1. Design Phase.
 - Scope of work and design parameters peculiar to the project, including items such as design aircraft, local conditions and materials, use of recycled materials, design options, use of FAA standards, and materials furnished by others.
 - Review the airport layout plan (ALP) and the scope of project in the airport capital improvement plan (ACIP).
 - Funding.
 - Discussion of engineering fees.
 - Reimbursable agreements (FAA owned NAVAIDS).
 - Identification and impacts to existing NAVAIDS and instrument approach procedures.
 - Flight check requirements.
 - Airspace requirements.
 - DBE requirements.
 - Federal wage rates.
 - FAA contract provisions.
 - Buy American requirements.
 - Construction Management Program (CMP) requirements.
 - Plan and specification review.
 - SMS and ATC coordination.
 - AGIS requirements.
 - Identification and location of underground utilities within project limits.
 - Requirements for the engineer's report.
 - List of applicable design standards.
 - Development of the construction safety and phasing plans (CSPP).
 - Pavement design and alternatives with supporting geotechnical reports and FAARFIELD structural analysis.
 - Drainage design.
 - Lighting design.
 - Pavement marking and airfield signage;
 - Environmental considerations including stormwater management.
 - Modifications to design standards and construction specifications.
 - Description of non-federally funded work to be included in the contract.
 - Engineer's estimate of construction contract cost.
 - Project budget and schedule.
 - Other.
2. Construction Phase.
 - Sequence of construction phases and any necessary special routing of aircraft considering airline schedules.
 - Work limits.
 - Time needed for clearance of runway, taxiway, or apron by construction equipment prior to reopening.
 - Notification of schedule changes.
 - Airport operations area security concerns.
3. Operational Safety.
 - Development of the CSPP in accordance with AC 150/5370-2 and incorporation into the plans and specifications.

This page intentionally left blank.

APPENDIX D. SAMPLE AGENDA ITEMS FOR PRECONSTRUCTION CONFERENCE

This list is not all inclusive and may be modified as necessary.

1. Identify main points of contact.
 - Owner, owner's representative, contractor, superintendent, resident engineer, etc.
 - Identify roles and responsibilities.
 - Discuss authority of engineer.
 - Relationship between FAA and sponsor.
2. Scope of Work.
 - Include general plan or chart to depict proposed work.
 - Proposed schedule of work.
 - Identify construction phasing concerns.
3. Notice-To-Proceed. Contingent upon:
 - Execution of grant agreement.
 - Execution of contract and required bonds.
 - Sponsor acceptance of DBE participation.
 - FAA approval of waiver to Buy American preferences (if applicable).
 - FAA approval of construction management program.
4. Operational Safety and Security:
 - Safety plan compliance document.
 - Delineation of construction limits.
 - Runway and taxiway safety area limits (open trenches, drop offs, irregular surfaces).
 - Potential impacts to airport operations.
 - Operational safety requirements of approved CSPP (AC 150/5370-2).
 - Vehicular operation within the airport operations area with emphasis on runway incursions.
 - Staging area location and haul route limitations.
 - Stockpile limitations and Part 77 notification (FAA Form 7460-1, *Notice of Proposed Construction or Alteration*).
 - Equipment heights and Part 77 notification (FAA Form 7460-1).
 - Foreign Object Debris (FOD) control (windblown and tracked-on).
 - Temporary markings and barricades.
 - Airfield security requirements.
 - Non-compliance consequences (Removal, suspension of work, etc.).
5. Part 139 Issues.
 - Vehicle operator/pedestrian training.
 - Impacts to airport rescue and fire fighting (ARFF) operations and response time.
6. NOTAMS.
 - Airport operator issued Notice to Airmen (NOTAMS).
7. FAA Technical Operations (Airway Facilities).
 - Facility outages: 7-day advance notification to FAA Technical Operations.
 - Procedure NOTAMS: Cannot be issued by Flight Service Station. Contact project manager 7 days prior.
8. Construction Management Program.
 - FAA facility outages: 7 day advance notice required.
 - Location of buried cables.
 - Identify contractor's and sponsor's laboratory.
 - Acceptance testing versus quality control testing.
 - Test reports, record keeping, daily diary.
9. Project Submittals. Approval based upon:
 - Technical requirements.
 - Buy American Provisions (Origin of Manufacture).
 - Approved lighting equipment (Appendix 3 of AC 150/5345-53, *Airport Lighting Equipment Certification Program*).
10. Labor Requirements.
 - Davis Bacon wage rates (Must be posted on conspicuous project board).
 - Labor poster (Must be posted prior to start of work).
 - Submittal of payrolls.
 - Wage rate interviews.
11. Civil Rights/DBE Requirements.
 - Advise contractor that project is subject to the equal employment opportunity (EEO) clause.
 - EEO posted notices must be posted prior to start of work.
 - Sponsor monitoring of DBE.
 - DBE fraud indicators.
12. Contract Modification Process.
 - Refer to region guidance.
 - Sponsor may not seek reimbursement for change order work until FAA approves AIP participation in the change order.
13. Utilities.
 - Locating.
 - Protection of FAA cables.
14. Environmental Issues.
 - Storm water permitting.
15. Waste Disposal.

This page intentionally left blank.

Advisory Circular Feedback

If you find an error in this AC, have recommendations for improving it, or have suggestions for new items/subjects to be added, you may let us know by (1) mailing this form to:

Federal Aviation Administration
Airport Engineering Division (AAS-100)
800 Independence Avenue SW
Washington, DC 20591

or (2) faxing it to the attention of Manager, Airport Engineering Division (AAS-100), (202) 267-3688.

Subject: AC 150/5370-12B, *Quality Management for Federally Funded Airport Construction Projects*

Date: _____

Please check all appropriate line items:

☐ An error (procedural or typographical) has been noted in paragraph _____ on page _____.

☐ Recommend paragraph _____ on page _____ be changed as follows:

☐ In a future change to this AC, please cover the following subject:
(Briefly describe what you want added.)

☐ Other comments:

☐ I would like to discuss the above. Please contact me at (phone number, email address).

Submitted by: _____ Date: _____

This page intentionally left blank.



U.S. Department
of Transportation

Federal Aviation
Administration

Advisory Circular

Subject: Painting, Marking, and Lighting of
Vehicles Used on an Airport

Date: April 1, 2010

AC No: AC 150/5210-5D

Initiated by: AAS-100

Change:

1. **PURPOSE.** This advisory circular (AC) provides guidance, specifications, and standards for painting, marking, and lighting of vehicles operating in the airport air operations area (AOA). The approved lights, colors, and markings herein assure the conspicuity of vehicles operating in the AOA from both the ground and the air.

2. **CANCELLATION.** This AC cancels AC 150/5210-5C, Painting, Marking, and Lighting of Vehicles Used on an Airport, dated August 31, 2007.

3. **APPLICATION.** The Federal Aviation Administration (FAA) recommends the guidelines and standards in this Advisory Circular for vehicles operating in the airport AOA. In general, use of this AC is not mandatory. **However**, use of this AC is mandatory for vehicles funded with federal grant monies through the Airport Improvement Program (AIP) and/or with revenue from the Passenger Facility Charges (PFC) Program. See Grant Assurance No. 34, "Policies, Standards, and Specifications," and PFC Assurance No. 9, "Standard and Specifications."

Vehicles covered by this AC that do not meet this standard may be used until the vehicle is repainted or replaced, but no later than **December 31, 2010**.

4. **PRINCIPAL CHANGES.** This AC contains new specifications and recommendations for the painting, marking, and lighting of Towbarless Tow Vehicles (TLTVs).

5. **METRIC UNITS.** To promote an orderly transition to metric units, this AC includes both English and metric dimensions. The metric conversions may not be exact equivalents, and until there is an official changeover to the metric system, the English dimensions will govern.

6. **COMMENTS OR SUGGESTIONS** for improvements to this AC should be sent to:

Manager, Airport Engineering Division
Federal Aviation Administration
ATTN: AAS-100
800 Independence Avenue, S.W.
Washington, DC 20591

Michael J. O'Donnell
Director of Airport Safety and Standards

Intentionally left blank.

PAINTING, MARKING, AND LIGHTING OF VEHICLES USED ON AN AIRPORT

1. SOURCES OF APPLICABLE DOCUMENTS.

- a.** American National Standards Institute, Inc. (ANSI), 25 West 43rd St. 4th Floor, New York, NY 10036. Website: **www.ansi.org**
- b.** American Society for Testing & Materials (ASTM), ASTM International, 100 Barr Harbor Drive, P.O. Box C700, West Conshohocken, PA 19428-2959. Website: **www.astm.org**
- c.** The National Fire Protection Association (NFPA), 1 Batterymarch Park, Quincy, Massachusetts 02169-7471. Website: **www.nfpa.org**
- d.** The U. S. General Services Administration (GSA), Centralized Mailing List Services, 501 West Felix Street, Whse 9, South End P.O. Box 6477, Fort Worth, Texas 76115-6477. Website: **www.gsa.gov**
- e.** The Superintendent of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office, 732 North Capitol St. NW, Washington, DC 20401.
- f.** Society of Automotive Engineers, Inc. (SAE), 400 Commonwealth Drive, Warrendale, PA 15096-0001. Website: **www.sae.org**
- g.** FAA Advisory Circulars: U.S. Department of Transportation, Subsequent Distribution Office, Ardmore East Business Center, 3341 Q 75th Ave., Landover, MD 20785. Website: **www.faa.gov**
- h.** FAA Engineering Briefs: **www.faa.gov/airports/engineering/engineering_briefs/**

2. DEFINITIONS. The following definitions apply in this AC:

- a. Vehicle** – All conveyances, except aircraft, used on the ground to transport persons, cargo, equipment or those required to perform maintenance, construction, service, and security duties.
- b. Air Operations Area (AOA)** – The portion of airport that encompasses the landing, take off, taxiing, and parking areas for aircraft.
- c. Airport Emergency Vehicles** – Vehicles that are authorized in the AOA for emergency purposes (e.g., ambulances, aircraft rescue and fire fighting (ARFF) vehicles and emergency response vehicles) as authorized by the airport traffic control tower (ATCT) or an authorized on-site accident/incident commander.
- d. Airport Operations Vehicles** – Vehicles routinely used by airport operations personnel for airport inspection and duties associated with airfield operations (such as airfield condition reporting and Incident Command) on the AOA and Movement Area.
- e. Airport Security Vehicles** – Vehicles that are authorized in the AOA for security purposes, as needed (e.g. police cars).

- f. Airfield Service Vehicles** – Vehicles that are routinely used in the AOA for airfield service, maintenance, or construction (e.g. snow blowers, snowplows, maintenance trucks, and tractors).
- g. Aircraft Support Vehicles** – Vehicles that are routinely used in the AOA to support aircraft operations (e.g. aircraft pushback tractors, baggage/cargo tractors or trucks, air conditioning and aviation fuel trucks). These vehicles are typically owned by airlines, vendors, or contractors and are not eligible for Federal funding.
- h. Reduced Visibility** – Prevailing visibility is less than one statute mile (1609 meters) and/or the runway visual range (RVR) is less than 6,000 feet (1830 meters).
- i. Movement Area** – The runways, taxiways, and other areas of an airport/heliport that are used for taxiing/hover taxiing, air taxiing, takeoff, and landing of aircraft, exclusive of loading ramps and parking areas. At those airports/heliports with an operating airport traffic control tower (ATCT), specific approval for entry onto the movement area must be obtained from air traffic control (ATC).
- j. Other Vehicles** – Vehicles that are not routinely authorized in the AOA (e.g. construction vehicles). These vehicles are typically owned by airlines, vendors, or contractors and are not eligible for Federal funding.
- k. Peak Intensity** – Peak intensity, for purposes of this document, means the maximum magnitude of luminescence as measured in candela.
- l. Towbarless Tow Vehicle (TLTV)** – a type of aircraft support vehicle whose main purpose is to tow aircraft in the AOA by way of nose gear capture.

3. VEHICLE PAINTING.

NOTE: *Airport vehicle paint and markings are a safety of flight requirement. The approved colors/markings herein assure conspicuity of vehicles operating in the AOA from both the ground and air.*

a. Airport Emergency Vehicles.

(1) Ambulances. Ambulance vehicles are painted per the most current version of Federal Specification KKK-A-1822, *Federal Specification for the Star-of-Life Ambulance*. Ambulances are not considered vehicles routinely operating on the AOA.

(2) Aircraft Rescue and Fire Fighting (ARFF) Vehicles. Yellowish-green is the vehicle color standard. Color specifications are per Appendix A.

NOTE: *A yellowish-green color provides optimum visibility during all light levels encountered during a 24-hour day and under variations of light that result from weather and seasonal changes.*

b. Airport Operations Vehicles. Airport operations vehicles may be painted in colors designated by the airport operator. The characteristics must be coordinated with the respective ATCT and identified in the tower letter of agreement.

c. Airport Security Vehicles. Comply with specific state or local requirements.

d. Airfield Service Vehicles. Chrome yellow is the vehicle color standard. Color specifications are per Appendix A. When vehicles are equipped with bumper bars 8 inches (200 mm) or more in depth, the bars must be painted in alternate stripes 4 inches (100 mm) in width of chrome yellow and black inclined 45° to the vertical.

e. Aircraft Support Vehicles.

(1) Any color or combination of colors other than yellowish-green or chrome yellow. The bumper bar paint scheme in paragraph 3.d (of alternating chrome yellow and black stripe) is recommended.

(2) **TLTVs.** International orange is the vehicle color standard. Retroreflective tape covering more than 25 percent of the vehicle's vertical surfaces may be used as a temporary measure to meet this standard prior to scheduled vehicle painting.

f. Other Vehicles. Any color or combination of colors other than solid black or white.

4. VEHICLE MARKING.

a. Airport Emergency Vehicles.

(1) **Ambulances.** Ambulances are marked per the most current version of Federal Specification KKK-A-1822.

(2) **ARFF Vehicles.** Emergency rescue and fire fighting vehicles are marked with the letters "ARFF," "Fire," or "Rescue" and in accordance with 4.c.(1)-(5) of this AC.

b. Airport Operations Vehicles. Airport operations vehicles may be marked as designated by the airport operator. Marking must be coordinated with the respective ATCT and identified in the tower letter of agreement.

c. Airfield Service Vehicles and Aircraft Support Vehicles.

(1) Airport operator owned vehicles must display an identification number on each side and on the roof (the hood should be used if the vehicle has no roof).

(2) Side numbers will be a minimum of 16 inches (410 mm) in height and conspicuously located.

(3) Roof numbers will be a minimum of 24 inches (610 mm) in height and affixed with their bases toward the front of the vehicle. The identification numbers should provide sharp color contrast to the vehicle color.

(4) In addition to the identification numbers, airport operator-owned vehicles must display either the name of the airport and/or the airport insignia.

(5) To further improve night-time recognition of vehicles, a minimum 8 inch (200 mm) wide horizontal band of high gloss white paint or white reflective tape (Retroreflective, ASTM-D 4956-09, *Standard Specification for Retroreflective Sheeting for Traffic Control*, Type III & above) must be used around the vehicle's surface. Figures 1, 2, and 3 show suggested locations for the horizontal reflective band.

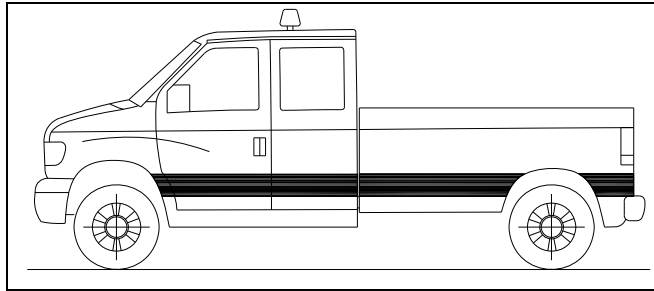


Figure 1: Suggested location for the horizontal reflective band, Option 1

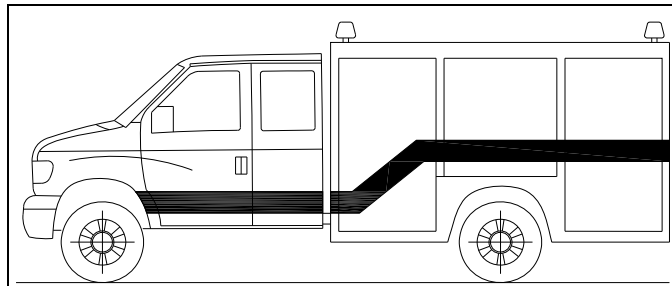


Figure 2: Suggested location for the horizontal reflective band, Option 2

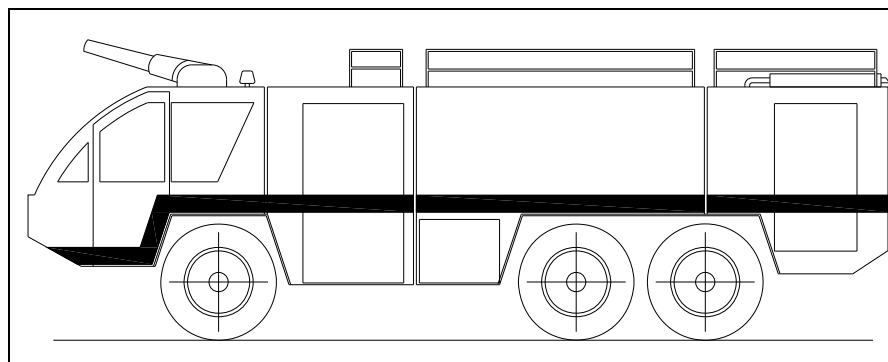


Figure 3: Suggested location for the horizontal reflective band, Option 3

(6) TLTVs. Retroreflective tape is used to outline the shape of a TLTV. If the vertical edge of the vehicle is rounded, the tape should be placed on the rounded portion to reflect light in both the horizontal and vertical planes. Where the placement of the tape may interfere with, or may be worn down by, maintenance or operational activities, tape is not required. Suggested locations for the retroreflective bands are shown in Figure 4.

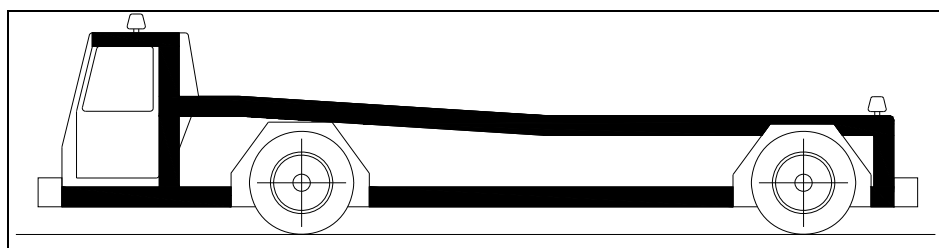


Figure 4: Suggested placement of retroreflective tape on a TLTV

d. Airport Security and Other Vehicles.

- (1) Vehicles other than those that routinely traverse any portion of the AOA under the control of ATC, which are not escorted by a vehicle in constant two-way radio communication with ATC and properly equipped and authorized to operate in the AOA, must be provided with a flag on a staff attached to the vehicle so that the flag will be readily visible.
- (2) At airports without air traffic control facilities, flags must be provided on all vehicles.
- (3) The flag must be at least a 3-foot by 3-foot (0.9 meter by 0.9 meter) square having a checkered pattern of international orange and white squares at least 1 foot (300 mm) on each side (see Appendix A for the fabric color specification).

5. VEHICLE LIGHTING.

a. Airfield Service, Aircraft Support, and Airport Operations Vehicles.

- (1) The standard for identification lighting is a yellow flashing light that is mounted on the uppermost part of the vehicle structure. A steady yellow light designates vehicles limited to non-movement areas.
- (2) The light must be visible from any direction, day and night, including from the air.
- (3) Color specifications for vehicle identification lights are per Appendix B.
- (4) **TLTVs.** An LED light bar placed above the operator's cab may be used in place of the rotating yellow flashing light. In addition, a yellow flashing light (of any type) must be installed on the upper left-rear and right-rear corners of the TLTV, and must be activated when an aircraft is in tow. The size of the rear flashing lights must be large enough to meet the requirements of Section 5.c, but not so large as to interfere with the normal or towing operations of the TLTV.

b. Airport Emergency, Security, and Other Vehicles, which are not escorted by a properly lighted vehicle, must be identified during periods of low visibility by a light.

c. Characteristics of Flashing Lights:

- (1) Ambulance lights must meet the specifications in the most current version of Federal Specification KKK-A-1822, and ARFF vehicles must meet NFPA, state, and local requirements.
- (2) Lights must have peak intensity within the range of 40 to 400 candelas (effective) from 0° (horizontal) up to 10° above the horizontal and for 360° horizontally. The upper limit of 400 candelas (effective) is necessary to avoid damage to night vision.
- (3) From 10° to 15° above the horizontal plane, the light output must be 1/10th of peak intensity or between 4 and 40 candelas (effective).

- (4) Lights must flash at 75 ± 15 flashes per minute.

NOTES:

1. *The effective intensity of a flashing light is equal to the intensity of a steady-burning (fixed) light of the same color that produces the same visual range under identical conditions of observation.*
2. *If xenon flashtubes are used, refer to AC 150/5345-43, Specification for Obstruction Lighting Equipment, for guidance concerning methods of calculating effective intensity.*

d. Light Colors.

(1) Airport Emergency Vehicles.

(a) **Ambulances.** Per the most current version of Federal Specification KKK-A-1822.

(b) **ARFF Vehicles.** Red or a combination of red-and-white flashing lights per the chromaticity requirements in Appendix B.

(2) Airport Security Vehicles. Signal blue or a combination of red and signal blue flashing light per the chromaticity requirements in Appendix B.

(3) Airfield Service, Aircraft Support, Airport Operations, and Other Vehicles. Yellow flashing light per the chromaticity requirements in Appendix B.

APPENDIX A. COLOR SPECIFICATIONS

A-1. SPECIFICATIONS. Colors specified in Table A-1 are per the Commission Internationale de l'Eclairage (CIE) L*a*b* system of color specification. For a description of this system, refer to American Society for Testing & Materials (ASTM) D 2244, *Standard Practice for Calculation of Color Tolerances and Color Differences from Instrumentally Measured Color Coordinates*.

Table A-1. Specification for vehicle and flag colors

Standard Illuminant D65 Usage	Chrome Yellow			Yellowish-Green			International Orange		
	Vehicle Paint			Vehicle Paint			Vehicle Paint / Flag Fabric		
CIELAB DATA	L*	a*	b*	L*	a*	b*	L*	a*	b*
Centroid Color	72.8	24.4	77.6	78.3	-10.2	80.4	45.0	53.5	52.0
Point 1	72.8	31.8	82.9	78.3	-9.0	92.0	45.0	61.4	47.8
Point 2	72.8	25.5	66.7	78.3	-7.6	73.2	45.0	53.9	41.4
Point 3	72.8	18.0	69.3	78.3	-11.0	69.3	45.0	53.5	53.4
Point 4	72.8	22.4	86.0	78.3	-13.4	86.2	45.0	49.7	60.4
Light Limit	77.8			83.3			49.9		
Dark Limit	67.8			73.3			41.6		
Max ΔE	11.1			11.7			10.7		

A-2. COLOR TESTS. Acceptable colors are those that meet the gloss rating test and either a visual or an instrumental color test as follows:

NOTE: *Flag fabric colors must meet either the instrumental tests in Table A-1 or the visual method described in paragraph A-2b(1).*

a. Gloss Rating Test. This test is performed per ASTM D 523, *Standard Test Method for Specular Gloss*, on a paint sample of the color to be applied on the vehicle. An acceptable color sample is high gloss with a minimum gloss rating of 70 units, for 60° geometry.

b. Color Test Methods:

(1) Visual. Prepare a master specimen of the color (per Table A-1) and gloss (per paragraph A-2a). This specimen will be the master color and be used as the basis of comparison per ASTM D 5531-05, *Standard Guide for the Preparation, Maintenance, and Distribution of Physical Product Standards for Color and Geometric Appearance of Coatings*. To verify the paint color of a vehicle visually, vehicle paint samples must be

prepared and viewed per ASTM D 1729-96 (Reapproved 2009), *Standard Practice for Visual Appraisal of Colors and Color Differences of Diffusely-Illuminated Opaque Materials*.

(2) Instrumental. This test requires a test specimen sample and reference to Table A-1. All test specimen measurements should be conducted per ASTM E 1164-09a *Standard Practice for Obtaining Spectrometric Data for Object-Color Evaluation*. Test specimen tolerances must be per Table A-1 per the following:

- (a) Plot the centroid color using the a^* and b^* CIELAB coordinate data from Table A-1 on graph paper or by entry of the coordinate data into a computer program. Plot and connect points 1 through 4 from the same table to form a quadrilateral; noting that the centroid color is within this figure. See Figure A-1 for plots of all three color specifications in Table A-1.
- (b) Perform color sample measurements per ASTM E 1164-09a. If necessary, convert measurements to CIELAB L^* , a^* , and b^* color space. See ASTM E 308-08, *Standard Practice for Computing the Colors of Objects by Using the CIE System*, for color space conversion formulae.
- (c) An acceptable color is one that meets:
 - (i) the chromaticity requirements of the color samples a^* and b^* CIELAB coordinate data by falling within the quadrilateral;
 - (ii) the L^* data lightness requirement by falling within the range defined by the light and dark data of Table A-1;
 - (iii) the total color difference (ΔE) by not exceeding the limits in Table A-1 when the CIELAB data are computed in the following formula:

$$\Delta E = (\Delta L^{*2} + \Delta a^{*2} + \Delta b^{*2})^{\frac{1}{2}}$$

where ΔL^* , Δa^* , and Δb^* values are the differences between those values for the centroid color in Table A-1 and those of the color sample measurements.

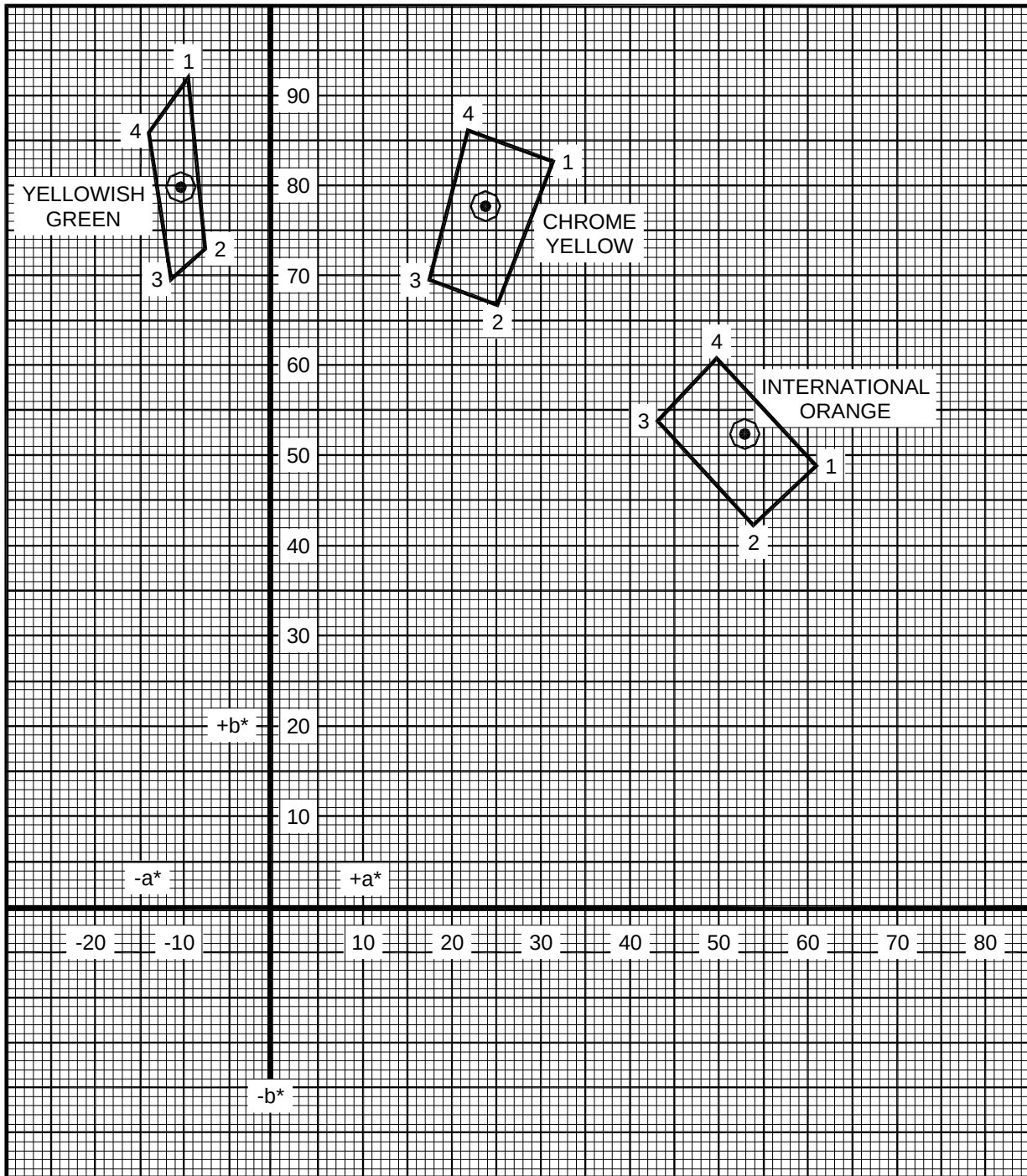


Figure A-1. Plot of selected color paint specifications

Intentionally left blank.

APPENDIX B. COLOR SPECIFICATIONS FOR VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION LIGHTS

B-1. SPECIFICATIONS. The Society of Automotive Engineers (SAE) Standard J578 Revised December 2006, *Color Specification*, defines the acceptable color boundary limits and measurement of emitted red, white, signal blue, and yellow light for vehicle lights. This standard applies to the overall emitted color of light from the device in lieu of emitted light from any small area of the lens. The color of emitted light must fall within the color boundaries per SAE J578 Revised December 2006 (color boundary equations are in the standard) using color measurement methods detailed in the standard. See FAA Engineering Brief #67, Light Sources Other Than Incandescent and Xenon for Airport and Obstruction Lighting Fixtures, for additional information and Alternative Lighting Devices.

Intentionally left blank.

AtkinsRéalis



John Verburg, P.E.
AtkinsRéalis USA Inc.
17220 Katy Freeway, Suite 200
Houston, Texas 77094

Tel: +1 281 529 4132
john.verburg@atkinsrealis.com

© AtkinsRéalis USA Inc. except where stated otherwise